JD eng foreword.QXP 3/4/2015 11:46 AM Page 1

KIA, THE COMPANY

Thank you for becoming the owner of a new Kia vehicle.

As a global car manufacturing company focused on building high-quality vehicles at value prices, Kia Motors is dedicated to providing you with Service above your expectation and delight customer experience.

In our Kia dealerships you will experience our "**Family-like Care**" promise, that creates feelings of warmth, hospitality and trust – feelings of being looked after by people who care.

All information contained in this Owner's Manual was accurate at the time of publication. However, Kia reserves the right to make changes at any time so that our policy of continual product improvement can be carried out.

This manual applies to all Kia models and includes descriptions and explanations of optional as well as standard equipment. As a result, you may encounter material in this manual that is not applicable to your specific Kia vehicle.

Enjoy your vehicle & experience Kia "Family-like Care" !

JD eng foreword.QXP 3/4/2015 11:46 AM Page 2

FOREWORD

Thank you for choosing a Kia vehicle.

This manual will familiarize you with operational, maintenance and safety information about your new vehicle. It is supplemented by a Warranty and Maintenance book that provides important information on all warranties regarding your vehicle. Kia urges you to read these publications carefully and follow the recommendations to help assure enjoyable and safe operation of your new vehicle.

Kia offers a great variety of options, components and features for its various models. Therefore, some of the equipment described in this manual, along with the various illustrations, may not be applicable to your particular vehicle.

The information and specifications provided in this manual were accurate at the time of printing. Kia reserves the right to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation. If you have questions, we recommend to contact your authorized Kia dealer.

Kia assures you of our continuing interest in your motoring pleasure and satisfaction in your Kia vehicle.

© 2015 Kia Motors Slovakia s.r.o.

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Kia Motors Slovakia s.r.o..

JD eng foreword.QXP 3/4/2015 11:46 AM Page 3

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction	1
Your vehicle at a glance	2
Safety features of your vehicle	3
Features of your vehicle	4
Driving your vehicle	5
What to do in an emergency	6
Maintenance	7
Specifications & Consumer information	8
Index	I

JD eng 1.QXP 3/4/2015 11:49 AM Page 1

Introduction

1

How to use this manual 1-2
Fuel requirements 1-2
- **Gasoline engine** 1-2
- **Diesel engine** 1-4

Vehicle break-in process 1-5

JD eng 1.QXP 3/4/2015 11:49 AM Page 2

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

We want to help you get the greatest possible driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual can assist you in many ways. We strongly recommend that you read the entire manual. In order to minimize the chance of death or injury, you must read the WARNING and CAUTION sections in the manual.

Illustrations complement the words in this manual to best explain how to enjoy your vehicle. By reading your manual, you will learn about features, important safety information, and driving tips under various road conditions.

The general layout of the manual is provided in the Table of Contents. Use the index when looking for a specific area or subject; it has an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

Sections: This manual has eight sections plus an index. Each section begins with a brief list of contents so you can tell at a glance if that section has the information you want.

You will find various WARNINGS, CAUTIONS, and NOTICES in this manual. These were prepared to enhance your personal safety. You should carefully read and follow ALL procedures and recommendations provided in these WARNINGS, CAUTIONS and NOTICES.

⚠ WARNING

A WARNING indicates a situation in which harm, serious bodily injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.

⚠ CAUTION

A CAUTION indicates a situation in which damage to your vehicle could result if the caution is ignored.

✻ NOTICE

A NOTICE indicates interesting or helpful information is being provided.

FUEL REQUIREMENTS

Gasoline engine

Unleaded

For Europe

For the optimal vehicle performance, we recommend you to use unleaded gasoline which complies with EN 228 and has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher (Do not use methanol blended fuels). You may use unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of RON 91-94 / AKI 87-90 but it may result in slight performance reduction of the vehicle.

Except Europe

Your new vehicle is designed to use only unleaded fuel having an Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher. (Do not use methanol blended fuels)

Your new vehicle is designed to obtain maximum performance with UNLEADED FUEL, as well as minimize exhaust emissions and spark plug fouling.

JD eng 1.QXP 3/4/2015 11:49 AM Page 3

⚠ CAUTION

NEVER USE LEADED FUEL. The use of leaded fuel is detrimental to the catalytic converter and will damage the engine control system's oxygen sensor and affect emission control.

Never add any fuel system cleaning agents to the fuel tank other than what has been specified. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refueling.**
- **Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.**

Gasoline containing alcohol and methanol

Gasohol, a mixture of gasoline and ethanol (also known as grain alcohol), and gasoline or gasohol containing methanol (also known as wood alcohol) are being marketed along with or instead of leaded or unleaded gasoline.

Do not use gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol, and do not use gasoline or gasohol containing any methanol. Either of these fuels may cause drivability problems and damage to the fuel system, engine control system and emission control system.

Discontinue using gasohol of any kind if drivability problems occur.

Vehicle damage or driveability problems may not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty if they result from the use of:

1. Gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol.
2. Gasoline or gasohol containing methanol.
3. Leaded fuel or leaded gasohol.

⚠ CAUTION

Never use gasohol which contains methanol. Discontinue use of any gasohol product which impairs drivability.

Other fuels

Using fuels such as

- Silicone (Si) contained fuel,
- MMT (Manganese, Mn) contained fuel,
- Ferrocene (Fe) contained fuel, and
- Other metalic additives contained fuels,

may cause vehicle and engine damage or cause plugging, misfiring, poor acceleration, engine stalling, catalyst melting, abnormal corrosion, life cycle reduction, etc.

Also, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) may illuminate.

✻ NOTICE

Damage to the fuel system or performance problem caused by the use of these fuels may not be covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

JD eng 1.QXP 3/4/2015 11:49 AM Page 4

Use of MTBE

Kia recommends avoiding fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) in your vehicle.

Fuel containing MTBE over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) may reduce vehicle performance and produce vapor lock or hard starting.

⚠ CAUTION

Your New Vehicle Limited Warranty may not cover damage to the fuel system and any performance problems that are caused by the use of fuels containing methanol or fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight.)

Do not use methanol

Fuels containing methanol (wood alcohol) should not be used in your vehicle. This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and damage components of the fuel system, engine control system and emission control system.

Fuel Additives

Kia recommends that you use unleaded gasoline which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher (for Europe) or Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher (except Europe).

For customers who do not use good quality gasolines including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additives added to the fuel tank at every 15,000km (for Europe)/ 5,000km (except Europe). Additives are available from your authorized Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

Operation in foreign countries

If you are going to drive your vehicle in another country, be sure to:

- Observe all regulations regarding registration and insurance.
- Determine that acceptable fuel is available.

Diesel engine

Diesel fuel

Diesel engine must be operated only on commercially available diesel fuel that complies with EN 590 or comparable standard. (EN stands for "European Norm"). Do not use marine diesel fuel, heating oils, or non-approved fuel additives, as this will increase wear and cause damage to the engine and fuel system. The use of non-approved fuels and / or fuel additives will result in a limitation of your warranty rights.

Diesel fuel of above cetane 51 is used in your vehicle. If two types of diesel fuel are available, use summer or winter fuel properly according to the following temperature conditions.

- Above -5°C (23°F) ... Summer type diesel fuel.
- Below -5°C (23°F) ... Winter type diesel fuel.

Watch the fuel level in the tank very carefully : If the engine stops through fuel failure, the circuits must be completely purged to permit restarting.

JD eng 1.QXP 3/4/2015 11:49 AM Page 5

⚠ CAUTION

Do not let any gasoline or water enter the tank. This would make it necessary to drain it out and to bleed the lines to avoid jamming the injection pump and damaging the engine.

⚠ CAUTION - Diesel Fuel (if equipped with DPF)

It is recommended to use the regulated automotive diesel fuel for diesel vehicle equipped with the DPF system.

If you use diesel fuel including high sulfur (more than 50 ppm sulfur) and unspecified additives, it can cause the DPF system to be damaged and white smoke can be emitted.

Biodiesel

Commercially supplied Diesel blends of no more than 7% biodiesel, commonly known as "B7 Diesel" may be used in your vehicle if Biodiesel meets EN 14214 or equivalent specifications. (EN stands for "European Norm"). The use of biofuels exceeding 7% made from rapeseed methyl ester (RME), fatty acid methyl ester (FAME), vegetable oil methyl ester (VME) etc. or mixing diesel exceeding 7% with biodiesel will cause increased wear or damage to the engine and fuel system. Repair or replacement of worn or damaged components due to the use of non approved fuels will not be covered by the manufactures warranty.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Never use any fuel, whether diesel, B7 biodiesel or otherwise, that fails to meet the latest petroleum industry specification.***
- ***Never use any fuel additives or treatments that are not recommended or approved by the vehicle manufacturer.***

VEHICLE BREAK-IN PROCESS

No special break-in period is needed. By following a few simple precautions for the first 1,000 km (600 miles) you may add to the performance, economy and life of your vehicle.

- Do not race the engine.
- While driving, keep your engine speed (rpm, or revolutions per minute) between 2,000 rpm and 4,000 rpm.
- Do not maintain a single speed for long periods of time, either fast or slow. Varying engine speed is needed to properly break-in the engine.
- Avoid hard stops, except in emergencies, to allow the brakes to seat properly.
- Don't tow a trailer during the first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) of operation.

JD eng 2.QXP 3/4/2015 11:50 AM Page 1

Your vehicle at a glance

Exterior overview (front) 2-2
Exterior overview (rear) 2-3
Interior overview 2-4
Instrument panel overview 2-5
Engine compartment 2-6

JD eng 2.QXP 3/4/2015 11:50 AM Page 2

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW (FRONT)



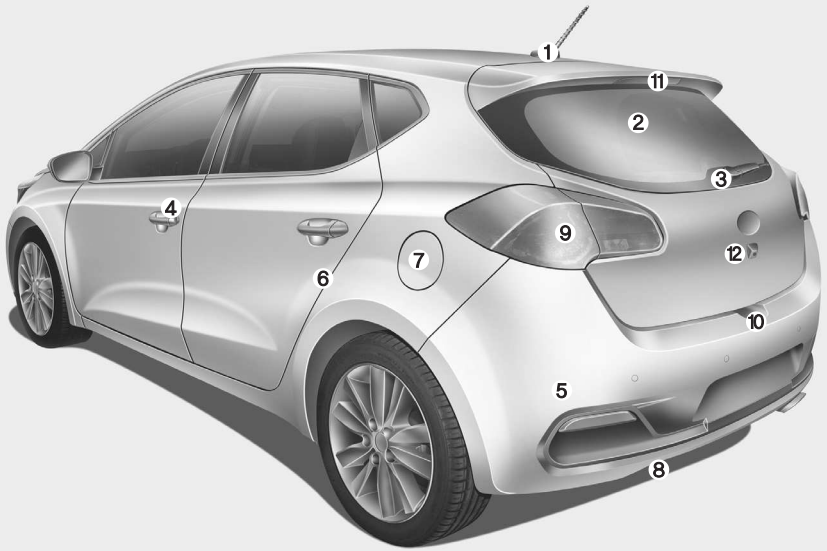
1. Front removable towing hook 6-30
2. Front windshield wiper.....4-119
3. Outside rearview mirror 4-44
4. Door lock 4-17
5. Head lamp.....4-111, 7-90
6. Front fog lamp.....4-116
7. Hood 4-28
8. Tire and wheel 7-55

❊ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJD012001

JD eng 2.QXP 3/4/2015 11:50 AM Page 3

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW (REAR)



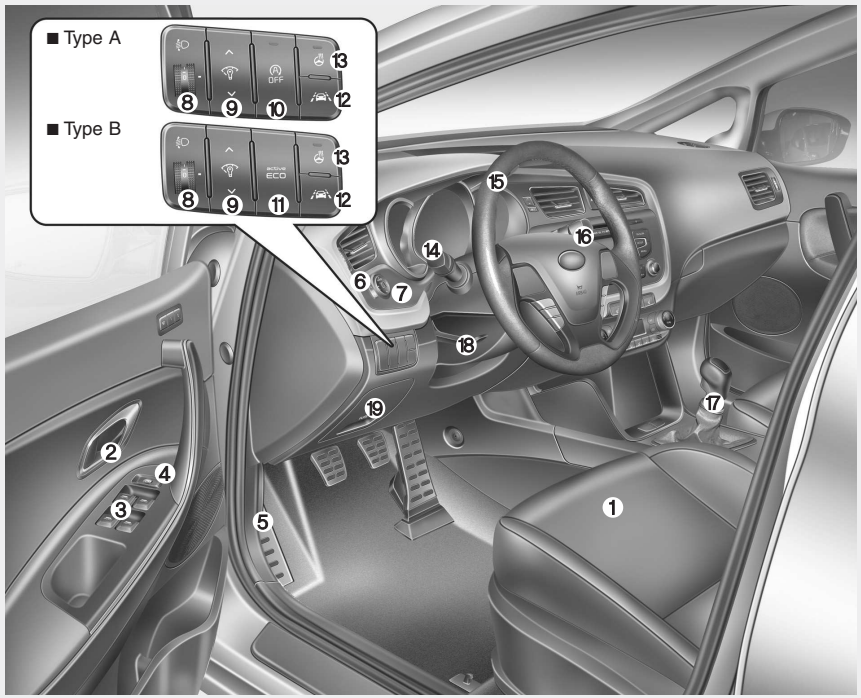
1. Roof antenna 4-172
2. Rear window defroster.....4-127
3. Rear wiper 4-122
4. Door lock 4-17
5. Rear parking assist system 4-92
6. Child-protector rear door lock.....4-21
7. Fuel filler 4-30
8. Rear towing hook.....6-30
9. Rear combination lamp 7-103
10. Tailgate handle switch 4-22
11. High mounted stop lamp 7-108
12. Rearview camera.....4-110

❈ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJD012002

JD eng 2.QXP 3/4/2015 11:51 AM Page 4

INTERIOR OVERVIEW



1. Seat.....3-2
2. Inside door handle 4-18
3. Power window switch 4-24
4. Power window lock switch.....4-26
5. Hood release lever 4-28
6. Outside rearview mirror folding.....4-45
7. Outside rearview mirror control.....4-44
8. Headlight leveling device 4-117
9. Instrument panel illumination control system 4-47, 4-61
10. Idle Stop and Go (ISG) OFF button 5-15
11. Active ECO button 5-32
12. Lane departure warning system button..5-59
13. Heated steering wheel button.....4-38
14. Light control/Turn signals 4-112
15. Steering wheel 4-37
16. Wiper/Washer 4-119
17. Transaxle shift lever 5-20, 5-23
18. Tilt and telescopic steering control lever 4-38
19. Fuse box 7-66

❊ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJD012003

JD eng 2.QXP 3/4/2015 11:51 AM Page 5

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW



1. Instrument cluster 4-46, 4-59
2. Horn 4-39
3. Steering wheel audio control.....4-173
4. Cruise control switch 5-51
   Speed limiter control switch 5-56
   Cluster display mode conversion switch 4-61
5. Driver's air bag 3-50
6. Ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button 5-5, 5-9
7. Hazard warning switch 4-110
8. Audio 4-172
9. Seat warmer 3-12
10. Central door lock switch 4-19
11. ESC OFF button.....5-44
12. Climate control system 4-128, 4-137
13. Cigar lighter.....4-155
14. Aux, USB and iPod port 4-160
15. Power outlet 4-159
16. Front passenger's air bag 3-50
17. Glove box 4-153

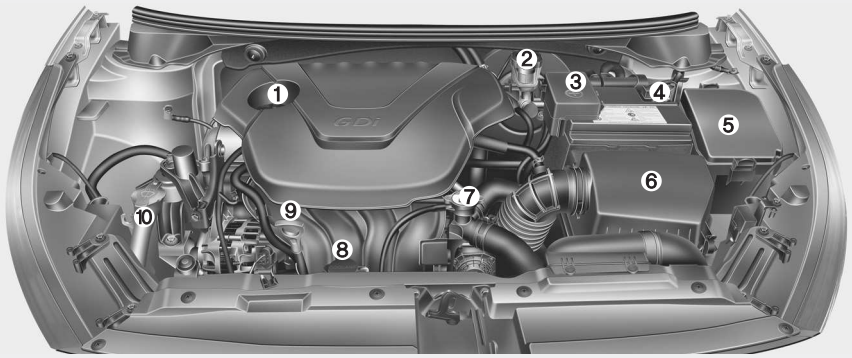
❈ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJD012004

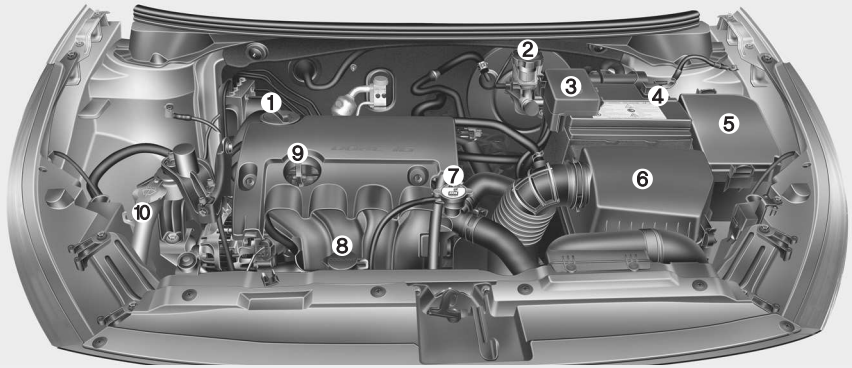
JD eng 2.QXP 3/4/2015 11:51 AM Page 6

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ Gasoline engine (GDI)



■ Gasoline engine (MPI)



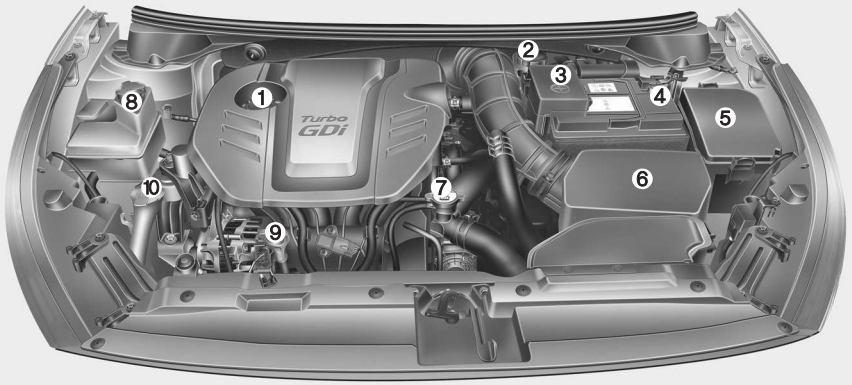
❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. Engine oil filler cap 7-37
2. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir 7-42
3. Positive battery terminal 7-52
4. Negative battery terminal 7-52
5. Fuse box.....7-66
6. Air cleaner 7-45
7. Radiator cap 7-41
8. Engine coolant reservoir.....7-40
9. Engine oil dipstick.....7-37
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir....7-43

OJD072001/OJD072002

JD eng 2.QXP 3/4/2015 11:51 AM Page 7

■ **Gasoline engine (T-GDI)**



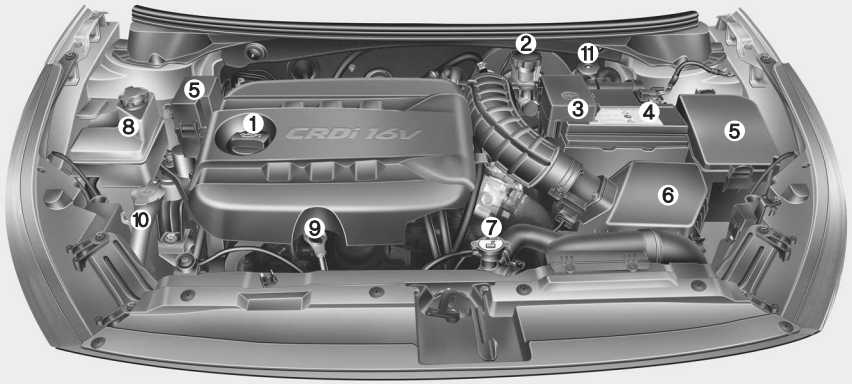
1. Engine oil filler cap 7-37
2. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir 7-42
3. Positive battery terminal 7-52
4. Negative battery terminal 7-52
5. Fuse box.....7-66
6. Air cleaner 7-45
7. Radiator cap 7-41
8. Engine coolant reservoir.....7-40
9. Engine oil dipstick.....7-37
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir....7-43

❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJD073077R

JD eng 2.QXP 3/4/2015 11:51 AM Page 8

■ **Diesel engine**



1. Engine oil filler cap 7-37
2. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir 7-42
3. Positive battery terminal 7-52
4. Negative battery terminal 7-52
5. Fuse box.....7-66
6. Air cleaner 7-45
7. Radiator cap 7-41
8. Engine coolant reservoir.....7-40
9. Engine oil dipstick.....7-37
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir....7-43
11. Fuel filter 7-44

❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJD072003

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:38 PM Page 1

Safety features of your vehicle

Seat 3-2
- Front seat 3-4
- Driver position memory system 3-8
- Rear seat 3-14

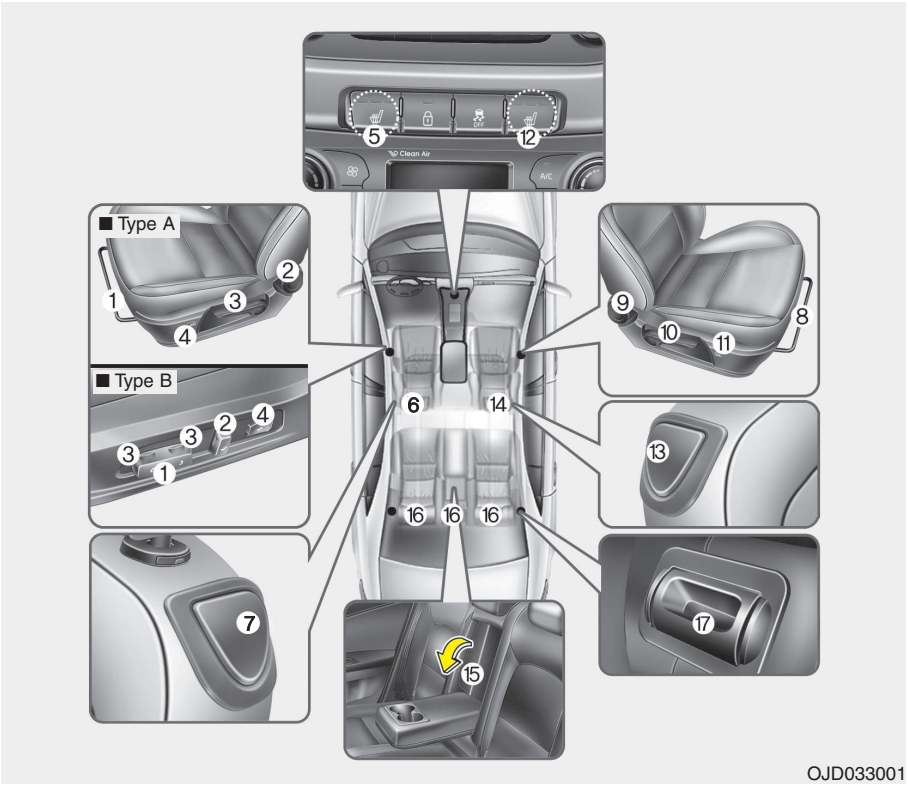
Seat belt 3-20
- Seat belt warning 3-21
- Lap/shoulder belt 3-23
- Pre-tensioner seat belt 3-25
- Seat belt precautions 3-27
- Care of seat belts 3-30

Child restraint system 3-31
- Using a child restraint system 3-33

Airbag-supplemental restraint system 3-42
- Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger's seat 3-44
- Air bag warning and indicator 3-45
- SRS components and functions 3-47
- Driver's and passenger's front air bag 3-50
- Side impact air bag 3-55
- Curtain air bag 3-56
- SRS Care 3-63
- Additional safety precautions 3-64
- Air bag warning label 3-65

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:38 PM Page 2

SEAT



Driver's seat

(1) Seat adjustment, forward/backward
(2) Seatback recliner
(3) Seat adjustment, height
(4) Lumber support*
(5) Seat warmer*
(6) Headrest adjustment
(7) Walk-in seat
(for 3 door vehicle only)

Front passenger seat

(8) Seat adjustment, forward/backward
(9) Seatback recliner
(10) Seat adjustment, height*
(11) Lumber support*
(12) Seat warmer*
(13) Walk-in seat
(for 3 door vehicle only)
(14) Headrest adjustment

Rear seat

(15) Armrest*
(16) Headrest adjustment
(17) Split folding rear seat

* : if equipped

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:38 PM Page 3

⚠ WARNING - Loose objects

Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Do not place anything under the front seats.

✻ NOTICE

If you have a collision accident, the front seat may be damaged.
In this case we recommend that you have a seat system checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Driver responsibility for front seat passenger

Riding in a vehicle with a front seatback reclined could lead to serious or fatal injury in an accident. If a front seat is reclined during an accident, the occupant's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt applying great force to the unprotected abdomen. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result. The driver must advise the front passenger to keep the seatback in an upright position whenever the vehicle is in motion.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use a sitting cushion that reduces friction between the seat and passenger. The passenger's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result because the seat belt can't operate normally.

⚠ WARNING - Driver's seat

- **Never attempt to adjust seat while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.**
- **Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position of the seatback. Storing items against a seatback or in any other way interfering with proper locking of a seatback could result in serious or fatal injury in a sudden stop or collision.**
- **Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap portion of the seat belt snug and low across the hips. This is the best position to protect you in case of an accident.**
- **In order to avoid unnecessary and perhaps severe air bag injuries, always sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel while maintaining comfortable control of the vehicle. It is recommended that your chest is at least 250 mm (10 inches) away from the steering wheel.**

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:38 PM Page 4

⚠ WARNING - Rear seatbacks

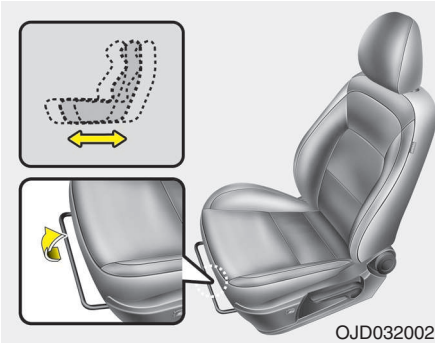
- **The rear seatback must be securely latched. If not, passengers and objects could be thrown forward resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or collision.**
- **Luggage and other cargo should be laid flat in the cargo area. If objects are large, heavy, or must be piled, they must be secured. Under no circumstances should cargo be piled higher than the seatbacks. Failure to follow these warnings could result in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop, collision or rollover.**
- **No passenger should ride in the cargo area or sit or lie on folded seatbacks while the vehicle is moving. All passengers must be properly seated in seats and restrained properly while riding.**
- **When resetting the seatback to the upright position, make sure it is securely latched by pushing it forward and backwards.**

⚠ WARNING

After adjusting the seat, always check that it is securely locked into place by attempting to move the seat forward or backward without using the lock release lever. Sudden or unexpected movement of the driver's seat could cause you to lose control of the vehicle resulting in an accident.

⚠ WARNING

- **Use extreme caution so that hands or other objects are not caught in the seat mechanisms while the seat is moving.**
- **Do not put a cigarette lighter on the floor or seat. When you operate the seat, gas may gush out of the lighter and cause fire.**
- **Use extreme caution when picking small objects trapped under the seats or between the seat and the center console. Your hands might be cut or injured by the sharp edges of the seat mechanism.**



OJD032002

Front seat

Manual adjustment

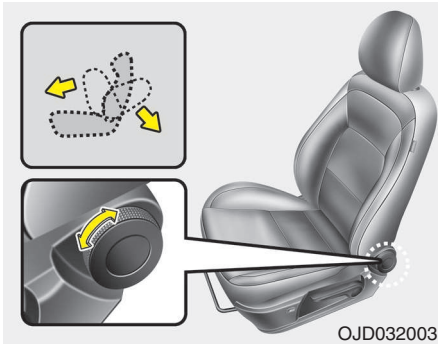
Forward and backward

To move the seat forward or backward:

1. Pull the seat slide adjustment lever up and hold it.
2. Slide the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seat is locked in place.

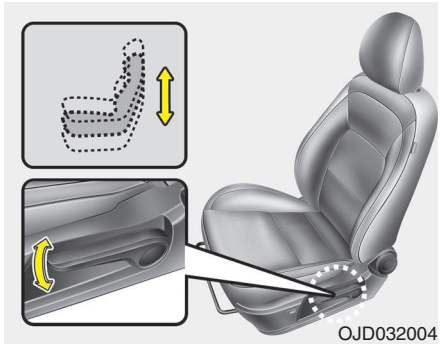
Adjust the seat before driving, and make sure the seat is locked securely by trying to move forward and backward without using the lever. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:38 PM Page 5


OJD032003

Seatback angle

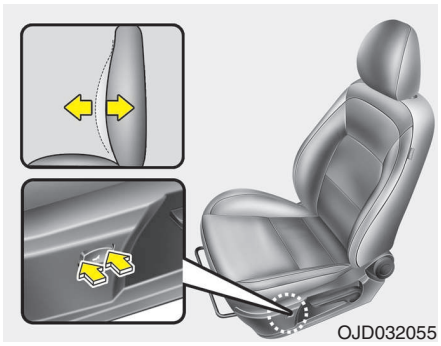
Turn the control knob forward or rearward to move the seatback to the desired angle.


OJD032004

Seat cushion height (if equipped)

To change the height of the seat cushion, push the lever upwards or downwards.

- To lower the seat cushion, push down the lever several times.
- To raise the seat cushion, pull up the lever several times.


OJD032055

Lumbar support (if equipped)

The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch on the side of the seat.

1. Press the front portion of the switch to increase support, or the rear portion of the switch, to decrease support.
2. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:39 PM Page 6

Automatic adjustment (if equipped)

The driver's seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the outside of the seat cushion. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so as to easily control the steering wheel, pedals and switches on the instrument panel.

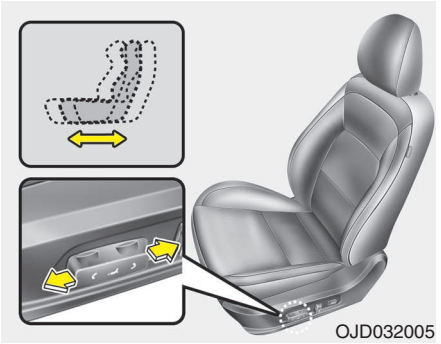
⚠ WARNING

The power seat is operable with the ignition OFF.

Therefore, children should never be left unattended in the car.

⚠ CAUTION

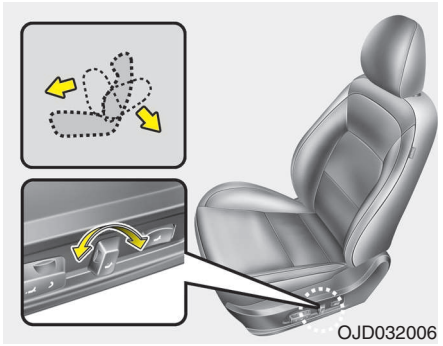
- ***The power seat is driven by an electric motor. Stop operating once the adjustment is completed. Excessive operation may damage the electrical equipment.***
- ***When in operation, the power seat consumes a large amount of electrical power. To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, don't adjust the power seat longer than necessary while the engine is not running.***
- ***Do not operate two or more power seat control switches at the same time. Doing so may result in power seat motor or electrical component malfunction.***



Forward and rearward

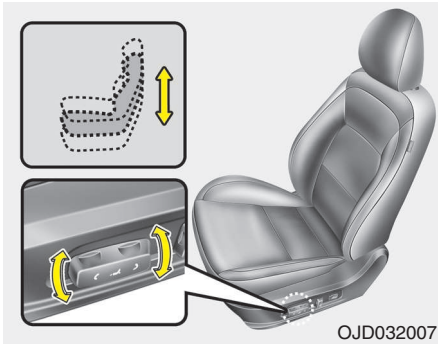
1. Push the control switch forward or rearward to move the seat to the desired position.
2. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:39 PM Page 7


OJD032006

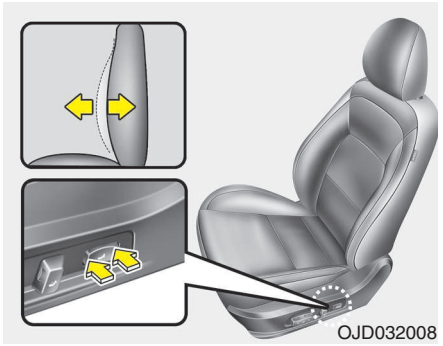
Seatback angle

1. Push the control switch forward or rearward to move the seatback to the desired angle.
2. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.


OJD032007

Seat cushion height (if equipped)

1. Pull the front portion of the control switch up to raise or down to lower the front part of the seat cushion. Pull the rear portion of the control switch up to raise or down to lower the rear part of the seat cushion.
2. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

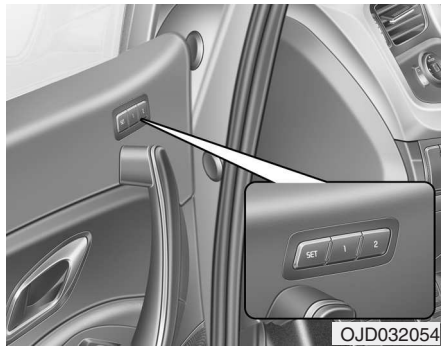

OJD032008

Lumbar support (if equipped)

The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch on the side of the seat.

1. Press the front portion of the switch to increase support, or the rear portion of the switch, to decrease support.
2. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:39 PM Page 8



Driver position memory system (if equipped, for automatic seat)

A driver position memory system is provided to store and recall the driver seat position with a simple button operation. By saving the desired position into the system memory, different drivers can reposition the driver seat based upon their driving preference. If the battery is disconnected, the position memory will be erased and the driving position should be restored in the system.

⚠ WARNING

Never attempt to operate the driver position memory system while the vehicle is moving.

This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.

Storing positions into memory using the buttons on the door

Storing driver's seat positions

1. Shift the shift lever into P or N (for Automatic transaxle) or Neutral (for manual transaxle) while the engine start/stop button is ON or ignition switch ON.
2. Adjust the driver's seat comfortable for the driver.
3. Press SET button on the control panel. The system will beep once.
4. Press one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) within 5 seconds after pressing the SET button. The system will beep twice when memory has been successfully stored.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:39 PM Page 9

Recalling positions from memory

1. Shift the shift lever into P or N (for Automatic transaxle) or Neutral (for manual transaxle) while the engine start/stop button is ON or ignition switch ON.
2. To recall the position in the memory, press the desired memory button (1 or 2). The system will beep once, then the driver's seat will automatically adjust to the stored position.

Adjusting the control switch for the driver's seat while the system is recalling the stored position will cause the movement to stop and move in the direction that the control switch is moved.

⚠ WARNING

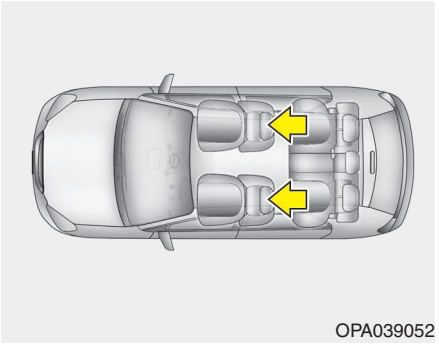
Use caution when recalling the adjustment memory while sitting in the vehicle. Push the seat position control switch to the desired position immediately if the seat moves too far in any direction.

Easy access function (if equipped)

The system will move the driver's seat automatically as follows:

- Without smart key system
  - It will move the driver's seat rearward when the ignition key is removed and front driver's door is opened.
  - It will move the driver's seat forward when the ignition key is inserted.
- With smart key system
  - It will move the driver's seat rearward when the engine start/stop button is changed to the OFF position and front driver's door is opened.
  - It will move the driver's seat forward when the engine start/stop button is changed to the ACC or START position.

You can activate or deactivate this feature. Refer to "User settings" in section 4.



OPA039052

Headrest

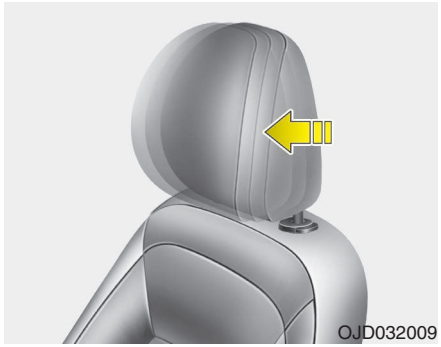
The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with a headrest for the occupant's safety and comfort.

The headrest not only provides comfort for the driver and front passenger, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:39 PM Page 10

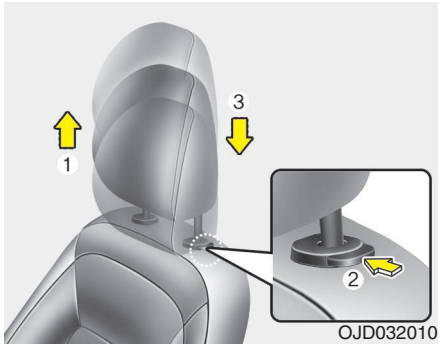
⚠ WARNING

- **For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height of the center of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the center of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also, adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.**
- **Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed as severe injury to the occupants may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against neck injuries when properly adjusted.**
- **Do not adjust the headrest position of the driver's seat while the vehicle is in motion.**



Forward and rearward adjustment (if equipped)

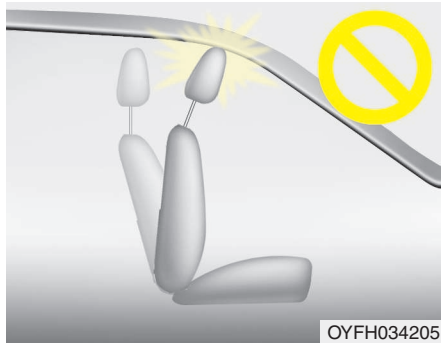
The headrest may be adjusted forward to 4 different positions by pulling the headrest forward to the desired detent. To adjust the headrest to it's furthest rearwards position, pull it fully forward to the farthest position and release it. Adjust the headrest so that it properly supports the head and neck.



Adjusting the height up and down

To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

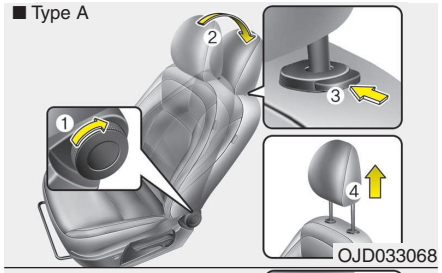
JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:39 PM Page 11


OYFH034205

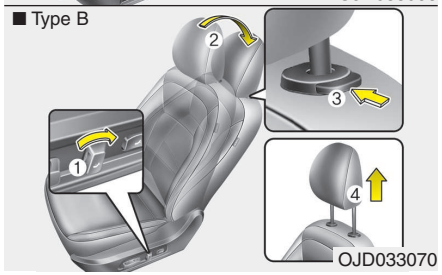
⚠ CAUTION

If you recline the seatback towards the front with the head restraint and seat cushion raised, the head restraint may come in contact with the sunvisor or other parts of the vehicle.

■ Type A


OJD033068

■ Type B


OJD033070

Removal and installation

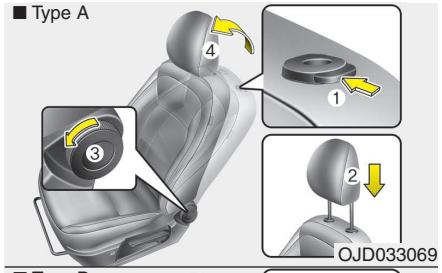
To remove the headrest:

1. Recline the seatback (2) with the recline lever or switch (1).
2. Raise headrest as far as it can go.
3. Press the headrest release button (3) while pulling the headrest up (4).

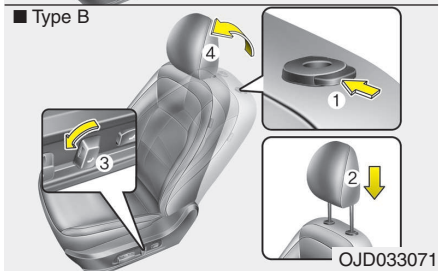
⚠ WARNING

NEVER allow anyone to ride in a seat with the headrest removed.

■ Type A


OJD033069

■ Type B


OJD033071

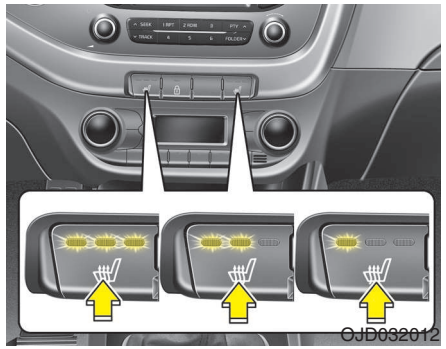
To reinstall the headrest :

1. Put the headrest poles (2) into the holes while pressing the release button (1).
2. Recline the seatback (4) with the recline lever or switch (3).
3. Adjust the headrest to the appropriate height.

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure the headrest locks into position after reinstalling and adjusting it properly.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:39 PM Page 12



Seat warmer (if equipped)

The seat warmer is provided to warm the front seats during cold weather. With the ignition switch in the ON position, push either of the switches to warm the driver's seat or the front passenger's seat.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the switches in the "OFF" position.

- Each time you press the switch, the temperature setting of the seat will change as follows :

OFF → HIGH ( ) → MID ( )
↑ LOW ( ) ←

- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.

✻ NOTICE

With the seat warmer switch in ON position, the heating system in the seat turns off or on automatically depending on the seat temperature.

⚠ CAUTION - Seat damage

- ***When cleaning the seats, do not use an organic solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol and gasoline. Doing so may damage the surface of the heater or seats.***
- ***To prevent overheating the seat warmer, do not place anything on the seats that insulates against heat, such as blankets, cushions or seat covers on the seats while the seat warmer is in operation.***
- ***Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat warmers. Damage to the seat warming components could occur.***

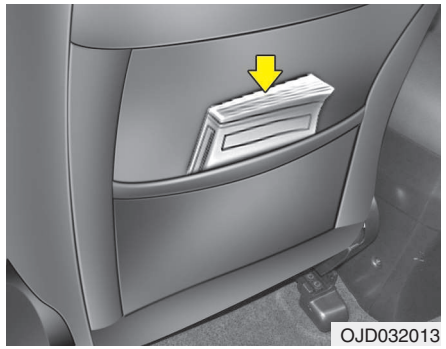
⚠ WARNING - Seat warmer burns

Passengers should use extreme caution when using seat warmers due to the possibility of excess heating or burns. The occupants must be able to feel if the seat is becoming too warm and to turn the seat warmer off. The seat warmer may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time.

In particular, the driver must exercise extreme care for the following types of passengers:

1. **Infants, children, elderly or disabled persons, or hospital outpatients**
2. **Persons with sensitive skin or those that burn easily**
3. **Fatigued individuals**
4. **Intoxicated individuals**
5. **Individuals taking medication that can cause drowsiness or sleepiness (sleeping pills, cold tablets, etc.)**

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:39 PM Page 13



Seatback pocket (if equipped)

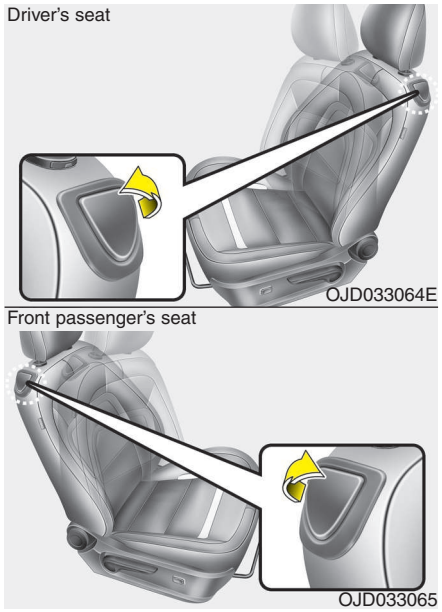
The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front passenger's and driver's seatbacks.

⚠ WARNING - Seatback pockets

Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could come loose from the pocket and injure vehicle occupants.

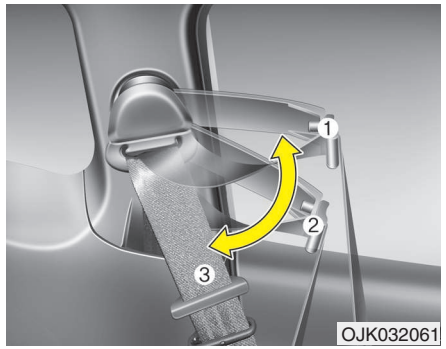
Rear Seat Entry
(For 3-door vehicle only)

To get in or get out of the rear seat, the driver's or front passenger's seat should be folded and the seat should be slide.

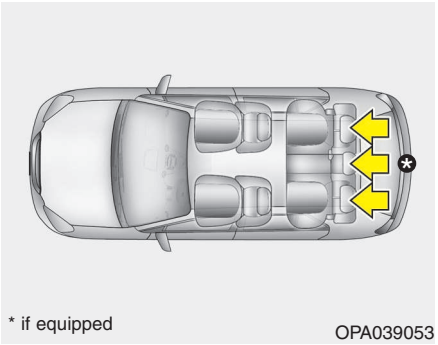


1. Fold the front seatback by pulling up the walk-in seat lever and then slide the front seat forward.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:39 PM Page 14



2. Set the belt extension guide to position (3).
3. After getting in or getting out, slide the seat rearward while holding the seat cushion and then push the seatback rearward. And set the belt extension guide to position (1) or (2).



Rear seat

Headrest

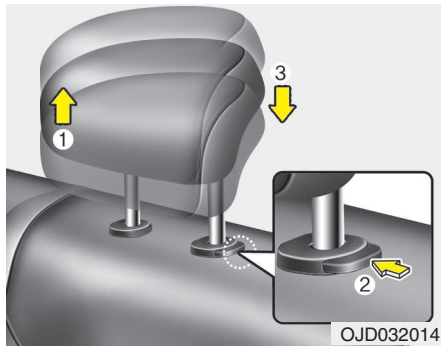
The rear seat is equipped with headrests in all the seating positions for the occupant's safety and comfort.

The headrest not only provides comfort for passengers, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

⚠ WARNING

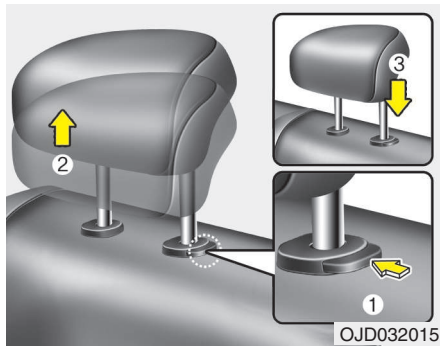
- **For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height of the center of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the center of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.**
- **Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed. Severe injury to an occupant may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against severe neck injuries when properly adjusted.**

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:39 PM Page 15



Adjusting the height up and down

To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).



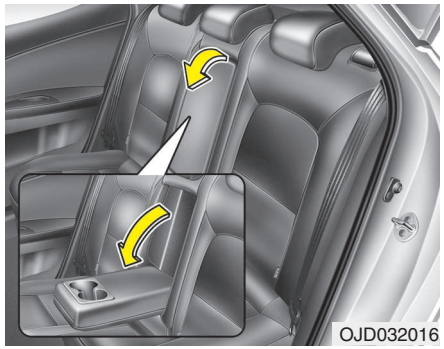
Removal and installation

To remove the headrest, raise it as far as it can go then press the release button (1) while pulling the headrest up (2).

To reinstall the headrest, put the headrest poles (3) into the holes while pressing the release button (1). Then adjust it to the appropriate height.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the headrest locks in position after adjusting it to properly protect the occupants.



Armrest (if equipped)

To use the armrest, pull it forward from the seatback.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 16

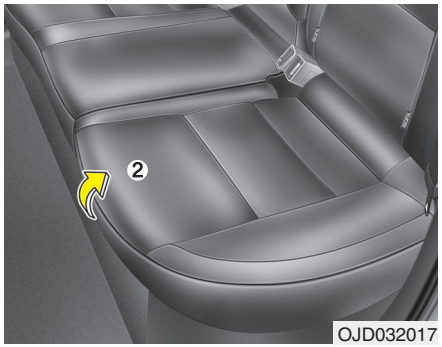
Folding the rear seat

The rear seatbacks (or cushions) may be folded to facilitate carrying long items or to increase the luggage capacity of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

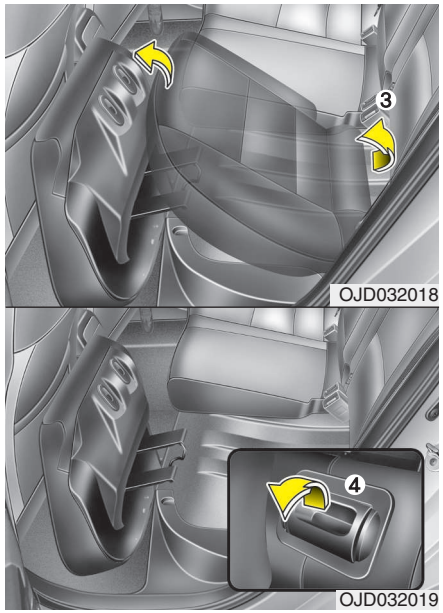
The purpose of the fold-down rear seatbacks (or cushions) is to allow you to carry longer objects than could otherwise be accommodated.

Never allow passengers to sit on top of the folded down seatback while the car is moving as this is not a proper seating position and no seat belts are available for use. This could result in serious injury or death in case of an accident or sudden stop. Objects carried on the folded down seatback should not extend higher than the top of the front seats. This could allow cargo to slide forward and cause injury or damage during sudden stops.



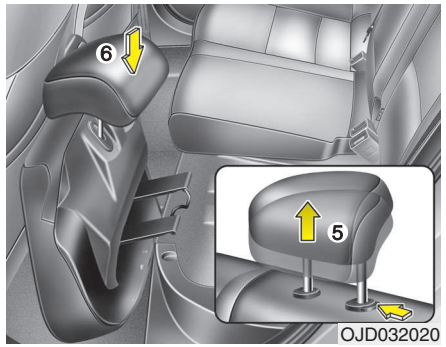
To fold the rear seat cushion and back (5 Door and Wagon)

1. Set the front seatback to the upright position and if necessary, slide the front seat forward.
2. Lift the front portion of the seat cushion up.

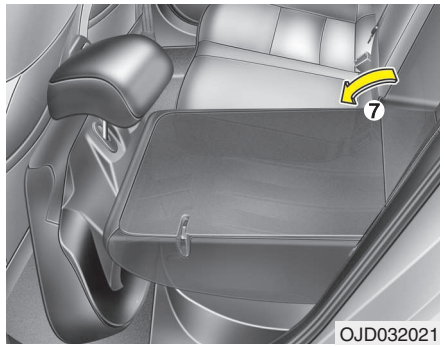


3. Lift the rear portion of the seat cushion. Stand the rear seat cushion vertically.
4. Pull the lock release lever (red visible).

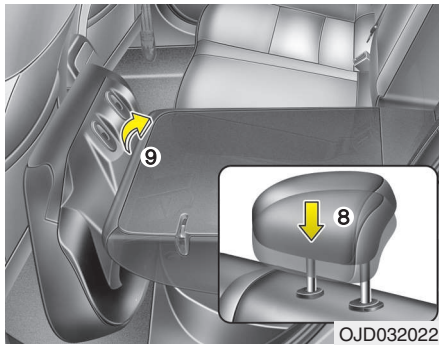
JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 17



5. Remove the headrest from the rear seatback.
6. Stow the headrest by inserting the headrest poles into the holder on the bottom of the seat cushion.

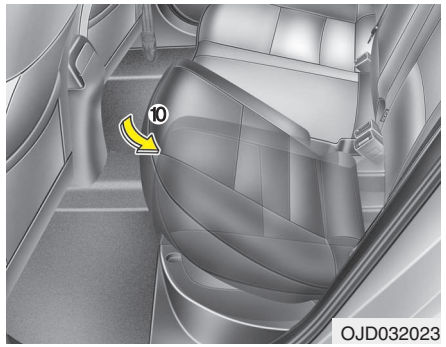


7. Fold the rear seatback forward and down firmly.

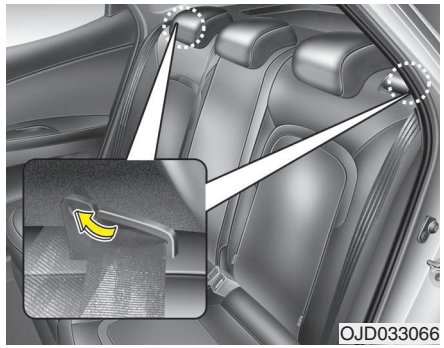


8. To use the rear seat, reposition the headrest on the seatback and adjust it to the desired position.
9. Lift and push the seatback backward firmly until it clicks into place. Make sure the seatback is locked in place (red invisible).

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 18

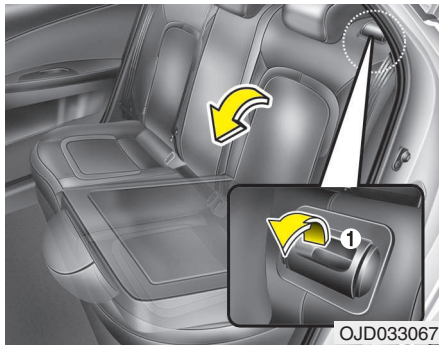


10. Return the seat cushion to the original position by pushing down the rear side of the seat cushion first. Make sure the seat cushion is locked in place.
11. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.



To fold down the rear seatback (for 3 Door):

1. Make sure the rear seat belt webbing is in the guide to prevent the seat belt from being damaged.
2. Set the front seatback to the upright position and if necessary, slide the front seat forward.
3. Lower the rear headrests to the lowest position.



4. Pull the lock release lever (1) and fold the rear seatback forward and down firmly.

   If the seat belt locks after unfolding the rear seatback, pull out the locked seat belt, release it then pull it out again.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 19

To unfold the rear seat

1. To use the rear seat, lift and pull the seatback backward. Pull the seatback firmly until it clicks into place. Make sure the seatback is locked in place. When you return the seatback to its upright position, always be sure it has locked into position by pushing on the top of the seatback.

   If you can not see the red line at the bottom of folding lever, it means the seatback is locked completely.
2. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.
3. When the seatback is completely installed, check the seatback folding lever again.

⚠ WARNING

When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after being folded down:

Be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle. Do not allow the seat belt webbing or buckle to get caught or pinched in the rear seat. Ensure that the seatback is completely locked into its upright position by pushing on the top of the seatback. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden stop, the seat could fold down and allow cargo to enter the passenger compartment, which could result in serious injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION - Rear seat belts

When returning the rear seatbacks to the upright position, remember to return the rear shoulder belts to their proper position.

⚠ WARNING - Cargo

Cargo should always be secured to prevent it from being thrown about the vehicle in a collision and causing injury to the vehicle occupants. Special care should be taken of objects placed in the rear seats, since those may hit the front seat occupants in a frontal collision.

⚠ WARNING - Cargo loading

Make sure the engine is off, the automatic transaxle is in P (Park) or the manual transaxle is in R (Reverse) or 1st, and the parking brake is securely applied whenever loading or unloading cargo. Failure to take these steps may allow the vehicle to move if the shift lever is inadvertently moved to another position.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 20

SEAT BELTS

Seat belt restraint system

⚠ WARNING

- For maximum restraint system protection, the seat belts must always be used whenever the car is moving.
- Seat belts are most effective when seatbacks are in the upright position.
- Children age 12 and younger must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over 12 must be seated in the front seat, he/she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.
- Never wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back. An improperly positioned shoulder belt can cause serious injuries in a crash. The shoulder belt should be positioned midway over your shoulder across your collarbone.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Avoid wearing twisted seat belts. A twisted belt can't do its job as well. In a collision, it could even cut into you. Be sure the belt webbing is straight and not twisted.
- Be careful not to damage the belt webbing or hardware. If the belt webbing or hardware is damaged, replace it.

⚠ WARNING

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed.

A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

(Continued)

(Continued)

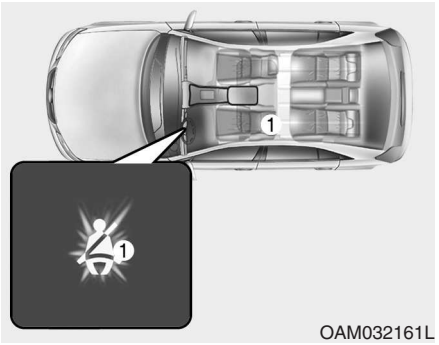
Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious. Belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 21

⚠ WARNING

- **No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.**
- **When you fasten the seat belt, be careful not to latch the seat belt in buckles of other seat. It's very dangerous and you may not be protected by the seat belt properly.**
- **Do not unfasten the seat belt and do not fasten and unfasten the seat belt repeatedly while driving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.**
- **When fastening the seat belt, make sure that the seat belt does not pass over objects that are hard or can break easily.**
- **Make sure there is nothing in the buckle. The seat belt may not be fastened securely.**



OAM032161L

Seat belt warning

Driver's seat belt warning (1)

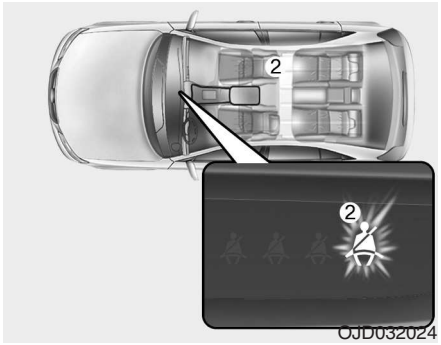
As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

If the driver's seat belt is unfastened after the ignition switch is ON, the seat belt warning light illuminates until the belt is fastened.

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 9km/h, the illuminated warning light will start to blink until you drive under 6km/h. (if equipped)

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 20km/h the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink. (if equipped)

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 22



Front passenger's seat belt warning (2)

As a reminder to the front passenger, the front passenger's seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

If the front passenger's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned ON or if it is disconnected after the ignition switch is turned ON, the corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate until the belt is fastened.

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 9km/h, the illuminated warning light will start to blink until you drive under 6km/h.

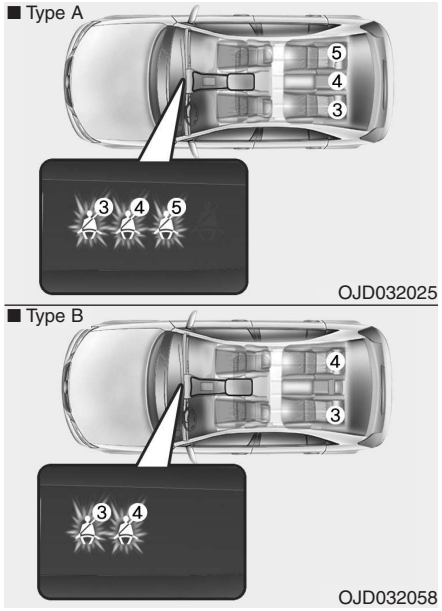
If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 20km/h the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

⚠ WARNING

Riding in an improper position adversely affects the front passenger's seat belt warning system. It is important for the driver to instruct the passenger as to the proper seating instructions as contained in this manual.

✻ NOTICE

- **You can find the front passenger's seat belt warning light on the center fascia panel.**
- **Although the front passenger seat is not occupied, the seat belt warning light will blink or illuminate for 6 seconds.**
- **The front passenger's seat belt warning may operate when luggage is placed on the front passenger seat.**



Rear passenger's seat belt warning (3,4,5)

If the ignition switch is turned ON(engine is not running) when the rear passenger's lap/shoulder belt is not fastened, the corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate until the belt is fastened.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 23

And then, the rear corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 35 seconds, if any of following occurs;

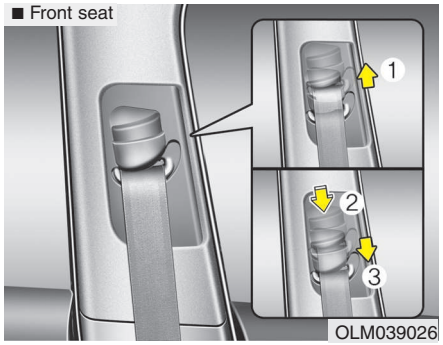
- You start the engine when the rear belt is not fastened.
- You drive over 9km/h when the rear belt is not fastened.
- The rear belt is disconnected when driving under 20km/h.

If the rear seat belt is fastened, the warning light will turn off immediately.

If the rear seat belt is disconnected when you drive over the 20km/h, the corresponding seat belt warning light will blink and warning chime will sound for 35 seconds.

But, if the rear passenger's lap/shoulder belt is/are connected and disconnected twice within 9 seconds after the belt is fastened, the corresponding seat belt warning light will not operate.

■ Front seat



Lap/shoulder belt

Height adjustment (5 Door and Wagon)

You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of 4 positions for maximum comfort and safety.

The height of the adjusting seat belt should not be too close to your neck. You will not be getting the most effective protection. The shoulder portion should be adjusted so that it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder near the door and not your neck.

To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position.

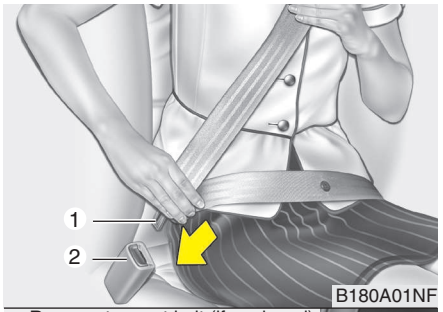
To raise the height adjuster, pull it up (1). To lower it, push it down (3) while pressing the height adjuster button (2).

Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the height adjuster to make sure that it has locked into position.

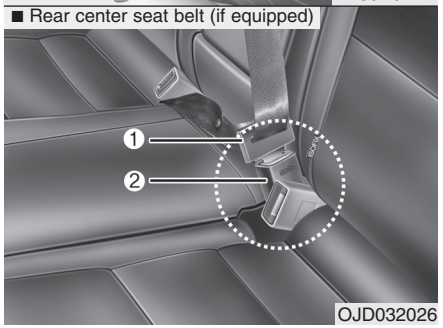
⚠ WARNING

- **Verify the shoulder belt anchor is locked into position at the appropriate height. Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face. Improperly positioned seat belts can cause serious injuries in an accident.**
- **Failure to replace seat belts after an accident could leave you with damaged seat belts that will not provide protection in the event of another collision leading to personal injury or death. Replace your seat belts after being in an accident as soon as possible.**

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 24



■ Rear center seat belt (if equipped)



To fasten your seat belt:

To fasten your seat belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle.

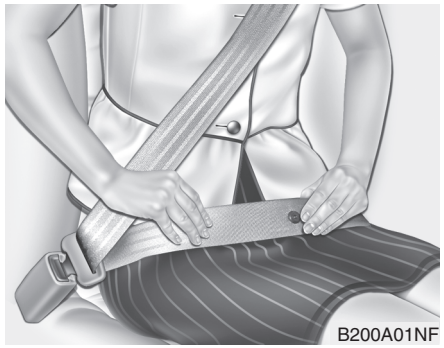
The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and let you move around. If there is a sudden stop or impact, however, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

⚠ CAUTION

When using the rear center seat belt, the buckle with the "CENTER" mark must be used.

✻ NOTICE

If you are not able to pull out the seat belt from the retractor, firmly pull the belt out and release it. Then you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.

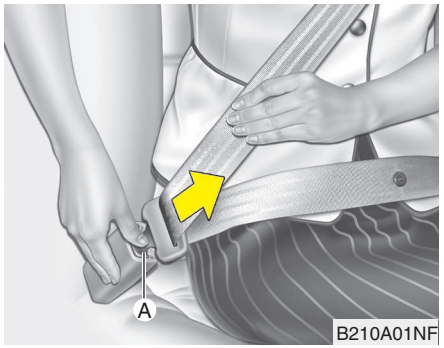


⚠ WARNING

You should place the lap belt portion as low as possible and snugly across your hips, not on your waist. If the lap belt is located too high on your waist, it may increase the chance of injury in the event of a collision. Both arms should not be under or over the belt. Rather, one should be over and the other under, as shown in the illustration.

Never wear the seat belt under the arm near the door.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 25



To release the seat belt:

The seat belt is released by pressing the release button (A) in the locking buckle. When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor.

If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.



Pre-tensioner seat belt

Your vehicle is equipped with driver's and front passenger's pre-tensioner seat belts. The purpose of the pre-tensioner is to make sure that the seat belts fit tightly against the occupant's body in certain frontal collisions. The pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in crashes where the frontal collision is severe enough.

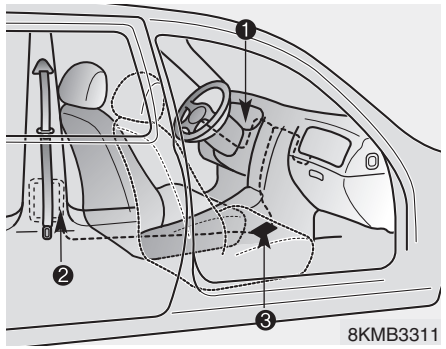
When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position. In certain frontal collisions, the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

If the system senses excessive seat belt tension on the driver or passenger's seat belt when the pre-tensioner activates, the load limiter inside the pre-tensioner will release some of the pressure on the affected seat belt.

⚠ WARNING

For your safety, be sure that the belt webbing is not loose or twisted and always sit properly on your seat.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 26



The seat belt pre-tensioner system consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the illustration:

1. SRS air bag warning light
2. Retractor pre-tensioner assembly
3. SRS control module

⚠ WARNING

To obtain maximum benefit from a pre-tensioner seat belt:

1. **The seat belt must be worn correctly and adjusted to the proper position. Please read and follow all of the important information and precautions about your vehicle's occupant safety features – including seat belts and air bags – that are provided in this manual.**
2. **Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts properly.**

✻ NOTICE

- **When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.**
- **Although it is harmless, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be breathed for prolonged periods. Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated.**
- **Because the sensor that activates the SRS air bag is connected with the pre-tensioner seat belt, the SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds after the ignition switch has been turned to the ON position, and then it should turn off.**

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 27

⚠ CAUTION

If the pre-tensioner seat belt is not working properly, the SRS air bag warning light will illuminate even if there is no malfunction of the SRS air bag. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the ignition key is turned to ON, or if it remains illuminated after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds, or if it illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

- **Pre-tensioners are designed to operate only one time. After activation, pre-tensioner seat belts must be replaced. All seat belts, of any type, should always be replaced after they have been worn during a collision.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The pre-tensioner seat belt assembly mechanisms become hot during activation. Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated.**
- **Do not attempt to inspect or replace the pre-tensioner seat belts yourself. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.**
- **Do not attempt to service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt system in any manner.**
- **Improper handling of the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies, and failure to heed the warnings not to strike, modify, inspect, replace, service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies may lead to improper operation or inadvertent activation and serious injury.**
- **Always wear the seat belts when driving or riding in a motor vehicle.**
- **If the vehicle or pre-tensioner seat belt must be discarded, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.**

Seat belt precautions

⚠ WARNING

All occupants of the vehicle must wear their seat belts at all times. Seat belts and child restraints reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries for all occupants in the event of a collision or sudden stop. Without a seat belt, occupants could be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle. Properly worn seat belts greatly reduce these hazards.

Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant seat contained in this manual.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 28

Infant or small child

You should be aware of the specific requirements in your country. Child and/or infant seats must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat. For more information about the use of these restraints, refer to “Child restraint system” in this section.

⚠ WARNING

Every person in your vehicle needs to be properly restrained at all times, including infants and children. Never hold a child in your arms or lap when riding in a vehicle. The violent forces created during a crash will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the interior. Always use a child restraint appropriate for your child's height and weight.

✻ NOTICE

Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained in the rear seat by a child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Before buying any child restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets Safety Standards of your country. The restraint must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the child restraint for this information. Refer to “Child restraint system” in this section.

Larger children

Children who are too large for child restraint systems should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. The lap portion should be fastened and snugged on the hips and as low as possible. Check if the belt fits periodically. A child's squirming could put the belt out of position. Children are afforded the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system in the rear seat. If a larger child (over age 12) must be seated in the front seat, the child should be securely restrained by the available lap/shoulder belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position. Children age 12 and under should be restrained securely in the rear seat. NEVER place a child age 12 and under in the front seat. NEVER place a rear facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 29

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the center of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck they need to be returned to a child restraint system.

⚠ WARNING - Shoulder belts on small children

- **Never allow a shoulder belt to be in contact with a child's neck or face while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **If seat belts are not properly worn and adjusted on children, there is a risk of death or serious injury.**

Pregnant women

The use of a seat belt is recommended for pregnant women to lessen the chance of injury in an accident. When a seat belt is used, the lap belt portion should be placed as low and snugly as possible on the hips, not across the abdomen. For specific recommendations, consult a physician.

⚠ WARNING - Pregnant women

Pregnant women must never place the lap portion of the safety belt over the area of the abdomen where the fetus is located or above the abdomen where the belt could crush the fetus during an impact.

Injured person

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. When this is necessary, you should consult a physician for recommendations.

One person per belt

Two people (including children) should never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries in case of an accident.

Do not lie down

To reduce the chance of injuries in the event of an accident and to achieve maximum effectiveness of the restraint system, all passengers should be sitting up and the front seats should be in an upright position when the car is moving. A seat belt cannot provide proper protection if the person is lying down in the rear seat or if the front seat is in a reclined position.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 30

⚠ WARNING

Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. The protection of your restraint system (seat belts and air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seat. Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance that an occupant's hips will slide under the lap belt causing serious internal injuries or the occupant's neck could strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.

Care of seat belts

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to assure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

⚠ WARNING

When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after the rear seatback was folded down, be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle. Be sure that the webbing or buckle does not get caught or pinched in the rear seat. A seat belt with damaged webbing or buckle will not be as strong and could possibly fail during a collision or sudden stop, resulting in serious injury. If the webbing or buckles are damaged, get them replaced immediately.

Periodic inspection

It is recommended that all seat belts be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

Keep belts clean and dry

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

When to replace seat belts

Entire in-use seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. We recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 31

CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Children riding in the car should sit in the rear seat and must always be properly restrained to minimize the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden maneuver. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. Larger children not in a child restraint should use one of the seat belts provided.

You should be aware of the specific requirements in your country. Child and/or infant safety seats must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat. You must use a commercially available child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt, or by a tether anchor and/or ISOFIX anchors.

Children could be injured or killed in a crash if their restraints are not properly secured. For small children and babies, a child seat or infant seat must be used. Before buying a particular child restraint system, make sure it fits your car seat and seat belts, and fits your child. Follow all the instructions provided by the manufacturer when installing the child restraint system.

⚠ WARNING

- **A child restraint system must be placed in the rear seat. Never install a child or infant seat on the front passenger's seat. Should an accident occur and cause the passenger side air bag to deploy, it could severely injure or kill an infant or child seated in an infant or child seat. Thus only use a child restraint in the rear seat of your vehicle.**
- **A seat belt or child restraint system can become very hot if it is left in a closed vehicle on a sunny day, even if the outside temperature does not feel hot. Be sure to check the seat cover and buckles before placing a child there.**
- **When the child restraint system is not in use, store it in the luggage area or fasten it with a seat belt so that it will not be thrown forward in case of a sudden stop or an accident.**
- **Children may be seriously injured or killed by an inflating air bag. All children, even those too large for child restraints, must ride in the rear seat.**

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 32

⚠ WARNING

To reduce a risk of serious or fatal injuries:

- **Children of all ages are safer when restrained in the rear seat. A child riding in the front passenger seat can be forcefully struck by an inflating air bag resulting in serious or fatal injuries.**
- **Always follow the instructions for installation and use of the child restraint maker.**
- **Always make sure the child seat is secured properly in the car and your child is securely restrained in the child seat.**
- **Never hold a child in your arms or lap when riding in a vehicle. The violent forces created during a crash will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the car's interior.**
- **Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt could press deep into the child causing serious internal injuries.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Never leave children unattended in a vehicle – not even for a short time. The car can heat up very quickly, resulting in serious injuries to children inside. Even very young children may inadvertently cause the vehicle to move, entangle themselves in the windows, or lock themselves or others inside the vehicle.**
- **Never allow two children, or any two persons, to use the same seat belt.**
- **Children often squirm and reposition themselves improperly. Never let a child ride with the shoulder belt under their arm or behind their back. Always properly position and secure children in the rear seat.**
- **Never allow a child to stand-up or kneel on the seat or floorboard of a moving vehicle. During a collision or sudden stop, the child can be violently thrown against the vehicles interior, resulting in serious injury.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Never use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback, it may not provide adequate security in an accident.**
- **Seat belts can become very hot, especially when the car is parked in direct sunlight. Always check seat belt buckles before fastening them over a child.**
- **After an accident, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.**
- **If there is not enough space to place the child restraint system because of the driver's seat, install the child restraint system in the rear right seat.**

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 33

Rearward-facing child restraint system



Forward-facing child restraint system



Using a child restraint system

For small children and babies, the use of a child seat or infant seat is required. This child seat or infant seat should be of appropriate size for the child and should be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. For safety reasons, we recommend that the child restraint system be used in the rear seats.

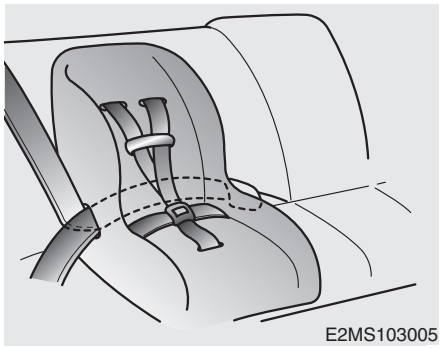
⚠ WARNING

Never place a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger seat, because of the danger that an inflating passenger-side air bag could impact the rear-facing child restraint and kill the child.

⚠ WARNING - Child seat installation

- **A child can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if the child restraint is not properly anchored to the vehicle and the child is not properly restrained in the child restraint. Before installing the child restraint system, read the instructions supplied by the child restraint system manufacturer.**
- **If the seat belt does not operate as described in this section, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.**
- **Failure to observe this manual's instructions regarding child restraint system and the instructions provided with the child restraint system could increase the chance and/or severity of injury in an accident.**
- **If the vehicle headrest prevents proper installation of a child seat (as described in the child seat system manual), the headrest of the respective seating position shall be readjusted or entirely removed.**

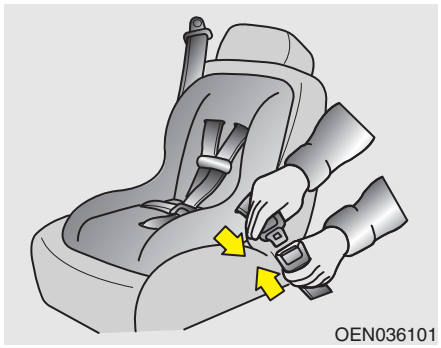
JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 34


E2MS103005

Installing a child restraint system by lap/shoulder belt

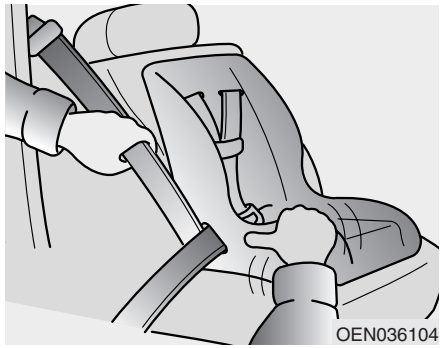
To install a child restraint system on the outboard or center rear seats, do the following:

1. Place the child restraint system in the seat and route the lap/shoulder belt around or through the restraint, following the restraint manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.


OEN036101

2. Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct "click" sound.

Position the release button so that it is easy to access in case of an emergency.


OEN036104

3. Buckle the seat belt and allow the seat belt to take up any slack. After installation of the child restraint system, try to move it in all directions to be sure the child restraint system is securely installed.

If you need to tighten the belt, pull more webbing toward the retractor. When you unbuckle the seat belt and allow it to retract, the retractor will automatically revert back to its normal seated passenger emergency locking usage condition.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 35

Child Seat Restraint Suitability for Seat Position using the Seat Belt - For Europe

Use child safety seats that have been officially approved and are appropriate for your children. When using the child safety seats, refer to the following table.

Age Group	Seating Position		
	Front passenger	Rear outboard	Rear center (if equipped)
0 : Up to 10 kg (0 - 9 months)	U*	U	U
0+ : Up to 13 kg (0 - 2 years)	U*	U	U
I : 9 kg to 18 kg (9 months - 4 years)	U*	U	U
II & III : 15 kg to 36 kg (4 - 12 years)	U*	U	U

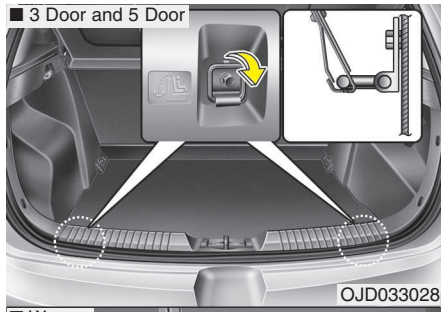
U : Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group

U* : Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use just in the condition of non-height adjustable seat or the highest position of height adjustable seat.

⚠ WARNING

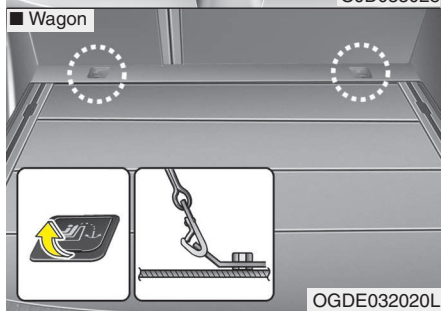
We recommend that a child restraint seat be installed in the rear seat, even if the front passenger's air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position. To ensure the safety of your child, the front passenger's air bag must be deactivated when it should be necessary to install a child restraint seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.

■ 3 Door and 5 Door



OJD033028

■ Wagon



OGDE032020L

Securing a child restraint seat with "Tether Anchor" system (if equipped)

Child restraint hook holders are located on the transverse trim behind the rear seats (3 Door and 5 Door) or the floor behind the rear seats (Wagon).



This symbol indicates the position of the tether anchor.



OJD032029

1. Route the child restraint seat strap over the seatback.
   For vehicles with adjustable headrest, route the tether strap under the headrest and between the headrest posts, otherwise route the tether strap over the top of the seatback.
2. Connect the tether strap hook to the appropriate child restraint hook holder and tighten to secure the seat.

⚠ WARNING

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if the child restraint is not properly anchored to the car and the child is not properly restrained in the child restraint. Always follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.

⚠ WARNING - Tether strap

Never mount more than one child restraint to a single tether or to a single lower anchorage point. The increased load caused by multiple seats may cause the tethers or anchorage points to break, causing serious injury or death.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 37

⚠ WARNING

Do not install a child restraint seat at the center of the rear seat using the tether anchors. The tether anchors are only provided for the left and right outboard rear seating positions.

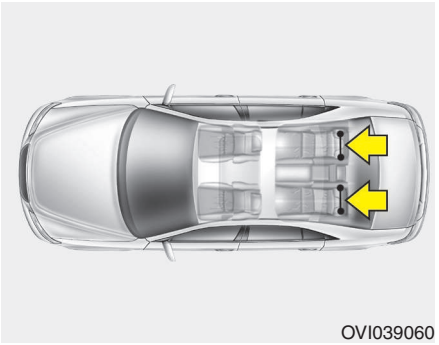
In a crash, the child restraint seat tether anchor attachments may not be strong enough to secure the child restraint seat properly in the center of the rear seat and may break, causing serious injury or death.

⚠ WARNING - Child restraint check

Check that the child restraint system is secure by pushing and pulling it in different directions. Incorrectly fitted child restraints may swing, twist, tip or separate causing death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING - Child restraint anchorage

- **Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts or harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.**
- **The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.**



OVI039060

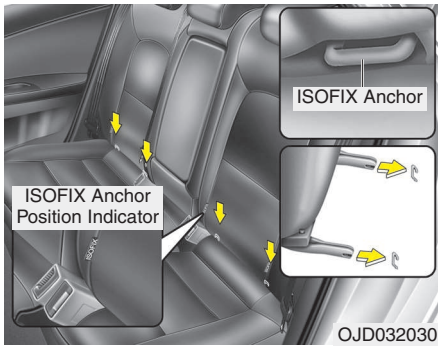
Securing a child restraint system with "ISOFIX" system and "Tether Anchorage" system (if equipped)

ISOFIX is a standardised method of fitting child seats that eliminates the need to use the standard adult seat belt to secure the seat in the vehicle. This enables a much more secure and positive location with the added benefit of easier and quicker installation.

An ISOFIX-seat may only be installed if it has vehicle-specific or universal approval in accordance with the requirements of ECE-R 44.

❈ ISOFIX: International Standards Origanisation FIX

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 38



There are ISOFIX symbols located on the lower portion of each side of the rear seatbacks. These symbols indicate the position of the lower anchors for child restraints so equipped.

Both rear outboard seats are equipped with a pair of ISOFIX anchorages as well as a corresponding top tether anchorage on the floor behind the rear seats (wagon) or the shelf behind the rear seats (sedan). The ISOFIX anchorages are located between seat cushion and backrest, marked with the ISOFIX icon.

For installation, CRS ISOFIX connecters have to engage with the vehicles ISOFIX anchorages (listen for a CLICK, check potential visual indicators on the CRS and cross-check by pulling).

CRS with universal approval to ECE-R 44 need to be fixed additionally with a top tether strap connected to the corresponding top tether anchorage point on the floor behind the rear seats (wagon) or the shelf behind the rear seats (sedan).

The installing and the use of a child-seat has to be done according to the installing-manual, which is added to the ISOFIX-seat.

⚠ WARNING

- **When using the vehicle's "ISOFIX" system to install a child restraint system in the rear seat, all unused vehicle rear seat belt metal latch plates or tabs must be latched securely in their seat belt buckles and the seat belt webbing must be retracted behind the child restraint to prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts. Unlatched metal latch plates or tabs may allow the child to reach the unretracted seat belts which may result in strangulation and a serious injury or death to the child in the child restraint.**
- **Do not place anything around the ISOFIX anchors. Also make sure that the seat belt is not caught in the ISOFIX anchors.**

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 39

To secure the child restraint seat

1. To engage the child restraint seat to the ISOFIX anchor, insert the child restraint seat latch into the ISOFIX anchor. Listen for the audible “click” sound.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not allow the rear seat belt webbing to get scratched or pinched by the ISOFIX-seat latch and ISOFIX anchor during installation.

2. Connect the tether strap hook to the child restraint hook holder and tighten to secure the seat. (Refer to the previous page.)

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not install a child restraint seat at the center of the rear seat using the vehicle's ISOFIX anchors. The ISOFIX anchors are only provided for the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Do not misuse the ISOFIX anchors by attempting to attach a child restraint seat in the middle of the rear seat to the ISOFIX anchors.**

  In a crash, the child restraint seat ISOFIX attachments may not be strong enough to secure the child restraint seat properly in the center of the rear seat and may break, causing serious injury or death.
- **Do not mount more than one child restraint to a child restraint lower anchorage point. The improper increased load may cause the anchorage points or tether anchor to break, causing serious injury or death.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Attach the ISOFIX or ISOFIX-compatible child restraint seat only to the appropriate locations shown in the illustration.**
- **Always follow the installation and use instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint.**

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 40

Child seat restraint suitability for vehicle ISOFIX positions - For Europe

Mass Group	Size Class	Fixture	Vehicle ISOFIX positions			
			Front Passenger	Rear Outboard (Driver side)	Rear Outboard (Passenger side)	Rear Center
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	-	X	X	-
	G	ISO/L2	-	X	X	-
0 : UP to 10kg	E	ISO/R1	-	IL	IL	-
0+ : UP to 13kg	E	ISO/R1	-	IL	IL	-
	D	ISO/R2	-	IL	IL	-
	C	ISO/R3	-	IL*	IL*	-
I : 9 to 18kg	D	ISO/R2	-	IL	IL	-
	C	ISO/R3	-	IL*	IL*	-
	B	ISO/F2	-	IUF	IUF	-
	B1	ISO/F2X	-	IUF	IUF	-
	A	ISO/F3	-	IUF	IUF	-

IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraints systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.

IL = Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraints systems (CRS) given in the attached list. These ISOFIX CRS are those of the "specific vehicle", "restricted" or "semi-universal" categories.

X = ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint system in this mass group and/or this size class.

IL* = ISO/R3 is able to be set up only at the foremost position of the front seats.
But ISO/R3 is not able to be set up for 3 door vehicle.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:40 PM Page 41

Recommended child restraint systems – For Europe

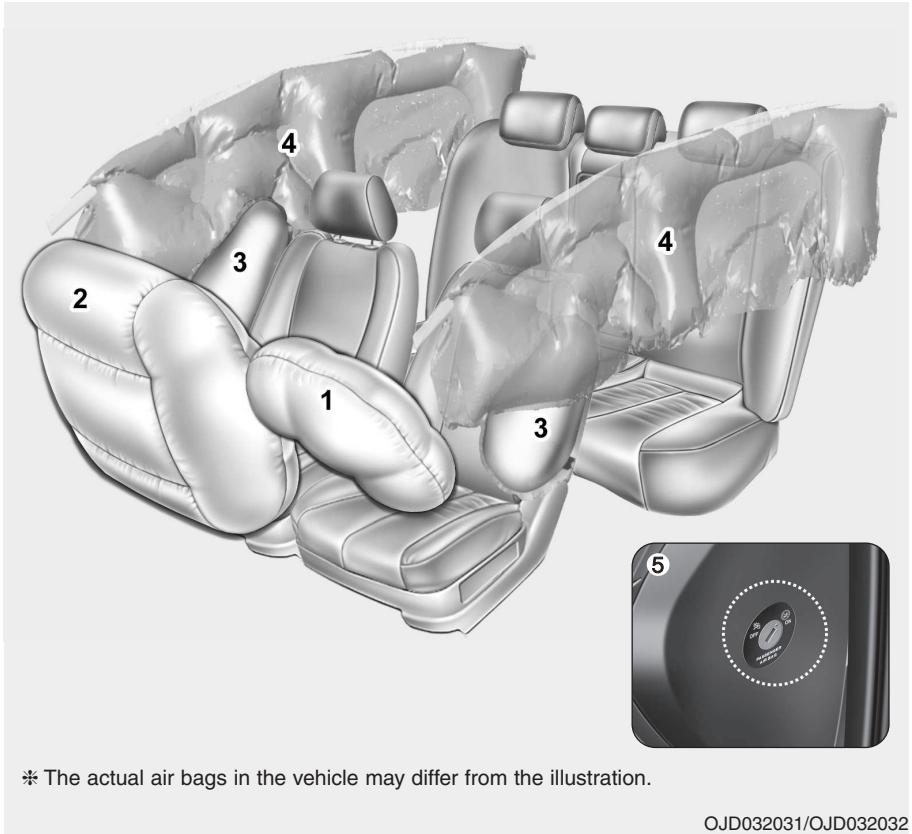
Mass Group	Name	Manufacturer	Type of Fixation	ECE-R44 Approval No.
Group 0+ (0-13kg)	Baby Safe Plus II	Britax Römer	Rearward facing with ISOFIX adapter	E1 04301146
Group 1 (9-18kg)	Duo Plus	Britax Römer	Forward facing with vehicle ISOFIX lower anchorage + Top Tether	E1 04301133
			Forward facing with vehicle 3-point seat belt	

CRS Manufacturer information

Britax Römer http://www.britax.com

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 42

AIR BAG - SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



❊ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJD032031/OJD032032

(1) Driver's front air bag
(2) Passenger's front air bag
(3) Side impact air bag*
(4) Curtain air bag*
(5) Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch

* : if equipped

⚠ WARNING

- **Even in vehicles with air bags, you and your passengers must always wear the safety belts provided in order to minimize the risk and severity of injury in the event of a collision or rollover.**
- **SRS and pretensioners contain explosive chemicals.**
  If scraping a vehicle without removing SRS and pretensioners from a vehicle, it may cause fire. Before scraping a vehicle, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.
- **Keep the SRS parts and wirings away from water or any liquid. If the SRS components are inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it may cause fire or severe injury.**

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 43

How does the air bag system operate

- Air bags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the ignition switch is turned to the ON or START position.
- Air bags inflate instantly in the event of serious frontal or side collision (if equipped with side impact air bag or curtain air bag) in order to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.
- There is no single speed at which the air bags will inflate.

  Generally, air bags are designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/ inflation signal.
- Air bag deployment depends on a number of factors including vehicle speed, angles of impact and the density and stiffness of the vehicles or objects which your vehicle hits in the collision. The determining, factors are not limited to those mentioned above.
- The front air bags will completely inflate and deflate in an instant.

  It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bags inflate during an accident. It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.
- In order to help provide protection in a severe collision, the air bags must inflate rapidly. The speed of air bag inflation is a consequence of extremely short time in which a collision occurs and the need to get the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries in a severe collision and is thus a necessary part of air bag design.

  However, air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bags to expand with a great deal of force.
- **There are even circumstances under which contact with the steering wheel air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the steering wheel.**

⚠ WARNING

- **To avoid severe personal injury or death caused by deploying air bags in a collision, the driver should sit as far back from the steering wheel air bag as possible (at least 250 mm (10 inches) away). The front passenger should always move their seat as far back as possible and sit back in their seat.**
- **Air bag inflates instantly in an event of a collision, passengers may be injured by the air bag expansion force if they are not in a proper position.**
- **Air bag inflation may cause injuries including facial or bodily abrasions, injuries from broken glasses or burns.**

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 44

Noise and smoke

When the air bags inflate, they make a loud noise and they leave smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing due to the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. **Open your doors and/or windows as soon as possible after impact in order to reduce discomfort and prevent prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder.**

Though smoke and powder are non-toxic, it may cause irritation to the skin (eyes, nose and throat, etc.). If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and consult the doctor if the symptom persists.

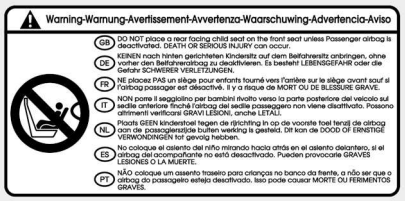
⚠ WARNING

When the air bags deploy, the air bag related parts in the steering wheel and/or instrument panel and/or in both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors are very hot. To prevent injury, do not touch the air bag storage areas internal components immediately after an air bag has inflated.



1JBH3051

■ Type A



OJD032059

■ Type B



OYDESA2042

Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger's seat

Never place a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger's seat. If the air bag deploys, it would impact the rear-facing child restraint, causing serious or fatal injury.

In addition, do not place front-facing child restraints in the front passenger's seat either. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it would cause serious or fatal injuries to the child.

If your vehicle is equipped with the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch, you can activate or deactivate the front passenger's air bag when necessary.

For more details, please refer to 3-52 page.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 45

⚠ WARNING

- **NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**
- **Never put a child restraint in the front passenger's seat. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it would cause serious or fatal injuries.**
- **When children are seated in the rear outboard seats of vehicle equipped with curtain air bags, be sure to install the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and securely lock the child restraint system in position.**

  Inflation of curtain air bags could cause serious injury or death to an infant or child.



W7-147

Air bag warning and indicator

Air bag warning light

The purpose of the air bag warning light in your instrument panel is to alert you of a potential problem with your air bag - Supplemental Restraint System (SRS).

When the ignition switch is turned ON, the warning light should illuminate for approximately 6 seconds, then go off.

Have the system checked if:

- The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.
- The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.
- The light comes on while the vehicle is in motion.
- The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.

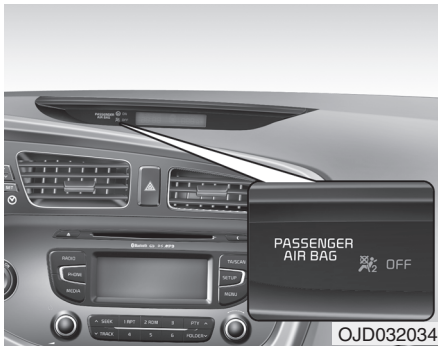
JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 46



Passenger's front air bag ON indicator

The passenger's front air bag ON indicator illuminates for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

The passenger's front air bag ON indicator also comes on when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position and goes off after approximately 60 seconds.



Passenger's front air bag OFF indicator

The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator illuminates for about 4 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

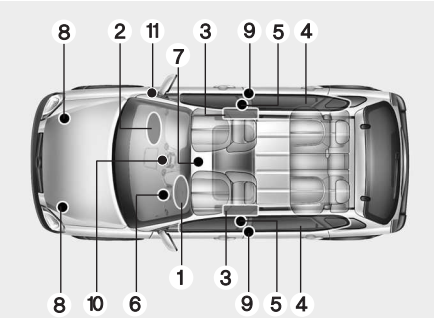
The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator also comes on when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position and goes off when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position.

⚠ CAUTION

If the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch malfunctions, the passenger's front air bag OFF indicator will not illuminate (The passenger's front air bag ON indicator comes on and goes off after approximately 60 seconds) and the passenger's front air bag will inflate in a frontal impact even if the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position.

If this occurs, we recommend that the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and the SRS air bag system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 47



OJD032053

SRS components and functions

The SRS consists of the following components:

1. Driver's front air bag module
2. Passenger's front air bag module
3. Side air bag modules*
4. Curtain air bag modules*
5. Retractor pre-tensioner assemblies
6. Air bag warning light
7. SRS control module (SRSCM)
8. Front impact sensors
9. Side impact sensors*
10. Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF indicator
11. Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch

* : if equipped

The SRSCM continually monitors all elements while the ignition switch is ON to determine if a frontal, near-frontal impact or side impact is severe enough to require air bag deployment or pre-tensioner seat belt deployment.

The SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, after which the air bag warning light should go out.

⚠ WARNING

If any of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the SRS. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

- **The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.**
- **The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.**
- **The light comes on while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.**

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 48

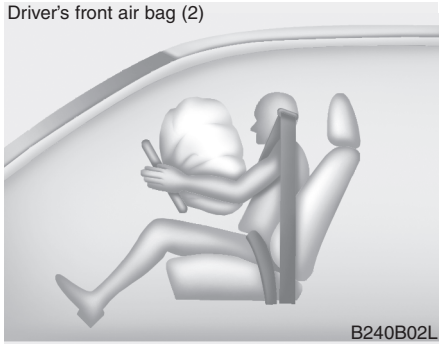
Driver's front air bag (1)



B240B01L

The air bag modules are located both in the center of the steering wheel and in the front passenger's panel above the glove box. When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the front air bags.

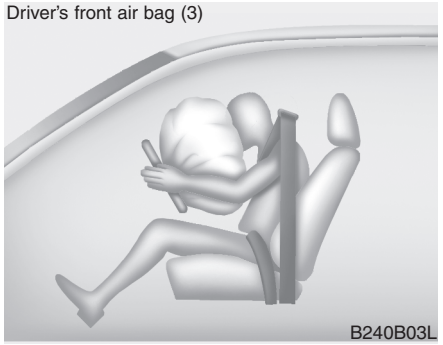
Driver's front air bag (2)



B240B02L

Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the air bags. Further opening of the covers then allows full inflation of the air bags.

Driver's front air bag (3)



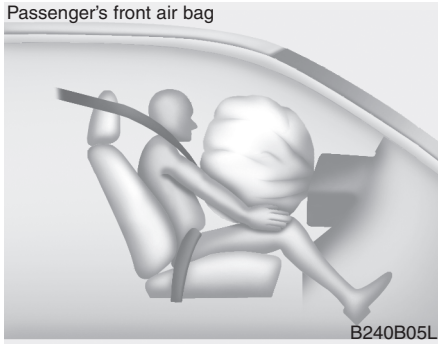
B240B03L

A fully inflated air bag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver's or the passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.

After complete inflation, the air bag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 49

Passenger's front air bag



B240B05L

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not install or place any accessories (drink holder, cassette holder, sticker, etc.) on the front passenger's panel above the glove box in a vehicle with a passenger's air bag. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.**
- **When installing a container of liquid air freshener inside the vehicle, do not place it near the instrument cluster nor on the instrument panel surface.**

  It may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.

⚠ WARNING

- **If an air bag deploys, there may be a loud noise followed by a fine dust released in the vehicle. These conditions are normal and are not hazardous - the air bags are packed in this fine powder. The dust generated during air bag deployment may cause skin or eye irritation as well as aggravate asthma for some persons. Always wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly with lukewarm water and a mild soap after an accident in which the air bags were deployed.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The SRS can function only when the ignition key is in the ON position. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on after illuminating for about 6 seconds when the ignition key is turned to the ON position, or after the engine is started, comes on while driving, the SRS is not working properly. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.**
- **Before you replace a fuse or disconnect a battery terminal, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and remove the ignition key. Never remove or replace the air bag related fuse(s) when the ignition switch is in the ON position. Failure to heed this warning will cause the SRS air bag warning light to illuminate.**

■ Driver's front air bag



OJD032035

Driver's and passenger's front air bag

Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint (Air Bag) System and lap/shoulder belts at both the driver and passenger seating positions.

The indications of the system's presence are the letters "AIR BAG" embossed on the air bag pad cover in the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

The SRS consists of air bags installed under the pad covers in the center of the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel above the glove box.

■ Passenger's front air bag



OJD032036

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity.

⚠ WARNING

Always use seat belts and child restraints – every trip, every time, everyone! Air bags inflate with considerable force and in the blink of an eye. Seat belts help keep occupants in proper position to obtain maximum benefit from the air bag. Even with air bags, improperly and unbelted occupants can be severely injured when the air bag inflates. Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant safety contained in this manual.

To reduce the chance of serious or fatal injuries and receive the maximum safety benefit from your restraint system:

- **Never place a child in any child or booster seat in the front seat.**
- **ABC – Always Buckle Children in the back seat. It is the safest place for children of any age to ride.**
- **Front and side impact air bags can injure occupants improperly positioned in the front seats.**

(Continued)

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 51

(Continued)

- **Move your seat as far back as practical from the front air bags, while still maintaining control of the vehicle.**
- **You and your passengers should never sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bags. Improperly positioned drivers and passengers can be severely injured by inflating air bags.**
- **Never lean against the door or center console – always sit in an upright position.**
- **No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental deployment of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**
- **If the SRS air bag warning light remains illuminated while the vehicle is being driven, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.**
- **Air bags can only be used once – we recommend that the system be replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.**
- **The SRS is designed to deploy the front air bags only when an impact is sufficiently severe and when the impact angle is less than 30° from the forward longitudinal axis of the vehicle. Additionally, the air bags will only deploy once. Seat belts must be worn at all times.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Front air bags are not intended to deploy in side-impact, rear-impact or rollover crashes. In addition, front air bags will not deploy in frontal crashes below the deployment threshold.**
- **A child restraint system must never be placed in the front seat. The infant or child could be severely injured or killed by an air bag deployment in case of an accident.**
- **Children age 12 and under must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over 12 must be seated in the front seat, he or she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.**

(Continued)

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 52

(Continued)

- **For maximum safety protection in all types of crashes, all occupants including the driver should always wear their seat belts whether or not an air bag is also provided at their seating position to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash. Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bag while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash. All occupants should sit upright with the seat back in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the ignition key is removed.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The SRS air bag system must deploy very rapidly to provide protection in a crash. If an occupant is out of position because of not wearing a seat belt, the air bag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.**



Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch (if equipped)

The passenger's front air bag can be deactivated by the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch if a child restraint is installed on the front passenger's seat or if the front passenger's seat is unoccupied by a person.

To ensure the safety of your child, the passenger's front air bag must be deactivated when it should be necessary to install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 53





To deactivate or reactivate the passenger's front air bag:

To deactivate the passenger's front air bag, insert the mechanical key into the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the OFF position.

The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator ( ) will illuminate and stay on until the passenger's front air bag is reactivated.

To reactivate the passenger's front air bag, insert the mechanical key into the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the ON position. The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator will go out and the passenger's front air bag ON indicator ( ) will illuminate for approximately 60 seconds.

⚠ WARNING

On some models, the front air bag ON/OFF switch could turn by using a similar small rigid device. Always check the status of the front air bag ON/OFF switch and passenger's front air bag ON/OFF indicator.

✻ NOTICE

- **When the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position, the passenger's front air bag is activated and child or infant seat should not be installed on the front passenger seat.**
- **When the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position, the passenger's front air bag is deactivated.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***If the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is not working properly, the air bag warning light ( )on the instrument panel will illuminate.***

  And, the passenger's front air bag OFF indicator ( ) will not illuminate (The passenger's front air bag ON indicator comes on and goes off after approximately 60 seconds), the SRS Control Module reactivates the passenger's front air bag and the passenger's front air bag will inflate in frontal impact crashes even if the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position.

(Continued)

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 54

(Continued)

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

- *If the SRS air bag warning light blinks or does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, or if it illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.*

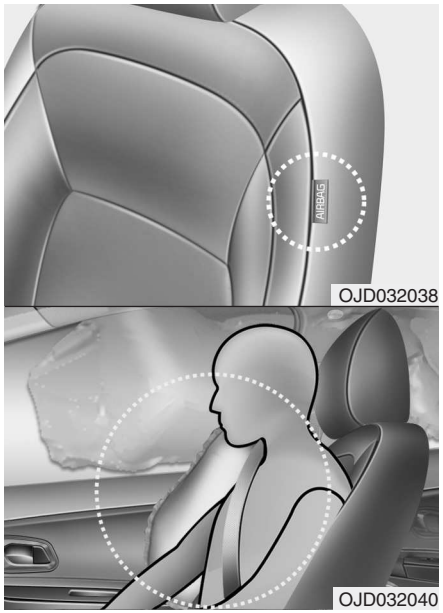
⚠ WARNING

- **The driver is responsible for the proper position of the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch.**
- **Deactivate the passenger's front air bag only when the ignition switch is switched off, or the malfunction may occur in the SRS Control Module.**
  And there may be a danger that the driver's and/or front passenger's and/or side and curtain air bag may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly during a collision.
- **Never install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger's seat unless the passenger's front air bag has been deactivated. The infant or child could be severely injured or killed by an air bag deployment in case of an accident.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Even though your vehicle is equipped with the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch, do not install a child restraint system in the front passenger's seat. A child restraint system must never be placed in the front seat. Children who are too large for child restraint systems should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. Children are afforded the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system in the rear seat.**
- **As soon as the child seat is no longer needed on the front passenger's seat, reactivate the front passenger's air bag.**



❈ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Side impact air bag (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a side impact air bag in each front seat. The purpose of the air bag is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt alone. The side impact air bags are designed to deploy only during certain side-impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact. The side air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact situations.

⚠ WARNING

Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.

⚠ WARNING

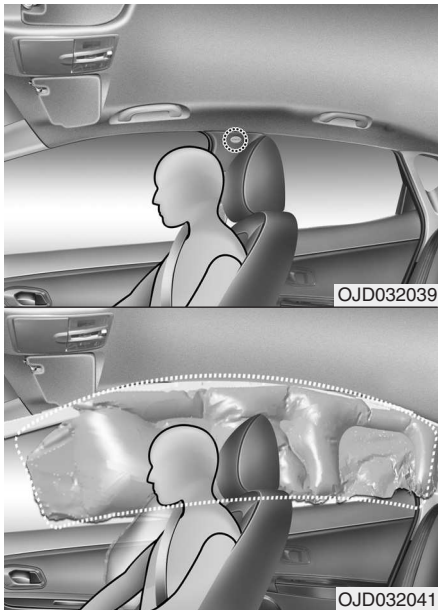
- **The side impact air bag is supplemental to the driver's and the passenger's seat belt systems and is not a substitute for them. Therefore your seat belts must be worn at all times while the vehicle is in motion. The air bags deploy only in certain side impact conditions severe enough to cause significant injury to the vehicle occupants.**
- **For best protection from the side impact air bag system and to avoid being injured by the deploying side impact air bag, both front seat occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belt properly fastened. The driver's hands should be placed on the steering wheel at the 9:00 and 3:00 positions. The passenger's arms and hands should be placed on their laps.**
- **Do not use any accessory seat covers.**

(Continued)

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 56

(Continued)

- **Use of seat covers could reduce or prevent the effectiveness of the system.**
- **Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side impact air bag.**
- **Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself.**
- **Do not place any objects (an umbrella, bag, etc.) between the front door and the front seat. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the supplemental side impact air bag inflates.**
- **To prevent unexpected deployment of the side impact air bag that may result in personal injury, avoid impact to the side impact sensor when the ignition key is on.**
- **If the seat or seat cover is damaged, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.**



❈ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Curtain air bag (if equipped)

Curtain air bags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors. They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.

The curtain air bags are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact. The curtain air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact situations, collisions from the front or rear of the vehicle or in most rollover situations.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 57

⚠ WARNING

- **In order for side impact and curtain air bags to provide the best protection, both front seat occupants and both outboard rear occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belts properly fastened. Importantly, children should sit in a proper child restraint system in the rear seat.**
- **When children are seated in the rear outboard seats, they must be seated in the proper child restraint system.**

  Make sure to put the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and secure the child restraint system in a locked position.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.**
- **Never try to open or repair any components of the side curtain air bag system. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.**

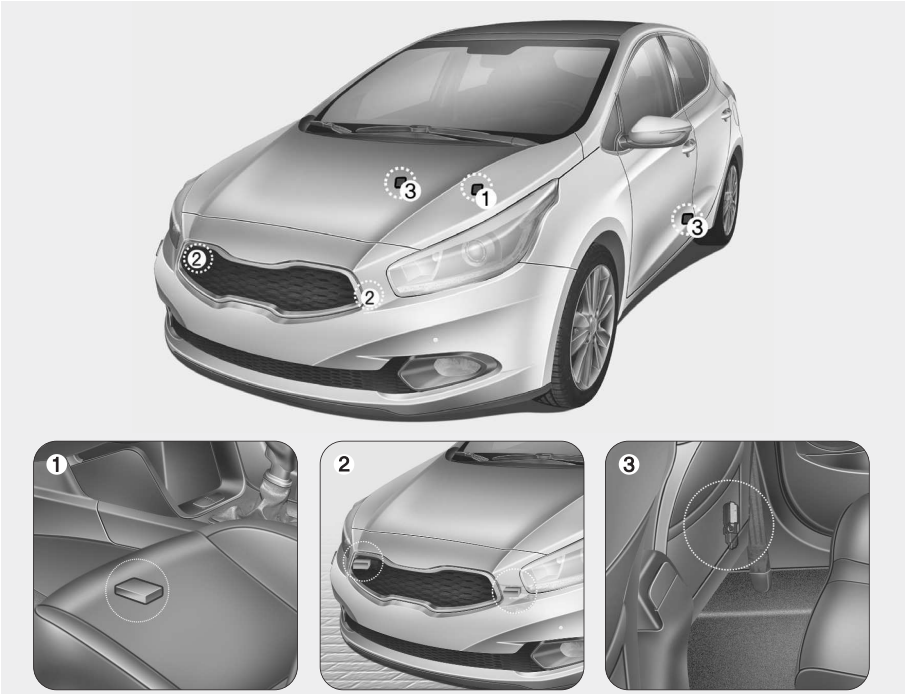
Failure to follow the above mentioned instructions can result in injury or death to the vehicle occupants in an accident.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 58

Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? (Inflation and non-inflation conditions of the air bag)

There are many types of accidents in which the air bag would not be expected to provide additional protection.

These include rear impacts, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts.



OJD032042/OJD032043/OJD032044/OJD032045

Air bag collision sensors

(1) SRS control module
(2) Front impact sensor
(3) Side impact sensor (if equipped)

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 59

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bag or sensors are installed.**

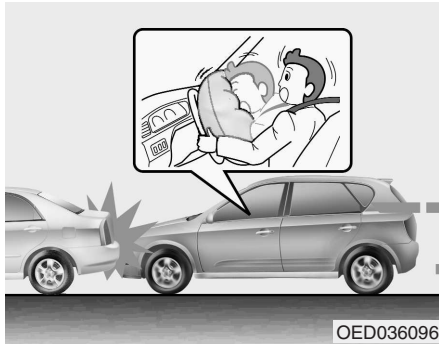
  This may cause unexpected air bag deployment, which could result in serious personal injury or death.
- **If the installation location or angle of the sensors is altered in any way, the air bags may deploy when they should not or they may not deploy when they should, causing severe injury or death.**

  Therefore, do not try to perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Problems may arise if the sensor installation angles are changed due to the deformation of the front bumper, body or B pillar and C pillars where side collision sensors are installed. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.**
- **Your vehicle has been designed to absorb impact and deploy the air bag(s) in certain collisions. Installing bumper guards or replacing a bumper with non-genuine parts may adversely affect your vehicles collision and air bag deployment performance.**

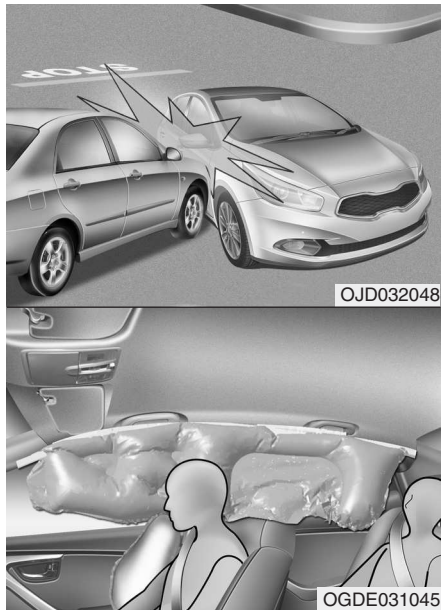


Air bag inflation conditions

Front air bags

Front air bags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the intensity, speed or angles of impact of the front collision.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 60



❈ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Side impact and curtain air bags (if equipped)

Side impact and/or curtain air bags are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the strength, speed or angles of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

Although the front air bags (driver's and front passenger's air bags) are designed to inflate only in frontal collisions, they also may inflate in other types of collisions if the front impact sensors detect a sufficient impact. Side air bags (side impact and/or curtain air bags) are designed to inflate only in side impact collisions, but they may inflate in other collisions if the side impact sensors detect a sufficient impact.

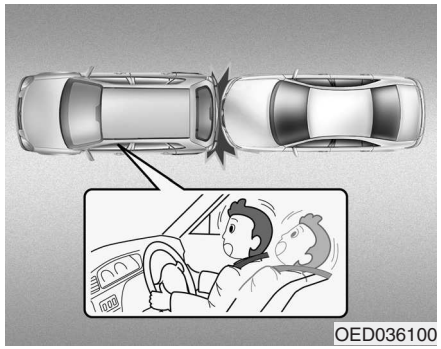
If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads or sidewalks, air bags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended air bag deployment.



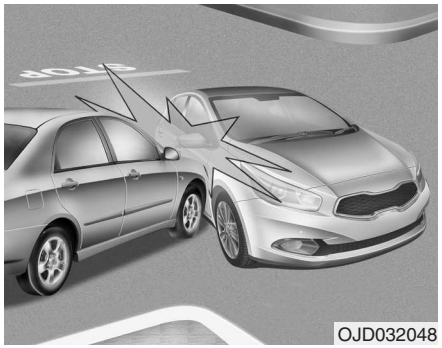
Air bag non-inflation conditions

- In certain low-speed collisions the air bags may not deploy. The air bags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts in such collisions.

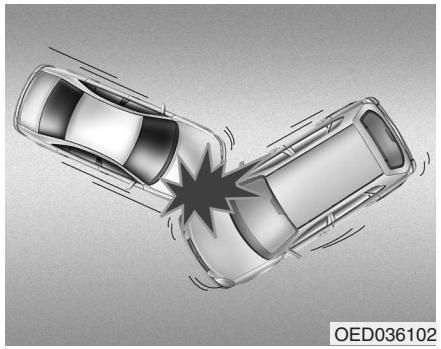
JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 61


OED036100

- Air bags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved backward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit.

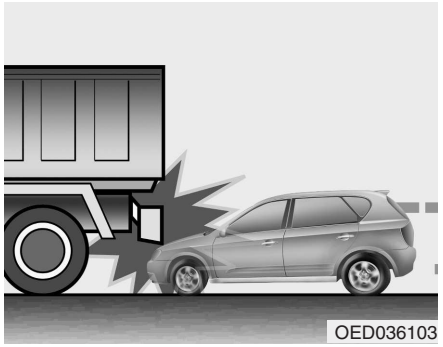

OJD032048

- Front air bags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move to the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, frontal air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.
- However, if equipped with side impact and curtain air bags, the air bags may inflate depending on the intensity, vehicle speed and angles of impact.

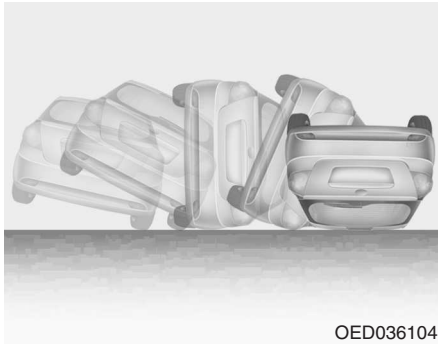

OED036102

- In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any air bags.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 62

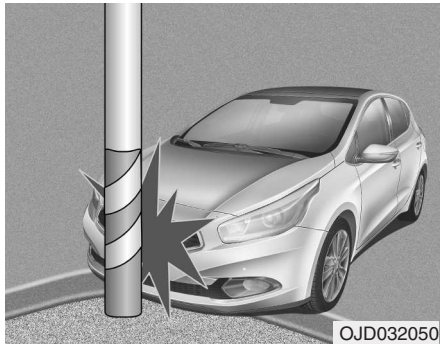

OED036103

- Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to “ride” under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bags may not inflate in this "under-ride" situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly replaced by such “under-ride” collisions.


OED036104

- Air bags may not inflate in rollover accidents because the vehicle can not detect rollover accident.

  However, side and/or curtain air bags may inflate when the vehicle is rolled over following (or after) side impact collision.


OJD032050

- Air bags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated to one area and the full force of the impact is not delivered to the sensors.

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 63

SRS Care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and so there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

- **Modification to SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure, can adversely affect SRS performance and lead to possible injury.**
- **For cleaning the air bag pad covers, use only a soft, dry cloth or one which has been moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.**
- **No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to inflate.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **If the air bags inflate, we recommend that the system be replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.**
- **Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring, or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental inflation of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**
- **If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. An authorized Kia dealer knows these precautions and can give you the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions and procedures could increase the risk of personal injury.**
- **If your car was flooded and has soaked carpeting or water on flooring, you shouldn't try to start the engine; we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.**

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 64

Additional safety precautions

- **Never let passengers ride in the cargo area or on top of a folded-down back seat.** All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor.
- **Passengers should not move out of or change seats while the vehicle is moving.** A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a crash or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or out of the vehicle.
- **Each seat belt is designed to restrain one occupant.** If more than one person uses the same seat belt, they could be seriously injured or killed in a collision.
- **Do not use any accessories on seat belts.** Devices claiming to improve occupant comfort or reposition the seat belt can reduce the protection provided by the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- **Passengers should not place hard or sharp objects between themselves and the air bags.** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap or in your mouth can result in injuries if an air bag inflates.
- **Keep occupants away from the air bag covers.** All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor. If occupants are too close to the air bag covers, they could be injured if the air bags inflate.
- **Do not attach or place objects on or near the air bag covers.** Any object attached to or placed on the front or side impact air bag covers could interfere with the proper operation of the air bags.
- **Do not modify the front seats.** Modification of the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components or side air bags.
- **Do not place items under the front seats.** Placing items under the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components and wiring harnesses.
- **Never hold an infant or child on your lap.** The infant or child could be seriously injured or killed in the event of a crash. All infants and children should be properly restrained in appropriate child safety seats or seat belts in the rear seat.

⚠ WARNING

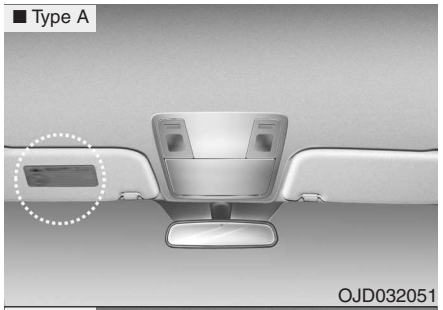
- **Sitting improperly or out of position can cause occupants to be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle resulting in serious injury or death.**
- **Always sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with your seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and your feet on the floor.**

JD eng 3.QXP 3/4/2015 2:41 PM Page 65

Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle

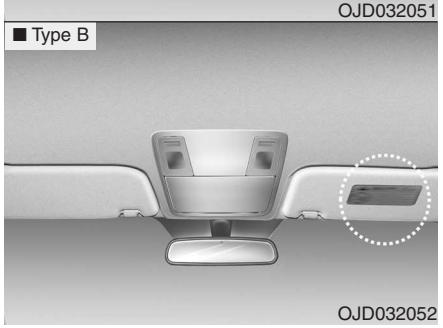
If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.

■ Type A



OJD032051

■ Type B



OJD032052

Air bag warning label (if equipped)

Air bag warning labels are attached to alert driver and passengers of potential risk of air bag system.

Note that these government warnings focus on the risk of children. We also want you to be aware of the risks adults are exposed to which have been described in previous pages.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:21 PM Page 1

Features of your vehicle

Keys 4-4
- Record your key number 4-4
- Key operations 4-4
- Immobilizer system 4-4

Remote keyless entry 4-6
- Remote keyless entry system operations 4-6
- Transmitter precautions 4-8
- Battery replacement 4-9

Smart key 4-11
- Smart key function 4-11
- Smart key precautions 4-13
- Door lock/unlock in an emergency situation 4-13

Theft-alarm system 4-14
- Armed stage 4-14
- Theft-alarm stage 4-15
- Disarmed stage 4-16

Door locks 4-17
- From outside 4-17
- From inside 4-18
- Deadlocks 4-20
- Door lock/unlock features 4-20
- Child-protector rear door lock 4-21

Tailgate 4-22
- Opening the tailgate 4-22
- Closing the tailgate 4-22
- Emergency tailgate safety release 4-23

Windows 4-24
- Power windows 4-25
- Manual windows 4-27

Hood 4-28
- Opening the hood 4-28
- Closing the hood 4-29

Fuel filler lid 4-30
- Opening the fuel filler lid 4-30
- Closing the fuel filler lid 4-30

Panorama sunroof 4-33
- Sunroof open warning 4-33
- Sunshade 4-34
- Sliding the sunroof 4-34
- Tilting the sunroof 4-34
- Closing the sunroof 4-35
- Resetting the sunroof 4-36

Steering wheel 4-37
- Electronic power steering 4-37
- Tilt and telescopic steering 4-38
- Heated steering wheel 4-38
- Horn 4-39
- Flex steering wheel 4-40

Mirrors 4-42
- Inside rearview mirror 4-42
- Outside rearview mirror 4-43

Instrument cluster (Normal vision) 4-46
- Instrument panel illumination 4-47
- Gauges 4-47
- Manual transaxle shift indicator 4-49
- Automatic transaxle shift position indicator 4-49
- Double clutch transmission shift indicator 4-50
- Speed limiter indicator 4-51

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:21 PM Page 2

• Odometer 4-51
• Trip computer 4-51
• LCD display information 4-73
• Warnings and indicators 4-79
Instrument cluster (Super vision) 4-59
• Instrument panel illumination 4-61
• Cluster display mode conversion 4-61
• Gauges 4-61
• Manual transaxle shift indicator 4-64
• Automatic transaxle shift position indicator 4-65
• Double clutch transmission shift indicator 4-65
• Speed limiter indicator 4-66
• Odometer 4-66
• Trip computer 4-67
• LCD display information 4-73
• Warnings and indicators 4-79
LCD display warnings and indicators (instrument panel display) 4-90
Rear parking assist system 4-92
• Operation 4-92
• Non-operational conditions 4-94
• Precautions 4-94
• Self-diagnosis 4-95
Parking assist system 4-96
• Operation 4-96
• Non-operational conditions 4-98
• Self-diagnosis 4-99
Smart Parking Assist System(SPAS) 4-100
• Operating condition 4-101
• Non-operating condition 4-101
• How the system works 4-104
• Additional instructions(messages) 4-109
• System malfunction 4-109
Rearview camera 4-110
Hazard warning flasher 4-110
Lighting 4-111
• Battery saver function 4-111
• Headlamp delay function 4-111
• Headlight (Headlamp) welcome function 4-111
• Static bending light 4-112
• Lighting control 4-112
• High - beam operation 4-114
• Turn signals and lane change signals 4-115
• Front fog light 4-116
• Rear fog light 4-116
• Daytime running light 4-116
• Headlight leveling device 4-117
• Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFLS) 4-118
Wipers and washers 4-119
• Windshield wipers (front) 4-119
• Windshield washers (front) 4-121
• Rear window wiper and washer switch 4-122
Interior light 4-123
• Interior lamp AUTO cut 4-123
• Map lamp 4-123
• Room lamp 4-124
• Vanity mirror lamp 4-124
• Luggage room lamp 4-125

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:21 PM Page 3

• Glove box lamp 4-125
Welcome system 4-126
• Headlamp welcome 4-126
• Interior light 4-126
• Puddle lamp 4-126
Defroster 4-127
• Rear window defroster 4-127
Manual climate control system 4-128
• Heating and air conditioning 4-129
• System operation 4-133
• Climate control air filter 4-135
• Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant 4-136
Automatic climate control system 4-137
• Automatic heating and air conditioning 4-138
• Manual heating and air conditioning 4-140
• System operation 4-145
• Climate control air filter 4-147
• Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant 4-148
Windshield defrosting and defogging 4-149
• Manual climate control system 4-149
• Automatic climate control system 4-150
Clean air 4-151
Storage compartment 4-152
• Center console storage 4-152
• Sliding armrest 4-152
• Glove box 4-153
• Cool box 4-153
• Sunglass holder 4-154
• Luggage tray 4-154
• Luggage side tray 4-155
Interior features 4-155
• Cigarette lighter 4-155
• Ashtray 4-156
• Cup holder 4-157
• Bottle holder 4-158
• Sunvisor 4-158
• Power outlet 4-159
• Aux, USB and iPod 4-160
• Clothes hanger 4-161
• Floor mat anchor(s) 4-161
• Luggage net (holder) 4-162
• Cargo area cover 4-162
• Barrier net 4-163
• Cargo security screen 4-166
• Luggage rail system 4-167
• Shopping bag holder 4-168
Exterior features 4-169
• Mounting bracket for roof carrier 4-169
• Roof rack 4-170
Audio system 4-172
• Antenna 4-172
• Audio remote control 4-173
• How car audio works 4-174

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:21 PM Page 4

KEYS

Record your key number



The key code number is stamped on the key code tag attached to the key set. Should you lose your keys, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer. Remove the key code tag and store it in a safe place. Also, record the code number and keep it in a safe and handy place, but not in the vehicle.

Key operations

- Used to start the engine.
- Used to lock and unlock the doors.

⚠ WARNING

We recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorized Kia dealer. If an aftermarket key is used, the ignition switch may not return to ON after START. If this happens, the starter will continue to operate causing damage to the starter motor and possible fire due to excessive current in the wiring.

⚠ WARNING - Ignition key (Smart key)

Leaving children unattended in a vehicle with the ignition key (Smart key) is dangerous even if the key is not in the ignition or start button is ACC or ON position. Children copy adults and they could place the key in the ignition or press the start button. The ignition key (Smart key) would enable children to operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious bodily injury or even death. Never leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children, when the engine is running.

Immobilizer system

Your vehicle may be equipped with an electronic engine immobilizer system to reduce the risk of unauthorized vehicle use.

Your immobilizer system is comprised of a small transponder in the key and electronic devices inside the vehicle.

Vehicles without smart key system

With the immobilizer system, whenever you insert your ignition key into the ignition switch and turn it to ON, it checks and determines and verifies if the ignition key is valid or not.

If the key is valid, the engine will start.

If the key is invalid, the engine will not start.

To deactivate the immobilizer system:

Insert the ignition key into the key cylinder and turn it to the ON position.

To activate the immobilizer system:

Turn the ignition key to the OFF position. The immobilizer system activates automatically. Without a valid ignition key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:21 PM Page 5

Vehicles with smart key system

Whenever the engine start/stop button is changed to the ON position, the immobilizer system checks and verifies if the key is valid or not.

If the key is valid, the engine will start.

If the key is invalid, the engine will not start.

To deactivate the immobilizer system

Change the engine start/stop button to the ON position.

To activate the immobilizer system

Change the engine start/stop button to the OFF position. The immobilizer system activates automatically. Without a valid smart key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

⚠ WARNING

In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle. Your immobilizer password is a customer unique password and should be kept confidential. Do not leave this number anywhere in your vehicle.

✻ NOTICE

When starting the engine, do not use the key with other immobilizer keys around. Otherwise the engine may not start or may stop soon after it starts. Keep each key separate in order to avoid a starting malfuntioin.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not put metal accessories near the ignition switch.

The engine may not start because the metal accessories may interrupt the transponder signal from normally transmitting.

✻ NOTICE

If you need additional keys or lose your keys, we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

The transponder in your ignition key is an important part of the immobilizer system. It is designed to give years of trouble-free service, however you should avoid exposure to moisture, static electricity and rough handling. Immobilizer system malfunction could occur.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not change, alter or adjust the immobilizer system because it could cause the immobilizer system to malfunction. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.

Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the immobilizer system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:21 PM Page 6

REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Type A



OAM049096L

■ Type B



OJD043244

■ Type C



OJD042002

Remote keyless entry system operations

Type A, B

- To unfold the key, press the release button then the key will unfold automatically.
- To fold the key, fold the key manually while pressing the release button.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not fold the key without pressing the release button. This may damage the key.

Type C

- To remove the mechanical key, press and hold the release button and remove the mechanical key.
- To reinstall the mechanical key, put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

■ Type A



OXM049003

■ Type B



OJD043245

■ Type C



OJD042001

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:21 PM Page 7

Lock (1)

1. Close all doors.
2. Press the lock button.
3. The hazard warning light will blink once to indicate that all doors are locked (the engine hood and tailgate must be closed). Also, the outside rearview mirror will automatically fold if the outside rearview mirror folding switch (Type C) is in the AUTO position (if equipped).

✻ NOTICE

The doors will not lock if any door is opened.

Unlock (2)

1. Press the unlock button.
2. The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that all doors are unlocked. Also, the outside rearview mirror will automatically unfold if the outside rearview mirror folding switch (Type C) is in the AUTO position (if equipped).

✻ NOTICE

After unlocking all doors, the doors will lock and the outside rearview mirror will unfold if the outside rearview mirror folding switch (Type C) is in the AUTO position (if equipped) unless a door is opened within 30 seconds.

Tailgate unlock (3)

1. Press the tailgate unlock button for more than 1 second.
2. The hazard warning light will blink twice to indicate the tailgate is unlocked.

✻ NOTICE

- **After unlocking the tailgate, the tailgate will lock automatically unless it is opened within 30 seconds.**
- **Once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate will lock automatically.**
- **The word "HOLD" is written on the button to inform you that you must press and hold the button.**

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:21 PM Page 8

Transmitter precautions

✻ NOTICE

The transmitter will not work if any of following occur:

- **The ignition key is in ignition switch.**
- **You exceed the operating distance limit (about 10 m [30 feet]).**
- **The battery in the transmitter is weak.**
- **Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.**
- **The weather is extremely cold.**
- **The transmitter is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.**

When the transmitter does not work correctly, open and close the door with the ignition key. If you have a problem with the transmitter, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **If the transmitter is in close proximity to your cell phone or smart phone, the signal from the transmitter could be blocked by normal operation of your cell phone or smart phone. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making call, receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. Avoid placing the transmitter and your cell phone or smart phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and maintain adequate distance between the two devices.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Keep the transmitter away from water or any liquid. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer vehicle warranty.***
- ***Keep the transmitter away from electromagnetic materials that blocks electromagnetic waves to the key surface.***

⚠ CAUTION

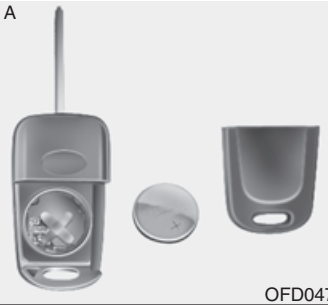
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:21 PM Page 9

Battery replacement

A battery should last for several years, but if the transmitter or smart key is not working properly, try replacing the battery with a new one. If you are unsure how to use or replace the battery, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

■ Type A



OFD047003

■ Type B



OYDDCO2005

Type A, B

1. Insert a slim tool into the slot and gently pry open the cover.
2. Replace the battery with a new battery (CR2032). When replacing the battery, make sure the battery position.
3. Install the rear cover.

■ Type C



OJD042003

Type C

1. Insert a slim tool into the slot and gently pry open the cover.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:21 PM Page 10

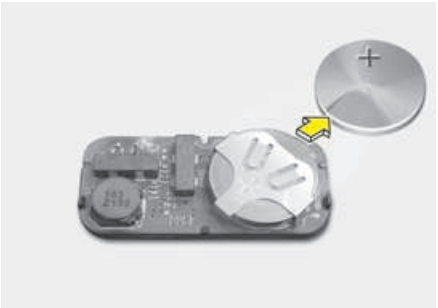


OJD042004



OJD042005

2. Pull the smart key module out.
3. Turn the smart key module over.



OJD042006

4. Push the battery out from the battery holder.
5. Replace the battery with a new battery (CR2032). When replacing the battery, make sure the battery position.
6. Install the battery in the reverse order of removal.

For transmitter or smart key replacement, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The transmitter or smart key is designed to give you years of trouble-free use, however it can malfunction if exposed to moisture or static electricity. If you are unsure how to use or replace the battery, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.***
- ***Using the wrong battery can cause the transmitter or smart key to malfunction. Be sure to use the correct battery.***
- ***To avoid damaging the transmitter or smart key, don't drop it, get it wet, or expose it to heat or sunlight.***

⚠ CAUTION

An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health.

Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:21 PM Page 11

SMART KEY (IF EQUIPPED)



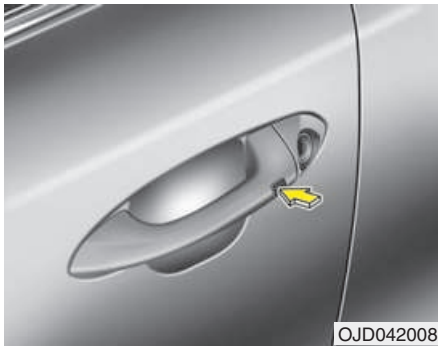
OJD042001

Smart key function

1. Door lock
2. Door unlock
3. Tailgate unlock

With a smart key, you can lock or unlock a door and tailgate and even start the engine without inserting the key.

The functions of the buttons on a smart key are similar to the remote keyless entry. Refer to the “Remote keyless entry” in this chapter.


OJD042008

Carrying the smart key, you may lock and unlock the vehicle doors and tailgate.

Also, you may start the engine. Refer to the following, for more details.

Locking

1. Carry the smart key.
2. Close all doors.
3. Press the button of the outside door handle.
4. The hazard warning lights will blink once (the engine hood and tailgate must be closed). Also, the outside rearview mirror will automatically fold if the outside rearview mirror folding switch is in the AUTO position (if equipped).
5. Make sure that doors are locked by pulling the outside door handle.

✻ NOTICE

- **The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7 m (28 in.) from the outside door handle.**
- **Even though you press the outside door handle button, the doors will not lock and the chime will sound for 3 seconds if any of following occur:**
  - **The smart key is in the vehicle.**
  - **The engine start/stop button is in ACC or ON position.**
  - **Any door except the tailgate is opened.**

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:21 PM Page 12

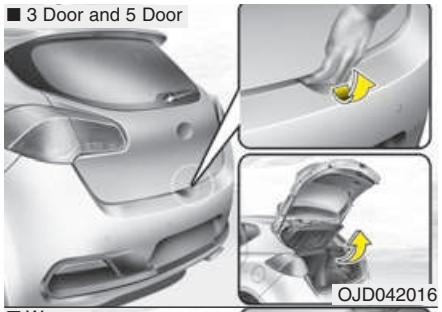
Unlocking

1. Carry the smart key.
2. Press the button of the front outside door handle.
3. All doors will unlock and the hazard warning lights will blink twice. Also, the outside rearview mirror will automatically unfold if the outside rearview mirror folding switch is in the AUTO position (if equipped).

✻ NOTICE

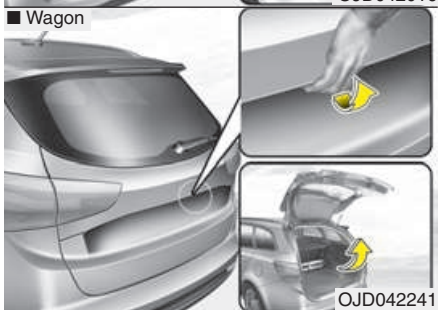
- **The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7 m (28 in.) from the outside door handle.**
- **When the smart key is recognized in the area of 0.7 m (28 in.) from the front outside door handle, other people can also open the doors.**
- **After unlocking all doors, the doors will lock and the outside rearview mirror will unfold if the outside rearview mirror folding switch (Type B) is in the AUTO position (if equipped) unless a door is opened within 30 seconds.**

■ 3 Door and 5 Door



OJD042016

■ Wagon



OJD042241

Tailgate unlocking

1. Carry the smart key.
2. Press the tailgate handle switch.
3. The tailgate will unlock.

✻ NOTICE

- **Once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate will lock automatically.**
- **The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7 m (28 in.) from the tailgate handle.**

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:21 PM Page 13

Smart key precautions

✻ NOTICE

- **If, for some reason, you happen to lose your smart key, you will not be able to start the engine. Tow the vehicle, if necessary, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.**
- **A maximum of 2 smart keys can be registered to a single vehicle. If you lose a smart key, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.**
- **The smart key will not work if any of the following occurs:**
  - **The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the smart key.**
  - **The smart key is near a mobile two-way radio system or a cellular phone.**
  - **Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.**

  When the smart key does not work properly, open and close the door with the mechanical key. If you have a problem with the smart key, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **If the smart key is in close proximity to your cell phone or smart phone, the signal from the smart key could be blocked by normal operation of your cell phone or smart phone. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making call, receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. Avoid placing the smart key and your cell phone or smart phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and maintain adequate distance between the two devices.**

⚠ CAUTION

Keep the smart key away from water or any liquid. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.



OJD042002

Door lock/unlock in an emergency situation

If the smart key does not operate normally, you can lock or unlock the doors by using the mechanical key.

1. Press and hold the release button (1) and remove the mechanical key (2).
2. Insert the key into the hole of the outside door handle. Turn the key toward the rear of the vehicle to unlock and toward the front of the vehicle to lock.
3. To reinstall the mechanical key, put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

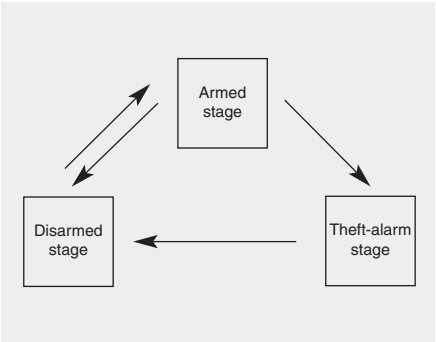
JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:22 PM Page 14

THEFT-ALARM SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



OJC040170

Vehicles equipped with a theft alarm system will have a label attached to the vehicle with the following words:
1. WARNING
2. SECURITY SYSTEM



This system is designed to provide protection from unauthorized entry into the vehicle. This system is operated in three stages: the first is the "Armed" stage, the second is the "Theft-alarm" stage, and the third is the "Disarmed" stage. If triggered, the system provides an audible alarm with blinking of the hazard warning lights.

Armed stage

Using the smart key

Park the vehicle and stop the engine. Arm the system as described below.

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Make sure that all doors, the engine hood and tailgate are closed and latched.
3. • Lock the doors by pressing the button of the front outside door handle with the smart key in your possession.

   After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will operate once to indicate that the system is armed.

   If the tailgate or engine hood remains opened, the hazard warning lights will not operate and theft-alarm will not arm. After this, if the tailgate and engine hood are closed, the hazard warning lights will blink once and the theft-alarm will arm.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:22 PM Page 15

• Lock the doors by pressing the lock button on the smart key.

After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will operate once to indicate that the system is armed.

If the tailgate or engine hood remains opened, the hazard warning lights will not operate and theft-alarm will not arm. After this, if the tailgate and engine hood are closed, the hazard warning lights will blink once and the theft-alarm will arm.

Using the transmitter

Park the vehicle and stop the engine. Arm the system as described below.

1. Turn off the engine and remove the ignition key from the ignition switch.
2. Make sure that all doors, the engine hood and tailgate are closed and latched.
3. Lock the doors by pressing the lock button on the transmitter.

   After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that the system is armed.

   If the tailgate or engine hood remains opened, the hazard warning lights will not operate and theft-alarm will not arm. After this, if the tailgate and engine hood are closed, the hazard warning lights will blink once and the theft-alarm will arm.

• **Do not arm the system until all passengers have left the vehicle. If the system is armed while a passenger(s) remains in the vehicle, the alarm may be activated when the remaining passenger(s) leave the vehicle. If any door, tailgate or engine hood is opened within 30 seconds after entering the armed stage, the system is disarmed to prevent unnecessary alarm.**

Theft-alarm stage

The alarm will be activated if any of the following occurs while the system is armed.

- A front or rear door is opened without using transmitter or smart key.
- The tailgate is opened without using transmitter or smart key.
- The engine hood is opened.

The siren will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously for 27 seconds, unless the system is disarmed. To turn off the system, unlock the doors with the transmitter or smart key.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:22 PM Page 16

Disarmed stage

The system will be disarmed when:

Transmitter

- The door unlock button is pressed.
- The engine is started.
- The ignition switch is in the “ON” position for 30 seconds or more.

Smart key

- The door unlock button is pressed.
- The button of the front outside door is pressed while carrying the smart key.
- The engine is started.

After the doors are unlocked, the hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the system is disarmed.
After pressing the unlock button, if any door (or tailgate) is not opened within 30 seconds, the system will be rearmed.

✻ NOTICE

- **Without smart key system**
  If the system is not disarmed with the transmitter, insert the key into the ignition switch and start the engine. Then the system will be disarmed.
- **With smart key system**
  If the system is not disarmed with the smart key, open the door with the mechanical key and start the engine. Then the system will be disarmed.
- **If you lose your keys, we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.**

⚠ CAUTION

Do not change, alter or adjust the theft-alarm system because it could cause the theft-alarm system to malfunction and we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.

Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the theft-alarm system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:22 PM Page 17

DOOR LOCKS

■ Type A



OJD043503

■ Type B



ORP042235

■ Type C

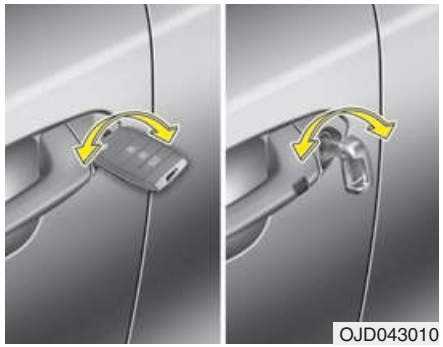


OJD042001

Operating door locks from outside the vehicle

Transmitter/Smart key

- Doors can be locked and unlocked with the transmitter or smart key.
- Doors can be locked and unlocked by pressing the button of the outside door handle with the smart key in your possession. (vehicles equipped with smart key system)
- Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.
- When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.



OJD043010

Mechanical key

- If the transmitter or smart key does not operate normally, you can lock or unlock the doors by the mechanical key.

  Insert the key into the key hole of the outside door handle. Turn the key toward the rear of the vehicle to unlock and toward the front of the vehicle to lock.
- If you lock/unlock the driver's door with a key while the power door lock switch does not operate normally, only the driver's door will lock/unlock.
- Once the door is unlocked, it may be opened by pulling the door handle.
- When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.

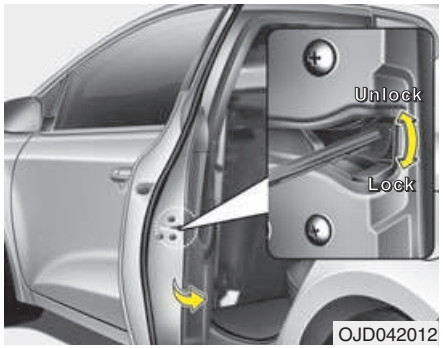
JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:22 PM Page 18

✻ NOTICE

- **In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.**

⚠ WARNING

- **If you don't close the door securely, the door may open again.**
- **Be careful that someone's body and hands are not trapped when closing the door.**



In case of an emergency (5 Door and wagon)

If the power door lock switch does not operate electrically, the only way to lock the door(s) is with the mechanical key from the outside key hole.

You can lock the doors without the outside key hole as follows:

1. Open the door.
2. Insert the key into the emergency door lock hole and turn the key horizontally to lock.
3. Close the door securely.



Operating door locks from inside the vehicle

With the door handle

Driver's door and front passanger's door (if equipped)

If the inner door handle is pulled when the door is locked, the door will unlock and open.

Rear door (if equipped)

If the inner door handle is pulled once when the door is locked, the door will unlock.

If the inner door handle is pulled once more, the door will open.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:22 PM Page 19



With central door lock/unlock switch

It is operated by pressing the door lock/unlock switch.

- When you press the central door lock switch, all vehicle doors will lock and the indicator light on the switch will illuminate.
- If any door is opened when the switch is pressed, all doors will not lock.
- If any door is unlocked, the indicator of the central door lock switch will go off.
- When you press the central door unlock switch, all vehicle doors will unlock.

✻ NOTICE

Once the doors are locked with the transmitter or smart key, the doors cannot be unlocked with the central door lock/unlock switch.

⚠ WARNING - Door lock malfunction

If a power door lock ever fails to function while you are in the vehicle, try one or more of the following:

- **Operate the other door locks and handles.**
- **Lower the driver's window and use the key to unlock the door from outside.**
- **Move to the cargo area and open the tailgate.**

⚠ WARNING - Doors

- **The doors should always be fully closed and locked while the vehicle is in motion to prevent accidental opening of the door. Locked doors will also discourage potential intruders when the vehicle stops or slows down.**
- **Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door. Opening a door when something is approaching can cause damage or injury.**

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:22 PM Page 20

⚠ WARNING - Unlocked vehicles

Leaving your vehicle unlocked can invite theft or possible harm to you or others from someone hiding in your vehicle while you are gone. Always remove the ignition key, engage the parking brake, close all windows and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.

⚠ WARNING - Unattended children

An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or severe injury to unattended children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle. Furthermore, children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them, or they could encounter other harm, possibly from someone gaining entry to the vehicle. Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle.

Deadlocks (if equipped)

Some vehicles are equipped with a deadlock system. Deadlocks prevent opening of a door from either inside or outside the vehicle once the deadlocks have been activated providing an additional measure of vehicle security.

To lock the vehicle using the deadlock function, the doors must be locked by using the transmitter or smart key. To unlock the vehicle, the transmitter or smart key must be used again.

⚠ WARNING

Do not lock the doors with the transmitter or the smart key with anybody left in the vehicle. The passenger in the vehicle cannot unlock the doors with the door lock button. For example, if the door is locked with the transmitter, the passenger in the vehicle cannot unlock the door without the transmitter.

Door lock/unlock features

Impact sensing door unlock system

All doors will automatically unlock when an impact causes the air bags to deploy.

Speed sensing door lock system (if equipped)

All doors will automatically lock after the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h.

Engine off door unlock system (if equipped)

All doors will automatically unlock:

Without smart key system

When the key is removed from the ignition switch.

With smart key system

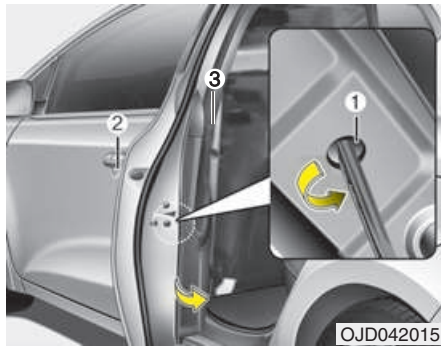
When the engine start/stop button is in the OFF position.

Shift lever door lock/unlock system

- All doors will automatically lock when the shift lever is moved out of P (Park).
- All doors will automatically unlock when the shift lever is moved into P (Park).

You can activate or deactivate the auto door lock/unlock features in the vehicle. Refer to "User setting" in this chapter.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:22 PM Page 21



Child-protector rear door lock (5 Door and wagon)

The child safety lock is provided to help prevent children from accidentally opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle. The rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

1. Open the rear door.
2. Insert a key (or screwdriver) into the hole (1) and turn it to the “lock( )” position. When the child safety lock is in the lock position, the rear door will not open even though the inner door handle (3) is pulled inside the vehicle.
3. Close the rear door.

To open the rear door, pull the outside door handle (2).

Even though the doors may be unlocked, the rear door will not open by pulling the inner door handle (3) until rear door child safety lock is unlocked.

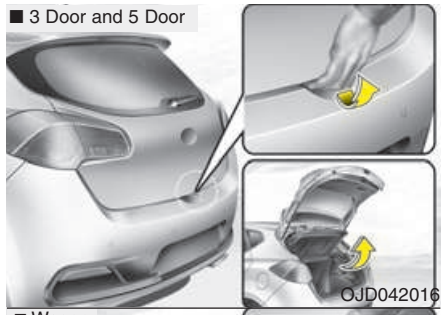
⚠ WARNING - Rear door locks

If children accidentally open the rear doors while the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out and be severely injured or killed. To prevent children from opening the rear doors from the inside, the rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:22 PM Page 22

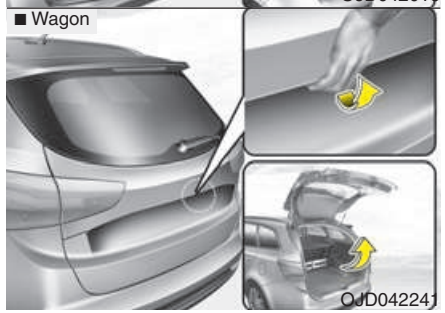
TAILGATE

■ 3 Door and 5 Door



OJD042016

■ Wagon



OJD042241

Opening the tailgate

- The tailgate is locked or unlocked when all doors are locked or unlocked with the key, transmitter, smart key or central door lock/unlock switch.
- Only the tailgate is unlocked if the tailgate unlock button on the transmitter or smart key is pressed for approximately 1 second or the tailgate handle switch is pressed with the smart key in your possession.
- If unlocked, the tailgate can be opened by pressing the handle and pulling it up.
- Once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate locks automatically. (All doors must be locked.)

✻ NOTICE

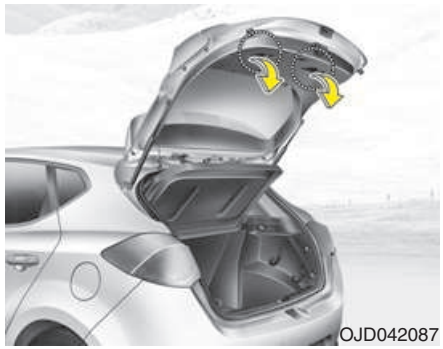
In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

⚠ WARNING

The tailgate swings upward. Make sure no objects or people are near the rear of the vehicle when opening the tailgate.

⚠ CAUTION

Make certain that you close the tailgate before driving your vehicle. Possible damage may occur to the tailgate lift cylinders and attaching hardware if the tailgate is not closed prior to driving.



OJD042087

✻ The actual luggage room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Closing the tailgate

Lower and push down the tailgate firmly. Make sure that the tailgate is securely latched.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure your hands, feet and other parts of your body are safely out of the way before closing the tailgate.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:22 PM Page 23

⚠ CAUTION

Make sure nothing is near the tailgate latch and striker while closing the tailgate. It may damage the tailgate's latch.

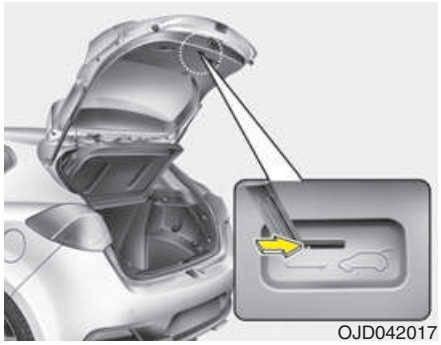
⚠ WARNING - Exhaust fumes

If you drive with the tailgate opened, you will draw dangerous exhaust fumes into your vehicle which can cause serious injury or death to vehicle occupants.

If you must drive with the tailgate opened, keep the air vents and all windows open so that additional outside air comes into the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - Rear cargo area

Occupants should never ride in the rear cargo area where no restraints are available. To avoid injury in the event of an accident or sudden stops, occupants should always be properly restrained.



OJD042017

✻ The actual luggage room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Emergency tailgate safety release

Your vehicle is equipped with the emergency tailgate safety release lever located on the bottom of the tailgate. When someone is inadvertently locked in the luggage compartment. The tailgate can be opened by doing as follows:

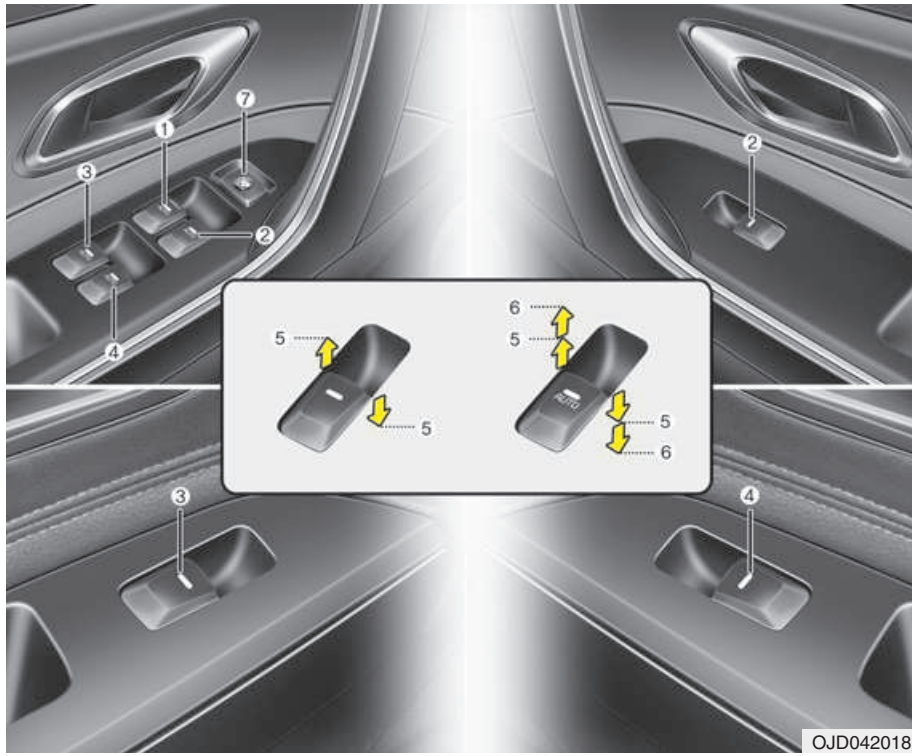
1. Input the machanical key into the hole.
2. Push the machanical key to the right.
3. Push up the tailgate.

⚠ WARNING

- **For emergencies, be fully aware of the location of the emergency tailgate safety release lever in the vehicle and how to open the tailgate if you are accidentally locked in the luggage compartment.**
- **No one should be allowed to occupy the luggage compartment of the vehicle at any time. The luggage compartment is a very dangerous location in the event of a crash.**
- **Use the release lever for emergencies only. Use with extreme caution, especially while the vehicle is in motion.**

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:22 PM Page 24

WINDOWS



(1) Driver's door power window switch
(2) Front passenger's door power window switch
(3) Rear door (left) power window switch* (for 5 Door and wagon)
(4) Rear door (right) power window switch* (for 5 Door and wagon)
(5) Window opening and closing
(6) Automatic power window up*/down*
(7) Power window lock switch*

*: if equipped

✻ NOTICE

In cold and wet climates, power windows may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:22 PM Page 25

Power windows

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for power windows to operate. Each door has a power window switch that controls the door's window. The driver's door has a master power window switch that controls all the windows in the vehicle. Also, the driver has a power window lock switch which can block the operation of rear passenger windows.
The power windows can be operated for approximately 30 seconds after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the front doors are opened, the power windows cannot be operated even within the 30 seconds period.

✻ NOTICE

While driving with the rear windows down or with the sunroof (if equipped) in an open (or partially open position), your vehicle may demonstrate a wind buffeting or pulsation noise. This noise is a normal occurrence and can be reduced or eliminated by taking the following actions. If the noise occurs with one or both of the rear windows down, partially lower both front windows approximately one inch. If you experience the noise with the sunroof open, slightly reduce the size of the sunroof opening.



OJD042019

Window opening and closing

Type A

To open or close a window, press down or pull up the front portion of the corresponding switch to the first detent position (5).



OJD042020

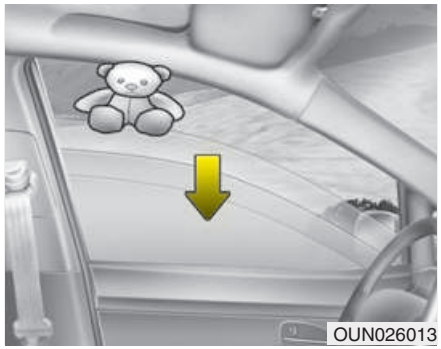
Type B - Auto up/down window (if equipped)

Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers or lifts the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position while the window is in operation, pull up or press down and release the switch.

✻ NOTICE

If the power window does not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

1. **Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.**
2. **Close the window and continue pulling up the power window switch for at least 1 second after the window is completely closed.**



Automatic reversal (for type B window)

If the upward movement of the window is blocked by an object or part of the body, the window will detect the resistance and will stop upward movement. The window will then lower approximately 30 cm (11.8 in.) to allow the object to be cleared.

If the window detects the resistance while the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window will stop upward movement then lower approximately 2.5 cm (1 in.). And if the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reversal feature, the automatic window reversal will not operate.

✻ NOTICE

The automatic reverse feature is only active when the "auto up" feature is used by fully pulling up the switch. The automatic reverse feature will not operate if the window is raised using the halfway position on the power window switch.

⚠ WARNING

Always check for obstructions before raising any window to avoid injuries or vehicle damage. If an object less than 4 mm (0.16 in.) in diameter is caught between the window glass and the upper window channel, the automatic reverse window may not detect the resistance and will not stop and reverse direction.



Power window lock button (for 5 Door and wagon) (if equipped)

The driver can disable the power window switches on the rear passengers' doors by pressing the power window lock switch to the lock position (pressed).

When the power window lock switch is pressed:

- The driver's master control can operate all the power windows.
- The front passenger's control can operate the front passenger's power window.
- The rear passenger's control cannot operate the rear passenger's power window.

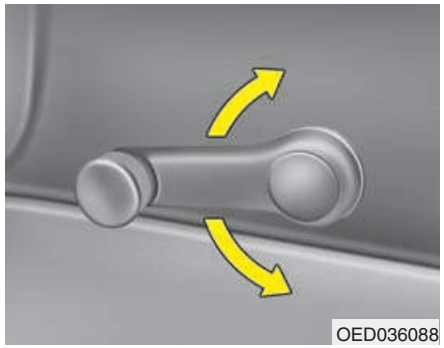
JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:22 PM Page 27

⚠ CAUTION

- *To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.*
- *Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in opposing directions at the same time. If this is done, the window will stop and cannot be opened or closed.*

⚠ WARNING - Windows

- **NEVER leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children when the engine is running.**
- **NEVER leave any child unattended in the vehicle. Even very young children may inadvertently cause the vehicle to move, entangle themselves in the windows, or otherwise injure themselves or others.**
- **Always double check to make sure all arms, hands, head and other obstructions are safely out of the way before closing a window.**
- **Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Keep the driver's door power window lock switch in the LOCK position (pressed). Serious injury can result from unintentional window operation by the child.**
- **Do not extend face or arms outside the window while driving.**



Manual windows (for 5 Door and wagon) (if equipped)

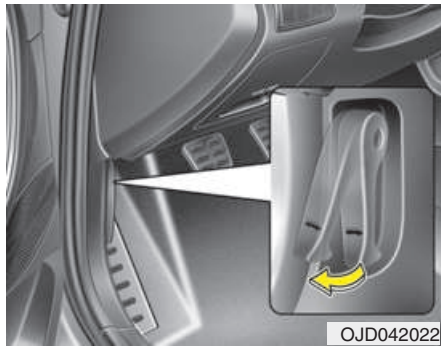
To raise or lower the window, turn the window regulator handle clockwise or counterclockwise.

⚠ WARNING

When opening or closing the windows, make sure your passenger's arms, hands and body are safely out of the way.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:23 PM Page 28

HOOD

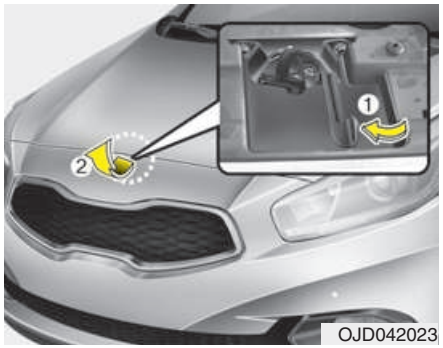

OJD042022

Opening the hood

1. Pull the release lever to unlatch the hood. The hood should pop open slightly.

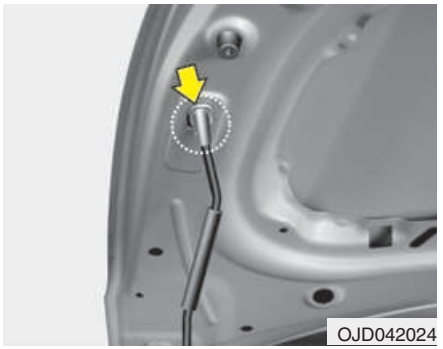
⚠ WARNING

Open the hood after turning off the engine on a flat surface, shifting the shift lever to the P(Park) position for automatic transaxle and to the 1(First) gear or R(Reverse) for manual transaxle, and setting the parking brake.



OJD042023

2. Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the hood slightly, push the secondary latch inside of the hood center and lift the hood.


OJD042024

3. Pull out the support rod.
4. Hold the hood opened with the support rod.

⚠ WARNING - Hot parts

Be very careful not to touch the support rod when the engine and parts are hot. You could get burned or get seriously injured.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:23 PM Page 29

Closing the hood

1. Before closing the hood, check the following:
   - All filler caps in engine compartment must be correctly installed.
   - Gloves, rags or any other combustible material must be removed from the engine compartment.
2. Return the support rod to its clip to prevent it from rattling.
3. Lower the hood until it is about 30 cm (1 ft.) above the closed position and let it drop. Make sure that it locks into place.

⚠ WARNING - Hood

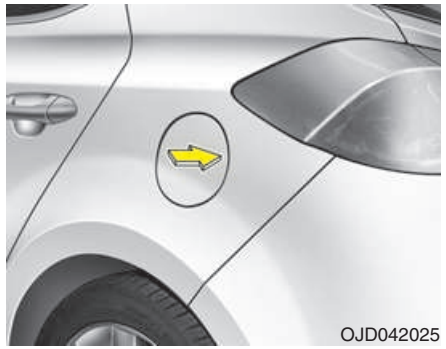
- **Before closing the hood, ensure that all obstructions are removed from the hood opening. Closing the hood with an obstruction present in the hood opening may result in property damage or severe personal injury.**
- **Do not leave gloves, rags or any other combustible material in the engine compartment. Doing so may cause a heat-induced fire.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Always double check to be sure that the hood is firmly latched before driving away. If it is not latched, the hood could fly open while the vehicle is being driven, causing a total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.**
- **The support rod must be inserted completely into the hole whenever you inspect the engine compartment. This will prevent the hood from falling and possibly injuring you.**
- **Do not move the vehicle with the hood raised. The view will be blocked and the hood could fall or be damaged.**

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:23 PM Page 30

FUEL FILLER LID


OJD042025

Opening the fuel filler lid

1. To open the lid, press the center edge of the lid when all doors are unlocked.

✻ NOTICE

The lid will open and close only when all doors are unlocked.



OJD042026

2. Fully open the lid (1).
3. To open the cap, turn it counterclockwise (2).
4. Refuel as needed.

✻ NOTICE

If the fuel-filler lid does not open because ice has formed around it, tap lightly or push on the lid to break the ice and release the lid. Do not pry on the lid. If necessary, spray around the lid with an approved de-icer fluid (do not use radiator anti-freeze) or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

Closing the fuel filler lid

1. To install the cap, turn it clockwise until it “clicks”. This indicates that the cap is securely tightened.
2. To close the lid, press the edge of the lid. Make sure it is securely closed.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:23 PM Page 31

⚠ WARNING - Refueling

- If pressurized fuel sprays out, it can cover your clothes or skin and thus subject you to the risk of fire and burns. Always remove the fuel cap carefully and slowly. If the cap is venting fuel or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until the condition stops before completely removing the cap.
- Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refueling.
- Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.

⚠ WARNING - Refueling dangers

Automotive fuels are flammable materials. When refueling, please note the following guidelines carefully. Failure to follow these guidelines may result in severe personal injury, severe burns or death by fire or explosion.

- Read and follow all warning posted at the gas station facility.
- Before refueling note the location of the Emergency Gasoline Shut-Off, if available, at the gas station facility.
- Before touching the fuel nozzle, you should eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching another metal part of the vehicle, a safe distance away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle, or other gas source.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Do not get back into a vehicle once you have begun refueling since you can generate static electricity by touching, rubbing or sliding against any item or fabric (polyester, satin, nylon, etc.) capable of producing static electricity. Static electricity discharge can ignite fuel vapors resulting in rapid burning. If you must re-enter the vehicle, you should once again eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching a metal part of the vehicle, away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle or other gasoline source.
- When using an approved portable fuel container, be sure to place the container on the ground prior to refueling. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire. Once refueling has begun, contact with the vehicle should be maintained until the filling is complete.

(Continued)

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:23 PM Page 32

(Continued)

Use only portable plastic fuel containers designed to carry and store gasoline.

- **Do not use cellular phones while refueling. Electric current and/or electronic interference from cellular phones can potentially ignite fuel vapors causing a fire.**
- **When refueling, always shut the engine off. Sparks produced by electrical components related to the engine can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire. Once refueling is complete, check to make sure the filler cap and filler door are securely closed, before starting the engine.**
- **DO NOT use matches or a lighter and DO NOT SMOKE or leave a lit cigarette in your vehicle while at a gas station especially during refueling. Automotive fuel is highly flammable and can, when ignited, result in fire.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **If a fire breaks out during refueling, leave the vicinity of the vehicle, and immediately contact the manager of the gas station and then contact the local fire department. Follow any safety instructions they provide.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Make sure to refuel your vehicle according to the "Fuel requirements" suggested in chapter 1.***
- ***If the fuel filler cap requires replacement, please make sure that you use parts designed for replacement in your vehicle. An incorrect fuel filler cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel system or emission control system. For more detailed information, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.***
- ***Do not spill fuel on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Any type of fuel spilled on painted surfaces may damage the paint.***
- ***After refueling, make sure the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.***

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:23 PM Page 33

PANORAMA SUNROOF (IF EQUIPPED)



OJD042027

If your vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, you can slide or tilt your sunroof with the sunroof control lever located on the overhead console.

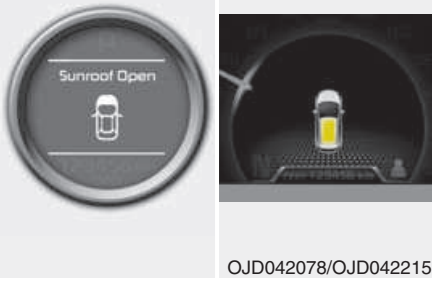
The sunroof can only be opened, closed, or tilted when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

- In cold and wet climates, the sunroof may not work properly due to freezing conditions.
- After the vehicle is washed or in a rainstorm, be sure to wipe off any water that is on the sunroof before operating it.

⚠ CAUTION - Sunroof control lever

Do not continue to move the sunroof control lever after the sunroof is fully opened, closed, or tilted. Damage to the motor or system components could occur.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042078/OJD042215

Sunroof open warning (if equipped)

If the driver removes the ignition key (smart key: turns off the engine) and opens the driver-side door when the sunroof is not fully closed, the warning chime will sound for approximately 7 seconds and a warning message will appear on the LCD display.

Close the sunroof securely when leaving your vehicle.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:23 PM Page 34



Sunshade

- To open the sunshade, press the sunshade control switch(1).
- To close the sunshade when the sunroof glass is closed.
  - Press the sunshade control switch(2).
  - Push the sunroof control lever forward or pull it down.

To stop the sliding at any point, press the sunshade control switch momentarily.



Sliding the sunroof

When the sunshade is closed

If you pull the sunroof control lever backward, the sunshade will slide all the way open then the sunroof glass will slide all the way open. To stop the sunroof movement at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

When the sunshade is opened

If you pull the sunroof control lever backward, the sunroof glass will slide all the way open. To stop the sunroof movement at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.



Tilting the sunroof

When the sunshade is closed

If you push the sunroof control lever upward, the sunshade will slide all the way open then the sunroof glass will tilt.

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

When the sunshade is opened

If you push the sunroof control lever upward, the sunroof glass will tilt.

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:23 PM Page 35

Closing the sunroof

To close the sunroof glass with the sunshade

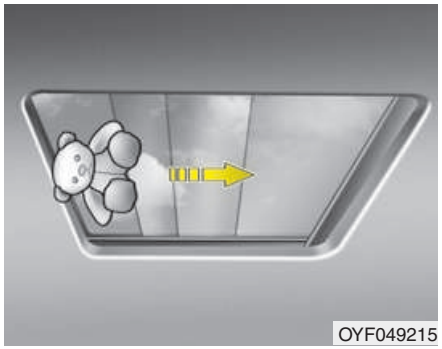
Push the sunroof control lever forward or full it down.

The sunroof glass will close.

Then to close sunshade

- Press the sunshade control switch(2).
- Push the sunroof control lever forward or full it down

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.



Automatic reversal

If an object or part of the body is detected while the sunroof glass or sunshade is closing automatically, it will reverse the direction, and then stop.

The auto reverse function does not work if a tiny obstacle is between the sliding glass or sunshade and the sunroof sash. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the sunroof before closing it.

⚠ WARNING - Sunroof

- **Be careful that someone's head, hands and body are not trapped by a closing sunroof.**
- **Do not extend the face, neck, arms or body outside through an opened sunroof while driving.**
- **Make sure your hands and face are safely out of the way before closing a sunroof.**
- **A panorama sunroof is made of glass, therefore it may break in an accident. If you do not have your seat belt on, you may stick out of the broken glass and get injured or killed. For all passengers safety, have an appropriate protection on. (ex. seat belt, CRS, etc.)**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Periodically remove any dirt that may accumulate on the guide rail.***
- ***If you try to open the sunroof when the temperature is below freezing or when the sunroof is covered with snow or ice, the glass or the motor could be damaged.***
- ***If you drive with the sunroof opened right after a car wash or rain, water may get inside the vehicle.***

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:23 PM Page 36

Resetting the sunroof

Whenever the vehicle battery is disconnected or discharged, or related fuse is blown, you must reset your sunroof system as follows:

1. Turn the engine on and close the sunroof glass and sunshade completely.
2. Release the control lever.
3. Push the sunroof control lever forward in the direction of close (about 10 seconds) until the sunroof operates as follows;

   SUNSHADE OPEN → TILT OPEN

   Then, release the control lever.

4. Push the sunroof control lever forward in the direction of close until the sunroof operates as follows;

   SUNSHADE & SLIDE OPEN SIMULTANEOUSLY → SLIDE CLOSE → SUNSHADE CLOSE

   Then, release the control lever.

   When this is complete, the sunroof system is reset.

For more detailed information, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

If you do not reset the sunroof, it may not work properly.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:23 PM Page 37

STEERING WHEEL

Electronic power steering

Power steering uses the motor to assist you in steering the vehicle. If the engine is off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, the vehicle may still be steered, but it will require increased steering effort.

The electronic power steering is controlled by the power steering control unit which senses the steering wheel torque and vehicle speed to command the motor.

The steering effort becomes heavier as the vehicle's speed increases and becomes lighter as the vehicle's speed decreases for better control of the steering wheel.

Should you notice any change in the effort required to steer during normal vehicle operation, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

The following symptoms may occur during normal vehicle operation:

- **The EPS warning light does not illuminate.**
- **The steering effort is high immediately after turning the ignition switch on. This happens as the system performs the EPS system diagnostics. When the diagnostics is completed, the steering wheel will return to its normal condition.**
- **A click noise may be heard from the EPS relay after the ignition switch is turned to the ON or LOCK/OFF position.**
- **Motor noise may be heard when the vehicle is at a stop or at a low driving speed.**
- **The steering effort increases if the steering wheel is rotated continuously when the vehicle is not in motion. However, after a few minutes, it will return to its normal conditions.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **If an error is detected in the electric power steering system, EPS will stop assisting driver in steering the vehicle to prevent accidents and the warning light on the cluster will illuminate or blink. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.**
- **When you operate the steering wheel in low temperature, abnormal noise could occur. If temperature rises, the noise will disappear. This is a normal condition.**
- **When the vehicle is stationary, if you turn the steering wheel all the way to the left or right continuously, the steering wheel becomes heavier from the end. This is not a system malfunction but for your safety. As time passes, the steering wheel returns to its normal condition.**
- **When the charging system warning light comes on or the voltage is low (When the alternator (or battery) does not operate normally or it malfunctions), the steering wheel may get heavy and become difficult to control operate abnormally.**

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:23 PM Page 38

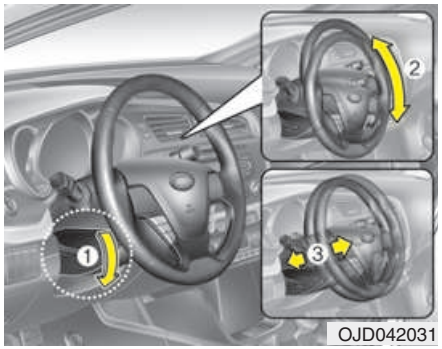
Tilt and telescopic steering

A tilt and telescopic steering wheel allows you to adjust the steering wheel before you drive. You can also raise it to give your legs more room when you exit and enter the vehicle.

The steering wheel should be positioned so that it is comfortable for you to drive, while permitting you to see the instrument panel warning lights and gauges.

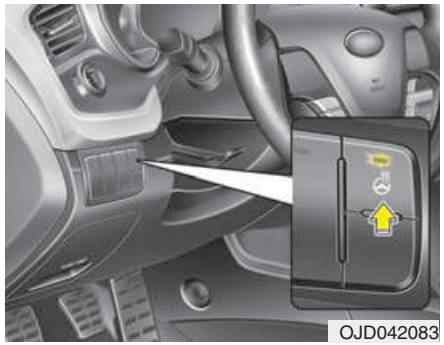
⚠ WARNING

- **Never adjust the angle and height of steering wheel while driving. You may lose your steering control and cause severe personal injury or accidents.**
- **After adjusting, push the steering wheel both up and down to be certain it is locked in position.**



OJD042031

To change the steering wheel angle, pull down the lock release lever (1), adjust the steering wheel to the desired angle (2) and height (3), then pull up the lock-release lever to lock the steering wheel in place. Be sure to adjust the steering wheel to the desired position before driving.


OJD042083

Heated steering wheel (if equipped)

With the ignition switch in the ON position, pressing the heated steering wheel button warms the steering wheel.

✻ NOTICE

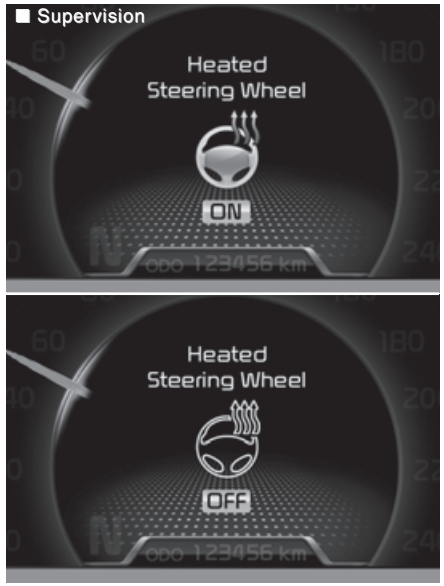
The heated steering wheel will turn off automatically approximately 30 minutes after the heated steering wheel is turned on.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:23 PM Page 39

■ Normal vision



■ Supervision



OJD042165/OJD042166/OJD042189/OJD042190

The indicator on the button will illuminate and notify you on the LCD display.
To turn the heated steering wheel off, press the button once again. The indicator on the button will turn off and notify you on the LCD display.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not install any grip to operate the steering wheel. This causes damage to the heated steering wheel system.



OJD042032

Horn

To sound the horn, press the horn symbol on your steering wheel.
Check the horn regularly to be sure it operates properly.

✻ NOTICE

To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration). The horn will operate only when this area is pressed.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not strike the horn severely to operate it, or hit it with your fist. Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:23 PM Page 40



OJD042161

Flex steering wheel (if equipped)

The flex steering wheel controls steering effort as driver's preference or road condition.

You can select the desired steering mode by pressing the steering mode button.

■ Normal vision



OJD042170

■ Supervision



OJD042239

When the steering mode button is pressed, the selected steering mode will appear on the LCD display.

If the steering mode button is pressed within 4 seconds, the steering mode will change as above pictures.

If the steering wheel mode button is not pressed for about 4 seconds, the LCD display will change to the previous screen.

■ Normal vision



OJD042167

■ Supervision



OJD042192

Normal mode

The normal mode offers medium steering effort.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:23 PM Page 41

■ Normal vision



OJD042169

■ Supervision



OJD042191

Comfort mode

The steering wheel becomes lighter. The comfort mode is usually used when driving in downtown or parking the vehicle.

Also, the comfort mode helps to drive easily with lower effort to steer the car.

■ Normal vision



OJD042168

■ Supervision



OJD042193

Sport mode

The steering wheel becomes heavier. The sport mode is usually used when driving in highway.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***For your safety, if you press the steering mode button while operating the steering wheel, the LCD display will change, but the steering effort will not change immediately. After operating the steering wheel, the steering effort will change automatically to the selected mode.***
- ***Be careful when changing the steering mode while driving.***
- ***When the electronic power steering is not working properly, the flex steering wheel will not work.***

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:23 PM Page 42

MIRRORS

Inside rearview mirror

Adjust the rearview mirror so that the center view through the rear window is seen. Make this adjustment before you start driving.

⚠ WARNING - Rear visibility

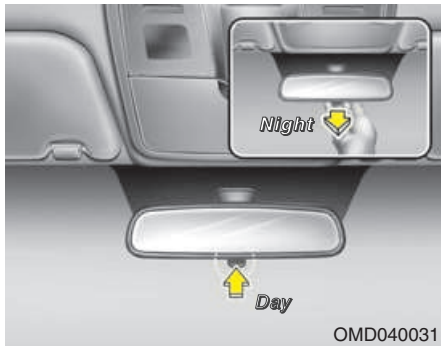
Do not place objects in the rear seat or cargo area which would interfere with your vision out the rear window.

⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the rearview mirror while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident which could cause death, serious injury or property damage.

⚠ WARNING

Do not modify the inside mirror and do not install a wide mirror. It could result in injury, during an accident or deployment of the air bag.



Day/night rearview mirror (if equipped)

Make this adjustment before you start driving and while the day/night lever is in the day position.

Pull the day/night lever toward you to reduce glare from the headlights of vehicles behind you during night driving.

Remember that you lose some rearview clarity in the night position.

Electric chromic mirror (ECM) (if equipped)

The electric rearview mirror automatically controls the glare from the headlights of the car behind you in nighttime or low light driving conditions. The sensor mounted in the mirror senses the light level around the vehicle, and automatically controls the headlight glare from vehicles behind you.

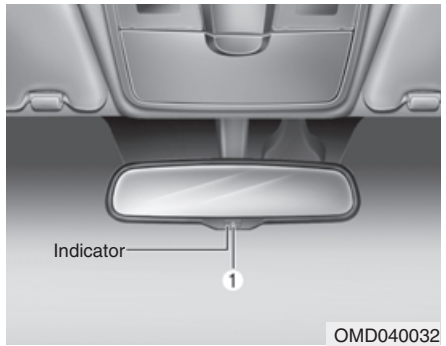
When the engine is running, the glare is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rearview mirror.

Whenever the shift lever is shifted into R (Reverse), the mirror will automatically go to the brightest setting in order to improve the drivers view behind the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:23 PM Page 43



To operate the electric rearview mirror:

- Press the on/off button (1) to turn the automatic dimming function on. The mirror indicator light will illuminate.

  Press the on/off button to turn the automatic dimming function off. The mirror indicator light will turn off.
- The mirror defaults to the ON position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.

Outside rearview mirror

Be sure to adjust mirror angles before driving.

Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rearview mirrors. The mirrors can be adjusted remotely with the remote switch. The mirror heads can be folded back to prevent damage during an automatic car wash or when passing in a narrow street.

⚠ WARNING - Rearview mirrors

- **The outside rearview mirror is convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.**
- **Use your interior rearview mirror or direct observation to determine the actual distance of following vehicles when changing lanes.**

⚠ CAUTION

Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass. If ice should restrict movement of the mirror, do not force the mirror for adjustment. To remove ice, use a deicer spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with very warm water.

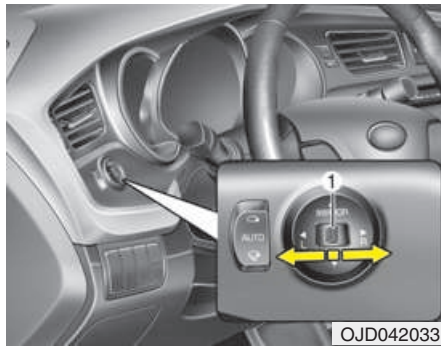
⚠ CAUTION

If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved spray de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) to release the frozen mechanism or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident which could cause death, serious injury or property damage.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:24 PM Page 44



OJD042033

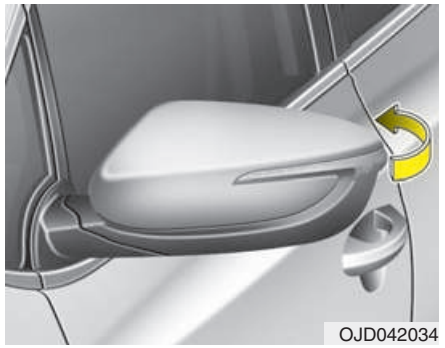
Remote control

The electric remote control mirror switch allows you to adjust the position of the left and right outside rearview mirrors. To adjust the position of either mirror, move the lever (1) to R (Right) or L (Left) to select the right side mirror or the left side mirror, then press a corresponding point on the mirror adjustment control to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.

After adjustment, put the lever into neutral (center) position to prevent inadvertent adjustment.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate while the switch is pressed. Do not press the switch longer than necessary, the motor may be damaged.***
- ***Do not attempt to adjust the outside rearview mirror by hand. Doing so may damage the parts.***

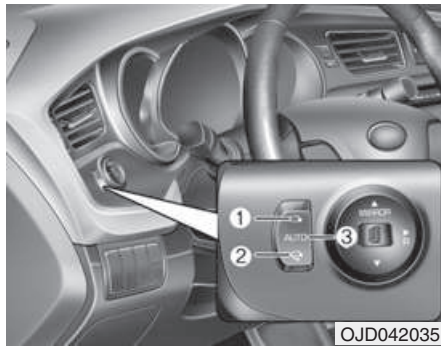

OJD042034

Folding the outside rearview mirror

Manual type

To fold outside rearview mirror, grasp the housing of mirror and then fold it toward the rear of the vehicle.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:24 PM Page 45



Electric type

The outside rearview mirror can be folded or unfolded by pressing the switch as below.

Up (1) : The mirror will unfold.

Down (2) : The mirror will fold.

Center (AUTO, 3) :

The mirror will fold or unfold automatically as follows:

- Without smart key system
  - The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the transmitter.
- With smart key system
  - The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the smart key.
  - The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the button on the outside door handle.
  - The mirror will unfold when you approach the vehicle (all doors closed and locked) with a smart key in possession.

⚠ CAUTION

The electric type outside rearview mirror operates even though the ignition switch is in the OFF position. However, to prevent unnecessary battery discharge, do not adjust the mirrors longer than necessary while the engine is not running.

⚠ CAUTION

In case it is an electric type outside rearview mirror, don't fold it by hand. It could cause motor failure.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:24 PM Page 46

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (NORMAL VISION)

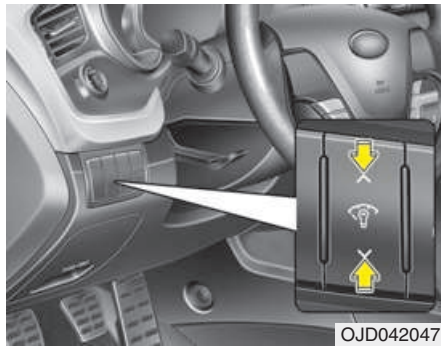


1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Fuel gauge
4. Warning and indicator lights (if equipped)
5. Turn signal indicators
6. LCD display

✻ The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
For more details, refer to "Gauges" in the following pages.

OJD042036

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:24 PM Page 47



OJD042047

Instrument panel illumination

The instrument panel illumination intensity can be adjusted as follows:

- Ignition switch in the ON position
- Pressing the upper or lower part of the switch

The illumination intensity is shown on the instrument cluster LCD display.



OJD042040

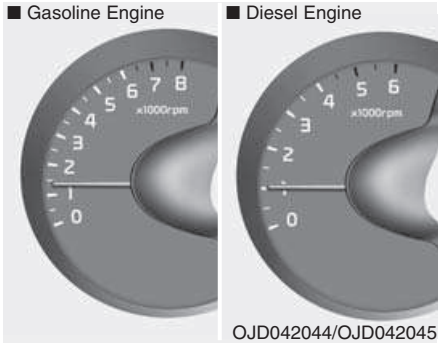
Gauges

Speedometer

The speedometer indicates the vehicle speed.

The speedometer is calibrated in kilometers per hour and/or miles per hour.

■ Gasoline Engine ■ Diesel Engine



OJD042044/OJD042045

Tachometer

The tachometer indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

Use the tachometer to select the correct shift points and to prevent lugging and/or over-revving the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the engine within the tachometer's RED ZONE. This may cause severe engine damage.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:24 PM Page 48



OJD042046

Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

✻ NOTICE

- **The fuel tank capacity is given in chapter 8.**
- **The fuel gauge is supplemented by a low fuel warning light, which will illuminate when the fuel tank is nearly empty.**
- **On inclines or curves, the fuel gauge may fluctuate or the low fuel warning light may come on earlier than usual due to the movement of fuel in the tank.**

⚠ WARNING - Fuel gauge

Running out of fuel can expose vehicle occupants to danger.

You must stop and obtain additional fuel as soon as possible after the warning light comes on or when the gauge indicator comes close to the "O (Empty)" level.

⚠ CAUTION

Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire damaging the catalytic converter.



OJD042058

Engine coolant temperature gauge

This gauge shows the temperature of the engine coolant when the ignition switch is ON.

Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to "If the engine overheats" in chapter 6.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:24 PM Page 49

⚠ CAUTION

If the gauge pointer moves beyond the normal range area toward the "130°C", it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.

⚠ WARNING

Never remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. The engine coolant is under pressure and could cause severe burns. Wait until the engine is cool before adding coolant to the reservoir.



OJD042231/OJD042232

Manual transaxle shift indicator (if equipped)

This indicator informs you which gear is desired while driving to save fuel.

For example

▲3: Indicates that shifting up to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 2nd or 1st gear).

▼3: Indicates that shifting down to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 4th or 5th gear).

You can turn off the indicator. Refer to "User setting" in this chapter.

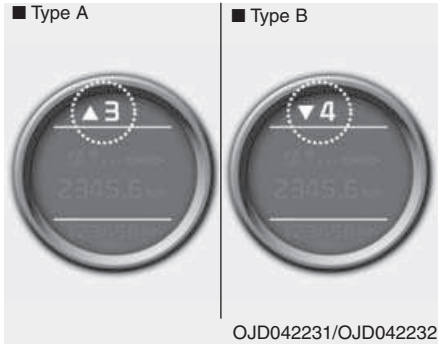


OJD042233

Automatic transaxle shift position indicator (if equipped)

The indicator displays which automatic transaxle shift lever is selected.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:24 PM Page 50



OJD042231/OJD042232

Automatic Transaxle Shift Indicator in sports mode (if equipped, For Europe)

In the Sports Mode, this indicator informs which gear is desired while driving to save fuel.

For example

▲3 : Indicates that shifting up to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 2nd or 1st gear).

▼3 : Indicates that shifting down to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 4th, 5th, or 6th gear).

When the system is not working properly, the indicator is not displayed.



OJD042234

Double clutch transmission (DS mode) shift indicator (if equipped)

The indicator displays which Double clutch transmission shift lever is selected.

In DS mode, the “SPORTS” indicator displays in cluster. For more detailed information about DS mode, refer to the chapter 5.

⚠ CAUTION - DCT

- ***When the problem of gear system occurs, the transaxle indicator will blink. For your safety, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.***
- ***When the clutch is overheated, the safe protection mode operates. According to the safe protection mode, the transaxle indicator blinks with buzzer sound. The buzzer beeps 3 times. In this time, the LCD warning about safe protection mode also displays. In this condition, the driving may not be smoothly. If you ignore this warning, the driving condition is getting worse and the system may have problem. To return the normal driving condition, apply the foot brake and stop the vehicle for few minutes before driving off.***

* DCT : Double clutch transmission

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:24 PM Page 51



OJD052031

Speed limiter indicator (if equipped)

The indicator illuminates when the speed limit control system is enabled by move the lever up on the steering wheel.

The indicator goes off when the lever up again to deactivate the system.

If there is a problem with the speed limit control system, the "---" indicator will blink. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

For more details, refer to "Speed limit control system" in chapter 5.

The speed limiter indicators illuminates on the LCD display.

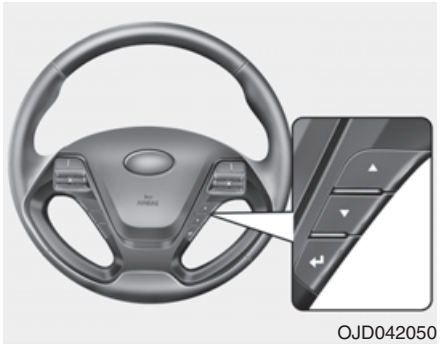


OJD042051

Odometer (km or mi.)

The odometer indicates the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

You will also find the odometer useful to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.



OJD042050

Trip computer

The trip computer is a microcomputer-controlled driver information system that displays information related to driving when the ignition switch is in the ON position. All stored driving information (except odometer, distance to empty and instant fuel economy) resets if the battery is disconnected.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:24 PM Page 52

Press the ▲ or ▼ button for less than 1 second to select any mode as follows:

- Tripmeter A
- Tripmeter B
- Distance to empty*
- Average fuel consumption*
- Instant fuel consumption*
- Average speed*
- Elapsed time*
- Engine coolant temperature gauge
- Service*
- User setting*

* : if equipped



OJD042052

Tripmeter (km or mi.)

This mode indicates the distance of individual trips selected since the last tripmeter reset.

The meter's working range is from 0.0 to 9999.9 km (0.0 to 9999.9 miles).

Pressing the ↵ button for more than 1 second, clears the tripmeter to zero (0.0).



OJD042053

Distance to empty (km or mi.)

This mode indicates the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining fuel. When the remaining distance is below 50 km (30 miles), "---" will be displayed.

The meter's working range is from 50 to 999 km (30 to 999 miles).

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:24 PM Page 53



OJD042054

Average fuel economy (if equipped) (L/100 km or MPG)

This mode calculates the average fuel consumption from the total fuel used and the distance since the last average fuel economy reset. The total fuel used is calculated from the fuel consumption input. For an accurate calculation, drive more than 50 m (0.03 miles).

To clear the average fuel economy to zero (--.-), do as follow;

• When the "AVG Fuel Economy" of "User Setting" is in the "Auto Reset"

If the vehicle speed exceeds 1 km/h after refueling more than 6 *l*, the average fuel consumption will be cleared to zero (---).

• When the "AVG Fuel Economy" of "User Setting" is in the "Manual Reset"

Pressing the ↵ button for more than 1 second, when the average fuel consumption is displayed, clears the average fuel consumption to zero (--.-).



OJD042055

Instant fuel economy (if equipped) (L/100 km or MPG)

This mode calculates the instant fuel consumption during the last few seconds.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:24 PM Page 54

✻ NOTICE

- **If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the "Distance to empty" function may not operate correctly.**
  The trip computer may not register additional fuel if less than 6 liters (1.6 gallons) of fuel are added to the vehicle.
- **The fuel economy and distance to empty may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.**
- **The distance to empty is an estimate of the available driving distance. This value may differ from the actual driving distance.**



OJD042056

Average speed (km/h or MPH)

This mode calculates the average speed of the vehicle since the last average speed reset.

Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the average speed keeps going while the engine is running.

Pressing the ↵ button for more than 1 second, when the average speed is displayed, clears the average speed to zero (---).



OJD042057

Elapsed time

This mode indicates the total time traveled since the last driving time reset.

Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the driving time keeps going while the engine is running.

The meter's working range is from 0:00~99:59.

Pressing the ↵ button for more than 1 second, when the driving time is being displayed, clears the driving time to zero (0:00).

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:24 PM Page 55



OJD042059

Service mode

This mode calculates when you need a scheduled maintenance service (mileage or days)

If you want to see the service mode when other modes are displayed, press the ▲ or ▼ button less than 1 second.



OJD042061

If you do not have your vehicle serviced according to the scheduled maintenance service on the LCD display, this LCD display will show the elapsed mileage or days.

If you want to reset the maintenance schedule, when the service required message is displayed :

- Press the ↵ button more than 5 seconds.
- "↵ : Reset" will be shown on the LCD display.
- Press the ↵ button again more than 1 second.

If you do not press the ↵ button within 5 seconds, "↵ : Reset" will disappear.

If you want to change the interval of the maintenance service schedule, we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

- **If you reset the maintenance schedule, when the displayed service schedule has not elapsed or elapsed without actual vehicle service, the displayed service schedule on the LCD display might not be match the actual service schedule anymore.**
  You should comply with the displayed service schedule on the LCD display for the maintenance of your vehicle.
- **If the battery is disconnected or discharged, the displayed service schedule might not match the actual service schedule.**

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:24 PM Page 56



OJD042060

If service mode is not activated, the LCD display shows, like the above picture.

In this case, we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.



OJD042063

User Settings

In this mode there are 3 kinds of the sub-menu.



OJD042064

1. Stop the vehicle with the ignition switch in the ON position or engine running.
2. Press the ▲ or ▼ button until the User setting mode is displayed.
3. With the User setting mode displayed, press the ↵ button until the screen is changed.
4. You can change the item by pressing the ▲ or ▼ button and select an item by pressing the ↵ button.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:24 PM Page 57

Door Menu

• Auto Door Lock

Off - The auto door lock operation will be canceled.

Speed - All doors will be automatically locked when the vehicle speed exceeds 15km/h (9.3mph).

Shift Lever - All doors will be automatically locked if the shift lever is shifted from the P(Park) position to the R(Reverse), N(Neutral) or D(Drive) position. (for automatic transaxle shift lever)

• Auto Door Unlock

Off - The auto door unlock operation will be canceled.

Key Out - All doors will be automatically unlocked when the ignition key is removed from ignition switch (or smart key is in the OFF position).

Shift Lever - All doors will be automatically unlocked if the shift lever is shifted to the P(Park) position. (for automatic transaxle shift lever)

Lamp Menu

• Headlamp delay (if equipped)

If the headlamp delay function is checked :

The Headlamp delay and Headlamp Welcome function will be activated.

• Welcome Light (if equipped)

If the welcome light function is checked :

The welcome light function of puddle lamp will activate.

• Auto Triple Turn (One-touch triple turn signal)

If the auto triple turn function is checked :

The lane change signals will blink 3 times when the turn signal lever is moved slightly.

Settings Menu

• Seat Easy Access (for Driver Position Memory System equipped vehicle) (if equipped)

If the seat easy access function is checked :

The driver's seat will automatically move forward or rearward for the driver to enter or exit the vehicle comfortably.

• Steering position (if equipped)

If the steering position function is checked:

The warning illuminates on the LCD display when the steering wheel is not aligned with the ENGINE STRAT/STOP button in the ON position.

• Shift indicator (for manual transaxle)

If the shift indicator function is checked :

The shift indicator function will be activated.

For more details, refer to “Manual transaxle shift indicator” in this chapter.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:24 PM Page 58

• AVG fuel ECO Reset

Auto Reset - The average fuel economy will reset automatically when you drive after refueling.

Manual Reset - The average fuel economy will not reset automatically when you drive after refueling. You can reset the average fuel economy by pressing the ↵ button for more than 1 second when the average fuel economy is displayed.

• Language

Choose the language you prefer within the LCD display.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:24 PM Page 59

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (SUPERVISION)

■ Type A



1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Fuel gauge
4. Warning and indicator lights (if equipped)
5. Turn signal indicators
6. LCD display

❈ The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
For more details, refer to "Gauges" in the following pages.

OJD042038L

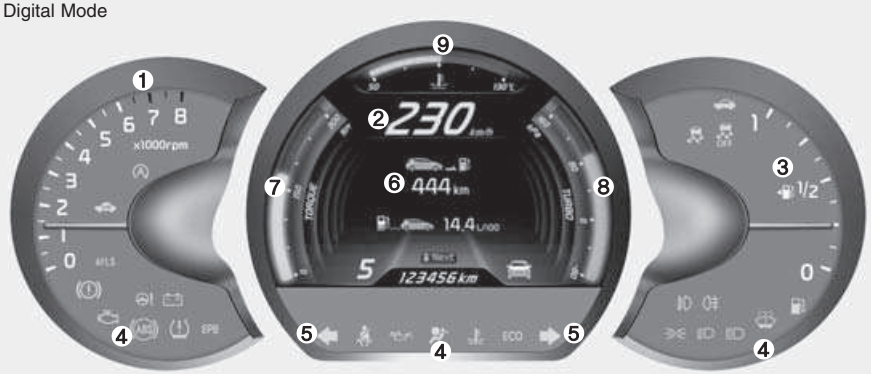
JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:24 PM Page 60

■ Type B (for T-GDI engine)

• Analog Mode



• Digital Mode

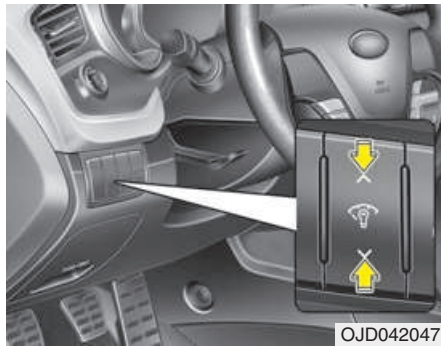


1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Fuel gauge
4. Warning and indicator lights (if equipped)
5. Turn signal indicators
6. LCD display
7. Engine torque gauge
8. Turbo boost pressure gauge
9. Engine coolant temperature gauge

❈ The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
For more details, refer to "Gauges" in the following pages.

OJD043038/OJD043248

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:24 PM Page 61



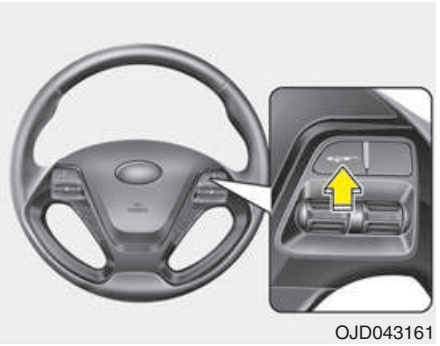
OJD042047

Instrument panel illumination

The instrument panel illumination intensity can be adjusted as follows:

- Ignition switch in the ON position
- Pressing the upper or lower part of the switch

The illumination intensity is shown on the instrument cluster LCD display.

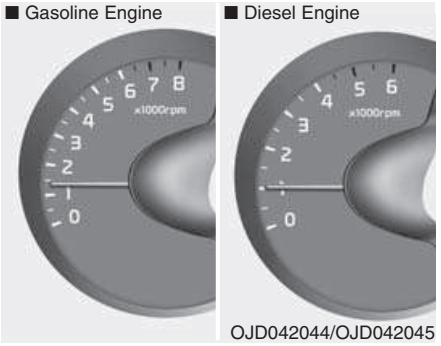


OJD043161

Cluster display mode conversion (for T-GDI engine)

You can switch the display mode "Analog" or "Digital" with pressing the button.

■ Gasoline Engine ■ Diesel Engine



OJD042044/OJD042045

Gauges

Tachometer

The tachometer indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

Use the tachometer to select the correct shift points and to prevent lugging and/or over-revving the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the engine within the tachometer's RED ZONE. This may cause severe engine damage.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:24 PM Page 62

■ Type A



OJD042042

■ Type B
• km/h



OJD043505

• MPH



OJD043506

■ Type C
• km/h



OJD043507

• MPH



OJD043508

Speedometer

The speedometer indicates the vehicle speed.

The speedometer is calibrated in kilometers per hour and/or miles per hour.



OJD042046

Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

✻ NOTICE

- **The fuel tank capacity is given in chapter 8.**
- **The fuel gauge is supplemented by a low fuel warning light, which will illuminate when the fuel tank is nearly empty.**
- **On inclines or curves, the fuel gauge may fluctuate or the low fuel warning light may come on earlier than usual due to the movement of fuel in the tank.**

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:24 PM Page 63

⚠ WARNING - Fuel gauge

Running out of fuel can expose vehicle occupants to danger.

You must stop and obtain additional fuel as soon as possible after the warning light comes on or when the gauge indicator comes close to the "O (Empty)" level.

⚠ CAUTION

Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire damaging the catalytic converter.



OJD043249

Engine torque gauge (for T-GDI engine)

It shows instantaneous change of the Torque by rpm.

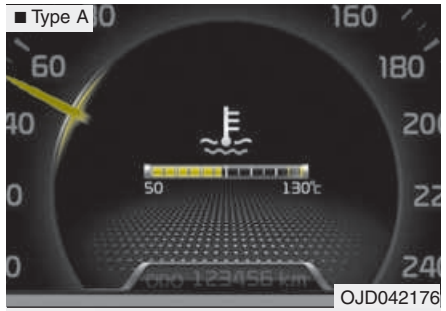


OJD043251

Turbo boost pressure gauge (for T-GDI engine)

It shows instantaneous change of the turbo boost pressure.

■ Type A



OJD042176

■ Type B



OJD043250

Engine coolant temperature gauge

This gauge shows the temperature of the engine coolant when the ignition switch is ON.

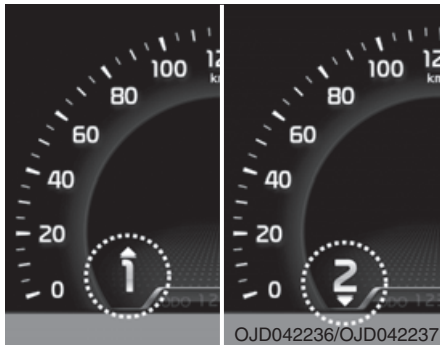
Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to “If the engine overheats” in chapter 6.

⚠ CAUTION

If the gauge pointer moves beyond the normal range area toward the “130°C” position, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.

⚠ WARNING

Never remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. The engine coolant is under pressure and could cause severe burns. Wait until the engine is cool before adding coolant to the reservoir.



OJD042236/OJD042237

Manual transaxle shift indicator

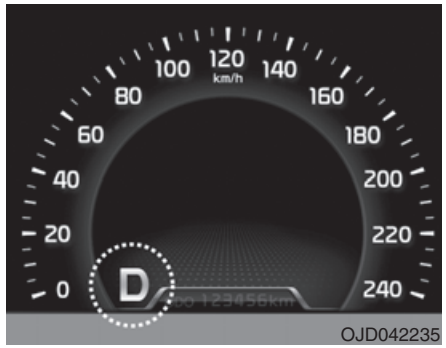
This indicator informs you which gear is desired while driving to save fuel.

For example

▲3: Indicates that shifting up to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 2nd or 1st gear).

▼3: Indicates that shifting down to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 4th or 5th gear).

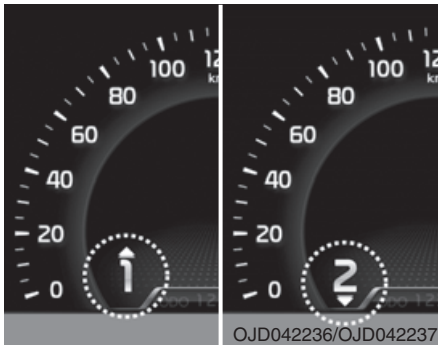
JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:25 PM Page 65



OJD042235

Automatic transaxle shift position indicator (if equipped)

The indicator displays which automatic transaxle shift lever is selected.



OJD042236/OJD042237

Automatic Transaxle Shift Indicator in sports mode (if equipped, For Europe)

In the Sports Mode, this indicator informs which gear is desired while driving to save fuel.

For example

▲3 : Indicates that shifting up to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 2nd or 1st gear).

▼3 : Indicates that shifting down to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 4th, 5th, or 6th gear).

When the system is not working properly, the indicator is not displayed.



OJD042238

Double clutch transmission (DS mode) shift indicator (if equipped)

The indicator displays which Double clutch transmission shift lever is selected.

In DS mode, the “S” indicator displays with “SPORTS” indicator in cluster. For more detailed information about DS mode, refer to the chapter 5.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:25 PM Page 66

⚠ CAUTION - DCT

- ***When the problem of gear system occurs, the transaxle indicator will blink. For your safety, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.***
- ***When the clutch is overheated, the safe protection mode operates. According to the safe protection mode, the transaxle indicator blinks with buzzer sound. The buzzer beeps 3 times. In this time, the LCD warning about safe protection mode also displays. In this condition, the driving may not be smoothly. If you ignore this warning, the driving condition is getting worse and the system may have problem. To return the normal driving condition, apply the foot brake and stop the vehicle for few minutes before driving off.***

❈ DCT : Double clutch transmission



OJD052043

Speed limiter indicator (if equipped)

The indicator illuminates when the speed limit control system is enabled by move the lever up on the steering wheel.

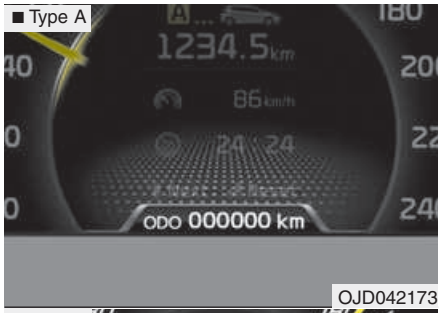
The indicator goes off when the lever up again to deactivate the system.

If there is a problem with the speed limit control system, the "---" indicator will blink. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

For more details, refer to "Speed limit control system" in chapter 5.

The speed limiter indicators illuminates on the LCD display.

■ Type A



OJD042173

■ Type B



OJD043504

Odometer (km or mi.)

The odometer indicates the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

You will also find the odometer useful to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

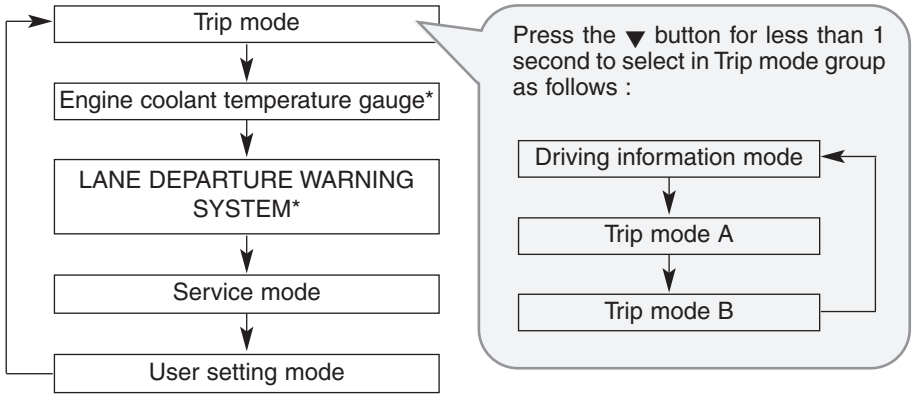
JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:25 PM Page 67



Trip computer

The trip computer is a microcomputer-controlled driver information system that displays information related to driving when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

Press the button for less than 1 second to select any group as follows :



* : if equipped

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:25 PM Page 68



OJD042175

Driving information mode

This mode indicates 3 kinds of driving Information.

All stored driving information (except odometer, distance to empty and instant fuel economy) resets if the battery is disconnected.

1. Distance to empty (km or mi.)

This mode indicates the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining fuel. When the remaining distance is below 50 km (30 miles), "---" will be displayed.

The meter's working range is from 50 to 999 km (30 to 999 miles).

2. Average fuel economy (L/100 km or MPG)

This mode calculates the average fuel consumption from the total fuel used and the distance since the last average fuel economy reset. The total fuel used is calculated from the fuel consumption input. For an accurate calculation, drive more than 50 m (0.03 miles).

To clear the average fuel economy to zero (--.-), do as follow;

• When the "AVG Fuel Economy" of "User Setting" is in the "Auto Reset"

If the vehicle speed exceeds 1 km/h after refueling more than 6 *l*, the average fuel consumption will be cleared to zero (---).

• When the "AVG Fuel Economy" of "User Setting" is in the "Manual Reset"

Pressing the ↵ button for more than 1 second, when the average fuel consumption is displayed, clears the average fuel consumption to zero (--.-).

3. Instant fuel economy (L/100 km or MPG)

This mode calculates the instant fuel consumption during the last few seconds.

✻ NOTICE

- **If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the "Distance to empty" function may not operate correctly.**
  The trip computer may not register additional fuel if less than 6 liters (1.6 gallons) of fuel are added to the vehicle.
- **The fuel economy and distance to empty may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.**
- **The distance to empty is an estimate of the available driving distance. This value may differ from the actual driving distance.**

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:25 PM Page 69



OJD042174

Trip mode (A, B)

This mode indicates 3 kinds of driving Information.

All stored driving information (except odometer, distance to empty and instant fuel economy) resets if the battery is disconnected.

1. Tripmeter (km or mi.)

This mode indicates the distance of individual trips selected since the last tripmeter reset.

The meter's working range is from 0.0 to 9999.9 km (0.0 to 9999.9 miles).

Pressing the ↵ button for more than 1 second, clears the tripmeter to zero (0.0).

2. Average speed (km/h or MPH)

This mode calculates the average speed of the vehicle since the last average speed reset.

Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the average speed keeps going while the engine is running.

Pressing the ↵ button for more than 1 second, when the average speed is displayed, clears the average speed to zero (---).

3. Elapsed time

This mode indicates the total time traveled since the last driving time reset.

Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the driving time keeps going while the engine is running.

The meter's working range is from 0:00~99:59.

Pressing the ↵ button for more than 1 second, when the driving time is being displayed, clears the driving time to zero (0:00).



OJD042180

Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Mode (if equipped)

This mode displays the state of the Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS).
For more details, refer to “Lane departure warning system” in chapter 5.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:25 PM Page 70



OJD042186

Service mode

This mode calculates when you need a scheduled maintenance service (mileage or days)

If you want to see the service mode when other modes are displayed, press the button less than 1 second.



OJD042184

If you do not have your vehicle serviced according to the scheduled maintenance service on the LCD display, this LCD display will show the elapsed mileage or days.

If you want to reset the maintenance schedule, when the service required message is displayed :

- Press the ↵ button more than 5 seconds.
- " ↵ : Reset" will be shown on the LCD display.
- Press the ↵ button again more than 1 second.

If you do not press the ↵ button within 5 seconds, " ↵ : Reset" will disappear.

If you want to change the interval of the maintenance service schedule, we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

- **If you reset the maintenance schedule, when the displayed service schedule has not elapsed or elapsed without actual vehicle service, the displayed service schedule on the LCD display might not be match the actual service schedule anymore.**
  You should comply with the displayed service schedule on the LCD display for the maintenance of your vehicle.
- **If the battery is disconnected or discharged, the displayed service schedule might not match the actual service schedule.**

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:25 PM Page 71



OJD042185

If service mode is not activated, the LCD display shows, like the above picture.

In this case, we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.



OJD042187

User Settings

1. Stop the vehicle with the ignition switch in the ON position or engine running.
2. Press the button until the User setting mode is displayed.
3. You can change the item by pressing the ▼ button and select an item by pressing the ↵ button.

Door Menu

• Auto Door Lock

Off - The auto door lock operation will be canceled.

Speed - All doors will be automatically locked when the vehicle speed exceeds 15km/h (9.3mph).

Shift Lever - All doors will be automatically locked if the shift lever is shifted from the P(Park) position to the R(Reverse), N(Neutral) or D(Drive) position. (for automatic transaxle shift lever)

• Auto Door Unlock

Off - The auto door unlock operation will be canceled.

Key Out - All doors will be automatically unlocked when the ignition key is removed from ignition switch (or smart key is in the OFF position).

Shift Lever - All doors will be automatically unlocked if the shift lever is shifted to the P(Park) position. (for automatic transaxle shift lever)

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:25 PM Page 72

Lamp Menu

• Headlamp delay (if equipped)

If the headlamp delay function is checked :

The Headlamp delay and Headlamp Welcome function will be activated.

• Auto Triple Turn (One-touch triple turn signal)

If the auto triple turn function is checked :

The lane change signals will blink 3 times when the turn signal lever is moved slightly.

• Welcome Light (if equipped)

If the welcome light function is checked :

The welcome light function of puddle lamp will activate.

Settings Menu

• Seat Easy Access (for Driver Position Memory System equipped vehicle) (if equipped)

If the seat easy access function is checked:

The driver's seat will automatically move forward or rearward for the driver to enter or exit the vehicle comfortably.

• Welcome Sound

If the welcome sound function is checked :

The Welcome Sound function will be activated.

• Steering Position (if equipped)

If the steering position function is checked:

The warning illuminates on the LCD display when the steering wheel is not aligned with the ENGINE STRAT/STOP button in the ON position.

• AVG fuel ECO Reset

Auto Reset - The average fuel economy will reset automatically when you drive after refueling.

Manual Reset - The average fuel economy will not reset automatically when you drive after refueling. You can reset the average fuel economy by pressing the ↵ button for more than 1 second when the average fuel economy is displayed.

• Speed Gauge Scale (if equipped)

- 100% : The size of the numbers on speed gauge is normal state.
- 110% : The size of the numbers on speed gauge will increase.

• Unit

You can choose the displayed unit in the instrument cluster “km” or “mile”.

• Language

Choose the language you prefer within the LCD display.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:25 PM Page 73

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042078/OJD042215

LCD display information

Sunroof open

If driver removes the ignition key (Smart key : turns off the engine) and opens the driver-side door when the sunroof is not fully closed, warning message will appear on the LCD display. Also, the warning chime sounds for approximately 7 seconds.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042240/OJD042188

Illumination intensity

The illumination intensity of the instrument panel is shown when adjusting it with the illumination control switch.

For more details, refer to “Instrument panel illumination” in chapter 4.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042079/OJD042214

Turn on "FUSE SWITCH" (mode switch)

The notice appears to inform the driver to turn on the fuse switch in the instrument panel under the steering wheel.

For more details, refer to “Fuses” in chapter 7.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:25 PM Page 74

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



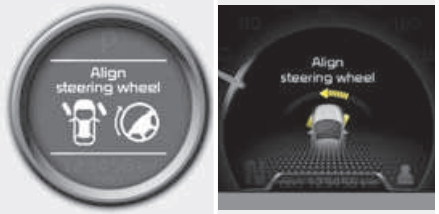
OJD042163/OJD042196

Parking assist warning (if equipped)

Displays the area an obstacle is detected while moving forward or rearward.

For more details, refer to “Parking assist system” in chapter 4.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042164/OJD042211

Align steering wheel (if equipped)

If you start the engine when the steering wheel is turned 90 degrees to the left (or right) after a couple of seconds, “Align steering wheel” illuminates on the LCD display for 5 seconds.

Turn the steering wheel to the right (or left) and make it turned to the left (or right) less than 30 degrees.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042073/OJD042205

For vehicle’s equipped with smart key system

Key not in vehicle

If the smart key is not in the vehicle and if any door is opened or closed with the engine start/stop button in the ACC, ON, or START position, the warning illuminates on the LCD display. Also, the chime sounds for 5 seconds when the smart key is not in the vehicle and the door is closed.

Always have the smart key with you.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 75

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision

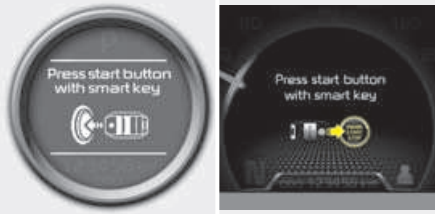


OJD042072/OJD042204

Key not detected

If the smart key is not in the vehicle or is not detected and you press the engine start/stop button, the warning illuminates on the LCD display for 10 seconds. Also, the immobilizer indicator blinks for 10 seconds.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042075/OJD042207

Press start button with smart key

If you press the engine start/stop button while the warning “Key not detected” illuminates the warning “Press the start button with smart key” illuminates for 10 seconds on the LCD display. Also, the immobilizer indicator blinks for 10 seconds.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042066/OJD042198

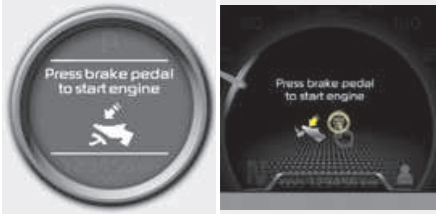
Low key battery

If the engine start/stop button changes to the OFF position when the smart key in the vehicle discharges, the warning illuminates on the LCD display for about 10 seconds. Also, the warning chime sounds once.

Replace the battery with a new one.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 76

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision

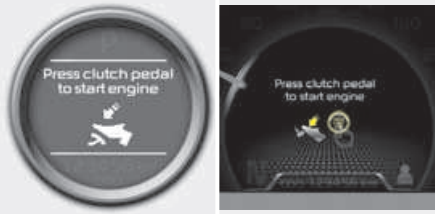


OJD042070/OJD042202

Press brake pedal to start engine (for automatic transaxle)

If the engine start/stop button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the brake pedal, the warning illuminates on the LCD display for about 10 seconds to indicate that you should depress the brake pedal to start the engine.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042071/OJD042203

Press clutch pedal to start engine (for manual transaxle)

If the engine start/stop button turns to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the clutch pedal, the warning illuminates on the LCD display for about 10 seconds to indicate that you should depress the clutch pedal to start the engine.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042065/OJD042197

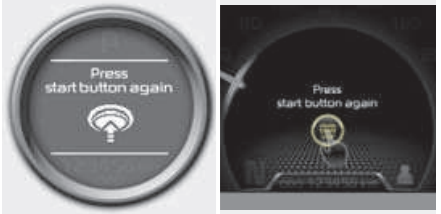
Shift to "P" position (for automatic transaxle)

If you try to turn off the engine without the shift lever in the P (Park) position, the engine start/stop button will turn to the ACC position. If the button is pressed once more it will turn to the ON position. The warning illuminates on the LCD display for about 10 seconds to indicate that you should press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the P (Park) position to turn off the engine.

Also, the warning chime sounds for about 10 seconds. (if equipped)

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 77

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042074/OJD042206

Press start button again

If you can not operate the engine start/stop button when there is a problem with the engine start/stop button system, the warning illuminates for 10 seconds and the chime sounds continuously to indicate that you could start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button once more.

The chime will stop if the engine start/stop button system works normally or the theft alarm system is armed.

If the warning illuminates each time you press the engine start/stop button, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



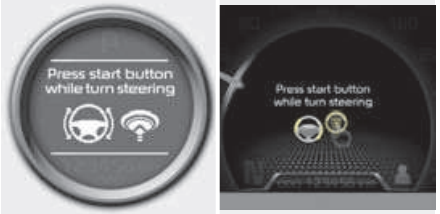
OJD042077/OJD042209

Shift to "P" or "N" to start engine

If you try to start the engine with the shift lever not in the P(Park) or N(Neutral) position, the warning illuminates for about 10 seconds on the LCD display.

You can also start the engine with the shift lever in the N(Neutral) position, but for your safety start the engine with the shift lever in the P(Park) position.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042067/OJD042199

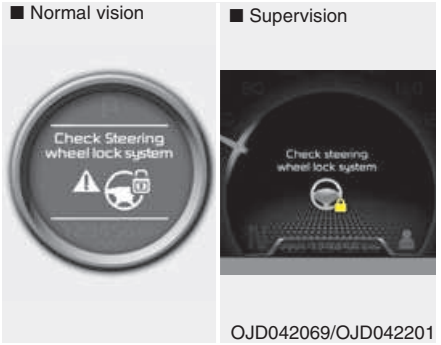
Press start button while turn steering (if equipped)

If the steering wheel does not unlock normally when the engine start/stop button is pressed, the warning illuminates for 10 seconds on the LCD display. Also, the warning chime sounds once and the engine start/stop button light blinks for 10 seconds.

When you are warned, press the engine start/stop button while turning the steering wheel right and left.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 78

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision

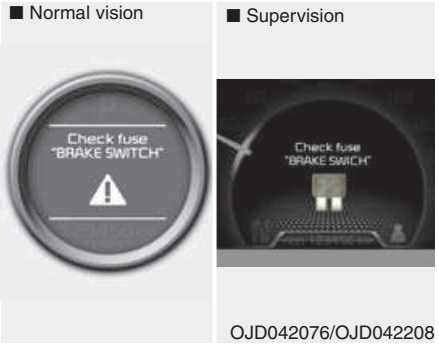


OJD042069/OJD042201

Check steering wheel lock system (if equipped)

If the steering wheel does not lock normally when the engine start/stop button changes to the OFF position, the warning illuminates for 10 seconds on the LCD display. Also, the warning chime sounds for 3 seconds and the engine start/stop button light blinks for 10 seconds.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042076/OJD042208

Check "BRAKE SWITCH" fuse

When the brake switch fuse is disconnected, the warning illuminates for 10 seconds on the LCD display.

Replace the fuse with a new one. If that is not possible you can start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button for 10 seconds in ACC.



OJD043509

Torque reduced due to overheating (for T-GDI engine)

When the engine coolant temperature exceeds 115°C, this message will be displayed and the torque will be reduced to protect the engine.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 79

Warnings and indicators (Instrument cluster)

All warning lights are checked by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). If any light that does not illuminate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

After starting the engine, check to make sure that all warning lights are off. If any are still on, this indicates a situation that needs attention.

The following warning and indicators are introduced in the previous pages.

- Automatic transaxle/Double clutch transmission shift lever indicator
- Manual transaxle shift indicator
- Parking assist warning (LCD display)

Active ECO indicator (if equipped)



When the active ECO is operating the ECO indicator illuminates green. For more detailed information, refer to "Active ECO" in chapter 5.

Seat belt warning and chime light



As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will blink or illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

For more details, refer to the “Seat belt” in chapter 3.

Air bag warning light



This warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch to the ON position.

This light also comes on when the SRS is not working properly. If the air bag warning light does not come on, or continuously remains on after operating for about 6 seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON position or started the engine, or if it comes on while driving, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 80

Immobilizer indicator



Without smart key system

This indicator illuminates when the immobilizer key is inserted and turned to the ON position to start the engine.

At this time, you can start the engine. The indicator goes out after the engine is running.

If this indicator blinks when the ignition switch is in the ON position before starting the engine, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

With smart key system

If any of the following occurs in a vehicle equipped with the smart key, the immobilizer indicator illuminates, blinks or goes off.

- When the smart key is in the vehicle, if the engine start/stop button is in the ACC or ON position, the indicator will illuminate for approximately 30 seconds to indicate that you are able to start the engine. However, when the smart key is not in the vehicle, if the engine start/stop button is pressed, the indicator will blink for a few seconds to indicate that you are not be able to start the engine.
- If the indicator illuminates only for 2 seconds and goes out when the engine start/stop button is turned to ON position with the smart key in the vehicle, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.
- When the battery is weak, if the engine start/stop button is pressed, the indicator will blink and you are not able to start the engine. However, you are able to start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button directly with the smart key. Also, if the smart key system related parts have a problem, the indicator will blink.

Tailgate open warning light



This warning light illuminates when the tailgate is not closed securely.

Low fuel level warning



This warning light indicates the fuel tank is nearly empty. When it comes on, you should add fuel as soon as possible. Driving with the fuel level warning light on or with the fuel level below “O/E” can cause the engine to misfire and damage the catalytic converter (if equipped).

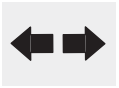
JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 81

Electronic Power Steering (EPS) system warning light (if equipped)



This indicator light comes on after the ignition key is turned to the ON position and then it will go off in approximately 3 seconds if there is no problem with EPS. This light also comes on when the EPS has some problems. If it comes on while driving, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Turn signal indicator lights



The blinking green arrows on the instrument panel show the direction indicated by the turn signals. If the arrow comes on but does not blink, blinks more rapidly than normal, or does not illuminate at all, a malfunction in the turn signal system is indicated. Your dealer should be consulted for repairs.

Light on indicator



The indicator illuminates when the tail lights or headlights are ON.

Low Beam Indicator Light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates when the headlights are on.

High beam indicator



This indicator illuminates when the headlights are on and in the high beam position or when the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 82

Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFLS) malfunction indicator (if equipped)



If the AFLS malfunction indicator illuminates, the AFLS is not working properly. Drive to the nearest safe location and restart the engine. If the indicator continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Front fog light indicator (if equipped)



The indicator illuminates when the front fog lights are ON.

Rear fog light indicator (if equipped)



This indicator illuminates when the rear fog lights are ON.

Parking brake & brake fluid warning



Parking brake warning

This light illuminates when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position. The warning light should go off when the parking brake is released.

Low brake fluid level warning

If the warning light remains on, it may indicate that the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.

If the warning light remains on:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the engine stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required. Then check all brake components for fluid leaks.
3. Do not drive the vehicle if leaks are found, the warning light remains on or the brakes do not operate properly. We recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 83

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-diagonal braking systems. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail. With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal pressure are required to stop the car. Also, the car will not stop in as short a distance with only a portion of the brake system working. If the brakes fail while you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional engine braking and stop the car as soon as it is safe to do so.

To check bulb operation, check whether the parking brake and brake fluid warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

⚠ WARNING

Driving the vehicle with a warning light on is dangerous. If the brake warning light remains on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Electric Parking Brake (EPB) malfunction indicator (if equipped)



The EPB malfunction indicator will illuminate when the ignition switch is turned ON, but should go off after approximately 3 seconds. If the warning light does not come on, or continuously remains on we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Also, the EPB malfunction indicator may illuminate when the ESC indicator comes on to indicate that the ESC is not working properly, but if this occurs, it does not indicate the EPB has malfunctioned.

For more details, refer to "EPB" in chapter 5.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS) warning light



This light illuminates if the ignition switch is turned ON and goes off in approximately 3 seconds if the system is operating normally.

If the ABS warning light remains on, comes on while driving, or does not come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, this indicates that there may be a problem with the ABS.

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer. The normal braking system will still be operational, but without the assistance of the anti-lock brake system.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 84

Electronic brake force distribution (EBD) system warning light



If two warning lights illuminate at the same time while driving, your vehicle's ABS and EBD system may have malfunctioned.
In this case, your ABS and regular brake system may not work normally. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

If the ABS warning light or EBD warning light is on and stays on, the speedometer or odometer/tripmeter may not work. Also, the EPS warning light may illuminate and the steering effort may increase or decrease. In this case, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

If both ABS and Brake warning lights are on and stay on, your vehicle's brake system will not work normally. So you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking. In this case, avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking except an emergency situation.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator (if equipped)



The ESC indicator will illuminate when the ignition switch is turned ON, but should go off after approximately 3 seconds. When the ESC is on, it monitors the driving conditions. Under normal driving conditions, the ESC indicator will remain off. When a slippery or low traction condition is encountered, the ESC will operate, and the ESC indicator will blink to indicate the ESC is operating.
But, if the ESC system malfunctions the indicator illuminates and stays on. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

ESC OFF indicator (if equipped)



The ESC OFF indicator will illuminate when the ignition switch is turned ON, but should go off after approximately 3 seconds. To switch to ESC OFF mode, press the ESC OFF button. The ESC OFF indicator will illuminate indicating the ESC is deactivated.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 85

Auto stop indicator (if equipped)



This indicator will illuminate when the engine enters the Idle Stop mode of the ISG (Idle Stop and Go) system.

When the automatic starting occurrs, the auto stop indicator on the cluster will blink for 5 seconds.

For more details, refer to the ISG (Idle Stop and Go) system in chapter 5.

For vehicles equipped with instrument cluster type B, the indicator illuminates on the LCD display.

✻ NOTICE

When the engine automatically starts by the ISG system, some warning lights (ABS, ESC, ESC OFF, EPS or Parking brake warning light) may turn on for a few seconds.
This happens because of low battery voltage. It does not mean the system is malfunctioning.

Cruise indicator (if equipped)

CRUISE indicator



The indicator illuminates when the cruise control system is enabled.

The cruise indicator in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the cruise control ON-OFF button on the steering wheel is pushed.

The indicator goes off when the cruise control ON-OFF button is pushed again. For more information about the use of cruise control, refer to “Cruise control system” in chapter 5.

Cruise SET indicator



The indicator illuminates when the cruise control switch (SET- or RES+) is ON.

The cruise SET indicator in the instrument cluster illuminats when the cruise control switch (SET- or RES+) is pushed.

The cruise SET indicator does not illuminate when the cruise control cancel button O is pushed or the system is disengaged.

Charging system warning light



This warning light indicates a malfunction of either the generator or electrical charging system.

If the warning light comes on while the vehicle is in motion:

1. Drive to the nearest safe location.
2. With the engine off, check the generator drive belt for looseness or breakage.
3. If the belt is adjusted properly, a problem exists somewhere in the electrical charging system. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 86

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) indicator (if equipped)

Low tire pressure telltale/ TPMS malfunction indicator



The low tire pressure telltale comes on for 3 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

The low tire pressure and position telltales illuminates when one or more of your tires is significantly underinflated.

The TPMS malfunction indicator will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

For more details, refer to the TPMS in chapter 6.

The low tire pressure position telltale illuminates on the LCD display.

⚠ WARNING - Safe stopping

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tire damage caused by external factors.**
- **If you notice any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator pedal, apply the brakes gradually and with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

Engine oil pressure warning



This warning light indicates the engine oil pressure is low.

If the warning light illuminates while driving:

1. Drive safely to the side of the road and stop.
2. With the engine off, check the engine oil level. If the level is low, add oil as required.

If the warning light remains on after adding oil or if oil is not available, we recommend that you call an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

If the engine does not stop immediately after the engine oil pressure warning light is illuminated, severe damage could result.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 87

⚠ CAUTION

If the oil pressure warning light stays on while the engine is running, serious engine damage may result. The oil pressure warning light comes on whenever there is insufficient oil pressure. In normal operation, it should come on when the ignition switch is turned on, then go out when the engine is started. If the oil pressure warning light stays on while the engine is running, there is a serious malfunction.

If this happens, stop the car as soon as it is safe to do so, turn off the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is low, fill the engine oil to the proper level and start the engine again. If the light stays on with the engine running, turn the engine off immediately. In any instance where the oil light stays on when the engine is running, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Engine oil level warning light (if equipped, for diesel)



The engine oil level warning light illuminates when the engine oil level should be checked.

If the warning light comes on, check the engine oil level as soon as possible and add engine oil as required.

Slowly pour the recommended oil little by little into a funnel. (Oil refill capacity : approximately 0.6 ~ 1.0 *l*)

Use only the specified engine oil. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in chapter 8.)

Do not overfill the engine oil to ensure the oil level is not above F mark on the dipstick.

✻ NOTICE

- **If you travel approximately 50 km~100 km after the engine warms up, after adding the engine oil, the warning light will go off.**
- **Cycle the ignition from OFF to ON 3 times within 10 seconds, the warning light will go off immediately. However, when you turn off the warning light without adding the engine oil, the light will come on again after traveling approximately 50 km ~ 100 km after the engine warms up.**

⚠ CAUTION

If the light comes on continuously after adding the engine oil and traveling approximately 50 km~100 km after the engine warms up, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Even if this light doesn't come on after the engine has started, the engine oil should be checked and supplied periodically.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 88

Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) (check engine light)



This indicator light is part of the Engine Control System which monitors various emission control system components. If this light illuminates while driving, it indicates that a potential problem has been detected somewhere in the emission control system.
This light will also illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, and will go out in a few seconds after the engine is started. If it illuminates while driving, or does not illuminate when the ignition key is turned to the ON position, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.
Generally, your vehicle will continue to be drivable, but we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

Prolonged driving with the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light illuminated may cause damage to the emission control systems which could effect drivability and/or fuel economy.

⚠ CAUTION - Gasoline engine

If the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light illuminates, potential catalytic converter damage is possible which could result in loss of engine power. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION - Diesel engine (if equipped with DPF)

When the malfunction indicator light blinks, it may stop blinking after driving the vehicle at more than 60km/h (37 mph) or at more than second gear with 1500 ~ 2000 engine rpm for a certain time (for about 25 minutes).

If the malfunction indicator light continues to blink in spite of the procedure, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

If you continue to drive with the malfunction indicator light blinking for a long time, the DPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can worsen.

⚠ CAUTION - Diesel engine

If the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light blinks, some error related to the injection quantity adjustment occurs which could result in loss of engine power, combustion noise and poor emission. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 89

Engine coolant temperature warning light (if equipped)



The warning light illuminates if the temperature of the engine coolant is above 120±3°C (248±5.4°F).

Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to “Overheating” in chapter 6.

✻ NOTICE

If the engine coolant temperature warning light illuminates, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.

Glow indicator (Diesel engine)



The indicator light illuminates when the ignition switch is placed at the ON position. The engine can be started after the preheat indicator light goes off. The illuminating time varies with the water temperature, air temperature and battery condition.

✻ NOTICE

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds after the preheating is completed, turn the ignition key once more to the LOCK/OFF position for 10 seconds, and then to the ON position, in order to preheat again.

⚠ CAUTION

If the preheat indicator light continues to illuminate or flash on and off after the engine has warmed up or while driving, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Fuel filter warning light (Diesel engine)



This warning light illuminates for 3 seconds after the ignition switch is set to the ON position and then it will go out. If it lights up while the engine is running, it indicates that water has accumulated inside the fuel filter. If this happens, remove the water from the fuel filter.

For more details, refer to “Fuel filter” in chapter 7.

⚠ CAUTION

When the fuel filter warning light illuminates, engine power (vehicle speed & idle speed) may decrease. If you keep driving with the warning light on, you can damage your vehicle's engine parts and injection system of the Common Rail. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 90

LCD DISPLAY WARNINGS AND INDICATORS (INSTRUMENT PANEL DISPLAY)



OJD042142



OJD042145

Calendar / Clock / Outside ambient Temperature (if equipped)

The monitor will display the outside ambient temperature, date and time.

To change the date, time or temperature unit(°C ↔ °F), press the SET (2) button for more than 1 seconds.

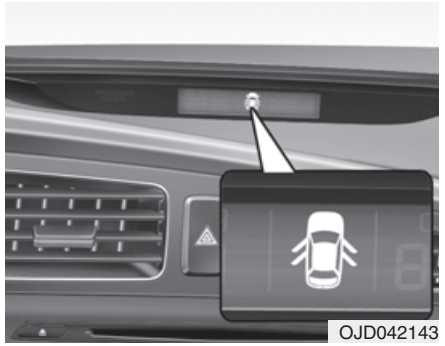
Then you will enter the set-up mode and mode changes in the following order as you press the SET (2) button less than 1 second.

HOUR → MINUTE → YEAR → MONTH → DAY → 12H/24H → TEMPERATURE UNIT CHANGE → Escape set-up mode

Press the SET (2) button less than 1 second to select the mode and set the data using the UP (1, ∧) and DOWN (1, ∨) button while the selected setting mode blinks.

To cancel the SET UP mode, do one of the following :

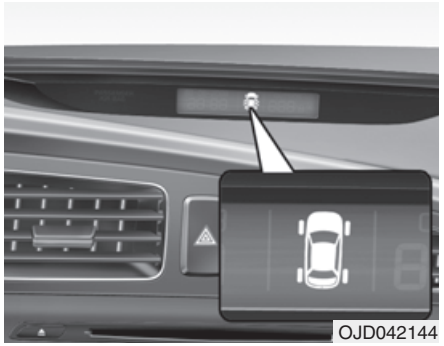
- Press the SET button less than 1 second in set-up temperature unit change mode
- Press the SET button more than 1 second in any set-up mode
- After 15 seconds without any key press
- Ignition is On or OFF in Set-up mode
- Battery is disconnected


OJD042143

Door and tailgate open display

The monitor will display the corresponding door or tailgate that is not closed securely.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 91


OJD042144

TPMS (if equipped)

The monitor will display the corresponding tire that is low with pressure.

For details, see Tire Pressure Monitoring System on chapter 6.


OJD042146

Icy road warning light (if equipped)

This warning light is to warn the driver the road may be icy when:

- Ignition ON
- Temperature range: approximately below 4°C (39.2°F).

The warning light will blink for 10 seconds and then illuminate. Also, the warning chime will sound.

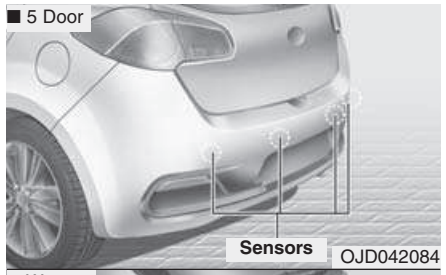
✻ NOTICE

If the icy road warning light appears while driving, you should drive more attentively and safely refraining from over-speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden braking or sharp turning, etc.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 92

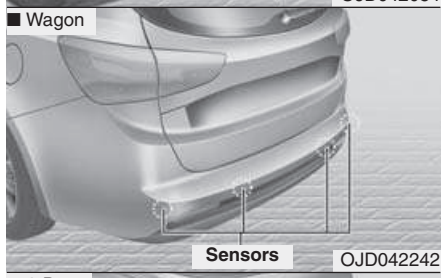
REAR PARKING ASSIST SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ 5 Door



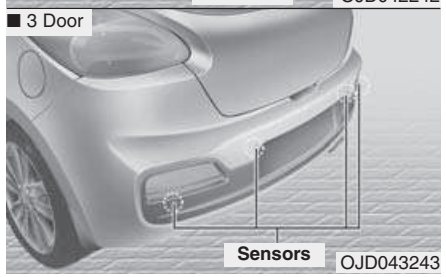
OJD042084

■ Wagon



OJD042242

■ 3 Door



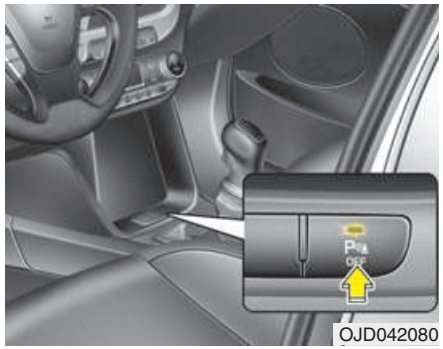
OJD043243

The rear parking assist system assists the driver during backward movement of the vehicle by chiming if any object is sensed within a distance of 120 cm (47 in.) behind the vehicle. This system is a supplemental system and it is not intended to nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver.

The sensing range and objects detectable by the back sensors are limited. Whenever backing-up, pay as much attention to what is behind you as you would in a vehicle without a rear parking assist system.

⚠ WARNING

The rear parking assist system is a supplementary function only. The operation of the rear parking assist system can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the area behind the vehicle before and while backing up.



OJD042080

Operation of the rear parking assist system

Operating condition

- This system will activate when the indicator on the rear parking assist OFF button is not illuminated.

  If you desire to deactivate the rear parking assist system, press the rear parking assist OFF button again. (The indicator on the button will illuminate.) To turn the system on, press the button again. (The indicator on the button will go off.)
- This system will activate when backing up with the ignition switch ON.

  If the vehicle is moving at a speed over 5 km/h (3 mph), the system may not be activated correctly.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 93

- The sensing distance while the rear parking assist system is in operation is approximately 120 cm (47 in.).
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be recognized first.

Types of warning sound

- When an object is 120 cm to 61 cm (47 in. to 23.6 in.) from the rear bumper: Buzzer beeps intermittently
- When an object is 60 cm to 31 cm (23.6 in. to 12.2 in.) from the rear bumper: Buzzer beeps more frequently
- When an object is within 30 cm (11.8 in.) of the rear bumper:
  Buzzer sounds continuously.

Type of the warning indicator (if equipped)

Distance from object	Warning indicator
61cm ~ 120 cm (24 in. ~ 47 in.)	 *1
31cm ~ 60 cm (12.2 in. ~ 23.6 in.)	 *1
Less than 30 cm (11.8 in.)	 *1

*1: It indicates the range of sensed object by each sensor. (Left, Center, Right)

✻ In case the object is between or close to the sensors, the indicator could be different.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 94

Non-operational conditions of rear parking assist system

The rear parking assist system may not operate properly when:

1. Moisture is frozen to the sensor. (It will operate normally when the moisture has been cleared.)
2. The sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked. (It will operate normally when the material is removed or the sensor is no longer blocked.)
3. Driving on uneven road surfaces (unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, gradient).
4. Objects generating excessive noise (vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes) are within range of the sensor.
5. Heavy rain or water spray exists.
6. Wireless transmitters or mobile phones are within range of the sensor.
7. Trailer towing.

The detecting range may decrease when:

1. The sensor is stained with foreign matter such as snow or water. (The sensing range will return to normal when removed.)
2. Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.

The following objects may not be recognized by the sensor:

1. Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
2. Objects which tend to absorb the sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material or snow.
3. Undetectable objects smaller than 1 m (40 in.) and narrower than 14 cm (6 in.) in diameter.

Rear parking assist system precautions

- The rear parking assist system may not sound sequentially depending on the speed and shapes of the objects detected.
- The rear parking assist system may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified or damaged. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
- The sensor may not recognize objects less than 30 cm (11.8 in.) from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use caution.
- When the sensor is frozen or stained with snow, dirt, or water, the sensor may be inoperative until the stains are removed using a soft cloth.
- Do not push, scratch or strike the sensor. Sensor damage could occur.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:26 PM Page 95

✻ NOTICE

This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors; it can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, such as poles or objects located between sensors may not be detected by the sensors.
Always visually check behind the vehicle when backing up.
Be sure to inform any drivers of the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.

⚠ WARNING

Pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects on the road, particularly pedestrians, and especially children. Be aware that some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the object's distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction.

Self-diagnosis

When you shift the gear to the R (Reverse) position and if one or more of the below occurs you may have a malfunction in the rear parking assist system.

- You don't hear an audible warning sound or if the buzzer sounds intermittently.
-  (blinks) is displayed. (if equipped)

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants due to a rear parking assist system malfunction. Always drive safely and cautiously.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:27 PM Page 96

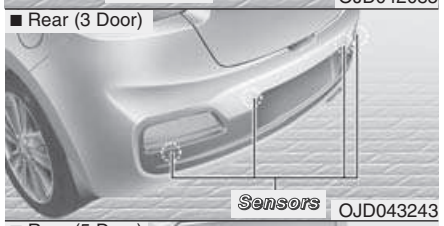
PARKING ASSIST SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Front



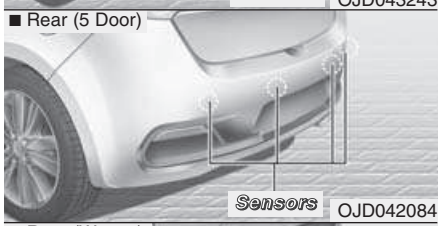
OJD042085

■ Rear (3 Door)



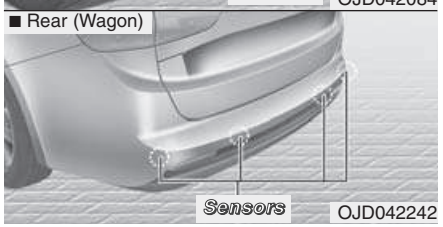
OJD043243

■ Rear (5 Door)



OJD042084

■ Rear (Wagon)



OJD042242

The parking assist system assists the driver during movement of the vehicle by chiming or displaying the area an obstacle is detected on the instrument cluster if any object is sensed within the distance of 100 cm (39.4 in.) in front and 120 cm (47 in.) behind the vehicle.

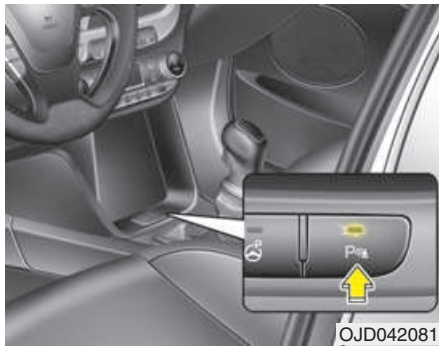
This system is a supplemental system and it is not intended to nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver.

The sensing range and objects detectable by the sensors are limited.

Whenever moving pay as much attention to what is in front and behind of you as you would in a vehicle without a parking assist system.

⚠ WARNING

The parking assist system should only be considered as a supplementary function. The driver must check the front and rear view. The operational function of the parking assist system can be affected by many factors and conditions of the surroundings, so the responsibility rests always with the driver.



OJD042081

Operation of the parking assist system

Operating condition

- This system activates when the parking assist system button is pressed with the ignition switch ON.

  Type A

  The indicator of the parking assist system button turns on automatically and activates the parking assist system when you shift the gear to the R(Reverse) position or press the SPAS button. It will turn off automatically when you drive above 40 km/h(24.8 mph) except in the case when the parking assist system button is pressed with the ignition switch ON.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:27 PM Page 97

Type B

The indicator of the parking assist system button turns on automatically and activates the parking assist system when you shift the gear to the R(Reverse) position or press the SPAS button. It will turn off automatically when you drive above 40 km/h(24.8 mph).

- If the vehicle speed is above 10km/h (6.2 mph), the parking assist system will not operate.
- The sensing distance while moving forward is approximately 100 cm (39.4 in.) when you are driving less than 10 km/h (6.2 mph).
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be recognized first.

✻ NOTICE

It may not operate if it's distance from the object is already less than approximately 25 cm when the system is ON.

Type of warning indicator and sound

■ : with Warning sound

Distance from object		Warning indicator		Warning sound
		When driving forward	When driving rearward	
100cm~61cm	Front		-	Buzzer beeps intermittently
120cm~61cm	Rear	-		Buzzer beeps intermittently
60cm~31cm	Front			Buzzer beeps frequently
	Rear	-		Buzzer beeps frequently
30cm	Front			Buzzer sounds continuously
	Rear	-		Buzzer sounds continuously

✻ NOTICE

- **The actual warning sound and indicator may differ from the illustration according to objects or sensor status.**
- **Do not wash the vehicle's sensor with high pressure water.**

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:27 PM Page 98

⚠ CAUTION

- ***This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors;***

  It can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, such as poles or objects located between sensors may not be detected by the sensors.

  Always visually check behind the vehicle when backing up.
- ***Be sure to inform any drivers of the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.***

Non-operational conditions of parking assist system

Parking assist system may not operate normally when:

1. Moisture is frozen to the sensor. (It will operate normally when moisture melts.)
2. Sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked. (It will operate normally when the material is removed or the sensor is no longer blocked.)
3. Sensor is stained with foreign matter such as snow or water. (Sensing range will return to normal when removed.)
4. The parking assist button is off.

There is a possibility of parking assist system malfunction when:

1. Driving on uneven road surfaces such as unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, or gradient.
2. Objects generating excessive noise such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes can interfere with the sensor.
3. Heavy rain or water spray.
4. Wireless transmitters or mobile phones present near the sensor.
5. Sensor is covered with snow.

Detecting range may decrease when:

1. Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.
2. Undetectable objects smaller than 1 m and narrower than 14 cm in diameter.

The following objects may not be recognized by the sensor:

1. Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
2. Objects, which tend to absorb sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material or snow.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:27 PM Page 99

✻ NOTICE

1. The warning may not sound sequentially depending on the speed and shapes of the objects detected.
2. The parking assist system may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
3. Sensor may not recognize objects less than 30 cm from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use with caution.
4. When the sensor is frozen or stained with snow or water, the sensor may be inoperative until the stains are removed using a soft cloth.
5. Do not push, scratch or strike the sensor with any hard objects that could damage the surface of the sensor. Sensor damage could occur.

✻ NOTICE

This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors, it can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, or objects located between sensors may not be detected.
Always visually check in front and behind the vehicle when driving.
Be sure to inform any drivers in the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.

⚠ WARNING

Pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects on the road, particularly pedestrians, and especially children. Be aware that some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction.

Self-diagnosis

When you shift the gear to the R (Reverse) position and if one or more of the below occurs you may have a malfunction in the parking assist system.

- You don't hear an audible warning sound or if the buzzer sounds intermittently.
-  (blinks) is displayed. (if equipped)

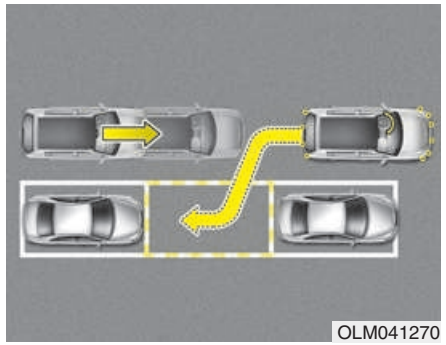
If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants related to a parking assist system. Always drive safely and cautiously.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:27 PM Page 100

SMART PARKING ASSIST SYSTEM (SPAS) (IF EQUIPPED)


OLM041270

The Smart Parking Assist System helps drivers park their vehicle by using sensors to measure parallel parking spaces, control the steering wheel to semi-automatically park the car and provide instruction on the LCD display to help through parking.

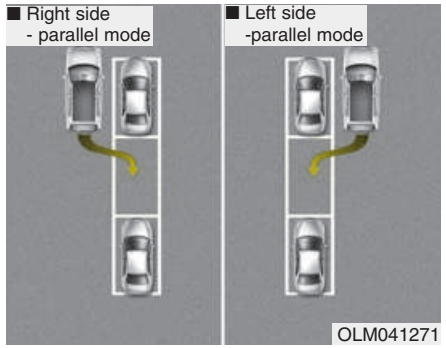
✻ NOTICE

- The vehicle will not stop for pedestrians or objects that may be in its path, so the driver must monitor the maneuver.
- Use the system only in parking lots and places used for parking.
- The system does not work if there is no car parked in front of the parking space you are planning to park or if it is a diagonal parking space.
- After parking your vehicle using the system, the vehicle may not be parked at the exact spot you have wished. For example, the space between your vehicle and wall may not be the distance you have desired.
- Deactivate the system and park your vehicle manually, when the situation requires parking manually.
- The Parking Assist System's front and rear warning sound activates when the Smart Parking Assist System is activated.
- After searching for a parking space is completed, the Smart Parking Assist System will be canceled if the Parking Assist System is cancelled by pressing the button to the OFF position.

⚠ WARNING

- **The Smart Parking Assist System should only be considered as a supplementary function. The driver must check the front and rear view for objects. The operational function of the Smart Parking Assist System can be affected by many factors and conditions of the surroundings, so the responsibility rests always with the driver.**
- **The system may not operate normally if the vehicle needs wheel alignment adjustment. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.**
- **If you use a different tire or wheel size rather than the size recommended by the Kia dealer, the system may not work properly. Always use the same size tire and wheel.**
- **If you use additional frame on license plate then SPAS may generate abnormal warning sound.**

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:27 PM Page 101



Operating condition

The system will help park the vehicle in the middle or back of a parked vehicle. Use the system when all the below conditions are met.

- When the parking space is a straight line
- When parallel parking is required
- When there is a parked vehicle
- When there is enough space to move the vehicle

Non-operating condition

Never use the Smart Parking Assist System in the below conditions.

- Curved parking space
- Inclined roads
- A vehicle loaded with longer or wider cargo compared to the vehicle
- Diagonal parking space
- Parking space with trash, grass or barriers
- Heavy snow or rain
- A pole close to the parking line
- Bumpy roads
- A vehicle equipped with a snow chain or spare tire
- Tire pressure lower or higher than the standard tire pressure
- A trailer connected to the vehicle
- Slippery or uneven road
- Big vehicles such as buses or trucks parked
- Sensor covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water
- Moisture frozen on the sensor.
- A motorcycle or bicycle parked
- A trash can or obstacle near
- Heavy wind
- Wheel changed to an unauthorized size
- A problem with the wheel alignment
- Next to a garden or bush
- A accessory installed on the detective area the of sensors (such as number plate holder)
- Vehicle leaned severely to one side
- Strong sunlight or very cold weather
- Ultrasonic interference other vehicle's. Such as horn sounds of other vehicles, motorcycle's engine noise, air brake noise of heavy vehicles and with the other vehicle's parking assist system working.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:27 PM Page 102

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the Smart Parking Assist System in the following conditions for unexpected results may occur and cause a serious accident.

1. Parking on inclines



The driver must apply the accelerator and brake pedal when parking on inclines. If the driver is unfamiliar with applying the accelerator and brake pedal, a car accident may occur.

(Continued)

(Continued)

2. Parking in snow

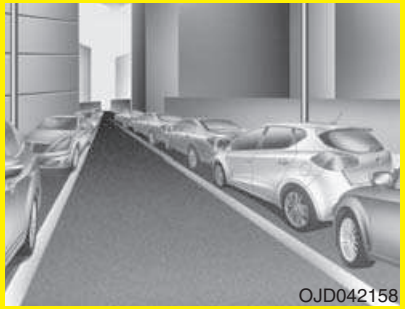


Snow may interfere with sensor operation or the system may cancel if the road is slippery while parking. Also, if the driver is unfamiliar with applying the accelerator and brake pedal, a car accident may occur.

(Continued)

(Continued)

3. Parking in narrow space



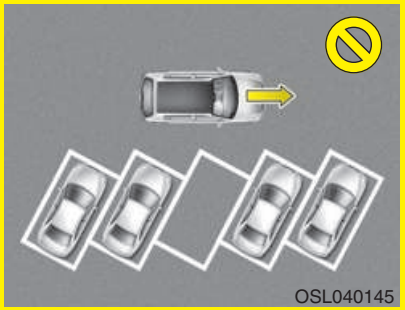
The system may not search for parking spaces if the space is too narrow. Even if it operates always be careful.

(Continued)

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:27 PM Page 103

(Continued)

4. Parking diagonal



OSL040145

The system is a supplemental for parallel parking. Diagonal line parking is not available. Even if the vehicle is able to enter the space, do not operate the Smart Parking Assist System. The system will attempt parallel parking.

(Continued)

(Continued)

5. Parking in uneven road



OJD042159

Parking in uneven roads, the driver needs to properly apply the pedal (clutch, accelerator or brake). If not, the system may cancel when the vehicle slips or an accident may occur.

(Continued)

(Continued)

6. Parking behind a truck



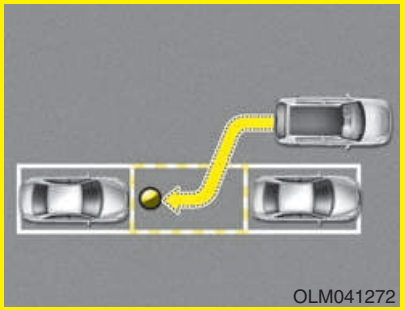
OJD042160

An accident may occur when parking behind a vehicle higher than yours. For example, bus, truck, etc.

(Continued)

(Continued)

7. Obstacle in parking space



OLM041272

The system may search for a parking space even though an obstacle is in the parking space. An accident may occur if you continue to park the vehicle with the system.

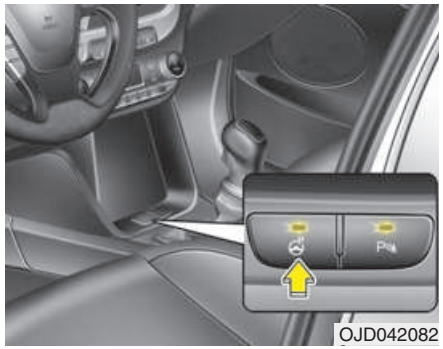
Do not solely rely on the Smart Parking Assist System.

How the system works

1. Activate the Smart Parking Assist System
2. Select parking assist mode
3. Search for parking space (slowly move forward.)
4. Search complete (automatic search by sensor.)
5. Steering wheel control
   (1) Shift according to the instruction on the LCD display.
   (2) Drive slowly with the brake pedal applied.
6. Smart Parking Assist System complete
7. If necessary, manually adjust position of vehicle.

✻ NOTICE

- **Before activating the system check if the conditions are possible to use the system.**
- **For your safety, always apply the brake pedal except for when driving.**



OJD042082

1. Activate Smart Parking Assist System

- Press the Smart Parking Assist System button (the button indicator will illuminate).
- The Parking Assist System will be activated (the button indicator will illuminate).
  A warning sound will be heard if an obstacle is detected.
- Press the Smart Parking Assist System button again for more than 2 seconds to turn off the system.
- The Smart Parking Assist System defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:27 PM Page 105

■ Right side
- parallel mode

■ Left side
-parallel mode



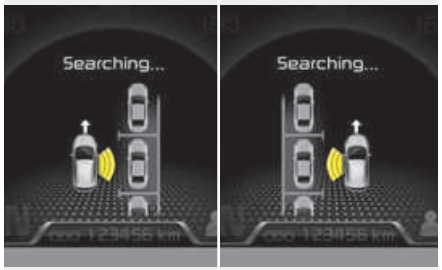
OJD042219/OJD042216

2. Select parking assist mode

- Select the parking assist mode by pressing the Smart Parking Assist System button with the shift lever in N (Neutral) or D(Drive) and the brake pedal depressed.
- The right side parallel mode is selected automatically when the Smart Parking Assist System is activated.
- To select the left side parallel mode press the Smart Parking Assist System button once more.
- If the button is pressed again, the system will turn off.

■ Right side
- parallel mode

■ Left side
-parallel mode



OJD042220/OJD042217

3. Search for parking space

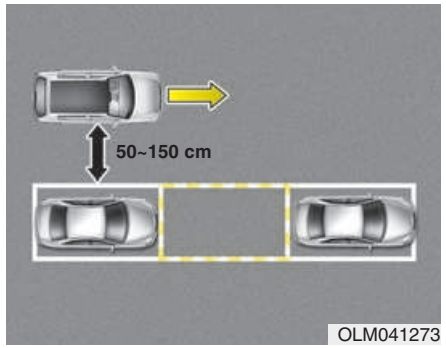
- Slowly drive forward maintaining the distance of approximately 50cm ~ 150cm (19.6in.~59.0in.) with the parked vehicles. The side sensors will search for a parking space.
- If the vehicle speed is over 30km/h (18.6mph), a message will appear to notify to reduce speed.
- If the vehicle speed is over 40km/h (24.8mph), the system will cancel.

✻ NOTICE

- **Turn on the hazard warning flasher if it is crowded with other vehicles.**
- **If the parking lot is small, slowly drive more nearer to the parking space.**
- **The search for a parking space will be completed only when there is enough space for the vehicle to move to park.**

✻ NOTICE

- **When searching for a parking space, the system may not be able to find a parking space if there is no vehicle parked, a parking space is available after driving by or a parking space is available before driving by.**
- **The system may not operate normally in the following conditions:**
  (1) When the sensors are frozen
  (2) When the sensors are dirty
  (3) When it snows or rains heavily
  (4) When a pillar or object is near



OLM041273

✻ NOTICE

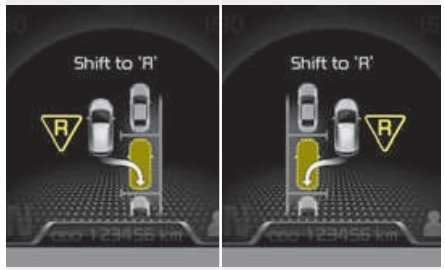
Slowly drive forward maintaining the distance of approximately 50cm ~ 150cm (19.6in.~59.0in.) with the parked vehicles. If not within the distance, the system may not be able to search for a parking space.

⚠ CAUTION

After searching for a parking space is completed, continue using the system after checking the surrounding area.

■ Right side
- parallel mode

■ Left side
-parallel mode



OJD042221/OJD042218

4. Search complete

While driving forward to search for a parking space, the above message will appear with a beep sound if the search is complete. Stop the vehicle and shift to the R (Reverse) position.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Always drive slowly with the brake pedal applied.***
- ***If the parking space is to small the system may be cancelled at the Steering wheel control stage. Do not park your vehicle if the space is too small.***



OJD042222

5. Steering wheel control

- The above message will appear if the shift lever is in R (Reverse). The steering wheel will be controlled automatically.
- The system will be cancelled if you firmly hold the steering wheel while it is controlled automatically.
- The system will be cancelled if vehicle speed is over 7km/h(4.3mph).

⚠ WARNING

Do not put your hands between the steering wheel while it is being automatically controlled.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:28 PM Page 107

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Always drive slowly with the brake pedal applied.***
- ***Always check for objects around your vehicle before driving.***
- ***If the vehicle does not move even though the brake pedal is not depressed, check the surrounding before depressing the accelerator pedal. Be sure not to speed over 7km/h(4.3mph).***

✻ NOTICE

- **If you do not follow the instructions provided, you may fail to park your vehicle. However, if the Parking Assist System warning sound (distance from object is within 30cm: continuous beep) occurs, slowly drive the vehicle to the reverse direction of the detected object after checking the surrounding.**
- **Always check the surrounding before driving your vehicle if the Parking Assist System warning sound (distance from object is within 30cm: continuous beep) is heard for the object is close to your vehicle.**

To cancel the system while parking

Press the Smart Parking Assist System button or turn the steering wheel to the left or right.

■ Manual transaxle



■ Automatic transaxle



OJD042224/OJD042225/OJD042223/OJD042225

Gear shift while steering wheel control

When the above message appears with a beep sound, shift the gear and drive the vehicle with the brake pedal depressed.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:28 PM Page 108

⚠ CAUTION

Always check the surrounding before releasing the brake pedal.

⚠ WARNING

Always be careful while parking for other vehicles or pedestrians.



6. Smart Parking Assist System completed

Complete parking your vehicle according to the instructions on the LCD display. If required, manually control the steering wheel and complete parking your vehicle.

✻ NOTICE

The brake pedal must be depressed by the driver while parking your vehicle.

The system may be cancelled in the below conditions:

- Ignoring the gear shift message and drive the vehicle approximately 150cm (59in).
- The front and rear Parking Assist System warning sound (distance from object is within 30cm: continuous beep) is heard at the same time.
- 6 minutes have passed since the vehicle has been controlled by the Smart Parking Assist System.
- The shift lever is changed to the P (Park) or R (Reverse) position while searching for parking space.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:28 PM Page 109



OJD042227/OJD042229

Additional instructions(messages)

When the Smart Parking Assist System is operating, a message may appear regardless of the parking order.

The messages will appear according to the circumstances. Follow the instructions provided while parking your vehicle with the Smart Parking Assist System.

✻ NOTICE

- **In the below conditions the system will be cancelled. Park your vehicle manually.**

1. Search for parking space
- **When the ABS/ESC is activated**
- **When the vehicle speed is over 40km/h (24.8mph)**
- **When you press the Smart Parking Assist System button (the front and rear Parking Assist System operates)**
- **When you shift the shift lever to R (Reverse)**

2. Steering wheel control
- **When the ABS/ESC is activated**
- **When the vehicle speed is over 7km/h (4.3 mph)**
- **When you press the Smart Parking Assist System button (the front and rear Parking Assist System operates)**
- **When you shift the shift lever to D (Drive) before entering the parking space**
- **When you hold the steering wheel firmly**



OJD042228

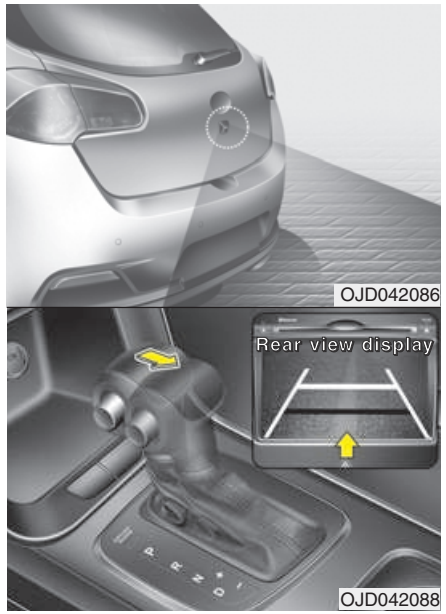
System malfunction

- If there is a problem with the system, when the system is turned on, the above message will appear. Also, the indicator on the button will not light up and a beep sound will be heard 3 times.
- If there is a problem with only the Smart Parking Assist System, the Parking Assist System will operate after 2 seconds.

  If you notice any problem, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:28 PM Page 110

REARVIEW CAMERA (IF EQUIPPED)



❈ The actual rear view in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

The rearview camera will activate when the back-up light is ON with the ignition switch ON and the shift lever in the R (Reverse) position.

This system is a supplemental system that shows behind the vehicle through the navigation monitor while backing-up.

⚠ WARNING

- **This system is a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the inside/outside rearview mirror and the area behind the vehicle before and while backing up because there is a dead zone that can't see through the camera.**
- **Always keep the camera lens clean. If lens is covered with foreign matter, the camera may not operate normally.**

❈ For more detailed informations, refer to supplement for navigation system.

HAZARD WARNING FLASHER



The hazard warning flasher should be used whenever you find it necessary to stop the vehicle in a hazardous location. When you must make such an emergency stop, always pull off the road as far as possible.

The hazard warning lights are turned on by pushing in the hazard switch. Both turn signal lights will blink. The hazard warning lights will operate even though the key is not in the ignition switch.

To turn the hazard warning lights off, push the switch again.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:28 PM Page 111

LIGHTING

Battery saver function

- The purpose of this feature is to prevent the battery from being discharged. The system automatically turns off the parking lights when the driver removes the ignition key (Smart key : turns off the engine) and opens the driver- side door.
- With this feature, the parking lights will be turned off automatically if the driver parks on the side of road at night.

  If necessary, to keep the lights on when the ignition key is removed, perform the following :

  1) Open the driver-side door.
  2) Turn the parking lights OFF and ON again using the light switch on the steering column.

Headlamp delay function (if equipped)

The headlamps (and/or taillights) remain on for same minutes (Type A: 20 minutes, Type B: 5 minutes) after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlights are turned off after 15 seconds.

The headlights can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the transmitter or smart key twice or turning off the light switch from the headlight or Auto light position.

You can activate or deactivate the headlamp delay fuction. Refer to "User setting" in this chapter.

⚠ CAUTION

If the driver gets out of the vehicle through other doors (except driver's door), the battery saver function does not operate and the headlamp delay function does not turn off automatically. Therefore, it causes the battery to be discharged. In this case, make sure to turn off the lamp before getting out of the vehicle.

Headlight (Headlamp) welcome function (if equipped)

When the headlight switch is in the ON or AUTO position and all doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, if you press the door unlock button on the transmitter or smart key, the headlights will come on for about 15 seconds.

If the headlight switch is in the AUTO position, the function can only operate at night.

At this time, if you press the door unlock button again or door lock button on the transmitter or smart key, the headlights will turn off immediately.

You can activate or deactivate the headlamp welcome fuction. Refer to "User setting" in this chapter.

✻ NOTICE

There can be turned on front fog light and the fail light when you turn on the headlight switch ON. In this case we recommend that you the system checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:28 PM Page 112

Static bending light (if equipped)

While driving the corner, for your sight and safety, the static bending light turns on automatically. The system will operate automatically as follows:

- When vehicle speed is under 10km/h and steering wheel angle approximately 80 degrees.
- When vehicle speed is over 10km/h and steering wheel angle approximately 35 degrees.
- When the vehicle is at a standstill.
- When moving rearwards with one of the above conditions satisfied the lights will light up the opposite direction.



OED040045

Lighting control

The light switch has a Headlight and a Parking light position.

To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:

(1) OFF position
(2) Position light position
(3) Headlight position
(4) Auto light position (if equipped)



OED040046

Position light position ( )

When the light switch is in the position light position, the tail, position, license and instrument panel lights are ON.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:28 PM Page 113



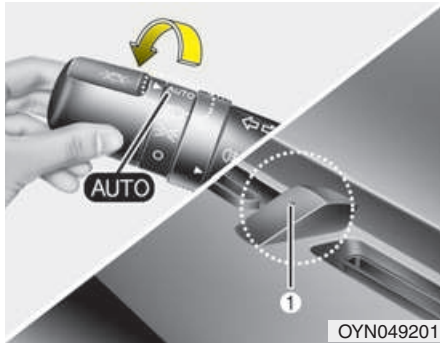
OED040800

Headlight position ( )

When the light switch is in the headlight position the head, tail, position, license and instrument panel lights are ON.

✻ NOTICE

The ignition switch must be in the ON position to turn on the headlights.



OYN049201

Auto light/AFLS position (if equipped)

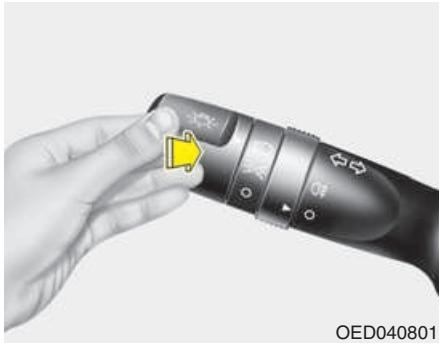
When the light switch is in the AUTO light position, the taillights and headlights will be turned ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of light outside the vehicle.

If your vehicle is equipped with the adaptive front lighting system (AFLS), it will also operate when the headlamp is ON.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Never place anything over the sensor (1) located on the instrument panel, this will ensure better auto-light system control.***
- ***Do not clean the sensor using a window cleaner, the cleaner may leave a light film which could interfere with sensor operation.***
- ***If your vehicle has window tint or other types of coating on the front windshield, the Auto light system may not work properly.***

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:28 PM Page 114



OED040801

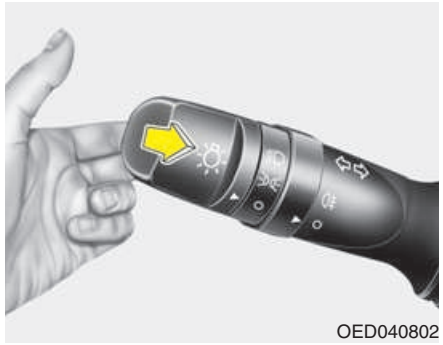
High - beam operation

1. Turn the light switch to the headlight position.
2. Push the lever away from you.

- The high-beam indicator will light when the headlight high beams are switched on.
- To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the lights on for a prolonged time while the engine is not running.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use high beam when there are other vehicles. Using high beam could obstruct the other driver's vision.

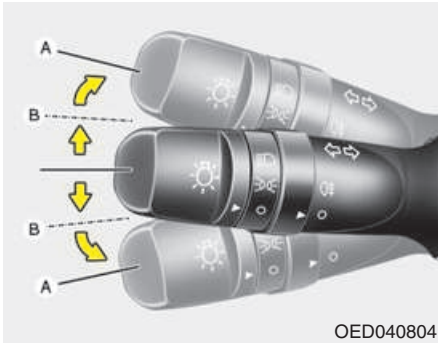


OED040802

Flashing headlights

Pull the lever towards you. It will return to the normal position when released. The headlight switch does not need to be on to use this flashing feature.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:28 PM Page 115



OED040804

Turn signals and lane change signals

The ignition switch must be on for the turn signals to function. To turn on the turn signals, move the lever up or down (A). Green arrow indicators on the instrument panel indicate which turn signal is operating.

They will self-cancel after a turn is completed. If the indicator continues to flash after a turn, manually return the lever to the OFF position.

To signal a lane change, move the turn signal lever slightly and hold it in position (B). The lever will return to the OFF position when released.

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and will require replacement.

One-touch lane change function (if equipped)

To activate an one-touch lane change function, move the turn signal lever slightly and then release it. The lane change signals will blink 3 times.

You can inactivate one-touch lane change function in “Auto triple turn” of “User setting”. Refer to “User setting” in chapter 4.

✻ NOTICE

If an indicator flash is abnormally quick or slow, bulb may be burned out or have a poor electrical connection in the circuit.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:28 PM Page 116



OYN049200

Front fog light (if equipped)

Fog lights are used to provide improved visibility when visibility is poor due to fog, rain or snow, etc. The fog lights will turn on when the fog light switch (1) is turned on after the position light is turned on.

To turn off the fog lights, turn the fog light switch (1) to the O (Off) position.

⚠ CAUTION

When in operation, the fog lights consume large amounts of vehicle electrical power. Only use the fog lights when visibility is poor.

■ Type A



OED040806

■ Type B



OAM049046L

Rear fog light

To turn the rear fog lights on, turn the rear fog light switch (1) to the on position when the headlight is turned on.

Also, the rear fog lights turn on when the rear fog light switch is turned on after the front fog light switch (if equipped) is turned on and the headlight switch is in the position light position.

To turn the rear fog lights off, turn the rear fog light switch to the on position again.

Rear fog light is located only on the driver's side (for wagon).

Daytime running light (if equipped)

Daytime Running Lights (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, and it is especially helpful after dawn and before sunset.

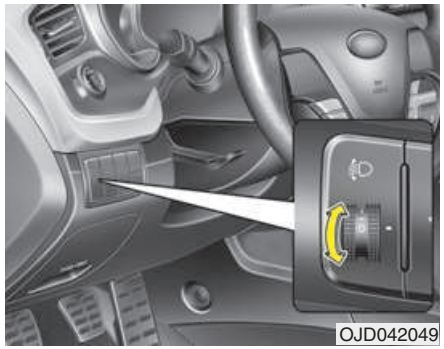
The DRL system will turn off when:

Type A

- When headlight (Low beam) switch is ON, DRL-LED system will be illuminating with lower intensity
- The front fog light switch is ON.
- The engine is OFF.

Type B

- The headlight (low beam) switch is ON.
- The front fog light switch is ON.
- The engine is OFF.



Headlight leveling device (if equipped)

Manual type

To adjust the headlight beam level according to the number of the passengers and the loading weight in the luggage area, turn the beam leveling switch.

The higher the number of the switch is positioned, the lower the headlight beam level. Always keep the headlight beam at the proper leveling position, or headlights may dazzle other road users.

Listed below are the examples of proper switch settings. For loading conditions other than those listed below, adjust the switch position so that the beam level may be the nearest as the condition obtained according to the list.

Loading condition	Switch position
Driver only	0
Driver + Front passenger	0
Full passengers (including driver)	1
Full passengers (including driver) + Maximum permissible loading	2
Driver + Maximum permissible loading	3

Automatic type

It automatically adjusts the headlight beam level according to the number of passengers and loading weight in the luggage area.

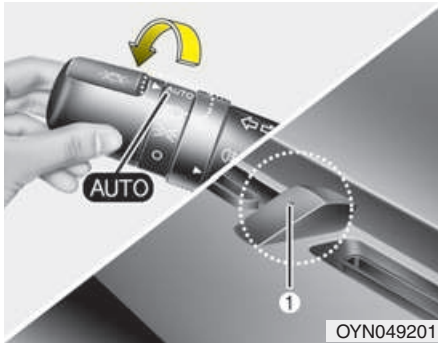
And it offers proper headlight beam under various conditions.

⚠ WARNING

If it does not work properly even though your car is inclined backward according to passenger's posture, or the headlight beam is irradiated to the high or low position, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Do not attempt to inspect or replace the wiring yourself.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:28 PM Page 118

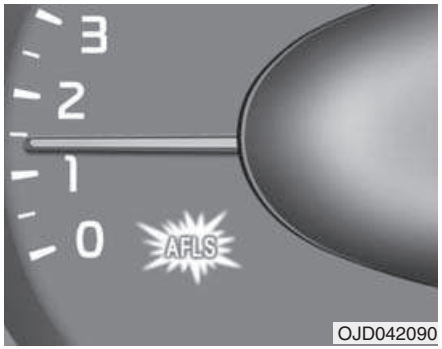


OYN049201

Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFLS) (if equipped)

Adaptive front lighting system uses the steering angle and vehicle speed, to keep your field of vision wide by swiveling and leveling the headlamp.

Change the switch to the AUTO position when the engine is running. The adaptive front lighting system will operate when the headlamp is ON. To turn off the AFLS, change the switch to other positions. After turning the AFLS off, headlamp swiveling no longer occurs, but leveling operates continuously.



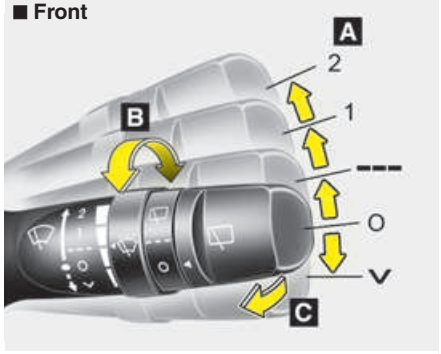
OJD042090

If the AFLS malfunction indicator comes on, the AFLS is not working properly. Drive to the nearest safe location and restart the engine. If the indicator continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

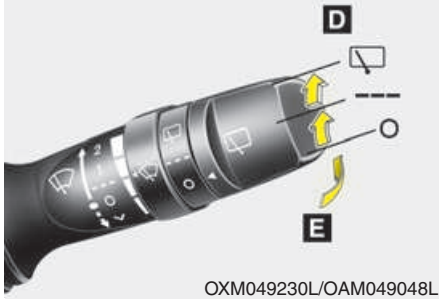
JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:28 PM Page 119

WIPERS AND WASHERS

■ Front



■ Rear



OXM049230L/OAM049048L

A : Wiper speed control (front)
- 2 – High wiper speed
- 1 – Low wiper speed
- --- – Intermittent wipe
- AUTO* – Automatic control wipe
- O – Off
- ∨ – Single wipe

B : Intermittent control wipe time adjustment

C : Wash with brief wipes (front)*

D : Rear wiper/washer control*
- – Continuous wipe
- --- – Intermittent wipe
- O – Off

E : Wash with brief wipes (rear)*

* : if equipped

Windshield wipers (front)

Operates as follows when the ignition switch is turned ON.

∨ : For a single wiping cycle, move the lever to this position and release it. The wipers will operate continuously if the lever is held in this position.

O : Wiper is not in operation

--- : Wiper operates intermittently at the same wiping intervals. Use this mode in light rain or mist. To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob.

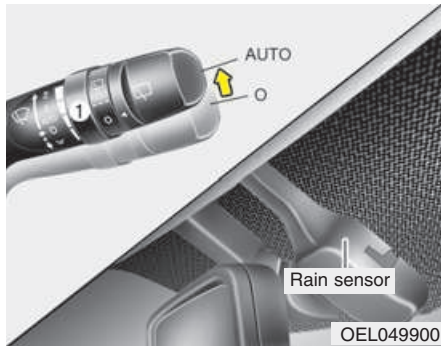
1 : Normal wiper speed

2 : Fast wiper speed

✻ NOTICE

If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windshield, defrost the windshield for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windshield wipers to ensure proper operation. If you do not remove the snow and/or ice before using the wiper and wash-er, it may damage the Wiper and washer system.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:29 PM Page 120



AUTO (Automatic) control (if equipped)

The rain sensor located on the upper end of the windshield glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval. The more it rains, the faster the wiper operates. When the rain stops, the wiper stops.

To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob (1).

If the wiper switch is set in AUTO mode when the ignition switch is ON, the wiper will operate once to perform a self-check of the system. Set the wiper to off position when the wiper is not in use.

⚠ CAUTION

When the ignition switch is ON and the windshield wiper switch is placed in the AUTO mode, use caution in the following situations to avoid any injury to the hands or other parts of the body:

- ***Do not touch the upper end of the windshield glass facing the rain sensor.***
- ***Do not wipe the upper end of the windshield glass with a damp or wet cloth.***
- ***Do not put pressure on the windshield glass.***

⚠ CAUTION

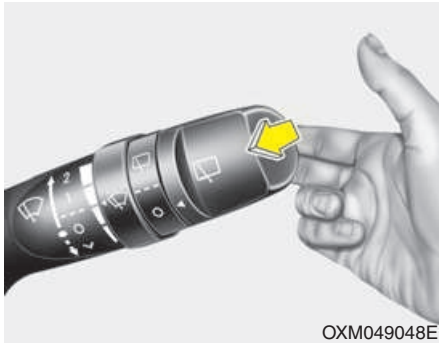
When washing the vehicle, set the wiper switch in the off position to stop the auto wiper operation.

The wiper may operate and be damaged if the switch is set in the AUTO mode while washing the vehicle.

Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the passenger side windshield glass. Damage to system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

When starting the vehicle in winter, set the wiper switch in the off position. Otherwise, wipers may operate and ice may damage the windshield wiper blades. Always remove all snow and ice and defrost the windshield properly prior to operating the windshield wipers.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:29 PM Page 121


OXM049048E

Windshield washers (front) (if equipped)

In the O (Off) position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windshield and to run the wipers 1-3 cycles.

Use this function when the windshield is dirty.

The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

If the washer does not work, check the washer fluid level. If the fluid level is not sufficient, you will need to add appropriate non-abrasive windshield washer fluid to the washer reservoir.

The reservoir filler neck is located in the front of the engine compartment on the passenger side.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent possible damage to the washer pump, do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the washer in freezing temperatures without first warming the windshield with the defrosters; the washer solution could freeze on the windshield and obscure your vision.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***To prevent possible damage to the wipers or windshield, do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry.***
- ***To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.***
- ***To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.***

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:29 PM Page 122

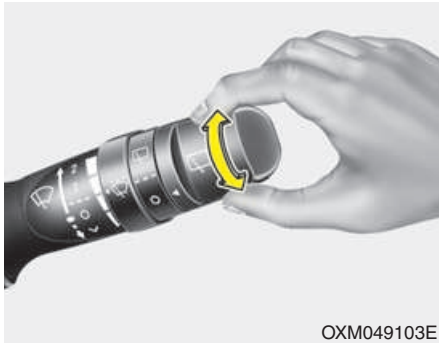
Headlight washer (if equipped)

If your vehicle is equipped with the headlight washer it will operate at the same time when you operate the windshield washer. It will operate when the headlight switch is in the first or second position and the ignition switch or engine start/stop button is in the ON position.

The washer fluid will be sprayed on to the headlights.

✻ NOTICE

Check the headlight washers periodically to confirm that the washer fluid is being sprayed properly onto the headlight lenses.

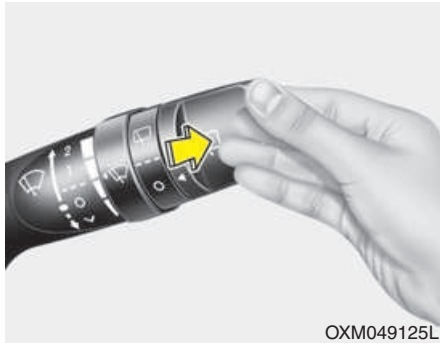


OXM049103E

Rear window wiper and washer switch (if equipped)

The rear window wiper and washer switch is located at the end of the wiper and washer switch lever. Turn the switch to desired position to operate the rear wiper and washer.

- - Normal wiper operation
- --- - Intermittent wipe
- O - Wiper is not in operation



OXM049125L

Push the lever away from you to spray rear washer fluid and to run the rear wipers 1~3 cycles. The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:29 PM Page 123

INTERIOR LIGHT

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the engine is not running.

It may cause battery discharge.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. Accidents could happen because the view may be obscured by interior lights.

Interior lamp AUTO cut

- When all entrances are closed, if you lock the vehicle by using the transmitter or the smart key, all interior lamp will be off after a few seconds.
- If you do not operate anything in the vehicle after turning off the engine, the lights will turn off after 20 minutes.

■ Type A



OGD041104

■ Type B



OJD042091

Map lamp

Press the lens (1) to turn the map lamp on or off

- /OFF (2) : The lamps are off even if a door is opened.
- /DOOR (3) :
  - The map lamp comes on when a door is opened. If you close the door, the lamps go out after approximately 30 seconds.
  - The map lamp comes on for approximately 30 seconds when doors are unlocked with a transmitter or smart key as long as the doors are not opened.
  - The map lamp will stay on for approximately 20 minutes if a door is opened with the ignition switch in the ACC or LOCK/OFF position.
  - The map lamp will stay on continuously if the door is opened with the ignition switch in the ON position.
  - The map lamp will go out immediately if the ignition switch is changed to the ON position or all doors are locked.
- /ON (4) : The map lamp stays on at all times.

✻ NOTICE

When the lamp is turned on by pressing the lens (1), the lamp does not turn off even if the switch is in the OFF position (2).

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:29 PM Page 124

■ Type A



OGDE041216

■ Type B



OGD041151

Room lamp

Type A

Press the button to turn the light on or off.

If the map lamp turns on by the map lamp switch, the room lamp will turn on.

Type B

Press the switch to turn on the room lamp.

Press the switch O to turn off the room lamp.



OLM049105

Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)

Push the switch to turn the light on or off.

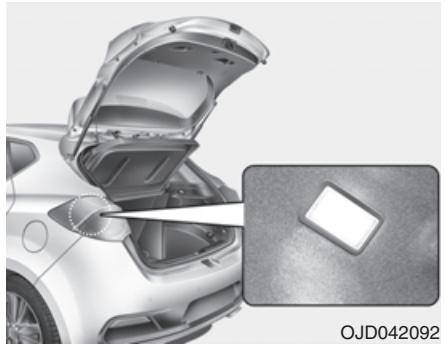
- : The lamp will turn on if this button is pressed.
- ◯ : The lamp will turn off if this button is pressed.

⚠ CAUTION

- Vanity mirror lamp

Always have the switch in the off position when the vanity mirror lamp is not in use. If the sunvisor is closed without the lamp off, it may discharge the battery or damage the sunvisor.

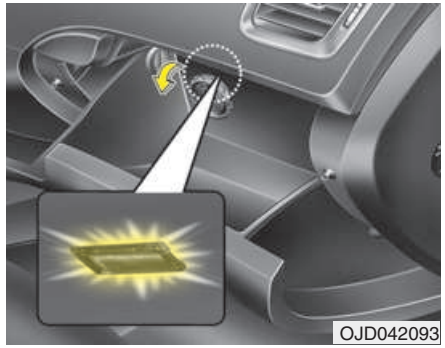
JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:29 PM Page 125



❈ The actual luggage room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Luggage room lamp

The luggage room lamp comes on when the tailgate is opened.



Glove box lamp

The glove box lamp comes on when the glove box is opened.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:29 PM Page 126

WELCOME SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Headlamp welcome

When the headlight(light switch in the headlight or AUTO position) is on and all doors (and tailgate) are locked and closed, the headlight, position light and tail light will come on for 15 seconds if any of the below is performed.

- Without smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the transmitter.
- With the smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.

At this time, if you press the door lock button (on the transmitter or smart key), the lights will turn off immediately.

Interior light

When the interior light switch is in the DOOR position and all doors (and tailgate) are locked and closed, the room lamp will come on for 30 seconds if any of the below is performed.

- Without smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the transmitter.
- With the smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
  - When the button of the outside door handle is pressed.

At this time, if you press the door lock button, the lamps will turn off immediately.

Puddle lamp (if equipped)

When all doors are locked and closed, the puddle lamp will come on for 15 seconds if any of the below is performed.

- Without smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the transmitter.
- With the smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
  - When the button of the outside door handle is pressed.
  - When the vehicle is approached with the smart key in possession.

At this time, if you press the door lock button, the lamps will turn off immediately.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:29 PM Page 127

DEFROSTER

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the conductors bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.

✻ NOTICE

If you want to defrost and defog the front windshield, refer to "Windshield Defrosting and Defogging" in this chapter.

■ Manual climate control



OJD042094

■ Automatic climate control



OJD042095

Rear window defroster

The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog and thin ice from the interior and exterior of the rear window, while engine is running.

- To activate the rear window defroster, press the rear window defroster button located in the center facia switch panel. The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.
- To turn off the defroster, press the rear window defroster button again.

✻ NOTICE

- **If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.**
- **The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 20 minutes or when the ignition switch is turned off.**

Outside mirror defroster (if equipped)

The outside mirror defroster will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

Front wiper deicer (if equipped)

The front wiper deicer will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:29 PM Page 128

MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



1. Fan speed control knob
2. Air conditioning button
3. Rear window defroster button
4. Mode selection knob
5. Air intake control button
6. Temperature control knob

⚠ CAUTION

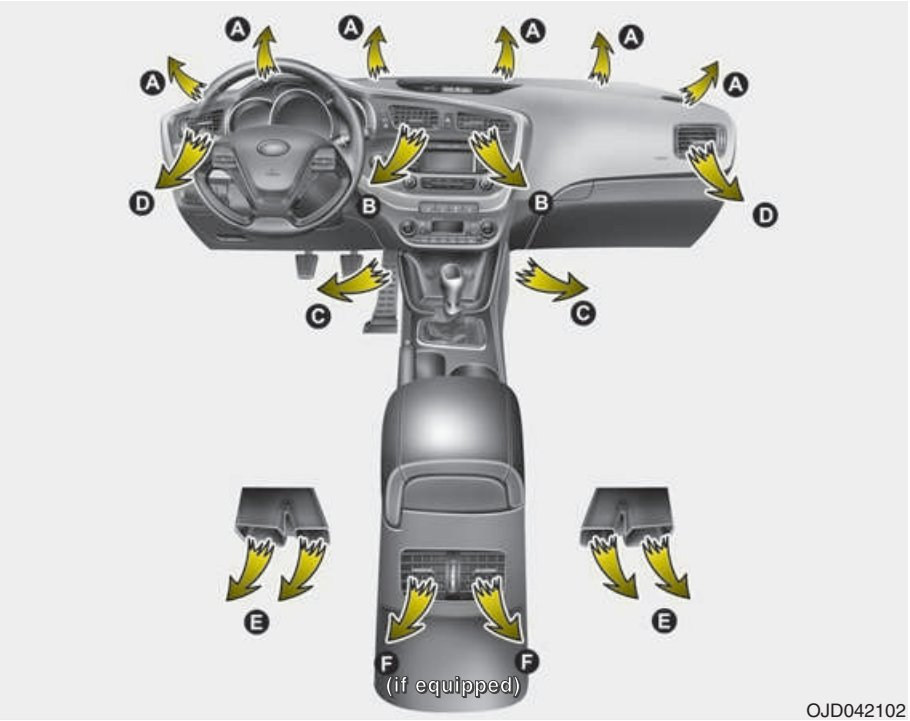
Operating the blower when the ignition switch is in the ON position could cause the battery to discharge. Operate the blower when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

OJD042100

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:29 PM Page 129

Heating and air conditioning

1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.
   To improve the effectiveness of heating and cooling:
   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air or recirculated position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on. (if equipped)



OJD042102



OJD042104

Mode selection

The mode selection knob controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

Air can be directed to the floor, dashboard outlets, or windshield. Six symbols are used to represent Face, Bi-Level, Floor, Face / Floor / Defrost, Floor / Defrost and Defrost air position.

Face-Level (B, D, F)

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

Bi-Level (B, D, C, E, F)

Air flow is directed towards the face and the floor.

Floor-Level (A, C, D, E)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windshield and side window defrosters.

Face/Floor/Defrost-Level (A, B, C, D, E, F)

Most of the air flow is directed towards the face, the floor and the windshield with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.

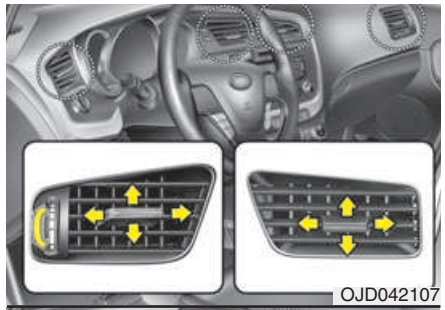
Floor/Defrost-Level (A, C, E, D)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor and the windshield with a small amount directed to the side window defrosters.

Defrost-Level (A, D)

Most of the air flow is directed to the windshield with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:30 PM Page 131



Instrument panel vents

The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumbwheel or vent control lever.

Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.



Temperature control

The temperature control knob allows you to control the temperature of the airflow in the vehicle.

To change the temperature:

- Turn the knob to the right to increase temperature.
- Turn the knob to the left to decrease temperature.



Air intake control

The air intake control is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, press the control button.

Recirculated air position



With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Outside (fresh) air position



With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

✻ NOTICE

Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windshield and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.

In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

⚠ WARNING

- **The continuous use of recirculated air in the climate control system may increase humidity inside the vehicle, causing the glass to fog and obscuring visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.**
- **The continuous use of recirculated air in the climate control system can produce drowsiness or sleepiness, which may result in a loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible while driving.**



OJD042101

Fan speed control

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for fan operation.

The fan speed control knob allows you to control the fan speed of the air flowing from the ventilation system. To change the fan speed, turn the knob to the right for higher speed or left for lower speed.

Setting the fan speed control knob to the “0” position turns off the fan.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:30 PM Page 133



OJD043247

To turn off the blowers

To turn off the blowers, turn the fan speed control knob to the "0" position.



OJD042103

Air conditioning (if equipped)

Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate). Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

System operation

Ventilation

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

Heating

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.

- If the windshield fogs up, set the mode to the position.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:30 PM Page 134

Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Be sure to return the control to the fresh air position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just ahead of the windshield. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.
- To prevent interior fog on the windshield, set the air intake control to the fresh air position and fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to desired temperature.

Air conditioning (if equipped)

Kia Air Conditioning Systems are filled with environmentally friendly refrigerant*.

1. Start the engine. Push the air conditioning button.
2. Set the mode to the position.
3. Set the air intake control to the outside air or recirculated air position.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

*: Your vehicle is filled with R-134a or R-1234yf according to the regulation in your country at the time of producing. You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied to your vehicle at the label inside of hood. Refer to chapter 8 for more detail location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians to insure proper and safe operation.***
- ***The refrigerant system should be serviced in a well-ventilated place.***
- ***The air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) shall never be repaired or replaced with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle and new replacement MAC evaporators shall be certified (and labeled) as meeting SAE Standard J2842.***

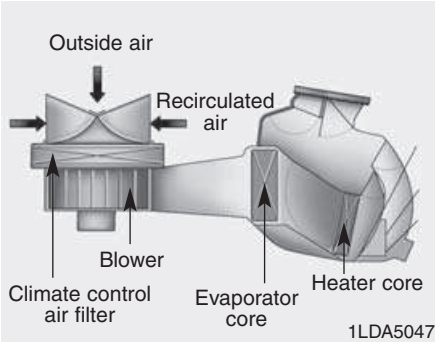
JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:30 PM Page 135

✻ NOTICE

- **When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely while driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause engine overheating. Continue to use the blower fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates engine overheating.**
- **When opening the windows in humid weather air conditioning may create water droplets inside the vehicle. Since excessive water droplets may cause damage to electrical equipment, air conditioning should only be used with the windows closed.**

Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- Use air conditioning to reduce humidity and moisture inside the vehicle on rainy or humid days.
- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in engine speed as the air conditioning compressor cycles. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even puddling) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Operating the air conditioning system in the recirculated air position provides maximum cooling, however, continual operation in this mode may cause the air inside the vehicle to become stale.
- During cooling operation, you may occasionally notice a misty air flow because of rapid cooling and humid air intake. This is a normal system operation characteristic.



Climate control air filter

The climate control air filter installed behind the glove box filters the dust or other pollutants that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system. If dust or other pollutants accumulate in the filter over a period of time, the air flow from the air vents may decrease, resulting in moisture accumulation on the inside of the windshield even when the outside (fresh) air position is selected. If this happens, we recommend that the climate control air filter be replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:30 PM Page 136

✻ NOTICE

- **Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.**
  If the car is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty, rough roads, more frequent climate control air filter inspections and changes are required.
- **When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.**

Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also has a bad influence on the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Vehicles equipped with R-134a*



Because the refrigerant is at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used.

Otherwise, it may cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

⚠ WARNING - Vehicles equipped with R-1234yf*





Because the refrigerant is mildly inflammable and at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used.

Otherwise, it may cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

*: Your vehicle is filled with R-134a or R-1234yf according to the regulation in your country at the time of producing. You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied your vehicle at the label inside of hood. Refer to chapter 8 for more detail location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:30 PM Page 137

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



1. Driver's temperature control knob
2. AUTO (automatic control) button
3. Fan speed control button (Higher speed)
4. Fan speed control button (Lower speed)
5. Climate control display
6. Air conditioning button
7. Air intake control button
8. Passenger's temperature control knob
9. Dual temperature control selection button
10. OFF button
11. Front windshield defroster button
12. Mode selection button
13. Rear window defroster button

OJD042109

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:30 PM Page 138

Automatic heating and air conditioning

The automatic climate control system is controlled by simply setting the desired temperature.

Soft mode



OJD042110

Fast mode



OJD042119

You can choose either the soft mode or fast mode to select the fan speed.

Soft mode : The wind blows gently.

Fast mode : The wind blows heavier than the soft mode to reach the selected temperature fast.

Each time you press the AUTO button, the mode will change as follows:

Soft mode ↔ Fast mode

The Full Automatic Temperature Control (FATC) system automatically controls the heating and cooling system as follows:

1. Press the AUTO button.

The modes, fan speeds, air intake and air-conditioning will be controlled automatically according to the temperature setting.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:30 PM Page 139



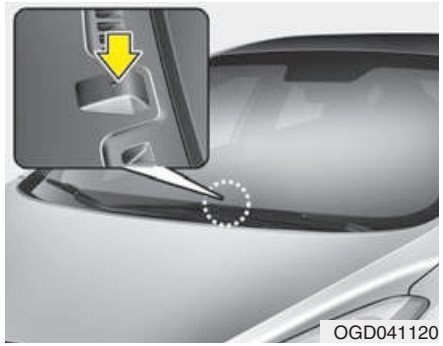
OJD042230

2. Turn the temperature control knob to set the desired temperature.

✻ NOTICE

- **To turn the automatic operation off, select any button of the following:**
  - **Mode selection button**
  - **Front windshield defrost button (Press the button one more time to deselect the front windshield defroster function. The 'AUTO' sign will illuminate on the information display once again.)**
  - **Fan speed control button**

  The selected function will be controlled manually while other functions operate automatically.
- **For your convenience and to improve the effectiveness of the climate control, use the AUTO button and set the temperature to 22°C/71°F (23°C/73°F -Except Europe).**


OGD041120

✻ NOTICE

Placing any object over the sensor on the instrument panel may interfere with the heating and cooling system.

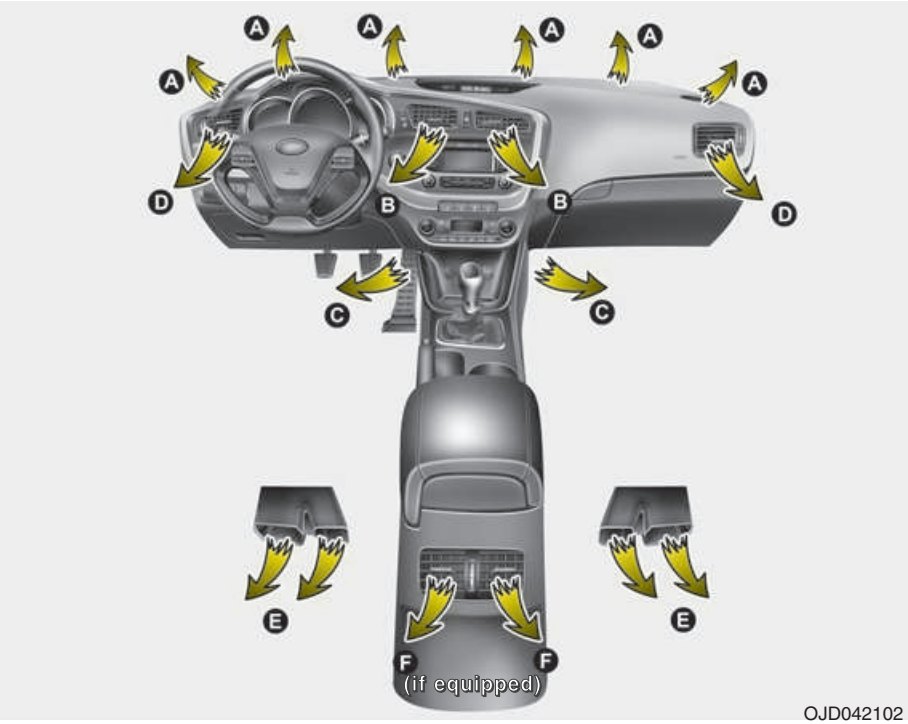
JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:30 PM Page 140

Manual heating and air conditioning

The heating and cooling system can be controlled manually by pressing buttons or turning knob(s) other than the AUTO button. In this case, the system works sequentially according to the order of buttons or knob(s) selected.

1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.
   To improve the effectiveness of heating and cooling:
   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air or recirculated position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.

Press the AUTO button in order to convert to full automatic control of the system.



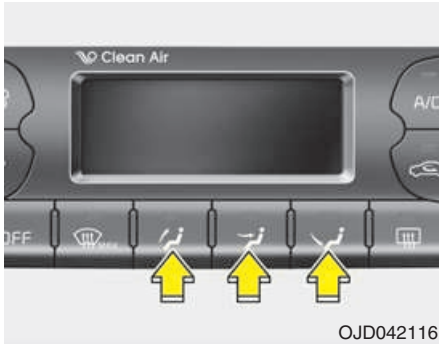
OJD042102

Mode selection

The mode selection button controls the direction of the airflow in the vehicle.

If you push the button once, the corresponding switch will turn on, and if you push the button again, the switch will turn off.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:30 PM Page 141



OJD042116

Face-Level (B, D, F*)

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

* : if equipped

Floor-Level (A, C, D, E)

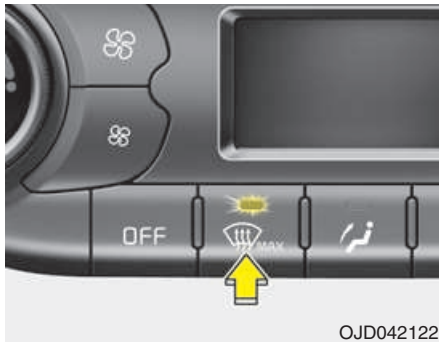
Most of the air flow is directed to the floor.

Defrost-Level (A, D)

Most of the air flow is directed to the windshield.

Also you may select 2~3 modes at the same time.

- face ( ) + floor ( ) mode
- face ( ) + defrost ( ) mode
- floor ( ) + defrost ( ) mode
- face ( ) + floor ( ) + defrost ( ) mode



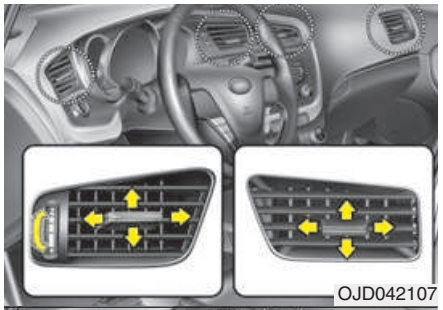
OJD042122

Maximum (MAX) defrost mode

When you select the MAX defrost mode, the following system will set automatically:

- The air conditioning system will be turn on.
- The outside(fresh) air position will be selected.
- The fan speed will set to the high speed.

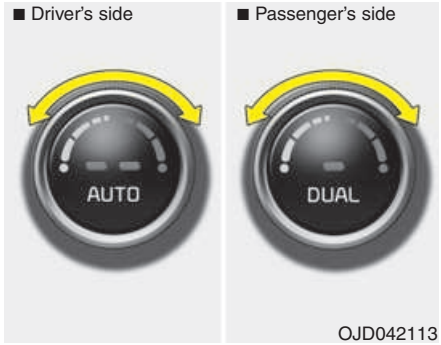
To turn the MAX defrost mode off, press the mode button or MAX defrost button again or AUTO button.



Instrument panel vents

The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumbwheel or vent control lever.

Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.



Temperature control

The temperature will increase to the maximum (HI) by turning the knob to the right extremely.

The temperature will decrease to the minimum (Lo) by turning the knob to the left extremely.

When turning the knob, the temperature will increase or decrease by 0.5°C/1°F. When set to the lowest temperature setting, the air conditioning will operate continuously.

Operate the driver's side temperature control to adjust the driver side temperature. Operate the passenger's side temperature control to adjust the passenger side temperature.



Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature individually

1. Press the DUAL button to operate the driver and passenger side temperature individually. Also, if the passenger side temperature control knob is operated, it will automatically change to the DUAL mode as well.
2. Operate the driver side temperature control to adjust the driver side temperature. Operate the passenger side temperature control to adjust the passenger side temperature.

When the driver side temperature is set to the highest (HIGH) or lowest (LOW) temperature, the DUAL mode deactivates for maximum heating or cooling.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:31 PM Page 143

Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature equally

1. Press the DUAL button again to deactivate DUAL mode. The passenger side temperature will be set to the same temperature as the driver side.
2. Operate the driver side temperature control button. The driver and passenger side temperature will be adjusted equally.

Temperature conversion

You can switch the temperature mode between Centigrade to Fahrenheit as follows:

While pressing the DUAL button, press the Face-Level selection button for 3 seconds or more.

The display will change from Centigrade to Fahrenheit, or from Fahrenheit to Centigrade.

✻ NOTICE

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the temperature mode display will reset to Centigrade.



OJD042117

Air intake control

This is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, push the control button.

Recirculated air position



With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Outside (fresh) air position



With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

✻ NOTICE

Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windshield and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.

In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:31 PM Page 144

⚠ WARNING

- **The continuous use of recirculated air in the climate control system may increase humidity inside the vehicle, causing the glass to fog and obscuring visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.**
- **The continuous use of recirculated air in the climate control system can produce drowsiness or sleepiness, which may result in a loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible while driving.**



Fan speed control

The fan speed can be set to the desired speed by pressing the fan speed control button.

To change the fan speed, press the upper button (✤) for higher speed, or press the lower button (✤) for lower speed.

Pressing the OFF button turns off the fan.

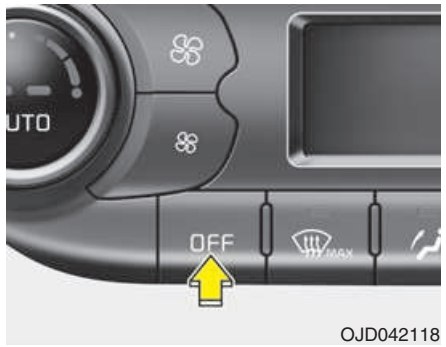


Air conditioning (if equipped)

Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate).

Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:31 PM Page 145



OFF mode

Press the OFF button to turn off the air climate control system. However, you can still operate the air intake buttons as long as the ignition switch is in the ON position.

System operation

Ventilation

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

Heating

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.

- If the windshield fogs up, set the mode to the or position.

Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Be sure to return the control to the fresh air position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just ahead of the windshield. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.
- To prevent interior fog on the windshield, set the air intake control to the fresh air position and fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to desired temperature.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:31 PM Page 146

Air conditioning (if equipped)

Kia Air Conditioning Systems are filled with environmentally friendly refrigerant*.

1. Start the engine. Push the air conditioning button.
2. Set the mode to the position.
3. Set the air intake control to the outside air or recirculated air position.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

*: Your vehicle is filled with R-134a or R-1234yf according to the regulation in your country at the time of producing. You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied to your vehicle at the label inside of hood. Refer to chapter 8 for more detail location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians to insure proper and safe operation.***
- ***The refrigerant system should be serviced in a well-ventilated place.***
- ***The air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) shall never be repaired or replaced with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle and new replacement MAC evaporators shall be certified (and labeled) as meeting SAE Standard J2842.***

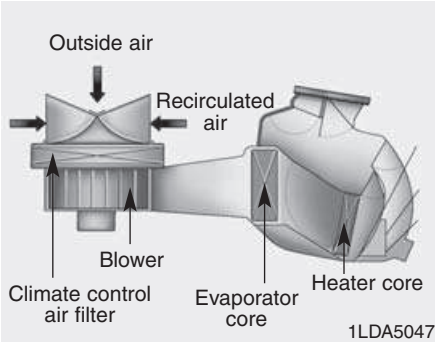
✻ NOTICE

- **When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely while driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause engine overheating. Continue to use the blower fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates engine overheating.**
- **When opening the windows in humid weather air conditioning may create water droplets inside the vehicle. Since excessive water droplets may cause damage to electrical equipment, air conditioning should only be used with the windows closed.**

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:31 PM Page 147

Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- Use air conditioning to reduce humidity and moisture inside the vehicle on rainy or humid days.
- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in engine speed as the air conditioning compressor cycles. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even puddling) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Operating the air conditioning system in the recirculated air position provides maximum cooling, however, continual operation in this mode may cause the air inside the vehicle to become stale.
- During cooling operation, you may occasionally notice a misty air flow because of rapid cooling and humid air intake. This is a normal system operation characteristic.



Climate control air filter

The climate control air filter installed behind the glove box filters the dust or other pollutants that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system. If dust or other pollutants accumulate in the filter over a period of time, the air flow from the air vents may decrease, resulting in moisture accumulation on the inside of the windshield even when the outside (fresh) air position is selected. If this happens, we recommend that the climate control air filter be replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:31 PM Page 148

✻ NOTICE

- **Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.**
  If the car is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty, rough roads, more frequent climate control air filter inspections and changes are required.
- **When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.**

Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also has a bad influence on the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Vehicles equipped with R-134a*



Because the refrigerant is at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used.

Otherwise, it may cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

⚠ WARNING - Vehicles equipped with R-1234yf*





Because the refrigerant is mildly inflammable and at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used.

Otherwise, it may cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

*: Your vehicle is filled with R-134a or R-1234yf according to the regulation in your country at the time of producing. You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied your vehicle at the label inside of hood. Refer to chapter 8 for more detail location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

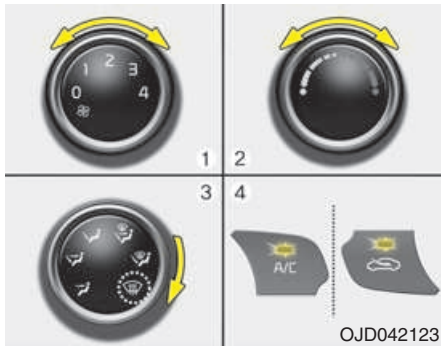
JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:31 PM Page 149

WINDSHIELD DEFROSTING AND DEFOGGING

⚠ WARNING - Windshield heating

Do not use the position during cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and the windshield could cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection to the position and fan speed control to the lower speed.

- For maximum defrosting, set the temperature control to the hottest position and the fan speed control to the highest speed.
- If warm air to the floor is desired while defrosting or defogging, set the mode to the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windshield, rear window, outside rear view mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the hood and air inlet in the cowl grill to improve heater and defroster efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windshield.



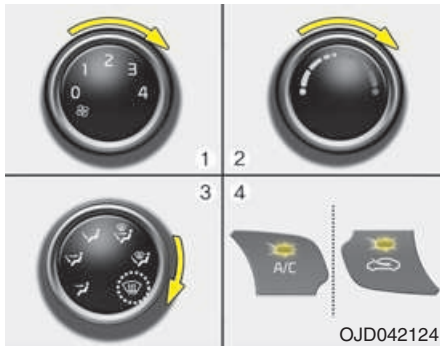
OJD042123

Manual climate control system

To defog inside windshield

1. Set the fan speed to the desired position.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Select the position.
4. The outside (fresh) air will be selected automatically. If the position is selected, air conditioning (if equipped) will also be selected automatically.

If the air conditioning and/or outside (fresh) air position are not selected automatically, press the corresponding button manually.

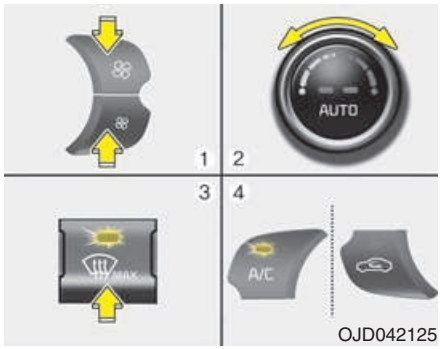


OJD042124

To defrost outside windshield

1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the hottest position.
3. Select the position.
4. The outside (fresh) air and air conditioning will be selected automatically.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:31 PM Page 150



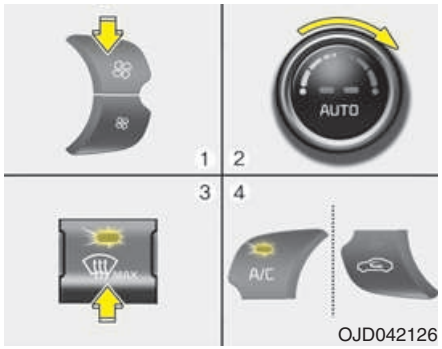
OJD042125

Automatic climate control system

To defog inside windshield

1. Set the fan speed to the desired speed.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Press the button.
4. The air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature and outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically.

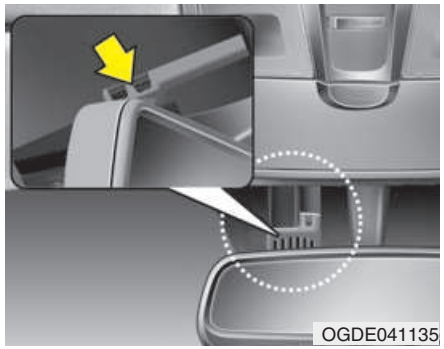
If the air conditioning is not selected automatically, adjust the corresponding button manually. If the position is selected, lower fan speed is adjusted to a higher fan speed.



OJD042126

To defrost outside windshield

1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the hottest (HIGH) position.
3. Press the button.
4. The air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature and outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically.


OGDE041135

Auto defogging system (Only for automatic climate control system, if equipped)

Auto defogging reduces the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windshield by automatically sensing the moisture of inside the windshield.

The auto defogging system operates when the climate control system is on.

✻ NOTICE

The auto defogging system may not operate normally, when the outside temperture is below -15 °C.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:31 PM Page 151



This indicator illuminates when the auto defogging system senses the moisture of inside the windshield and operates.

If more moisture is in the vehicle, higher steps operate as follow.

Step 1 : Operating the air conditioning
Step 2 : Outside air position
Step 3 : Blowing air flow toward the windshield
Step 4 : Increasing air flow toward the windshield

If your vehicle is equipped with the auto defogging system, it is automatically activated when the conditions are met. However, if you would like to cancel the auto defogging system, press the front defroster button 4 times within 2 seconds while pressing the AUTO button. The indicator will blink 3 times to notify you that the system is cancelled. To use the auto defogging system again, follow the procedures mentioned above.

If the battery has been disconnected or discharged, it resets to the auto defogging status.

✻ NOTICE

If the A/C off is manually selected while the auto defogging system is on, the auto defogging indicator will blink 3 times to give notice that the A/C off can not be selected.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the driver side windshield glass. Damage to the system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

CLEAN AIR (IF EQUIPPED)



OJD042129

When the ignition switch is in the ON position, the clean air function turns on automatically.

Also, the clean air function turns off automatically, when the ignition switch turns to the OFF position.

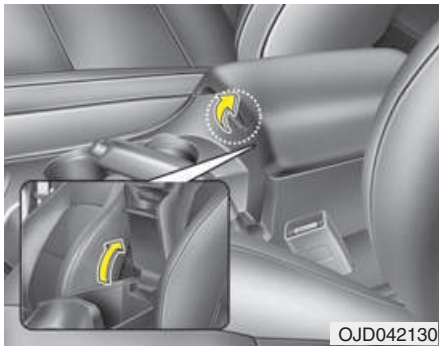
STORAGE COMPARTMENT

⚠ CAUTION

- ***To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartment.***
- ***Always keep the storage compartment covers closed while driving. Do not attempt to place so many items in the storage compartment that the storage compartment cover can not close securely.***

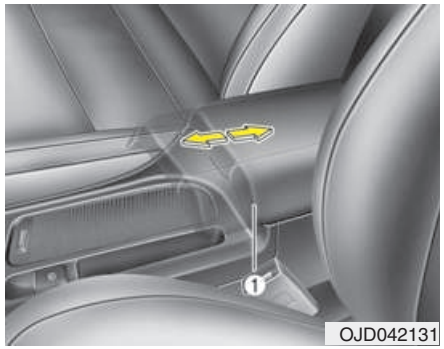
⚠ WARNING - Flammable materials

Do not store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.



Center console storage

To open the center console storage, push the lever and then lift up the cover.



Sliding armrest (if equipped)

To move forward

Grab the front portion of the armrest (1) then pull it forward

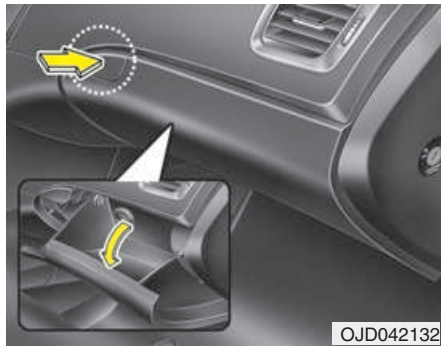
To move rearward

Push the armrest rearward with your palm.

⚠ WARNING

Do not grab the front portion of the armrest (1) when moving the armrest rearward. It may pinch your fingers.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:31 PM Page 153



Glove box

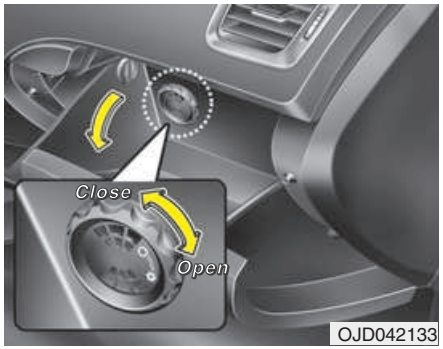
To open the glove box, push the button and the glove box will automatically open. Close the glove box after use.

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove box door closed while driving.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not keep food in the glove box for a long time.



Cool box (if equipped)

You can keep beverage cans or other items cool in the glove box.

1. Turn on the air conditioning. The temperature of the cool box will change according to the temperature of air conditioning.
2. Turn the knob to the open position.
3. When the cool box is not used, turn the knob to the close position.

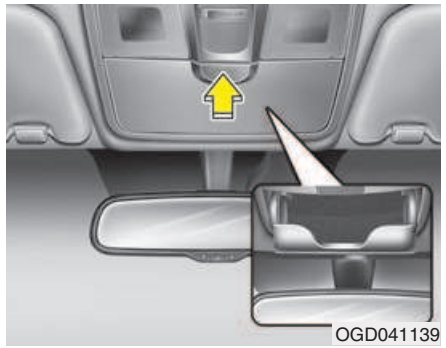
✻ NOTICE

If some items in the cool box block the vent, the cooling effectiveness of the cool box is reduced.

⚠ WARNING

Do not put perishable food in the cool box because it may not maintain the necessary consistent temperature to keep the food fresh.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:31 PM Page 154

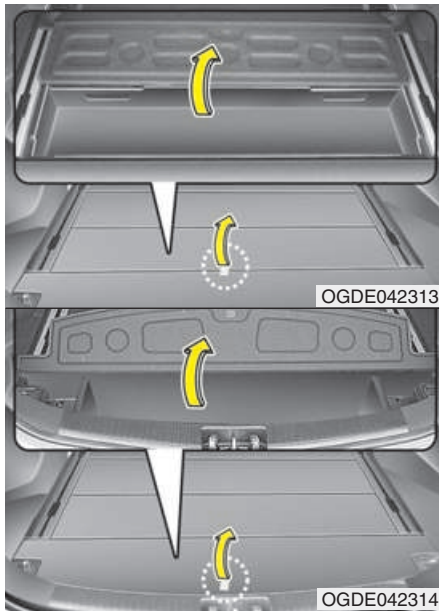

OGD041139

Sunglass holder

To open the sunglass holder, press the cover and the holder will slowly open. Place your sunglasses in the compartment door with the lenses facing out. Push to close.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not keep objects except sunglasses inside the sunglass holder. Such objects can be thrown from the holder in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.**
- **Do not open the sunglasses holder while the vehicle is moving. The rear view mirror of the vehicle can be blocked by an open sunglass holder.**
- **Do not put the glasses forcibly into a sunglass holder to prevent breakage or deformation of glasses. It may cause personal injury if you try to open it forcibly when the glasses are jammed in holder.**


OGDE042313

OGDE042314

Luggage tray (wagon)

You can place a first aid kit, a reflector triangle (front tray), tools, etc. in the box for easy access.

Grasp the handle on the top of the cover and lift it.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:32 PM Page 155

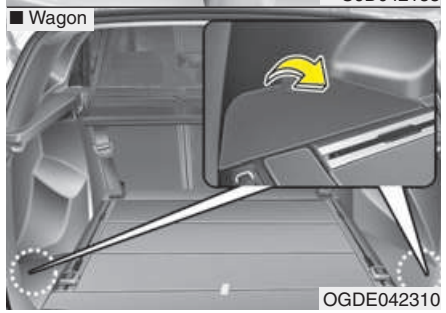
INTERIOR FEATURES

■ 3 Door and 5 Door



OJD042153

■ Wagon

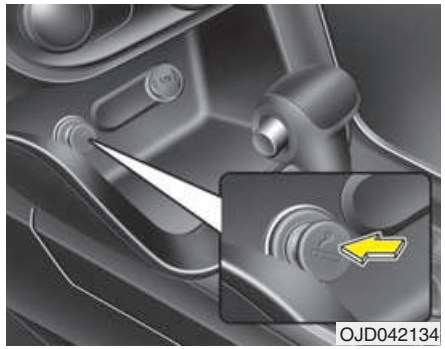


OGDE042310

Luggage side tray (if equipped)

The luggage side tray can be used for storing small items.

To open the cover, pull up the handle and lift the cover.



OJD042134

Cigarette lighter (if equipped)

For the cigarette lighter to work, the ignition switch must be in the ACC position or the ON position.

To use the cigarette lighter:

Push the lighter all the way into the socket.

When the element has heated, the lighter will pop out to the "ready" position.

We recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

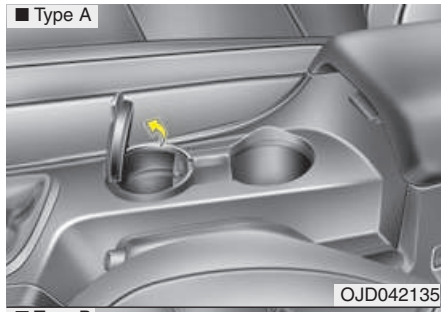
- **Holding the lighter in after it is heated will cause it to overheat.**
- **If the lighter does not pop out within 30 seconds, remove it to prevent overheating.**
- **Do not insert foreign objects into the socket of the cigarette lighter. It may damage the cigarette lighter.**

⚠ CAUTION

The use of plug-in accessories (shavers, hand-held vacuums, and coffee pots, etc.) may damage the socket or cause electrical failure.

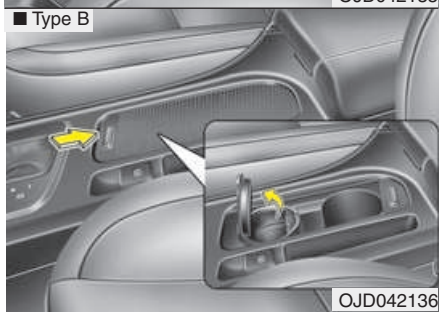
JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:32 PM Page 156

■ Type A



OJD042135

■ Type B



OJD042136

Ashtray (if equipped)

To use the ashtray, open the cover. (Type B)
To clean or empty the ashtray, pull it out.

⚠ WARNING - Ashtray use

- **Do not use the vehicle's ashtray as a waste receptacle.**
- **Putting lit cigarettes or matches in an ashtray with other combustible materials may cause a fire.**

⚠ CAUTION

When cleaning spilled liquid, do not dry the cup holder at high temperatures. This may damage the chrome part of the cup holder.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:32 PM Page 157

Cup holder

⚠ WARNING - Hot liquids

- **Do not place uncovered cups of hot liquid in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion. If the hot liquid spills, you may burn yourself. Such a burn to the driver could lead to loss of control of the vehicle.**
- **To reduce the risk of personal injury in the event of sudden stop or collision, do not place uncovered or unsecured bottles, glasses, cans, etc., in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion.**

⚠ WARNING

Keep cans and bottles out of direct sunlight. Placing them in a hot vehicle can cause them to explode.

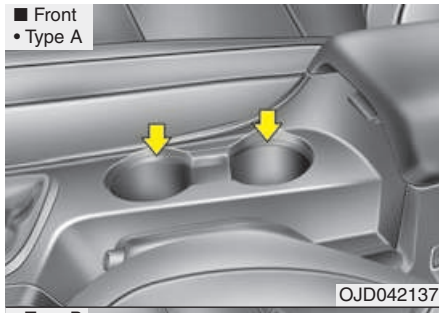
⚠ CAUTION

Do not place uncovered cups in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion. If the liquid spills, electric systems may malfunction.

✻ NOTICE

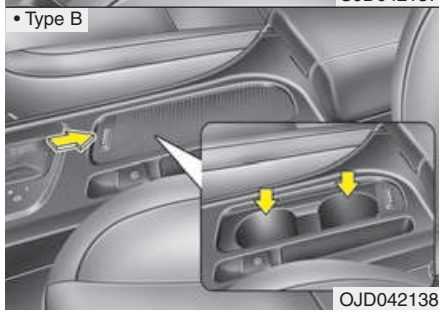
- **Keep your drinks sealed while driving to prevent spilling your drink. If liquid spills, it may get into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and damage electrical/electronic parts.**
- **When cleaning spilled liquids, do not dry the cup holder at high temperature. This may damage the cup holder.**

■ Front
• Type A



OJD042137

• Type B



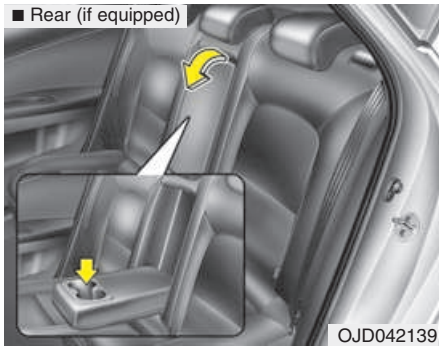
OJD042138

Cups or small beverage cans may be placed in the cup holders.

Type B

To use the cup holder, open the cover.

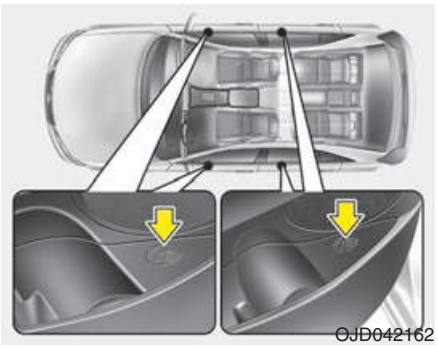
■ Rear (if equipped)



OJD042139

Rear

To use the cup holder, pull down the armrest.



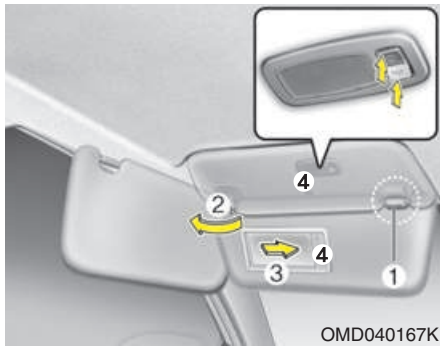
OJD042162

Bottle holder

Bottles may be placed in the holder.

✻ NOTICE

Only bottles should be placee in the holder as it is written in the vehicle "BOTTLE ONLY".



OMD040167K

Sunvisor

Use the sunvisor to shield direct light through the front or side windows.

To use a sunvisor, pull it downward.

To use a sunvisor for a side window, pull it downward, unsnap it from the bracket (1) and swing it to the side. (2)

To use the vanity mirror, pull down the visor and open the mirror cover (3).

To use the vanity mirror lamp, switch it on. (if equipped)

The ticket holder (4) is provided for holding a tollgate ticket. (if equipped)

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:32 PM Page 159

✻ NOTICE

Close the vanity mirror cover securely and return the sunvisor to its original position after use.

⚠ CAUTION - Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)

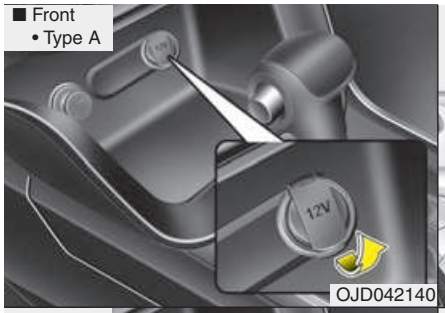
Always have the switch in the off position when the vanity mirror lamp is not in use. If the sunvisor is closed without the lamp off, it may discharge the battery or damage the sunvisor.

⚠ WARNING

For your safety, do not obstruct your vision when using the sunvisor.

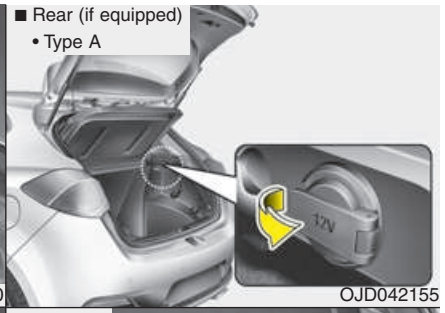
❉ To learn how to use the vanity mirror lamp, refer to "Interior light" in this chapter.

■ Front
• Type A



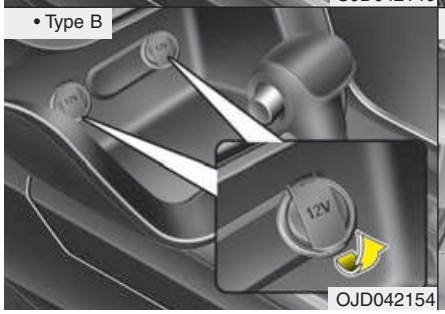
OJD042140

■ Rear (if equipped)
• Type A



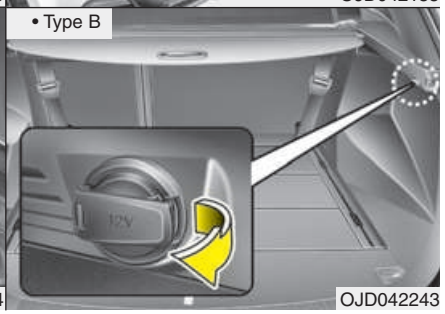
OJD042155

• Type B



OJD042154

• Type B



OJD042243

Power outlet

The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile telephones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems. The devices should draw less than 10 amps with the engine running.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Use power outlet only when the engine is running and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for prolonged periods of time with the engine off could cause the battery to discharge.*
- *Do not use an electric accessory or equipment the power consumption of which is greater than 12V (10A). It may cause damage to the power outlet or vehicle wiring harness.*
- *Only use 12V electric accessories which are less than 10A in electric capacity.*
- *Adjust the air-conditioner or heater to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.*
- *Close the cover when not in use.*
- *Some electronic devices can cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.*

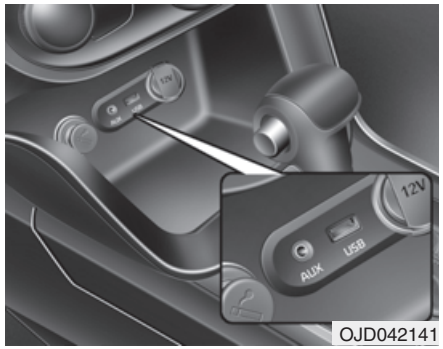
(Continued)

(Continued)

- *Make sure that the electric devices are plugged in securely. If not, it could cause a malfunction of electric systems.*
- *If you use an electric device with a battery, electric current may flow from the electric device into the vehicle and may cause a malfunction of electric systems. Only use electric devices which could prevent flowing of current into the vehicle.*

⚠ WARNING

Do not put a finger or a foreign element (pin, etc.) into a power outlet and do not touch with a wet hand. You may get electrocuted or fire may occur.



OJD042141

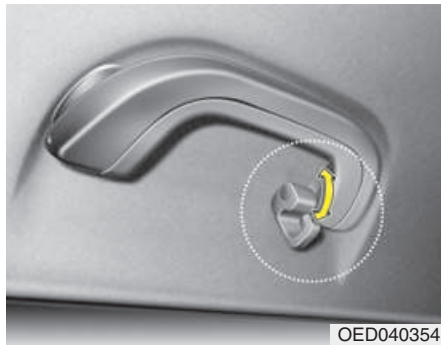
Aux, USB and iPod®

You can use an aux port to connect audio devices and an USB port to plug in an USB and also an iPod® port to plug in an iPod.

✻ NOTICE

When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, use the power source of the portable audio device.

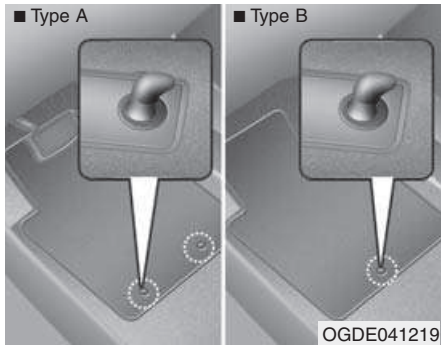
✻ iPod® is a trademark of Apple Inc.



Clothes hanger

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not hang heavy clothes, since those may damage the hook.***
- ***Be careful when opening and closing the doors. Clothes, etc. may get caught between the door gap.***



Floor mat anchor(s) (if equipped)

When using a floor mat on the front floor carpet, make sure it attaches to the floor mat anchor(s) in your vehicle. This keeps the floor mat from sliding forward.

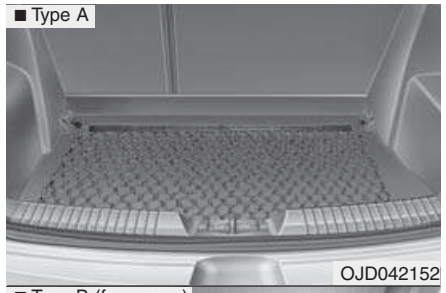
⚠ WARNING

The following must be observed when installing ANY floor mat to the vehicle.

- **Ensure that the floor mats are securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchor(s) before driving the vehicle.**
- **Do not use ANY floor mat that cannot be firmly attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.**
- **Do not stack floor mats on top of one another (e.g. all-weather rubber mat on top of a carpeted floor mat). Only a single floor mat should be installed in each position.**

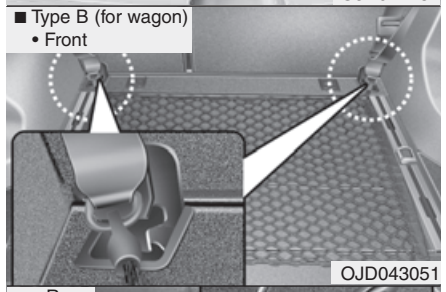
IMPORTANT – Your vehicle was manufactured with driver's side floor mat anchors that are designed to securely hold the floor mat in place. To avoid any interference with pedal operation, Kia recommends that the Kia floor mat designed for use in your vehicle be installed.

■ Type A



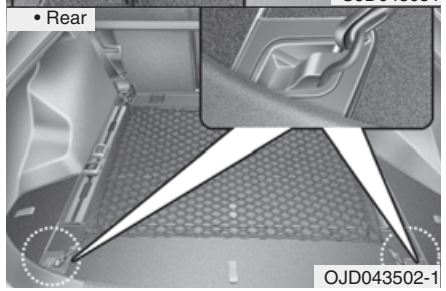
OJD042152

■ Type B (for wagon)
• Front



OJD043051

• Rear



OJD043502-1

Luggage net (holder) (if equipped)

To keep items from shifting in the cargo area, you can use the four holders located in the cargo area to attach the luggage net.



This symbol indicates the position of the front holders (wagon).

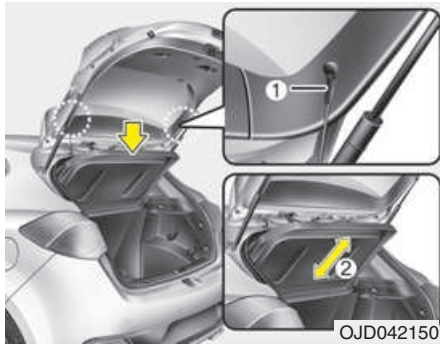
If necessary, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the goods or the vehicle, care should be taken when carrying fragile or bulky objects in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid eye injury, DO NOT overstretch the luggage net. ALWAYS keep your face and body out of the luggage net's recoil path. DO NOT use the luggage net when the strap has visible signs of wear or damage.



OJD042150

Cargo area cover (3 Door and 5 Door)

Use the cover to hide items stored in the cargo area.

The cargo area cover will be lifted when the tailgate is opened. Disconnect the strap (1) from holder if you want to return the cover to original position. To remove the cargo area cover completely, lift the cover to a 43-degree angle and pull it out to the full (2). For installation of the cover, reverse the removal procedure.

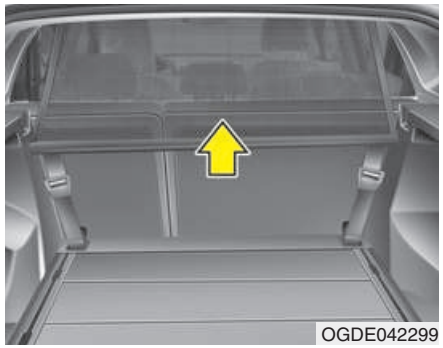
JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:32 PM Page 163

⚠ CAUTION

- *When you return the cargo area cover to its original position, hold the cover and lower it.*
- *Do not operate the vehicle with the cover removed. It may damage to the cover.*
- *The cargo area cover may be lifted when the tailgate is opened. Ensure that the luggage on the cover is moved to a safe place.*
- *Since the cargo area cover may be damaged or malformed, do not apply excessive force to the cover or do not put the heavy loads on it.*

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not place objects on the cargo area cover while driving. Such objects may be thrown about inside the vehicle and possibly injure vehicle occupants during an accident or when braking.**
- **Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is designed for luggage only.**
- **Maintain the balance of the vehicle and locate the weight as far forward as possible.**



OGDE042299

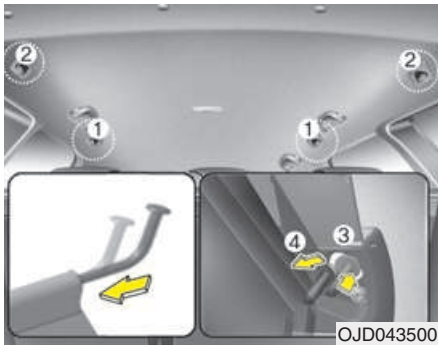
Barrier net (wagon) (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a barrier net.

When you load some cargoes on the rear seat or rear cargo area, you must install the barrier net behind front seatback or rear seatback.

It is designed to help protect the heads of the occupants by obstructing objects flying forward in frontal collisions.

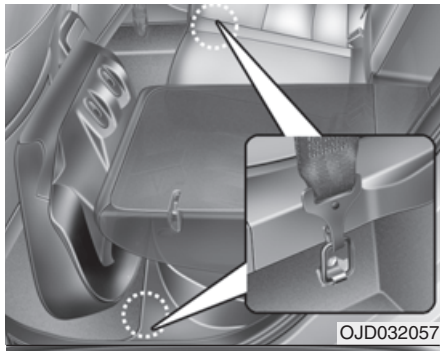
There are eight hook holders on both side of the headliner over the headrests for upper side fixation and on the floor behind the front seats or rear seats for lower side fixation.

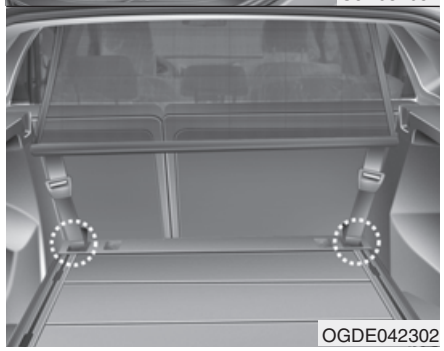


OJD043500

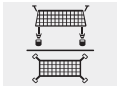
To install the barrier net

1. Open the cover (if equipped) for the holder position (1) or (2) you want to install.
2. Compress the one side net upper shaft to length direction before insert the net upper shaft into the large hole (3) and then secure by sliding into the small hole (4).


OJD032057

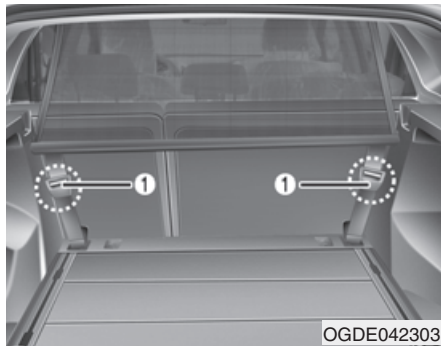

OGDE042302

3. Hang the net strap hooks in the corresponding hook holders on the floor behind the front seat or rear seat.



This symbol indicates the position of the hook holders on the floor behind the rear seat.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:33 PM Page 165



4. Fasten the straps, by using the adjuster (1).

⚠ WARNING

- **Make sure that there is no slack in the barrier net by fastening the strap securely when installing the net. The strap should be fastened after confirming that the hook is inserted into the upper hook holder securely.**
- **Make sure that the seatbacks are locked securely.**

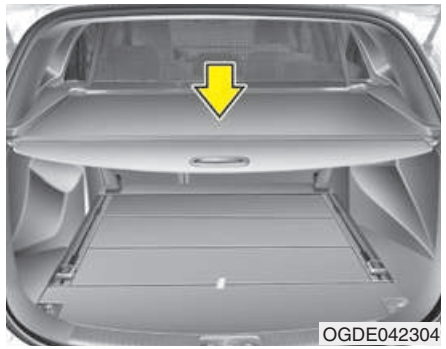
⚠ WARNING

- **Do not put passengers in the rear seat or cargo area behind the barrier net.**
- **Do not put passenger in the rear centre seat when the barrier net is installed behind the rear seats. The barrier net may interfere with use of the rear centre safety belt.**
- **Do not load cargo in the area higher than the barrier net's upper end.**
- **Do not load heavy cargo in the area higher than the seatback to avoid accident even if the barrier net is installed.**
- **Do not load cargo which has sharp edge that can pass through the barrier net.**
- **Do not apply excessive force to the barrier net by hanging on to the net or by suspending heavy cargo and so on.**

To remove the barrier net

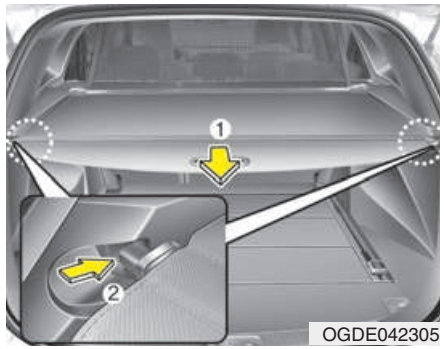
1. Loosen the straps by using the strap adjusters and remove the strap hooks from the hook holders.
2. Remove the net upper shaft by pulling it through the large holes.
3. Remove the barrier net.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:33 PM Page 166


OGDE042304

Cargo security screen (wagon) (if equipped)

Use the cargo security screen to hide items stored in the cargo area.



OGDE042305

To use the cargo security screen

1. Pull the cargo security screen towards the rear of the vehicle by the handle (1).
2. Insert the guide pin into the guide (2).

✻ NOTICE

Pull out the cargo security screen with the handle in the center to prevent the guide pin from falling out of the guide.

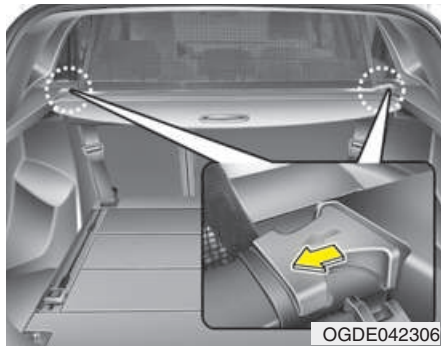
When the cargo security screen is not in use:

1. Pull the cargo security screen rear and down to release it from the guides.
2. The cargo security screen will automatically slide back in.

✻ NOTICE

The cargo security screen may not automatically slide back in if the cargo security screen is not fully pulled out. Fully pull it out and then let go.

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:33 PM Page 167



To remove the cargo security screen

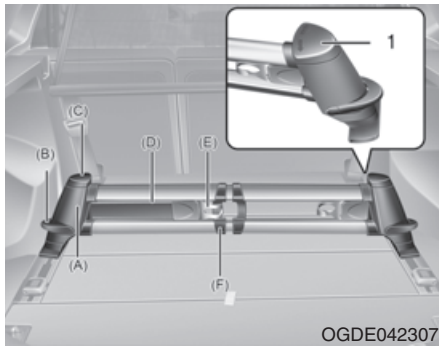
1. Push the guide pin inward.
2. While pushing the guide pin, pull out the cargo security screen.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not place objects on the cargo security screen. Such objects may be thrown about inside the vehicle and possibly injure vehicle occupants during an accident or when braking.**
- **Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is designed for luggage only.**
- **Maintain the balance of the vehicle and locate the weight as forward as possible.**

⚠ CAUTION

Since the cargo security screen may be damaged or malformed, do not put luggage on it when it is used.



Luggage rail system (wagon) (if equipped)

The luggage rail system may prevent the luggage from sliding around in the luggage compartment.

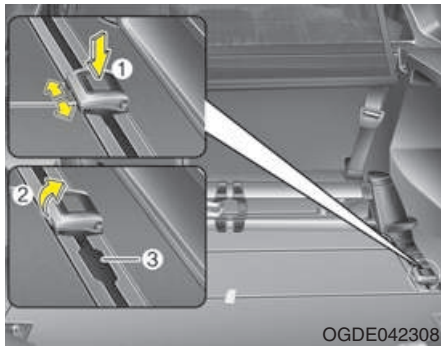
JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:33 PM Page 168

Build in segmentation bar

- Put both pillars (A) from the segmentation bar in the openings from the rail.
- To move the segmentation bar, put your hand on the side of the pillar and push down the lever arm (B).
- Make sure the pillars click into place.
- To release the belt, turn the upper element (C) to the left or right until it clicks.
- Now you can pull the belt (D) and secure your luggage by putting the belt around the luggage and put the hook (E) into the middle of the segmentation bar (F).
- For bulky luggage, you can hook both hooks into each other.
- To make sure the belt locks, put the upper element (C) back into the lock position (1).

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The segmentation bar must be mounted and demounted with both pillars simultaneously.***
- ***Max. load: 30 kg with one belt***
  40 kg with two belts



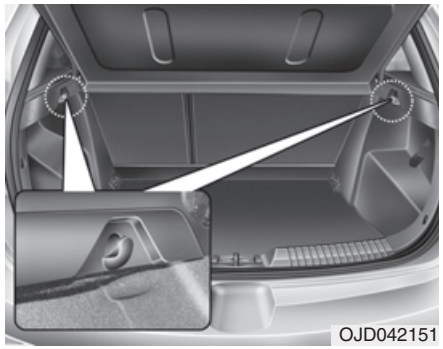
OGDE042308

Applying the shackle on the guide rail

- Put the shackle (A) in the position where the shackle is put in the rail.
- To move the shackle, press the button (1) and move the shackle along the rail.
- Make sure the shackle is clicked into place.
- To fix the luggage, pull up the hook (2) in the middle cargo bay.
- Now you can mount e.g. belt to fix the luggage in the hook.
- The shackle cannot be used in the position where the shackle is put in and out of the rail (3).

⚠ CAUTION

Tensile force : max. 30 kgf. for 1 shackle


OJD042151

✻ The actual luggage room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

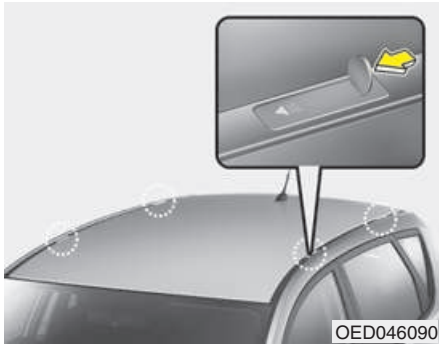
Shopping bag holder

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not hang a bag weighing more than 3 kg (7 lbs.). It may cause damage to the shopping bag holder.***
- ***Do not hang the frail objects when you drive rough road, the objects may be damaged.***

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:33 PM Page 169

EXTERIOR FEATURES


OED046090

Mounting bracket for roof carrier (if equipped)

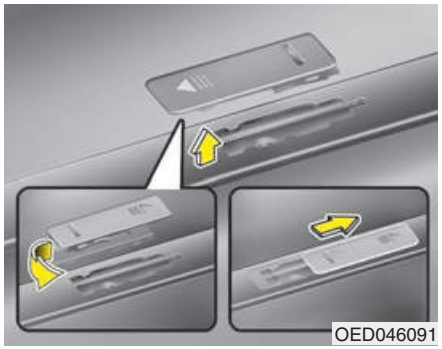
To install or remove a roof carrier, you can use the mounting bracket and cover on the roof.

When you install a roof carrier, use the following procedure.

1. Insert a slim tool(coin or flat blade driver) into the slot and slide the cover toward the arrow on the cover.

⚠ WARNING

Use a coin or flat blade driver when you remove the roof carrier cover.
If you use your fingernail, it may damage your fingernail.


OED046091

2. Rotate the cover half way and insert the cover on the roof hole as the illustration.

✻ NOTICE

To prevent loosing the roof carrier cover, install the cover on the roof before you install the roof carrier.

3. After using the roof carrier, install the cover back on the roof in the reverse order.

✻ NOTICE

If the vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, be sure not to position cargo onto the roof in such a way that it could interfere with sunroof operation.

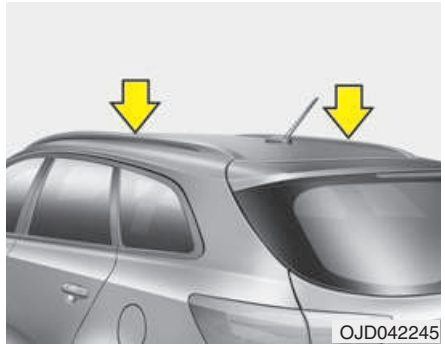
⚠ CAUTION

- ***When carrying cargo on the roof, take the necessary precautions to make sure the cargo does not damage the roof of the vehicle.***
- ***When carrying large objects on the roof, make sure they do not exceed the overall roof length or width.***

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:33 PM Page 170

⚠ WARNING

- **The vehicle center of gravity will be higher when items are loaded onto the roof. Avoid sudden starts, braking, sharp turns, abrupt maneuvers or high speeds that may result in loss of vehicle control or rollover resulting in an accident.**
- **Always drive slowly and turn corners carefully when carrying items on the roof. Severe wind updrafts, caused by passing vehicles or natural causes, can cause sudden upward pressure on items loaded on the roof. This is especially true when carrying large, flat items such as wood panels or mattresses. This could cause the items to fall off the roof and cause damage to your vehicle or others around you.**
- **To prevent damage or loss of cargo while driving, check frequently before or while driving to make sure the items on the roof are securely fastened.**



Roof rack (for wagon)

If the vehicle has a roof rack, you can load cargo on top of your vehicle.

We recommend to obtain the crossbars and fixing components needed to install the roof rack on your vehicle from an authorized Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

- **The crossbars (if equipped) should be placed in the proper load carrying positions prior to placing items onto the roof rack.**
- **If the vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, be sure not to position cargo onto the roof rack in such a way that it could interfere with sunroof operation.**
- **When the roof rack is not being used to carry cargo, the crossbars may need to be repositioned if wind noise is detected.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When carrying cargo on the roof rack, take the necessary precautions to make sure the cargo does not damage the roof of the vehicle.***
- ***When carrying large objects on the roof rack, make sure they do not exceed the overall roof length or width.***
- ***When you are carrying cargo on the roof rack, do not operate the sunroof (if equipped).***

JD eng 4a.QXP 3/4/2015 4:33 PM Page 171

⚠ WARNING

- **The following specification is the maximum weight that can be loaded onto the roof rack. Distribute the load as evenly as possible across the crossbars (if equipped) and roof rack and secure the load firmly.**

ROOF RACK	100 kg (220 lbs.) EVENLY DISTRIBUTED

Loading cargo or luggage in excess of the specified weight limit on the roof rack may damage your vehicle.

- **The vehicle center of gravity will be higher when items are loaded onto the roof rack. Avoid sudden starts, braking, sharp turns, abrupt maneuvers or high speeds that may result in loss of vehicle control or rollover resulting in an accident.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

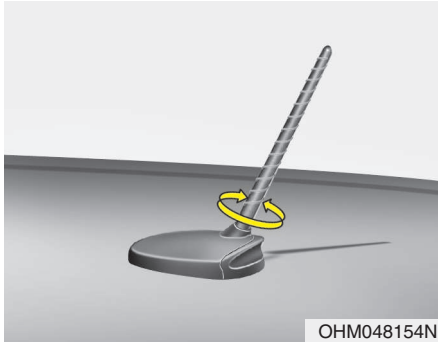
- **Always drive slowly and turn corners carefully when carrying items on the roof rack. Severe wind updrafts, caused by passing vehicles or natural causes, can cause sudden upward pressure on items loaded on the roof rack. This is especially true when carrying large, flat items such as wood panels or mattresses. This could cause the items to fall off the roof rack and cause damage to your vehicle or others around you.**
- **To prevent damage or loss of cargo while driving, check frequently before or while driving to make sure the items on the roof rack are securely fastened.**

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:39 PM Page 172

AUDIO SYSTEM

✻ NOTICE

- **If you install an aftermarket HID head lamp, your vehicle's audio and electronic device may malfunction.**
- **Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration.**



OHM048154N

Antenna

Roof antenna

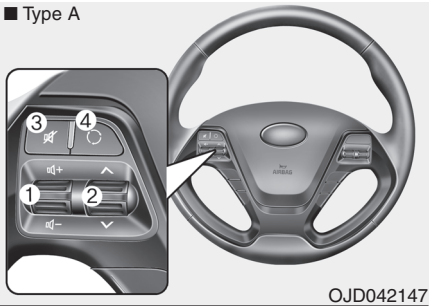
Your car uses a roof antenna to receive both AM and FM broadcast signals. This antenna is a removable type. To remove the antenna, turn it counterclockwise. To install the antenna, turn it clockwise.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Before entering a place with a low height clearance or a car wash, remove the antenna by rotating it counterclockwise. If not, the antenna may be damaged.***
- ***When reinstalling your antenna, it is important that it is fully tightened and adjusted to the upright position to ensure proper reception. But it could be removed when parking the vehicle or when loading cargo on the roof rack.***
- ***When cargo is loaded on the roof rack, do not place the cargo near the antenna pole to ensure proper reception.***

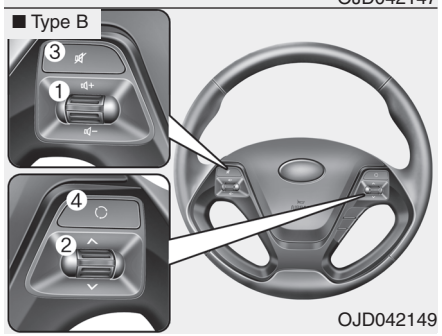
JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:39 PM Page 173

■ Type A



OJD042147

■ Type B



OJD042149

Audio remote control (if equipped)

The steering wheel audio remote control button is installed to promote safe driving.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the audio remote control buttons simultaneously.

VOL (+ / -) (1)

- Push up the lever to increase volume.
- Push down the lever to decrease volume.

SEEK (∧ / ∨) (2)

The SEEK/PRESET button has different functions base on the system mode. For the following functions the button should be pressed for 0.8 seconds or more.

RADIO mode

It will function as the AUTO SEEK select button.

CDP mode

It will function as the FF/REW button.

If the SEEK button is pressed for less than 0.8 second, it will work as follows in each mode.

RADIO mode

It will function as the PRESET STATION select buttons.

CDP mode

It will function as the TRACK UP/DOWN button.

Detailed information for audio control buttons are described in the following pages in this section.

MUTE (3)

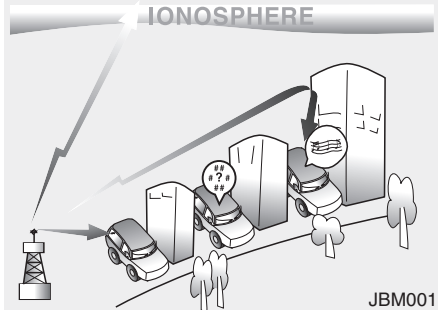
- Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound.
- Press the MUTE button again to activate the sound.

MODE (4)

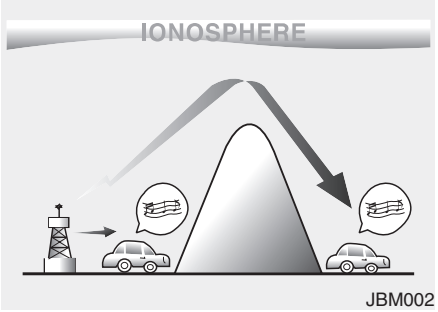
Press the button to select Radio or CD (compact disc).

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:39 PM Page 174

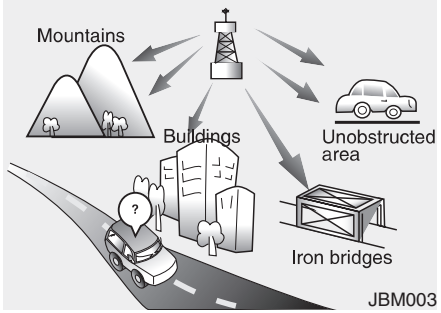
FM reception



AM reception



FM radio station



How car audio works

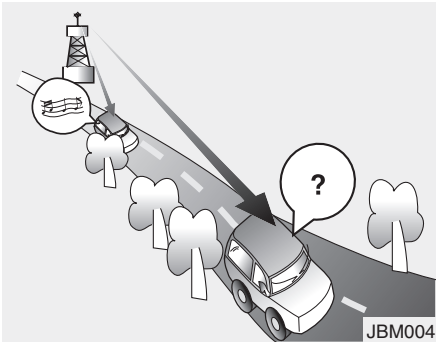
AM and FM radio signals are broadcast from transmitter towers located around your city. They are intercepted by the radio antenna on your car. This signal is then received by the radio and sent to your car speakers.

When a strong radio signal has reached your vehicle, the precise engineering of your audio system ensures the best possible quality reproduction. However, in some cases the signal coming to your vehicle may not be strong and clear. This can be due to factors such as the distance from the radio station, closeness of other strong radio stations or the presence of buildings, bridges or other large obstructions in the area.

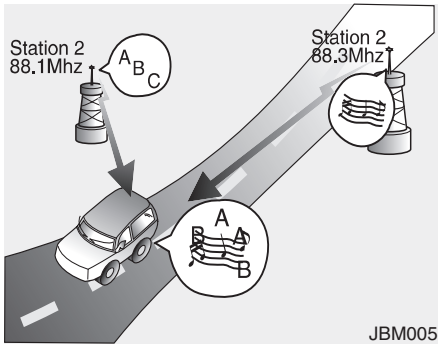
AM broadcasts can be received at greater distances than FM broadcasts. This is because AM radio waves are transmitted at low frequencies. These long, low frequency radio waves can follow the curvature of the earth rather than travelling straight out into the atmosphere. In addition, they curve around obstructions so that they can provide better signal coverage.

FM broadcasts are transmitted at high frequencies and do not bend to follow the earth's surface. Because of this, FM broadcasts generally begin to fade at short distances from the station. Also, FM signals are easily affected by buildings, mountains, or other obstructions. These can result in certain listening conditions which might lead you to believe a problem exists with your radio. The following conditions are normal and do not indicate radio trouble:

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:39 PM Page 175



- Fading - As your car moves away from the radio station, the signal will weaken and sound will begin to fade. When this occurs, we suggest that you select another stronger station.
- Flutter/Static - Weak FM signals or large obstructions between the transmitter and your radio can disturb the signal causing static or fluttering noises to occur. Reducing the treble level may lessen this effect until the disturbance clears.



- Station Swapping - As a FM signal weakens, another more powerful signal near the same frequency may begin to play. This is because your radio is designed to lock onto the clearest signal. If this occurs, select another station with a stronger signal.
- Multi-Path Cancellation - Radio signals being received from several directions can cause distortion or fluttering. This can be caused by a direct and reflected signal from the same station, or by signals from two stations with close frequencies. If this occurs, select another station until the condition has passed.

Using a cellular phone or a two-way radio

When a cellular phone is used inside the vehicle, noise may be produced from the audio equipment. This does not mean that something is wrong with the audio equipment. In such a case, use the cellular phone at a place as far as possible from the audio equipment.

⚠ CAUTION

When using a communication system such a cellular phone or a radio set inside the vehicle, a separate external antenna must be fitted. When a cellular phone or a radio set is used with an internal antenna alone, it may interfere with the vehicle's electrical system and adversely affect safe operation of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Don't use a cellular phone when you are driving. You must stop at a safe place to use a cellular phone.

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:39 PM Page 176

⚠ WARNING

- *Do not stare at the screen while driving. Staring at the screen for prolonged periods of time could lead to traffic accidents.*
- *Do not disassemble, assemble, or modify the audio system. Such acts could result in accidents, fire, or electric shock.*
- *Using the phone while driving may lead to a lack of attention of traffic conditions and increase the likelihood of accidents. Use the phone feature after parking the vehicle.*
- *Heed caution not to spill water or introduce foreign objects into the device. Such acts could lead to smoke, fire, or product malfunction.*
- *Please refrain from use if the screen is blank or no sound can be heard as these signs may indicate product malfunction. Continued use in such conditions could lead to accidents(fires, electric shock) or product malfunctions.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *Do not touch the antenna during thunder or lightening as such acts may lead to lightning induced electric shock.*
- *Do not stop or park in parking-restricted areas to operate the product. Such acts could lead to traffic accidents.*
- *Use the system with the vehicle ignition turned on. Prolonged use with the ignition turned off could result in battery discharge.*

⚠ CAUTION

- *Operating the device while driving could lead to accidents due to a lack of attention to external surroundings. First park the vehicle before operating the device.*
- *Adjust the volume to levels that allow the driver to hear sounds from outside of the vehicle. Driving in a state where external sounds cannot be heard may lead to accidents.*
- *Pay attention to the volume setting when turning the device on. A sudden output of extreme volume upon turning the device on could lead to hearing impairment. (Adjust the volume to a suitable levels before turning off the device.)*
- *If you want to change the position of device installation, please inquire with your place of purchase or service maintenance center. Technical expertise is required to install or disassemble the device.*

(Continued)

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:39 PM Page 177

(Continued)

- *Turn on the car ignition before using this device. Do not operate the audio system for long periods of time with the ignition turned off as such operations may lead to battery discharge.*
- *Do not subject the device to severe shock or impact. Direct pressure onto the front side of the monitor may cause damage to the LCD or touch screen.*
- *When cleaning the device, make sure to turn off the device and use a dry and smooth cloth. Never use tough materials, chemical cloths, or solvents (alcohol, benzene, thinners, etc.) as such materials may damage the device panel or cause color/quality deterioration*
- *Do not place beverages close to the audio system. Spilling beverages may lead to system malfunction.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *In case of product malfunction, please contact your place of purchase or After Service center.*
- *Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.*

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:39 PM Page 178

Caring for disc

- If the temperature inside the car is too high, open the car windows to ventilate before using the system.
- It is illegal to copy and use MP3/WMA files without permission. Use CDs that are created only by lawful means.
- Do not apply volatile agents, such as benzene and thinner, normal cleaners and magnetic sprays made for analogue disc onto CDs.
- To prevent the disc surface from getting damaged, hold CDs by the edges or the center hole only.
- Clean the disc surface with a piece of soft cloth before playback (wipe it from the center to the outside edge).
- Do not damage the disc surface or attach pieces of sticky tape or paper.
- Make certain only CDs are inserted into the CD player (Do not insert more than one CD at a time).
- Keep CDs in their cases after use to protect them from scratches or dirt.
- Depending on the type of CD-R/CD-RW CDs, certain CDs may not operate normally according to manufacturing companies or making and recording methods. In such circumstances, continued use may cause malfunctions to your audio system.

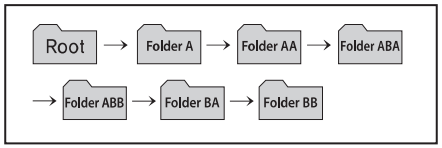
✻ NOTICE - Playing an Incompatible Copy Protected Audio CD

Some copy protected CDs, which do not comply with international audio CD standards (Red Book), may not play on your car audio. Please note that inabilities to properly play a copy protected CD may indicate that the CD is defective, not the CD player.

✻ NOTICE

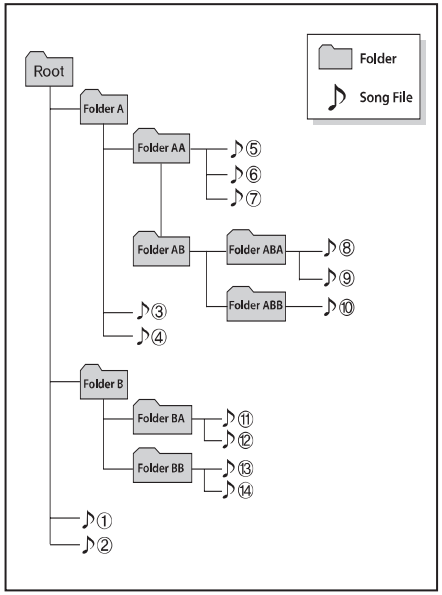
Order of playing files (folders) :

1. Song playing order : ① to ⑭ sequentially.



2. Folder playing order :

❋ If no song file is contained in the folder, that folder is not displayed.



JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:39 PM Page 179

Using Your USB Device

- To use an external USB device, make sure the device is not connected when starting up the vehicle. Connect the device after starting up.
- If you start the engine when the USB device is connected, it may damage the USB device. (USB flashdrives are very sensitive to electric shock.)
- If the engine is started up or turned off while the external USB device is connected, the external USB device may not work.
- It may not play inauthentic MP3 or WMA files.
  1) It can only play MP3 files with the compression rate between 8Kbps~320Kbps.
  2) It can only play WMA music files with the compression rate between 8Kbps~320Kbps.
- Take precautions for static electricity when connecting or disconnecting the external USB device.
- An encrypted MP3 PLAYER is not recognizable.
- Depending on the condition of the external USB device, the connected external USB device can be unrecognizable.
- When the formatted byte/sector setting of External USB device is not either 512BYTE or 2048BYTE, then the device will not be recognized.
- Use only a USB device formatted to FAT 12/16/32.
- USB devices without USB I/F authentication may not be recognizable.
- Make sure the USB connection terminal does not come in contact with the human body or other objects.
- If you repeatedly connect or disconnect the USB device in a short period of time, it may break the device.
- You may hear a strange noise when connecting or disconnecting a USB device.
- If you disconnect the external USB device during playback in USB mode, the external USB device can be damaged or may malfunction. Therefore, disconnect the external USB device when the audio is turned off or in another mode. (e.g, Radio, CD)
- Depending on the type and capacity of the external USB device or the type of the files stored in the device, there is a difference in the time taken for recognition of the device.
- Do not use the USB device for purposes other than playing music files.
- Playing videos through the USB is not supported.
- Use of USB accessories such as rechargers or heaters using USB I/F may lower performance or cause trouble.
- If you use devices such as a USB hub purchased separately, the vehicle's audio system may not recognize the USB device. In that case, connect the USB device directly to the multimedia terminal of the vehicle.
- If the USB device is divided by logical drives, only the music files on the highest-priority drive are recognized by car audio.
- Devices such as MP3 Player/ Cellular phone/Digital camera can be unrecognizable by standard USB I/F can be unrecognizable.

(Continued)

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:39 PM Page 180

(Continued)

- Charging through the USB may not be supported in some mobile devices.
- USB HDD or USB types that liable to connection failures due to vehicle vibrations are not supported. (i-stick type)
- Some non-standard USB devices (METAL COVER TYPE USB) can be unrecognizable.
- Some USB flash memory readers (such as CF, SD, micro SD, etc.) or external-HDD type devices can be unrecognizable.
- Music files protected by DRM (DIGITAL RIGHTS MANAGEMENT) are not recognizable.

✻ NOTICE - USB Jack Damage

- **The data in the USB memory may be lost while using this audio. Always back up important data on a personal storage device.**
- **Please avoid using USB memory products which can be used as key chains or cellular phone accessories as they could cause damage to the USB jack. Please make certain only to use plug type connector products as shown below.**



JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:39 PM Page 181

■ **CD Player : AC110A2EE/AC100A2EE**





✻No **Bluetooth** logo will be shown if the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology feature is not supported.

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/12/2015 3:03 PM Page 182



SYSTEM CONTROLLERS AND FUNCTIONS

❊ Display and settings may differ depending on the selected audio.

Audio Head Unit

(1) ▲ (EJECT)

Ejects the disc.

(2) RADIO

Changes to FM/AM mode.

Each time the key is pressed,the mode is changed in order of FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟ FMA ➟ AM ➟ AMA.

❊ In Setup>Display, the radio pop up screen will be displayed when [Mode Pop up] is turned (On).

When the pop up screen is displayed, use the ◎ TUNE knob or keys 1 ~ 6 to select the desired mode.

(3) MEDIA

Changes to CD, USB MP3, iPod, BT MP3, AUX modes.

Each time the key is pressed, the mode is changed in order of CD, USB, iPod, AUX, My Music, BT Audio.

❊ In Setup>Display, the media pop up screen will be displayed when [Mode Pop up] is turned (On) .

When the pop up screen is displayed, use the ◎ TUNE knob or keys 1 ~ 5 to select the desired mode.

(4) PHONE

Operates Phone Screen

❊ When a phone is not connected, the connection screen is displayed.

(5) ∧ SEEK , ∨ TRACK

Radio Mode : Automatically searches for broadcast frequencies.

CD, USB, iPod, My Music modes

- Shortly press the key (under 0.8 seconds): Moves to next or previous song (file)
- Press and hold the key (over 0.8 seconds): Rewinds or fast-forwards the current song.



(6) ⏻ / ▬ knob

◎ Power Knob: Turns power On/Off by pressing the knob

◎ Volume Knob: Sets volume by turning the knob left/right

(7) FM

Changes to FM mode.

Each time the key is pressed, the mode is changed in order of FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟ FMA.

(8) AM

Changes to AM mode.

Each time the key is pressed, the mode is changed in order of AM ➟ AMA.

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:39 PM Page 183



(9) 1 ~ 6 (Preset)

Radio Mode: Saves frequencies (channels) or receives saved frequencies (channels)

CD, USB, iPod, My Music mode

- 1 RPT : Repeat
- 2 RDM : Random

In the Radio, Media, Setup, and Menu pop up screen, the number menu is selected.

(10) PTY ^, FOLDER v

MP3, CD, USB mode : Folder Search

FM : RDS Program Type Search

(11)

Each time the button is pressed sets screen Off ➟ Screen On ➟ Screen Off

❉ Audio operation is maintained and only the screen will be turned Off. In the screen Off state, press any key to turn the screen On again.

(12) TA/SCAN

Radio Mode

- Press and hold the key (over 0.8 seconds): Previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each

CD, USB, iPod mode

- Press and hold the key (over 0.8 seconds): Previews each song (file) for 10 seconds each

❉ Press the TA/SCAN key (over 0.8 seconds) again to continue listening to the current song (file).

(13) MEMU

Displays menus for the current mode.

(14) SETUP

Press the SETUP key : Moves to the Display, Sound, Phone(Option), System setting modes



❉ If the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology feature is supported



(15) TUNE knob

Radio mode : Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right

CD, USB, iPod mode: Searches songs (files) by turning the knob left/right

❉ When the desired song is displayed, press the knob to play the song.

Moves focus in all selection menus and selects menus

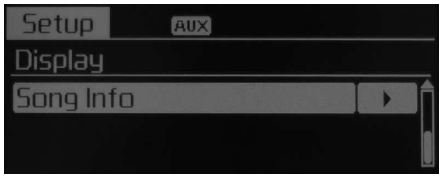
JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:39 PM Page 184

DISPLAY SETTINGS



Press the SETUP key▸Select [Display] through TUNE knob or 1 RPT key▸Select menu through TUNE knob





Mode Pop up

[Mode Pop up]▸Changes On selection mode

- During On state, press the RADIO or MEDIA key to display the mode change pop up screen.

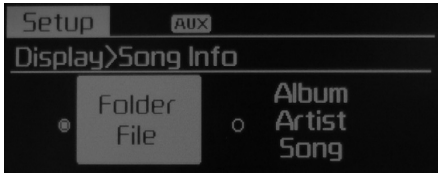
Scroll Text

[Scroll Text]▸Set On/Off

- On : Maintains scroll
- Off : Scrolls only one (1) time.

Song Info

When playing an MP3 file, select the desired display info from 'Folder/File' or 'Album/Artist/Song'.



SOUND SETTINGS

Press the SETUP key▸Select [Sound] through TUNE knob or 2 RDM key▸Select menu through TUNE knob





JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:39 PM Page 185

Audio Settings

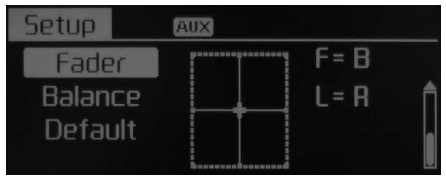
This menu allows you to set the 'Bass, Middle, Treble' and the Sound Fader and Balance.

Select [Audio Settings]▸Select menu through ◉ TUNE knob▸Turn ◉ TUNE knob left/right to set

- Bass, Middle, Treble : Selects the sound tone.
- Fader, Balance : Moves the sound fader and balance.
- Default : Restores default settings.

❊ Return : While adjusting values, re-pressing the ◉ TUNE knob will restore the parent menu.





Power Bass

This is a sound system feature that provides live bass.

Select [Power Bass] ▸Set (On)/(Off) through ◉ TUNE knob



Speed Dependent Volume Control

This feature is used to automatically control the volume level according to the speed of the vehicle.

Select [SDVC]▸Set in 4 levels [Off/Low/Mid/High] of ◉ TUNE knob



Volume Dialogue

Adjusts voice recognition volume.

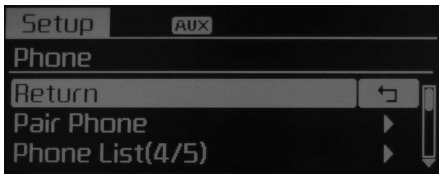
Select [Volume Dialogue]▸Set volume of ◉ TUNE knob

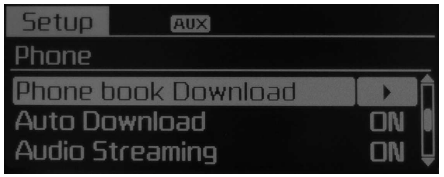


JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:39 PM Page 186

PHONE SETUP (if equipped)

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] through ◎ TUNE knob or 3 key ▸ Select menu through ◎ TUNE knob





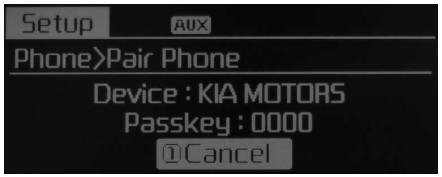


Pair Phone

To pair a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone, authentication and connection processes are first required. As a result, you cannot pair your mobile phone while driving the vehicle. First park your vehicle before use.

Select [Pair Phone] ▸ Set through ◎ TUNE knob

① Search for device names as displayed on your mobile phone and connect.



② Input the passkey displayed on the screen. (Passkey : 0000)

❊ The device name and passkey will be displayed on the screen for up to 3 minutes. If pairing is not completed within the 3 minutes, the mobile phone pairing process will automatically be canceled.

③ Pairing completion is displayed.

❊ In some mobile phones, pairing will automatically be followed by connection.

❊ It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled mobile phones.

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:39 PM Page 187

Phone List

The names of up to 5 paired phones will be displayed.

A [▶] is displayed in front of the currently connected phone.



Select the desired name to setup the selected phone.

Connecting a phone

Select [Phone List]▶Select mobile phone through ◎ TUNE knob▶Select [Connect Phone]



① Select a mobile phone that is not currently connected.
② Connect the selected mobile phone.
③ Connection completion is displayed.

❊ If a phone is already connected, disconnect the currently connected phone and select a new phone to connect.

Disconnecting a connected phone

Select [Phone List]▶Select mobile phone through ◎ TUNE knob▶Select [Disconnect Phone]

① Select the currently connected mobile phone.



② Disconnect the selected mobile phone.
③ Disconnection completion is displayed.

Changing connection sequence (Priority)

This is used to change the order (priority) of automatic connection for the paired mobile phones.

Select [Phone List]▶Select mobile phone through ◎ TUNE knob▶Select [Priority]

① Select [③ Phone] in the [Setup]
② Select [Phone List]
③ From the paired phones, select the phone desired for No.1 priority.
④ Select [② Priority]

❊ Once the connection sequence (priority) is changed, the new no. 1 priority mobile phone will be connected.
- when the no. 1 priority cannot be connected: Automatically attempts to connect the most recently connected phone.
- Cases when the most recently connected phone cannot be connected: Attempts to connect in the order in which paired phones are listed.

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:39 PM Page 188

Delete

Select [Phone List]▸Select mobile phone through ◎ TUNE knob▸Select [Delete]

① Select the desired mobile phone.
② Delete the selected mobile phone.
③ Deletion completion is displayed.
❊ When attempting to delete a currently connected phone, the phone is first disconnected.

- When you delete a mobile phone, It's phone book will also be erased.
- For stable *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology communication, delete the mobile phone from the audio and also delete the audio from your mobile phone

Phone book Download

This feature is used to download a phone book and call histories into the audio system.

Select [Phone]▸Select [① History] [② P.BOOK] through ◎ TUNE knob

- The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones.
- If a different operation is performed while a phone book is being downloaded, downloading will be discontinued. The phone book already downloaded will be saved.
- When downloading a new phone book, delete all previously saved phone book before starting download.

Auto Download

When connecting a mobile phone, it is possible to automatically download a new phone book and Call Histories.

Select [Auto Download]▸Set (On) / (Off) through ◎ TUNE knob

Audio Streaming

Songs (files) saved in your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone can be played through the audio system.

Select [Audio Streaming]▸Set (On) / (Off) through ◎ TUNE knob

- The *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio streaming feature may not be supported in some mobile phones.

Outgoing Volume

This is used to set the volume of your voice as heard by the other party while on a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled handsfree call.

Select [Outgoing Volume]▸Set volume through ◎ TUNE knob

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:39 PM Page 189

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology System Off

This feature is used when you do not wish to use the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system.

Select [*Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology System Off]▶Set through ◎ TUNE knob

❈ If a phone is already connected, disconnect the currently connected phone and turn the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system off.

Using the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology System

To use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology when the system is currently off, follow these next steps.

• Turning On *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology through the PHONE Key

Press the PHONE key▶Screen Guidance

❈ Moves to the screen where *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology functions can be used and displays guidance.

• Turning On *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology through the SETUP Key

Press the SETUP key▶Select [Phone] through ◎ TUNE knob or 3 key

① A screen asking whether to turn on *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology will be displayed.

② On the screen, select YES to turn on *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology and display guidance.

❈ If the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system is turned on, the system will automatically try to connect the most recently connected *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology connection may become intermittently disconnected in some mobile phones. Follow these next steps to try again.

1) Turn the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology function within the mobile phone ON/OFF and try to connect again.
2) Turn the mobile phone power ON/OFF and try to connect again.
3) Completely remove the mobile phone battery, reboot, and then try to connect again.
4) Reboot the audio system and try to connect again
5) Delete all paired devices in your mobile phone and the audio system and pair again for use.

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:39 PM Page 190

SYSTEM SETTINGS

If the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology feature is supported



Press the SETUP key▸Select [④ System] through tune knob or 4 key▸Select menu through ◎ TUNE knob

If the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology feature is not supported



Press the SETUP key▸Select [③ System] through tune knob or 3 key▸Select menu through ◎ TUNE knob





Memory Information

Displays currently used memory and total system memory.

Select [Memory Information]▸OK

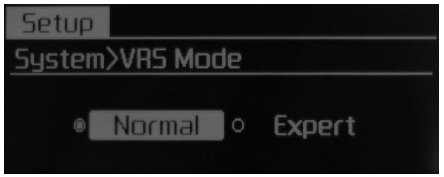
The currently used memory is displayed on the left side while the total system memory is displayed on the right side.



VRS Mode

This feature is used to change voice command feedback between Normal and Expert modes.

Select [VRS Mode]▸Set through ◎ TUNE knob



- Normal : This mode is for beginner users and provides detailed instructions during voice command operation.
- Expert : This mode is for expert users and omits some information during voice command operation. (When using Expert mode, guidance instructions can be heard through the [Help] or [Menu] commands.

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:39 PM Page 191

Language

This menu is used to set the display and voice recognition language.

Select [Language] ▸ Set through ◉ TUNE knob



❊ The system will reboot after the language is changed.

❊ Language support by region

- Deutsch, English(UK), Français, Italiano, Español, Nederlands, Svenska, Dansk, Русский, Polski

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:40 PM Page 192

RADIO

Changing RADIO mode



Press the RADIO (FM, AM)key to change the mode in order

RADIO : FM1➟FM2 ➟ FMA ➟ AM ➟AMA

FM : FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟FMA

AM : AM ➟ AMA

- [Mode Pop up] On state : Displays the change radio mode pop up screen. While the pop up screen is displayed, you can change the radio mode through the tune knob or 1 ~ 5 keys.

Adjust Volume

Turn the ◎ VOL knob left/right to adjust the volume.

SEEK

Press the RADIO (FM, AM)key▸ ∧ SEEK, ∨TRACK

- Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds): Changes the frequency.
- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds): Automatically searches for the next frequency.

Preset SEEK

Press the RADIO (FM, AM) key▸ 1 ~ 6

- Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds): Plays the frequency saved in the corresponding key.
- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds): Pressing and holding the desired key from 1 ~ 6 will save the currently playing broadcast to the selected key and sound a BEEP.

SCAN

Press the RADIO (FM, AM) key▸ TA/SCAN

- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds): The broadcast frequency increases and previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each. After scanning all frequencies, returns and plays the current broadcast frequency.

Selecting through manual search

Turn the ◎ TUNE knob left/right to adjust the frequency.

- FM : Changes by 50KHz
- AM : Changes by 9khz

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:40 PM Page 193

Traffic Announcement (TA)

Shortly pressing the TA/SCAN key (under 0.8 seconds): Set On/Off TA Traffic Announcement) mode.

PTY Up/Down

- Press the PTY ^, FOLDER v key when searching PTY in RDS Broadcasting Program Type selection.

MENU

Within MENU key are the AST, AF, Region and News functions.



AST (Auto Store)

Press the MENU key▸Set [①AST] through TUNE knob or 1 RPT key.

Select AST (Auto Store) to save frequencies with superior reception to presets 1 ~ 6. If no frequencies are received, then the most recently received frequency will be broadcast.

✻ Saves only to the Preset memory 1 ~ 6 of FMA or AMA mode.

AF (Alternative Frequency)

Press the MENU key▸Set [②AF] through TUNE knob or 2 RDM key.

The Alternative Frequency option can be turned On/Off.

Region

Press the MENU key▸Set [③Region] through TUNE knob or 3 key.

The Region option can be turned On/Off.

News

Press the MENU key▸Set [④News] through TUNE knob or 4 key.

The News option can be turned On/Off.

Info Volume

Info Volume refers to the sound volume upon receiving News or Traffic information.

The info volume can be controlled by turning the VOL knob left/right while a news or traffic broadcast is playing.

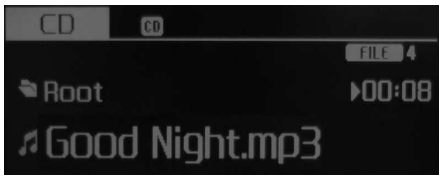
✻ AF, Region, and News are RDS Radio menus.

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:40 PM Page 194

BASIC METHOD OF USE : Audio CD / MP3 CD / USB / iPod / My Music

Press the MEDIA key to change the mode in order of CD➟USB(iPod)➟AUX ➟My Music➟BT Audio.

The folder/file name is displayed on the screen.



❈ The CD is automatically played when a CD is inserted.

❈ The USB music is automatically played when a USB is connected.

Song Infomation

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [1 Display] through the TUNE knob or 1 RPT key ▸ Select [Song Info] ▸ Media Display

- [Song Info] : The screen display info can be changed to Album/Artist/Song name.



Repeat

While song (file) is playing ▸ 1 RPT (RPT) key

Audio CD, MP3 CD, USB, iPod, My Music mode: RPT on screen

- To repeat one song (Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds)): Repeats the current song.

MP3 CD, USB mode: FLD.RPT on screen

- To repeat folder (Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds)): repeats all files within the current folder.

❈ Press the 1 RPT key again to turn off repeat.

Random

While song (file) is playing ▸ 2 RDM (RDM) key

Audio CD, My Music mode: RDM on screen

- Random (Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds)): Plays all songs in random order.

MP3 CD, USB mode: FLD.RDM on screen

- Folder Random (Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds)): Plays all files within the current folder in random order.

iPod mode: ALB RDM on screen

- Album Random (Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds)): Plays all files within albums of the current category in random order.

MP3 CD, USB, iPod mode: ALL RDM on screen

- All Random (pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds)): Plays all files in random order.

❈ Press the 2 RDM key again to turn off repeat.

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:40 PM Page 195

Changing Song/File

While song (file) is playing▶ ∨TRACK key

- Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds): Plays the current song from the beginning.

❊ If the ∨TRACK key is pressed again within 1 second, the previous song is played.

- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds): Rewinds the song.

While song (file) is playing▶ ∧ SEEK key

- Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds): Plays the next song.
- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds): Fast forwards the song.

Scan

While song (file) is playing▶ TA/SCAN key

- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds) : Scans all songs for 10 seconds starting from the next song.

❊ Press the TA/SCAN key again to turn off.

❊ The SCAN function is not supported in iPod mode.

Folder Search : MP3 CD, USB Mode

While file is playing▶ PTY ∧ (Folder Up) key

- Searches the next folder.

While file is playing▶ FOLDER∨ (Folder Down) key

- Searches the parent folder.

❊ If a folder is selected by pressing the ◎ TUNE knob, the first file within the selected folder will be played.

❊ In iPod mode, moves to the Parent Folder.

Searching Songs (File)

- Turning ◎ TUNE knob : Searches for songs (files)
- Pressing ◎ TUNE knob : Plays selected song (file).

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:40 PM Page 196

MENU : Audio CD

Press the CD MP3 mode MENU key to set the Repeat, Random, Information features.



Repeat

Press the MENU key▸Set [①RPT] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 1 RPT key to repeat the current song.

❊ Press the 1 RPT key again to turn off.

Random

Press the MENU key▸Set [②RDM] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 2 RDM key to randomly play songs within the current folder.

❊ Press the 2 RDM key again to turn off.

Information

Press the MENU key▸Set [③Info] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 3 key to display information of the current song.

❊ Press the MENU key to turn off info display.

MENU : MP3 CD / USB

Press the CD MP3 mode MENU key to set the Repeat, Folder Random, Folder Repeat, All Random, Information, and Copy features.



Repeat

Press the MENU key▸Set [①RPT] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 1 RPT key to repeat the current song.

Folder Random

Press the MENU key▸Set [②F.RDM] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 2 RDM key to randomly play songs within the current folder.

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:40 PM Page 197

Folder Repeat

Press the MENU key▸Set [③F.RPT] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 3 key to repeat songs within the current folder.

All Random

Press the MENU key▸Set [④A.RDM] through the ◎TUNE knob or 4 key to randomly play all songs within the CD.

Information

Press the MENU key▸Set [⑤Info] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 5 key to display information of the current song.

❈ Press the MENU key to turn off info display.

Copy

Press the MENU key▸Set [⑥Copy] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 6 key.

- This is used to copy the current song into My Music. You can play the copied Music in My Music mode.

❈ If another key is pressed while copying is in progress, a pop up asking you whether to cancel copying is displayed.

❈ If another media is connected or inserted (USB, CD, iPod, AUX) while copying is in progress, copying is canceled.

❈ Music will not be played while copying is in progress.

MENU : iPod

In iPod mode, press the MENU key to set the Repeat, Album Random, All Random, Information and Search features.



Repeat

Press the MENU key▸Set [①RPT] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 1 RPT key to repeat the current song.

Album Random

Press the MENU key▸Set [②AlbRDM] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 2 RDM key.

Plays albums within the currently playing category in random order.

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:40 PM Page 198

All Random

Press the MENU key▸Set [③A.RDM] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 3 key.

Plays all songs within the currently playing category in random order.

Information

Press the MENU key▸Set [④Info] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 4 key.

Displays information of the current song.

Search

Press the MENU key▸Set [⑤Search] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 5 key.

- Some iPod models may not support communication protocol and files may not properly play.

Supported iPod models:

- iPod Mini®
- iPod 4th(Photo) ~ 6th(Classic) generation
- iPod Nano® 1st~4th generation
- iPod Touch® 1st~2nd generation

- The order of search or playback of songs in the iPod can be different from the order searched in the audio system.
- If the iPod is disabled due to its own malfunction, reset the iPod. (Reset: Refer to iPod manual)
- An iPod may not operate normally on low battery.
- Some iPod devices, such as the iPhone, can be connected through the -interface. The device must have audio *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology capability (such as for stereo headphone *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology). The device can play, but it will not be controlled by the audio system.
- To use iPod features within the audio, use the cable provided upon purchasing an iPod device.
- Skipping or improper operation may occur depending on the characteristics of your iPod/Phone device.
- If your iPhone is connected to both the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology and USB, the sound may not be properly played. In your iPhone, select the Dock connector or *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology to change the sound output (source).
- When connecting iPod with the iPod Power Cable, insert the connector to the multimedia socket completely. If not inserted completely, communications between iPod and audio may be interrupted.
- When adjusting the sound effects of the iPod and the audio system, the sound effects of both devices will overlap and might reduce or distort the quality of the sound.
- Deactivate (turn off) the equalizer function of an iPod when adjusting the audio system's volume, and turn off the equalizer of the audio system when using the equalizer of an iPod.
- When not using iPod with car audio, detach the iPod cable from iPod. Otherwise, iPod may remain in accessory mode, and may not work properly.

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:40 PM Page 199

MENU : My Music

In My Music mode, press the MENU key to set the Repeat, Random, Information, Delete, Delete All, and Delete Selection features.



Repeat

Press the MENU key▸Set [①RPT] through the TUNE knob or 1 RPT key.

Repeats the currently playing song.

Random

Press the MENU key▸Set [②RDM] through the TUNE knob or 2 RDM key.

Plays all songs within the currently playing folder in random order.

Information

Press the MENU key▸Set [③Info] through the TUNE knob or 3 key.

Displays information of the current song.

❊ Press the MENU key to turn off info display.

Delete

Press the MENU key▸Set [④Delete] through the TUNE knob or 4 key.

Deletes currently playing file



In the play screen, pressing delete will delete the currently playing song.

Deletes file from list

① Select the file you wish to delete by using the TUNE knob.

② Press the MENU key and select the delete menu to delete the selected file.

Delete All

Press the MENU key▸Set [⑤Del.All] through the TUNE knob or 5 key.

Deletes all songs of My Music.

Delete Selection

Press the MENU key▸Set [⑥Del.Sel] through the TUNE knob or 6 key.

Songs within My Music are selected and deleted.

① Select the songs you wish to delete from the list.



② After selecting, press the MENU key and select the delete menu.



JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:40 PM Page 200

✻ NOTICE FOR USING THE My Music

- **Even if memory is available, a maximum of 6,000 songs can be stored.**
- **The same song can be copied up to 1,000 times.**
- **Memory info can be checked in the System menu of Setup.**

AUX

AUX is used to play external MEDIA currently connected with the AUX terminal.

AUX mode will automatically start when an external device is connected with the AUX terminal.

If an external device is connected, you can also press the MEDIA key to change to AUX mode.



✻ AUX mode cannot be started unless there is an external device connected to the AUX terminal.

✻ Fully insert the AUX cable into the AUX terminal for use.

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:40 PM Page 201

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology AUDIO

Before using *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio features

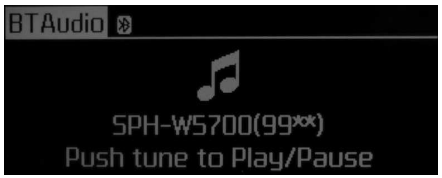
- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio may not be supported depending on the compatibility of your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone.
- In order to use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio, you must first pair and connect the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone.
- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio can be used only when the [Audio Streaming] of Phone is turned (On).

❈ Setting *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio Streaming : Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] through the tune knob or 3 key ▶ Select [Audio Streaming] through the TUNE knob ▶ Set (On)/(Off)

Starting *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio

- Press the MEDIA key to change the mode in order of CD➟USB➟AUX➟My Music➟BT Audio.
- If BT Audio is selected, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio will start playing.

❈ Audio may not automatically start playing in some mobile phones.



Using the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio features

• Play / Stop

Press the TUNE knob to play and pause the current song.

❈ The previous song / next song / play / pause functions may not be supported in some mobile phones.

Changing Song/File

While song (file) is playing ▶ ∨TRACK key

- Press the ∨TRACK key : Plays the current song from the beginning.

❈ If the ∨TRACK key is pressed again within 1 second, the previous song is played.

While song (file) is playing ▶ ∧ SEEK key

- Press the ∧ SEEK key : Plays the next song.

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:40 PM Page 202

PHONE (if equipped)

Before using the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone features

- In order to use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone, you must first pair and connect the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone.
- If the mobile phone is not paired or connected, it is not possible to enter Phone mode. Once a phone is paired or connected, the guidance screen will be displayed.
- If Priority is set upon vehicle ignition (IGN/ACC ON), the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected. Even if you are outside, the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected once you are in the vicinity of the vehicle. If you do not want automatic *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone connection, set the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology to OFF.

Making a call using the Steering remote controller



(1) VOLUME button : Raises or lowers speaker volume.
(2) MUTE button : Mutes audio Volume during a call.
(3) button : Activates voice recognition.
(4) button : Places and transfers calls.
(5) button : Ends calls or cancels functions.

Check call history and making call

① Shortly press (under 0.8 seconds) the key on the steering remote controller.
② The call history list will be displayed on the screen.
③ Press the key again to connect a call to the selected number.

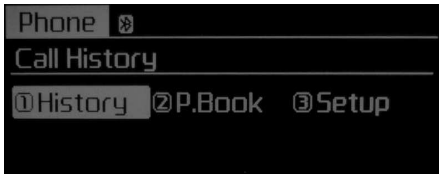
Redialing the most recently called number

① Press and hold (over 0.8 seconds) the key on the steering remote controller.
② The most recently called number is redialed.

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:40 PM Page 203

Phone MENU

Press the PHONE key to display three menus (Call History, Phone book, Phone Setup).



Call History

Press the PHONE key▶Set [① History] through the TUNE knob or 1 RPT key.

The call history is displayed and can be used to select a number and make a call.

If call history does not exist, a screen asking whether to download call history is displayed. (The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones)

Phone Book

Press the PHONE key▶Set [② P. Book] through the TUNE knob or 2 RDM key.

The Phone book is displayed and can be used to select a number and make a call.

- ✻ If more than one number is saved to one contact, then a screen showing the mobile phone number, house and office number is displayed. Select the desired number to make the call.
- ✻ If Phone book does not exist, a screen asking whether to download Phone book is displayed. (The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones)

Phone Setup

Press the PHONE key▶Set [③ Setup] through the TUNE knob or 3 key.

The *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone setup screen is displayed. For more information, refer to “Phone Setup”.

✻ NOTICE

If you need more information about Kia’s *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology. Contact kia website “www.kia.com” (OWNERS>General Info>*Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology).

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:40 PM Page 204

What is *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology?

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology that allows multiple devices to be connected in a short range, low-powered devices like hands-free, stereo headset, wireless remote controller, etc. For more information, visit the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology website at *www.Bluetooth.com*

- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology features can be used only when the mobile phone has been paired and connected with the device. For more information on pairing and connecting *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology endbled mobile phones, refer to the “Phone Setup” section.
- When a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone is connected, a ( ) icon will appear at the top of the screen. If a ( ) icon is not displayed, this indicates that a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled device has not been connected. Your must connect the device before use. For more information on *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phones, refer to the “Phone Setup” section.
- Pairing and connecting a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone will work only when the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology option within your mobile phone has been turned on. (Methods of turning on the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled feature may differ depending on the mobile phone.)
- In some mobile phones, starting the ignition while talking through *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology handsfree call will result in the call becoming disconnected. (Switch the call back to your mobile phone when starting the ignition.)
- Some features may not be supported in some *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone and devices.
- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology functions may operate unstably depending on the communication state.
- Do not use a cellular phone or perform *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology settings (e.g. pairing a phone) while driving.
- Some *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology-enabled phones may not be recognized by the system or fully compatible with the system.
- Before using *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology related features of the audio system, refer your phone’s User’s Manual for phone-side *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology operations.
- The phone must be paired to the audio system to use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology related features.
- You will not be able to use the hands-free feature when your phone (in the car) is outside of the cellular service area (e.g. in a tunnel, in a underground, in a mountainous area, etc.).

(Continued)

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:40 PM Page 205

(continued)

- If the cellular phone signal is poor or the vehicles interior noise is too loud, it may be difficult to hear the other person's voice during a call.
- Do not place the phone near or inside metallic objects, otherwise communications with *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system or cellular service stations can be disturbed.
- While a phone is connected through *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology your phone may discharge quicker than usual for additional *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology-related operations.
- Some cellular phones or other devices may cause interference noise or malfunction to audio system. In this case, store the device in a different location may resolve the situation.
- Please save your phone name in English, or your phone name may not be displayed correctly.
- If Priority is set upon vehicle ignition(IGN/ACC ON), the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected.
  Even if you are outside, the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected once you are in the vicinity of the vehicle.
- If you do not want automatic *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology power off.

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:40 PM Page 206

VOICE COMMAND (if equipped)

- The voice recognition feature of this product supports recognition of the commands listed within this user's manual.
- While using voice recognition, operating the steering remote control or the device will terminate voice recognition and allow you to manually operate desired functions.
- Position of the microphone is above the head of the driver's seat.
- Voice recognition may not function properly due to outside noise. The following conditions can affect the performance of Voice Recognition:

- When the windows and sunroof are open
- When the heating/cooling system is on
- When passing a tunnel
- When driving on rugged and uneven roads

- After downloading *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone book, the system requires some times to convert the phone book into voice information. During this time, voice recognition may not operate properly.
- Upon inputting your phone book, special symbols and numbers cannot be recognized by voice. For example, "# John Doe%&" will be recognized as "John Doe".

Starting Voice Command

- To start voice command, shortly press the key on the steering wheel remote controller.
- If voice command is in [Normal Mode], then the system will say "Please say a command. Beep"

❈ If voice command is in [Expert Mode], then the system will only say a "Beep-"

❈ Setting Voice command [Normal Mode]/[Expert Mode]:
Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [4 System] through the TUNE knob or 4 key ▶ Select [Prompt Feedback] through the TUNE knob ▶ Set [Normal Mode]/[Expert Mode]

- Say the voice command.

- For proper voice recognition, say the voice command after the guidance message and the "Beep" sound.

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:40 PM Page 207

Skipping the Guidance Message

While the guidance message is being stated, shortly press the key (under 0.8 seconds) to discontinue the guidance message and sound the “beep”.

After the “beep”, say the voice command.



Ending Voice Command

- While using voice command, press and hold the key (over 0.8 seconds) to end voice command.
- While using voice command, pressing the steering wheel remote controller or a different key will end voice command.
- In a state where the system is waiting for your voice command, say “cancel” or “end” to end voice command.
- In a state where the system is waiting for your voice command, shortly press the key (under 0.8 seconds) to end voice command.

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:40 PM Page 208

Monday		Monday
Tuesday		Tuesday
Wednesday		Wednesday
Thursday		Thursday
Friday		Friday
Saturday		Saturday
Sunday		Sunday
Use tune knob		Use tune knob
Volume		Volume
Max		Volume maxinmum
Min		Volume mininmum
AST (Auto store)		Automatically selects and saves channels
No Media		Empty media file in CD or USB
No File		Empty media file in CD or USB
Empty File		Empty media file in MY MUSIC
Info (Information)		Information of playing files
Artist		Artist name, MP3/CD file currently being played
Title		Song name, MP3/CD file currently being played
Album		Album name, MP3/CD file currently being played
Genres		"Genres" is keyword for searching mode of playlists for iPod
Composers		"Composers" is filtering keyword for searching mode of playlists for iPod
Playlists		"Playlists" is filtering keyword for searching mode of playlists for iPod
Songs		"Songs" is filtering keyword for searching mode of playlists for iPod
Audiobooks		"Audiobooks" is filtering keyword for searching mode of playlists for iPod
Podcasts		"Podcasts" is filtering keyword for searching mode of playlists for iPod
RPT (Repeat)		Audio play mode of Reapeat
F.RPT (Folder Repeat)		Audio play mode of Folder Reapeat
RDM (Random)		Audio play mode of Random
F.RDM(Folder Random)		Audio play mode of Folder Random
A.RDM (All Random)		Audio play mode of All Random
COPY		Copy MP3 file to flash memory for MY MUSIC
Cancel copy		Cancel copy mode
File copied		Completed File copy
Free		Free size of memory
Copy failed		Copy failed
Search		Search files
Loading CD		Loading CD
Reading CD		Reading CD
Reading Error		Reading Error
Mechanism Error		Mechanism Error
Ejecting CD		Ejecting CD

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:40 PM Page 209

Audio CD		Audio CD
Track		Audio CD song order
Reading Media		Reading Media
Not supported		Not supported file format
Empty iPod		Empty iPod, iPod don't have playable data
Communication Error		Communication error between audio and iPod or usb
Delete		Delete the paired phone or files in MY MUSIC
Del.All		Delete all files
Del.Sel		Select files to delete
Return		Return menu
List		List files or paired phones
Select Files		Select Files
Memory is full, Delete files		Memory is full, Delete files
Over 6000 files. can not be copied		Over 6000 files. can not be copied
Over 1000 same files can not be copied		Over 1000 same files can not be copied
System will automatically switchoff after 1 hour with ignition off		System will automatically switchoff after 1 hour with
Battery discharge Start the engine		Battery discharge Start the engine
Setup		Setup
Display		Setup display mode

Mode Pop up		This function is used to select popup menu on or off
Scroll text		This function is used to display characters longer than the LCD text displays
Song Info		Setup display information being played
Folder/File		Display Folder/file name, file currently being played
Album/Artist/Song		Display Album/Artist/Song name, file currently being played
Sound		Setup sound mode
Audio Settings		Setup Audio settings that consist BASS,Middle,Treble,Fader and Balance
PowerBass		This function is used to improve bass sound quality
Speed Dependent Vol.		Automatically adjust the volume according to the car speed
Volume Dialogue		Adjust volume level of Dialogue
Bass		Bass is sound of low frequency. It can be adjusted sound by user
Middle		Middle is sound of middle frequency. It can be adjusted sound by user
Treble		Treble is sound of high frequency. It can be adjusted sound by user

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:40 PM Page 210

Fader		Fader is sound positon between FRONT and REAR. It can be adjusted sound by user
Balance		Balance is sound positon between Right and Left. It can be adjusted sound by user
Default		This function is used to initialize setting value
System		Setup system or system information
Memory Information		Display used memory size
VRS Mode		Setup Voice command mode
Normal		Normal mode. This function is used to set default value of voice recognition factor
Expert		Expert mode. This function is used to set exercised value of voice recognition factor
Language		This function is used to select user language
Deutsch		Deutsch
English(UK)		English(UK)
Français		French
Italiano		Italian
Español		Spanish
Nederlands		dutch
Svenska		swedish

Dansk		Danish
Русский		Polish
Polski		Russian
The system will be rebooted		The system will be rebooted
Please change language when ignition ON		Please change language when ignition ON
Bluetooth not ready Please wait		You can use BT System for a moment Because BT system is being initialized
Add a new Bluetooth device from your phone		Add a new *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device from your phone
Processing Bluetooth Please try later		You can use BT System for a moment Because BT system is being initialized or processing other command
Incoming Call		Receivng phone
Call Ended		Call Ended
Call Rejected		When there is unwanted call, You push the button on the steering remote controller
Unknown		"Unknown" mean Headunit or phone don't have any information about phone number
Call is not possible		Call is not possible
MIC Mute		Microphone mute
Activate Bluetooth System?		Activate *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology System
Bluetooth System activated		*Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system activated

JD eng 4b(~211).QXP 3/4/2015 4:40 PM Page 211

No phone paired. Pair a phone?		Empty phone paired. Pair a phone?
No connected phone. Connect a phone?		No connected phone. Connect a phone?
Phone book is empty. Download?		Phone book is empty
Available only when vehicle is stationary		This is a warning, Do not enter the MENU about BT Setup. When vehicle is moving
Listening...		Listen to instruction of audio
Phone book Download		Downloading phone book from phone paired to audio
Auto Download		After pairing phone, audio system automatically download phone book
Audio Streaming		After pairing phone, audio system can support *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology streaming mode
Outgoing Volume		Set outoging volume "0 ~ 5"
Bluetooth System Off		Turn off *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology System
Bluetooth System ON		Turn on *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology System
Device :		*Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device name
Passkey		Passkey for pairing a phone
Pairing complete		Pair a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone to the audio

Pairing failed		Audio & Phone connection have failed
Already 5 devices paired. Delete a paired phone?		All 5 phones have already been paired. Delete a previously paired phone to pair new phone
Connection complete		Audio & Phone connection have succeed
Connection failed. Retry?		Audio & Phone connection have failed
Priority changed		Changed priority about the registered phones
Overwrite previous phone book?		Overwrite previous phone book information
Phone does not support Phone book download		Phone does not support Phone book download
No connected Bluetooth device		There are phone in the connection list
Phone does not support Bluetooth audio		But it was actually not connected BT pairing
Downloading stopped		Downloading stopped

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 212

■ **CD Player : AC111A2EE**



JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 213

SYSTEM CONTROLLERS AND FUNCTIONS

Audio Head Unit



(1) ▲ (EJECT)
Ejects the disc.

(2) RADIO
Switches to Radio(FM/AM) mode.
Each time the key is pressed,the mode is changed in order of FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟ FMA ➟ AM ➟ AMA.

(3) MEDIA
Switches to Media mode.
Each time the key is pressed, the mode is changed in order of CD, USB(iPod) AUX, My Music, BT Audio.

(4) PHONE
Switches to Phone mode.
❊ When a phone is not connected, the connection screen is displayed.

(5) PWR/VOL knob
◉ Power : Press to turn power on/off.
◉ Volume : Turn left/right to control volume.

(6) SEEK TRACK
When pressed shortly(under 0.8 seconds)
- Radio mode : plays previous/next frequency.
- Media (CD/USB/iPod/My Music) modes : changes the track, Song(file)

When pressed and held (0.8 seconds)
- Radio mode : continuously changes the frequency. Upon release, plays the current frequency
- Media(CD/USB/iPod/My Music) modes : rewinds or fast forwards the track or file
- During a Handsfree call, controls the call volume.

(7) PTY FOLDER
RDS Radio mode : searches RDS program types.
CD/USB/MP3 modes : searches folders.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 214



(8)
Turns the monitor display on/off.

(9) TA
Set TA(Traffic Announcement) feature On/Off

(10) SCAN
Radio Mode
- Shortly press the key (under 0.8 seconds): Previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each
- Press and hold the key (over 0.8 seconds): Previews the broadcasts saved in Preset 1 ~ 6 for 5 seconds each.

Media (CD/USB/iPod/My Music) modes : previews each song (file) for 10 seconds each.

(11) SETUP
Switches to Setup mode.

(12) TUNE knob
Radio mode : turn to change broadcast frequencies.
Media (CD/USB/iPod/My Music) modes : turn to search tracks/channels/files.



(13) RESET
Forced system termination and system restart.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 215

Steering remote controller



(1) VOLUME
Used to control volume.

(2) MUTE
Mutes audio volume.

(3) SEEK
When pressed shortly (under 0.8 seconds)
- Radio mode : searches broadcast frequencies saved to presets.
- Media (CD / USB / iPod / My Music / BT Audio) modes : changes the track, file.

When pressed and held (over 0.8 seconds)
- Radio mode, automatically searches broadcast frequencies and channels
- Media(CD/USB/iPod/My Music) modes, rewinds or fast forwards the track or song(file)

(4) MODE
Each time this key is pressed, the mode is changed in order of FM1➟FM2 ➟FMA➟ AM➟AMA➟USB or iPod➟AUX ➟My Music➟BT Audio
If the media is not connected or a disc is not inserted, corresponding modes will be disabled.

(5)
When pressed shortly (under 0.8 seconds)
- Starts voice recognition
- When selecting during a voice prompt, stops the prompt and converts to voice command waiting state

When pressed and held (over 0.8 seconds)
- Ends voice recognition

(6)
When pressed shortly (under 0.8 seconds)
- When pressed in the phone screen, displays call history screen
- When pressed in the dial screen, makes a call
- When pressed in the incoming call screen, answers the call
- When pressed during call waiting, switches to waiting call (Call Waiting)

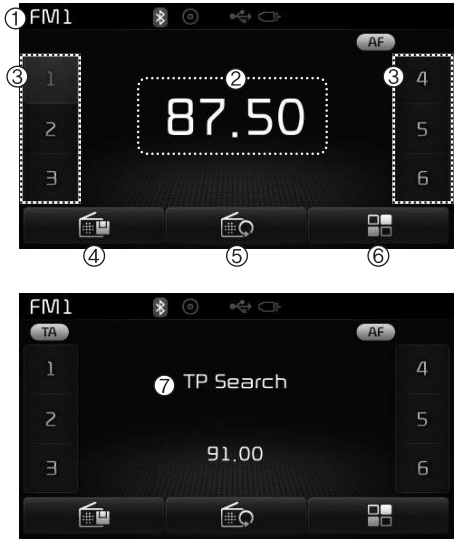
When pressed and held (over 0.8 seconds)
- When pressed in the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree wait mode, redials the last call
- When pressed during a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree call, switches call back to mobile phone (Private)
- When pressed while calling on the mobile phone, switches call back to *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree (Operates only when *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree is connected)

(7)
Ends phone call

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 216

RADIO MODE

Basic Mode Screen



(1) Mode Display
Displays currently operating mode

(2) Frequency
Displays the current frequency

(3) Preset
Displays current preset number [1] ~ [6]

(4) Preset Display
Displays saved presets

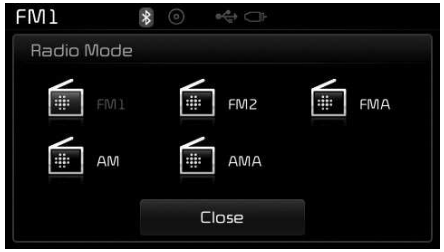
(5) Autostore
Automatically saves frequencies with superior reception to Preset buttons

(6) RDS Menu
Displays the RDS Menu

(7) RDS Info
Displays RDS broadcast information

Switching to Radio Mode

Pressing the RADIO key will change the operating mode in order of FM1 ➞FM2➞FMA➞AM➞AMA.



If [Pop-up Mode] is turned on within SETUP ▶[Display], then pressing the RADIO key will display the Radio Pop-up Mode screen.
Turn the TUNE knob to move the focus. Press the knob to select.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 217

Searching Radio Frequencies

Using Seek

Press the SEEK TRACK key to play the previous/next frequency.

Using TUNE

Turn the TUNE knob to select the desired frequency.

- FM : Increases/decreased by 50kHz
- AM : Increases/decreased by 9kHz

Using Radio Mode

Selecting /Saving Presets

Press the 1 ~ 6 buttons to play the desired preset.



Press the button to display the broadcast information for the frequency saved to each button.



✻ NOTICE

While listening to a frequency you want to save as a preset, press and hold one of the [1] ~ [6] preset buttons (over 0.8 seconds) to save the current frequency to the selected preset.

Auto Store

Press the button to automatically save receivable frequencies to Preset buttons.

✻ NOTICE

While Auto Store is operating, pressing the [Cancel] button again will cancel Auto Store and restore the previous frequency.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 218

RDS Menu

Press the button to set the AF (Alternative Frequency), Region and News features.



✻ NOTICE

The RDS Menu is not supported within AM or AMA mode.

Scan

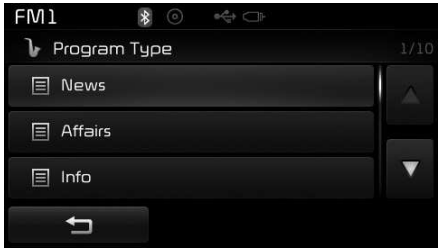
Press the SCAN key to preview frequencies with superior reception for 5 seconds each.

✻ NOTICE

Once scan is complete, the previous frequency will be restored.
While Scan is operating, pressing the SCAN key will cancel the scan operation.

Program Type

Press the PTY FOLDER key to search for the desired Program type.



Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired program type. Once you find the desired program type, press the TUNE knob.

After selecting the desired Program Type and while the Program Type is blinking (approximately 5 seconds), pressing the PTY FOLDER key will allow you to select a different Program Type broadcast.

TA (Traffic Announcement)

Press the TA key to turn the TA (Traffic Announcement) feature On/Off.



JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 219

MEDIA MODE

Switching to Media Mode

Pressing the MEDIA key will change the operating mode in order of CD➟USB(iPod)➟AUX➟My Music ➟ BT Audio.



If [Pop-up Mode] is turned on within SETUP ▸[Display], then pressing the MEDIA key will display the Media Pop-up Mode screen.

Turn the TUNE knob to move the focus. Press the knob to select.

✻ NOTICE

The media mode pop up screen can be displayed only when there are two or more media modes turned on.

Title Icon

When a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology, iPod, USB, or AUX device is connected or a CD is inserted, the corresponding mode icon will be displayed.



Icon	Title
	Bluetooth® Wireless Technology
	CD
	iPod
	USB
	AUX

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 220

AUDIO CD MODE

Basic Mode Screen



(1) Mode
Displays currently operating mode

(2) Operation State
From Repeat / Random / Scan, displays the currently operating function

(3) Track Info
Displays information about the current track

(4) Play/Pause
Changes the play/pause state

(5) Play Time
Displays the current play time

(6) Info
Shows detailed information about the current track

(7) Random
Turns the Random feature on/off

(8) Repeat
Turns the Repeat feature on/off

(9) List
Moves to the list screen

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 221

Using Audio CD Mode

Playing/Pausing CD Tracks

Once an audio CD is inserted, the mode will automatically start and begin playing.



While playing, press the ⏸ button to pause and press ▶ button to play.

✻ NOTICE

- **Only genuine audio CDs are supported. Other discs may result in recognition failure (e.g. copy CD-R, CDs with labels)**
- **The artist and title information are displayed on the screen if track information is included within the audio CD.**

Changing Tracks

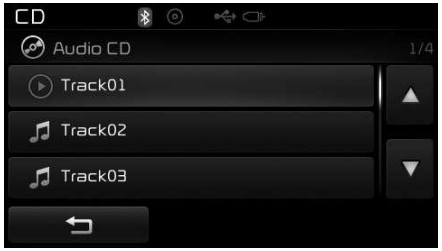
Press the SEEK TRACK key to move to the previous or next track.

✻ NOTICE

- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key after the track has been playing for 1 seconds will start the current track from the beginning.**
- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key before the track has been playing for 1 seconds will start the previous track.**

Selecting from the List

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired track.



Once you find the desired track, press the TUNE knob to start playing.

Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Tracks

While playing, press and hold the SEEK TRACK key (over 0.8 seconds) to rewind or fast-forward the current track.

Scan

Press the SCAN key to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 222

Audio CD Mode Menu

Within this mode, you will have access to the Info, Random, Repeat and List features.



Info

Press the *i* button to display details about the current disc.

Random

Press the button to play tracks in random order.

Press the button again to turn the Random feature off.

Repeat

Press the button to repeat the current track. Press the button again to turn the repeat feature off.

List

Press the button to display the track list screen.



Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for tracks. Once the desired track is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 223

MP3 CD MODE

Basic Mode Screen



(1) Mode
Displays currently operating mode.

(2) Operation State
From Repeat / Random / Scan, displays the currently operating function

(3) File Index
Displays the current file number

(4) File Info
Displays information about the current file

(5) Play/Pause
Changes the play/pause state

(6) Play Time
Displays the current play time

(7) Info
Shows detailed information about the current file

(8) Random
Turns the Random feature on/off

(9) Repeat
Turns the Repeat feature on/off

(10) Copy
Copies the current file into My Music

(11) List
Moves to the list screen

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 224

Using MP3 CD Mode

Playing/Pausing MP3 Files

Once an MP3 disc is inserted the mode will automatically start and being playing.



While playing, press the ⏸ button to pause and press ▶ button to play.

✻ NOTICE

If there are numerous files and folders within the disc, reading time could take more than 10 seconds and the list may not be displayed or song searches may not operate. Once loading is complete, try again.

Changing Files

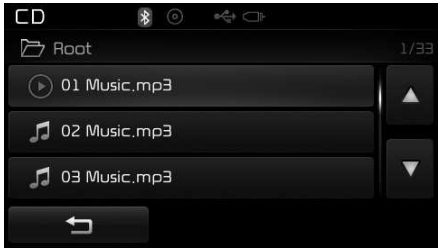
Press the SEEK TRACK key to move to the previous or next file.

✻ NOTICE

- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key after the file has been playing for 1 seconds will start the current file from the beginning.**
- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key before the file has been playing for 1 seconds will start the previous file.**

Selecting from the List

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired file.



Once you find the desired file, press the TUNE knob to start playing.

Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Files

While playing, press and hold the SEEK TRACK key (over 0.8 seconds) to rewind or fast-forward the current file.

Scan

Press the SCAN key to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 225

Searching Folders

Press the PTY FOLDER key to select and search folders.

Once the desired folder is displayed, press the TUNE knob to select.



The first file within the selected folder will begin playing.

MP3 CD Mode Menu

Within this mode, you will have access to the Info, Random, Repeat, Copy and List features.



Info

Press the *i* button to display details about the current file.

✻ NOTICE

- **When the 'Folder File' option is set as the default display within Display setup, the album/artist/file information are displayed as detailed file information.**
- **When the 'Album Artist Song' option is set as the default display, the folder name/file name are displayed as detailed file information.**
- **The title, artist and album info are displayed only when such information are recorded within the MP3 file ID3 tag.**

Random

Press the button to play files in random order.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Random Folder ➟ Random All➟ Off.

- Random Folder : Plays all files within the current folder in Random order.
- Random All : Plays all files in Random order.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 226

Repeat

Press the button to repeat the current file or folder.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Repeat ➟Repeat Folder➟Off.

- Repeat: Repeats the current file.
- Repeat Folder: Repeats all files within the current Folder.

Copying Files

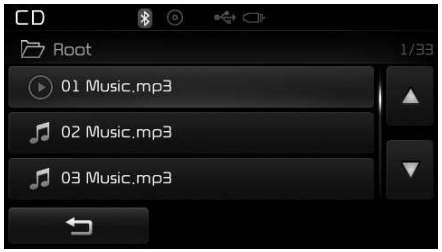
Press the button to copy the current file into My Music.

✻ NOTICE

Selecting another feature during copying will display a pop-up asking whether you wish to cancel copying. To cancel, select 'Yes'.

List

Press the button to display the file list screen.



Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for files. Once the desired file is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 227

USB MODE

Basic Mode Screen



(1) Mode
Displays currently operating mode

(2) Operation State
From Repeat / Random / Scan, displays the currently operating function

(3) File Index
Displays the current file number

(4) File Info
Displays information about the current file

(5) Play/Pause
Changes the play/pause state

(6) Play Time
Displays the current play time

(7) Info
Displays detailed information for the current file

(8) Random
Turns the Random feature on/off

(9) Repeat
Turns the Repeat feature on/off

(10) Copy
Copies the current file into My Music

(11) List
Moves to the list screen

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 228

Using USB Mode

Playing/Pausing USB Files

Once a USB is connected, the mode will automatically start and begin playing a USB file.



While playing, press the ⏸ button to pause and press ▶ button to play.

✻ NOTICE

- **Loading may require additional time if there are many files and folders within the USB and result in faulty list display or file searching. Normal operations will resume once loading is complete.**
- **The device may not support normal operation when using a USB memory type besides (Metal Cover Type) USB Memory.**

Changing Files

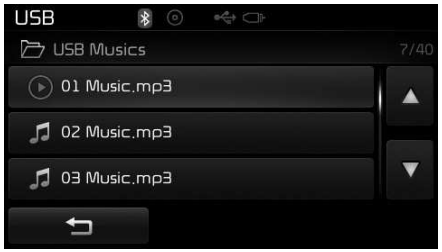
Press the SEEK TRACK keys to move to the previous or next file.

✻ NOTICE

- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key after the file has been playing for 1 seconds will start the current file from the beginning.**
- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key before the file has been playing for 1 seconds will start the previous file.**

Selecting from the List

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired file.



Once you find the desired file, press the TUNE knob to start playing.

Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Files

While playing, press and hold the SEEK TRACK key (over 0.8 seconds) to rewind or fast-forward the current file.

Scan

Press the SCAN key to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 229

Searching Folders

Press the PTY FOLDER key to select and search folders.

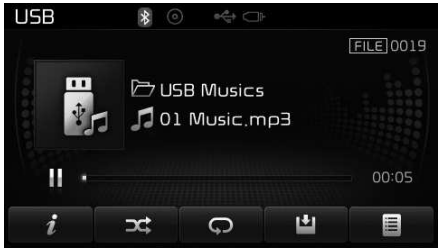


Once the desired folder is displayed, press the TUNE knob to select.

The first file within the selected folder will begin playing.

USB Mode Menu

Within this mode, you will have access to the Info, Random, Repeat, Copy and List features.



Info

Press the *i* button to display details about the current file.

✻ NOTICE

- **When the 'Folder File' option is set as the default display within Display setup, the album/artist/file information are displayed as detailed file information.**
- **When the 'Album Artist Song' option is set as the default display, the folder name/file name are displayed as detailed file information.**
- **The title, artist and album info are displayed only when such information are recorded within the MP3 file ID3 tag.**

Random

Press the button to play files in random order.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Random Folder➟Random All➟Off.

- Random Folder : Plays the files in the current folder in random order.
- Random All : Plays all files in random order.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 230

Repeat

Press the button to repeat the current file or folder.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Repeat➟ Repeat Folder ➟ Off.

- Repeat (Icon) : Repeats the current file.
- Repeat Folder (Icon) : Repeats all files within the current folder.

Copying Files

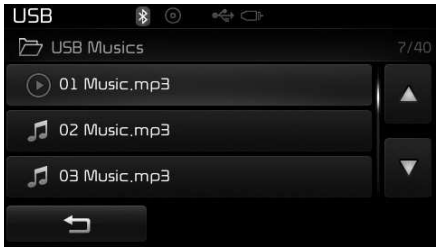
Press the button to copy the current file into My Music.

✻ NOTICE

Selecting another feature during copying will display a pop-up asking whether you wish to cancel copying. To cancel, select 'Yes'.

List

Press the button to display the file list screen.



Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for files. Once the desired file is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 231

iPod MODE

Basic Mode Screen



(1) Mode
Displays currently operating mode

(2) Operation State
From Repeat / Random, displays the currently operating function

(3) Song Index
Displays the current song/total number of songs

(4) Song Info
Displays information about the current song

(5) Play/Pause
Changes the play/pause state

(6) Play Time
Displays the current play time

(7) Random
Turns the Random feature on/off

(8) Repeat
Turns the Repeat feature on/off

(9) List
Moves to the list screen

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 232

Using iPod Mode

Playing/Pausing iPod Songs

Once an iPod is connected, the mode will automatically start and begin playing an iPod song.



While playing, press the ⏸ button to pause and press ▶ button to play.

✻ NOTICE

iPods with unsupported communication protocols may not properly operate in the audio system.

Changing Songs

Press the SEEK TRACK key to move to the previous or next song.

✻ NOTICE

- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key after the song has been playing for 1 seconds will start the current song from the beginning.**
- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key before the song has been playing for 1 seconds will start the previous song.**
- **Slight time differences may exist depending your iPod product.**

Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Songs

While playing, press and hold the SEEK TRACK key (over 0.8 seconds) to rewind or fast-forward the current song.

Searching Categories

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired category.



Once you find the desired category, press the TUNE knob to select and play.

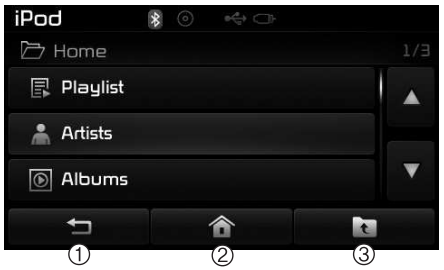
✻ NOTICE

There are eight categories that can be searched, including Playlists, Artists, Albums, Genres, Songs, Composers, Audiobooks and Podcasts.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 233

Category Menu

Within the iPod Category menu, you will have access to the , Home, and features.



(1) : Displays the play screen

(2) Home : Moves to the iPod root category screen

(3) : Moves to the previous category

✻ NOTICE

- **If the search mode is accessed while playing a song, the most recently searched category is displayed.**
- **Search steps upon initial connection may differ depending on the type of iPod device.**

iPod Mode Menu

Within this mode, you will have access to the Random, Repeat and List features.



Random

Press the button to play songs in random order.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Random Album➟Random All➟Off.

- Random Album : Shuffle Album plays album in Random order.
- Random All : Plays all songs in Random order.

Repeat

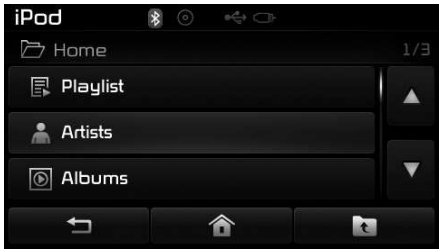
Press the button to repeat the current song. Press the button again to turn the repeat feature off.

- Repeat : Repeats the current song

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 234

List

Press the button to display the Category Menu.



Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired category.

Once you find the desired category, press the TUNE knob to select and play.

AUX MODE

Using AUX Mode

Press the MEDIA key▸Select [AUX]



An external device can be connected to play music.

Connecting an External Device

External audio players (Camcorders, car VCR, etc.) can be played through a dedicated cable.

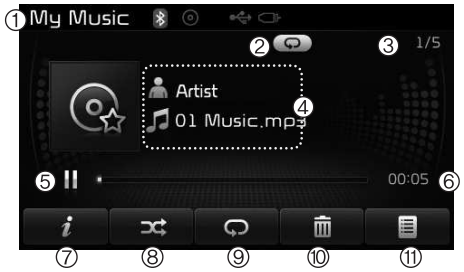
✻ NOTICE

- **If an external device connector is connected with the AUX terminal, then AUX mode will automatically operate. Once the connector is disconnected, the previous mode will be restored.**
- **AUX mode can be used only when an external audio player (camcorder, car VCR, etc.) has been connected.**
- **The AUX volume can be controlled separately from other audio modes.**
- **Connecting a connector jack to the AUX terminal without an external device will convert the system to AUX mode, but only output noise. When an external device is not being used, also remove the connector jack.**
- **When the external device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may output noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.**
- **Fully insert the AUX cable to the AUX jack upon use.**

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 235

MY MUSIC MODE

Basic Mode Screen



(1) Mode
Displays currently operating mode

(2) Operation State
From Repeat / Random / Scan, displays the currently operating function

(3) File Index
Displays the current file/total number of files

(4) File Info
Displays information about the current file

(5) Play/Pause
Changes the play/pause state

(6) Play Time
Displays the current play time

(7) Info
Displays detailed information for the current file

(8) Random
Turns the Random feature on/off

(9) Repeat
Turns the Repeat feature on/off

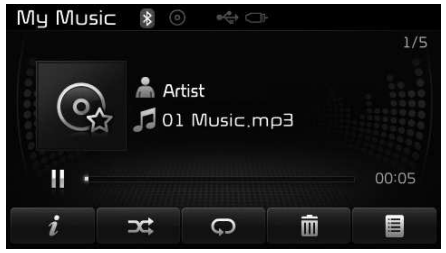
(10) Delete
Deletes the current file

(11) List
Moves to the list screen

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:48 PM Page 236

Using My Music Mode

Playing/Pausing My Music Files



While playing, press the ⏸ button to pause and press ▶ button to play.

✻ NOTICE

If there are no files saved within My Music, the [My Music] button will be disabled.

Changing Files

Press the SEEK TRACK key to move to the previous or next file.

✻ NOTICE

- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key after the file has been playing for 1 seconds will start the current file from the beginning.**
- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key before the file has been playing for 1 seconds will start the previous file.**

Selecting from the List

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired file.



Once you find the desired file, press the TUNE knob to start playing.

Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Files

While playing, press and hold the SEEK TRACK key (over 0.8 seconds) to rewind or fast-forward the current file.

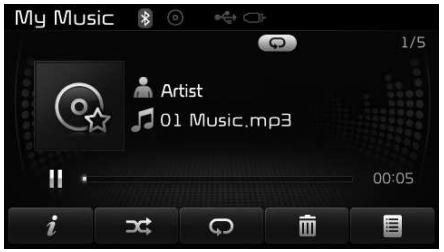
Scan

Press the SCAN key to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 237

My Music Mode Menu

Within this mode, you will have access to the Info, Random, Repeat, Delete and List features.



Info

Press the button to display details about the current file.

✻ NOTICE

The title, artist and album info are displayed only when such information is recorded within the MP3 file ID3 tag.

Random

Press the button to play files in random order. Press the button again to turn the Random feature off.

Repeat

Press the button to repeat the current song. Press the button again to turn the repeat feature off.

Deleting Files

Press the button to delete the current file.

List

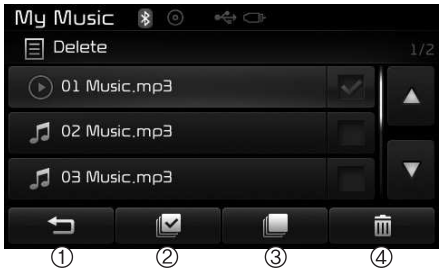
Press the button to display the file list screen.



Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for files. Once the desired file is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

List Menu

From the List screen, it is possible to delete files you previously saved into My Music.



Press the button or individually select the files you want to delete. Once files are selected, the button and buttons will be enabled.

(1) : Moves to the previous screen
(2) Sellect All: Selects all files
(3) Unsellet All: Deselects all selected files
(4) Delete: Deletes selected files

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 238

After selecting the files you want to delete, press the button to delete the selected files.

✻ NOTICE

- **If there is memory available, up to 6,000 files can be saved.**
- **Identical files cannot be copied more than 1,000 times.**
- **To check memory information, go to SETUP ▸ [System] ▸ [Memory Information]**

✻ NOTICE - USING THE *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode

- ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode can be used only when a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone has been connected.**
- ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode will not be available when connecting mobile phones that do not support this feature.**
- **While *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio is playing, if the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone is connected, then the music will also stop.**
- **Moving the Track up/down while playing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio mode may result in pop noises in some mobile phones.**
- ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology streaming audio may not be supported in some mobile phones.**
- **When returning to *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio mode after ending a call, the mode may not automatically restart in some mobile phones.**
- **Receiving an incoming call or making an outgoing call while playing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio may result in audio interference.**

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology AUDIO MODE

Using *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode

Playing/Pausing Bluetooth® Wireless Technology *Audio*

Once a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is connected, the mode will automatically start.



While playing, press the ▶ II button to pause and press ▶ II button to play.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 239

✻ NOTICE

The play/pause feature may operate differently depending on the mobile phone.

Changing Files

Press the SEEK TRACK key to move to the previous or next file.

Setting Connection

If a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device has not been connected, press the SETUP key ▸[Phone] button to display the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology connection screen.

It is possible to use the pair phone, connect/disconnect and delete features from your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone.

✻ NOTICE

- **If the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio is not operating properly, check whether the feature is turned off at SETUP ▸ [Phone] ▸ [Audio streaming]. If the feature is off, turn back on and try again.**
- **If music is not yet playing from your mobile device after converting to *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio mode, pressing the play button once may start playing the mode. Check to see that music is playing from the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device after converting to *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio Mode.**

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 240

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

Using *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree

- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology refers to a short-distance wireless networking technology which uses a 2.45GHz frequency to connect various devices within a certain distance.
- Supported within PCs, external devices, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phones, PDAs, various electronic devices, and automotive environments, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology allows data to be transmitted at high speeds without having to use a connector cable.
- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree refers to a device which allows the user to conveniently make phone calls with *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phones through the audio system.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Bluetooth® Wireless Technology Handsfree is a feature that enables drivers to practice safe driving. Connecting the car audio system with a Bluetooth® Wireless Technology phone allows the user to conveniently make calls, receive calls, and manage the phone book. Before using the Bluetooth® Wireless Technology, carefully read the contents of this user's manual.***
- ***Excessive use or operations while driving may lead to negligent driving practices and be the cause of accidents.***
- ***Do not operate the device excessively while driving.***
- ***Viewing the screen for prolonged periods of time is dangerous and may lead to accidents. When driving, view the screen only for short periods of time.***

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 241

✻ NOTICE - USING UPON CONNECTING *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology PHONE

- Before connecting the car audio system with the mobile phone, check to see that the mobile phone supports *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology features.
- Even if the phone supports *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology, the phone will not be found during device searches if the phone has been set to hidden state or the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology power is turned off. Disable the hidden state or turn on the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology power prior to searching/connecting with the car audio system.
- If you do not want to automatically connect your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone, try the following.
  1. Turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your mobile phone.
  - For more information on *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology features within your mobile, refer to your mobile phone user's manual.
  2. Turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your car audio system.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- To turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your car audio system, go to SETUP > [Phone] and [turn off] the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature.

- Park the vehicle when connecting the car audio system with your mobile phone.
- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology connection may become intermittently disconnected in some mobile phones. Follow these steps to try again.
  1. Turn the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology function within the mobile phone off/on and try again.
  2. Turn the mobile phone power Off/On and try again.
  3 Completely remove the mobile phone battery, reboot, and then again.
  4. Reboot the audio system and try again.
  5. Delete all paired devices, pair and try again.
- The Handsfree call volume and quality may differ depending on the mobile phone.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology features supported within the vehicle are as follows. Some features may not be supported depending on your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technologydevice.
  - Answering and placing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Handsfree calls
  - Menu operation during call (Switch to Private, Switch to call waiting, Outgoing volume)
  - Download Call History
  - Download Mobile Phone book
  - Phone book/Call History Auto Download
  - *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device auto connection - *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio
- It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices to the car system.
- Only one *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device can be connected at a time.
- Other devices cannot be paired while a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technologydevice is already connected.
- When a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is being connected, the connection process cannot be canceled.

(Continued)

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 242

(Continued)

- **Only *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Handsfree and *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio related features will operate within this system.**
- **Normal operation is possible only for devices that support Handsfree or audio features, such as a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology mobile phone or a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio device.**
- **Only one function can be used at a time between the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Handsfree and *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio. (While playing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio, streaming will end upon entering the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone screen.)**
- **If a connected *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device becomes disconnected for various reasons, such as being out of range, turning the device OFF, or a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology communication error, *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices are automatically searched and connected.**
- **Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.**

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

Pairing a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology wireless technology Device

What is *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Pairing?

Pairing refers to the process of synchronizing your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone or device with the car audio system for connection. Pairing is necessary to connect and use the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature.

Pairing PHONE Key / Key on the Steering Remote Controller

When No Devices have been Paired

1. Press the PHONE key or the key on the steering remote controller. The following screen is displayed.
2. Press the OK button to enter the Pair Phone screen.





JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 243

(1) Device : Name of device as shown when searching from your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device

(2) Passkey : Passkey used to pair the device

3. From your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device (i.e. Mobile Phone), search and select your car audio system.
4. After a few moments, a screen is displayed where the passkey is entered.
   Here, enter the passkey “0000” to pair your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device with the car audio system.
5. Once pairing is complete, the following screen is displayed.

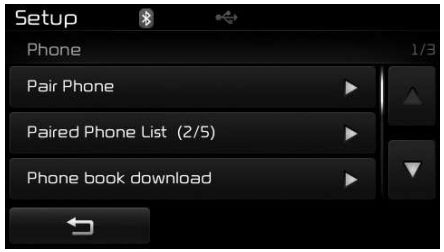
✻ NOTICE



- **If *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology devices are paired but none are currently connected, pressing the PHONE key or the key on the steering remote controller displays the following screen. Press the [Pair] button to pair a new device or press the [Connect] to connect a previously pair device.**

Pairing through [PHONE] Setup

Press the SETUP key ▸Select [Phone]▸Select [Pair Phone] ▸ Select ◉TUNE knob



1. The following steps are the same as the steps described in the “When No Devices have been Paired” section.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 244

✻ NOTICE

- **The waiting period during phone pairing will last for one minute. The pairing process will fail if the device is not paired within the given time. If the pairing process fails, you must start the process from the beginning.**
- **Generally, most *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices will automatically connect once pairing is complete. However, some devices may require a separate verification process to connect. Check to see whether *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology has been properly connected within your mobile phone.**
- **List of paired *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices can be viewed at SETUP ▸ [Phone] ▸ [Paired Phone List].**

Connecting a Device

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Paired Phone List]



(1) Connected Phone : Device that is currently connected

(2) Paired Phone : Device that is paired but not connected

From the paired phone list, select the device you want to connect and press the button.



JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 245

Changing Priority

What is Priority?

It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology devices with the car audio system. As a result, the “Change Priority’ feature is used to set the connection priority of paired phones. However, the most recently connected phone will always be set as the highest priority.

Press the SETUP key▶Select [Phone]▶Select [Paired Phone List]



From the paired phone list, select the phone you want to change to the highest priority, then press the button from the Menu. The selected device will be changed to the highest priority.



✻ NOTICE

When a device is currently connected, even if you change the priority to a different device, the currently connected phone will always be set as the highest priority.

Disconnecting a Device

Press the SETUP key▶Select [Phone]▶Select [Paired Phone List]



From the paired phone list, select the currently connected device and press the button.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 246

Deleting a Device

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Paired Phone List]



From the paired phone list, select the device you want to delete and press the button.

✻ NOTICE

- **When deleting the currently connected device, the device will automatically be disconnected to proceed with the deleting process.**
- **If a paired *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is deleted, the device's call history and phone book data will also be deleted.**
- **To re-use a deleted device, you must pair the device again.**

USING *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology

Phone Menu Screen

Phone Menus

With a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device connected, press the PHONE key to display the Phone menu screen.



(1) Dial Number : Displays the dial screen where numbers can be dialed to make calls

(2) Call History : Device that is currently connected

(3) Phone book : Displays the Phone book list screen

(4) Setup : Displays Phone related settings

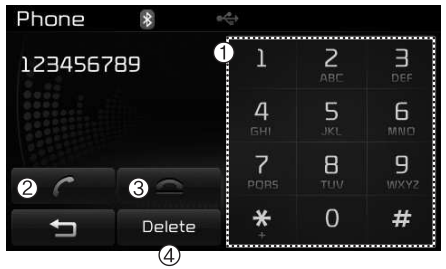
✻ NOTICE

- **If you press the [Call History] button but there is no call history data, a prompt is displayed which asks whether to download call history data.**
- **If you press the [Phone book] button but there is no phone book data, a prompt is displayed which asks whether to download phone book data.**
- **This feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. For more information on download support, refer to your mobile phone user's manual.**

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 247

Calling by Dialing a Number

Press the PHONE key▸Select [Dial Number]

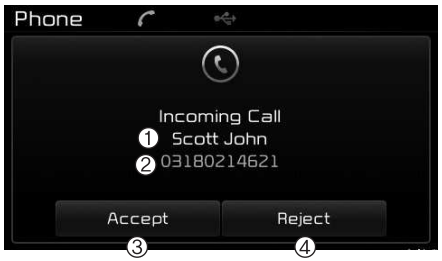


(1) Dial Pad : Used to enter phone number
(2) Call : If a number has been entered, calls the number If no number has been entered, switches to call history screen
(3) End : Deletes the entered phone number
(4) Delete : Deletes entered numbers one digit at a time

Answering Calls

Answering a Call

Answering a call with a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device connected will display the following screen.



(1) Caller : Displays the other part's name when the incoming caller is saved within your phone book
(2) Incoming Number : Displays the incoming number
(3) Accept : Accept the incoming call
(4) Reject : Reject the incoming call

✻ NOTICE

- **When the incoming call pop-up is displayed, most Audio and SETUP mode features will not operate. Only the call volume can be operated.**
- **The telephone number may not be properly displayed in some mobile phones.**
- **When a call is answered with the mobile phone, the call mode will automatically convert to Private mode.**

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 248

During a Handsfree Call



(1) Caller : Displays the other party's name if the incoming caller is saved within your phone book

(2) Incoming Number : Displays the incoming number

(3) Call time : Displays the call time

(4) End : Ends call

(5) Private : Converts to Private mode

(6) Out Vol. : Sets call volume as heard by the other party

(7) Mute : Turns Mic Mute On/Off

✻ NOTICE

If the mic is muted, the other party will not be able to hear your voice.

Call History

Press the PHONE key ▸ Select [Call History]



A list of incoming, outgoing and missed calls is displayed.

Press the [Download] button to download the call history.

(1) Call History :
- Displays recent calls (call history)
- Connects call upon selection

(2) Download : Download Recent Call History

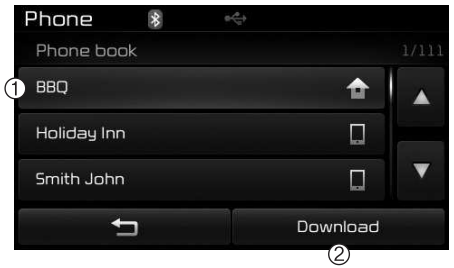
✻ NOTICE

- **The call history list will display up to 30 outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.**
- **Upon downloading call histories, previously saved histories are deleted.**
- **Incoming calls with hidden caller IDs will not be saved in the call history list.**
- **Previously saved phone book entries are stored even if a device is disconnected and re-connected.**
- **The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. Check to see that the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device supports the download feature.**

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 249

Phone Book

Press the PHONE key ▸ Select [Phone book]



The list of saved phone book entries is displayed. Press the [Download] button to download the call history.

(1) Contact List :
- Displays downloaded phone book entries
- Connects call upon selection

(2) Download : Download phone book entries

✻ NOTICE

- **Up to 1,000 phone book entries can be copied into car phone book.**
- **Upon downloading phone book data, previously saved phone book data will be deleted.**
- **Downloading is not possible if the phone book download feature is turned off within the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device. Also, some devices may require device authorization upon attempting to download. If downloading cannot be normally conducted, check the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device setting or the screen state.**
- **Caller ID information will not be displayed for unsaved callers.**
- **The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. Check to see that the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device supports the download feature.**

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 250

✻ NOTICE - USING THE Voice Recognition

- **When using the voice recognition feature, only commands listed within the user's manual are supported.**
- **Be aware that during the operation of the voice recognition system, pressing any key other than the key or touching the screen will terminate voice recognition mode.**
- **For superior voice recognition performance, position the microphone used for voice recognition above the head of the driver's seat and maintain a proper position when saying commands.**
- **Within the following situations, voice recognition may not function properly due to external sound.**
  - **When the windows and sunroof are open**
  - **When the wind of the cooling / heating device is strong**
  - **When entering and passing through tunnels**
  - **When driving on rugged and uneven roads**
  - **During severe rain (heavy rains, windstorms)**
- **Phone related voice commands can be used only when a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is connected.**
- **When making calls by stating a name, the corresponding contact must be downloaded and stored within the audio system.**
- **After downloading the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone book, it takes some times to convert the phone book data into voice information. During this time, voice recognition may not properly operate.**
- **Pronounce the voice commands naturally and clearly as if in a normal conversation.**

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 251

VOICE RECOGNITION

Using Voice Recognition

Starting Voice Recognition

Shortly press the key on the steering remote controller .Say a command





If voice recognition is in [Normal Mode], then the system will say “Please say a command. Beep~”

- If voice recognition is in [Expert Mode], then the system will only say a “Beep~”
- To change the Normal Mode/Expert Mode setting, go to SETUP ▸ [System] ▸ [Prompt Feedback].

✻ NOTICE

For proper recognition, say the command after the voice instruction and beep tone.

Skipping Prompt Messages

While prompt message is being stated ▸ Shortly press the key on the steering remote controller (under 0.8 seconds)

The prompt message is immediately ended and the beep tone will sound. After the “beep”, say the voice command.

Re-starting Voice Recognition

While system waits for a command ▸ Shortly press the key on the steering remote controller (under 0.8 seconds)

The command wait state is immediately ended and the beep ton will sound. After the “beep”, say the voice command.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 252

ENDING VOICE RECOGNITION

While Voice Recognition is operating
▸Press and hold the key on the steering remote controller (over 0.8 seconds)

✻ NOTICE

- **While using voice command, pressing a steering wheel remote control or a different key will end voice command.**
- **In a state where the system is waiting for a voice command, say "cancel" or "end" to end voice command.**
- **In a state where the system is waiting for a voice command, press and hold the key on the steering remote controller to end voice command.**

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 253

SETUP

Starting Mode

Press the SETUP key to display the Setup screen.

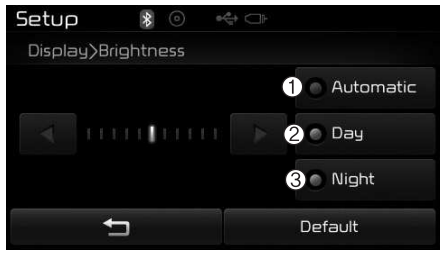


You can select and control options related to [Display], [Sound], [Phone] and [System].

Display Settings

Adjusting the Brightness

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Display] ▸ Select [Brightness]



Use the ◀, ▶ buttons to adjust the screen brightness or set the Brightness on Automatic, Day, or Night mode.

Press the Default button to reset.

(1) Automatic : Adjusts the brightness automatically

(2) Day : Always maintains the brightness on high

(3) Night: Always maintains the brightness on low

Pop-up Mode

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Display] ▸ Select [Pop-up Mode]



This feature is used to display the Pop-up Mode screen when entering radio and media modes.

When this feature is turned on, pressing the RADIO or MEDIA key will display the Pop-up Mode screen.

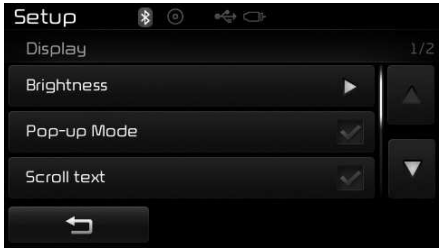
✻ NOTICE

The media Pop-up Mode screen can be displayed only when two or more media modes have been connected.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 254

Scroll Text

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Display] ▸ Select [Scroll text]



This feature is used to scroll text displayed on the screen when it is too long to be displayed at once.

When turned on, the text is repeatedly scrolled. When turned off, the text is scrolled just once.

MP3 Information Display

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Display] ▸ Select [Song Info]



This feature is used to change the information displayed within USB and MP3 CD modes.

(1) Folder File : Displays file name and folder name

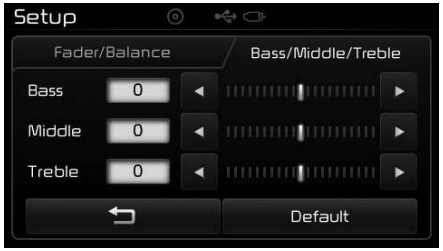
(2) Album Artist Song : Displays album name/artist name/song

Sound Settings

Sound Settings

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Sound] ▸ Select [Audio Setting]





Use the ◀, ▶, ▲, ▼ buttons to adjust the Fader/Balance settings.

Use the ◀, ▶ buttons to adjust the Bass/Middle/Treble settings.

Press the Default button to reset.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 255

SDVC (Speed Dependent Volume Control)

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Sound] ▸ Select [Speed Dependent Vol.]



The volume level is controlled automatically according to the vehicle speed. SDVC can be set by selecting from Off/Low/Mid/High.

Voice Recognition Setting

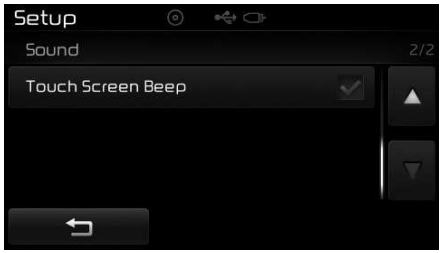
Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Sound] ▸ Select [Volume Dialogue]



Use the -, + buttons to adjust the Volume Dialog.

Touch Screen Beep

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Sound] ▸ Select [Touch Screen Beep]



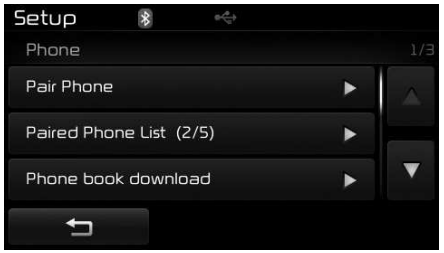
This feature is used to turn the touch screen beep on/off.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 256

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology Setting

Pairing a New Device

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Pair Phone]



Bluetooth® Wireless Technology devices can be paired with the audio system.

For more information, refer to the “Pairing through Phone Setup” section within *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.

Viewing Paired Phone List

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Paired Phone List]



This feature is used to view mobile phones that have been paired with the audio system. Upon selecting a paired phone, the setup menu is displayed.

For more information, refer to the “Setting *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Connection” section within *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.

(1) : Moves to the previous screen

(2) Connect/Disconnect Phone : Connect/ disconnects currently selected phone

(3) Delete : Deletes the currently selected phone

(4) Change Priority : Sets currently selected phone to highest connection priority

✻ NOTICE BEFORE DOWNLOADING PHONE BOOKS

- **Only phone books within connected phones can be downloaded. Also check to see that your mobile phone supports the download feature.**
- **To learn more about whether your mobile phone supports phone book downloads, refer to your mobile phone user’s manual.**
- **The Phone book for only the connected phone can be downloaded. Before downloading, check to see whether your phone supports the download feature.**

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 257

Downloading Phone books

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Phone book Download]



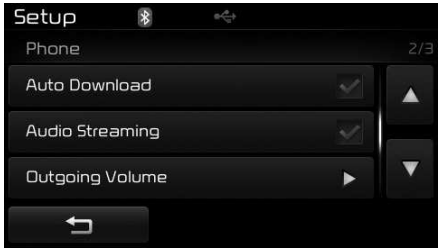
The Phone book is downloaded from the mobile phone and the download progress is displayed.

✻ NOTICE

- **Up to 1,000 phone book entries can be copied into car phone book.**
- **Up to 1,000 phone book entries can be saved for each paired device.**
- **Upon downloading phone book data, previously saved phone book data will be deleted. However, Phone book entries saved to other paired phones are not deleted.**

Auto Download (Phone Book)

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Auto Download]



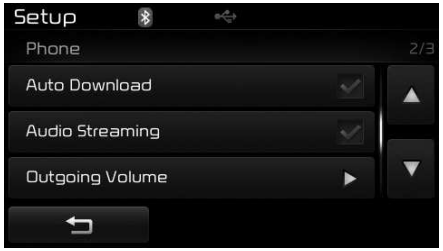
This feature is used to automatically download mobile phone book entries once a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone is connected.

✻ NOTICE

- **The Auto Download feature will download mobile phone book entries every time the phone is connected. The download time may differ depending on the number of saved phone book entries and the communication state.**
- **When downloading a phone book, first check to see that your mobile phone supports the phone book download feature.**

Audio Streaming

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Audio Streaming]



When Audio Streaming is turned on, you can play music files saved in your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device from the car.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 258

Outgoing Volume

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Outgoing Volume]

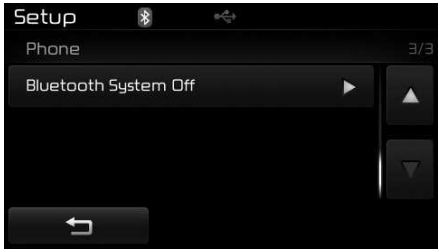


Use the -, + buttons to adjust the outgoing volume level.

Turning Bluetooth System Off

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Bluetooth System Off]

Once *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology is turned off, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology related features will not be supported within the audio system.





✻ NOTICE

To turn *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology back on, go to SETUP ▸ [Phone] and press "Yes".

⚠ CAUTION

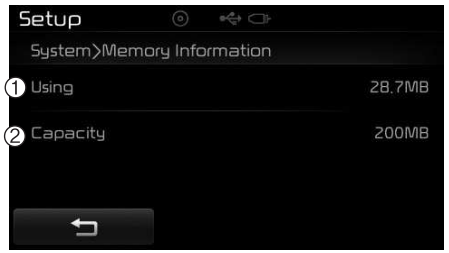
Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology *audio streaming may not be supported in some Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology *phones.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 259

System Setting

Memory Information

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [System] ▸ Select [Memory Information]

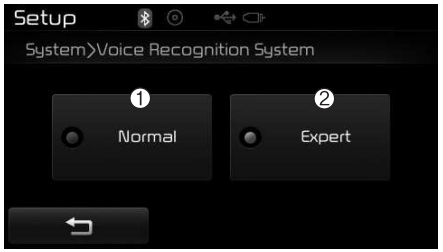


This feature displays information related to system memory.

(1) Using : Displays capacity currently in use
(2) Capacity : Displays total capacity

Voice Recognition Mode Setting

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [System] ▸ Select [Voice Recognition System]



This feature is used to select the desired prompt feedback option from Normal and Expert.

(1) Normal : When using voice recognition, provides detailed guidance prompts
(2) Expert : When using voice recognition, omits some guidance prompts

✻ NOTICE

- **Voice Recognition is depend on the Audio System.**

Language

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [System] ▸ Select [Language]



This feature is used to change the system and voice recognition language.

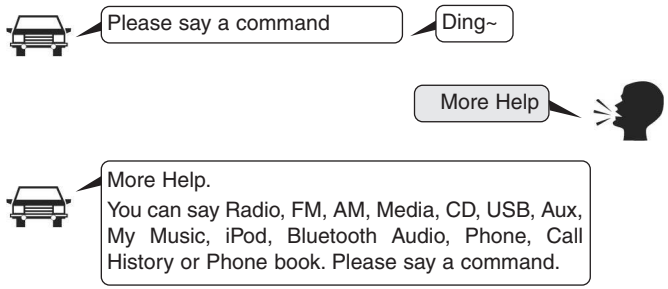
If the language is changed, the system will restart and apply the selected language.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 260

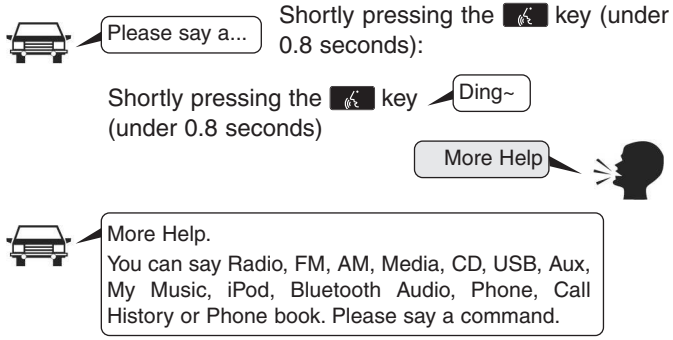
❊ Illustration on using voice commands

• Starting voice command.

Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds):

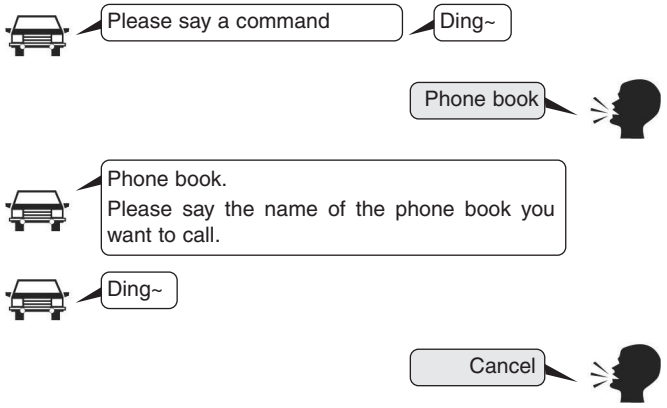


• Skipping Voice Recognition



• End voice command.

Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds):



JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 261

Voice Command List

• Common Commands: These are commands that can be used in all situations. (However, some commands may not be supported in special circumstances.)

Command	Function
More Help	Provides guidance on commands that can be used anywhere in the system.
Help	Provides guidance on commands that can be used within the current mode.
Call<Name>	Calls <Name> saved in phone book Ex) Call “John”
Phone	Provides guidance on Phone related commands. After saying this command, say “Call History”, “Phone book”, “Dial Number” to execute corresponding functions.
Call History	Displays the Call History screen.
Phone book	Displays the phone book screen. After saying this command, say the name of a phone book saved in the phone book to automatically connect the call.
Dial Number	Display the Dial number screen. After saying this command, you can say the number what you want to call.
Redial	Connects the most recently called number.
Radio	• When listening to the radio, displays the next radio screen. (FM1➟ FM2➟ FMA ➟ AM ➟ AMA) • When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played radio screen.
FM	• When currently listening to the FM radio, maintains the current state. • When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played FM screen.
FM1(FM One)	Displays the FM1 screen.
FM2(FM Two)	Displays the FM2 screen.
FMA	Displays the FMA screen.
AM	Displays the AM screen.
AMA	Displays the AMA screen.
FM Preset 1~6	Plays the most recently played broadcast saved in FM Preset 1~6.
AM Preset 1~6	Plays the broadcast saved in AM Preset 1~6.
FM 87.5~107.9	Plays the FM broadcast of the corresponding frequency.
AM 530~1710	Plays the AM broadcast of the corresponding frequency.
TA on	Enable Traffic Announcement
TA off	Disable Traffic Announcement
News on	Enable RDS News feature
News off	Disable RDS News feature

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 262

Command	Function
Media	Moves to the most recently played media screen.
Play Track 1~30	If a music CD has been inserted, plays the corresponding track.
CD	Plays the music saved in the CD.
Search CD	Moves to the CD track or file selection screen. • For audio CDs, move to the screen and say the track number to play the corresponding track. • Moves to MP3 CD file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music.
USB	Plays USB music.
Search USB	Moves to USB file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music.
iPod	Plays iPod music.
Search iPod	Moves to the iPod file selection screen. After, manually operate the device to select and play music.
My Music	Plays the music saved in My Music.
Search My Music	Moves to My Music file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music.

Command	Function
AUX (Auxiliary)	Plays the connected external device.
Bluetooth Audio	Plays the music saved in connected *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device.
Mute	Mutes the radio or music volume.
Pardon?	Repeats the most recent comment.
Cancel (Exit)	Ends voice command.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 263

• FM/AM radio commands: Commands that can be used while listening to FM, AM radio.

Command	Function
Preset 1~6	Plays the broadcast saved in Preset 1~6.
Auto Store	Automatically selects radio broadcast frequencies with superior reception and saves in Presets 1~6.
Preset Save 1~6	Saves the current broadcast frequency to Preset 1~6.
Seek up	Plays the next receivable broadcast.
Seek down	Plays the previous receivable broadcast.
Next Preset	Selects the preset number next to the most recently selected preset. (Example: When currently listening to preset no. 3, then preset no. 4 will be selected.)
Previous Preset	Selects the preset number previous to the most recently selected preset. (Example: When currently listening to preset no. 3, then preset no. 2 will be selected.)
Scan	Scans receivable frequencies from the current broadcast and plays for 10 seconds each.
Preset Scan	Moves to the next preset from the current present and plays for 10 seconds each.
AF on	Enable Alternative Frequency feature
AF off	Disable Alternative Frequency feature
Region	Enable Region feature

• Audio CD commands: Commands that can be used while listening to Audio CD.

Command	Function
Region off	Disable Region feature
Program Type	Moves to the RDS Program type selection screen. After, manually operate the device to select a desired program type.
Random	Randomly plays the tracks within the CD.
Random Off	Cancels random play to play tracks in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current track.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play tracks in sequential order.
Next Track	Plays the next track.
Previous Track	Plays the previous track.
Scan	Scans the tracks from the next track for 10 seconds each.
Track 1~30	Plays the desired track number.
Search Track	Moves to the track selection screen. After, say the track name to play the corresponding track.
Information	Displays the information screen of the current track.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 264

• MP3 CD / USB commands: Commands that can be used while listening to music files saved in CD and USB.

Command	Function
Random	Randomly plays the files within the current folder.
All Random	Randomly plays all saved files.
Random Off	Cancels random play to play files in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current file.
Folder Repeat	Repeats all files in the current folder.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play files in sequential order.
Next File	Plays the next file.
Previous File	Plays the previous file.
Scan	Scans the files from the next files for 10 seconds each.
Search File	Moves to the file selection screen.
Search Folder	Moves to the folder selection screen.
Information	Displays the information screen of the current file.
Copy	Copies the current file into My Music.

• iPod Commands: Commands that can be used while playing iPod.

Command	Function
All Random	Randomly plays all saved songs.
Random	Randomly plays the songs within the current category.
Random Off	Cancels random play to play songs in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current song.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play songs in sequential order.
Next Song	Plays the next song.
Previous Song	Plays the previous song.
Search Song	Moves to the song selection screen.
Information	Displays the information screen of the current song.

JD eng 4c(~265).QXP 3/4/2015 4:49 PM Page 265

• My Music Commands: Commands that can be used while playing My Music.

Command	Function
Random	Randomly plays all saved files.
Random Off	Cancels random play to play files in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current file.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play files in sequential order.
Next File	Plays the next file.
Previous File	Plays the previous file.
Scan	Scans the files from the next files for 10 seconds each.
Search File	Moves to the file selection screen.
Information	Displays the information screen of the current file.
Delete	Deletes the current file. You will bypass an additional confirmation process.
Delete All	Deletes all files saved in My Music. You will bypass an additional confirmation process.

• *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio Commands: Commands that can be used while playing Phone Music.

Command	Function
Play	Plays the currently paused song.
Pause	Pauses the current song.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/12/2015 3:04 PM Page 1

Driving your vehicle

Before driving 5-4
- Before entering vehicle 5-4
- Necessary inspections 5-4
- Before starting 5-4

Key positions 5-5
- Illuminated ignition switch 5-5
- Ignition switch position 5-6
- Starting the engine 5-7

Engine START/STOP button 5-9
- Illuminated engine start/stop button 5-9
- Engine start/stop button position 5-9
- Starting the engine 5-12

ISG (Idle Stop and Go) system 5-15
- Auto stop 5-15
- Auto start 5-17
- Condition of ISG system operation 5-18
- ISG system deactivation 5-18
- ISG system malfunction 5-19

Manual transaxle 5-20
- Manual transaxle operation 5-20
- Good driving practices 5-22

Automatic transaxle/Double clutch transmission . . 5-23
- Automatic transaxle/Double clutch transmission operation 5-23
- Good driving practices 5-30

Active eco system 5-32
- Active ECO operation 5-32
- Limitation of Active ECO operation 5-32

Brake system 5-33
- Power brakes 5-33
- Parking brake - Hand type 5-35
- Electric parking brake (EPB) 5-37
- Emergency braking 5-41
- Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 5-41
- Electronic stability control (ESC) 5-44
- Vehicle stability management (VSM) 5-47
- Hill-start assist control (HAC) 5-48
- Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) 5-48
- Good braking practices 5-49

Cruise control system 5-51

Speed limit control system 5-56

Lane departure warning system (LDWS) 5-59

Economical operation 5-62

Special driving conditions 5-64
- Hazardous driving conditions 5-64
- Rocking the vehicle 5-64
- Smooth cornering 5-65
- Driving at night 5-65
- Driving in the rain 5-65
- Driving in flooded areas 5-66

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:50 PM Page 2

• Driving off-road 5-66
• Highway driving 5-66
Winter driving 5-67
• Snowy or Icy conditions 5-67
• Snow tires 5-67
• Tire chains 5-68
Trailer towing 5-71
• Hitches 5-72
• Safety chains 5-72
• Trailer brakes 5-73
• Driving with a trailer 5-73
• Maintenance when trailer towing 5-76
• If you do decide to pull a trailer 5-77
Vehicle weight 5-80

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:50 PM Page 3

⚠ WARNING - ENGINE EXHAUST CAN BE DANGEROUS!

Engine exhaust fumes can be extremely dangerous. If, at any time, you smell exhaust fumes inside the vehicle, open the windows immediately.

- **Do not inhale exhaust fumes.**
  Exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a colorless, odorless gas that can cause unconsciousness and death by asphyxiation.
- **Be sure the exhaust system does not leak.**
  The exhaust system should be checked whenever the vehicle is raised to change the oil or for any other purpose. If you hear a change in the sound of the exhaust or if you drive over something that strikes the underneath side of the vehicle, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.
- **Do not run the engine in an enclosed area.**
  Letting the engine idle in your garage, even with the garage door open, is a hazardous practice. Never run the engine in your garage any longer than it takes to start the engine and back the vehicle out.
- **Avoid idling the engine for prolonged periods with people inside the vehicle.**
  If it is necessary to idle the engine for a prolonged period with people inside the vehicle, be sure to do so only in an open area with the air intake set at "Fresh" and fan operating at one of the higher speeds so fresh air is drawn into the interior.

If you must drive with the tailgate/trunk open because you are carrying objects that make this necessary:

1. Close all windows.
2. Open side vents.
3. Set the air intake control at "Fresh", the air flow control at "Floor" or "Face" and the fan at one of the higher speeds.

To assure proper operation of the ventilation system, be sure the ventilation air intakes located just in front of the windshield are kept clear of snow, ice, leaves or other obstructions.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:50 PM Page 4

BEFORE DRIVING

Before entering vehicle

- Be sure that all windows, outside mirror(s), and outside lights are clean.
- Check the condition of the tires.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Be sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to back up.

Necessary inspections

Fluid levels, such as engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid, and washer fluid should be checked on a regular basis, with the exact interval depending on the fluid. Further details are provided in chapter 7, “Maintenance”.

⚠ WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control, that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver’s primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver’s eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.

Before starting

- Close and lock all doors.
- Position the seat so that all controls are easily reached.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Be sure that all lights work.
- Check all gauges.
- Check the operation of warning lights when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.
- Release the parking brake and make sure the brake warning light goes out.

For safe operation, be sure you are familiar with your vehicle and its equipment.

⚠ WARNING

All passengers must be properly belted whenever the vehicle is moving. Refer to “Seat belts” in chapter 3 for more information on their proper use.

⚠ WARNING

Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before putting a vehicle into “D (Drive)” or “R (Reverse)”.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:50 PM Page 5

⚠ WARNING - Driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs

Drinking and driving is dangerous. Drunk driving is the number one contributor to the highway death toll each year. Even a small amount of alcohol will affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgement. Driving while under the influence of drugs is as dangerous or more dangerous than driving drunk.

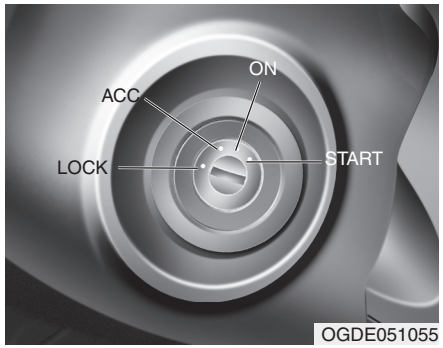
You are much more likely to have a serious accident if you drink or take drugs and drive.

If you are drinking or taking drugs, don't drive. Do not ride with a driver who has been drinking or taking drugs. Choose a designated driver or call a cab.

⚠ WARNING

- **When you intend to park or stop the vehicle with the engine on, be careful not to depress the accelerator pedal for a long period of time. It may overheat the engine or exhaust system and cause fire.**
- **When you make a sudden stop or turn the steering wheel rapidly, loose objects may drop on the floor and it could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Keep all things in the vehicle safely stored.**
- **If you do not focus on driving, it may cause an accident. Be careful when operating what may disturb driving such as audio or heater. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive safely.**

KEY POSITIONS



Illuminated ignition switch

Whenever a front door is opened, the ignition switch will be illuminated for your convenience, provided the ignition switch is not in the ON position. The light will go off immediately when the ignition switch is turned on or go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:50 PM Page 6

Ignition switch position

LOCK

The steering wheel locks to protect against theft. The ignition key can be removed only in the LOCK position. When turning the ignition switch to the LOCK position, push the key inward at the ACC position and turn the key toward the LOCK position.

ACC (Accessory)

The steering wheel is unlocked and electrical accessories are operative.

✻ NOTICE

If difficulty is experienced turning the ignition switch to the ACC position, turn the key while turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.

ON

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. This is the normal running position after the engine is started.

Do not leave the ignition switch ON if the engine is not running to prevent battery discharge.

START

Turn the ignition key to the START position to start the engine. The engine will crank until you release the key; then it returns to the ON position. The brake warning lamp can be checked in this position.

⚠ WARNING - Ignition key

- **Never turn the ignition switch to LOCK or ACC while the vehicle is moving. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**
- **The anti-theft steering column lock (if equipped) is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in 1st gear for the manual transaxle or P (Park) for the automatic transaxle, set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.**
- **Never reach for the ignition switch, or any other controls through the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in this area could cause a loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.**
- **Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move while driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.**

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:50 PM Page 7

Starting the engine

⚠ WARNING

Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots,etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedal, and clutch (if equipped).

✻ NOTICE - Kick down mechanism

If your vehicle is equipped with a kick down mechanism in the accelerator pedal, it prevents you from driving at full throttle unintentionally by making the driver require increased effort to depress the accelerator pedal. However, if you depress the pedal more than approximately 80%, the vehicle can be at full throttle and the accelerator pedal will be easier to depress. This is not a malfunction but a normal condition.

Starting the gasoline engine

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed while turning the ignition switch to the start position.

   Automatic Transaxle/DCT* - Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.

   * DCT: Double clutch transmission
3. Turn the ignition switch to START and hold it there until the engine starts (a maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.

*It should be started **without depressing the accelerator pedal.***

4. Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving at moderate engine speeds. (Steep accelerating and decelerating should be avoided.)

⚠ CAUTION

If the engine stalls while you are in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position while the vehicle is still moving and turn the ignition switch to the START position in an attempt to restart the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not engage the starter for more than 10 seconds. If the engine stalls or fails to start, wait 5 to 10 seconds before re-engaging the starter. Improper use of the starter may damage it.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:50 PM Page 8

Starting the diesel engine

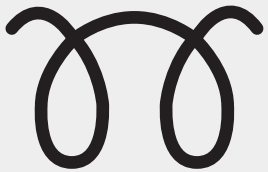
To start the diesel engine when the engine is cold, it has to be pre-heated before starting the engine and then have to be warmed up before starting to drive.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed while turning the ignition switch to the start position.

   Automatic Transaxle - Place the transaxle shift lever in P(park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N(neutral) position.

Glow indicator light



W-60

3. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position to pre-heat the engine. Then the glow indicator light will illuminate.
4. If the glow indicator light goes out, turn the ignition switch to the START position and hold it there until the engine starts (a maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.

✻ NOTICE

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds after the preheating is completed, turn the ignition key once more to the LOCK position for 10 seconds, and then to the ON position, in order to preheat again.

Starting and stopping the engine for turbocharger intercooler

1. Do not race or accelerate the engine immediately after starting.

   If the engine is cold, idle for several seconds before sufficient lubrication is ensured in the turbocharger unit.
2. After high speed or extended driving, requiring a heavy engine load, run the engine on idle condition about 1 minute before turning it off.

   This idle time will allow the turbocharger to cool prior to shutting the engine off.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not turn off the engine immediately after it has been subjected to a heavy load. Doing so may cause severe damage to the engine or turbo charger unit.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:50 PM Page 9

ENGINE START/STOP BUTTON (IF EQUIPPED)



Illuminated engine start/stop button

Whenever the front door is opened, the engine start/stop button will illuminate for your convenience. The light will go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed. It will also go off immediately when the theft-alarm system is armed.

Engine start/stop button position

OFF



White

With manual transaxle

To turn off the engine (START/RUN position) or vehicle power (ON position), stop the vehicle then press the engine start/stop button.

With automatic transaxle/DCT*

To turn off the engine (START/RUN position) or vehicle power (ON position), press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the P (Park) position. When you press the engine start/stop button without the shift lever in the P (Park) position, the engine start/stop button will not change to the OFF position but to the ACC position.

* DCT: Double clutch transmission

Vehicles equipped with anti-theft steering column lock

The steering wheel locks when the engine start/stop button is in the OFF position to protect you against theft.

It locks when the door is opened.

If the steering wheel is not locked properly when you open the driver's door, the warning chime will sound. Try locking the steering wheel again. If the problem is not solved, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

In addition, if the engine start/stop button is in the OFF position after the driver's door is opened, the steering wheel will not lock and the warning chime will sound. In such a situation, close the door. Then the steering wheel will lock and the warning chime will stop.

✻ NOTICE

If the steering wheel doesn't unlock properly, the engine start/stop button will not work. Press the engine start/stop button while turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:50 PM Page 10

⚠ CAUTION

You are able to turn off the engine (START/RUN) or vehicle power (ON), only when the vehicle is not in motion. In an emergency situation while the vehicle is in motion, you are able to turn the engine off and to the ACC position by pressing the engine start/stop button for more than 2 seconds or 3 times successively within 3 seconds. If the vehicle is still moving, you can restart the engine without depressing the brake pedal by pressing the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.

ACC(Accessory)



Orange

With manual transaxle

Press the engine start/stop button when the button is in the OFF position without depressing the clutch pedal.

With automatic transaxle/DCT

Press the engine start/stop button while it is in the OFF position without depressing the brake pedal.

The steering wheel unlocks (if equipped with anti-theft steering column lock) and electrical accessories are operational.
If the engine start/stop button is in the ACC position for more than 1 hour, the button is turned off automatically to prevent battery discharge.

ON



Blue

With manual transaxle

Press the engine start/stop button when the button is in the ACC position without depressing the clutch pedal.

With automatic transaxle/DCT

Press the engine start/stop button while it is in the ACC position without depressing the brake pedal.

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. Do not leave the engine start/stop button in the ON position for a long time. The battery may discharge, because the engine is not running.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:50 PM Page 11

START/RUN



Not illuminated

With manual transaxle

To start the engine, depress the clutch pedal and brake pedal, then press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.

With automatic transaxle/DCT

To start the engine, depress the brake pedal and press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the P (Park) or the N (Neutral) position. For your safety, start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position.

✻ NOTICE

If you press the engine start/stop button without depressing the clutch pedal for manual transaxle vehicles or without depressing the brake pedal for automatic transaxle vehicles, the engine will not start and the engine start/stop button changes as follow:
OFF ➔ACC ➔ ON ➔ OFF or ACC

✻ NOTICE

If you leave the engine start/stop button in the ACC or ON position for a long time, the battery will discharge.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never press the engine start/stop button while the vehicle is in motion. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**
- **The anti-theft steering column lock (if equipped) is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in P (Park), set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Never reach for the engine start/stop button or any other controls through the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in the area could cause loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.**
- **Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move while driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.**

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:50 PM Page 12

Starting the engine

⚠ WARNING

- **Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots,etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedal.**
- **Do not start the vehicle with the accelerator pedal depressed. The vehicle can move and lead to an accident.**
- **Wait until the engine rpm is normal. The vehicle may suddenly move if the brake padel is released when the rpm is high.**

✻ NOTICE - Kick down mechanism (if equipped)

If your vehicle is equipped with a kick down mechanism in the accelerator pedal, it prevents you from driving at full throttle unintentionally by making the driver require increased effort to depress the accelerator pedal. However, if you depress the pedal more than approximately 80%, the vehicle can be at full throttle and the accelerator pedal will be easier to depress. This is not a malfunction but a normal condition.

Starting the gasoline engine

1. Carry the smart key or leave it inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure the parking brake is firmly applied.
3. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed while starting the engine.

   Automatic transaxle/DCT* - Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.

   * DCT: Double clutch transmission
4. Press the engine start/stop button.

It should be started without depressing the accelerator.

5. Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary.

   Start driving at moderate engine speeds. (Steep accelerating and decelerating should be avoided.)

Starting the diesel engine

To start the diesel engine when the engine is cold, it has to be pre-heated before starting the engine and then have to be warmed up before starting to drive.

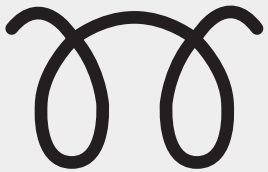
1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed while pressing the engine start/stop button to the START position.

   Automatic Transaxle - Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:50 PM Page 13

Glow indicator light



W-60

3. Press the engine start/stop button while depressing the brake pedal.
4. Continue depressing the brake pedal until the illuminated glow indicator goes off. (approximately 5 seconds)
5. The engine starts running when the glow indicator goes off.

✻ NOTICE

If the engine start/stop button is pressed once more while the engine is pre-heating, the engine may start.

Starting and stopping the engine for turbocharger intercooler

1. Do not race or accelerate the engine immediately after starting.
   If the engine is cold, idle for several seconds before sufficient lubrication is ensured in the turbocharger unit.
2. After high speed or extended driving, requiring a heavy engine load, idle the engine about 1 minute before turning it off.
   This idle time will allow the turbocharger to cool prior to shutting the engine off.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not turn the engine off immediately after it has been subjected to a heavy load. Doing so may cause severe damage to the engine or turbocharger unit.

- Even if the smart key is in the vehicle, if it is far away from you, the engine may not start.
- When the engine start/stop button is in the ACC position or above, if any door is opened, the system checks for the smart key. If the smart key is not in the vehicle, a message “Key not in vehicle” will appear on the LCD display. And if all doors are closed, the chime will sound for 5 seconds. The indicator or warning will turn off while the vehicle is moving. Always have the smart key with you.

⚠ WARNING

The engine will start, only when the smart key is in the vehicle.

Never allow children or any person who is unfamiliar with the vehicle touch the engine start/stop button or related parts.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:50 PM Page 14

⚠ CAUTION

If the engine stalls while the vehicle is in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If the traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position while the vehicle is still moving and press the engine start/stop button in an attempt to restart the engine.



✻ NOTICE

- **If the battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, you can start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button with the smart key.**
  The side with the lock button should be contacted directly.
  If you press the smart key directly to the engine start/stop button, the engine start/stop button and the smart key right angle to the direction

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When the stop lamp fuse is blown, you cannot start the engine normally.**
  Replace the fuse with a new one. If it is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button for 10 seconds while it is in the ACC position. The engine can start without depressing the brake pedal. But for your safety always depress the brake pedal before starting the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not press the engine start/stop button for more than 10 seconds except when the stop lamp fuse is blown.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:50 PM Page 15

ISG (IDLE STOP AND GO) SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with the ISG system, which reduces fuel consumption by automatically shutting down the engine, when the vehicle is at a standstill. (For example : red light, stop sign and traffic jam)

The engine starts automatically as soon as the starting conditions are met.

The ISG system is ON whenever the engine is running.

✻ NOTICE

When the engine automatically starts by the ISG system, some warning lights (ABS, ESC, ESC OFF, EPS or Parking brake warning light) may turn on for a few seconds.

This happens because of low battery voltage. It does not mean the system has malfunctioned.



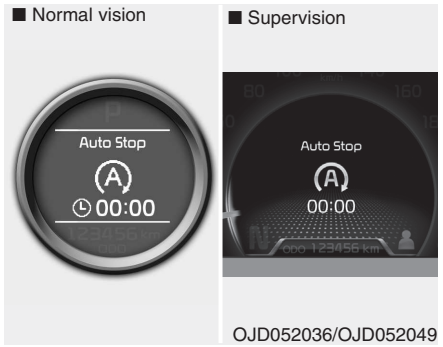
OJD052026

Auto stop

To stop the engine in idle stop mode

1. Decrease the vehicle speed to less than 5 km/h (3 mph).
2. Shift into N (Neutral) position.
3. Release the clutch pedal.

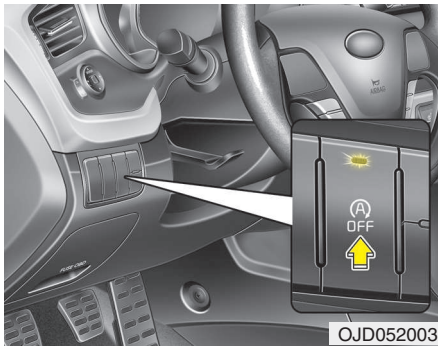
The engine will stop and the green AUTO STOP(Ⓐ) indicator on the instrument cluster will illuminate.



Also, a message "Auto Stop" will appear on the LCD display.

✻ NOTICE

You must reach a speed of at least 10 km/h (6 mph) since last idle stop.

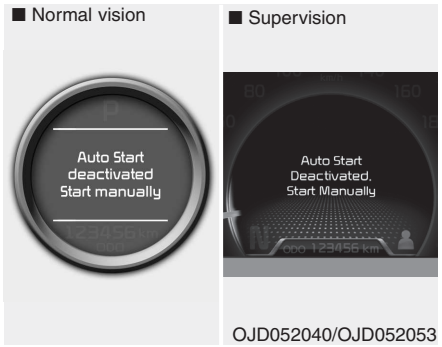


✻ NOTICE

If you unfasten the seatbelt or open the driver's door (or engine hood) in auto stop mode, the following will happen:

- **The ISG system will deactivate (the light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate).**

(Continued)

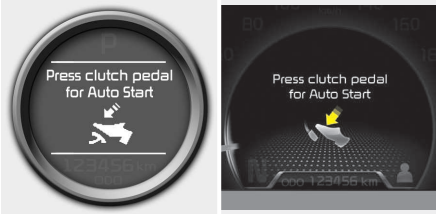


(Continued)

- **A message "Auto Start Deactivated Start Manually" will appear on the LCD display.**

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:50 PM Page 17

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD052041/OJD052054

Auto Start

To restart the engine from idle stop mode

- Press the clutch pedal when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.
- A message "Press Clutch Pedal for Auto Start" will appear on the LCD display.
- The engine will start and the green AUTO STOP (Ⓐ) indicator on the instrument cluster will go out.

The engine will also restart automatically without the driver's any actions if the following occurs:

- The fan speed of manual climate control system is set above the 3rd position when the air conditioning is on.
- The fan speed of automatic climate control system is set above the 6th position when the air conditioning is on.
- When a certain amount of time has passed with the climate control system on.
- When the defroster is on.
- The brake vaccum pressure is low.
- The battery charging status is low.
- The vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h (3 mph).

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD052037/OJD052050

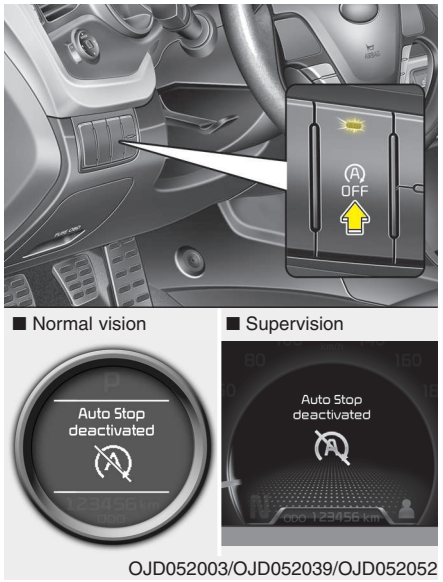
The green AUTO STOP (Ⓐ) indicator on the instrument cluster will blink for 5 seconds and a message "Auto Start" will appear on the LCD display.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:50 PM Page 18

Condition of ISG system operation

The ISG system will operate under the following condition:

- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The driver's door and engine hood are closed.
- The brake vaccum pressure is adequate.
- The battery is sufficiently charged.
- The outside temperature is between -2°C to 35°C (28.4°F to 95°F).
- The engine coolant temperature is not too low.



OJD052003/OJD052039/OJD052052



OJD052003/OJD052038/OJD052051

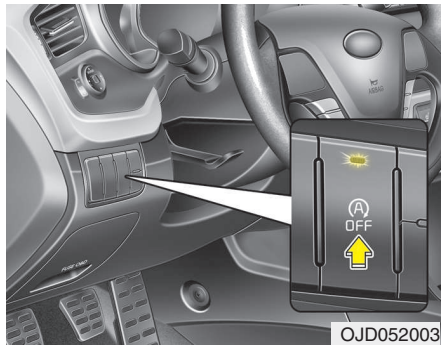
✻ NOTICE

- **If the ISG system does not meet the operation condition, the ISG system is deactivated. The light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate and a message "Auto Stop Deactivated" will appear on the LCD display.**
- **If the light or notice comes on continuously, please check the operation condition.**

ISG system deactivation

- If you wish to deactivate the ISG system, press the ISG OFF button. The light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate and a message "Auto Stop OFF" will appear on the LCD display.
- If you press the ISG OFF button again, the system will be activated and the light on the ISG OFF button will turn off.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:50 PM Page 19



ISG system malfunction

The system may not operate when:

The ISG related sensors or system error occurs.

The following will happen:

- The yellow AUTO STOP (Ⓐ) indicator on the instrument cluster will stay on after blinking for 5 seconds.
- The light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate.

✻ NOTICE

- **If the ISG OFF button light is not turned off by pressing the ISG OFF button again or if the ISG system continuously does not work correctly, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.**
- **When the ISG OFF button light comes on, it may stop illuminating after driving your vehicle at approximately 80 km/h for a maximum of two hours and setting the fan speed control knob below the 2nd position. If the ISG OFF button light continues to be illuminated in spite of the procedure, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.**

⚠ WARNING

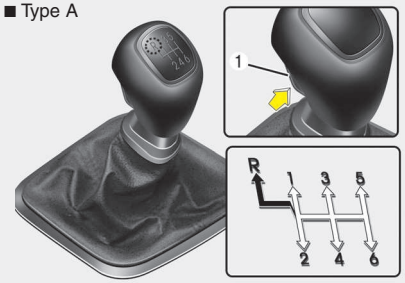
When the engine is in Idle Stop mode, it's possible to restart the engine without the driver taking any action.

Before leaving the car or doing anything in the engine room area, stop the engine by turning the ignition switch to the LOCK/OFF position or removing the ignition key.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 20

MANUAL TRANSAXLE (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Type A

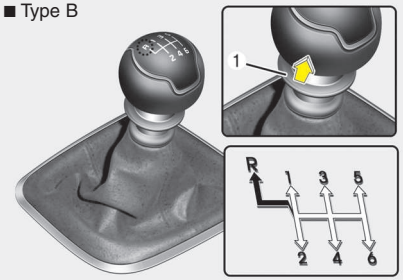


⇨ The shift lever can be moved without pushing the button (1).

➡ The button (1) must be pushed while moving the shift lever.

OJD052004

■ Type B



⇨ The shift lever can be moved without pulling the ring (1).

➡ The ring (1) must be pulled while moving the shift lever.

OJD053058

Manual transaxle operation

- The manual transaxle has 6 forward gears.
  This shift pattern is imprinted on the shift knob. The transaxle is fully synchronized in all forward gears so shifting to either a higher or a lower gear is easily accomplished.
- Depress the clutch pedal down fully while shifting, then release it slowly.
  If your vehicle is equipped with an ignition lock switch, the engine will not start when starting the engine without depressing the clutch pedal.
- The shift lever must return to the neutral position before shifting into R (Reverse). The button located immediately below the shift knob must be pushed upward (Type A) or the ring located below the shift knob must be pulled upward (Type B). while moving the shift lever to the R (Reverse) position.
- *Make sure the vehicle is completely stopped before shifting into R (Reverse).*
  Never operate the engine with the tachometer (rpm) in the red zone.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When downshifting from 5 (Fifth) gear to 4 (Fourth) gear, caution should be taken not to inadvertently move the shift lever sideways in such a manner that second gear is engaged. Such a drastic downshift may cause the engine speed to increase to the point that the tachometer will enter the red-zone. Such over-revving of the engine may possibly cause engine and transaxle damage.***
- ***Do not downshift more than 2 gears or downshift the gear when the engine is running at high speed (5,000 RPM or higher). Such a downshifting may damage the engine, clutch and the transaxle.***
- ***When shifting between 5th and 6th gear, you should always push the gear level all the way to the right. You could otherwise shift unintentionally into 3rd or 4th gear and damage the transaxle.***

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 21

- During cold weather, shifting may be difficult until the transaxle lubricant has warmed up. This is normal and not harmful to the transaxle.
- If you've come to a complete stop and it's hard to shift into 1 (First) or R (Reverse), put the shift lever in neutral position and release the clutch. Press the clutch pedal back down, and then shift into 1 (First) or R (Reverse) gear position.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***To avoid premature clutch wear and damage, do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal. Also, don't use the clutch to hold the vehicle stopped on an uphill grade, while waiting for a traffic light, etc.***
- ***Do not use the shift lever as a handrest during driving, as this can result in premature wear of the transaxle shift forks.***
- ***To prevent possible damage to the clutch system, do not start with the 2nd (second) gear engaged except when you start on a slippery road.***

⚠ WARNING

- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Then make sure the transaxle is shifted into 1 (First) gear when the vehicle is parked on a level or uphill grade, and shifted into R (Reverse) on a downhill grade.**

  Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.
- **If your vehicle has a manual transaxle not equipped with a ignition lock switch, it may move and cause a serious accident when starting the engine without depressing the clutch pedal while the parking brake is released and the shift lever not in the neutral position.**

Using the clutch

The clutch pedal should be depressed all the way to the floor before shifting, then released slowly. The clutch pedal should always be fully released while driving. Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal while driving. This can cause unnecessary wear. Do not partially engage the clutch to hold the vehicle on an incline. This causes unnecessary wear. Use the foot brake or parking brake to hold the vehicle on an incline. Do not operate the clutch pedal rapidly and repeatedly.

⚠ CAUTION

When operating the clutch pedal, depress the clutch pedal down fully. If you don't depress the clutch pedal fully, the clutch may be damaged or noise may occur.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 22

Downshifting

When you must slow down in heavy traffic or while driving up steep hills, downshift before the engine starts to labor. Downshifting reduces the chance of stalling and gives better acceleration when you again need to increase your speed. When the vehicle is traveling down steep hills, downshifting helps maintain safe speed and prolongs brake life.

Good driving practices

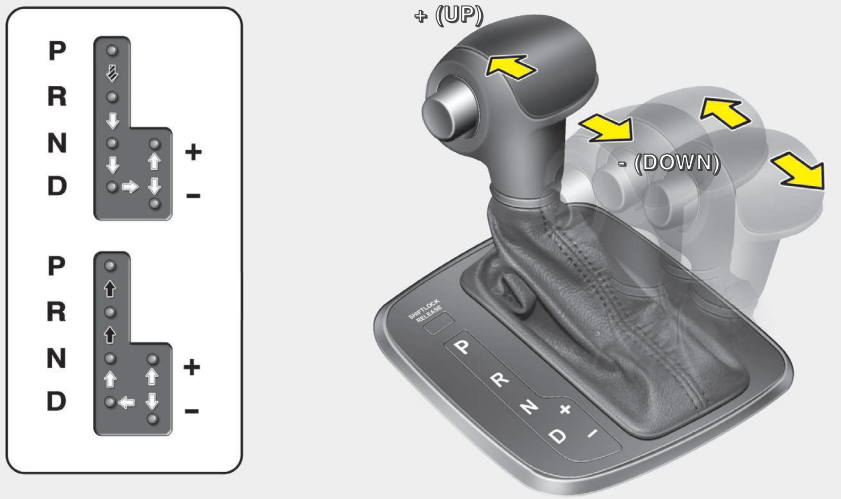
- Never take the vehicle out of gear and coast down a hill. This is extremely hazardous. Always leave the vehicle in gear.
- Don't "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow down the vehicle.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. This will help avoid over-revving the engine, which can cause damage.
- Slow down when you encounter cross winds. This gives you much better control of your vehicle.
- Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse). The transaxle can be damaged if you do not. To shift into R (Reverse), depress the clutch, move the shift lever to neutral, wait three seconds, then shift to the R (Reverse) position.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Never exceed posted speed limits.**

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 23

AUTOMATIC TRANSAXLE/DOUBLE CLUTCH TRANSMISSION (IF EQUIPPED)



Depress the brake pedal and the lock release button when shifting.
(If the shift lock system is not equipped, it is not necessary to depress the brake pedal. However, it is recommended to depress the brake pedal to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle.)

Press the lock release button when shifting.

The shift lever can be shifted freely.

OJD052005

Automatic transaxle/Double clutch transmission operation

The automatic transaxle/Double clutch transmission has 6 forward speeds and one reverse speed. The individual speeds are selected automatically, depending on the position of the shift lever.

✻ NOTICE

The first few shifts on a new vehicle, if the battery has been disconnected, may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal condition, and the shifting sequence will adjust after shifts are cycled a few times by the TCM (Transaxle Control Module) or PCM (Powertrain Control Module).

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 24

✻ NOTICE

- **The double clutch transmission gives the driving feel of a Manual Transaxle, yet provides the ease of a fully Automatic Transaxle. Unlike a traditional Automatic Transaxle, the gear shifting can be felt (and heard) on the double clutch transmission**
  - **Think of it as an automatically shifting Manual Transaxle.**
  - **Shift into Drive range and you get great shifting feedback and sound, but no shifting hassle.**
- **Dry-type clutch transfers driving torque and also delivers direct driving feel which can be felt different from smooth Automatic Transaxle with slip of torque converter. This might be easily felt especially at launch & low vehicle speed.**
- **Double clutch transmission adopts dry-type double clutch, which is different from torque converter of Automatic Transaxle, and shows better acceleration performance during driving. But, initial launch might be little bit slower than Automatic Transaxle.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When rapidly accelerating at low vehicle speed, engine could rev at high rpm depending on vehicle drive condition.**
- **For smooth launch at uphill, press down the accelerator pedal properly depending on the vehicle drive condition.**
- **If you release your foot from the accelerator pedal at low vehicle speed, you may feel strong engine brake, which is similar to manual transaxle.**
- **In case if you want to speed down at downhill, you may use sport mode or paddle shift to downshift, and also use foot brake properly depending on driving condition to get enough deceleration.**
- **When you turn the ignition on and off, you may hear clicking sounds as the transmission solenoids turn on and off, cycling through a self test. This is a normal sound for the Double Clutch Transmission.**

For smooth operation, depress the brake pedal when shifting from N (Neutral) to a forward or reverse gear.

⚠ WARNING - Automatic transaxle

- **Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is in the P (Park) position; then set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.**

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 25

⚠ CAUTION - Double clutch transmission

- *If the vehicle is held by applying accelerator pedal at the hill, the transmission and clutch will be damaged. To hold at the hill, use the parking brake or foot brake.*
- *An overload of the clutch is indicated by a longitudinal judder and a blinking display. To exclude a clutch-damage, the clutch is opened and the torque flow interrupted. If the clutch is opened, apply the foot brake and wait some minutes before driving again.*
- *Ignoring the warnings can lead to severe injuries and damage on the car.*
- *If the LCD warning is active, the foot brake has to be applied.*
- *When the problem of gear system occurs, the transaxle indicator will blink. For your safety, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *When the clutch is overheated, the safe protection mode operates. According to the safe protection mode, the transaxle indicator blinks with buzzer sound. The buzzer beeps 3 times.*

  In this time, the LCD warning about safe protection mode also displays. In this condition, the driving may not be smoothly. If you ignore this warning, the driving condition is getting worse and the system may have problem. To return the normal driving condition, apply the foot brake and stop the vehicle for few minutes before driving off.
- *While shifting the gear automatically, you may feel a corresponding shifting of gear. However, it is not malfunction.*

⚠ CAUTION

- *To avoid damage to your transaxle, do not accelerate the engine in R (Reverse) or any forward gear position with the brakes on.*
- *When stopped on an upgrade, do not hold the vehicle stationary with engine power. Use the service brake or the parking brake.*
- *Do not shift from N (Neutral) or P (Park) into D (Drive), or R (Reverse) when the engine is above idle speed.*

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 26

Transaxle ranges

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster displays the shift lever position when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

P (Park)

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park). This position locks the transaxle and prevents the front wheels from rotating.

⚠ WARNING

- **Shifting into P (Park) while the vehicle is in motion will cause the drive wheels to lock which will cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**
- **Do not use the P (Park) position in place of the parking brake. Always make sure the shift lever is latched in the P (Park) position and set the parking brake fully.**
- **Never leave a child unattended in a vehicle.**

⚠ CAUTION

The transaxle may be damaged if you shift into P (Park) while the vehicle is in motion.

R (Reverse)

Use this position to drive the vehicle backward.

⚠ CAUTION

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the transaxle if you shift into R (Reverse) while the vehicle is in motion, except as explained in "Rocking the vehicle", in this manual.

N (Neutral)

The wheels and transaxle are not engaged. The vehicle will roll freely even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or service brakes are applied.

D (Drive)

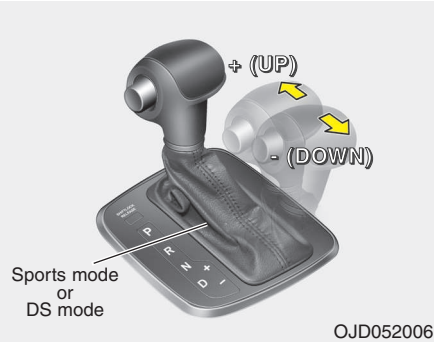
This is the normal forward driving position. The transaxle will automatically shift through a 6-gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

For extra power when passing another vehicle or climbing grades, depress the accelerator pedal fully (more than 80%) until the kick down mechanism works with a clicking noise, at which time the transaxle will automatically downshift to the next lower gear.

✻ NOTICE

- **Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive).**
- **A clicking noise heard from the kick down mechanism by depressing the accelerator pedal fully is a normal condition.**

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 27



OJD052006

Sports mode

Whether the vehicle is stationary or in motion, sports mode is selected by pushing the shift lever from the D (Drive) position into the manual gate. To return to D (Drive) range operation, push the shift lever back into the main gate.

In sports mode, moving the shift lever backwards and forwards will allow you to make gearshifts rapidly.

Up (+) : Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.

Down (-) : Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.

DS mode (Drive Sporty) - DCT

DS mode supports the performance mode for driver. To shift the DS mode, shift the transaxle to DS mode which is center of sports mode. If you shift [+] or [–] gear, the mode is change to sports mode. The transmission shift is automatically changed at higher engine speeds by engine load, your driving style, vehicle condition.

In DS mode, while coasting downhill, the engine does not support the vehicle to slow down.

In DS mode, if you control the paddle shifter, the gear will be changed to sports mode. If the gear is changed to D (Drive), the gear will be changed to D (Drive) mode.

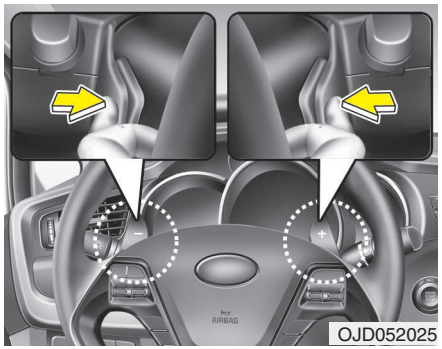
✻ NOTICE - DCT

While stopping the vehicle by applying parking brake in D gear, even if you release the parking brake, the vehicle may not move. In this case, you can drive the vehicle by applying the foot brake and release, applying the accelerator or shifting the lever (D → N → D).

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 28

✻ NOTICE

- **In sports mode, the driver must execute upshifts in accordance with road conditions, taking care to keep the engine speed below the red zone.**
- **In sports mode, only the 6 forward gears can be selected. To reverse or park the vehicle, move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) or P (Park) position as required.**
- **In sports mode, downshifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.**
- **In sports mode, when the engine rpm approaches the red zone shift points are varied to upshift automatically.**
- **To maintain the required levels of vehicle performance and safety, the system may not execute certain gearshifts when the shift lever is operated.**
- **When driving on a slippery road, push the shift lever forward into the +(up) position. This causes the transaxle to shift into the 2nd gear which is better for smooth driving on a slippery road. Push the shift lever to the -(down) side to shift back to the 1st gear.**



Paddle shifter (if equipped)

The paddle shifter is available when the shift lever is in the D position, DS mode or the sports mode.

The paddle shifter can operate when the vehicle speed is more than 10km/h.
Pull the [+] or [-] paddle shifter once to shift up or down one gear and the system changes from D (Drive) mode or DS mode you used to sports mode.
If the vehicle speed is lower than 10km/h, if you depress the accelerator pedal for more than 7 seconds, if you shift the shift lever from D to sport mode and shift it from sports mode to D again or if you hold the paddle shifter [+] lever over 1 second, the system will change from sports mode to D (Drive) mode or DS mode you used.

With the shift lever in the sport mode

Pull the [+] or [-] paddle shifter once to shift up or down one gear.

✻ NOTICE

- **If you pull the [+] and [-] paddle shifters at the same time, you can't shift the gear.**
- **When you change the DS mode to manual mode, if you want to use DS mode again, shift the gear lever to D and shift DS mode.**

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 29

Shift lock system (if equipped)

For your safety, the automatic transaxle has a shift lock system which prevents shifting the transaxle from P (Park) into R (Reverse) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

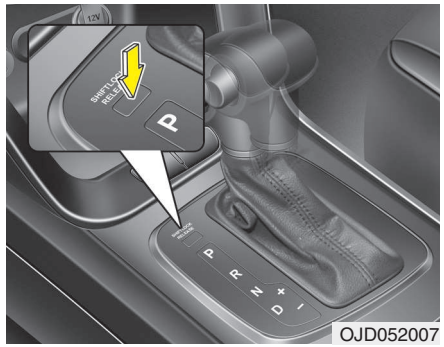
To shift the transaxle from P (Park) into R (Reverse):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the brake pedal is repeatedly depressed and released with the shift lever in the P (Park) position, a chattering noise near the shift lever may be heard. This is a normal condition.

⚠ WARNING

Always fully depress the brake pedal before and while shifting out of the P (Park) position into another position to avoid inadvertent motion of the vehicle which could injure persons in or around the vehicle.



OJD052007

Shift-lock override

If the shift lever cannot be moved from the P (Park) into R (Reverse) position with the brake pedal depressed, continue depressing the brake, then do the following:

1. Press the shift-lock release button.
2. Move the shift lever.
3. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Ignition key interlock system (if equipped)

The ignition key cannot be removed unless the shift lever is in the P (Park) position.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 30

Good driving practices

- Never move the shift lever from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never move the shift lever into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.
- Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Never take the vehicle out of gear and coast down a hill. This may be extremely hazardous. Always leave the vehicle in gear when moving.
- Do not "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow down the vehicle.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged.
- Always use the parking brake. Do not depend on placing the transaxle in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Never exceed posted speed limits.**

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 31

⚠ WARNING

If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward of backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.

Moving up a steep grade from a standing start

Automatic transaxle and Double clutch transmission

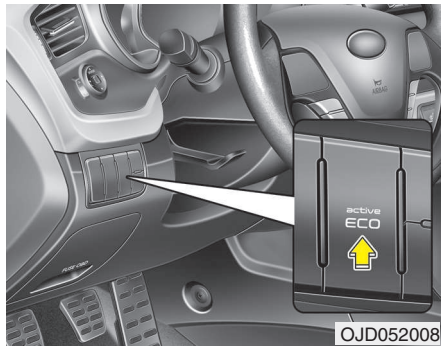
To move up a steep grade from a standing start, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to D (Drive). Select the appropriate gear depending on load weight and steepness of the grade, and release the parking brake. Depress the accelerator pedal gradually while releasing the service brakes.

Automatic transaxle

When accelerating from a stop on a steep hill, the vehicle may have a tendency to roll backwards. Shifting the shift lever into 2 (Second Gear) will help prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 32

ACTIVE ECO SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



Active ECO operation

Active ECO helps improve fuel efficiency by controlling the engine and transaxle. But fuel-efficiency can be changed by the driver's driving habits and road conditions.

- When the Active ECO button is pressed the ECO indicator (green) will illuminate to show that the Active ECO is operating.
- When the Active ECO is activated, it does not turn off even though the engine is restarted again. To turn off the system, press the active ECO button again.
- If Active ECO is turned off, it will return to the normal mode.

When Active ECO is activated :

- The acceleration may slightly be reduced eventhough you depress the accelerator fully.
- The air conditioner performance may be limited.
- The shift pattern of the automatic transaxle may change.
- The engine noise may get louder.

The above situations are normal conditions when the active eco system is activated to improve fuel efficiency.

Limitation of Active ECO operation:

If the following conditions occur while Active ECO is operating, the system operation is limited even though there is no change in the ECO indicator.

- When the coolant temperature is low: The system will be limited until engine performance becomes normal.
- When driving up a hill: The system will be limited to gain power when driving uphill because the engine torque is restricted.
- When using sports mode: The system will be limited according to the shift location.
- When the accelerator pedal is deeply pressed for a few seconds: The system will be limited, judging that the driver wants to speed up.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 33

BRAKE SYSTEM

Power brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

In the event that the power-assisted brakes lose power because of a stalled engine or some other reason, you can still stop your vehicle by applying greater force to the brake pedal than you normally would. The stopping distance, however, will be longer.

When the engine is not running, the reserve brake power is partially depleted each time the brake pedal is applied. Do not pump the brake pedal when the power assist has been interrupted.

Pump the brake pedal only when necessary to maintain steering control on slippery surfaces.

⚠ WARNING - Brakes

- **Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormal high brake temperatures, excessive brake lining and pad wear, and increased stopping distances.**
- **When descending a long or steep hill, shift to a lower gear and avoid continuous application of the brakes. Continuous brake application will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance.**
- **Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to sefely slow down; the vehicle may also pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected in this way. Always test your brakes in this fashion after driving through deep water. To dry the brakes, apply them lightly while maintaining a safe forward speed until brake performance returns to normal.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Always, confirm the position of the brake and accelerator pedal before driving. If you don't check the position of the accelerator and brake pedal before driving, you may depress the accelerator instead of the brake pedal. It may cause a serious accident.**

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 34

In the event of brake failure

If service brakes fail to operate while the vehicle is in motion, you can make an emergency stop with the parking brake. The stopping distance, however, will be much greater than normal.

⚠ WARNING - Parking brake

Applying the parking brake while the vehicle is moving at normal speeds can cause a sudden loss of control of the vehicle. If you must use the parking brake to stop the vehicle, use great caution in applying the brake.

Disc brakes wear indicator

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you will hear a high-pitched warning sound from your front brakes or rear brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you depress the brake pedal.

Please remember that some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when you first apply (or lightly apply) the brakes. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.

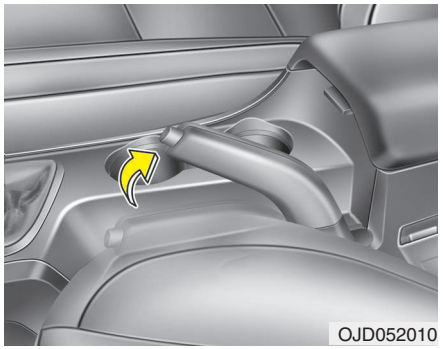
⚠ CAUTION

- ***To avoid costly brake repairs, do not continue to drive with worn brake pads.***
- ***Always replace the front or rear brake pads as pairs.***

⚠ WARNING - Brake wear

This brake wear warning sound means your vehicle needs service. If you ignore this audible warning, you will eventually lose braking performance, which could lead to a serious accident.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 35


OJD052010

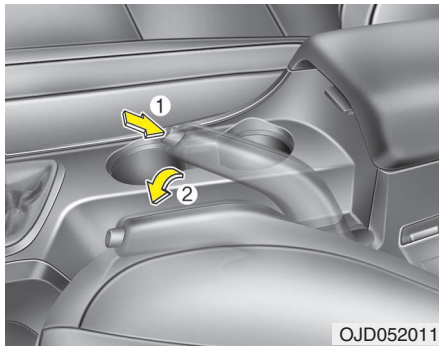
Parking brake - Hand type

Applying the parking brake

To engage the parking brake, first apply the foot brake and then without pressing the release button in, pull the parking brake lever up as far as possible. In addition it is recommended that when parking the vehicle on a gradient, the shift lever should be positioned in the appropriate low gear for manual transaxle vehicles or in the P (Park) position for automatic transaxle vehicles.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Driving with the parking brake applied will cause excessive brake pad (or lining) and brake rotor wear.***
- ***Do not operate the parking brake while the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the vehicle system and make endanger driving safety.***



OJD052011

Releasing the parking brake

To release the parking brake, first apply the foot brake and pull up the parking brake lever slightly. Secondly press the release button (1) and lower the parking brake lever (2) while pressing the button.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 36

⚠ WARNING

- **To prevent unintentional movement when stopped and leaving the vehicle, do not use the shift lever instead of the parking brake. Set the parking brake AND make sure the shift lever is securely positioned in 1st (First) gear or R (Reverse) for manual transaxle equipped vehicles and in P (Park) for automatic transaxle equipped vehicles.**
- **Never allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the parking brake. If the parking brake is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**



WK-23

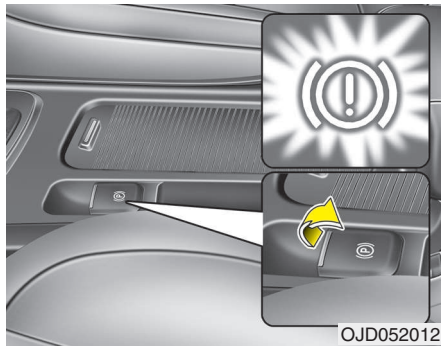
Check the brake warning light by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). This light will illuminate when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position.

Before driving, be sure the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off.

If the brake warning light remains on after the parking brake is released while the engine is running, there may be a malfunction in the brake system. Immediate attention is necessary.

If at all possible, cease driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution while operating the vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location or repair shop.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 37


OJD052012

Electric parking brake (EPB) (if equipped)

Applying the parking brake

To apply the EPB (electric parking brake):

Pull up the EPB switch.

Make sure the warning light comes on.

✻ NOTICE

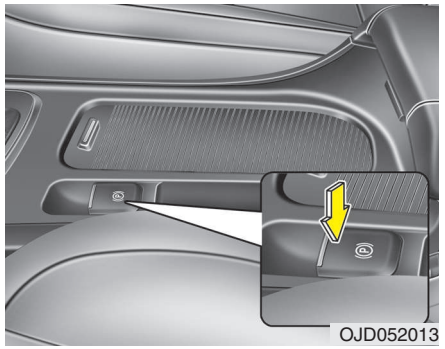
On a steep incline or when pulling a trailer if the vehicle does not stand still, do as follows:

1. Apply the EPB.

2. Pull up the EPB switch for more than 3 seconds.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the parking brake while the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the vehicle system and endanger driving safety.


OJD052013

Releasing the parking brake

To release the EPB (electric parking brake), press the EPB switch in the following condition:

- Have the ignition switch or engine start/stop button in the ON position.
- Depress the brake pedal.

Make sure the brake warning light goes off.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 38

To release EPB (electric parking brake) automatically:

- Manual transaxle vehicle
  1. Start the engine.
  2. Fasten the driver's seat belt.
  3. Close the driver's door, engine hood and tailgate.
  4. Depress the clutch pedal with the gear engaged.
  5. Depress the accelerator pedal while releasing the clutch pedal.
- Automatic transaxle vehicle
  1. Start the engine.
  2. Fasten the driver's seat belt.
  3. Close the driver's door, engine hood and tailgate.
  4. Depress the accelerator pedal while the shift lever is in R (Rear), D (Drive).
- Shift lever in P (Park)
  With the engine running depress the brake pedal and shift out of P (Park) to R (Rear) or D (Drive).
- Shift lever in N (Neutral)
  With the engine running depress the brake pedal and shift out of N (Neutral) to R (Rear) or D (Drive).

Make sure the brake warning light goes off.

✻ NOTICE

- **For your safety, you can engage the EPB even though the ignition switch or engine stop/start button is in the OFF position, but you cannot release it.**
- **For your safety, depress the brake pedal and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch when you drive downhill or when backing up the vehicle.**

✻ NOTICE - Manual transaxle

A vehicle towing a trailer on a hill or on an incline may slightly roll backwards when starting the vehicle. To prevent the situation follow the below instructions.

1. **Depress the clutch pedal and select a gear.**
2. **Keep pulling up the EPB switch.**
3. **Depress the accelerator pedal and slowly release the clutch pedal.**
4. **If the vehicle starts off with enough driving power release the EPB switch.**

Do not follow the above procedure when driving on a flat level ground. The vehicle may suddenly move forward.

⚠ CAUTION

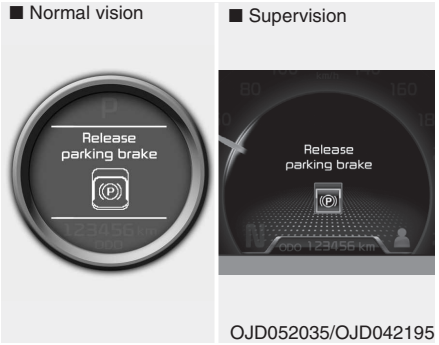
- ***If the parking brake warning light is still on even though the EPB has been released, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.***
- ***Do not drive your vehicle with the EPB applied. It may cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.***

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 39

EPB (electric parking brake) may be automatically applied when:

- The EPB is overheated
- Requested by other systems

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD052035/OJD042195

- If you try to drive off depressing the accelerator pedal with the EPB applied, but doesn't release automatically, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If the driver's seat belt is not fastened and any door, the engine hood or tailgate is opened, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If there is a problem with the vehicle, a warning may sound and a message may appear.

If the above situation occurs, depress the brake pedal and release EPB by pressing the EPB switch.

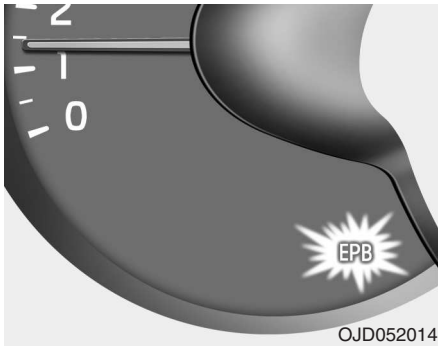
⚠ WARNING

- **To prevent unintentional movement when stopped and leaving the vehicle, do not use the shift lever in place of the parking brake. Set the parking brake and make sure the shift lever is securely positioned in P (Park).**
- **Never allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the parking brake. If the parking brake is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the car which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 40

⚠ CAUTION

- ***A click sound may be heard while operating or releasing the EPB, but these conditions are normal and indicate that the EPB is functioning properly.***
- ***When leaving your keys with a parking lot attendant or valet, make sure to inform him/her how to operate the EPB.***
- ***The EPB may malfunction if you drive with the EPB applied.***
- ***When you automatically release EPB by depressing the accelerator pedal, depress it slowly.***



OJD052014

EPB malfunction indicator (if equipped)

This warning light illuminates if the engine start/stop button is changed to the ON position and goes off in approximately 3 seconds if the system is operation normally.

If the EPB malfunction indicator remains on, comes on while driving, or does not come on when the ignition switch or the engine start/stop button is changed to the ON position, this indicates that the EPB may have malfunctioned.

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

The EPB malfunction indicator may illuminate when the ESC indicator comes on to indicate that the ESC is not working properly, but it does not indicate a malfunction of the EPB.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The EPB warning light may illuminate if the EPB switch operates abnormally. Shut the engine off and turn it on again after a few minutes. The warning light will go off and the EPB switch will operate normally. However, if the EPB warning light is still on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.***
- ***If the parking brake warning light does not illuminate or blinks even though the EPB switch was pulled up, the EPB is not applied.***
- ***If the parking brake warning light blinks when the EPB warning light is on, press the switch, then pull it up. Once more press it back to its original position and pull it back up. If the EPB warning does not go off, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.***

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 41

Emergency braking

If there is a problem with the brake pedal while driving, emergency braking is possible by pulling up and holding the EPB switch. Braking is possible only while you are holding the EPB switch.

⚠ WARNING

Do not operate the parking brake while the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation.

✻ NOTICE

During emergency braking by the EPB, the parking brake warning light will illuminate to indicate that the system is operating.

⚠ CAUTION

If you continuously notice a noise or burning smell when the EPB is used for emergency braking, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

When the EPB (electric parking brake) does not release

If the EPB does not release normally, we recommend that you take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer by loading the vehicle on a flatbed tow truck and have the system checked.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

⚠ WARNING

ABS (or ESC) will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving maneuvers. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions.

The braking distance for vehicle equipped with an anti-lock braking system (or Electronic Stability Control) may be longer than for those without it in the following road conditions.

During these conditions the vehicle should be driven at reduced speeds:

- **Rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.**
- **With tire chains installed.**
- **On roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.**

(Continued)

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 42

(Continued)
The safety features of an ABS (or ESC) equipped vehicle should not be tested by high speed driving or cornering. This could endanger the safety of yourself or others.

The ABS continuously senses the speed of the wheels. If the wheels are going to lock, the ABS system repeatedly modulates the hydraulic brake pressure to the wheels.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

In order to obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes. Press your brake pedal as hard as possible or as hard as the situation warrants and allow the ABS to control the force being delivered to the brakes.

✻ NOTICE

A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the anti-lock brake system is functioning properly.

- Even with the anti-lock brake system, your vehicle still requires sufficient stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.
- Always slow down when cornering. The anti-lock brake system cannot prevent accidents resulting from excessive speeds.
- On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the anti-lock brake system may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 43



W-78

⚠ CAUTION

- *If the ABS warning light is on and stays on, you may have a problem with the ABS. In this case, however, your regular brakes will work normally.*
- *The ABS warning light will stay on for approximately 3 seconds after the ignition switch is ON. During that time, the ABS will go through self-diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, you may have a problem with your ABS. We recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.*

⚠ CAUTION

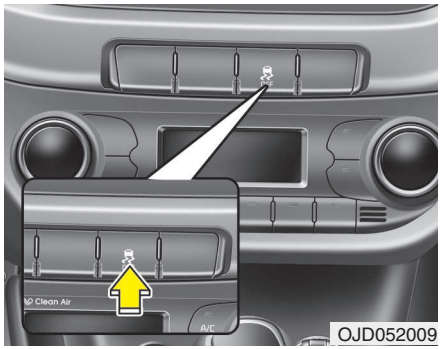
- *When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and operate your brakes continuously, the ABS will be active continuously and the ABS warning light may illuminate. Pull your vehicle over to a safe place and stop the engine.*
- *Restart the engine. If the ABS warning light is off, then your ABS system is normal. Otherwise, you may have a problem with the ABS. We recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.*

✻ NOTICE

When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the engine may not run as smoothly and the ABS warning light may turn on at the same time. This happens because of the low battery voltage. It does not mean your ABS is malfunctioning.

- **Do not pump your brakes!**
- **Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.**

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 44



Electronic stability control (ESC) (if equipped)

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is designed to stabilize the vehicle during cornering maneuvers. ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going. ESC applies the brakes at individual wheels and intervenes with engine management system to stabilize the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Never drive too fast for the road conditions or too quickly when cornering. Electronic stability control (ESC) will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in turns, abrupt maneuvers and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can still result in serious accidents. Only a safe and attentive driver can prevent accidents by avoiding maneuvers that cause the vehicle to lose traction. Even with ESC installed, always follow all the normal precautions for driving - including driving at safe speeds for the conditions.

The Electronic stability control (ESC) system is an electronic system designed to help the driver maintain vehicle control under adverse conditions. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Factors including speed, road conditions and driver steering input can all affect whether ESC will be effective in preventing a loss of control. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ESC is active.

✻ NOTICE

A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the Electronic stability control (ESC) System is functioning properly.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 45

ESC operation

ESC ON condition

-

- When the ignition is turned ON, ESC and ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for approximately 3 seconds, then ESC is turned on.
- Press the ESC OFF button for at least half a second after turning the ignition ON to turn ESC off. (ESC OFF indicator will illuminate). To turn the ESC on, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF indicator light will go off).
- When starting the engine, you may hear a slight ticking sound. This is the ESC performing an automatic system self-check and does not indicate a problem.

When operating



When the ESC is in operation, ESC indicator light blinks.

- When the Electronic Stability Control is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.
- When moving out of the mud or slippery road, the engine rpm (revolution per minute) may not increase even if you press the accelerator pedal deeply. This is to maintain the stability and traction of the vehicle and does not indicate a problem.

ESC operation off

ESC OFF state



- To cancel the engine management system of ESC, press the ESC OFF button for less than 3 seconds (ESC OFF indicator light illuminates). The brake control function still operates.
- To cancel the engine management and brake control function of ESC, press the ESC OFF button for more than 3 seconds (ESC OFF indicator light illuminates).
- If the ignition switch is turned to LOCK position when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the engine, the ESC will automatically turn on again.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 46

■ ESC indicator light



■ ESC OFF indicator light



Indicator light

When ignition switch is turned to ON, the indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally.

The ESC indicator light blinks whenever ESC is operating or illuminates when ESC fails to operate.

ESC OFF indicator light comes on when the ESC is turned off with the button.

⚠ CAUTION

Driving with varying tire or wheel sizes may cause the ESC system to malfunction. When replacing tires, make sure they are the same size as your original tires.

⚠ WARNING

The Electronic Stability Control system is only a driving aid; use precautions for safe driving by slowing down on curved, snowy, or icy roads. Drive slowly and don't attempt to accelerate whenever the ESC indicator light is blinking, or when the road surface is slippery.

ESC OFF usage

When driving

- ESC should be turned on for daily driving whenever possible.
- To turn ESC off while driving, press the ESC OFF button while driving on a flat road surface.

⚠ WARNING

Never press the ESC OFF button while ESC is operating (ESC indicator light blinks).

If ESC is turned off while ESC is operating, the vehicle may slip out of control.

✻ NOTICE

- **When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, ensure that the ESC is turned off by pressing the ESC OFF button for more than 3 seconds (ESC OFF light illuminated). If the ESC is left on, it may prevent the vehicle speed from increasing, and result in false diagnosis.**
- **Turning the ESC off does not affect ABS or brake system operation.**

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 47

Vehicle stability management (VSM) (if equipped)

This system provides further enhancements to vehicle stability and steering responses when a vehicle is driving on a slippery road or a vehicle detected changes in coefficient of friction between right wheels and left wheels when braking.

VSM operation

When the VSM is operating:

- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) ( ) light will blink.
- The steering wheel may be controlled.

When the vehicle stability management is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.

The VSM does not operate when:

- Driving on bank road such as gradient or incline
- Driving rearward
- ESC OFF indicator light ( ) remains on the instrument cluster
- EPS (Electronic Power Steering) indicator light remains on the instrument cluster

VSM operation off

If you press the ESC OFF button to turn off the ESC, the VSM will also cancel and the ESC OFF indicator light ( ) illuminates.

To turn on the VSM, press the button again. The ESC OFF indicator light goes out.

Malfunction indicator

The VSM can be deactivated even if you don't cancel the VSM operation by pressing the ESC OFF button. It indicates that a malfunction has been detected somewhere in the EPS (Electronic Power Steering) system or VSM system. If the ESC indicator light ( ) or EPS warning light remains on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

- **The VSM is designed to function above approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) on curves.**
- **The VSM is designed to function above approximately 30 km/h (18 mph) when a vehicle is braking on a split-mu road. The split-mu road is made of surfaces which have different friction forces.**

⚠ WARNING

- **The Vehicle Stability Management system is not a substitute for safe driving practices but a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead. Always hold the steering wheel firmly while driving.**
- **Your vehicle is designed to activate according to the driver's intention, even with the VSM installed. Always follow all the normal precautions for driving at safe speeds for the conditions – including driving in inclement weather and on a slippery road.**
- **Driving with varying tire or wheel sizes may cause the VSM system to malfunction. When replacing tires, make sure they are the same size as your original tires.**

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 48

Hill-start assist control (HAC) (if equipped)

A vehicle has the tendency to slip back on a steep hill when it starts to go after stopping. The Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) prevents the vehicle from slipping back by operating the brakes automatically for about 1~2 seconds. The brakes are released when the accelerator pedal is depressed or after about 1~2 seconds.

⚠ WARNING

The HAC is activated only for about 1~2 seconds, so when the vehicle is starting off always depress the accelerator pedal.

✻ NOTICE

- **The HAC does not operate when the transaxle shift lever is in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.**
- **The HAC activates even though the ESC is off but it does not activate when the ESC has malfunctioned.**

Emergency Stop Signal (ESS)

The Emergency Stop Signal system alerts the driver behind by blinking the stop light when the vehicle is braked rapidly and severely.

The system is activated when:

- The vehicle suddenly stops (vehicle speed is over 55km/h and the vehicle deceleration at greater than 7 m/s^2)
- The ABS is activating

When the vehicle speed is under 40 km/h and the ABS deactivates or the sudden stop situation is over, the stop light blinking will stop. Instead, the hazard warning flasher will turn on automatically.

The hazard warning flasher will turn off when vehicle speed is over 10km/h after the vehicle has stopped. Also, it will turn off when the vehicle is driven at low speed for some time. You can turn it off manually by pushing the hazard warning flasher switch.

⚠ CAUTION

The Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) system will not work if the hazard warning flasher is already on.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 49

Good braking practices

⚠ WARNING

- **Whenever you leave or park your vehicle, always set the parking brake as far as possible and fully engage the vehicle's transaxle into the P (Park) position. If the parking brake is not fully engaged, the vehicle may move inadvertently and injure yourself and others.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**

- Check to be sure the parking brake is not engaged and that the parking brake indicator light is out before driving away.
- Driving through water may get the brakes wet. They can also get wet when the vehicle is washed. Wet brakes can be dangerous! Your vehicle will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the vehicle to pull to one side.

  To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal, taking care to keep the vehicle under control at all times. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and we recommend that you call an authorized Kia dealer.
- Do not coast down hills with the vehicle out of gear. This is extremely hazardous. Keep the vehicle in gear at all times, use the brakes to slow down, then shift to a lower gear so that engine braking will help you maintain a safe speed.
- Do not "ride" the brake pedal. Resting your foot on the brake pedal while driving can be dangerous because it can result in the brakes overheating and losing their effectiveness. It also increases the wear of the brake components.
- If a tire goes flat while you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the vehicle pointed straight ahead while you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe place.
- If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transaxle, do not let your vehicle creep forward. To avoid creeping forward, keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 50

- Be cautious when parking on a hill. Firmly engage the parking brake and place the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle). If your vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels into the curb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If your vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the curb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If there is no curb or if it is required by other conditions to keep the vehicle from rolling, block the wheels.
- Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk that the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily while you put the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.
- Do not hold the vehicle on the upgrade with the accelerator pedal. This can cause the transaxle to overheat. Always use the brake pedal or parking brake.

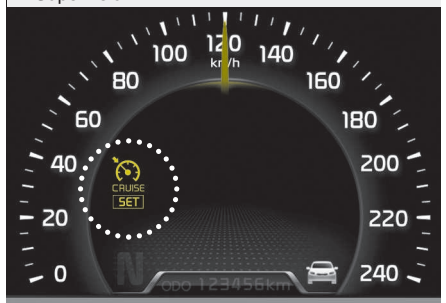
JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:51 PM Page 51

CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Normal vision



■ Supervision



OJD052015/OJD052048

1. Cruise indicator
2. Cruise set indicator

The cruise control system allows you to program the vehicle to maintain a constant speed without pressing the accelerator pedal.

This system is designed to function above approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

⚠ WARNING

- **If the cruise control is left on, (cruise indicator light is illuminated), the cruise control can be switched on accidentally. Keep the cruise control system off when the cruise control is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.**
- **Use the cruise control system only when traveling on open highways in good weather.**
- **Do not use the cruise control when it may not be safe to keep the vehicle at a constant speed, for instance, driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads or over 6% up-hill or down-hill roads.**
- **Pay particular attention to the driving conditions whenever using the cruise control system.**
- **Be careful when driving downhill using the cruise control system, which may increase the vehicle speed.**

⚠ CAUTION

During cruise-speed driving of a manual transaxle vehicle, do not shift into neutral without depressing the clutch pedal, since the engine will be overrevved. If this happens, depress the clutch pedal or release the cruise control ON-OFF switch.

✻ NOTICE

- **During normal cruise control operation, when the SET switch is activated or reactivated after applying the brakes, the cruise control will energize after approximately 3 seconds. This delay is normal.**
- **To activate cruise control, depress the brake pedal at least once after turning the ignition switch to the ON position or starting the engine. This is to check if the brake switch which is important part to cancel cruise control is in normal condition.**

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:52 PM Page 52



OJD053016

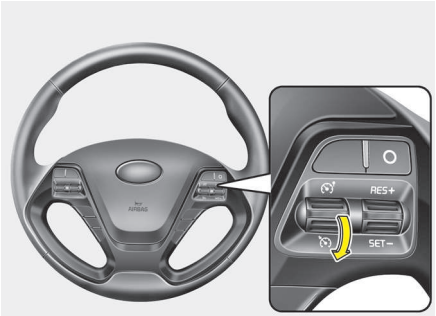
Cruise control switch

O: Cancels cruise control operation.

: Turns cruise control system on or off.

RES+: Resumes or increases cruise control speed.

SET-: Sets or decreases cruise control speed.



OJD053017

To set cruise control speed:

1. Move the lever down ( ) on the steering wheel, to turn the system on. The cruise indicator light will illuminate.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed, which must be more than 30 km/h (20 mph).

✻ NOTICE - Manual transaxle

For manual transaxle vehicles, you should depress the brake pedal at least once to set the cruise control after starting the engine.



OJD053018

3. Move the lever down (to SET-), and release it at the desired speed. The cruise set indicator light will illuminate. Release the accelerator pedal at the same time. The desired speed will automatically be maintained.

On a steep grade, the vehicle may slow down or speed up slightly while going downhill.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:52 PM Page 53



OJD053019

To increase cruise control set speed:

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever up (to RES+) and hold it. Your vehicle will accelerate. Release the lever at the speed you want.
- Move the lever up (to RES+) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase by 2 km/h (1 mph) each time you move the lever up (to RES+) in this manner.



OJD053018

To decrease the cruising speed:

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever down (to SET-) and hold it. Your vehicle will gradually slow down. Release the lever at the speed you want to maintain.
- Move the lever down (to SET-) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease by 2 km/h (1 mph) each time you move the lever down (to SET-) in this manner.

To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on:

If you want to speed up temporarily when the cruise control is on, depress the accelerator pedal. Increased speed will not interfere with cruise control operation or change the set speed.

To return to the set speed, take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:52 PM Page 54



OJD053020

To cancel cruise control, do one of the following:

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal if equipped with a manual transaxle.
- Shift into N (Neutral) if equipped with an automatic transaxle.
- Press the O (Cancel) button located on the steering wheel.
- Decrease the vehicle speed lower than the memory speed by 20 km/h (12 mph).
- Decrease the vehicle speed to less than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

Each of these actions will cancel cruise control operation (the cruise set *indicator light will go off), but it will not turn the system off. If you wish to resume cruise control operation, move up the lever (to RES+) located on your steering wheel. You will return to your previously preset speed.*



OJD053019

To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph):

If any method other than the button was used to cancel cruising speed and the system is still activated, the most recent set speed will automatically resume when the +RES switch is pushed.

It will not resume, however, if the vehicle speed has dropped below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:52 PM Page 55

To turn cruise control off, do one of the following:

- Move the lever down ( ).
- Move the lever up ( ). (If you move the lever up, the speed limit system will turn on)
- Turn the ignition off.

Both of these actions cancel cruise control operation. If you want to resume cruise control operation, repeat the steps provided in "To set cruise control speed" on the previous page.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:52 PM Page 56

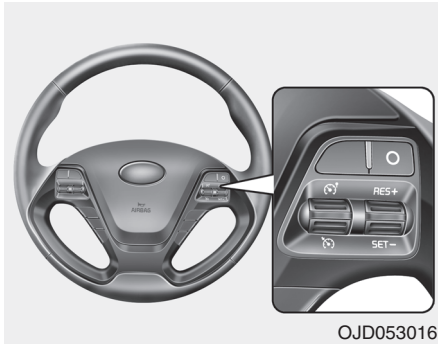
SPEED LIMIT CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

You can set the speed limit when you do not want to drive over a specific speed.

If you drive over the preset speed limit, the warning system operates (set speed limit will blink and chime will sound) until the vehicle speed returns within the speed limit.

✻ NOTICE

While speed limit control is in operation, the cruise control system cannot be activated.



OJD053016

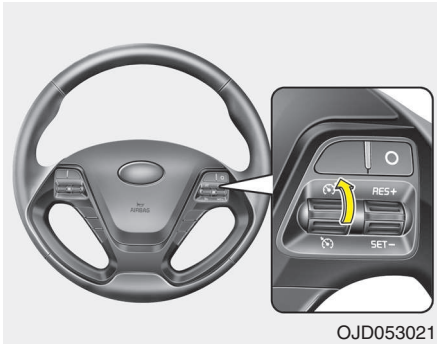
Speed limit control switch

O: Cancels set speed limit.

: Turns speed limit control system on or off.

RES+: Resumes or increases speed limit control speed.

SET-: Sets or decreases speed limit control speed.



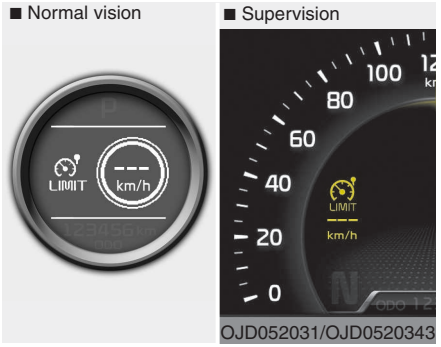
OJD053021

To set speed limit :

1. Move the lever up ( ) on the steering wheel, to turn the system on.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:52 PM Page 57

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD052031/OJD0520343

The speed limit indicator light will illuminate.



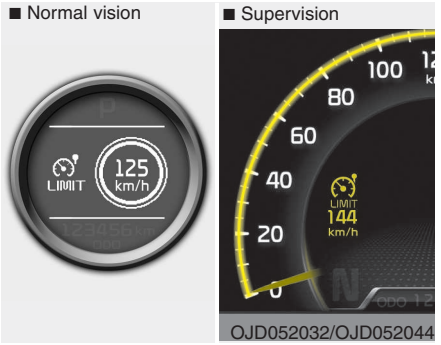
OJD053022

2. Move the lever down (to SET-).
3. Move the lever up (to RES+) or down (to SET-), and release it at the desired speed. Move the lever up (to RES+) or down (to SET-) and hold it. The speed will increase or decrease by 5 km/h (3 mph).

   Move the lever up (to RES+) or down (SET-) and release it immediately. The speed will increase or decrease by 1 km/h.

   The set speed limit will display on the instrument cluster.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD052032/OJD052044

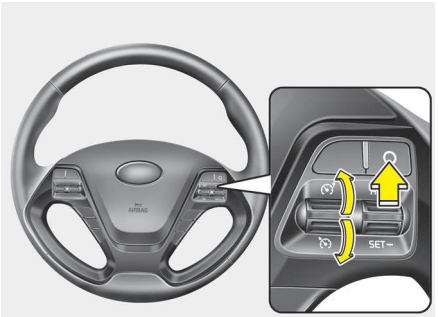
The set speed limit will be displayed.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:52 PM Page 58

To drive over the preset speed limit you must depress hard on the accelerator pedal (more than approximately 80%) until the kick down mechanism works with a clicking noise. Then the set speed limit will blink and chime will sound until you return the vehicle speed within the speed limit.

✻ NOTICE

- **Depressing the accelerator pedal less than approximately 50%, the vehicle will not speed over the preset speed limit but maintain the vehicle speed within the speed limit.**
- **A clicking noise heard from the kick down mechanism by depressing the accelerator pedal fully is a normal condition.**



OJD053023

To turn off the speed limit control, do one of the following:

- Move the lever up ( ).
- Move the lever down ( ). (If you move the lever down, the cruise system will turn on)
- Turn the ignition off.

If you press the O (CANCEL) button once, the set speed limit will cancel, but it will not turn the system off. If you wish to reset the speed limit, move the lever up (to RES+) or down (to SET-) on your steering wheel to your desired speed.

■ Normal vision



■ Supervision



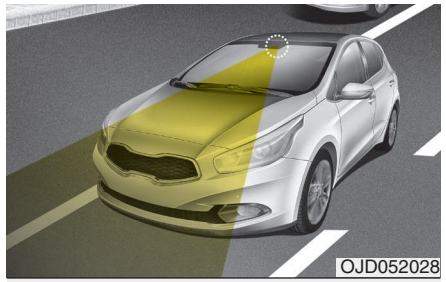
OJD052033/OJD052046

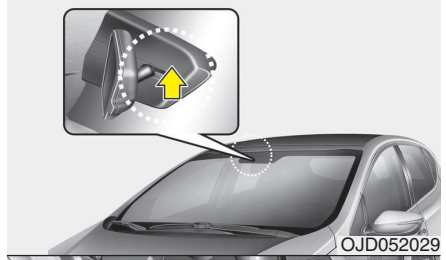
⚠ CAUTION

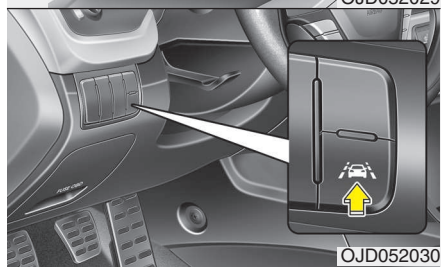
The "---" indicator will blink if there is a problem with speed limit control system.
If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:52 PM Page 59

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING SYSTEM (LDWS) (IF EQUIPPED)


OJD052028

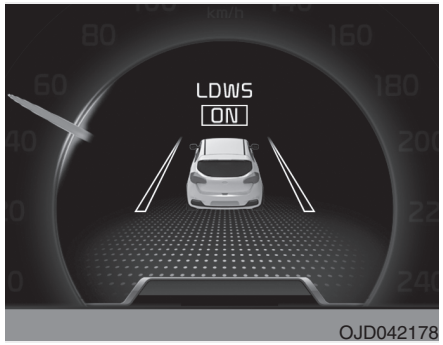

OJD052029


OJD052030

This system detects the lane with the sensor at the front windshield and warns you when your vehicle leaves the lane.

⚠ WARNING

- **The LDWS does not make the vehicle change lanes. It is the driver's responsibility to always check the road conditions.**
- **Do not turn the steering wheel suddenly, when the LDWS warns you that your vehicle is leaving the lane.**
- **If the sensor can not detect the lane or if the vehicle speed does not exceed 60km/h, the LDWS won't warn you even though the vehicle leaves the lane.**
- **If your vehicle has window tint or other types of coating on the front windshield, the LDWS may not work properly.**
- **Do not let water or any kind of liquid come in contact with the LDWS sensor.**
- **Do not remove the LDWS parts and do not affect the sensor by a strong impact.**
- **Do not put objects that reflect light on the dash board.**
- **Always check road conditions because you may not hear the warning chime because of audio and external conditions.**



OJD042178

To operate the LDWS, press the switch with the ignition in the ON position. The indicator illuminates on the cluster. To cancel the LDWS, press the switch again.

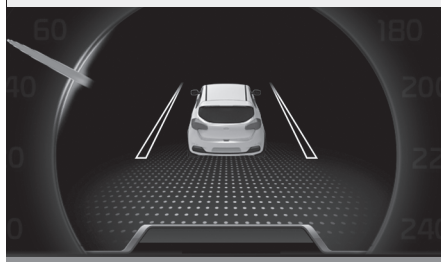
JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:52 PM Page 60

• When the sensor detects the lane line



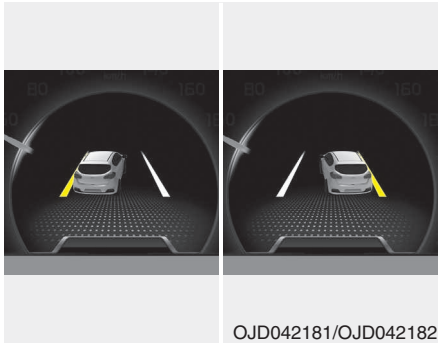
OJD042180

• When the sensor doesn't detect the lane line



OJD042179

If your vehicle leaves the lane when the LDWS is operating and vehicle speed exceeds 60km/h, the warning operates as follows:



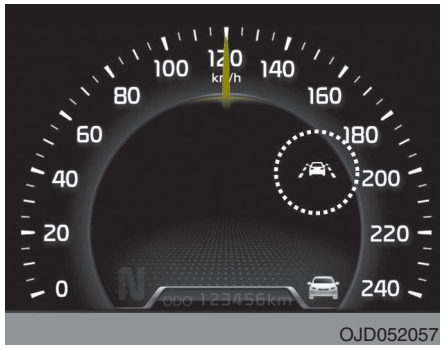
OJD042181/OJD042182

1. Visual warning

If you leave the lane, the lane you leave on the LCD display blinks yellow with 0.8 second of interval.

2. Auditory warning

If you leave the lane, the warning sound operates with 0.8 second of interval.



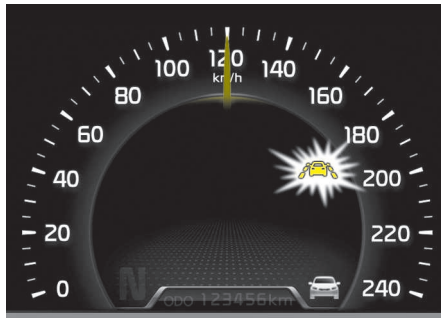
OJD052057

If you change the display mode of trip computer while the LDWS is ON, the symbol of the LDWS will display like a picture.

The color of symbol will change depend on the condition of LDWS system.

- White color : It means the sensor does not detect the lane line.
- Green color : It means the sensor detects the lane line.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:52 PM Page 61



OJD052056

Warning indicator

If the LDWS FAIL warning indicator comes on (yellow indicator), the LDWS is not working properly. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

The LDWS does not operate when:

- The driver turns on the turn signal to change lane.
  But, when the hazard warning flasher is operating, the LDWS operates normally.
- Driving on the lane line.

✻ NOTICE

To change lane, operate the turn signal switch, then change the lane.

The LDWS may not warn you even if the vehicle leaves the lane, or may warn you even if the vehicle does not leave the lane when:

- The lane is not visible due to snow, rain, stain, a puddle or many other things.
- The brightness of the outside changes suddenly.
- Not turning on the headlight even at night or in the tunnel.
- Difficult to distinguish the color of the lane from the road.
- Driving on a steep grade or a curve.
- Light reflects from the water on the road.
- The lens or windshield is stained with foreign matter.
- The sensor can not detect the lane because of fog, heavy rain or heavy snow.
- The surrounding temperature of the inside rear view mirror is high due to a direct ray of light.
- The lane is very wide or narrow.
- The lane line is damaged or indistinct.
- The shadow is on the lane line by a median strip.
- There is a mark similar to a lane line.
- There is a boundary structure.
- The distance from vehicle ahead is very short or the vehicle ahead hides the lane line.
- The vehicle shakes heavily.
- The lane number increases or decreases or the lane lines are crossing complicatedly.
- Putting something on the dashboard.
- Driving with the sun in front of you.
- Driving in areas under construction.
- The lane line is more than two in either side (Left/Right).

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:52 PM Page 62

ECONOMICAL OPERATION

Your vehicle's fuel economy depends mainly on your style of driving, where you drive and when you drive.

Each of these factors affects how many kilometers (miles) you can get from a liter (gallon) of fuel. To operate your vehicle as economically as possible, use the following driving suggestions to help save money in both fuel and repairs:

- Drive smoothly. Accelerate at a moderate rate. Do not make "jack-rabbit" starts or full-throttle shifts and maintain a steady cruising speed. Do not race between stoplights. Try to adjust your speed to the traffic so you do not have to change speeds unnecessarily. Avoid heavy traffic whenever possible. Always maintain a safe distance from other vehicles so you can avoid unnecessary braking. This also reduces brake wear.
- Drive at a moderate speed. The faster you drive, the more fuel your vehicle uses. Driving at a moderate speed, especially on the highway, is one of the most effective ways to reduce fuel consumption.
- Do not "ride" the brake or clutch pedal. This can increase fuel consumption and also increase wear on these components. In addition, driving with your foot resting on the brake pedal may cause the brakes to overheat, which reduces their effectiveness and may lead to more serious consequences.
- Take care of your tires. Keep them inflated to the recommended pressure. Incorrect inflation, either too much or too little, results in unnecessary tire wear. Check the tire pressures at least once a month.
- Be sure that the wheels are aligned correctly. Improper alignment can result from hitting curbs or driving too fast over irregular surfaces. Poor alignment causes faster tire wear and may also result in other problems as well as greater fuel consumption.
- Keep your vehicle in good condition. For better fuel economy and reduced maintenance costs, maintain your vehicle in accordance with the maintenance schedule. If you drive your vehicle in severe conditions, more frequent maintenance is required.
- Keep your vehicle clean. For maximum service, your vehicle should be kept clean and free of corrosive materials. It is especially important that mud, dirt, ice, etc. not be allowed to accumulate on the underside of the vehicle. This extra weight can result in increased fuel consumption and also contribute to corrosion.
- Travel lightly. Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle. Weight reduces fuel economy.
- Do not let the engine idle longer than necessary. If you are waiting (and not in traffic), turn off your engine and restart only when you're ready to go.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:52 PM Page 63

- Remember, your vehicle does not require extended warm-up. After the engine has started, allow the engine to run for 10 to 20 seconds prior to placing the vehicle in gear. In very cold weather, however, give your engine a slightly longer warm-up period.
- Do not "lug" or "over-rev" the engine. Lugging is driving too slowly in too high a gear resulting engine bucking. If this happens, shift to a lower gear. Over-revving is racing the engine beyond its safe limit. This can be avoided by shifting at the recommended speeds.
- Use your air conditioning sparingly. The air conditioning system is operated by engine power so your fuel economy is reduced when you use it.
- Open windows at high speeds can reduce fuel economy.
- Fuel economy is less in crosswinds and headwinds. To help offset some of this loss, slow down when driving in these conditions.

Keeping a vehicle in good operating condition is important both for economy and safety. We recommend in general that the vehicle be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Engine off during motion

Never turn the engine off to coast down hills or anytime the vehicle is in motion. The power steering and power brakes will not function properly without the engine running. Instead, keep the engine on and downshift to an appropriate gear for engine braking effect. In addition, turning off the ignition while driving could engage the steering wheel lock (if equipped) resulting in loss of vehicle steering which could cause serious injury or death.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:52 PM Page 64

SPECIAL DRIVING CONDITIONS

Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving conditions are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud, sand, or similar hazards, follow these suggestions:

- Drive cautiously and allow extra distance for braking.
- Avoid sudden braking or steering.
- When braking with non-ABS brakes pump the brake pedal with a light up-and-down motion until the vehicle is stopped.

⚠ WARNING - ABS

Do not pump the brake pedal on a vehicle equipped with ABS.

- If stalled in snow, mud, or sand, use second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid spinning the drive wheels.
- Use sand, rock salt, tire chains, or other non-slip material under the drive wheels to provide traction when stalled in ice, snow, or mud.

⚠ WARNING - Downshifting

Downshifting with an automatic transaxle, while driving on slippery surfaces can cause an accident. The sudden change in tire speed could cause the tires to skid. Be careful when downshifting on slippery surfaces.

Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between 1 (First) and R (Reverse) in vehicles equipped with a manual transaxle or R (Reverse) and any forward gear in vehicles equipped with an automatic transaxle. Do not race the engine, and spin the wheels as little as possible. If you are still stuck after a few tries, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid engine overheating and possible damage to the transaxle.

⚠ CAUTION

Prolonged rocking may cause engine over-heating, transaxle damage or failure, and tire damage.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:52 PM Page 65

⚠ WARNING - Spinning tires

Do not spin the wheels, especially at speeds more than 56 km/h (35 mph). Spinning the wheels at high speeds when the vehicle is stationary could cause a tire to overheat which could result in tire damage that may injure bystanders.

✻ NOTICE

The ESC system should be turned OFF prior to rocking the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward or backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.

Smooth cornering

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration. If you follow these suggestions, tire wear will be held to a minimum.

Driving at night

Because night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight, here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, as it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there may not be any street lights.
- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other driver's headlights.
- Keep your headlights clean and properly aimed on vehicles not equipped with the automatic headlight aiming feature. Dirty or improperly aimed headlights will make it much more difficult to see at night.
- Avoid staring directly at the headlights of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it will take several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.

Driving in the rain

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous, especially if you're not prepared for the slick pavement. Here are a few things to consider when driving in the rain:

- A heavy rainfall will make it harder to see and will increase the distance needed to stop your vehicle, so slow down.
- Keep your windshield wiping equipment in good shape. Replace your windshield wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windshield.
- If your tires are not in good condition, making a quick stop on wet pavement can cause a skid and possibly lead to an accident. Be sure your tires are in good shape.
- Turn on your headlights to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles can affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.
- If you believe you may have gotten your brakes wet, apply them lightly while driving until normal braking operation returns.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:52 PM Page 66

Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is no higher than the bottom of the wheel hub. Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because brake performance may be affected.
After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times while the vehicle is moving slowly.

Driving off-road

Drive carefully off-road because your vehicle may be damaged by rocks or roots of trees. Become familiar with the off-road conditions where you are going to drive before you begin driving.

Highway driving

Tires

Adjust the tire inflation pressures to specification. Low tire inflation pressures will result in overheating and possible failure of the tires.

Avoid using worn or damaged tires which may result in reduced traction or tire failure.

✻ NOTICE

Never exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure shown on the tires.

⚠ WARNING

- **Underinflated or overinflated tires can cause poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tire failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. Always check the tires for proper inflation before driving. For proper tire pressures, refer to chapter 8, "Tires and wheels".**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Driving on tires with no or insufficient tread is dangerous. Worn-out tires can result in loss of vehicle control, collisions, injury, and even death. Worn-out tires should be replaced as soon as possible and should never be used for driving. Always check the tire tread before driving your vehicle. For further information and tread limits, refer to chapter 7, "Tires and wheels".**

Fuel, engine coolant and engine oil

High speed travel consumes more fuel than urban motoring. Do not forget to check both engine coolant and engine oil.

Drive belt

A loose or damaged drive belt may result in overheating of the engine.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:52 PM Page 67

WINTER DRIVING



Severe weather conditions in the winter result in greater wear and other problems. To minimize the problems of winter driving, you should follow these suggestions:

Snowy or Icy conditions

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to use snow tires or to install tire chains on your tires. If snow tires are needed, it is necessary to select tires equivalent in size and type of the original equipment tires. Failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle. Furthermore, speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are potentially very hazardous practices.
During deceleration, use engine braking to the fullest extent. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause skids to occur. You need to keep sufficient distance between the vehicle in operation in front and your vehicle. Also, apply the brake gently. It should be noted that installing tire chains on the tire will provide a greater driving force, but will not prevent side skids.

✻ NOTICE

Tire chains are not legal in all countries. Check the country laws before fitting tire chains.

Snow tires

If you mount snow tires on your vehicle, make sure they are radial tires of the same size and load range as the original tires. Mount snow tires on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. Keep in mind that the traction provided by snow tires on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tires. You should drive cautiously even when the roads are clear. Check with the tire dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

⚠ WARNING - Snow tire size

Snow tires should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tires. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.

Do not install studded tires without first checking local, state and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:52 PM Page 68



Tire chains

Since the sidewalls of radial tires are thinner, they can be damaged by mounting some types of snow chains on them. Therefore, the use of snow tires is recommended instead of snow chains. Do not mount tire chains on vehicles equipped with aluminum wheels; snow chains may cause damage to the wheels. If snow chains must be used, use wire-type chains with a thickness of less than 15 mm (0.59 in). Damage to your vehicle caused by improper snow chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturers warranty.

Install tire chains only on the front tires.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Make sure the snow chains are the correct size and type for your tires. Incorrect snow chains can cause damage to the vehicle body and suspension and may not be covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty. Also, the snow chain connecting hooks may be damaged from contacting vehicle components causing the snow chains to come loose from the tire. Make sure the snow chains are SAE class "S" certified.***
- ***Always check chain installation for proper mounting after driving approximately 0.5 to 1 km (0.3 to 0.6 miles) to ensure safe mounting. Retighten or remount the chains if they are loose.***
- ***If your vehicle has 225/45R17 or 225/40ZR18 size tires do not use tire chain; they can damage your vehicle (wheel, suspension and body).***

Chain installation

When installing chains, follow the manufacturer's instructions and mount them as tightly as you can. Drive slowly with chains installed. If you hear the chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and tighten them. If they still make contact, slow down until it stops. Remove the chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

⚠ WARNING
- Mounting chains

When mounting snow chains, park the vehicle on level ground away from traffic. Turn on the vehicle Hazard Warning flashers and place a triangular emergency warning device behind the vehicle if available. Always place the vehicle in P (Park), apply the parking brake and turn off the engine before installing snow chains.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:52 PM Page 69

⚠ WARNING - Tire chains

- **The use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.**
- **Do not exceed 30 km/h (20 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.**
- **Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, sharp turns, and other road hazards, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or locked-wheel braking.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Chains that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body and wheels.***
- ***Stop driving and retighten the chains any time you hear them hitting the vehicle.***

Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant

Your vehicle is delivered with high quality ethylene glycol coolant in the cooling system. It is the only type of coolant that should be used because it helps prevent corrosion in the cooling system, lubricates the water pump and prevents freezing. Be sure to replace or replenish your coolant in accordance with the maintenance schedule. Before winter, have your coolant tested to assure that its freezing point is sufficient for the temperatures anticipated during the winter.

Check battery and cables

Winter puts additional burdens on the battery system. Visually inspect the battery and cables as described in chapter 7. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary

In some climates it is recommended that a lower viscosity "winter weight" oil be used during cold weather. See chapter 8 for recommendations. If you aren't sure what weight oil you should use, we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.

Check spark plugs and ignition system

Inspect your spark plugs as described in chapter 7 and replace them if necessary. Also check all ignition wiring and components to be sure they are not cracked, worn or damaged in any way.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:52 PM Page 70

To keep locks from freezing

To keep the locks from freezing, squirt an approved de-icer fluid or glycerine into the key opening. If a lock is covered with ice, squirt it with an approved de-icing fluid to remove the ice. If the lock is frozen internally, you may be able to thaw it out by using a heated key. Handle the heated key with care to avoid injury.

Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system

To keep the water in the window washer system from freezing, add an approved window washer anti-freeze solution in accordance with instructions on the container. Window washer anti-freeze is available from an authorized Kia dealer and most auto parts outlets. Do not use engine coolant or other types of anti-freeze as these may damage the paint finish.

Don't let your parking brake freeze

Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily while you put the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.

Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath

Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in severe winter conditions where this may happen, you should periodically check underneath the vehicle to be sure the movement of the front wheels and the steering components is not obstructed.

Carry emergency equipment

Depending on the severity of the weather, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tire chains, tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, shovel, jumper cables, window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, blanket, etc.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:52 PM Page 71

TRAILER TOWING

If you are considering towing with your vehicle, you should first check with your country's Department of Motor Vehicles to determine their legal requirements.

Since laws vary the requirements for towing trailers, cars, or other types of vehicles or apparatus may differ. We recommend that you ask an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Towing a trailer

If you don't use the correct equipment and/or drive improperly, you can lose control when you pull a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well - or even at all. You and your passengers could be seriously or fatally injured. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this chapter.

⚠ WARNING - Weight limits

Before towing, make sure the total trailer weight, GCW (gross combination weight), GVW (gross vehicle weight), GAW (gross axle weight) and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.

✻ NOTICE - For Europe

- **The technically permissible maximum load on the rear axle(s) may be exceeded by not more than 15 % and the technically permissible maximum laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by not more than 10 % or 100 kg (220.4 lbs), whichever value is lower. In this case, do not exceed 100 km/h (62.1 mph) for vehicle of category M1 or 80 km/h (49.7 mph) for vehicle of category N1.**
- **When towing a trailer, the additional load imposed at the trailer coupling device may cause the rear tire maximum load ratings to be exceeded, but not by more than 15%. In such a case, do not exceed 100km/h, and the rear tire pressure should be at least 20 kPa(0.2 bar) above the tire pressure(s) as recommended for normal use (i.e. without a trailer attached).**

⚠ CAUTION

Pulling a trailer improperly can damage your vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by your warranty. To pull a trailer correctly, follow the advice in this chapter.

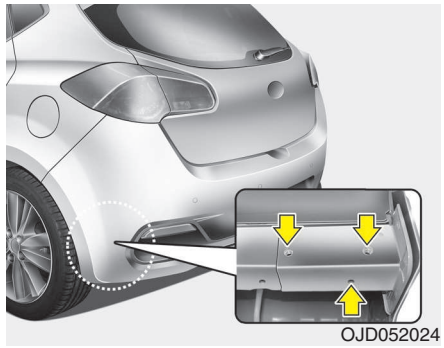
Your vehicle can tow a trailer. To identify what the vehicle trailering capacity is for your vehicle, you should read the information in “Weight of the trailer” that appears later in this chapter.

Remember that trailering is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, durability, and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering requires correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

This chapter contains many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. Please read this chapter carefully before you pull a trailer.

Load-pulling components such as the engine, transaxle, wheel assemblies, and tires are forced to work harder against the load of the added weight. The engine is required to operate at relatively higher speeds and under greater loads. This additional burden generates extra heat. The trailer also considerably adds wind resistance, increasing the pulling requirements.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:53 PM Page 72


OJD052024

Hitches

It's important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by, and rough roads are a few reasons why you'll need the right hitch. Here are some rules to follow:

- Do you have to make any holes in the body of your vehicle when you install a trailer hitch? If you do, then be sure to seal the holes later when you remove the hitch.

  If you do not seal them, deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from your exhaust can get into your vehicle, as well as dirt and water.
- The bumpers on your vehicle are not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches to them. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.
- A Kia accessory trailer hitch is available at an authorized Kia dealer.

Safety chains

You should always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer so that the tongue will not drop to the road if it becomes separated from the hitch.

Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your trailer. And, never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:53 PM Page 73

Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, make sure it conforms to your country's regulations and that it is properly installed and operating correctly.

If your trailer weight exceeds the maximum allowed weight without trailer brakes, then the trailer will also require its own brakes as well. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you'll be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly.

- Do not tap into or modify your vehicle's brake system.

⚠ WARNING - Trailer brakes

Do not use a trailer with its own brakes unless you are absolutely certain that you have properly set up the brake system. This is not a task for amateurs. Use an experienced, competent trailer shop for this work.

Driving with a trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you must get to know your trailer. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now a good deal longer and not nearly so responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check the trailer hitch and platform, safety chains, electrical connector(s), lights, tires and mirror adjustment. If the trailer has electric brakes, start your vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This lets you check your electrical connection at the same time.

During your trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lights and any trailer brakes are still working.

Following distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

You'll need more passing distance up ahead when you're towing a trailer. And, because of the increased vehicle length, you'll need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

Backing up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, just move your hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making turns

When you're turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer won't strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees, or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:53 PM Page 74

Turn signals when towing a trailer

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle has to have a different turn signal flasher and extra wiring. The green arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly connected, the trailer lights will also flash to alert other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes, or stop.

When towing a trailer, the green arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signals when, in fact, they are not. It is important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working. You must also check the lights every time you disconnect and then reconnect the wires.

Do not connect a trailer lighting system directly to your vehicle's lighting system. Use only an approved trailer wiring harness.

An authorized Kia dealer can assist you in installing the wiring harness.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to use an approved trailer wiring harness could result in damage to the vehicle electrical system and/or personal injury.

Driving on grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer operate efficiently.

On a long uphill grade, shift down and reduce your speed to around 70 km/h (45 mph) to reduce the possibility of engine and transaxle overheating.

If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes and you have an automatic transaxle, you should drive in D (Drive) when towing a trailer.

Operating your vehicle in D (Drive) when towing a trailer will minimize heat build up and extend the life of your transaxle.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When towing a trailer on steep grades (in excess of 6%) pay close attention to the engine coolant temperature gauge to ensure the engine does not overheat.***

  If the coolant temperature red warning light illuminates or the coolant temperature gauge moves towards "130", pull over and stop as soon as it is safe to do so, and allow the engine to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the engine has cooled sufficiently.
- ***You must decide driving speed depending on trailer weight and uphill grade to reduce the possibility of engine and transaxle overheating.***

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:53 PM Page 75

Parking on hills

Generally, if you have a trailer attached to your vehicle, you should not park your vehicle on a hill. People can be seriously or fatally injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged if unexpectedly roll down hill.

⚠ WARNING - Parking on a hill

Parking your vehicle on a hill with a trailer attached could cause serious injury or death, should the trailer break loose.

However, if you ever have to park your trailer on a hill, here is how to do it:

1. Pull the vehicle into the parking space. Turn the steering wheel in the direction of the curb (right if headed down hill, left if headed up hill).
2. If the vehicle has a manual transaxle, place the car in neutral. If the vehicle has an automatic transaxle, place the car in P (Park).
3. Set the parking brake and shut off the vehicle.
4. Place chocks under the trailer wheels on the down hill side of the wheels.
5. Start the vehicle, hold the brakes, shift to neutral, release the parking brake and slowly release the brakes until the trailer chocks absorb the load.
6. Reapply the brakes, reapply the parking brake and shift the vehicle to R (Reverse) for manual transaxle or P (Park) for automatic transaxle.
7. Shut off the vehicle and release the vehicle brakes but leave the parking brake set.

⚠ WARNING - Parking brake

It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the parking brake is not firmly set.

If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be seriously or fatally injured.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:53 PM Page 76

When you are ready to leave after parking on a hill

1. With the manual transaxle in Neutral or automatic transaxle in P (Park), apply your brakes and hold the brake pedal down while you:
   - Start your engine;
   - Shift into gear; and
   - Release the parking brake.
2. Slowly remove your foot from the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Maintenance when trailer towing

Your vehicle will need service more often when you regularly pull a trailer. Important items to pay particular attention to include engine oil, automatic transaxle fluid, axle lubricant and cooling system fluid. Brake condition is another important item to frequently check. Each item is covered in this manual, and the Index will help you find them quickly. If you're trailering, it is a good idea to review these chapters before you start your trip.

Do not forget to also maintain your trailer and hitch. Follow the maintenance schedule that accompanied your trailer and check it periodically. Preferably, conduct the check at the start of each day's driving. Most importantly, all hitch nuts and bolts should be tight.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Due to higher load during trailer usage, overheating might occur in hot days or during uphill driving. If the coolant gauge indicates over-heating, switch off the air conditioner and stop the vehicle in a safe area to cool down the engine.***
- ***When towing check transaxle fluid more frequently.***
- ***If your vehicle is not equipped with an air conditioner, you should install a condenser fan to improve engine performance when towing a trailer.***

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:53 PM Page 77

If you do decide to pull a trailer

Here are some important points if you decide to pull a trailer:

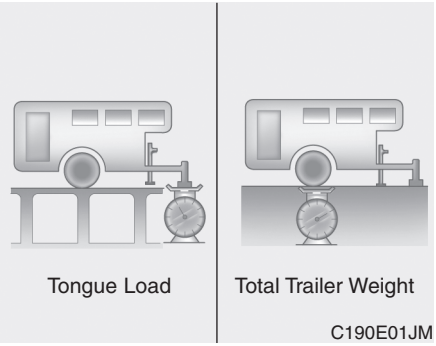
- Consider using a sway control. You can ask a hitch dealer about sway control.
- Do not do any towing with your car during its first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) in order to allow the engine to properly break in. Failure to heed this caution may result in serious engine or transaxle damage.
- When towing a trailer, we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer on additional requirements such as a towing kit, etc.
- Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (less than 100 km/h (60 mph)).
- On a long uphill grade, do not exceed 70 km/h (45 mph) or the posted towing speed limit, whichever is lower.
- The chart contains important considerations that have to do with weight:

For Europe

Item \ Engine		Gasoline 1.4L	Gasoline 1.6L MPI		Gasoline 1.6L GDI		Gasoline 1.6L T-GDI	Diesel 1.4L	Diesel 1.6L	
		M/T	M/T	A/T	M/T	A/T (DCT)	M/T	M/T	M/T	A/T
Maximum trailer weight kg (lbs.)	Without brake System	600 (1,323)	600 (1,323)	600 (1,323)	600 (1,323)	600 (1,323)	600 (1,323)	650 (1,433)	650 (1,433)	650 (1,433)
	With brake System	1,200 (2,646)	1,300 (2,866)	1200 (2,646)	1,400 (3,086)	1,300 (2,866)	1,400 (3,086)	1,500 (3,307)	1,500 (3,307)	1,300 (2,866)
Maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device kg (lbs.)		60 (132)	60 (132)	60 (132)	60 (132)	60 (132)	60 (132)	75 (165)	75 (165)	75 (165)
Recommended distance from rear wheel center to coupling point mm (inch)		3 Door and 5 Door : 859 (33.8) Wagon : 1,055 (41.54)								

M/T : Manual transaxle
A/T : Automatic transaxle
DCT : Double clutch transmission

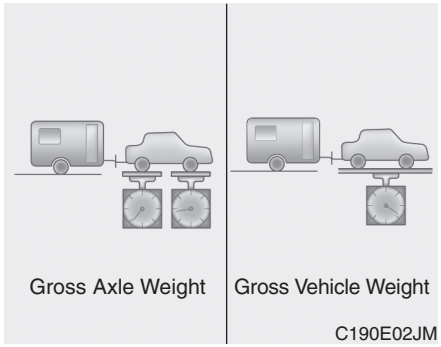
JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:53 PM Page 78



Weight of the trailer

What is the maximum safe weight of a trailer? It should never weigh more than the maximum trailer weight with trailer brakes. But even that can be too heavy.

It depends on how you plan to use your trailer. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how often your vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. The ideal trailer weight can also depend on any special equipment that you have on your vehicle.



Weight of the trailer tongue

The tongue load of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total gross vehicle weight (GVW) of your vehicle. This weight includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo you may carry in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. And if you will tow a trailer, you must add the tongue load to the GVW because your vehicle will also be carrying that weight.

The trailer tongue should weigh a maximum of 10% of the total loaded trailer weight, within the limits of the maximum permissible trailer tongue load. After you've loaded your trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they aren't, you may be able to correct them simply by moving some items around in the trailer.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:53 PM Page 79

⚠ WARNING - Trailer

- **Never load a trailer with more weight in the rear than in the front. The front should be loaded with approximately 60% of the total trailer load; the rear should be loaded with approximately 40% of the total trailer load.**
- **Never exceed the maximum weight limits of the trailer or trailer towing equipment. Improper loading can result in damage to your vehicle and/or personal injury. Check weights and loading at a commercial scale or highway patrol office equipped with scales.**
- **An improperly loaded trailer can cause loss of vehicle control.**

✻ NOTICE

With increasing altitude the engine performance decreases. From 1.000 m above sea level and for every 1.000 m thereafter 10% of vehicle/trailer weight (trailer weighter + gross vehicle weight) must be deducted.

JD eng 5.QXP 3/4/2015 2:53 PM Page 80

VEHICLE WEIGHT

This chapter will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of the vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's specifications and the certification label:

Base curb weight

This is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle curb weight

This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

Cargo weight

This figure includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

GAW (Gross axle weight)

This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

GAWR (Gross axle weight rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the certification label.
The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

GVW (Gross vehicle weight)

This is the Base Curb Weight plus actual Cargo Weight plus passengers.

GVWR (Gross vehicle weight rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the certification label.

Overloading

⚠ WARNING - Vehicle weight

The gross axle weight rating (GAWR) and the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) for your vehicle are on the certification label attached to the driver's (or front passenger's) door. Exceeding these ratings can cause an accident or vehicle damage. You can calculate the weight of your load by weighing the items (and people) before putting them in the vehicle. Be careful not to overload your vehicle.

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 1

What to do in an emergency

Road warning 6-2
- Hazard warning flasher 6-2

In case of an emergency while driving 6-3
- If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing 6-3
- If you have a flat tire while driving 6-3
- If engine stalls while driving 6-3

If the engine will not start 6-4
- If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly 6-4
- If engine turns over normally but does not start 6-4

Emergency starting 6-5
- Jump starting 6-5
- Push-starting 6-7

If the engine overheats 6-8

If you have a flat tire (with spare tire) 6-9
- Jack and tools 6-9
- Removing and storing the spare tire 6-10
- Changing tires 6-10
- Wheel nut tightening torque 6-14
- Jack label 6-17
- EC Declaration of Conformity for Jack 6-18

If you have a flat tire (with Tire Mobility Kit) 6-19
- Introduction 6-19
- Components of the Tire Mobility Kit 6-20
- Using the Tire Mobility Kit 6-21
- Distributing the sealant 6-22
- Producing the tire inflation pressure 6-22
- Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit 6-23
- Technical Data 6-23

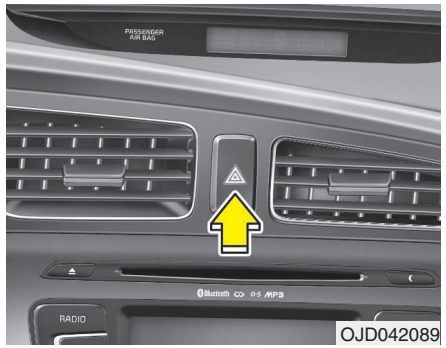
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 6-24
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction indicator 6-26
- Changing a tire with TPMS 6-27

Towing 6-29
- Towing service 6-29
- Removable towing hook 6-30
- Emergency towing 6-30

Emergency commodity 6-33
- Fire extinguisher 6-33
- First aid kit 6-33
- Triangle reflector 6-33
- Tire pressure gauge 6-33

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 2

ROAD WARNING



Hazard warning flasher

The hazard warning flasher serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.

It should be used whenever emergency repairs are being made or when the vehicle is stopped near the edge of a roadway.

Press the flasher switch with the ignition switch in any position. The flasher switch is located in the center facia switch panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.
- The hazard warning flasher should always be on while the vehicle is being towed.

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 3

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY WHILE DRIVING

If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing

- If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing, set the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position and then push the vehicle to a safe place.
- If your vehicle has a manual transaxle not equipped with a ignition lock switch, the vehicle can move forward by shifting to the 2(Second) or 3(Third) gear and then turning the starter without depressing the clutch pedal.

If you have a flat tire while driving

If a tire goes flat while you are driving:

1. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle slow down while driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road as this may cause a loss of control. When the vehicle has slowed to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on firm, level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.
2. When the vehicle is stopped, turn on your emergency hazard flashers, set the parking brake and put the transaxle in P (automatic transaxle) or reverse (manual transaxle).
3. Have all passengers get out of the vehicle. Be sure they all get out on the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.
4. When changing a flat tire, follow the instruction provided later in this chapter.

If engine stalls while driving

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
2. Turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Try to start the engine again. If your vehicle does not start, we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 4

IF THE ENGINE WILL NOT START

If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly

1. If your vehicle has an automatic transaxle, be sure the shift lever is in N (Neutral) or P (Park) and the emergency brake is set.
2. Check the battery connections to be sure they are clean and tight.
3. Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the battery is discharged.
4. Check the starter connections to be sure they are securely tightened.
5. Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. See instructions for "Jump starting".

⚠ WARNING

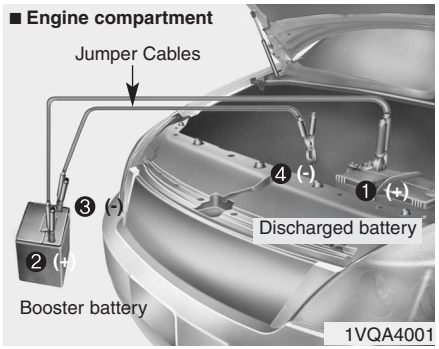
If the engine does not start, do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. This could result in a collision or cause other damage. In addition, push or pull starting may cause the catalytic converter (if equipped) to be overloaded and create a fire hazard.

If engine turns over normally but does not start

1. Check fuel level.
2. With the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position, check all connectors at ignition, coil and spark plugs. Reconnect any that may be disconnected or loose.
3. Check the fuel line in the engine compartment.
4. If the engine still does not start, we recommend that you call an authorized Kia dealer.

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 5

EMERGENCY STARTING



Connect cables in numerical order and disconnect in reverse order.

Jump starting

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Therefore, to avoid harm to yourself or damage to your vehicle or battery, follow the jump starting procedures. If in doubt, we strongly recommend that you have a competent technician or towing service jump start your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

Use only a 12-volt jumper system. You can damage a 12-volt starting motor, ignition system, and other electrical parts beyond repair by use of a 24-volt power supply (either two 12-volt batteries in series or a 24-volt motor generator set).

⚠ WARNING - Battery

Never attempt to check the electrolyte level of the battery as this may cause the battery to rupture or explode causing serious injury.

⚠ WARNING - Battery

- **Keep all flames or sparks away from the battery. The battery produces hydrogen gas which may explode if exposed to flame or sparks.**
  If these instructions are not followed exactly, serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle may occur! If you are not sure how to follow this procedure, seek qualified assistance. Automobile batteries contain sulfuric acid. This is poisonous and highly corrosive. When jump starting, wear protective glasses and be careful not to get acid on yourself, your clothing or on the vehicle.
- **Do not attempt to jump start the vehicle if the discharged battery is frozen or if the electrolyte level is low; the battery may rupture or explode.**
- **Do not allow the (+) and (-) jumper cables to touch. It may cause sparks.**
- **The battery may rupture or explode when you jump start with a low or frozen battery.**

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 6

Jump starting procedure

⚠ CAUTION - AGM battery (if equipped)

- ***Absorbent Glass Matt (AGM) batteries are maintenance-free and we recommend that the AGM batteries be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer. For charging your AGM battery, use only fully automatic battery chargers that are specially developed for AGM batteries.***
- ***When replacing the AGM battery, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorized Kia dealer.***
- ***Do not open or remove the cap on top of the battery. This may cause leaks of internal electrolyte that could result in severe injury.***
- ***If the AGM battery is reconnected or replaced, ISG function will not operate immediately.***

  If you want to use the ISG function, the battery sensor needs to be calibrated for approximately 4 hours with the ignition off.

✻ NOTICE

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.
To prevent personal injury or damage to both vehicles, adhere strictly to the following procedure.

1. Make sure the booster battery is 12-volt and that its negative terminal is grounded.
2. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, do not allow the vehicles to touch.
3. Turn off all unnecessary electrical loads.
4. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the illustration. First connect one end of a jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery (1), then connect the other end to the positive terminal on the booster battery (2). Proceed to connect one end of the other jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3), then the other end to a solid, stationary, metallic point (for example, the engine lifting bracket) away from the battery (4). Do not connect it to or near any part that moves when the engine is cranked. Make sure that there is no contact between the bodywork of the two vehicles; otherwise, there is the danger of short circuits.

   Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.

⚠ CAUTION - Battery cables

Do not connect the jumper cable from the negative terminal of the booster battery to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. This can cause the discharged battery to overheat and crack, releasing battery acid.

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 7

5. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and let it run at 2,000 rpm, then start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery. If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.

If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Push-starting

Your manual transaxle-equipped vehicle should not be push-started because it might damage the emission control system. Vehicles equipped with automatic transaxle cannot be push-started. Follow the directions in this chapter for "Jump-starting".

⚠ WARNING

Never tow a vehicle to start it because the sudden surge forward when the engine starts could cause a collision with the tow vehicle.

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 8

IF THE ENGINE OVERHEATS

If your temperature gauge indicates overheating, you will experience a loss of power, or hear loud pinging or knocking, the engine is probably too hot. If this happens, you should:

1. Pull off the road and stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Place the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) or neutral (manual transaxle) and set the parking brake. If the air conditioning is on, turn it off.
3. If engine coolant is running out under the vehicle or steam is coming out from the hood, stop the engine. Do not open the hood until the coolant has stopped running or the steaming has stopped. If there is no visible loss of engine coolant and no steam, leave the engine running and check to be sure the engine cooling fan is operating. If the fan is not running, turn the engine off.
4. Check to see if the water pump drive belt is missing. If it is not missing, check to see that it is tight. If the drive belt seems to be satisfactory, check for coolant leaking from the radiator, hoses or under the vehicle. (If the air conditioning had been in use, it is normal for cold water to be draining from it when you stop).

⚠ WARNING

While the engine is running, keep hair, hands and clothing away from moving parts such as the fan and drive belts to prevent injury.

5. If the water pump drive belt is broken or engine coolant is leaking out, stop the engine immediately and we recommend that you call an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. This can allow coolant to blow out of the opening and cause serious burns.

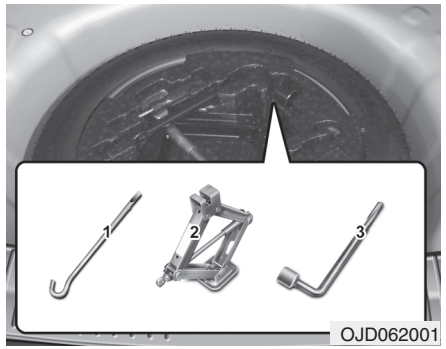
6. If you cannot find the cause of the overheating, wait until the engine temperature has returned to normal. Then, if coolant has been lost, carefully add coolant to the reservoir to bring the fluid level in the reservoir up to the halfway mark.
7. Proceed with caution, keeping alert for further signs of overheating. If overheating happens again, we recommend that you call an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

Serious loss of coolant indicates there is a leak in the cooling system and we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 9

IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TIRE (WITH SPARE TIRE, IF EQUIPPED)



Jack and tools

The jack, jack handle, wheel lug nut wrench are stored in the luggage compartment.

Pull up the luggage box cover to reach this equipment.

(1) Jack handle

(2) Jack

(3) Wheel lug nut wrench

Jacking instructions

The jack is provided for emergency tire changing only.

To prevent the jack from “rattling” while the vehicle is in motion, store it properly and fasten the jack screw fully.

Follow jacking instructions to reduce the possibility of personal injury.

⚠ WARNING - Changing tires

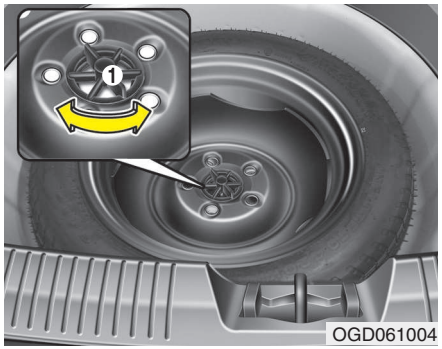
- **Never attempt vehicle repairs in the traffic lanes of a public road or highway.**
- **Always move the vehicle completely off the road and onto the shoulder before trying to change a tire. The jack should be used on firm level ground. If you cannot find a firm level place off the road, call a towing service company for assistance.**
- **Be sure to use the correct front and rear jacking positions on the vehicle; never use the bumpers or any other part of the vehicle for jacking support.**

(Continued)

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 10

(Continued)

- **The vehicle can easily roll off the jack causing serious injury or death.**
- **Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.**
- **Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is on the jack.**
- **Do not allow anyone to remain in the vehicle while it is on the jack.**
- **Make sure any children present are in a secure place away from the road and from the vehicle to be raised with the jack.**



Removing and storing the spare tire

Turn the tire hold-down wing bolt (1) counterclockwise.

Store the tire in the reverse order of removal.

To prevent the spare tire and tools from “rattling” while the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.



Changing tires

1. Park on a level surface and apply the parking brake firmly.
2. Shift the shift lever into R (Reverse) with manual transaxle or P (Park) with automatic transaxle.
3. Activate the hazard warning flasher.

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 11



OJD062003

4. Remove the wheel lug nut wrench, jack, jack handle, and spare tire from the vehicle.
5. Block both the front and rear of the wheel that is diagonally opposite the jack position.

⚠ WARNING - Changing a tire

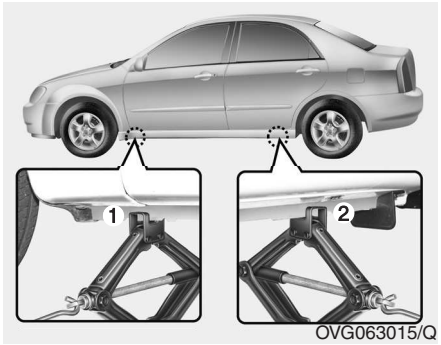
- **To prevent vehicle movement while changing a tire, always set the parking brake fully, and always block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed.**
- **We recommend that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.**



OJD062004

6. Loosen the wheel lug nuts counterclockwise one turn each, but do not remove any nut until the tire has been raised off the ground.

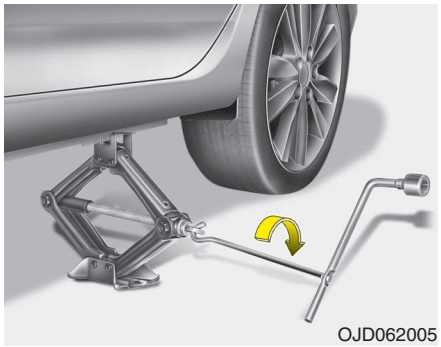
JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 12



OVG063015/Q

7. Place the jack at the front (1) or rear (2) jacking position closest to the tire you are changing. Place the jack at the designated locations under the frame. The jacking positions are plates welded to the frame with two tabs and a raised dot to index with the jack.

⚠ WARNING - Jack location
To reduce the possibility of injury, be sure to use only the jack provided with the vehicle and in the correct jack position; never use any other part of the vehicle for jack support.


OJD062005

8. Insert the jack handle into the jack and turn it clockwise, raising the vehicle until the tire just clears the ground. This measurement is approximately 30 mm (1.2 in). Before removing the wheel lug nuts, make sure the vehicle is stable and that there is no chance for movement or slippage.

9. Loosen the wheel nuts and remove them with your fingers. Slide the wheel off the studs and lay it flat so it cannot roll away. To put the wheel on the hub, pick up the spare tire, line up the holes with the studs and slide the wheel onto them. If this is difficult, tip the wheel slightly and get the top hole in the wheel lined up with the top stud. Then jiggle the wheel back and forth until the wheel can be slid over the other studs.

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 13

⚠ WARNING

- **Wheels and wheel covers may have sharp edges. Handle them carefully to avoid possible severe injury.**
- **Before putting the wheel into place, be sure that there is nothing on the hub or wheel (such as mud, tar, gravel, etc.) that interferes with the wheel from fitting solidly against the hub. If there is, remove it. If the contact of the mounting surface between the wheel and hub is not good, the wheel nuts could come loose and cause loss of a wheel. Loss of a wheel may result in losing control of the vehicle. This may cause serious injury or death.**

10. To reinstall the wheel, hold it on the studs, put the wheel nuts on the studs and tighten them finger tight. The nuts should be installed with their tapered small diameter ends directed inward. Jiggle the tire to be sure it is completely seated, then tighten the nuts as much as possible with your fingers again.
11. Lower the vehicle to the ground by turning the wheel nut wrench counterclockwise.



OGD061013

Then position the wrench as shown in the drawing and tighten the wheel nuts. Be sure the socket is seated completely over the nut. Do not stand on the wrench handle or use an extension pipe over the wrench handle. Go around the wheel tightening every nut following the numerical sequence shown in the image until they are all tight. Then double-check each nut for tightness. After changing wheels, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 14

Wheel nut tightening torque:

Steel wheel & aluminium alloy wheel:
9~11 kg.m (65~79 lb.ft)

If you have a tire gauge, remove the valve cap and check the air pressure. If the pressure is lower than recommended, drive slowly to the nearest service station and inflate to the correct pressure. If it is too high, adjust it until it is correct. Always reinstall the valve cap after checking or adjusting tire pressure. If the cap is not replaced, air may leak from the tire. If you lose a valve cap, buy another and install it as soon as possible.

After you have changed wheels, always secure the flat tire in its place and return the jack and tools to their proper storage locations.

⚠ CAUTION

Your vehicle has metric threads on the wheel studs and nuts. Make certain during wheel removal that the same nuts that were removed are reinstalled - or, if replaced, that nuts with metric threads and the same chamfer configuration are used. Installation of a non-metric thread nut on a metric stud or vice-versa will not secure the wheel to the hub properly and will damage the stud so that it must be replaced.

Note that most lug nuts do not have metric threads. Be sure to use extreme care in checking for thread style before installing aftermarket lug nuts or wheels. If in doubt, we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Wheel studs

If the studs are damaged, they may lose their ability to retain the wheel. This could lead to the loss of the wheel and a collision resulting in serious injuries.

To prevent the jack, jack handle, wheel lug nut wrench and spare tire from rattling while the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.

⚠ WARNING - Inadequate spare tire pressure

Check the inflation pressures as soon as possible after installing the spare tire. Adjust it to the specified pressure, if necessary. Refer to "Tires and wheels" in chapter 8.

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 15

Important - use of compact spare tire (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a compact spare tire. This compact spare tire takes up less space than a regular-size tire. This tire is smaller than a conventional tire and is designed for temporary use only.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***You should drive carefully when the compact spare is in use. The compact spare should be replaced by the proper conventional tire and rim at the first opportunity.***
- ***The operation of this vehicle is not recommended with more than one compact spare tire in use at the same time.***

⚠ WARNING

The compact spare tire is for emergency use only. Do not operate your vehicle on this compact spare at the speed over 80 km/h (50 mph). The original tire should be repaired or replaced as soon as possible to avoid failure of the spare possibly leading to personal injury or death.

The compact spare should be inflated to 420 kPa (60 psi).

✻ NOTICE

Check the inflation pressure after installing the spare tire. Adjust it to the specified pressure, as necessary.

When using a compact spare tire, observe the following precautions:

- Under no circumstances should you exceed 80 km/h (50 mph); a higher speed could damage the tire.
- Ensure that you drive slowly enough to avoid all hazards. Any road hazard, such as a pothole or debris, could seriously damage the compact spare.
- Any continuous road use of this tire could result in tire failure, loss of vehicle control, and possible personal injury.
- Do not exceed the vehicle's maximum load rating or the load-carrying capacity shown on the sidewall of the compact spare tire.
- Avoid driving over obstacles. The compact spare tire diameter is smaller than the diameter of a conventional tire and reduces the ground clearance approximately 25 mm (1 inch), which could result in damage to the vehicle.

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 16

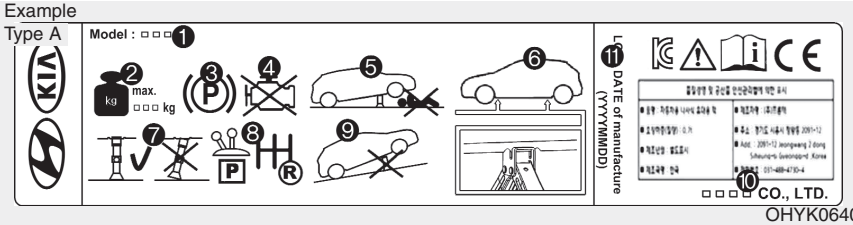
- Do not take this vehicle through an automatic car wash while the compact spare tire is installed.
- Do not use tire chains on the compact spare tire. Because of the smaller size, a tire chain will not fit properly. This could damage the vehicle and result in loss of the chain.
- The compact spare tire should not be installed on the front axle if the vehicle must be driven in snow or on ice.
- Do not use the compact spare tire on any other vehicle because this tire has been designed especially for your vehicle.
- The compact spare tire's tread life is shorter than a regular tire. Inspect your compact spare tire regularly and replace worn compact spare tires with the same size and design, mounted on the same wheel.
- The compact spare tire should not be used on any other wheels, nor should standard tires, snow tires, wheel covers or trim rings be used with the compact spare wheel. If such use is attempted, damage to these items or other car components may occur.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tire at a time.
- Do not tow a trailer while the compact spare tire is installed.

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 17

Jack label

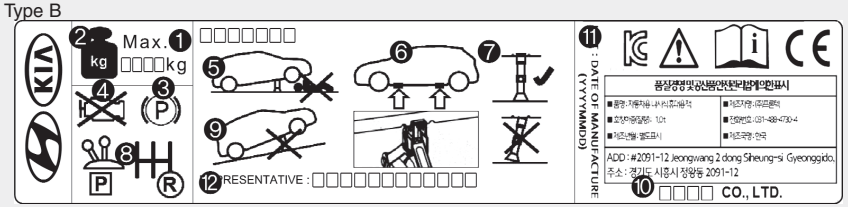
■ Example

■ Type A



OHYK064001

■ Type B



OHYK064005

■ Type C



OHYK064002

✻ The actual Jack label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration. For more detailed specifications, refer to the label attached to the jack.

1. Model Name
2. Maximum allowable load
3. When using the jack, set your parking brake.
4. When using the jack, stop the engine.
5. Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.
6. The designated locations under the frame
7. When supporting the vehicle, the base plate of jack must be vertical under the lifting point.
8. Shift into Reverse gear on vehicles with manual transaxle or move the shift lever to the P position on vehicles with automatic transaxle.
9. The jack should be used on firm level ground.
10. Jack manufacturer
11. Production date
12. Representative company and address

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 18

EC Declaration of Conformity for Jack

CE

EC Declaration of Conformity
according to EC Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC

We, **SAMKI IND. CO., LTD.**
22, Hyojuk3-Gil, Buk-Gu, Ulsan, Korea
declare under our sole responsibility that the product

Product : Jack Assembly
Type Designation(s) : Jack Assembly-600kg, Jack Assembly-700kg
Jack Assembly-800kg, Jack Assembly-1000kg
Jack Assembly-1200kg, Jack Assembly-1500kg
Serial No. : N/A
Year of Manufacture : 2013
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the following standard(s) or other normative document(s);

EN ISO12100 (2010)	Safety of machinery - General principles for design – Risk assessment and risk reduction
EN ISO12100-2/A1 (2009)	Safety of machinery - Basic concepts, general principles for design, Part 2 : Technical principles
EN 1494/A1 (2008)	Mobile or movable jacks and associated lifting equipment

following the provisions of Directive(s);

2006/42/EC	Directive on the approximation of the laws of Member States relating to machinery (OJ L157 Jun, 9, 2006)

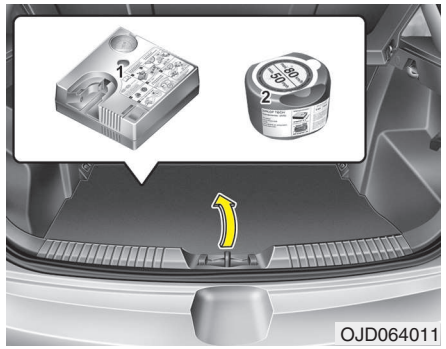
Ulsan , Korea / Jul .25 .2013 Hyun Duck, Cho President
(Place and date of issue)(name and signature or equivalent making of authorized person)

* T.C.F Compiling Person: **Safenet Limited (European Notified body : 1674)**
Denford Garage, Denford, Kettering Northants, NN14 4EQ, England

JACKDOC14S

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 19

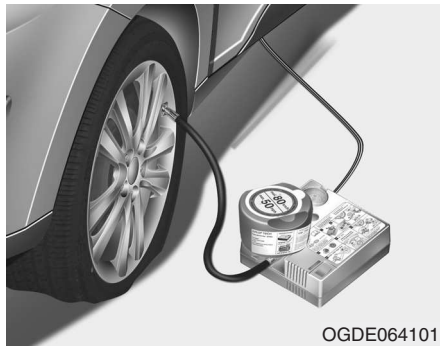
IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TIRE (WITH TIREMOBILITYKIT, IF EQUIPPED)



Please read the instructions before using the TireMobilityKit.

(1) Compressor

(2) Sealant bottle



Introduction

With the TireMobilityKit you stay mobile even after experiencing a tire puncture.

The system of compressor and sealing compound effectively and comfortably seals most punctures in a passenger car tire caused by nails or similar objects and reinflates the tire.

After you ensured that the tire is properly sealed you can drive cautiously on the tire (up to 200 km (120 miles)) at a max. speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) in order to reach a vehicle or tire dealer to have the tire replaced.

It is possible that some tires, especially with larger punctures or damage to the sidewall, cannot be sealed completely.

Air pressure loss in the tire may adversely affect tire performance.

For this reason, you should avoid abrupt steering or other driving maneuvers, especially if the vehicle is heavily loaded or if a trailer is in use.

The TireMobilityKit is not designed or intended as a permanent tire repair method and is to be used for one tire only.

This instruction shows you step by step how to temporarily seal the puncture simply and reliably.

Read the section "Notes on the safe use of the TireMobilityKit".

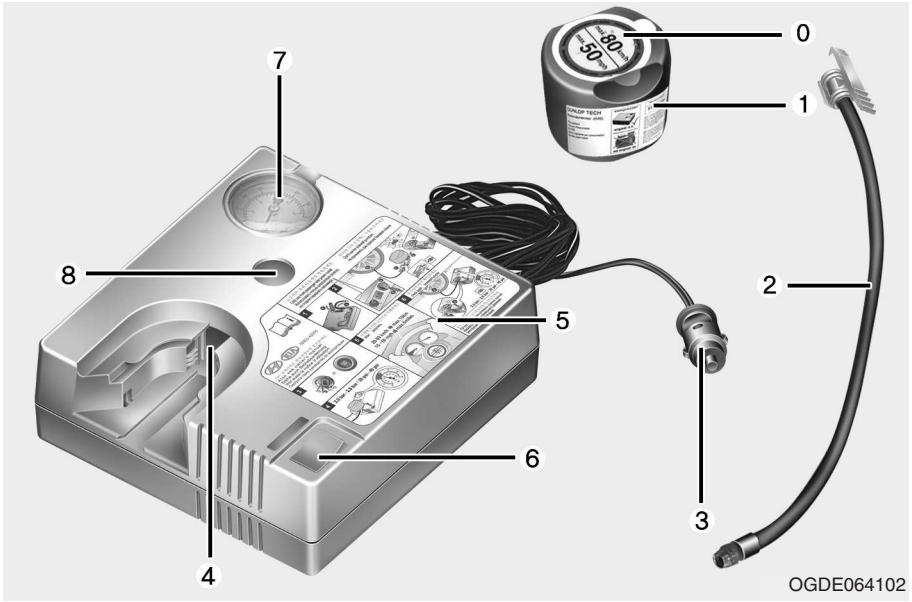
⚠ WARNING

Do not use the TireMobilityKit if a tire is severely damaged by driving run flat or with insufficient air pressure.

Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tire can be sealed using the TireMobilityKit.

Damage to the sidewall must not be repaired due to safety reasons.

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 20



Components of the TireMobilityKit

0. Speed restriction label
1. Sealant bottle and label with speed restriction
2. Filling hose from sealant bottle to wheel
3. Connectors and cable for the power outlet direct connection
4. Holder for the sealant bottle
5. Compressor
6. On/off switch
7. Pressure gauge for displaying the tire inflation pressure
8. Button for reducing tire inflation pressure

Connectors, cable and connection hose are stored in the compressor housing.

⚠ WARNING

Before using the TireMobilityKit, follow the instructions on the sealant bottle.

Remove the label with the speed restriction from the sealant bottle and apply it to the steering wheel.

Please note the expiry date on the sealant bottle.

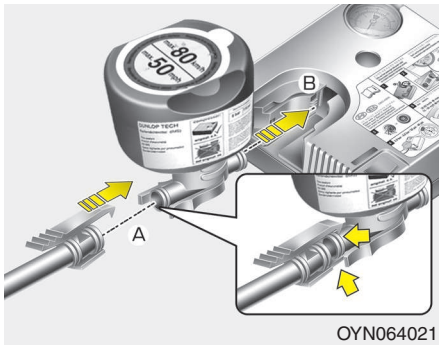
JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 21

Using the TireMobilityKit

1. Filling the sealant

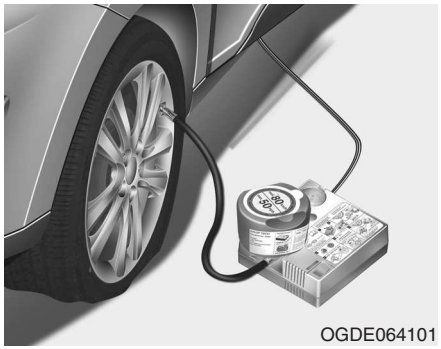
Strictly follow the specified sequence, otherwise the sealant may escape under high pressure.

1) Shake the sealant bottle.



OYN064021

2) Connect the filling hose 2 onto the connector of the sealant bottle (A).
3) Ensure that button 6 on the compressor is not pressed.
4) Unscrew the valve cap from the valve of the defective wheel and screw filling hose 2 of the sealant bottle onto the valve.
5) Insert the sealant bottle into the housing of the compressor so that the bottle is upright (B).


OGDE064101

6) Ensure that the compressor is switched off, position 0.
7) Connect between compressor and the vehicle power outlet using the cable and connectors.

✻ NOTICE

Only use the front passenger side power outlet.

8) With the ignition switched on:

Switch on the compressor and let it run for approximately 3 minutes to fill the sealant. The inflation pressure of the tire after filling is unimportant.

9) Switch off the compressor.
10) Detach the hose from the sealant bottle connector and from the tire valve.

Return the TireMobilityKit to its storage location in the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Carbon monoxide poisoning and suffocation is possible if the engine is left running in a poorly ventilated or unventilated location (such as inside a building).

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 22

Distributing the sealant

Immediately drive approximately 3 km (2 miles) to evenly distribute the sealant in the tire.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). If possible, do not fall below a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph).

While driving, if you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise, reduce your speed and drive with caution until you can safely pull off of the side of the road.

Call for road side service or towing.

Producing the tire inflation pressure

1) After driving approximately 3 km (2 miles), stop at a suitable location.
2) Connect the filling hose 2 of the compressor (clip mounted side) directly and then connect the filling hose 2 (opposite side) to the tire valve.
3) Connect between compressor and the vehicle power outlet using the cable and connectors.
4) Adjust the tire inflation pressure to 220 kPa (32 psi). With the ignition switched on, proceed as follows.
   - **To increase the inflation pressure:** Switch on the compressor, position I. To check the current inflation pressure setting, briefly switch off the compressor.

⚠ WARNING

Do not let the compressor run for more than 10 minutes, otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged.

- **To reduce the inflation pressure:** Press the button 8 on the compressor.

⚠ CAUTION

If the inflation pressure is not maintained, drive the vehicle a second time, refer to Distributing the sealant. Then repeat steps 1 to 4.

Use of the TireMobilityKit may be ineffectual for tire damage larger than approximately 4 mm (0.16 in).

We recommend that you contact the nearest Kia A/S center, or a workshop that works according to Kia repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel if the tire cannot be made roadworthy with the TireMobilityKit.

⚠ WARNING

The tire inflation pressure must be at least 220 kPa (32 psi). If it is not, do not continue driving. Call for road side service or towing.

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 23

Notes on the safe use of the TireMobilityKit

- Park your car at the side of the road so that you can work with the TireMobilityKit away from moving traffic. Place your warning triangle in a prominent place to make passing vehicles aware of your location.
- To be sure your vehicle won't move, even when you're on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake.
- Only use the TireMobilityKit for sealing/inflation passenger car tires. Do not use on motorcycles, bicycles or any other type of tires.
- Do not remove any foreign objects-such as nails or screws -that have penetrated the tire.
- Before using the TireMobilityKit, read the precautionary advice printed on the sealant bottle!
- Provided the car is outdoors, leave the engine running. Otherwise operating the compressor may eventually drain the car battery.
- Never leave the TireMobilityKit unattended while it is being used.
- Do not leave the compressor running for more than 10 min. at a time or it may overheat.
- Do not use the TireMobilityKit if the ambient temperature is below -30°C (-22°F).
- Do not use the sealing compound after its expiration date which can be found on the label of the bottle.
- Keep away from children.

Technical Data

System voltage: DC 12 V
Working voltage: DC 10 - 15 V
Amperage rating: max. 10A ± 1A
(at DC 12V operation)
Suitable for use at temperatures:
-30 ~ +70°C (-22 ~ +158°F)
Max. working pressure:
6 bar (87 psi)
Size
Compressor: 161 X 150 X 55.8 mm
(6.3 X 5.9 X 2.2 in.)
Sealant bottle: 81 x ø 85 mm
(3.2 x ø 3.3 in.)
Compressor weight:
735 g ± 25 g (1.62 lbs ± 0.06 lbs)
Sealant volume:
200 ml (12.2 cu. in.)

✻ Sealing compound and spare parts can be obtained and replaced at an authorized vehicle or tire dealer. Empty sealing compound bottles may be disposed of at home. Liquid residue from the sealing compound should be disposed of by your vehicle or tire dealer or in accordance with local waste disposal regulations.

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 24

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)



(1) Low tire pressure telltale / TPMS malfunction indicator

(2) Low tire pressure position telltale (Shown on the instrument panel display)

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the TPMS malfunction indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 25

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

✻ NOTICE

If any of the below happens, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

1. **The low tire pressure telltale/ TPMS malfunction indicator do not illuminate for 3 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position or engine is running.**
2. **The TPMS malfunction indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute.**
3. **The Low tire pressure position telltale remains illuminated.**



Low tire pressure telltale



Low tire pressure position telltale

When the tire pressure monitoring system warning indicators are illuminated, one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. The low tire pressure position telltale light will indicate which tire is significantly under-inflated by illuminating the corresponding position light.

If either telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tires as soon as possible. Inflate the tires to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's placard or tire inflation pressure label located on the driver's side center pillar outer panel. If you cannot reach a service station or if the tire cannot hold the newly added air, replace the low pressure tire with a spare tire.

If you drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes at speeds above 25 km/h after replaceing the low pressure tire with the spare tire, the below will happen:

- The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the spare wheel.

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 26

⚠ CAUTION

In winter or cold weather, the low tire pressure telltale may illuminate if the tire pressure was adjusted to the recommended tire inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a proportional lowering of tire pressure.

When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature is greatly higher or lower, you should check the tire inflation pressure and adjust the tires to the recommended tire inflation pressure.

⚠ WARNING - Low pressure damage

Significantly low tire pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.

Continued driving on low pressure tires can cause the tires to overheat and fail.



Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction indicator

The TPMS malfunction indicator will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the Tire Pressure Monitoring System. If the system is able to correctly detect an under inflation warning at the same time as system failure then the TPMS malfunction indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer to determine the cause of the problem.

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 27

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated if the vehicle is moving around electric power supply cables or radios transmitter such as at police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, or transmitting towers, etc. This can interfere with normal operation of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).***
- ***The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated if snow chains are used or some separate electronic devices such as notebook computer, mobile charger, remote starter or navigation etc., are used in the vehicle. This can interfere with normal operation of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).***

Changing a tire with TPMS

If you have a flat tire, the low Tire Pressure and Position telltales will come on. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

We recommend that you use the sealant approved by Kia.

The sealant on the tire pressure sensor and wheel shall be eleminated when you replace the tire with a new one.

Each wheel is equipped with a tire pressure sensor mounted inside the tire behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you have your tires serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.

If you drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes at speeds above 25 km/h after replaceing the low pressure tire with the spare tire, the below will happen:

- The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the sparewheel.

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:05 PM Page 28

You may not be able to identify a low tire by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tire pressure gauge to measure the tire's inflation pressure. Please note that a tire that is hot (from being driven) will have a higher pressure measurement than a tire that is cold (from sitting stationary for at least 3 hours and driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile) during that 3 hour period).

Allow the tire to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always be sure the tire is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.

A cold tire means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1.6 km (1 mile) in that 3 hour period.

⚠ CAUTION

We recommend that you use the sealant approved by Kia if your vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System. The liquid sealant can damage the tire pressure sensors.

⚠ WARNING - TPMS

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tire damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.**
- **If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually and with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

⚠ WARNING - Protecting TPMS

Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tire pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions. Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may void the warranty for that portion of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - For EUROPE

- **Do not modify the vehicle, it may interfere with the TPMS function.**
- **The wheels on the market do not have a TPMS sensor.**

  For your safety, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorized Kia dealer.
- **If you use the wheels on the market, use a TPMS sensor approved by a Kia dealer. If your vehicle is not equipped with a TPMS sensor or TPMS does not work properly, you may fail the periodic vehicle inspection conducted in your country.**

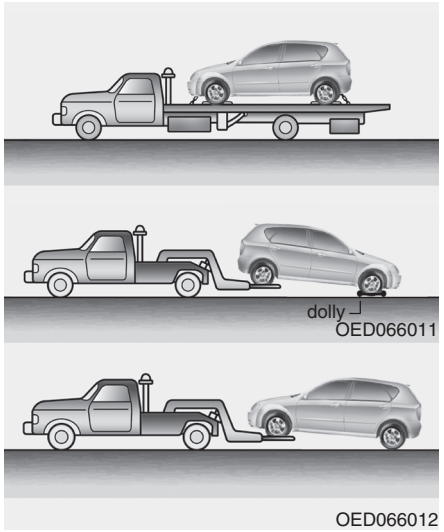
❋ All vehicles sold in the EUROPE market during below period must be equipped with TPMS.

- New model vehicle : Nov. 1, 2012 ~

- Current model vehicle : Nov. 1, 2014~ (Based on vehicle registrations)

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:06 PM Page 29

TOWING



Towing service

If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend having it done by an authorized Kia dealer or a commercial tow-truck service. Proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. The use of wheel dollies or flatbed is recommended.

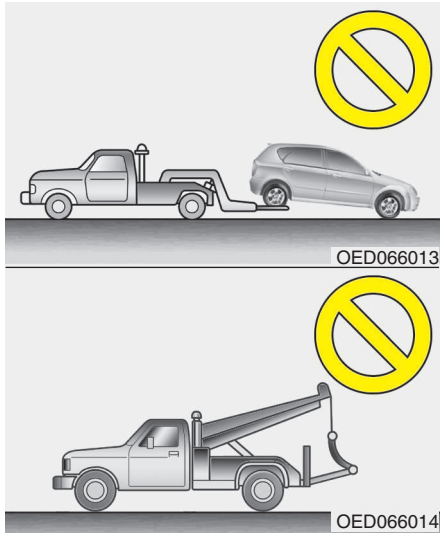
For trailer towing guidelines information, refer to "Trailer towing" in chapter 5.

It is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the front wheels off the ground. If any of the loaded wheels or suspension components are damaged or the vehicle is being towed with the front wheels on the ground, use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

When being towed by a commercial tow truck and wheel dollies are not used, the front of the vehicle should always be lifted, not the rear.

✻ NOTICE

If the EPB does not release normally, we recommend taking your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer by loading the vehicle on a flatbed tow truck and have the system checked.



⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not tow the vehicle backwards with the front wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the vehicle.***
- ***Do not tow with sling-type equipment. Use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.***

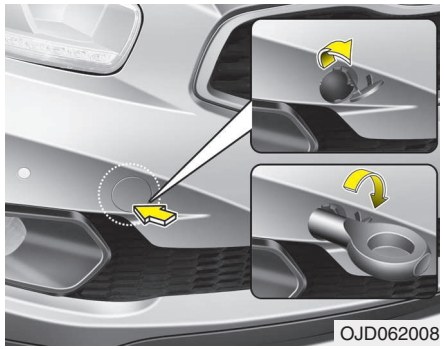
JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:06 PM Page 30

When towing your vehicle in an emergency without wheel dollies :

1. Set the ignition switch in the ACC position.
2. Place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral).
3. Release the parking brake.

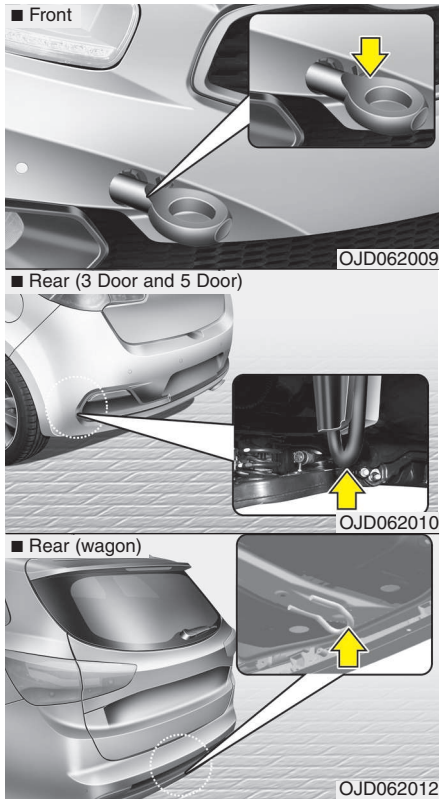
⚠ CAUTION

Failure to place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral) may cause internal damage to the transaxle.



Removable towing hook (if equipped)

1. Open the tailgate/trunk, and remove the towing hook from the tool case.
2. Remove the hole cover pressing the lower part of the cover on the front bumper.
3. Install the towing hook by turning it clockwise into the hole until it is fully secured.
4. Remove the towing hook and install the cover after use.



Emergency towing

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:06 PM Page 31

If towing is necessary, we recommend you to have it done by an authorized Kia dealer or a commercial tow truck service.

If towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing hook under the front (or rear) of the vehicle. Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle. A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speed. Also, the wheels, axles, power train, steering and brakes must all be in good condition.

- Do not use the towing hooks to pull a vehicle out of mud, sand or other conditions from which the vehicle cannot be driven out under its own power.
- Avoid towing a vehicle heavier than the vehicle doing the towing.
- The drivers of both vehicles should communicate with each other frequently.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Attach a towing strap to the tow hook.***
- ***Using a portion of the vehicle other than the tow hooks for towing may damage the body of your vehicle.***
- ***Use only a cable or chain specifically intended for use in towing vehicles. Securely fasten the cable or chain to the towing hook provided.***

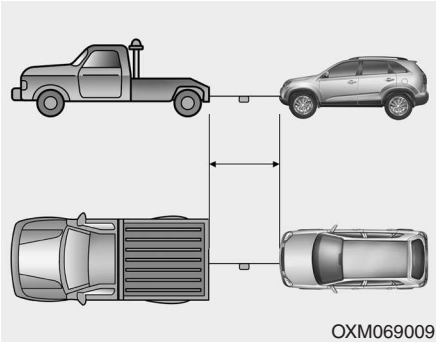
- Before emergency towing, check that the hook is not broken or damaged.
- Fasten the towing cable or chain securely to the hook.
- Do not jerk the hook. Apply steady and even force.
- To avoid damaging the hook, do not pull from the side or at a vertical angle. Always pull straight ahead.

⚠ WARNING

Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.

- **Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which would place excessive stress on the emergency towing hook and towing cable or chain. The hook and towing cable or chain may break and cause serious injury or damage.**
- **If the disabled vehicle is unable to be moved, do not forcibly continue the towing. We recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer or a commercial tow truck service for assistance.**
- **Tow the vehicle as straight ahead as possible.**
- **Keep away from the vehicle during towing.**

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:06 PM Page 32



OXM069009

- Use a towing strap less than 5 m (16 feet) long. Attach a white or red cloth (about 30 cm (12 inches) wide) in the middle of the strap for easy visibility.
- Drive carefully so that the towing strap is not loosened during towing.

Emergency towing precautions

- Turn the ignition switch to ACC so the steering wheel isn't locked.
- Place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral).
- Release the parking brake.
- Depress the brake pedal with more force than normal since you will have reduced brake performance.
- More steering effort will be required because the power steering system will be disabled.
- If you are driving down a long hill, the brakes may overheat and brake performance will be reduced. Stop often and let the brakes cool off.

⚠ CAUTION - Automatic transaxle / Double clutch transmission

- ***If the car is being towed with all four wheels on the ground, it can be towed only from the front. Be sure that the transaxle is in neutral. Be sure the steering is unlocked by placing the ignition switch in the ACC position. A driver must be in the towed vehicle to operate the steering and brakes.***
- ***To avoid serious damage to the automatic transaxle, limit the vehicle speed to 15 km/h (10 mph) and drive less than 1.5 km (1 mile) when towing.***

JD eng 6.QXP 3/12/2015 3:06 PM Page 33

EMERGENCY COMMODITY (IF EQUIPPED)

There are some emergency commodities in the vehicle to help you respond to the emergency situation.

Fire extinguisher

If there is small fire and you know how to use the fire extinguisher, take the following steps carefully.

1. Pull the pin at the top of the extinguisher that keeps the handle from being accidentally pressed.
2. Aim the nozzle toward the base of the fire.
3. Stand approximately 2.5 m (8 ft) away from the fire and squeeze the handle to discharge the extinguisher. If you release the handle, the discharge will stop.
4. Sweep the nozzle back and forth at the base of the fire. After the fire appears to be out, watch it carefully since it may re-ignite.

First aid kit

There are some items such as scissors, bandage and adhesive tape and etc. in the kit to give first aid to an injured person.

Triangle reflector

Place the triangle reflector on the road to warn oncoming vehicles during emergencies, such as when the vehicle is parked by the roadside due to any problems.

Tire pressure gauge (If equipped)

Tires normally lose some air in day-to-day use, and you may have to add a few pounds of air periodically and it is not usually a sign of a leaking tire, but of normal wear. Always check tire pressure when the tires are cold because tire pressure increases with temperature.

To check the tire pressure, take the following steps:

1. Unscrew the inflation valve cap that is located on the rim of the tire.
2. Press and hold the gauge against the tire valve. Some air will escape as you begin and more will escape if you don't press the gauge in firmly.
3. A firm non-leaking push will activate the gauge.
4. Read the tire pressure on the gauge to know whether the tire pressure is low or high.
5. Adjust the tire pressures to the specified pressure. Refer to “Tires and wheels” in chapter 8.
6. Reinstall the inflation valve cap.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 1

Maintenance

Engine compartment 7-3
Maintenance services 7-6
- Owner's responsibility 7-6
- Owner maintenance precautions 7-6
- Engine compartment precautions (Diesel engine) . . . 7-7

Owner maintenance 7-8
- Owner maintenance schedule 7-8

Scheduled maintenance service 7-10
- For Europe, Except Russia 7-11
- Except Europe, For Russia 7-22

Explanation of scheduled maintenance items 7-34
Engine oil 7-37
- Checking the engine oil level 7-37
- Changing the engine oil and filter 7-38

Engine coolant 7-39
- Checking the coolant level 7-39
- Changing the coolant 7-41

Brake/clutch fluid 7-42
- Checking the brake fluid level 7-42

Washer fluid 7-43
- Checking the washer fluid level 7-43

Parking brake - hand type 7-43
- Checking the parking brake 7-43

Fuel filter (for Diesel) 7-44
- Draining water from fuel filter 7-44
- Extracting air from the fuel filter 7-44

Air cleaner 7-45
- Filter replacement 7-45

Climate control air filter 7-47
- Filter inspection 7-47
- Filter replacement 7-47

Wiper blades 7-49
- Blade inspection 7-49
- Blade replacement 7-49

Battery 7-52
- For best battery service 7-52
- Battery capacity label 7-53
- Battery recharging 7-53
- Reset items 7-54

Tires and wheels 7-55
- Tire care 7-55
- Recommended cold tire inflation pressures 7-55
- Checking tire inflation pressure 7-57
- Tire rotation 7-58
- Wheel alignment and tire balance 7-59
- Tire replacement 7-59
- Wheel replacement 7-61
- Tire traction 7-61
- Tire maintenance 7-61
- Tire sidewall labeling 7-61
- Low aspect ratio tire 7-65

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 2

Fuses 7-66
- Fuse/relay panel description 7-71

Light bulbs 7-89
- Front light replacement 7-90
- Headlight and front fog light aiming (for Europe) . . 7-95
- Side repeater light bulb replacement 7-103
- Rear combination light bulb replacement 7-103
- High mounted stop light bulb replacement 7-108
- License plate light bulb replacement 7-108
- Interior light bulb replacement. 7-109

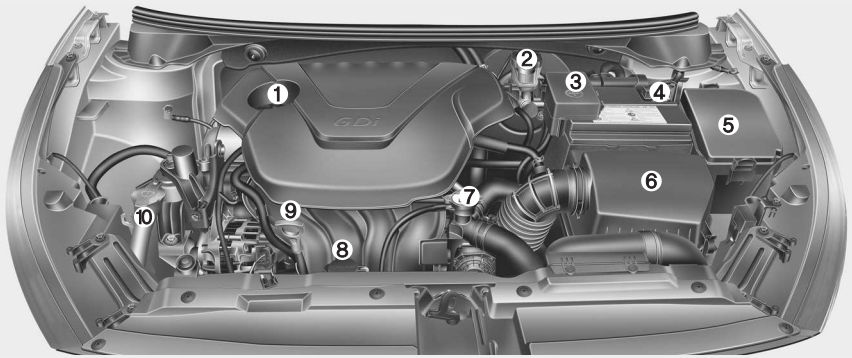
Appearance care. 7-110
- Exterior care 7-110
- Interior care 7-115

Emission control system 7-116

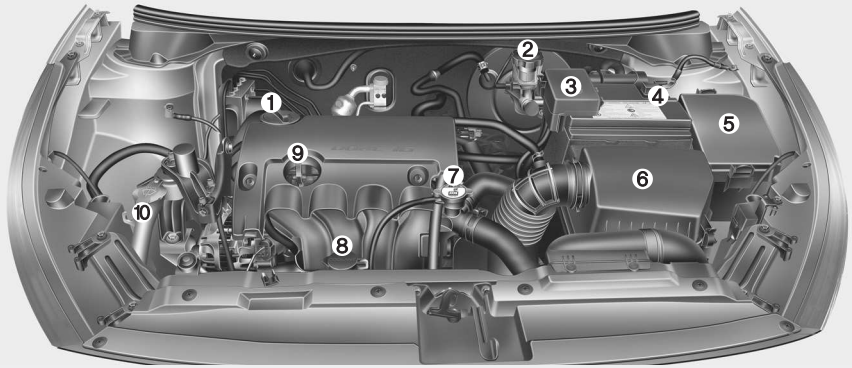
JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 3

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ Gasoline engine (GDI)



■ Gasoline engine (MPI)



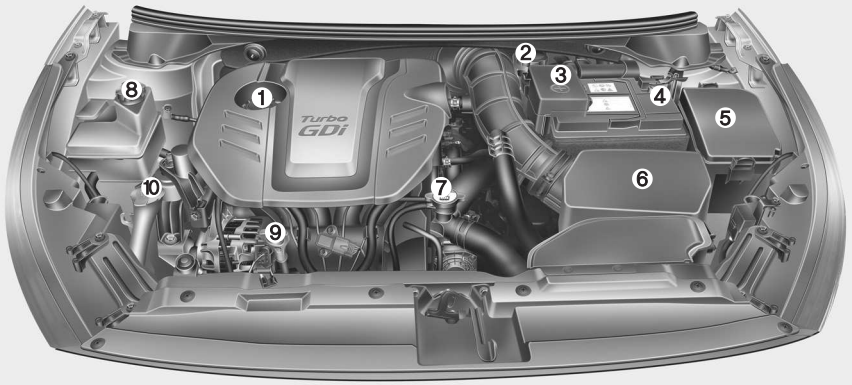
1. Engine oil filler cap
2. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir
3. Positive battery terminal
4. Negative battery terminal
5. Fuse box
6. Air cleaner
7. Radiator cap
8. Engine coolant reservoir
9. Engine oil dipstick
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir

❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJD072001/OJD072002

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 4

■ **Gasoline engine (T-GDI)**



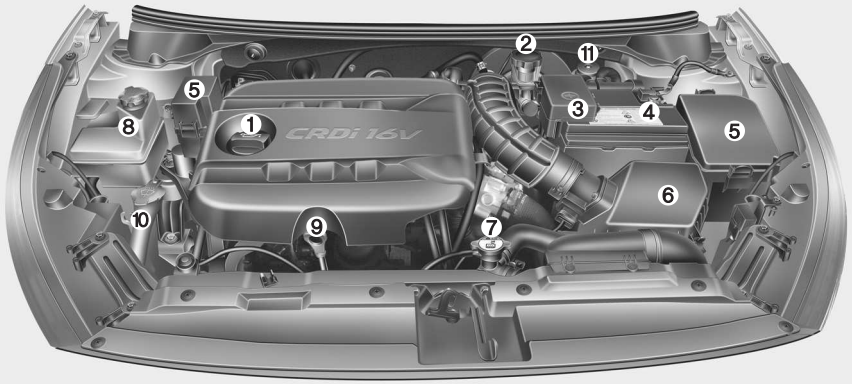
1. Engine oil filler cap
2. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir
3. Positive battery terminal
4. Negative battery terminal
5. Fuse box
6. Air cleaner
7. Radiator cap
8. Engine coolant reservoir
9. Engine oil dipstick
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir

❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJD073077R

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 5

■ **Diesel engine**



1. Engine oil filler cap
2. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir
3. Positive battery terminal
4. Negative battery terminal
5. Fuse box
6. Air cleaner
7. Radiator cap
8. Engine coolant reservoir
9. Engine oil dipstick
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
11. Fuel filter

❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJD072003

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 6

MAINTENANCE SERVICES

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury.

Owner's responsibility

✻ NOTICE

Maintenance Service and Record Retention are the owner's responsibility.

We recommend in general that you have your vehicle serviced by an authorized Kia dealer. You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the maintenance schedule. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties. Detailed warranty information is provided in your Warranty & Maintenance book. Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered when your vehicle is covered by warranty.

Owner maintenance precautions

Improper or incomplete service may result in problems. This chapter gives instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform.

✻ NOTICE

Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Warranty & Maintenance book provided with the vehicle. If you're unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not put heavy objects or apply excessive force on top of the engine cover (if equipped) or fuel related parts.***
- ***When you inspect the fuel system (fuel lines and fuel injection devices), we recommend that you contact an authorized kia dealer.***
- ***Do not drive long time with the engine cover (if equipped) removed.***
- ***When checking the engine room, do not go near fire.***
  Fuel, washer fluid, etc. are flammable oils that may cause fire.
- ***Before touching the battery, ignition cables and electrical wiring, you should disconnect the battery "-" terminal. You may get an electric shock from the electric current.***
- ***When you remove the interior trim cover with a flat bed (-) driver, be careful not to damage the cover.***
- ***Be careful when you replace and clean bulbs to avoid burns or electrical shock.***

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 7

⚠ WARNING - Maintenance work

- **Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. You can be seriously injured while performing some maintenance procedures. If you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.**
- **Working under the hood with the engine running is dangerous. It becomes even more dangerous when you wear jewelry or loose clothing. These can become entangled in moving parts and result in injury. Therefore, if you must run the engine while working under the hood, make certain that you remove all jewelry (especially rings, bracelets, watches, and necklaces) and all neckties, scarves, and similar loose clothing before getting near the engine or cooling fans.**

Engine compartment precautions (Diesel engine)

- The injector operates at high voltage (maximum 200v). Therefore, the following accidents may occur.
  - Direct contact with the injector or injector wiring may cause electric shock or damage your muscle or nerve system.
  - The electromagnetic wave from the operating injector may cause the artificial heart pacemaker to malfunction.
- Follow the safety tips provided below, when you are checking the engine room while the engine is running.
  - Do not touch the injector, injector wirings, and the engine computer while the engine is running.
  - Do not remove the injector connector while the engine is running.
  - People using pacemakers must not go near the engine while the engine is starting or running.

⚠ WARNING - Diesel Engine

Never work on injection system with engine running or within 30 seconds after shutting off engine. High-pressure pump, rail, injectors and high-pressure pipes are subject to high pressure even after the engine stopped. The fuel jet produced by fuel leaks may cause serious injury, if it touches the body. People using pacemakers should not move than 30cm closer to the ECU or wiring harness within the engine room while engine is running, since the high currents in the electronic engine control system produce considerable magnetic fields.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 8

OWNER MAINTENANCE

We recommend that the following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed by the owner or an authorized Kia dealer at the frequencies indicated to help ensure safe, dependable operation of your vehicle.

If you have any question, we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.

These Owner Maintenance Checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labor, parts and lubricants used.

Owner maintenance schedule

When you stop for fuel:

- Check the engine oil level.
- Check coolant level in coolant reservoir.
- Check the windshield washer fluid level.
- Look for low or under-inflated tires.
- Check the radiator and condenser.
  Check if the front of the radiator and condenser are clean and not blocked with leaves, dirt or insects etc.
  If any of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Be careful when checking your engine coolant level when the engine is hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure. This could cause burns or other serious injury.

While operating your vehicle:

- Note any changes in the sound of the exhaust or any smell of exhaust fumes in the vehicle.
- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or “pulls” to one side when traveling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or “hard-to-push” brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your transaxle occurs, check the transaxle fluid level.
- Check manual transaxle operation, including clutch operation.
- Check automatic transaxle/double clutch transmission P (Park) function.
- Check parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 9

At least monthly:

- Check coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stoplights, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tires including the spare.

At least twice a year (i.e., every Spring and Fall) :

- Check radiator, heater and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check windshield washer spray and wiper operation. Clean wiper blades with clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check headlight alignment.
- Check muffler, exhaust pipes, shields and clamps.
- Check the lap/shoulder belts for wear and function.
- Check for worn tires and loose wheel lug nuts.

At least once a year :

- Clean body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate door hinges and checks, and hood hinges.
- Lubricate door and hood locks and latches.
- Lubricate door rubber weatherstrips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Inspect and lubricate automatic transaxle linkage and controls.
- Clean battery and terminals.
- Check the brake (and clutch) fluid level.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 10

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICE

Follow Normal Maintenance Schedule if the vehicle is usually operated where none of the following conditions apply. If any of the following conditions apply, follow Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions.

- Repeated short distance driving.
- Driving in dusty conditions or sandy areas.
- Extensive use of brakes.
- Driving in areas where salt or other corrosive materials are being used.
- Driving on rough or muddy roads.
- Driving in mountainous areas.
- Extended periods of idling or low speed operation.
- Driving for a prolonged period in cold temperatures and/or extremely humid climates.
- More than 50% driving in heavy city traffic during hot weather above 32°C (90°F).

If your vehicle is operated under the above conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently than the following Normal Maintenance Schedule. After the periods or distance shown in the chart, continue to follow the prescribed maintenance intervals.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 11

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR EUROPE, EXCEPT RUSSIA

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

*1 : Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip.

*2 : This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced according to the severe maintenance schedule.

*3 : If the recommended oil is not available, replace engine oil and engine oil filter every 20,000 km or 12 months.

*4 : If the recommended oil is not available, replace engine oil and filter every 15,000 km for MPI engine and replace engine oil and filter every 10,000 km for GDI engine.

*5 : The engine oil level should be checked regularly and maintained properly. Operating with an insufficient amount of oil can damage the engine, and such damage is not covered by warranty.

*6 : This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced more frequently. If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc., replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and we recommanded that you consult an authorized Kia dealer for details.

*7 : The fuel filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. If there are some important matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and we recommanded that you consult an authorized Kia dealer for details.

*8 : Manual transaxle and double clutch transmission fluid should be changed anytime they have been submerged in water.

*9 : Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator pulley and if necessary correct or replace.

*10 : When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.

*11 : Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. We recommended that the system should be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

*12 : If good quality gasolines that meet Europe Fuel standards (EN228) or equivalents including fuel additives is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 12

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR EUROPE, EXCEPT RUSSIA (CONT.)

30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
  (30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  (Gasoline T-GDI) (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles))
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3*5

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1 *4 *5
  (30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline T-GDI) *1 *5
  (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Gasoline) *12
  (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 13

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR EUROPE, EXCEPT RUSSIA (CONT.)

60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48 months

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Gasoline) *7
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (Gasoline, if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Gasoline, Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *8
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear) (60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 24 months)
- ❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap
- ❑ Inspect double clutch transmission fluid *8
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose (Gasoline T-GDI) (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles))

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect cooling system (At first, 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *9 (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3 *5
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1 *4 *5 (60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 24 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline T-GDI) *1 *5 (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Gasoline - Nickel)
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Gasoline T-GDI - Iridium) (Every 75,000 km (59,000 miles) or 60months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Gasoline) *12 (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 14

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR EUROPE, EXCEPT RUSSIA (CONT.)

90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72 months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
  (90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 36 months)
- ❑ Inspect valve clearance (Gasoline) *11
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  (Gasoline T-GDI) (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles))
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *9
  (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Gasoline) *9
  (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3*5
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1 *4 *5
  (90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 36 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline T-GDI) *1 *5
  (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Gasoline) *12
  (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 15

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR EUROPE, EXCEPT RUSSIA (CONT.)

120,000 km (80,000 miles) or 96 months

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Gasoline) *7
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (Gasoline, if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Gasoline, Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *8
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear) (120,000 km (80,000 miles) or 48 months)
- ❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap
- ❑ Inspect double clutch transmission fluid *8
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose (Gasoline T-GDI) (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles))

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect cooling system (At first, 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *9 (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Gasoline) *9 (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72months after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3*5
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1 *4 *5 (120,000 km (80,000 miles) or 48 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline T-GDI) *1 *5 (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Gasoline - Nickel)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Gasoline) *12 (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)

❊ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 16

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR EUROPE, EXCEPT RUSSIA (CONT.)

150,000 km (100,000 miles) or 120 months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
  (150,000 km (100,000 miles) or 60 months)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  (Gasoline T-GDI) (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles))
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *9
  (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Gasoline) *9
  (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3*5
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1 *4 *5
  (150,000 km (100,000 miles) or 60 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline T-GDI) *1 *5
  (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Gasoline GDI - Iridium)
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Gasoline T-GDI - Iridium)
  (Every 75,000 km (59,000 miles) or 60months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Gasoline) *12
  (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 17

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR EUROPE, EXCEPT RUSSIA (CONT.)

180,000 km (120,000 miles) or 144 months

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Gasoline) *7
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (Gasoline, if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Gasoline, Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *8
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear) (180,000 km (120,000 miles) or 72 months)
- ❑ Inspect valve clearance (Gasoline) *11
- ❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap
- ❑ Inspect double clutch transmission fluid *8
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose (Gasoline T-GDI) (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles))

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect cooling system (At first, 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *9 (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Gasoline) *9 (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72months after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3*5
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1 *4 *5 (180,000 km (120,000 miles) or 72 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline T-GDI) *1 *5 (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Gasoline - Nickel)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Gasoline) *12 (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 18

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR EUROPE, EXCEPT RUSSIA (CONT.)

210,000 km (140,000 miles) or 168 months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
  (210,000 km (140,000 miles) or 84 months)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  (Gasoline T-GDI) (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles))
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *9
  (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Gasoline) *9
  (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3*5
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1 *4 *5
  (210,000 km (140,000 miles) or 84 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline T-GDI) *1 *5
  (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Gasoline T-GDI - Iridium)
  (Every 75,000 km (59,000 miles) or 60months)
- ❑ Replace coolant *10
  (At first, 210,000 km (120,000 miles) or 120 months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Gasoline) *12
  (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 19

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR EUROPE, EXCEPT RUSSIA

240,000 km (160,000 miles) or 192 months

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Gasoline) *7
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (Gasoline, if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Gasoline, Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *8
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
  (240,000 km (160,000 miles) or 96 months)
- ❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap
- ❑ Inspect double clutch transmission fluid *8
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  (Gasoline T-GDI) (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles))
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *9
  (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Gasoline) *9
  (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3*5
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1 *4 *5
  (240,000 km (160,000 miles) or 96 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline T-GDI) *1 *5
  (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Gasoline - Nickel)
- ❑ Replace coolant *10
  (At first, 210,000 km (120,000 miles) or 120 months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Gasoline) *12
  (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)

No check, No service required

- ❑ Automatic transaxle fluid

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 20

MAINTENANCE UNDER SEVERE USAGE CONDITIONS - FOR EUROPE, EXCEPT RUSSIA

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars mainly used under severe driving conditions.
Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.
R : Replace I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace

MAINTENANCE ITEM			MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Engine oil and engine oil filter	Gasoline	MPI*1	R	Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 6 months	A, B, C, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
		GDI*1	R	Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 6 months	
		T-GDI	R	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 3 months	
	Diesel *2		R	Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months	A, B, C, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
Air cleaner filter			R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E
Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)			R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Double clutch transmission fluid (if equipped)			R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)			R	Every 90,000 km (60,000 miles)	A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K

*1 : If the recommended oil is not available, replace engine oil and engine oil filter every 7,500 km or 6 months for MPI engine and 5,000 km or 6 months for GDI engine.
*2 : If the recommended oil is not available, replace engine oil and engine oil filter every 10,000 km or 6 months.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 21

MAINTENANCE ITEM	MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Front suspension ball joints	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Disc brakes and pads, calipers and rotors	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H
Parking brake (Hand type)	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, G, H
Drive shaft and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K
Climate control air filter	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E, G

SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS

A : Repeated short distance driving
B : Extensive idling
C : Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt spread roads
D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E : Driving in sandy areas
F : More than 50 % driving in heavy city traffic during hot weather above 32 °C (90 °F)
G : Driving in mountainous areas.
H : Towing a trailer or using a camper on roof rack
I : Driving for patrol car, taxi, commercial car or vehicle towing
J : Driving in very cold weather
K : Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h)
L : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 22

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

*1 : Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator pulley and if necessary correct or replace.

*2 : Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip.

*3 : The engine oil level should be checked regularly and maintained properly. Operating with an insufficient amount of oil can damage the engine, and such damage is not covered by warranty.

*4 : This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced more frequently.

If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc., replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and we recommand that you consult an authorized Kia dealer for details

*5 : For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

*6 : Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. We recommended that the system should be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

*7 : The fuel filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. If there are some important matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and we recommand that you consult an authorized Kia dealer for details.

*8 : When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.

*9 : If good quality gasolines that meet Europe Fuel standards (EN228) or equivalents including fuel additives is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

*10 : If 5W-20 is used for GDI engine, replace engine oil and filter every 10,000 km.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 23

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter - Except Middle East
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose (Gasoline T-GDI)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter - For Middle East
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline MPI, GDI) *2 *10
- ❑ Replace engine oil and engine oil filter (Gasoline T-GDI) *2 *3 (At first, replace at 5,000km (3,000 miles) or 6 months, after that, every 8,000km (5,000 miles) or 6 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - For Russia *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - Except Russia *2 *3 (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Gasoline) *9 (Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 24

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter - Except Middle East
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Gasoline) *1
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Gasoline) *7
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (Gasoline, if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *4
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose (Gasoline T-GDI)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter - For Middle East
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline MPI, GDI) *2 *10
- ❑ Replace engine oil and engine oil filter (Gasoline T-GDI) *2 *3
  (At first, replace at 5,000km (3,000 miles) or 6 months, after that, every 8,000km (5,000 miles) or 6 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - For Russia *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - Except Russia *2 *3
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Gasoline) *9
  (Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 25

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

45,000 km (30,000 miles) or 36months

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose (Gasoline T-GDI)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline MPI, GDI) *2 *10
- ❑ Replace engine oil and engine oil filter (Gasoline T-GDI) *2 *3 (At first, replace at 5,000km (3,000 miles) or 6 months, after that, every 8,000km (5,000 miles) or 6 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - For Russia *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - Except Russia *2 *3 (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Gasoline) *9 (Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 26

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter - Except Middle East
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect all electrical systems
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Gasoline) *1
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filler cap (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, hoses and connections (Gasoline, Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap (Gasoline)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) - For Russia *1
  (At first, inspect 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) - Except Russia *1
  (At first, inspect 80,000 km (50,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, inspect every 20,000 km (12,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  (Gasoline T-GDI)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter - For Middle East
- ❑ Replace fuel tank air filter (Gasoline, if equipped)
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline MPI, GDI) *2 *10
- ❑ Replace engine oil and engine oil filter (Gasoline T-GDI) *2 *3
  (At first, replace at 5,000km (3,000 miles) or 6 months,
  after that, every 8,000km (5,000 miles) or 6 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - For Russia *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - Except Russia *2 *3
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter (Gasoline) *7
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *4
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Gasoline - Nickel)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Gasoline) *9
  (Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 27

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

75,000 km (50,000 miles) or 60months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter - Except Middle East
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) - Except Russia *1
  (At first, inspect 80,000 km (50,000 miles) or 48months after that, inspect every 20,000 km (12,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose (Gasoline T-GDI)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter - For Middle East
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline MPI, GDI) *2 *10
- ❑ Replace engine oil and engine oil filter (Gasoline T-GDI) *2 *3
  (At first, replace at 5,000km (3,000 miles) or 6 months, after that, every 8,000km (5,000 miles) or 6 months)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - For Russia *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - Except Russia *2 *3
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Gasoline T-GDI - Iridium)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Gasoline) *9
  (Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 28

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72months

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Gasoline) *1
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Gasoline) *7
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (Gasoline, if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *4
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) - For Russia *1
  (At first, inspect 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) - Except Russia *1
  (At first, inspect 80,000 km (50,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, inspect every 20,000 km (12,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Inspect valve clearance *6
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  (Gasoline T-GDI)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline MPI, GDI) *2 *10
- ❑ Replace engine oil and engine oil filter (Gasoline T-GDI) *2 *3
  (At first, replace at 5,000km (3,000 miles) or 6 months,
  after that, every 8,000km (5,000 miles) or 6 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - For Russia *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - Except Russia *2 *3
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Gasoline) *9
  (Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 29

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

105,000 km (70,000 miles) or 84months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter - Except Middle East
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) - Except Russia *1
  (At first, inspect 80,000 km (50,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, inspect every 20,000 km (12,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  (Gasoline T-GDI)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter - For Middle East
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline MPI, GDI) *2 *10
- ❑ Replace engine oil and engine oil filter (Gasoline T-GDI) *2 *3
  (At first, replace at 5,000km (3,000 miles) or 6 months,
  after that, every 8,000km (5,000 miles) or 6 months)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - For Russia *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - Except Russia *2 *3
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Gasoline) *9
  (Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 30

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

120,000 km (80,000 miles) or 96months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter - Except Middle East
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Gasoline) *1
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filler cap (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, hoses and connections (Gasoline, Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap (Gasoline)
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (Gasoline, if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) - For Russia *1
  (At first, inspect 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) - Except Russia *1
  (At first, inspect 80,000 km (50,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, inspect every 20,000 km (12,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  (Gasoline T-GDI)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter - For Middle East
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline MPI, GDI) *2 *10
- ❑ Replace engine oil and engine oil filter (Gasoline T-GDI) *2 *3
  (At first, replace at 5,000km (3,000 miles) or 6 months,
  after that, every 8,000km (5,000 miles) or 6 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - For Russia *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - Except Russia *2 *3
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter (Gasoline) *7
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *4
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Gasoline - Nickel)
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Gasoline GDI - Iridium) *5
  (Every 160,000 km (100,000 miles) or 120months)

(Continued)

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 31

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA

(Continued)

❑ Replace coolant *8
(At first, 210,000 km (120,000 miles) or 120months
after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months *5)
❑ Add fuel additives (Gasoline) *9
(Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6months)

No check, No service required

❑ Automatic transaxle fluid

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 32

MAINTENANCE UNDER SEVERE USAGE CONDITIONS - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars mainly used under severe driving conditions.
Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.
R : Replace I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace

Maintenance item			Maintenance operation	Maintenance intervals	Driving condition
Engine oil and engine oil filter	Gasoline	Except Middle East	R	Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K
		For Middle East	R	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months	
	Diesel	For Russia	R	Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months	A, B, C, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
		Except Russia	R	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months	
Air cleaner filter			R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E
Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)			R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, G, H, I, J
Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)			R	Every 100,000 km (62,500 miles)	A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 33

Maintenance item	Maintenance operation	Maintenance intervals	Driving condition
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Front suspension ball joints	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Disc brakes and pads, calipers and rotors	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H
Parking brake (Hand type)	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, G, H
Driveshaft and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Climate control air filter	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E, G

SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS

A : Repeated short distance driving
B : Extensive idling
C : Driving in dusty, rough roads
D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E : Driving in sandy areas
F : More than 50 % driving in heavy city traffic during hot weather above 32°C (90°F)
G : Driving in mountainous areas.
H : Towing a trailer or using a camper on roof rack
I : Driving for patrol car, taxi, commercial car or vehicle towing
J : Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h)
K : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions
L : Driving in very cold weather

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 34

EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS

Engine oil and filter

The engine oil and filter should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. If the car is being driven in severe conditions, more frequent oil and filter changes are required.

Drive belts

Inspect all drive belts for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear or oil saturation and replace if necessary. Drive belts should be checked periodically for proper tension and adjusted as necessary.

Fuel filter (cartridge)

A clogged filter can limit the speed at which the vehicle may be driven, damage the emission system and cause multiple issues such as hard starting. If an excessive amount of foreign matter accumulates in the fuel tank, the filter may require replacement more frequently.

After installing a new filter, run the engine for several minutes, and check for leaks at the connections. We recommend that the fuel filter be replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.

Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections

Check the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections for leakage and damage. We recommend that the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections be replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Diesel only

Never work on injection system with engine running or within 30 seconds after shutting off engine. High pressure pump, rail, injectors and high pressure pipes are subject to high pressure even after the engine stopped. The fuel jet produced by fuel leaks may cause serious injury, if it touch the body. People using pacemakers should not move more than 30cm closer to the ECU or wiring harness within the engine room while engine is running, since the high currents in the Common Rail system produce considerable magnetic fields.

Vapor hose and fuel filler cap

The vapor hose and fuel filler cap should be inspected at those intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. Make sure that a new vapor hose or fuel filler cap is correctly replaced.

Vacuum crankcase ventilation hoses (if equipped)

Inspect the surface of hoses for evidence of heat and/or mechanical damage. Hard and brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, abrasions, and excessive swelling indicate deterioration. Particular attention should be paid to examine those hose surfaces nearest to high heat sources, such as the exhaust manifold.

Inspect the hose routing to assure that the hoses do not come in contact with any heat source, sharp edges or moving component which might cause heat damage or mechanical wear. Inspect all hose connections, such as clamps and couplings, to make sure they are secure, and that no leaks are present. Hoses should be replaced immediately if there is any evidence of deterioration or damage.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 35

Air cleaner filter

We recommend that the air cleaner filter be replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.

Spark plugs (for gasoline engine)

Make sure to install new spark plugs of the correct heat range.

Valve clearance (for gasoline engine)

Inspect excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. We recommend that the valve clearance be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.

Cooling system

Check the cooling system parts, such as radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

Coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)

Inspect the manual transaxle fluid according to the maintenance schedule.

Double clutch transmission fluid (if equipped)

Inspect the double clutch transmission fluid according to the maintenance schedule.

Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)

Automatic transaxle fluid should not be checked under normal usage conditions.

But in severe conditions, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer in accordance to the maintenance schedule.

✻ NOTICE

Automatic transaxle fluid color is basically red.

As the vehicle is driven, the automatic transaxle fluid will begin to look darker. It is normal condition and you should not judge the need to replace the fluid based upon the changed color.

⚠ CAUTION

The use of a non-specified fluid could result in transaxle malfunction and failure.

Use only specified automatic transaxle fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in chapter 8.)

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 36

Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

Brake fluid

Check brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between “MIN” and “MAX” marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4 specification.

Brake pads, calipers and rotors

Check the pads for excessive wear, discs for run out and wear, and calipers for fluid leakage.

For more information on checking the pads or lining wear limit, refer to the Kia web site. **(http://brakemanual.kia.co.kr)**

Suspension mounting bolts

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

Parking brake

Inspect the parking brake system including the EPB actuator, wiring and connectors.

Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint

With the vehicle stopped and engine off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel.

Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage. Replace any damaged parts.

Drive shafts and boots

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

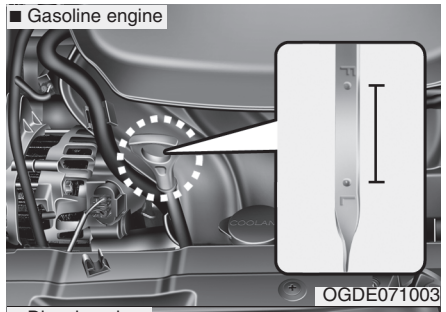
Air conditioning refrigerant/ compressor (if equipped)

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 37

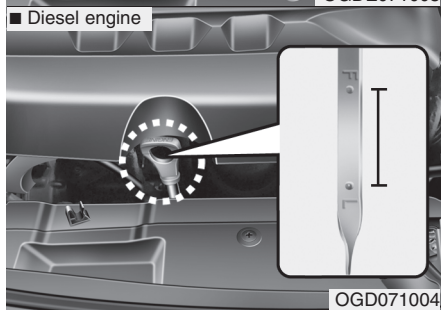
ENGINE OIL

■ Gasoline engine



OGDE071003

■ Diesel engine



OGD071004

Checking the engine oil level

1. Be sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature.
3. Turn the engine off and wait for a few minutes (about 5 minutes) for the oil to return to the oil pan.
4. Pull the dipstick out, wipe it clean, and re-insert it fully.

⚠ WARNING - Radiator hose

Be very careful not to touch the radiator hose when checking or adding the engine oil as it may be hot enough to burn you.

5. Pull the dipstick out again and check the level. The level should be between F and L.

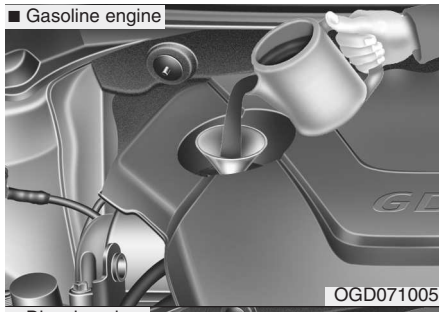
⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not overfill the engine oil. It may damage the engine.***
- ***Do not spill engine oil, when adding or changing engine oil. If you drop the engine oil on the engine room, wipe it off immediately.***

⚠ CAUTION - Diesel engine

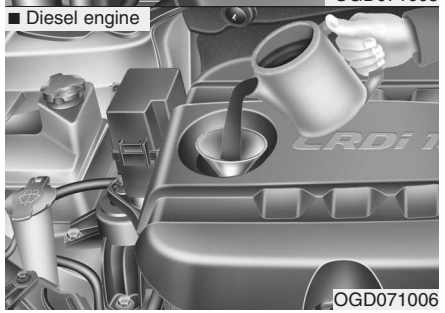
Overfilling the engine oil may cause severe dieseling due to churning effect. It may lead to engine damage accompanied with abrupt engine speed increment, combustion noise and white smoke emission.

■ Gasoline engine



OGD071005

■ Diesel engine



OGD071006

If it is near or at L, add enough oil to bring the level to F. **Do not overfill.**

Use a funnel to help prevent oil from being spilled on engine components.

Use only the specified engine oil. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in chapter 8.)

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 38

Changing the engine oil and filter

We recommend that the engine oil and filter be replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Used engine oil may cause irritation or cancer of the skin if left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods of time. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing your hands thoroughly with soap and warm water as soon as possible after handling used oil.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 39

ENGINE COOLANT

The high-pressure cooling system has a reservoir filled with year-round antifreeze coolant. The reservoir is filled at the factory.

Check the antifreeze protection and coolant concentration level at least once a year, at the beginning of the winter season, and before traveling to a colder climate.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When the engine overheats from low engine coolant, suddenly adding engine coolant may cause cracks in the engine. To prevent damage, add engine coolant slowly in small quantities.***
- ***Do not drive with no engine coolant. It may cause water pump failure and engine seizure, etc.***

Checking the coolant level

⚠ WARNING



Removing radiator cap

- **Never attempt to remove the radiator cap while the engine is operating or hot. Doing so might lead to cooling system and engine damage and could result in serious personal injury from escaping hot coolant or steam.**
- **Turn the engine off and wait until it cools down. Use extreme care when removing the radiator cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it counterclockwise slowly to the first stop. Step back while the pressure is released from the cooling system. When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning counterclockwise to remove it.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Even if the engine is not operating, do not remove the radiator cap or the drain plug while the engine and radiator are hot. Hot coolant and steam may still blow out under pressure, causing serious injury.**

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 40

⚠ WARNING

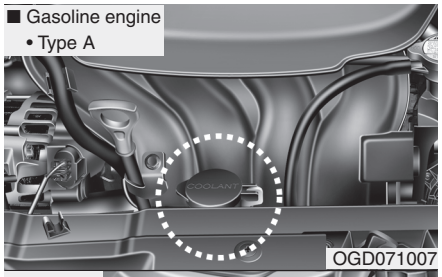


The electric motor (cooling fan) is controlled by engine coolant temperature, refrigerant pressure and vehicle speed. It may sometimes operate even when the engine is not running. Use extreme caution when working near the blades of the cooling fan so that you are not injured by a rotating fan blades. As the engine coolant temperature decreases, the electric motor will automatically shut off. This is a normal condition.

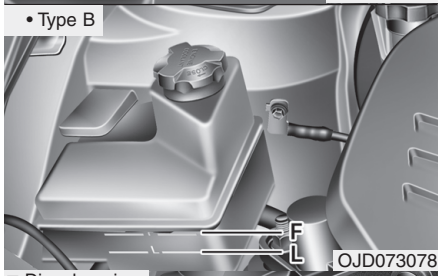
If your vehicle is equipped with GDI, the electric motor (cooling fan) may operate until you disconnect the negative battery cable.

■ Gasoline engine

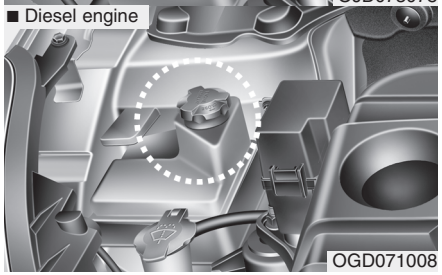
• Type A



• Type B



■ Diesel engine



Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level should be filled between F (MAX) and L (MIN) marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the engine is cool.

If the coolant level is low, add enough distilled (deionized) water. Bring the level to F (MAX), but do not overfill. If frequent coolant refill is required, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

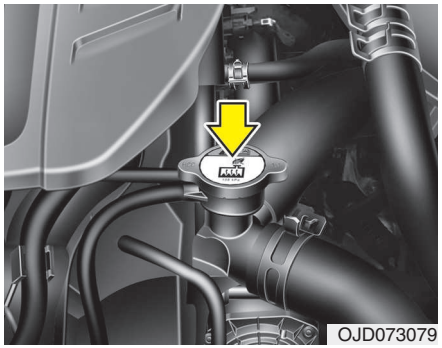
JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 41

Recommended engine coolant

- When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
- The engine in your vehicle has aluminum engine parts and must be protected by an ethylene-glycol-based coolant to prevent corrosion and freezing.
- DO NOT USE alcohol or methanol coolant or mix them with the specified coolant.
- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60% antifreeze or less than 35% antifreeze, which would reduce the effectiveness of the solution.

For mixture percentage, refer to the following table.

Ambient Temperature	Mixture Percentage (volume)	
	Antifreeze	Water
-15°C (5°F)	35	65
-25°C (-13°F)	40	60
-35°C (-31°F)	50	50
-45°C (-49°F)	60	40


OJD073079

⚠ WARNING



Radiator cap

Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure causing serious injury.

Changing the coolant

We recommend that the coolant be replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

Put a thick cloth or fabric around the radiator cap before refilling the coolant in order to prevent the coolant from overflowing into engine parts such as generator.

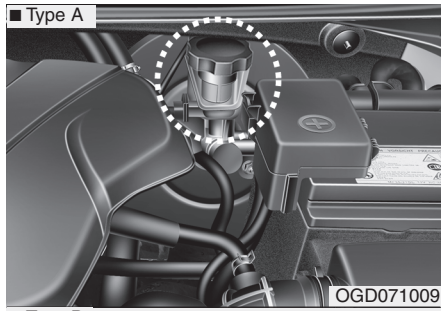
⚠ WARNING - Coolant

- **Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windshield and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.**

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 42

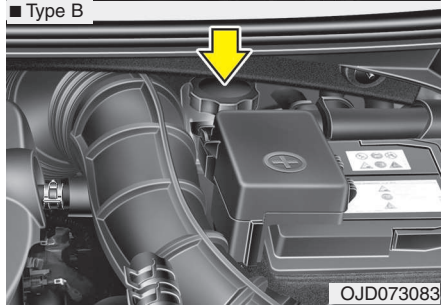
BRAKE/CLUTCH FLUID

■ Type A



OGD071009

■ Type B



OJD073083

Checking the brake/clutch fluid level

Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX and MIN marks on the side of the reservoir.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake/clutch fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake/clutch fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add fluid to the MAX level. The level will fall with accumulated mileage. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of the brake linings. If the fluid level is excessively low, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Use only the specified brake/clutch fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in chapter 8.)

Never mix different types of fluid.

⚠ WARNING - Loss of brake/clutch fluid

In the event the brake/clutch system requires frequent additions of fluid, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Brake/clutch fluid

When changing and adding brake/clutch fluid, handle it carefully. Do not let it come in contact with your eyes. If brake/clutch fluid should come in contact with your eyes, immediately flush them with a large quantity of fresh tap water. Have your eyes examined by a doctor as soon as possible.

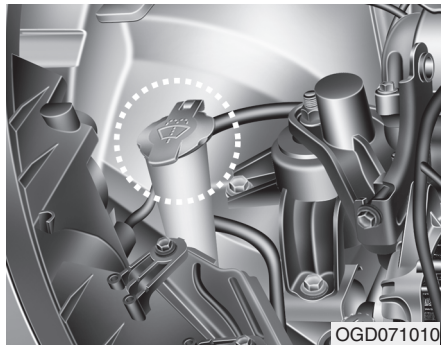
⚠ CAUTION

Do not allow brake/clutch fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, as paint damage will result.

Brake/clutch fluid, which has been exposed to open air for an extended time should never be used as its quality cannot be guaranteed. It should be disposed of properly. Don't put in the wrong kind of fluid. A few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in your brake/clutch system can damage brake/clutch system parts.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 43

WASHER FLUID


OGD071010

Checking the washer fluid level

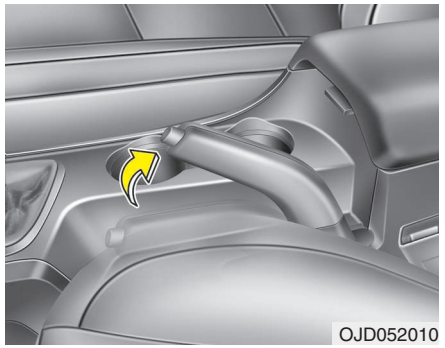
Check the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir and add fluid if necessary.

Plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer solvent with antifreeze characteristics in cold climates to prevent freezing.

⚠ WARNING - Coolant

- **Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windshield and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.**
- **Windshield Washer fluid agents contain some amounts of alcohol and can be flammable under certain circumstances. Do not allow sparks or flame to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Damage to the vehicle or occupants could occur.**
- **Windshield washer fluid is poisonous to humans and animals. Do not drink and avoid contacting windshield washer fluid. Serious injury or death could occur.**

PARKING BRAKE - HAND TYPE


OJD052010

Checking the parking brake

Check the stroke of the parking brake by counting the number of “clicks” heard while fully applying it from the released position. Also, the parking brake alone should securely hold the vehicle on a fairly steep grade. If the stroke is more or less than specified, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.

Stroke : 6~8 “clicks” at a force of 20 kg (44 lbs, 196 N).

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:29 PM Page 44

FUEL FILTER (FOR DIESEL)

Draining water from fuel filter

The fuel filter for diesel engine plays an important role of separating water from fuel and accumulating the water in its bottom.

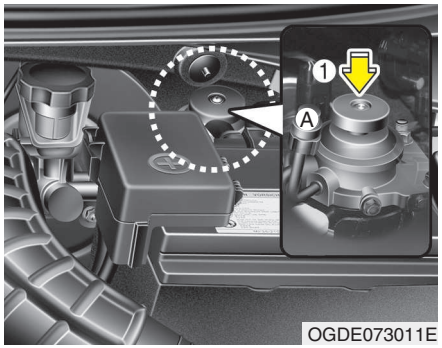
If water accumulates in the fuel filter, the warning light comes on when the ignition switch is in the ON position.



If this warning light illuminates, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

If the water accumulated in the fuel filter is not drained at proper times, damages to the major parts such as the fuel system can be caused by water permeation in the fuel filter.



Extracting air from the fuel filter

If you drive until you have no fuel left or if you replace the fuel filter, be sure to extract air from the fuel system as it makes it difficult to start the engine.

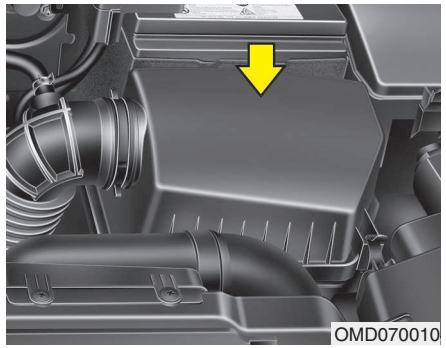
1. Open the plug (A).
2. Pump up and down (1) approximately 50 times until the pump is hard.
3. If fuel comes out through the nipple, close it by the plug (A).
4. Extract air from the fuel filter by removing the bolt with a cross-tip screw driver and reinstall the bolt.
5. Pump up and down (1) approximately 15 times.
6. Extract air from the fuel filter by removing the bolt with a cross-tip screw driver and reinstall the bolt.
7. Pump up and down (1) approximately 5 times.

✻ NOTICE

- **Use cloths when you extract air so that the fuel is not sprayed around.**
- **Clean the fuel around the fuel filter or the injection pump before starting the engine to prevent fire.**
- **Finally, check each part if the fuel is leaking.**

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 45

AIR CLEANER

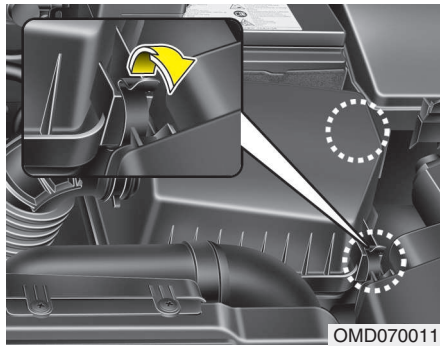

OMD070010

Filter replacement

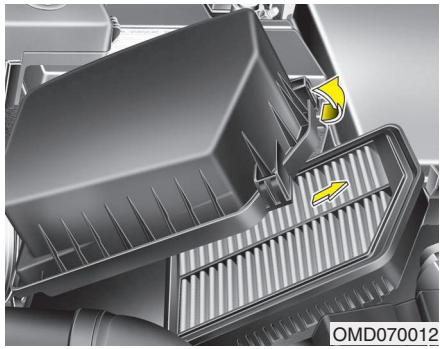
It must be replaced when necessary, and should not be washed.

You can clean the filter when inspecting the air cleaner element.

Clean the filter by using compressed air.


OMD070011

1. Loosen the air cleaner cover attaching clips and open the cover.


OMD070012

2. Wipe the inside of the air cleaner.
3. Replace the air cleaner filter.
4. Lock the cover with the cover attaching clips.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 46

Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.

If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty or sandy areas, replace the element more often than the usual recommended intervals. (Refer to "Maintenance under severe usage conditions" in this chapter.)

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not drive with the air cleaner removed; this will result in excessive engine wear.***
- ***When removing the air cleaner filter, be careful that dust or dirt does not enter the air intake, or damage may result.***
- ***We recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorized Kia dealer.***

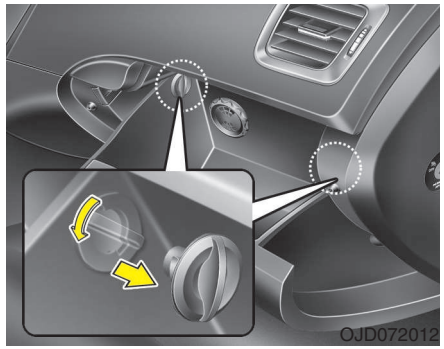
JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 47

CLIMATE CONTROL AIR FILTER

Filter inspection

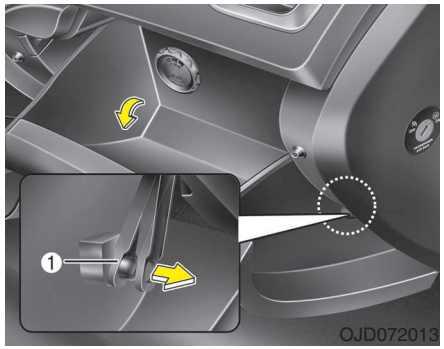
If the vehicle is operated in the severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and replaced earlier. When you, the owner, replace the climate control air filter, replace it performing the following procedure, and be careful to avoid damaging other components.

Replace the filter according to the maintenance Schedule.



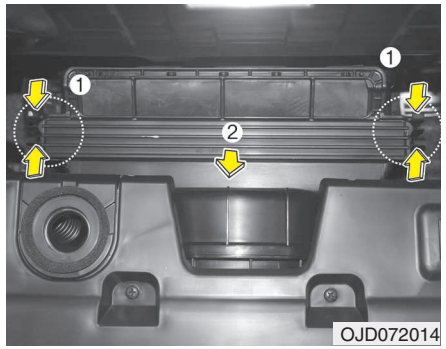
Filter replacement

1. With the glove box open, remove the stoppers on both sides.



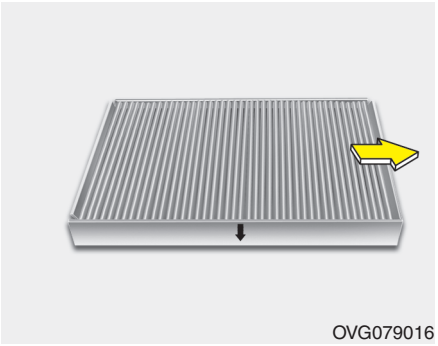
2. Open the glove box and remove the support strap (1).

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 48



OJD072014

3. Remove the cover while pressing the lock on both side of the cover and remove the climate control air filter.


OVG079016

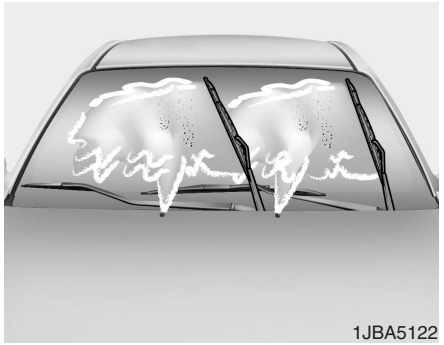
4. Replace the climate control air filter.
5. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

✻ NOTICE

When replacing the climate control air filter install it properly. Otherwise, the system may produce noise and the effectiveness of the filter may be reduced.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 49

WIPER BLADES


1JBA5122

Blade inspection

✻ NOTICE

Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes have been known to make the windshield difficult to clean.

Contamination of either the windshield or the wiper blades with foreign matter can reduce the effectiveness of the windshield wipers. Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.

Blade replacement

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

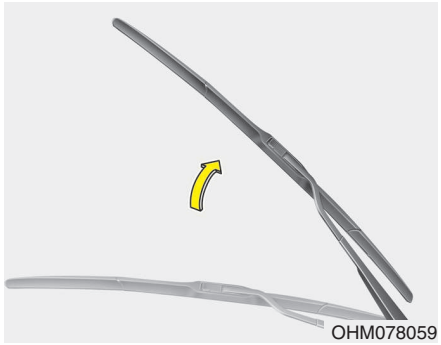
⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.

⚠ CAUTION

The use of a non-specified wiper blade could result in wiper malfunction and failure.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 50

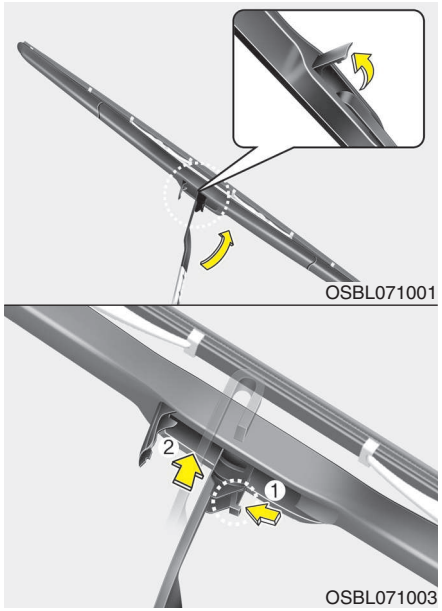

OHM078059

Front windshield wiper blade

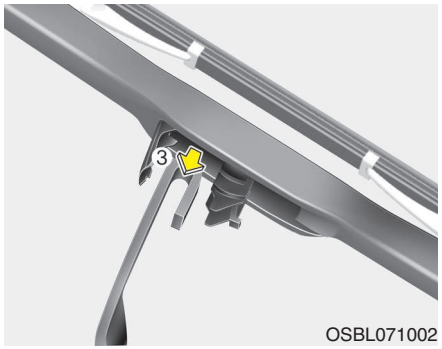
1. Raise the wiper arm.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not allow the wiper arm to fall against the windshield, since it may chip or crack the windshield.

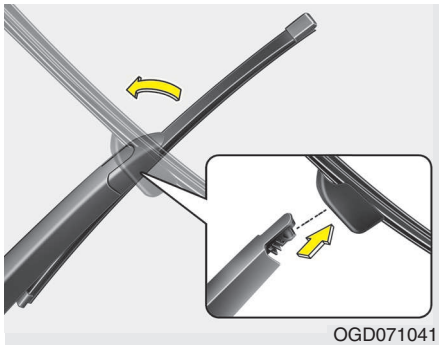


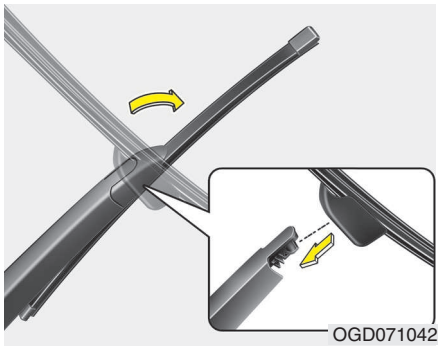
2. Turn the wiper blade clip. Then lift up the blade clip.
3. Push the clip (1) and push up the wiper arm (2).



4. Push down the wiper arm (3) and install the new blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.
5. Return the wiper arm on the windshield.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 51





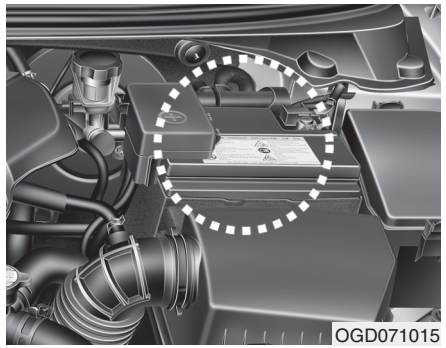
Rear window wiper blade

1. Raise the wiper arm and pull out the wiper blade assembly.
2. Install the new blade assembly by inserting the center part into the slot in the wiper arm until it clicks into place.
3. Make sure the blade assembly is installed firmly by trying to pull it slightly.

To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, we recommend that the wiper blade be replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 52

BATTERY


OGD071015

For best battery service

- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.

⚠ WARNING - Battery dangers

Always read the following instructions carefully when handling a battery.

Keep lighted cigarettes and all other flames or sparks away from the battery.

Hydrogen, a highly combustible gas, is always present in battery cells and may explode if ignited.

Keep batteries out of the reach of children because batteries contain highly corrosive SULFURIC ACID. Do not allow battery acid to contact your skin, eyes, clothing or paint finish.

(Continued)

(Continued)

If any electrolyte gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention.

If electrolyte gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the contacted area. If you feel a pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.

Wear eye protection when charging or working near a battery. Always provide ventilation when working in an enclosed space.

An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

(Continued)

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 53

(Continued)

The battery contains lead. Do not dispose of it after use. Please return the battery to an authorized Kia dealer to be recycled.

- **When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak, resulting in personal injury. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.**
- **Never attempt to recharge the battery when the battery cables are connected.**
- **The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. Never touch these components with the engine running or the ignition switched on.**

Failure to follow the above warnings can result in serious bodily injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION

If you use unauthorized electronic devices, the battery may be discharged. Never use unauthorized devices.

■ Example



OJD072039

❊ The actual battery label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Battery capacity label (see the example)

1. CMF60L-BCI : The Kia model name of battery
2. 12V : The nominal voltage
3. 60Ah(20HR) : The nominal capacity (in Ampere hours)
4. 92RC : The nominal reserve capacity (in min.)
5. 550CCA : The cold-test current in amperes by SAE
6. 440A : The cold-test current in amperes by EN

Battery recharging

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free, calcium-based battery.

- If the battery becomes discharged in a short time (because, for example, the headlights or interior lights were left on while the vehicle was not in use), recharge it by slow charging (trickle) for 10 hours.
- If the battery gradually discharges because of high electric load while the vehicle is being used, recharge it at 20-30A for two hours.

⚠ WARNING - Recharging battery

When recharging the battery, observe the following precautions:

- **The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in an area with good ventilation.**
- **Do not allow cigarettes, sparks, or flame near the battery.**
- **Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin gassing (boiling) violently or if the temperature of the electrolyte of any cell exceeds 49°C (120°F).**

(Continued)

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 54

(Continued)

- **Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.**
- **Disconnect the battery charger in the following order.**
  1. **Turn off the battery charger main switch.**
  2. **Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.**
  3. **Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.**
- **Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the engine.**
- **The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected.**

Reset items

Items should be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.

- Auto up/down window (See chapter 4)
- Sunroof (See chapter 4)
- Trip computer (See chapter 4)
- Climate control system (See chapter 4)
- Audio (See chapter 4)

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 55

TIRES AND WHEELS

Tire care

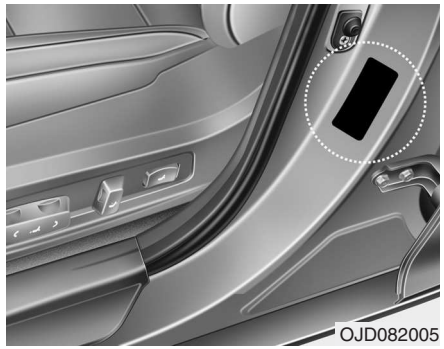
For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum fuel economy, you must always maintain recommended tire inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.

Recommended cold tire inflation pressures

All tire pressures (including the spare) should be checked when the tires are cold. “Cold Tires” means the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile).

Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, top vehicle handling, and minimum tire wear.

For recommended inflation pressure refer to “Tire and wheels” in chapter 8.



All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - Tire underinflation

Severe underinflation (70 kPa (10 psi) or more) can lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation and other tire failures that can result in the loss of vehicle control leading to severe injury or death. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 56

⚠ CAUTION

- *Underinflation also results in excessive wear, poor handling and reduced fuel economy. Wheel deformation also is possible. Keep your tire pressures at the proper levels. If a tire frequently needs refilling, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.*
- *Overinflation produces a harsh ride, excessive wear at the center of the tire tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.*

⚠ CAUTION

- *Warm tires normally exceed recommended cold tire pressures by 28 to 41 kPa (4 to 6 psi). Do not release air from warm tires to adjust the pressure or the tires will be underinflated.*
- *Be sure to reinstall the tire inflation valve caps. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.*

⚠ WARNING - Tire inflation

Overinflation or underinflation can reduce tire life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tire failure. This could result in loss of vehicle control and potential injury.

⚠ CAUTION - Tire pressure

Always observe the following:

- *Check tire pressure when the tires are cold. (After vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or hasn't been driven more than 1.6 km (1 mile) since startup.)*
- *Check the pressure of your spare tire each time you check the pressure of other tires.*
- *Never overload your vehicle. Be careful not to overload a vehicle luggage rack if your vehicle is equipped with one.*
- *Worn, old tires can cause accidents. If your tread is badly worn, or if your tires have been damaged, replace them.*

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 57

Checking tire inflation pressure

Check your tires once a month or more.

Also, check the tire pressure of the spare tire.

How to check

Use a good quality gauge to check tire pressure. You can not tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they're underinflated.

Check the tire's inflation pressure when the tires are cold. - "Cold" means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1.6 km (1 mile).

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tire and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve. Recheck the tire pressure with the tire gauge. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

⚠ WARNING

- **Inspect your tires frequently for proper inflation as well as wear and damage. Always use a tire pressure gauge.**
- **Tires with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tire failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. The recommended cold tire pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tire label located on the driver's side center pillar.**
- **Worn tires can cause accidents. Replace tires that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.**
- **Remember to check the pressure of your spare tire. Kia recommends that you check the spare every time you check the pressure of the other tires on your vehicle.**

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 58

Tire rotation

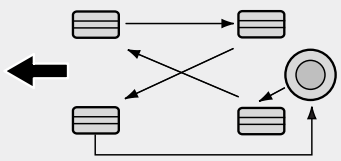
To equalize tread wear, it is recommended that the tires be rotated every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tires for correct balance.

When rotating tires, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tire pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of tire. Replace the tire if you find either of these conditions. Replace the tire if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tire pressures to specification and check lug nut tightness.

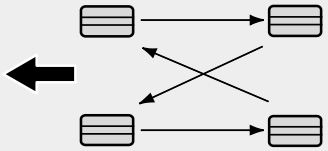
Refer to “Tire and wheels” in chapter 8.

■ With a full-size spare tire (if equipped)



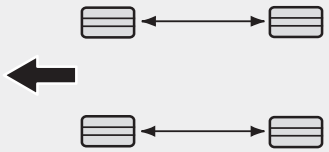
S2BLA790

■ Without a spare tire



S2BLA790A

■ Directional tires (if equipped)



CBGQ0707A

Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tires are rotated.

✻ NOTICE

Rotate radial tires that have an asymmetric tread pattern only from front to rear and not from right to left.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not use the compact spare tire for tire rotation.**
- **Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tires under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics that could result in death, severe injury, or property damage.**

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 59

Wheel alignment and tire balance

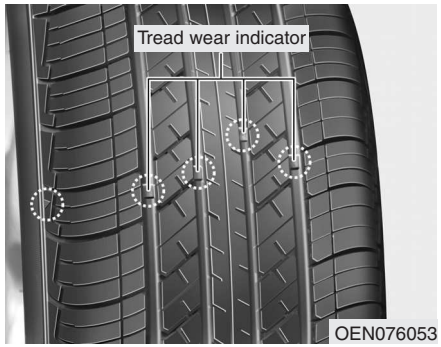
The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance.

In most cases, you will not need to have your wheels aligned again. However, if you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

⚠ CAUTION

Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminum wheels. Use only approved wheel weights.



Tire replacement

If the tire is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm (1/16 in.) of tread left on the tire. Replace the tire when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tire.

⚠ CAUTION

When replacing the tires, recheck and tighten the wheel nuts after driving about 1,000 km (620miles). If the steering wheel shakes or the vehicle vibrates while driving, the tire is out of balance. Align the tire balance. If the problem is not solved, we recommend that you contact an authorized kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

We recommend that when replacing tires, use the same originally supplied with the vehicles.
If not, that affects driving performance.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 60

⚠ WARNING - Replacing tires

- **Driving on worn-out tires is very hazardous and will reduce braking effectiveness, steering accuracy, and traction.**
- **Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide for safe ride and handling capability. Do not use a size and type of tire and wheel that is different from the one that is originally installed on your vehicle. It can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could lead to handling failure or rollover and serious injury. When replacing the tires, be sure to equip all four tires with the tire and wheel of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The use of any other tire size or type may seriously affect ride, handling, ground clearance, stopping distance, body to tire clearance, snow tire clearance, and speedometer reliability.**
- **It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that is not possible, or necessary, then replace the two front or two rear tires as a pair. Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.**
- **The ABS works by comparing the speed of the wheels. Tire size can affect wheel speed. When replacing tires, all 4 tires must use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Using tires of a different size can cause the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) and ESC (Electronic Stability Control) to work irregularly.**

Compact spare tire replacement (if equipped)

A compact spare tire has a shorter tread life than a regular size tire. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tire. The replacement compact spare tire should be the same size and design tire as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tire wheel. The compact spare tire is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tire wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tire.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 61

Wheel replacement

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width and offset.

⚠ WARNING

A wheel that is not the correct size may adversely affect wheel and bearing life, braking and stopping abilities, handling characteristics, ground clearance, body-to-tire clearance, snow chain clearance, speedometer and odometer calibration, headlight aim and bumper height.

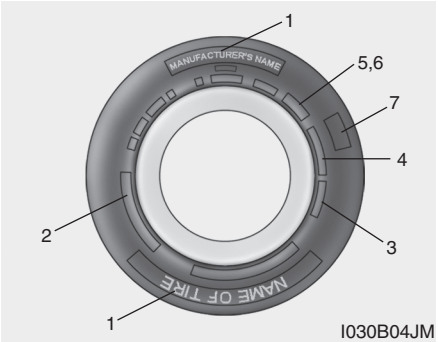
Tire traction

Tire traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tires, tires that are improperly inflated or on slippery road surfaces. Tires should be replaced when tread wear indicators appear. To reduce the possibility of losing control, slow down whenever there is rain, snow or ice on the road.

Tire maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tire wear. If you find a tire is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

When you have new tires installed, make sure they are balanced. This will increase vehicle ride comfort and tire life. Additionally, a tire should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.



Tire sidewall labeling

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides the tire identification number (TIN) for safety standard certification. The TIN can be used to identify the tire in case of a recall.

1. Manufacturer or brand name

Manufacturer or Brand name is shown.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 62

2. Tire size designation

A tire's sidewall is marked with a tire size designation. You will need this information when selecting replacement tires for your car. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tire size designation mean.

Example tire size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tire size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

195/65R15 91H

P - Applicable vehicle type (tires marked with the prefix "P" are intended for use on passenger vehicles or light trucks; however, not all tires have this marking).

195 - Tire width in millimeters.

65 - Aspect ratio. The tire's chapter height as a percentage of its width.

R - Tire construction code (Radial).

15 - Rim diameter in inches.

91 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry.

H - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this chapter for additional information.

Wheel size designation

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the wheel size designation mean.

Example wheel size designation:

6.0JX15

6.0 - Rim width in inches.

J - Rim contour designation.

15 - Rim diameter in inches.

Tire speed ratings

The chart below lists many of the different speed ratings currently being used for passenger cars. The speed rating is part of the tire size designation on the sidewall of the tire. This symbol corresponds to that tire's designed maximum safe operating speed.

Speed Rating Symbol	Maximum Speed
S	180 km/h (112 mph)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
W	270 km/h (167 mph)
Y	300 km/h (186 mph)

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 63

3. Checking tire life
(TIN : Tire Identification Number)

Any tires that are over 6 years, based on the manufacturing date, tire strength and performance, decline with age naturally (even unused spare tires). Therefore, the tires (including the spare tire) should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tire sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code. The DOT Code is a series of numbers on a tire consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

DOT : XXXX XXXX OOOO

The front part of the DOT means a plant code number, tire size and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 1615 represents that the tire was produced in the 16th week of 2015.

⚠ WARNING - Tire age

Tires degrade over time, even when they are not being used. Regardless of the remaining tread, it is recommended that tires generally be replaced after six (6) years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process. Failure to follow this Warning can result in sudden tire failure, which could lead to a loss of control and an accident involving serious injury or death.

4. Tire ply composition and material

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric are in the tire. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tire, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter "R" means radial ply construction; the letter "D" means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter "B" means belted-bias ply construction.

5. Maximum permissible inflation pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tire. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure. Refer to the Tire and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

6. Maximum load rating

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. When replacing the tires on the vehicle, always use a tire that has the same load rating as the factory installed tire.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 64

7. Uniform tire quality grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum chapter width.

For example:

TREADWEAR 200

TRACTION AA

TEMPERATURE A

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times (1½) as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm because of variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

These grades are molded on the side-walls of passenger vehicle tires. The tires available as standard or optional equipment on your vehicles may vary with respect to grade.

Traction - AA, A, B & C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tires ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature -A, B & C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by the law.

⚠ WARNING - Tire temperature

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat build-up and possible sudden tire failure. This can cause loss of vehicle control and serious injury or death.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 65

Low aspect ratio tire (if equipped)

Low aspect ratio tires, whose aspect ratio is lower than 50, are provided for sporty looks.

Because the low aspect ratio tires are optimized for handling and braking, it may be more uncomfortable to ride in and there is more noise compare with normal tires.

⚠ CAUTION

Because the sidewall of the low aspect ratio tire is shorter than the normal, the wheel and tire of the low aspect ratio tire is easier to be damaged. So, follow the instructions below.

- When driving on a rough road or off road, drive cautiously because tires and wheels may be damaged. And after driving, inspect tires and wheels.

- When passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or curb stone, drive slowly so that the tires and wheels are not damaged.

- If the tire is impacted, we recommend that you inspect the tire condition or contact an authorized Kia dealer.

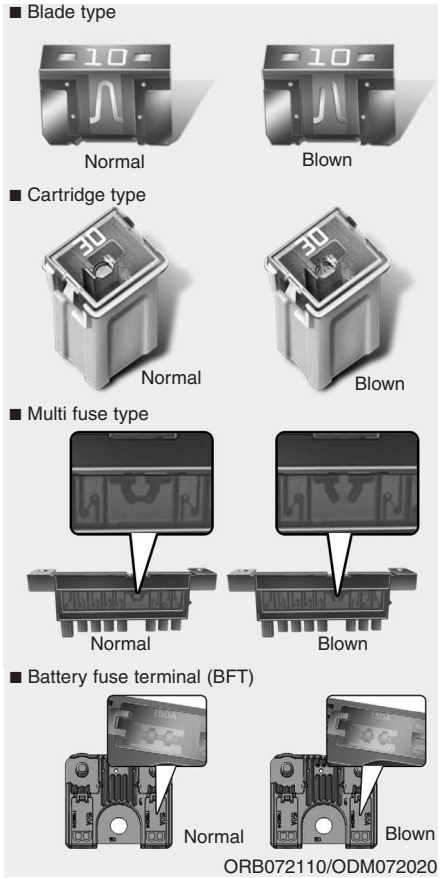
- To prevent damage to the tire, inspect the tire condition and pressure every 3,000km.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***It is not easy to recognize the tire damage with your own eyes. But if there is the slightest hint of tire damage, even though you cannot see the tire damage with your own eyes, have the tire checked or replaced because the tire damage may cause air leakage from the tire.***
- ***If the tire is damaged by driving on a rough road, off road, pothole, manhole, or curb stone, it will not be covered by the warranty.***
- ***You can find out the tire information on the tire sidewall.***

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 66

FUSES



A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

This vehicle has 3 (or 4) fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster, others in the engine compartment near the battery.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse will be melted.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel.

Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating.

Before replacing a blown fuse, move to safe place, turn off the engine and all electric devices, and disconnect the negative battery cable.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved and we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.

Four kinds of fuses are used: blade type for lower amperage rating, cartridge type, battery fuse terminal and multi fuse type for higher amperage ratings.

⚠ WARNING - Fuse replacement

- **Never replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.**
- **A higher capacity fuse could cause damage and possibly a fire.**
- **Never install a wire or aluminum foil instead of the proper fuse - even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and a possible fire.**
- **Do not arbitrarily modify or add-on electric wiring of the vehicle.**

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.

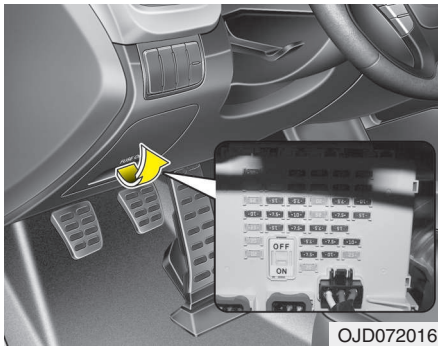
✻ NOTICE

The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 67

⚠ CAUTION

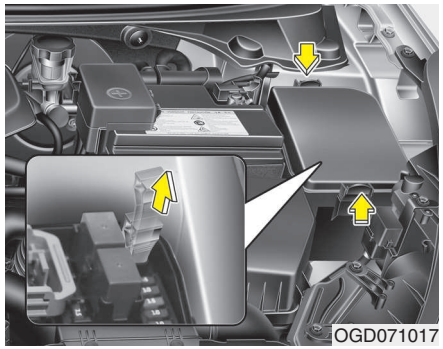
- ***When replacing a blown fuse or relay with a new one, make sure the new fuse or relay fits tightly into the clips. The incomplete fastening fuse or relay may cause the vehicle wiring and electric systems damage and a possible fire.***
- ***Do not remove fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts. The fuses, relays and terminals may be fastened incompletely, and it may cause a possible fire. If fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts are blown, we recommend that you consult with an authorized Kia dealer.***
- ***Do not input any other objects except fuses or relays into fuse/relay terminals such as a driver or wiring. It may cause contact failure and system malfunction.***
- ***Do not plug in screwdrivers or aftermarket wiring into the terminal originally designed for fuse and relays only. The electrical system and wiring of the vehicle interior may be damaged or burned due to contact failure.***



OJD072016

Inner panel fuse replacement

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Open the fuse panel cover.


OGD071017

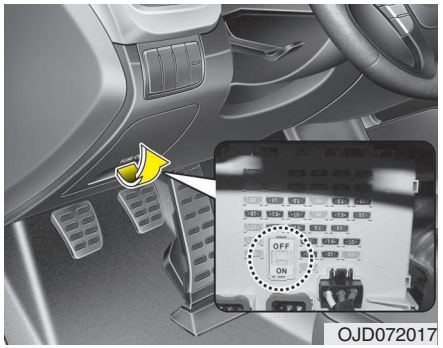
3. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided in the engine compartment fuse panel.
4. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown.
5. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips.

If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.

If you do not have a spare, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle, such as the cigar lighter fuse.

If the headlights, fog lights, turn signal lights, position lights or interior lights do not work and there is nothing wrong with the bulbs, we recommend that you consult with an authorized Kia dealer.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:30 PM Page 68



Fuse switch

Always, put the fuse switch at the ON position.

If you move the switch to the OFF position, some items such as audio and digital clock must be reset and transmitter (or smart key) may not work properly.

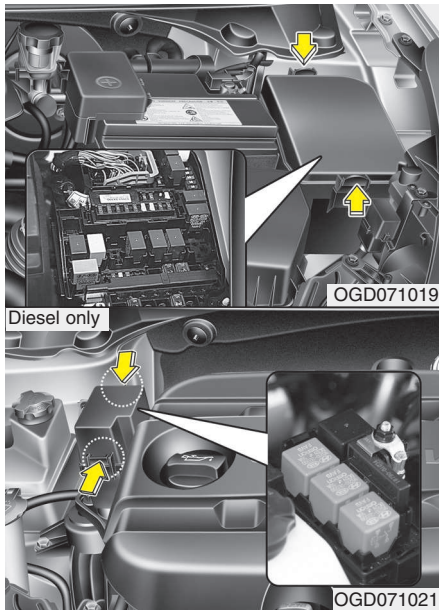
When the fuse switch is in the OFF position, a message "Turn on fuse switch" will illuminate on the cluster.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Always place the fuse switch in the ON position while driving the vehicle.***
- ***Do not move the fuse switch repeatedly. The fuse switch may be worn out.***

✻ NOTICE

If you need to park your vehicle for prolonged periods more than 1 month, move the fuse switch to the OFF position to prevent the battery being discharged.



Engine compartment panel fuse replacement

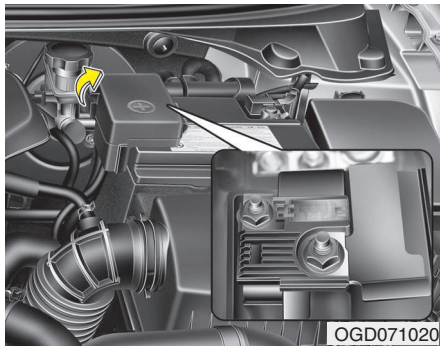
1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:31 PM Page 69

2. Remove the fuse box cover by pressing the tap and pulling up. When the blade type fuse is disconnected, remove it by using the clip designed for changing fuses located in the engine room fuse box. Upon removal, securely insert reserve fuse of equal quantity.
3. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse panel.
4. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

After checking the fuse box in the engine compartment, install the fuse box cover securely. If not, water leaking may cause electrical failures.



Main fuse

Electrical equipments are not working even though inner panel and engine compartment fuses are not blown, or many of these are not working at the same time, it may has blown the main fuse(Battery Fuse Terminal type) inside of the battery(+) cap.

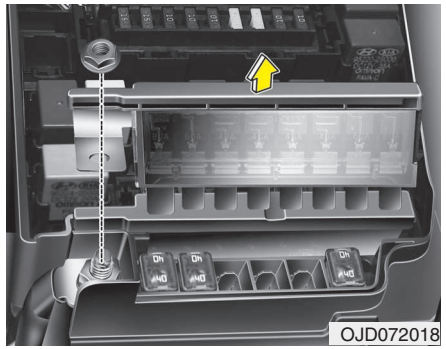
If the main fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
4. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
5. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***After checking the main fuse, install the cover securely when you close the cover, check the locking sound.***
  If not, electrical failures may occur from water leaking in.
- ***Visually inspect the battery cap for secure closing. If the battery cap is not securely latched, the electrical system may be damaged to due influx of moisture into the system.***

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:31 PM Page 70



Multi fuse

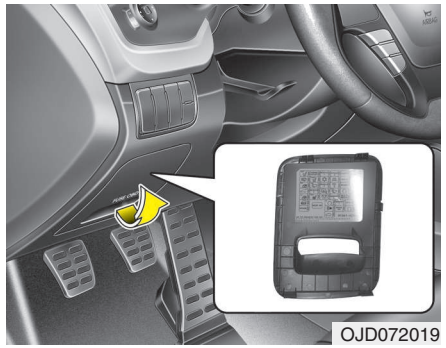
If the multi fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the fuse panel on the right side in the engine compartment.
4. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
5. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
6. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

✻ NOTICE

If the multi fuse or main fuse is blown, we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:31 PM Page 71


OJD072019

Fuse/relay panel description

Inner fuse panel

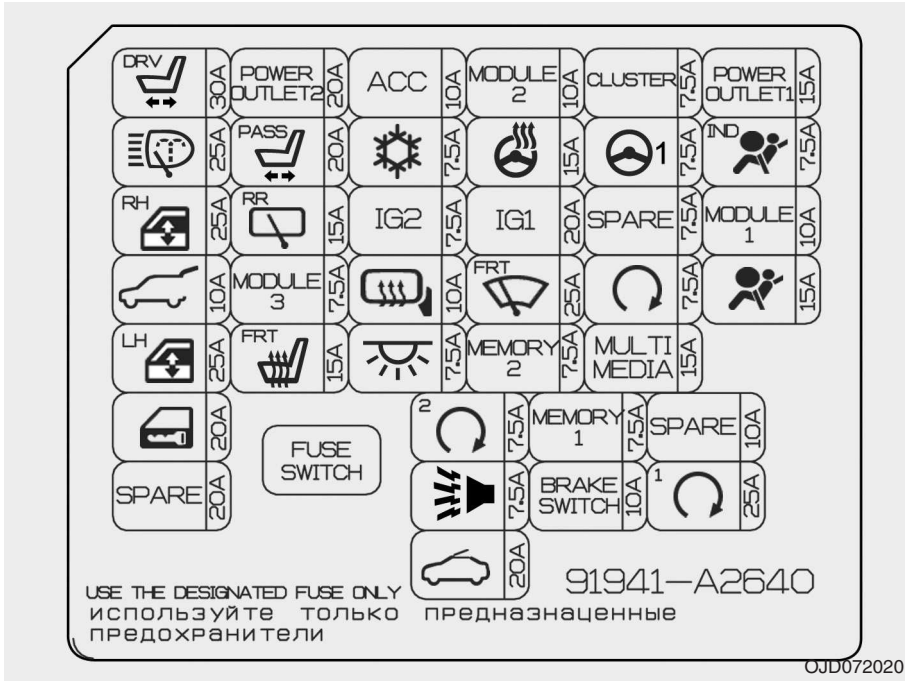
Inside the fuse/relay panel covers, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay name and capacity.

✻ NOTICE

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse panel in your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.

✻ NOTICE

The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.



OJD072020

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:31 PM Page 72

Instrument panel (Driver's side fuse panel)

No.	Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Protected component
1	30A	DRV	P/SEAT DRV	4WAY : Driver Lumbar Support Switch 6WAY : Driver Seat Manual Switch, Driver IMS Module
2	25A		H/LP WASHER	ICM Relay Box (Head Lamp Washer Relay)
3	25A	RH	P/WDW RH	Power Window Relay RH, Driver/Passenger Safety Power Window Module, Rear Safety Power Window Module RH
4	10A		T/GATE OPEN	Tail Gate Relay
5	25A	LH	P/WDW LH	Power Window Relay LH, Driver/Passenger Safety Power Window Module, Rear Safety Power Window Module LH
6	20A		DR LOCK	Door Lock/Unlock Relay, Dead Lock Relay
7	20A	SPARE	SPARE	-
8	20A	POWER OUTLET2	POWER OUTLET 2	Cigarette Lighter, Rear Power Outlet
9	20A	PASS	P/SEAT ASS	Passenger Lumbar Support Switch
10	15A	RR	RR WIPER	ICM Relay Box (Rear Wiper Relay), Rear Wiper Motor
11	7.5A	MODULE 3	MODULE 3	Auto Light & Photo Sensor, AT lever (Shift Lock), Hazard Switch
12	15A	FRT	S/HEATER FRT	Driver/Passenger Seat Warmer Module
13	10A	ACC	ACC	A/V & Navigation Head Unit (W/O ISG), Audio (W/O ISG), DC-DC Convertor (With ISG), Digital Clock, Smart Key Control Module, BCM, Outside Mirror Switch, Outside Mirror

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:31 PM Page 73

No.	Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Protected component
14	7.5A		A/CON	Cluster Ionizer, A/C Control Module, Blower Relay, PTC Relay
15	7.5A	IG2	IG2	ICM Relay Box (Head Lamp Washer Relay), Rain Sensor, BCM, Electro Chromic Mirror, Panorama Sunroof, Smart, Key Control Module, Passenger Seat Warmer Module, Driver Seat Warmer Module
16	10A		HTD MIRR	Driver/Passenger Outside Mirror, ECU, A/C Control Module
17	7.5A		INTERIOR LAMP	Glove Box Lamp, Luggage Lamp, Vanity Lamp LH/RH, Room Lamp, Overhead Console Lamp
18	7.5A	2	PDM 2	Smart Key Control Module, Start/Stop Button Switch
19	7.5A		B/HORN	ICM Relay Box (Burglar Alarm Horn Relay)
20	20A		SUNROOF	Panorama Sunroof
21	10A	MODULE 2	MODULE 2	Electric Parking Brake Module, DC-DC Convertor (With ISG), Head Lamp Leveling Device Switch, A/C Control Module, Rear Parking Assist Sensor, Smart Parking Assist Control Module, Head Lamp LH/RH, ATM Shift Lever IND., Center Facia Switch, Crash Pad Lower Switch, Driver/Passenger Seat Warmer Module, Driver IMS Module
22	15A		HTD STRG	Steering Wheel Heater
23	20A	IG1	IG1	E/R Fuse & Relay Box (ECU4, B/UP LAMP, ABS3, TCU2 FUSE)
24	25A	FRT	WIPER	Wiper Relay , ICM Relay Box (Rain Sensor Relay), Front Wiper Motor

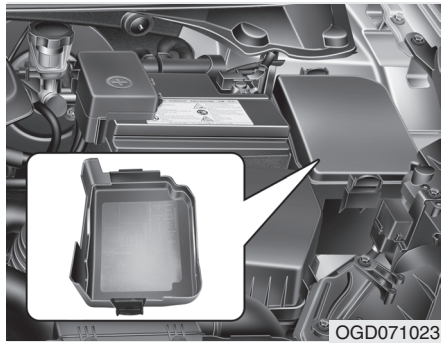
JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:31 PM Page 74

No.	Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Protected component
25	7.5A	MEMORY 2	MEMORY 2	Immobilizer Module (W/O Smart Key)
26	7.5A	MEMORY 1	MEMORY 1	Driver/Passenger Outside Mirror (Folding), Driver/Passenger Smart Key Outside Handle, Driver IMS Module, Center Facia Switch, Instrument Cluster, Tire Pressure Monitoring Module, BCM, A/C Control Module, ICM Relay Box (Outside Mirror Folding/Unfolding Relay), Ignition Key ILL. & Door Warning Switch, Rear Parking Assist Switch, Data Link Connector, Buzzer
27	10A	BRAKE SWITCH	BRAKE SWITCH	Smart Key Control Module, Stop Lamp Switch
28	7.5A	CLUSTER	CLUSTER	Instrument Cluster, Digital Clock
29	7.5A		POWER STEERING	EPS Unit
30	7.5A	SPARE	SPARE	-
31	7.5A		START	Start Relay, ECU, Ignition Lock Switch, Transaxle Range Switch, TCU, Smart Key Control Module
32	15A	MULTI MEDIA	MULTI MEDIA	A/V & Navigation Head Unit (W/O ISG), Audio (W/O ISG), DC-DC Convertor (With ISG), Digital Clock
33	10A	SPARE	SPARE	-
34	25A		PDM 1	Smart Key Control Module
35	15A	POWER OUTLET1	P/OUTLET 1	Front Power Outlet

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:31 PM Page 75

No.	Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Protected component
36	7.5A	IND	A/BAG IND	Instrument Cluster
37	10A	MODULE 1	MODULE 1	BCM, Tire Pressure Monitoring Module, AT Lever, Audio, Adaptive Front Lighting Module, LDWS Unit
38	15A		A/BAG	SRS Control Module

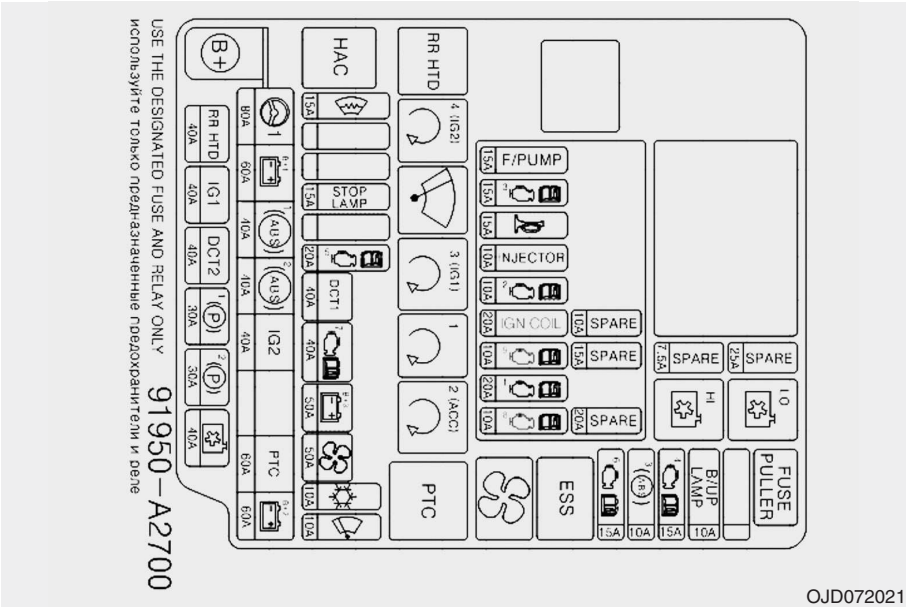
JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:31 PM Page 76


OGD071023

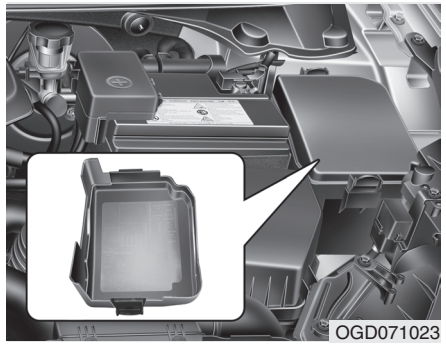
Engine compartment fuse panel (for gasoline engine MPI, GDI)

✻ NOTICE

The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.



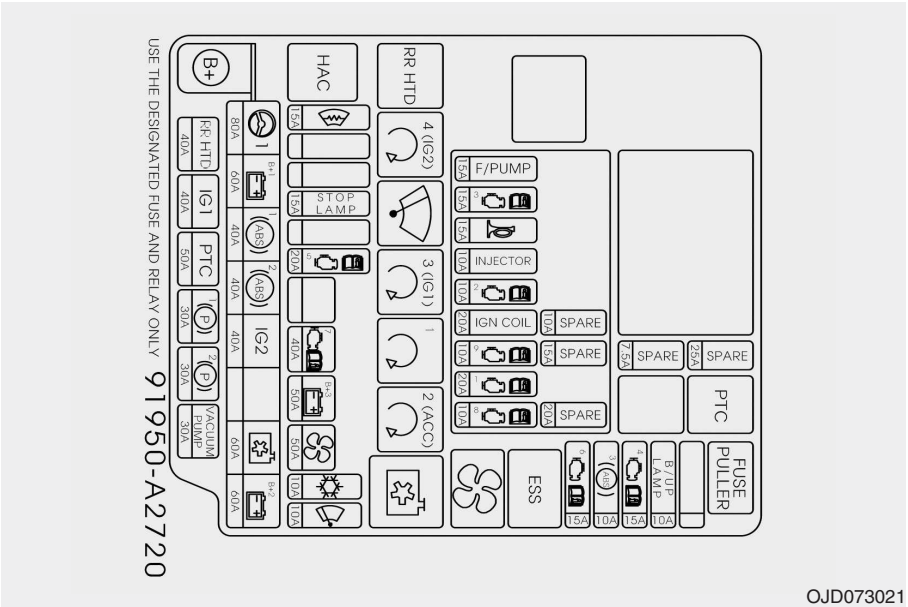
JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:31 PM Page 77



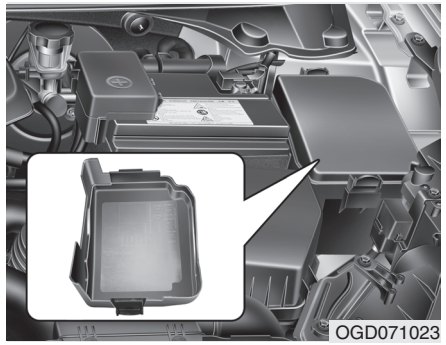
Engine compartment fuse panel (for gasoline engine T-GDI)

✻ NOTICE

The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.



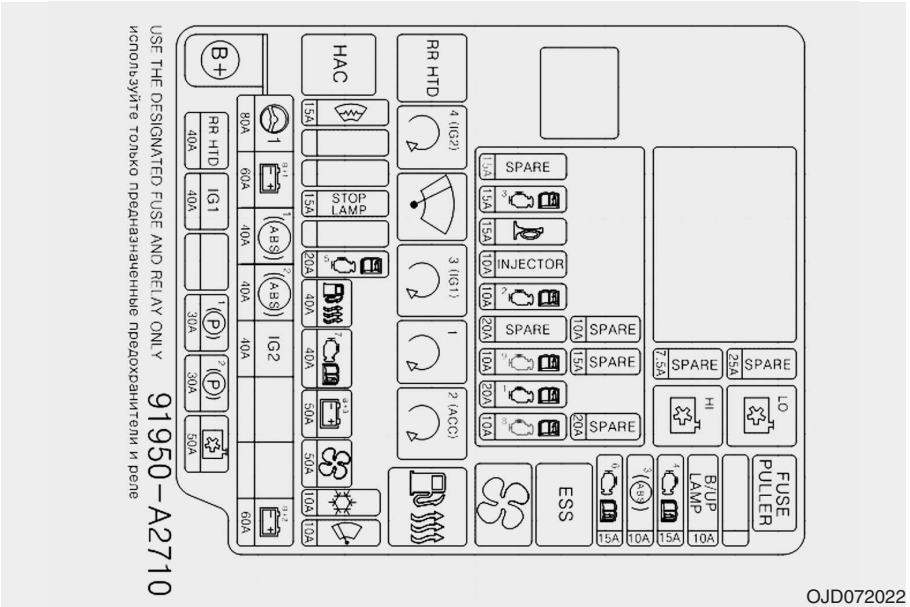
JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:31 PM Page 78



Engine compartment fuse panel (for diesel engine)

✻ NOTICE

The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.



JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:31 PM Page 79

Engine compartment main fuse panel (for gasoline engine MPI, GDI)

Fuse	Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Protected component
MULTI FUSE	80A	1	POWER STEERING	EPS Unit
	60A	B+1	B+1	Inner Fuse Panel, IPS1 (H/LAMP HI LH,H/LAMP LOW LH, FRT TURN LH, POSITION LAMP LH), IPS2 (STATIC BENDING LAMP LH/RH, DRL LH/RH)
	40A	1 ABS	ABS1	ESC Control Module, ABS Control Module
	40A	2 ABS	ABS2	ESC Control Module, ABS Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector
	40A	IG2	IG2	W/O Smart Key : Ignition Switch, START RELAY With Smart Key : IG2 RELAY, START RELAY
	60A	PTC	PTC	PTC Relay
	60A	B+2	B+2	Inner Fuse Panel, IPS3 (H/LAMP HI RH,H/LAMP LOW RH, FRT TURN RH,POSITION LAMP RH), IPS4 (FRT FOG LAMP LH/RH, REAR TURN LH/RH), IPS5 (REAR FOG LAMP, INT TAIL LAMP)
FUSE	40A	RR HTD	RR HTD	RR HTD RELAY , RR HTD
	40A	IG1	IG1	W/O Smart Key : Ignition Switch With Smart Key : IG1 RELAY, ACC RELAY, INNER FUSE PANEL (FUSE No. - 8/13/21/23/28/29/35/36/37/38)
	40A	DCT2	DCT2	TCU (DCT)
	30A	1 P	EPB1	Electric Parking Brake Module
	30A	2 P	EPB2	Electric Parking Brake Module
	40A		C/FAN	C/FAN LO RELAY, C/FAN HI RELAY

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:31 PM Page 80

Fuse	Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Protected component
FUSE	15A		DEICER	ICM Relay Box (Front Deicer Relay)
	15A	STOP LAMP	STOP LAMP	Stop Signal Electronic Relay , HAC RELAY
	20A	5 	TCU1	TCU
	40A	DCT1	DCT1	TCU (DCT)
	40A	7 	EMS	EMS Box (FUSE No. - 1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)
	50A	B+3 	B+3	Inner Fuse Panel (Leak Current Autocut Device, Fuse No. - 6/19/20/17/32/26/25)
	50A		BLOWER	BLOWER RELAY
	10A		A/CON	A/C Control Module
	10A		WIPER FRT	ECU, Rain Sensor
	10A	B/UP LAMP	B/UP LP	M/T : Back-up Lamp Switch, A/T : Transaxle Range Switch, TCU
	15A	4 	ECU4	Smart Key Control Module, Immobilizer Module, ECU
	10A	3	ABS3	ESC Control Module, ABS Control Module, Yaw Rate Sensor, HAC, ESS RELAY
	15A	6 	TCU2	Transaxle Range Switch, TCU, Stop Lamp Switch

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:31 PM Page 81

Symbol	Relay Name	Type
LO	COOLING FAN LOW RELAY	PLUG MICRO
HI	COOLING FAN HIGH RELAY	PLUG MICRO
ESS	ESS RELAY	PLUG MICRO
	BLOWER RELAY	PLUG MICRO
RR HTD	REAR DEFOGGER RELAY	PLUG MICRO
4 (IG2)	IG2 RELAY	PLUG MICRO
	FRT WIPER RELAY	PLUG MICRO
3 (IG1)	IG1 RELAY	PLUG MICRO
1	START RELAY	PLUG MICRO
2 (ACC)	ACC RELAY	PLUG MICRO
PTC	PTC RELAY	PLUG MINI
HAC	HAC RELAY	PLUG MICRO

Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Relay Name
15A	F/PUMP	F/PUMP	FUEL PUMP RELAY
15A	3	ECU3	ECU
15A		HORN	Horn Relay
10A	INJECTOR	INJECTOR	INJECTOR, ECU, FUEL PUMP RELAY
10A	2	ECU2	ECU
20A	IGN COIL	IGN COIL	Ignition Coil #1/#2/#3/#4, Condenser
10A	9	SENSOR2	E/R Fuse & Relay Box (COOLING LOW RELAY), Oil Control Valve #1/#2
20A	1	ECU1	ECU
10A	8	SENSOR1	Oxygen Sensor (UP/DOWN), Variable Intake Solenoid Valve, Purge Control Solenoid Valve

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:31 PM Page 82

Engine compartment main fuse panel (for gasoline engine T-GDI)

Fuse	Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Protected component
MULTI FUSE	80A		POWER STEERING	EPS Unit
	60A		B+1	Inner Fuse Panel, IPS1 (H/LAMP HI LH,H/LAMP LOW LH, FRT TURN LH, POSITION LAMP LH), IPS2 (STATIC BENDING LAMP LH/RH, DRL LH/RH)
	40A		ABS1	ESC Control Module, ABS Control Module
	40A		ABS2	ESC Control Module, ABS Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector
	40A	IG2	IG2	W/O Smart Key : Ignition Switch, START RELAY With Smart Key : IG2 RELAY, START RELAY
	60A		C/FAN	C/FAN Relay
	60A		B+2	Inner Fuse Panel, IPS3 (H/LAMP HI RH,H/LAMP LOW RH, FRT TURN RH, POSITION LAMP RH), IPS4 (FRT FOG LAMP LH/RH, REAR TURN LH/RH), IPS5 (REAR FOG LAMP, INT TAIL LAMP)
FUSE	40A	RR HTD	RR HTD	RR HTD RELAY , RR HTD
	40A	IG1	IG1	W/O Smart Key : Ignition Switch With Smart Key : IG1 RELAY, ACC RELAY, INNER FUSE PANEL (FUSE No. - 8/13/21/23/28/29/35/36/37/38)
	50A	PTC	PTC	PTC Relay
	30A		EPB1	Electric Parking Brake Module
	30A		EPB2	Electric Parking Brake Module
	30A	VACUUM PUMP	VACUUM PUMP	VACUUM PUMP

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:31 PM Page 83

Fuse	Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Protected component
FUSE	15A		DEICER	ICM Relay Box (Front Deicer Relay)
	15A	STOP LAMP	STOP LAMP	Stop Signal Electronic Relay , HAC RELAY
	20A	5	TCU1	TCU
	40A	DCT1	DCT1	TCU (DCT)
	40A	7	EMS	EMS Box (FUSE No. - 1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)
	50A	B+3	B+3	Inner Fuse Panel (Leak Current Autocut Device, Fuse No. - 6/19/20/17/32/26/25)
	50A		BLOWER	BLOWER RELAY
	10A		A/CON	A/C Control Module
	10A		WIPER FRT	ECU, Rain Sensor
	10A	B/UP LAMP	B/UP LP	M/T : Back-up Lamp Switch, A/T : Transaxle Range Switch, TCU
	15A	4	ECU4	Smart Key Control Module, Immobilizer Module, ECU
	10A	3 ABS	ABS3	ESC Control Module, ABS Control Module, Yaw Rate Sensor, HAC, ESS RELAY
	15A	6	TCU2	Transaxle Range Switch, TCU, Stop Lamp Switch

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:31 PM Page 84

Symbol	Relay Name	Type
PTC	PTC RELAY	PLUG MICRO
ESS	ESS RELAY	PLUG MICRO
	BLOWER RELAY	PLUG MICRO
RR HTD	REAR DEFOGGER RELAY	PLUG MICRO
	IG2 RELAY	PLUG MICRO
	FRT WIPER RELAY	PLUG MICRO
	IG1 RELAY	PLUG MICRO
	START RELAY	PLUG MICRO
	ACC RELAY	PLUG MICRO
	COOLING FAN	PLUG MINI
HAC	HAC RELAY	PLUG MICRO

Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Relay Name
15A	F/PUMP	F/PUMP	FUEL PUMP RELAY
15A		ECU3	ECU
15A		HORN	Horn Relay
10A	INJECTOR	INJECTOR	INJECTOR, ECU, FUEL PUMP RELAY
10A		ECU2	ECU
20A	IGN COIL	IGN COIL	Ignition Coil #1/#2/#3/#4, Condenser
10A		SENSOR2	E/R Fuse & Relay Box (COOLING LOW RELAY), Oil Control Valve #1/#2
20A		ECU1	ECU
10A		SENSOR1	Oxygen Sensor (UP/DOWN), Variable Intake Solenoid Valve, Purge Control Solenoid Valve

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:31 PM Page 85

Engine compartment main fuse panel (for diesel engine)

Fuse	Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Protected component
MULTI FUSE	80A		POWER STEERING	EPS Unit
	60A		B+1	Inner Fuse Panel, IPS1 (H/LAMP HI LH,H/LAMP LOW LH, FRT TURN LH, POSITION LAMP LH), IPS2 (STATIC BENDING LAMP LH/RH, DRL LH/RH)
	40A		ABS1	ESC Control Module, ABS Control Module
	40A		ABS2	ESC Control Module, ABS Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector
	40A	IG2	IG2	W/O Smart Key : Ignition Switch, START RELAY With Smart Key : IG2 RELAY, START RELAY, INNER FUSE PANEL (Fuse No. - 14/24/22/15/10)
	60A		B+2	Inner Fuse Panel, IPS3 (H/LAMP HI RH,H/LAMP LOW RH, FRT TURN RH, POSITION LAMP RH), IPS4 (FRT FOG LAMP LH/RH, REAR TURN LH/RH), IPS5 (REAR FOG LAMP, INT TAIL LAMP)
FUSE	40A	RR HTD	RR HTD	RR HTD RELAY , RR HTD
	40A	IG1	IG1	W/O Smart Key : Ignition Switch With Smart Key : IG1 RELAY, ACC RELAY, INNER FUSE PANEL (Fuse No. - 38/36/21/37/ 23/29/28, Fuse No. - 13/8/35)
	30A		EPB1	Electric Parking Brake Module
	30A		EPB2	Electric Parking Brake Module
	50A		C/FAN	C/FAN LO RELAY, C/FAN HI RELAY
	15A		DEICER	ICM Relay Box (Front Deicer Relay)
	15A	STOP LAMP	STOP LAMP	Stop Signal Electronic Relay, HAC RELAY

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:32 PM Page 86

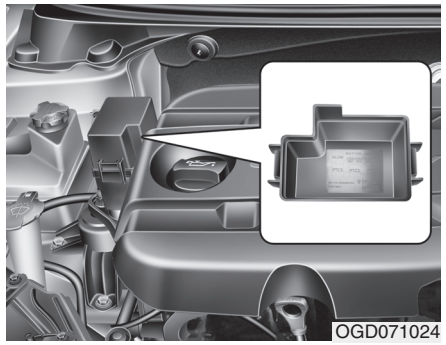
Fuse	Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Protected component
FUSE	20A	5	TCU1	TCU
	40A		FUEL HEATER	FUEL HEATER RELAY
	40A	7	EMS	EMS BOX (Fuse No. - 1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)
	50A	B+3	B+3	Inner Fuse Panel (Leak Current Autocut Device, Fuse No. - 6/19/20/17/32/26/25)
	50A		BLOWER	BLOWER RELAY
	10A		A/CON	A/C Control Module
	10A		WIPER FRT	ECU, Rain Sensor
	10A	B/UP LAMP	B/UP LP	M/T : Back-up Lamp Switch, A/T : Transaxle Range Switch, TCU
	15A	4	ECU4	Smart Key Control Module, Immobilizer Module, ECU, Air Flow Sensor, Fuel Water Sensor
	10A	3 ABS	ABS3	ESC Control Module, ABS Control Module, Yaw Rate Sensor, HAC, ESS RELAY
	15A	6	TCU2	Transaxle Range Switch, TCU

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:32 PM Page 87

Symbol	Relay Name	Type
LO	COOLING FAN LOW RELAY	PLUG MICRO
HI	COOLING FAN HIGH RELAY	PLUG MICRO
ESS	ESS RELAY	PLUG MICRO
	BLOWER RELAY	PLUG MICRO
RR HTD	REAR DEFOGGER RELAY	PLUG MICRO
4 (IG2)	IG2 RELAY	PLUG MICRO
	FRT WIPER RELAY	PLUG MICRO
3 (IG1)	IG1 RELAY	PLUG MICRO
1	START RELAY	PLUG MICRO
2 (ACC)	ACC RELAY	PLUG MICRO
	FUEL HEATER RELAY	PLUG MINI
HAC	HAC RELAY	PLUG MICRO

Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Relay Name
15A	SPARE	SPARE	-
15A		HORN	HORN RELAY
10A	2	ECU2	Oil Level Sensor, Fuel Pressure Control Valve
20A	SPARE	SPARE	-
10A	9	SENSOR2	E/R Fuse & Relay Box (COOLING FAN LOW RELAY), Lambda Sensor (D4FB), Stop Lamp Switch
20A	1	ECU1	ECU
10A	8	SENSOR1	DSL Box (PTC1 RELAY, GLOW RELAY), VGT Control Sensor, Camshaft Position Sensor, Electrical EGR Valve

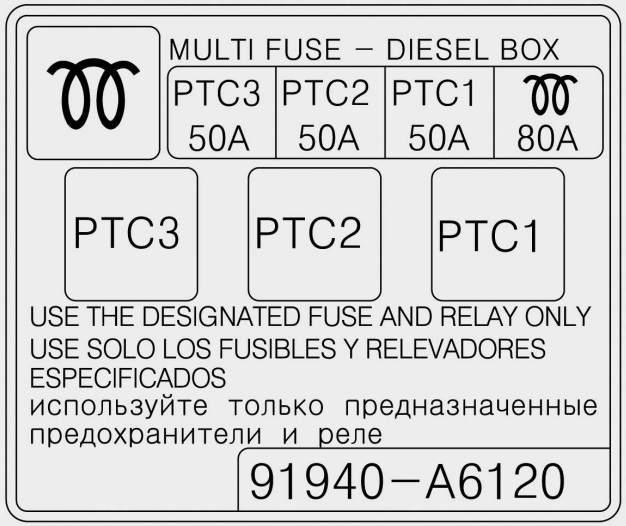
JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:32 PM Page 88



Engine compartment fuse panel (Diesel engine only)

✻ NOTICE

The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.



OGDE071059

Description	Fuse rating	Protected Component
	80A	Glow Relay
PTC 1	50A	PTC 1 Relay
PTC 2	50A	PTC 2 Relay
PTC 3	50A	PTC 3 Relay

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:32 PM Page 89

LIGHT BULBS

⚠ WARNING - Working on the lights

Prior to working on the light, firmly apply the parking brake, ensure that the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK" position (smart key: turn off the engine) and turn off the lights to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and burning your fingers or getting an electric shock.

Use only the bulbs of the specified wattage.

⚠ CAUTION

Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same wattage rating. Otherwise, it may cause damage to the fuse or electric wiring system.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***If you do not have necessary tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise, we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer. In many cases, it is difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the bulb. This is especially true if you have to remove the headlight assembly to get to the bulb(s).***

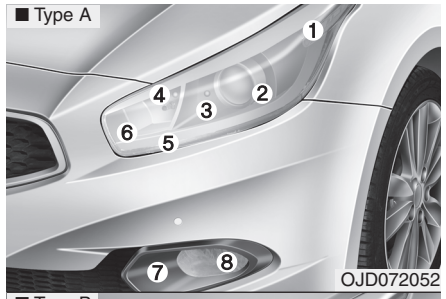
  Removing/installing the headlight assembly can result in damage to the vehicle.
- ***Do not install additional bulb or LED. If you install that, the lamp may not be operated properly and fuse box or electric wiring system may have problem.***

✻ NOTICE

After driving in heavy rain or washing the vehicle, headlight and taillight lenses could appear foggy. This condition is caused by the temperature difference between the lamp inside and outside. This is similar to the condensation on your windows inside your vehicle during rain and does not indicate a problem with your vehicle. If the water leaks into the lamp bulb circuitry, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

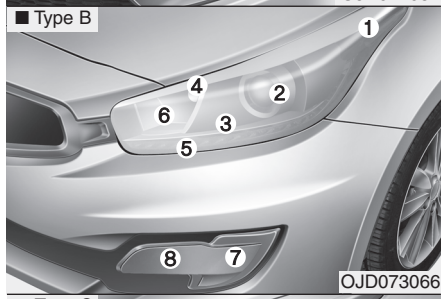
JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:32 PM Page 90

■ Type A



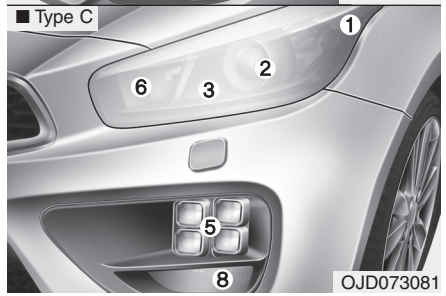
OJD072052

■ Type B



OJD073066

■ Type C

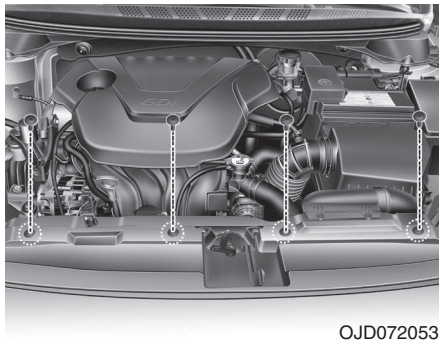


OJD073081

Front light replacement

(1) Front turn signal light
(2) Headlight (Low)
(3) Static bending light (if equipped)
(4) Position light
(5) Position light / Daytime running light (DRL, LED Type) (if equipped)
(6) Headlight (High)
(7) Daytime running light (DRL, Bulb type) (if equipped)
(8) Front fog light (if equipped)

1. Turn off the engine and open the hood.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Disconnect the power connector front the back of the headlight assembly.



OJD072053

Diesel only



OJD072054

If you can reach the bulb without removing the headlight assembly, you do not need to do step 4 to 7.

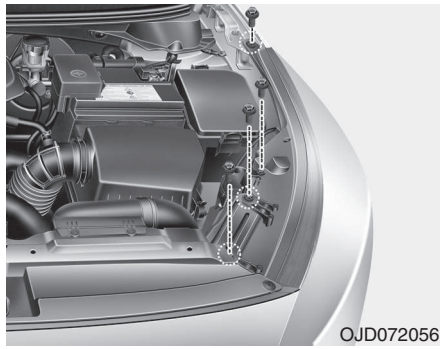
4. Loosen the retaining bolts on the front bumper .
   - Front bumper upper board : 4 EA
   - Front bumper cover : 1 EA

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:32 PM Page 91

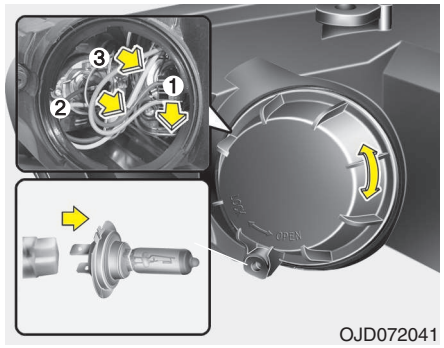

OJD072055


OJD072062

5. Pull out the front bumper cover.


OJD072056

6. Loosen the retaining bolt .
7. Pull out the headlight assembly from the body of the vehicle.



OJD072041

Headlight (High, 1) and static bending light (2, if equipped)

Follow the steps 1 to 7 from the previous chapter.

8. Remove the cover by turning it counterclockwise.
9. Disconnect the headlight bulb socket-connector.
10. Unsnap the headlight bulb retaining wire by depressing the end and pushing it upward.
11. Remove the bulb from the headlight assembly.
12. Install a new headlight bulb and snap the headlight bulb retaining wire into position by aligning the wire with the groove on the bulb.

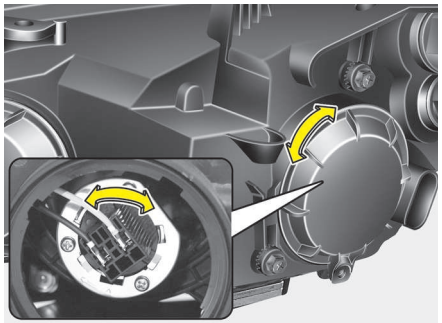
JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:32 PM Page 92

13. Connect the headlight bulb socket connector.
14. Install the headlight bulb cover by turning it clockwise.
15. Connect the power connector to the back of the headlight assembly.

Position light (3, bulb type)

Follow the steps 1 to 9 from the previous page.

10. Pull out the socket from the assembly.
11. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
12. Insert a new bulb into the socket.
13. Install the socket into the assembly.
14. Install the headlight bulb cover by turning it clockwise.



OJD072042

Headlight (Low, Non-HID Type)

Follow the steps 1 to 7 from the previous page.

8. Remove the cover by turning it counterclockwise.
9. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
10. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
11. Insert a new bulb into the socket.
12. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
13. Install the headlight bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

✻ NOTICE

We recommend that the headlight aiming be adjusted after an accident or after the headlight assembly is reinstalled at an authorized Kia dealer.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:32 PM Page 93

Headlight (Low, HID type), Position light/DRL (LED type)

If the light does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - HID Headlight low beam (if equipped)

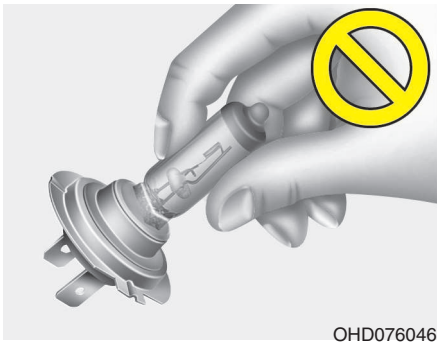
Do not attempt to replace or inspect the low beam (XENON bulb) due to electric shock danger. If the low beam (XENON bulb) is not working, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

HID lamps have superior performance vs. halogen bulbs. HID lamps are estimated by the manufacturer to last twice as long or longer than halogen bulbs depending on their frequency of use. They will probably require replacement at some point in the life of the vehicle. Cycling the headlamps on and off more than typical use will shorten HID lamps life. HID lamps do not fail in the same manner as halogen incandescent lamps. If a headlamp goes out after a period of operation but will immediately relight when the headlamp switch is cycled it is likely the HID lamp needs to be replaced. HID lighting components are more complex than conventional halogen bulbs thus have higher replacement cost.

❋ Traffic Change (For Europe)

The low beam light distribution is asymmetric. If you go abroad to a country with opposite traffic direction, this asymmetric part will dazzle oncoming car driver. To prevent dazzle, ECE regulation demand several technical solutions (ex. automatic change system, adhesive sheet, down aiming). This headlamps are designed not to dazzle opposite drivers. So, you need not change your headlamps in a country with opposite traffic direction.

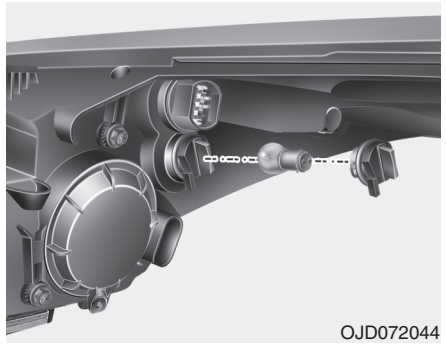


OHD076046

⚠ WARNING - Halogen bulbs

- **Halogen bulbs contain pressurized gas that will produce flying pieces of glass if broken.**
- **Always handle them carefully, and avoid scratches and abrasions. If the bulbs are lit, avoid contact with liquids. Never touch the glass with bare hands. Residual oil may cause the bulb to overheat and burst when lit. A bulb should be operated only when installed in a headlight.**
- **If a bulb is damaged or cracked, replace it immediately and carefully dispose of it.**
- **Wear eye protection when changing a bulb. Allow the bulb to cool down before handling it.**

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:32 PM Page 94



OJD072044

Turn signal light

Follow the steps 1 to 7 from the previous page.

8. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
9. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
10. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
11. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.



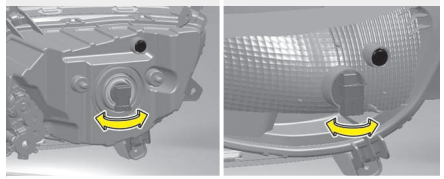
OJD072050

Front fog light, Daytime running light (if equipped)

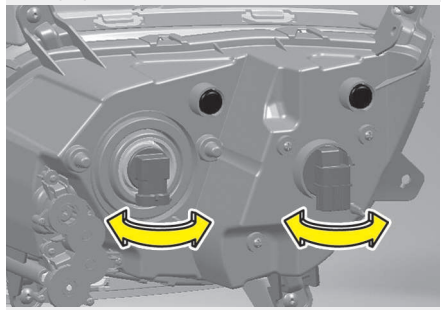
1. Pull the wheel guard down by rotating the screws.
2. Reach your hand into the back of the front bumper.
3. Disconnect the power connector from the socket.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:32 PM Page 95

■ Fog light ■ DRL

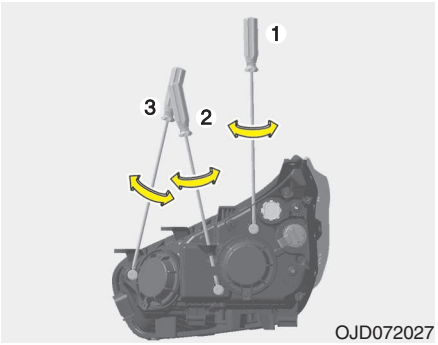


■ Fog light+DRL (Bulb type)



OJD073067/OJD073068/OJD073069

4. Remove the bulb-socket from the housing by turning the socket counter clockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the housing.
5. Install the new bulb-socket into the housing by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the housing. Push the socket into the housing and turn the socket clockwise.
6. Connect the power connector to the socket.



OJD072027

Headlight and front fog light aiming (for Europe)

Headlight aiming

Without AFLS

1. Inflate the tires to the specified pressure and remove any loads from the vehicle except the driver, spare tire, and tools.
2. The vehicle should be placed on a flat floor.
3. Draw vertical lines (Vertical lines passing through respective head lamp centers) and a horizontal line (Horizontal line passing through center of head lamps) on the screen.
4. With the head lamp and battery in normal condition, aim the head lamps so the brightest portion falls on the horizontal and vertical lines.
5. To aim the low beam left or right, turn the driver (1) clockwise or counterclockwise. To aim the low beam up or down, turn the driver (2) clockwise or counterclockwise.

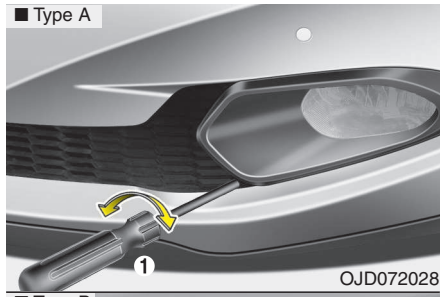
   To aim the high beam up or down, turn the driver (3) clockwise or counterclockwise.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:33 PM Page 96

With AFLS

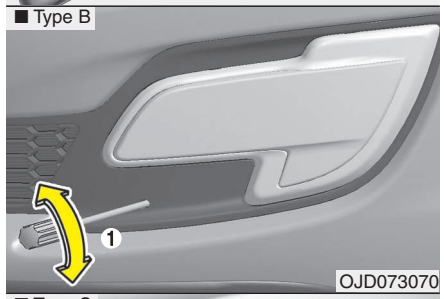
1. Turn off the engine
2. Turn the light switch to the low beam position.
3. Position the tires straight ahead with the steering wheel.
4. Turn on the engine.
5. Inflate the tires to the specified pressure and remove any loads from the vehicle except the driver, spare tire, and tools.
6. The vehicle should be placed on a flat floor.
7. Draw vertical lines (Vertical lines passing through respective head lamp centers) and a horizontal line (Horizontal line passing through center of head lamps) on the screen.
8. With the head lamp and battery in normal condition, aim the head lamps so the brightest portion falls on the horizontal and vertical lines.
9. To aim the low beam left or right, turn the driver (1) clockwise or counterclockwise. To aim the low beam up or down, turn the driver (2) clockwise or counterclockwise. To aim the high beam up or down, turn the driver (3) clockwise or counterclockwise.

■ Type A



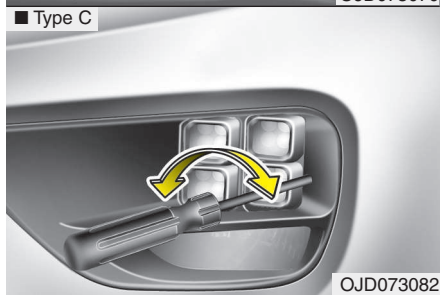
OJD072028

■ Type B



OJD073070

■ Type C



OJD073082

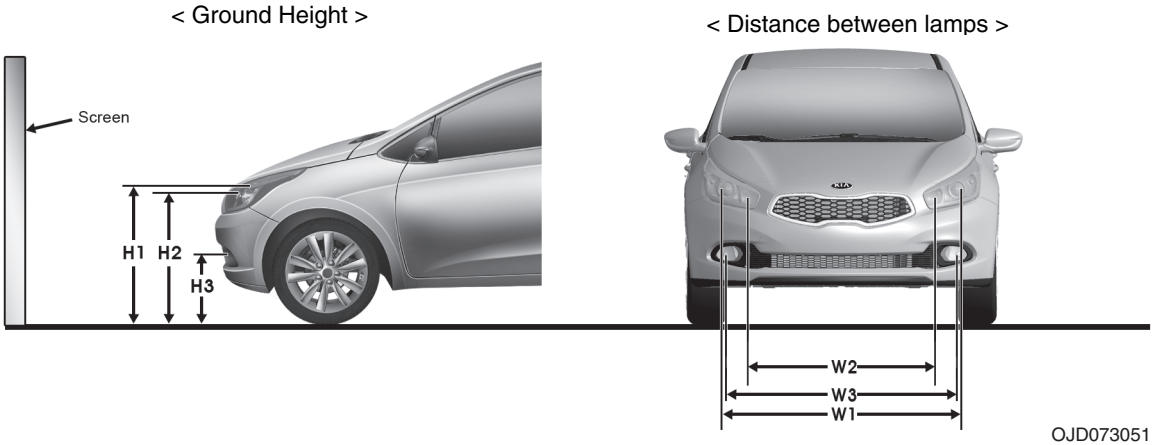
Front fog light aiming

The front fog lamp can be aimed as the same manner of the head lamps aiming.

With the front fog lamps and battery normal condition, aim the front fog lamps. To aim the front fog lamp up or down, turn the driver (1) clockwise or counterclockwise.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:33 PM Page 97

Aiming point



H1 : Height between the head lamp bulb center and ground (Low beam)
H2 : Height between the head lamp bulb center and ground (High beam)
H3 : Height between the fog lamp bulb center and ground
W1 : Distance between the two head lamp bulbs centers (Low beam)
W2 : Distance between the two head lamp bulbs centers (High beam)
W3 : Distance between the two fog lamp bulbs centers

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:33 PM Page 98

■ 5 Door and Wagon (for GDI, MPI)

Unit: mm (in)

Vehicle condition	H1		H2	H3		W1		W2	W3	
	Without AFLS	With AFLS		With DRL	Without DRL	Without AFLS	With AFLS		With DRL	Without DRL
Without driver	689 (27.1)	687 (27.0)	646 (25.4)	340 (13.4)	342 (13.5)	1,300 (51.2)	1,299 (51.1)	1,049 (41.3)	1,316 (51.8)	1,306 (51.4)
With driver	680 (26.8)	678 (26.7)	637 (25.1)	331 (13.0)	333 (13.1)					

■ 3 Door

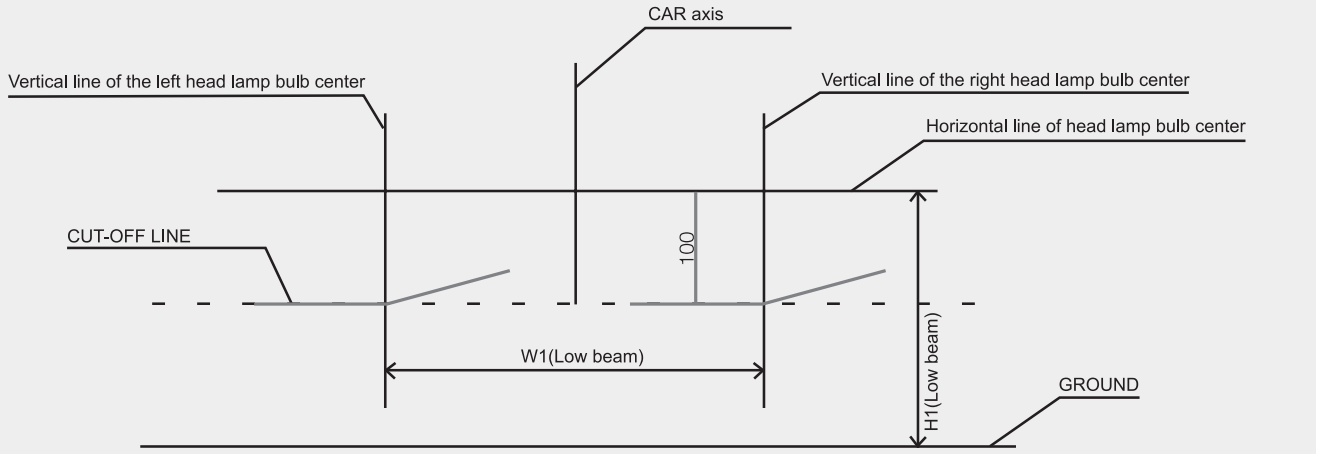
Vehicle condition	H1	H2	H3		W1	W2	W3	
			FOG	FOG + DRL			FOG	FOG + DRL
Without driver	690 (27.2)	646 (25.4)	360 (14.2)	365 (14.4)	1,300 (51.2)	1,049 (41.3)	1,320 (51.9)	1,200 (47.2)
With driver	683 (26.9)	637 (25.1)	353 (13.9)	358 (14.1)				

■ 3 and 5 Door (for T-GDI)

Vehicle condition	H1	H2	H3	W1	W2	W3
Without driver	687 (27.0)	643 (25.3)	308 (12.1)	1,300 (51.2)	1,049 (41.3)	1,308 (51.5)
With driver	680 (26.8)	636 (25.0)	301 (11.9)			

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:33 PM Page 99

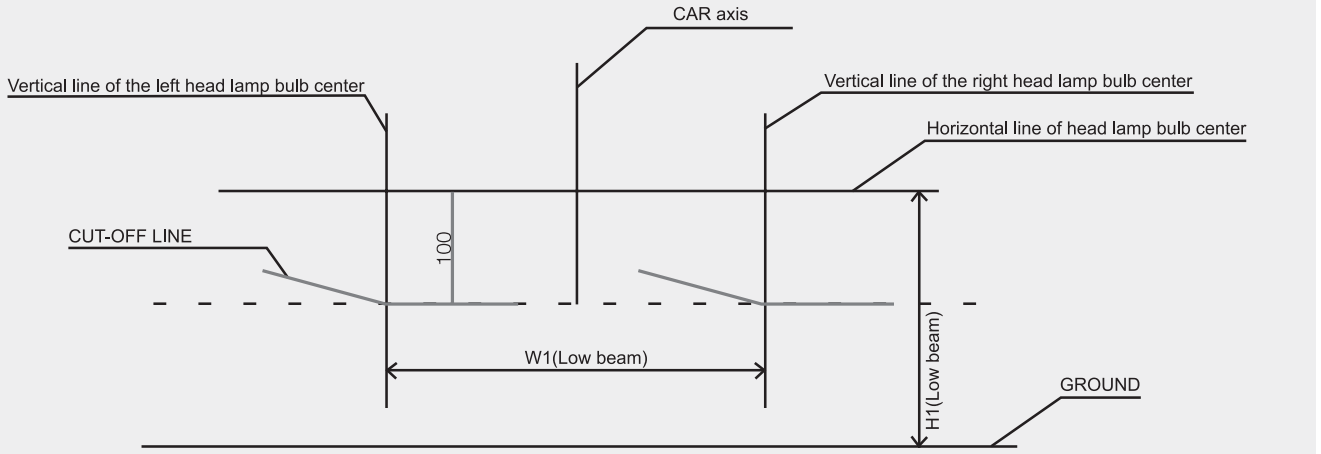
■ Based on 10m screen



Head lamp low beam (driver's side)

1. Turn the low beam on without driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the cut-off line shown in the picture.
3. When aiming the low beam, vertical aiming should be adjusted after adjusting the horizontal aiming.
4. If head lamp leveling device is equipped, adjust the head lamp leveling device switch with 0 positions.

■ Based on 10m screen

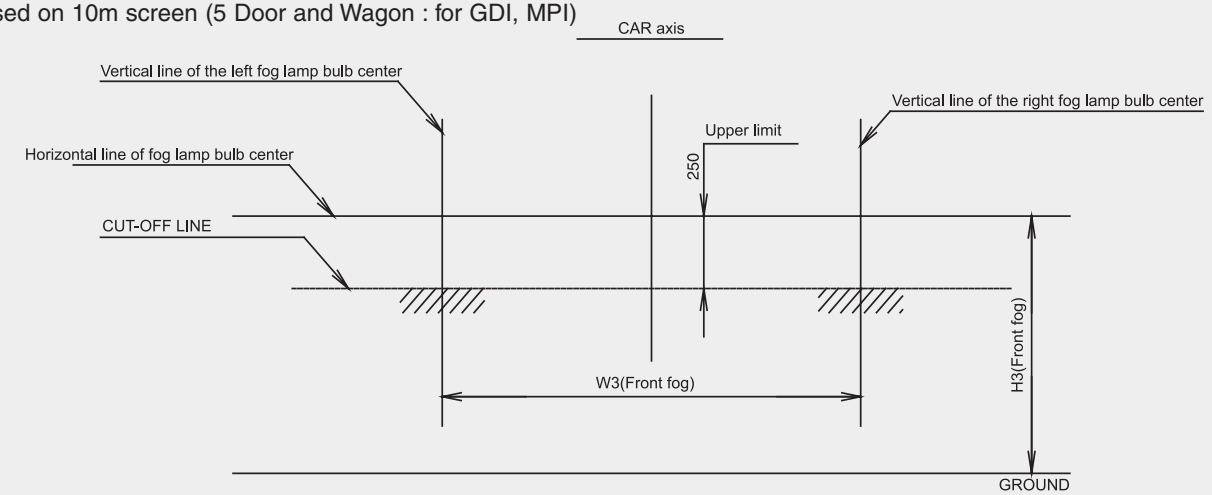


Head lamp low beam (front passenger's side)

1. Turn the low beam on without driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the cut-off line shown in the picture.
3. When aiming the low beam, vertical aiming should be adjusted after adjusting the horizontal aiming.
4. If head lamp leveling device is equipped, adjust the head lamp leveling device switch with 0 positions.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:33 PM Page 101

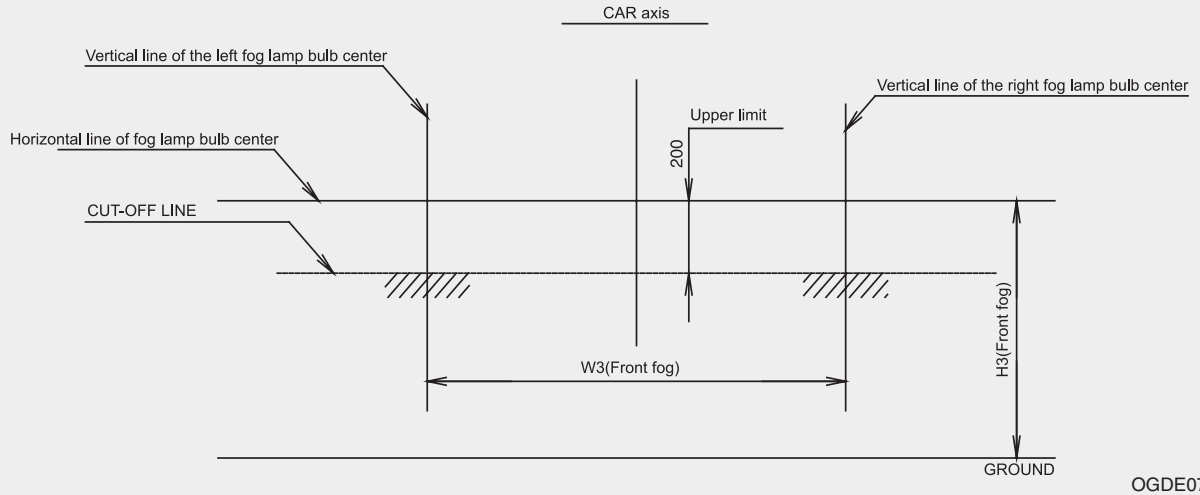
■ Based on 10m screen (5 Door and Wagon : for GDI, MPI)



Front fog light

1. Turn the front fog lamp on without the driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the allowable range (shaded region).

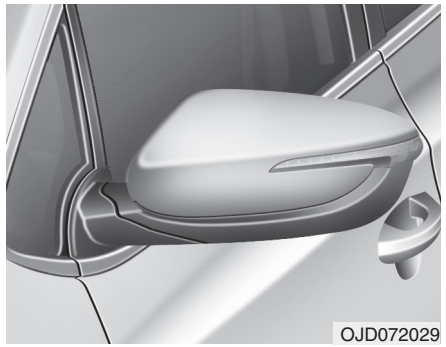
■ Based on 10m screen (3 Door : for GDI, MPI / 3 and 5 Door : for T-GDI)



Front fog light

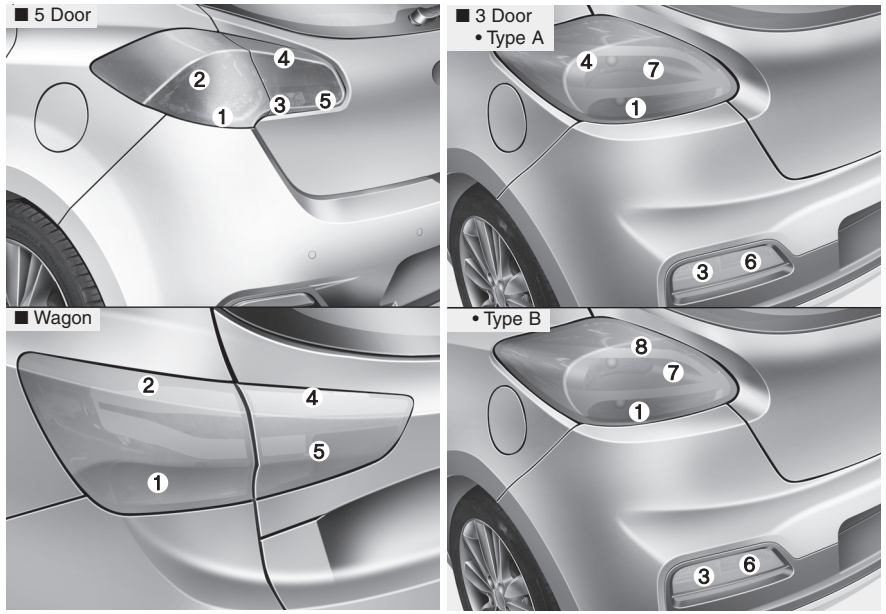
1. Turn the front fog lamp on without the driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the allowable range (shaded region).

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:33 PM Page 103


OJD072029

Side repeater light bulb replacement

If the light bulb does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

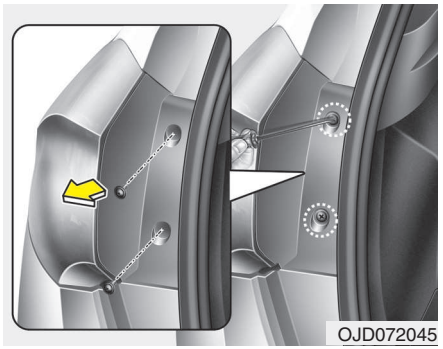


OJD072030/OJD072063/OJD073072/OJD073072

Rear combination light bulb replacement

(1) Rear turn signal light
(2) Stop/tail light
(3) Back-up light (for 3 Door and 5 Door)
(4) Tail light or stop/tail light (for LED type)
(5) Rear fog light (for 5 Door), Rear fog light (Driver's side) or back-up light (Passenger's side), (for wagon)
(6) Rear fog light (for 3 Door)
(7) Stop light (for 3 Door)
(8) Tail light (for 3 Door)

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:33 PM Page 104

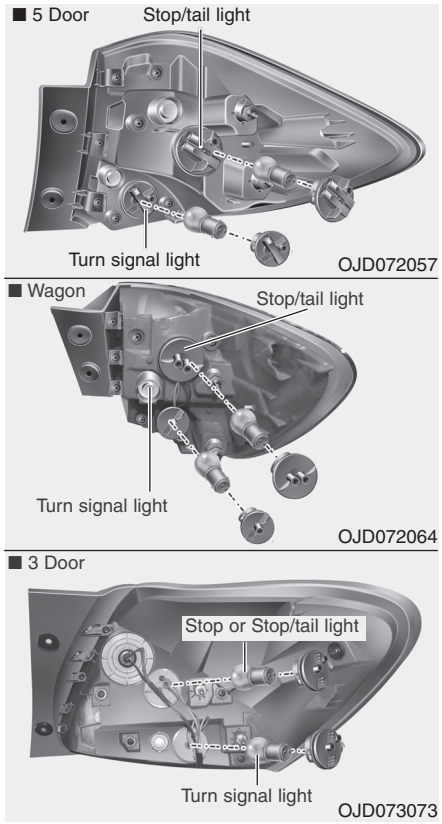


❈ The actual rear combination lamp shape in the vehicle may differ from illustration.

Outside light

Rear turn signal light and stop/tail light

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the tailgate.
3. Loosen the light assembly retaining screws with a cross-tip screwdriver.
4. Remove the rear combination light assembly from the body of the vehicle.

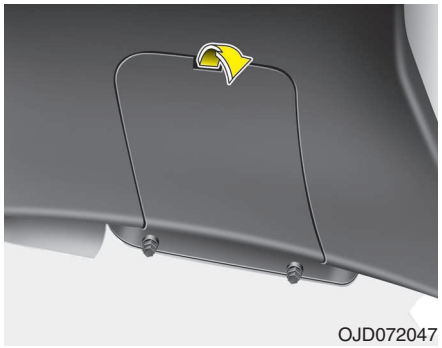


5. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
6. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
7. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
8. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
9. Reinstall the light assembly to the body of the vehicle.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:33 PM Page 105

Stop and tail light or tail light (LED type)

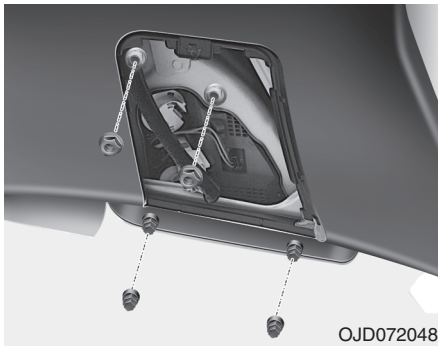
If the light does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.



OJD072047

Inside light (5 Door and Wagon)

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the tailgate.
3. Remove the service cover using a flat-blade screwdriver.



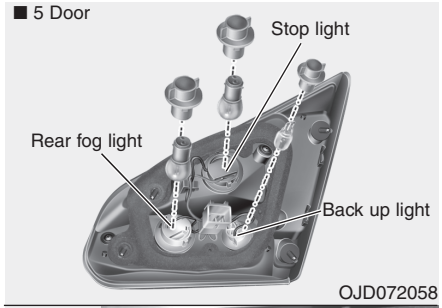
OJD072048

※ These below steps (4~6) only for the 5 Door vehicle.

4. Loosen the retaining nuts.
5. Disconnect the power connector.
6. Remove the rear combination light assembly from the body of the vehicle.

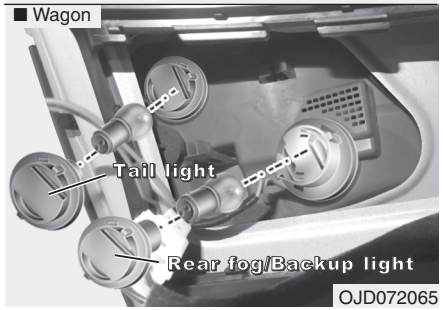
JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:33 PM Page 106

■ 5 Door



OJD072058

■ Wagon



OJD072065

❈ Rear fog light is located only on the driver's side (for wagon)

Tail light or tail and stop light (Bulb type)

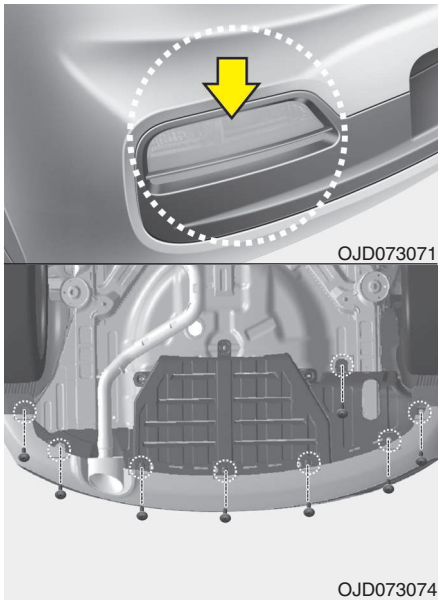
7. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
8. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counter-clockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
9. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
10. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
11. Install the service cover by putting it into the service hole.

Back-up light and rear fog light (5 Door and Wagon) (if equipped)

7. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
8. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
9. Insert a new bulb into the socket.
10. Install the socket into the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots on the assembly and turning the socket clockwise.
11. Reinstall the light assembly to the body of the vehicle

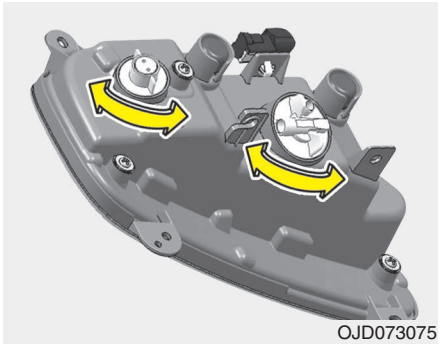
❈ Rear fog light is located only on the driver's side. (for wagon)

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:34 PM Page 107



Rear fog light (if equipped)

1. Remove the under cover by rotating the screws.
2. Reach your hand into the back of the rear bumper.
3. Disconnect the power connector.
4. Remove the bulb-socket from the housing by turning the socket counter clockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the housing.



5. Install the new bulb-socket into the housing by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the housing.
   Push the socket into the housing and turn the socket clockwise.
6. Connect the power connector.
7. Reinstall the rear under cover.

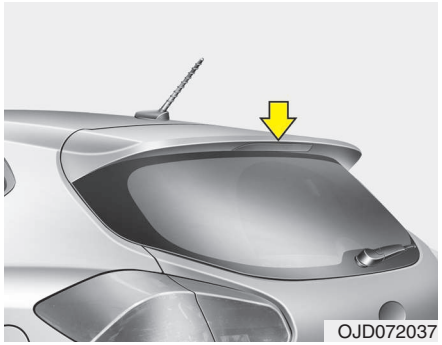
✻ NOTICE

Rear fog light is only on the driver's side (5 door, if equipped).

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:34 PM Page 108

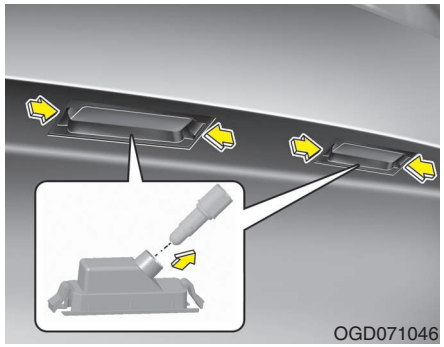
Tail light or stop and tail light (LED type)

If the light does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.



High mounted stop light bulb replacement

If the light does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

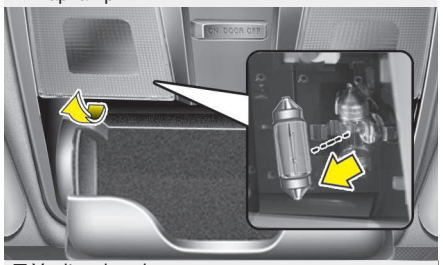


License plate light bulb replacement

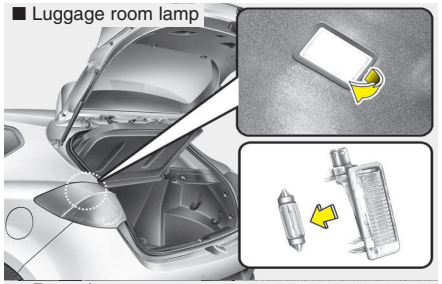
1. Turn off the engine.
2. Remove the bulb assembly by pressing the tabs.
3. Remove the socket by turning it counterclockwise.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
5. Install a new bulb.
6. Reinstall the bulb assembly securely with the retaining screws.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:34 PM Page 109

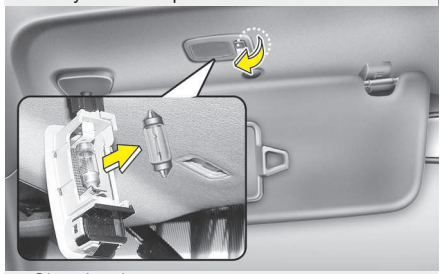
■ Map lamp



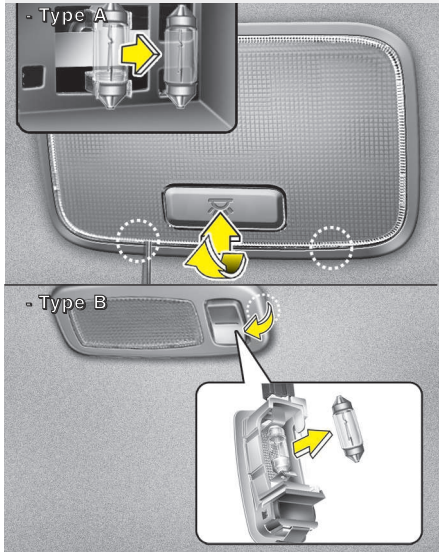
■ Luggage room lamp



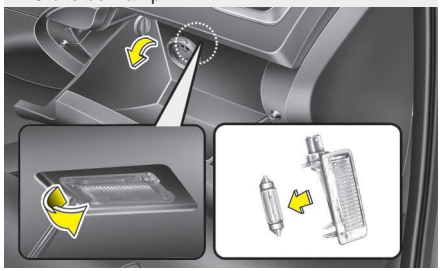
■ Vanity mirror lamp



■ Room lamp



■ Glove box lamp



OGD071039/OTD079035/OJD072043/OJD072038/OGDE071057/OGD071038

Interior light bulb replacement

Map lamp, vanity mirror lamp, room lamp, luggage room lamp and glove box lamp

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens from the interior light housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

⚠ WARNING

Prior to working on the interior lights, ensure that the light is off to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens tabs with the interior light housing notches and snap the lens into place.

⚠ CAUTION

Be careful not to dirt or damage lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:34 PM Page 110

APPEARANCE CARE

Exterior care

Exterior general caution

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

Finish maintenance

Washing

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Ensure drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution and similar deposits can damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.

Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits.

A mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces, may be used.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.***
- ***Be careful when washing the side windows of your vehicle. Especially, with high-pressure water, water may leak through the windows and wet the interior.***
- ***To prevent damage to the plastic parts and lamps, do not clean with chemical solvents or strong detergents.***

⚠ WARNING - Wet brakes

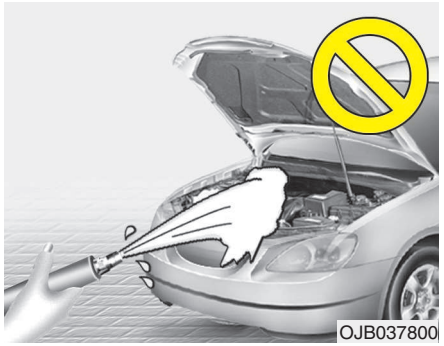
After washing the vehicle, test the brakes while driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly while maintaining a slow forward speed.

High-pressure washing

- When using high-pressure washers, make sure to maintain sufficient distance from the vehicle.

  Insufficient clearance or excessive pressure can lead to component damage or water penetration.
- Do not spray the camera, sensors or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to not operate normally.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or plastic covers) or connectors as they may be damaged if they come into contact with high pressure water.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:34 PM Page 111


OJB037800

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Water washing in the engine compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the engine compartment.***
- ***Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components and air duct inside the vehicle as this may damage them.***

Waxing

Wax the vehicle when water will no longer bead on the paint.

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.

Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover will usually strip the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Wiping dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.***
- ***Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminum parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discoloration or paint deterioration.***

Finish damage repair

Deep scratches or stone chips in the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal will quickly rust and may develop into a major repair expense.

✻ NOTICE

If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, be sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:34 PM Page 112

Bright-metal maintenance

- To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
- To protect the surfaces of bright-metal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.
- During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

Underbody maintenance

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting can occur on underbody parts such as the fuel lines, frame, floor pan and exhaust system, even though they have been treated with rust protection.

Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with lukewarm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter. Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that should not be allowed to clog with dirt; trapped water in these areas can cause rusting.

⚠ WARNING

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes while driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly while maintaining a slow forward speed.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:34 PM Page 113

Aluminum wheel maintenance

The aluminum wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminum wheels. They may scratch or damage the finish.
- Clean the wheel when it has cooled.
- Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on salted roads. This helps prevent corrosion.
- Avoid washing the wheels with high-speed car wash brushes.
- Do not use any alkaline or acid detergent. It may damage and corrode the aluminum wheels coated with a clear protective finish.

Corrosion protection

Protecting your vehicle from corrosion

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, we produce cars of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance is also required.

Common causes of corrosion

The most common causes of corrosion on your car are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the car.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

High-corrosion areas

If you live in an area where your car is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

Moisture breeds corrosion

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the car surfaces by moisture that is slow to evaporate.

Mud is particularly corrosive because it is slow to dry and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain the moisture and promote corrosion.

High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed. For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your car clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the car.

To help prevent corrosion

You can help prevent corrosion from getting started by observing the following:

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:34 PM Page 114

Keep your car clean

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your car clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the car is particularly important.

- If you live in a high-corrosion area — where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc.—, you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your car at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.
- When cleaning underneath the car, give particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.
- When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

Keep your garage dry

Don't park your car in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your car in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

Keep paint and trim in good condition

Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

Bird droppings : Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

Don't neglect the interior

Moisture can collect under the floor mats and carpeting to cause corrosion. Check under the mats periodically to be sure the carpeting is dry. Use particular care if you carry fertilizers, cleaning materials or chemicals in the car.

These should be carried only in proper containers and any spills or leaks should be cleaned up, flushed with clean water and thoroughly dried.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:34 PM Page 115

Interior care

Interior general precautions

Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately.

See the instructions that follow for the proper way to clean vinyl.

⚠ CAUTION

Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.

⚠ CAUTION

When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/alkaline detergents, the color of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.

Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim

Vinyl

Remove dust and loose dirt from vinyl with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean vinyl surfaces with a vinyl cleaner.

Fabric

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If fresh spots do not receive immediate attention, the fabric can be stained and its color can be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties can be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

⚠ CAUTION

Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.

Cleaning the lap/shoulder belt webbing

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap. Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken it.

Cleaning the interior window glass

If the interior glass surfaces of the vehicle become fogged (that is, covered with an oily, greasy or waxy film), they should be cleaned with glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage to the rear window defroster grid.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:34 PM Page 116

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

The emission control system of your vehicle is covered by a written limited warranty. Please see the warranty information contained in the Warranty & Maintenance book in your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with an emission control system to meet all emission regulations.

There are three emission control systems which are as follows.

(1) Crankcase emission control system
(2) Evaporative emission control system
(3) Exhaust emission control system

In order to assure the proper function of the emission control systems, it is recommended that you have your car inspected and maintained by an authorized Kia dealer in accordance with the maintenance schedule.

Caution for the Inspection and Maintenance Test (With Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system)

- **To prevent the vehicle from misfiring during dynamometer testing, turn the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system off by pressing the ESC switch.**
- **After dynamometer testing is completed, turn the ESC system back on by pressing the ESC switch again.**

1. Crankcase emission control system

The positive crankcase ventilation system is employed to prevent air pollution caused by blow-by gases being emitted from the crankcase. This system supplies fresh filtered air to the crankcase through the air intake hose. Inside the crankcase, the fresh air mixes with blow-by gases, which then pass through the PCV valve into the induction system.

2. Evaporative emission control System

The Evaporative Emission Control System is designed to prevent fuel vapors from escaping into the atmosphere.

Canister

Fuel vapors generated inside the fuel tank are absorbed and stored in the onboard canister. When the engine is running, the fuel vapors absorbed in the canister are drawn into the surge tank through the purge control solenoid valve.

Purge Control Solenoid Valve (PCSV)

The purge control solenoid valve is controlled by the Engine Control Module (ECM); when the engine coolant temperature is low during idling, the PCSV closes so that evaporated fuel is not taken into the engine. After the engine warms-up during ordinary driving, the PCSV opens to introduce evaporated fuel to the engine.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:34 PM Page 117

3. Exhaust emission control system

The Exhaust Emission Control System is a highly effective system which controls exhaust emissions while maintaining good vehicle performance.

Vehicle modifications

This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations.

In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.

- If you use unauthorized electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge or fire. For your safety, do not use unauthorized electric devices.

Engine exhaust gas precautions (carbon monoxide)

- Carbon monoxide can be present with other exhaust fumes. Therefore, if you smell exhaust fumes of any kind inside your vehicle, have it inspected and repaired immediately. If you ever suspect exhaust fumes are coming into your vehicle, drive it only with all the windows fully open. Have your vehicle checked and repaired immediately.

⚠ WARNING - Exhaust

Engine exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide (CO). Though colorless and odorless, it is dangerous and could be lethal if inhaled. Follow the instructions following to avoid CO poisoning.

- Do not operate the engine in confined or closed areas (such as garages) any more than what is necessary to move the vehicle in or out of the area.
- When the vehicle is stopped in an open area for more than a short time with the engine running, adjust the ventilation system (as needed) to draw outside air into the vehicle.
- Never sit in a parked or stopped vehicle for any extended time with the engine running.
- When the engine stalls or fails to start, excessive attempts to restart the engine may cause damage to the emission control system.

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:34 PM Page 118

Operating precautions for catalytic converters (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING - Fire

- **A hot exhaust system can ignite flammable items under your vehicle. Do not park, idle, or drive the vehicle over or near flammable objects, such as dry grass, paper, leaves, etc.**
- **The exhaust system and catalytic system are very hot while the engine is running or immediately after the engine is turned off. Keep away from the exhaust system and catalytic, you may get burned.**

  Also, do not remove the heat sink around the exhaust system, do not seal the bottom of the vehicle or do not coat the vehicle for corrosion control. It may present a fire risk under certain conditions.

Your vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter emission control device.

Therefore, the following precautions must be observed:

- Make sure to refuel your vehicle according to the "Fuel requirements" suggested in chapter 1.
- Do not operate the vehicle when there are signs of engine malfunction, such as misfire or a noticeable loss of performance.
- Do not misuse or abuse the engine. Examples of misuse are coasting with the ignition off and descending steep grades in gear with the ignition off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle speed for extended periods (5 minutes or more).
- Do not modify or tamper with any part of the engine or emission control system. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.
- Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

Failure to observe these precautions could result in damage to the catalytic converter and to your vehicle. Additionally, such actions could void your warranties.

Diesel Particulate Filter (if equipped)

The Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system removes the soot emitted from the vehicle.

Unlike a disposable air filter, the DPF system automatically burns (oxidizes) and removes the accumulated soot according to the driving condition. In other words, the active burning by engine control system and high exhaust gas temperature caused by normal/high driving condition burns and removes the accumulated soot.

However, if the vehicle continues to be driven at low speed for long time, the accumulated soot may not be automatically removed because of low exhaust gas temperature. In this particular case, the amount of soot is out of detection limit, the soot oxidation process by engine control system may not happen and the malfunction indicator light may blink.

When the malfunction indicator light blinks, it may stop blinking by driving the vehicle at more than 60km/h (37 mph) or at more than second gear with 1500 ~ 2000 engine rpm for a certain time (for about 25 minutes).

JD eng 7.QXP 3/4/2015 3:34 PM Page 119

If the malfunction indicator light continues to be blinked in spite of the procedure, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

If you continue to drive with the malfunction indicator light blinking for a long time, the DPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can be worsen.

⚠ CAUTION - Diesel Fuel (if equipped with DPF)

It is recommended to use the regulated automotive diesel fuel for diesel vehicle equipped with the DPF system.

If you use diesel fuel including high sulfur (more than 50 ppm sulfur) and unspecified additives, it can cause the DPF system to be damaged and white smoke can be emitted.

JD eng 8.QXP 3/4/2015 3:12 PM Page 1

Specifications & Consumer information

Dimensions 8-2
Engine 8-3
Air conditioning system. 8-4
Weight and volume 8-5
Bulb wattage. 8-6
Tires and wheels. 8-7
Recommended lubricants and capacities 8-8
• Recommended SAE viscosity number 8-10
Vehicle identification number (VIN) 8-11
Vehicle certification label 8-11
Tire specification and pressure label 8-12
Engine number. 8-12
Air conditioner compressor label. 8-12
Refrigerant label 8-13
Declaration of conformity. 8-13

JD eng 8.QXP 3/4/2015 3:12 PM Page 2

DIMENSIONS

Item			mm (in)		
			3 Door	5 Door	Wagon
Overall length			4,310 (169.7)	4,310 (169.7)	4,505 (177.4)
Overall width			1,780 (70.1) 2,035 (80.1) *1	1,780 (70.1) 2,035 (80.1) *1	1,780 (70.1) 2,035 (80.1) *1
Overall height	Except Russia		1,430 (56.3) 1,425 (56.1) *2	1,470 (57.9) 1,465 (57.7) *2	1,485 (58.5) 1,480 (58.3) *2
	For Russia		1,440 (56.7)	1,480 (58.3)	1,495 (58.9)
Front tread	195/65R15	Steel wheel	1,563 (61.5)	1,563 (61.5)	1,563 (61.5)
	205/55R16	Steel wheel	1,553 (61.1)	1,553 (61.1)	1,553 (61.1)
		Aluminum wheel	1,555 (61.2)	1,555 (61.2)	1,555 (61.2)
	225/45R17	Aluminum wheel	1,549 (61.0)	1,549 (61.0)	1,549 (61.0)
	225/40R18	Aluminum wheel	1,545 (60.8)	1,545 (60.8)	-
Rear tread	195/65R15	Steel wheel	1,571 (61.9)	1,571 (61.9)	1,571 (61.9)
	205/55R16	Steel wheel	1,561 (61.5)	1,561 (61.5)	1,561 (61.5)
		Aluminum wheel	1,563 (61.5)	1,563 (61.5)	1,563 (61.5)
	225/45R17	Aluminum wheel	1,557 (61.3)	1,557 (61.3)	1,557 (61.3)
	225/40ZR18	Aluminum wheel	1,553 (61.1)	1,553 (61.1)	-
Wheelbase			2,650 (104.3)		

*1 : Width including outside mirrors (except T-GDI engine)

*2 : Emission Package

JD eng 8.QXP 3/4/2015 3:12 PM Page 3

ENGINE

Item		Gasoline 1.4	Gasoline 1.6	Diesel 1.4	Diesel 1.6
Displacement	cc (cu. in)	1,396 (85.19)	1,591 (97.09)	1,396 (85.12)	1,582 (96.53)
Bore x Stroke	mm (in.)	77x74.99 (3.03x2.95)	77x85.44 (3.03x3.36)	75x79 (2.95x3.11)	77.2x84.5 (3.03x3.32)
Firing order		1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2
No. of cylinders		4, In-line	4, In-line	4, In-line	4, In-line

JD eng 8.QXP 3/4/2015 3:12 PM Page 4

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM (FOR VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH R-1234yf)

For vehicles equipped with R-1234yf *

Item	Weight or Volume	Classification
Refrigerant	500±25g	R-1234yf
Compressor lubricant	150±10cc	PAG (FD46XG)

For vehicles equipped with R-134a *

Item	Weight or Volume	Classification
Refrigerant	500±25g	R-134a
Compressor lubricant	150±10cc	PAG (FD46XG)

*: Your vehicle is filled with R-134a or R-1234yf according to the regulation in your country at the time of producing.
You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied your vehicle at the label inside of hood.
Refer to chapter 8 for more detail location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

JD eng 8.QXP 3/4/2015 3:12 PM Page 5

WEIGHT AND VOLUME

Item			Gasoline 1.4L	Gasoline 1.6L (MPI/GDI)	Gasoline 1.6L (T-GDI)	Diesel 1.4L	Diesel 1.6L
Gross vehicle weight kg (lbs.)	M/T	5 Door	1,820 (4,012)	1,820 (4,012)	1,870 (4,123)	1,910 (4,211)	1,920 (4,232)
		3 Door			1,850 (4,079)		
		Wagon			-		
	A/T	5 Door	-	1,850 (4,079)	-	-	1,940 (4,277)
		3 Door					
		Wagon					
	DCT	5 Door	-	1,840 (4,057)	-	-	-
		3 Door					
		Wagon		1,850 (4,079)			
Luggage volume *l* (cu ft)		5 Door	Min. : 380 (13.42) Max. 1,318 (46.54)				
		3 Door	Min. : 380 (13.42) Max. 1,225 (42.26)				
		Wagon	Min : 528 (18.65), Max. 1,642 (57.99)				

M/T : Manual transaxle
A/T : Automatic transaxle
DCT : Double clutch transmission
Min. : Behind rear seat to upper edge of the seat back.
Max. : Behind front seat to roof.

JD eng 8.QXP 3/4/2015 3:12 PM Page 6

BULB WATTAGE

Light Bulb			5 Door and 3 Door		Wagon	
			Wattage	Bulb type	Wattage	Bulb type
Front	Headlights	Low	55 or 35 (AFLS with HID)	H7LL or D1S*	55 or 35 (AFLS with HID)	H7LL or D1S*
		High	55	H7LL	55	H7LL
	Static bending light*		55	H7LL	55	H7LL
	Daytime running light		21/LED	P21/5WXL/LED	21/LED	P21/5WXL/LED
	Daytime running light + Position lights*		LED	LED	LED	LED
	Front turn signal lights		21	PY21WLL	21	PY21WLL
	Position lights		5/LED	W5WLL/LED	5/LED	W5WLL/LED
	Side repeater lights		5	5W	5	5W
	Puddle lamps*		LED	LED	LED	LED
	Front fog lights		35	H8L	21	P21WL
Rear	Rear fog light		21	P21WL	21	P21WL
	Stop and tail lights		21/5 or LED	P21/5WL or LED	21/5 or LED	P21/5WL or LED
	Rear turn signal lights		21	P21WL	21	P21WL
	Tail light		5 or LED	P21/5WL or LED	5 or LED	P21WL or LED
	Back-up lights		16	W16W	21	P21WL
	High mounted stop light		LED	LED	LED	LED
	License plate lights		5	W5W	5	W5W
Interior	Map lamps		8	FESTOON	8	FESTOON
	Room lamps		8	FESTOON	8	FESTOON
	Luggage lamp		8	FESTOON	8	FESTOON
	Glove box lamp		5	FESTOON	5	FESTOON
	Vanity mirror lamps		5	FESTOON	5	FESTOON

HID : High Intensity Discharge * : if equipped
AFLS : Adaptive Front-Lighting System

JD eng 8.QXP 3/4/2015 3:12 PM Page 7

TIRES AND WHEELS

Item	Tire size	Wheel size	Load Capacity		Speed capacity		Inflation pressure bar(psi, kPa)				Wheel lug nut torque Kgf·m (lb·ft, N·m)
							Normal load		Maximum load		
			LI *1	Kg	SS *2	Km/h	Front	Rear	Front	Rear	
Full size tire	195/65R15*3	6.0J×15	91	615	H	210	2.5 (36,250)	2.5 (36,250)	2.5 (36,250)	2.5 (36,250)	9~11 (65~79, 88~107)
	195/65R15	6.0J×15	91	615	H	210	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	
	205/55R16	6.5J×16	91	615	H	210	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	
	225/45R17	7.0J×17	91	615	V	240	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	
	225/40ZR18	7.5J×18	92	630	Y	300	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	
Compact spare tire	T125/80D15	4.0T×15	95	690	M	130	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	
	T125/80D16	4.0T×16	97	730	M	130	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	

*1 : Load Index
*2 : Speed Symbol
*3 : For eco dynamics trim

✻ NOTICE

We recommend that when replacing tires, use the same originally supplied with the vehicles. If not, that affects driving performance.

JD eng 8.QXP 3/4/2015 3:12 PM Page 8

RECOMMENDED LUBRICANTS AND CAPACITIES

To help achieve proper engine and powertrain performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality. The correct lubricants also help promote engine efficiency that results in improved fuel economy.

These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

Lubricant			Volume	Classification
Engine oil *1 *2 (drain and refill) Recommends Shell HELIX Motor oils	Gasoline Engine	1.4 MPI	3.6 *l* (3.8 US qt.)	**For Europe** API Service SL or SM, ACEA A5 or above **Except Europe** API Service SM, ILSAC GF-4 or above
		1.6 MPI		
		1.6 GDI		
		1.6 T-GDI	4.5 *l* (4.75 US qt.)	ACEA A5 or above (5W-30)
	Diesel Engine	with DPF *3	5.3 *l* (5.60 US qt.)	ACEA C2 or C3
		without DPF *3	5.3 *l* (5.60 US qt.)	ACEA B4
Engine oil consumption	Normal driving condition		MAX. 1 l/1500 km	-
	Severe driving condition		MAX. 1 l/1000 km	-
Manual transaxle fluid	Gasoline Engine	MPI/GDI	1.8 *l* ~ 1.9 *l* (1.90 ~ 2.01 US qt.)	HK MTF(SK), HD MTF(H.K.SHELL), Kia Genuine transaxle fluid (API GL-4, SAE 75W/85, TGO-7(MS 517-14)), Consult an authorized Kia dealer for details.
		T-GDI	1.9 *l* ~ 2.0 *l* (2.01 ~ 2.11 US qt.)	
	Diesel Engine	High	1.9 *l* ~ 2.0 *l* (2.01 ~ 2.11 US qt.)	
		Low		
Automatic transaxle fluid	Gasoline Engine	MPI/GDI	7.3 *l* (7.71 US qt.)	MICHANG ATF SP-IV SK ATF SP-IV NOCA ATF SP-IV Kia genuine ATF SP-IV
	Diesel Engine		7.1 *l* (7.50 US qt.)	

JD eng 8.QXP 3/4/2015 3:12 PM Page 9

Lubricant		Volume	Classification
Double clutch transmission fluid	Gasoline Engine	1.9 *l* ~ 2.0 *l* (2.01 ~ 2.11 US qt.)	HK SYN MTF(SK), HD SYN MTF(H.K.SHELL), GS PAO MTF (GS CALTEX), Kia Genuine transaxle fluid (API GL-4, SAE 75W/85), Consult an authorized Kia dealer for details.
Coolant	Gasoline Engine	5.7 ~ 5.8 *l* (6.0 ~ 6.1 US qt.)	Mixture of antifreeze and distilled water (Ethylene glycol base coolant for aluminum radiator)
	Diesel Engine	6.7 ~ 6.9 *l* (7.1 ~ 7.3 US qt.)	
Brake/clutch fluid		0.7 ~ 0.8 *l* (0.7 ~ 0.8 US qt.)	FMVSS116 DOT-3 or DOT-4
Fuel		53 *l* (14.0 US gal.)	Refer to “Fuel requirements” in section 1

*1 Refer to the recommended SAE viscosity numbers on next page.

*2 Engine oils labeled Energy Conserving Oil are now available. Along with other additional benefits, they contribute to fuel economy by reducing the amount of fuel necessary to overcome engine friction. Often, these improvements are difficult to measure in everyday driving, but in a year’s time, they can offer significant cost and energy savings.

*3 Diesel Particulate Filter

Recommends Engine oil (For Europe)

Supplier	Product	
	Gasoline Engine	Diesel Engine
Shell	HELIX ULTRA AH-E 5W-30	HELIX ULTRA AP 5W-30
	HELIX ULTRA 5W-40	

JD eng 8.QXP 3/4/2015 3:12 PM Page 10

Recommended SAE viscosity number

⚠ CAUTION

Always be sure to clean the area around any filler plug, drain plug, or dipstick before checking or draining any lubricant. This is especially important in dusty or sandy areas and when the vehicle is used on unpaved roads. Cleaning the plug and dipstick areas will prevent dirt and grit from entering the engine and other mechanisms that could be damaged.

Engine oil viscosity (thickness) has an effect on fuel economy and cold weather operating (engine start and engine oil flowability). Lower viscosity engine oils can provide better fuel economy and cold weather performance, however, higher viscosity engine oils are required for satisfactory lubrication in hot weather. Using oils of any viscosity other than those recommended could result in engine damage.
When choosing an oil, consider the range of temperature your vehicle will be operated in before the next oil change. Proceed to select the recommended oil viscosity from the chart.

Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers

Temperature	°C	-30	-20	-10	0	10	20	30	40	50
	(°F)	-10	0	20	40	60	80	100	120	
Gasoline Engine Oil (MPI/GDI - For Europe)		0W-40, 5W-20 *1,5W-30, 5W-40								
Gasoline Engine Oil *2 (MPI/GDI - Except Europe)		20W-50								
		15W-40								
		10W-30								
		5W-20*3, 5W-30								
Gasoline Engine Oil *4 (T-GDI)		5W-30, 5W-40								
Diesel Engine Oil		15W-40								
		10W-30								
		5W-30								
		0W-30								

*1 : If you use the engine oil of a viscosity grade SAE 5W-20, replace engine oil and filter after driving 15,000 km or 12 month with MPI engine (10,000 km or 6 month with GDI engine) in normal condition and replace engine oil and engine oil filter after driving 7,500 km or 6 month with MPI engine (5,000 km or 6 month with GDI engine) in severe condition.

*2 : For better fuel economy, it is recommended to use the engine oil of a viscosity grade SAE 5W-20,5W-30 (API SM / ILSAC GF 4 or above). However, if the engine oil is not available in your country, select the proper engine oil using the engine oil viscosity chart.

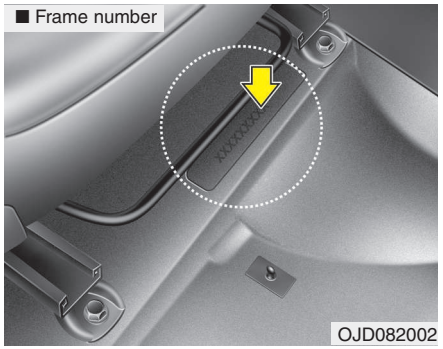
*3 : In Middle East, do not use the engine oil of viscosity grade SAE 5W-20.

*4 : For better fuel economy, it is recommended to use the engine oil of a viscosity grade SAE 5W-30 (ACEA A5 or above).

JD eng 8.QXP 3/4/2015 3:12 PM Page 11

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)

■ Frame number

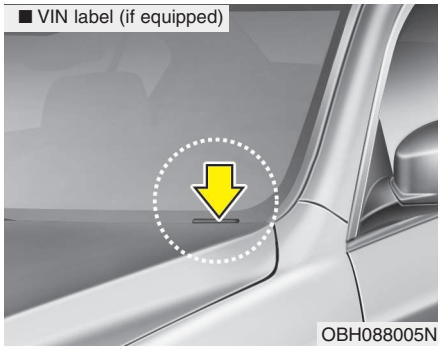


OJD082002

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your vehicle and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.

The number is punched on the floor under the passenger seat. To check the number, open the cover.

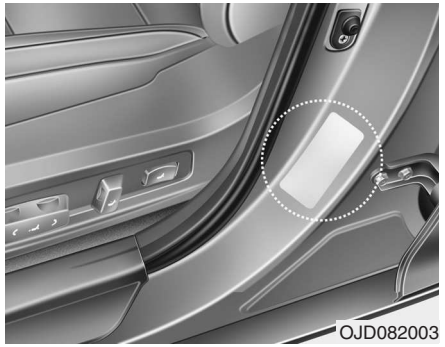
■ VIN label (if equipped)



OBH088005N

The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the dashboard. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windshield from outside.

VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL

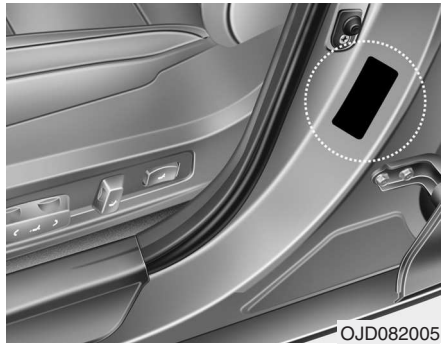


OJD082003

The vehicle certification label attached on the driver's (or front passenger's) side center pillar gives the vehicle identification number (VIN).

JD eng 8.QXP 3/4/2015 3:13 PM Page 12

TIRE SPECIFICATION AND PRESSURE LABEL

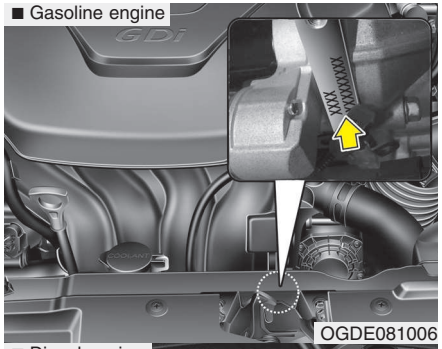

OJD082005

The tires supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

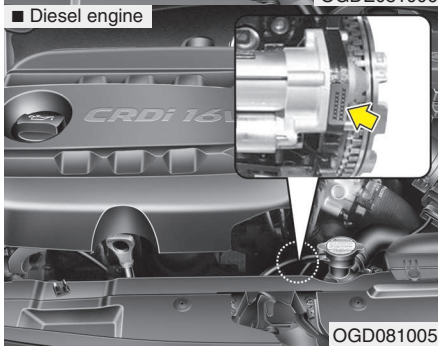
The tire label located on the driver's side center pillar gives the tire pressures recommended for your vehicle.

ENGINE NUMBER

■ Gasoline engine

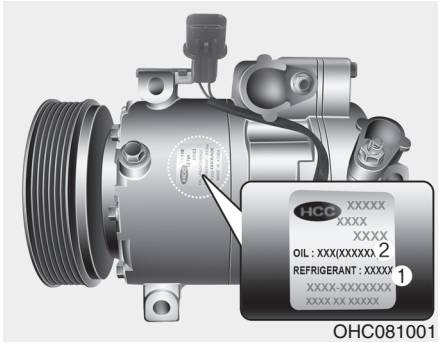

OGDE081006

■ Diesel engine


OGD081005

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown in the drawing.

AIR CONDITIONER COMPRESSOR LABEL

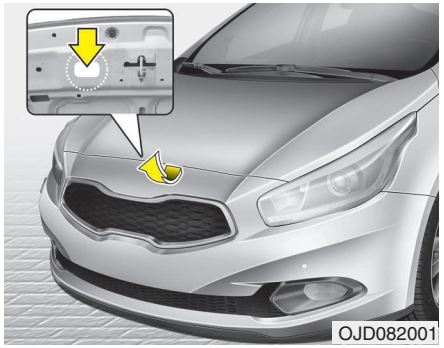


OHC081001

A compressor label informs you the type of compressor your vehicle is equipped with such as model, supplier part number, production number, refrigerant (1) and refrigerant oil (2).

JD eng 8.QXP 3/4/2015 3:13 PM Page 13

REFRIGERANT LABEL



The refrigerant label is located on the underside of the hood.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

■ Example

CE 0678

CE0678

The radio frequency components of the vehicle comply with requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.

Further information including the manufacturer's declaration of conformity is available on Kia web site as follows;

http://www.kia-hotline.com

JD eng Index.QXP 3/12/2015 3:06 PM Page 1

Index

JD eng Index.QXP 3/12/2015 3:06 PM Page 2

A

Active ECO system 5-32
Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFLS) 4-118
Air bag warning label 3-65
Air bag warning light 3-45
Air bags 3-42
  Air bag warning label 3-65
  Air bag warning light 3-45
  Curtain air bag 3-56
  Driver's and passenger's front air bag 3-50
  Passenger’s front air bag ON/OFF indicator 3-46
  Passenger’s front air bag ON/OFF switch 3-52
  Side impact air bag 3-55
  SRS components and functions 3-47
Air cleaner 7-45
Air conditioner compressor label 8-12
Air conditioning system 8-4
Alarm system 4-14
Aiming 7-94
Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 5-41
Appearance care
  Exterior care 7-110
  Interior care 7-115
Armrest (Rear seat) 3-15
Ashtray 4-156
Audio remote control 4-173
Audio system 4-172
  Audio remote control 4-173
  Roof antenna 4-172
Auto defogging system 4-150
Auto light/AFLS position 4-113
Automatic climate control system 4-137
  Air conditioning 4-146
  Automatic heating and air conditioning 4-138
  Climate control air filter 4-147
  Manual heating and air conditioning 4-140
Automatic transaxle / Double clutch transmission . . 5-23
  DS mode 5-27
  Paddle shifter 5-28
  Shift lock system 5-29
  Sports mode 5-27
Automatic transaxle shift position indicator (Normal vision) 4-49
Automatic transaxle shift position indicator (Super vision) 4-65
Aux, USB and iPod 4-160

B

Barrier net 4-163
Battery 7-52
Battery replacement (Remote keyless entry) 4-9

JD eng Index.QXP 3/12/2015 3:06 PM Page 3

Battery saver function 4-111
Before driving 5-4
Bottle holders 4-158
Brake system 5-33
- **Anti-lock brake system (ABS)** 5-41
- **Electric parking brake (EPB)** 5-37
- **Electronic stability control (ESC)** 5-44
- **Emergency Stop Signal (ESS)** 5-48
- **Hill-start assist control (HAC)** 5-48
- **Power brakes** 5-33
- **Parking brakes (Hand type)** 5-35
- **Vehicle stability management (VSM)** 5-47

Brakes/clutch fluid 7-42
Bulb replacement 7-89
Bulb wattage 8-6
Button start/stop, see engine start/stop button 5-9

C

Calender 4-90
Camera (Rear view) 4-110
Capacities (Lubricants) 8-8
Care
- **Exterior care** 7-110
- **Interior care** 7-115
- **Tire care** 7-55

Cargo area cover 4-162
Cargo security screen 4-166
Center console storage 4-152
Central door lock switch 4-19
Certification label 8-11
Chains
- **Tire chains** 5-68

Changing tires 6-10
Checking tire inflation pressure 7-57
Child restraint system 3-31
- **ISOFIX system** 3-37
- **Seat belt** 3-34
- **Tether anchor system** 3-36

Child-protector rear door lock 4-21
Cigarette lighter 4-155
Clean air 4-151
Climate control air filter 4-135, 4-147, 7-47
Clock 4-90
Clothes hanger 4-161
Combined instrument, see instrument cluster (Normal vision) 4-46
Combined instrument, see instrument cluster (Super vision) 4-59
Compact spare tire 6-15
Compact spare tire replacement 7-60
Cool box 4-153
Coolant 7-39
Cooling fluid, see engine coolant 7-40

JD eng Index.QXP 3/12/2015 3:06 PM Page 4

Crankcase emission control system 7-116
Cruise control system 5-51
Cup holder 4-157
Curtain air bag 3-56

D

Dashboard illumination, see instrument panel illumination (Normal vision) 4-47
Dashboard illumination, see instrument panel illumination (Super vision) 4-61
Dashboard, see instrument cluster (Normal vision) . . 4-46
Dashboard, see instrument cluster (Super vision) . . . 4-59
Daytime running light (DRL) 4-116
Deadlocks 4-20
Declaration of conformity 8-13
Defogging (Windshield) 4-149
Defroster (Rear window) 4-127
Defrosting (Windshield) 4-149
Dimensions 8-2
Display illumination, see instrument panel illumination (Normal vision) 4-47
Display illumination, see instrument panel illumination (Super vision) 4-61
Displays, see instrument cluster (Normal vision) . . 4-46
Displays, see instrument cluster (Super vision) 4-59
Door locks 4-20
Central door lock switch 4-19
Child-protector rear door lock 4-21
Deadlocks 4-20
Double clutch transmission shift indicator (Normal vision) 4-49
Double clutch transmission shift indicator (Super vision) 4-65
Drinks holders, see cup holders 4-157
Driver position memory system 3-8
Driver's and passenger's front air bag 3-50
Driving at night 5-65
Driving in flooded areas 5-66
Driving in the rain 5-65
Driving information mode 4-68
Driving off-road 5-66
DS mode 5-27

E

Economical operation 5-62
Electric chromic mirror (ECM) 4-42
Electric parking brake (EPB) 5-37
Electric power steering 4-37
Electronic stability control (ESC) 5-44
Emergency commodity 6-33
Emergency starting 6-5
Jump starting 6-5
Push starting 6-7

JD eng Index.QXP 3/12/2015 3:06 PM Page 5

Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) 5-48
Emergency while driving 6-3
Emission control system 7-116
Crankcase emission control system 7-116
Evaporative emission control System 7-116
Exhaust emission control system. 7-117
Engine 8-3
Engine compartment 2-6
Engine compartment panel fuse 7-68
Engine coolant. 7-39
Engine coolant temperature gauge (Normal vision) . . 4-48
Engine coolant temperature gauge (Super vision) . . 4-64
Engine number 8-12
Engine oil. 7-37
Engine overheats. 6-8
Engine start/stop button. 5-9
Engine will not start 6-4
Evaporative emission control System 7-116
Exhaust emission control system. 7-117
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items 7-34
Exterior care 7-110
Exterior features
Mounting bracket for roof carrier 4-169
Roof rack. 4-170
Exterior overview(front) 2-2
Exterior overview(rear) 2-3

F

Flat tire (with spare tire) 6-9
Changing tires. 6-10
Compact spare tire 6-15
Jack and tools 6-9
Removing and storing the spare tire 6-10
Flat tire (with Tire Mobility Kit). 6-19
Flex steering wheel 4-40
Floor mat anchor(s) 4-161
Fluid
Brakes/clutch fluid 7-42
Washer fluid 7-43
Fog light (front). 4-116
Fog light (rear) 4-116
Folding the rear seat. 3-16
Front seat adjustment. 3-4
Fuel filler lid 4-30
Fuel filter 7-44
Fuel gauge (Normal vision) 4-48
Fuel gauge (Super vision). 4-62
Fuel requirements. 1-2
Gasoline engine. 1-2
Diesel engine 1-4
Fuse switch 7-68
Fuses. 7-66
Engine compartment panel fuse 7-68

JD eng Index.QXP 3/12/2015 3:06 PM Page 6

Fuse switch 7-68
Fuse/relay panel description 7-71
Inner panel fuse 7-67
Main fuse 7-69
Multi fuse 7-70

G

Gauge (Normal vision)
Engine coolant temperature gauge 4-48
Fuel gauge 4-48
Gauge (Super vision)
Engine coolant temperature gauge 4-64
Fuel gauge 4-62
Glove box 4-153
Glove box lamp 4-125

H

Hazard warning flasher 4-110
Hazardous driving conditions 5-64
Headlamp delay function 4-111
Headlight (Headlamp) welcome function 4-111
Headlight bulb replacement 7-90
Headlight leveling device 4-117
Headlight position 4-113
Headlight washer 4-122
Headrest (front) 3-9
Headrest(rear) 3-14
Heated steering wheel 4-38
High - beam operation 4-114
Hight adjustment (seat belt) 3-23
Highway driving 5-66
Hill-start assist control (HAC) 5-48
Hood 4-28
Horn 4-39
How to use this manual 1-2

I

Icy road warning 4-91
Indicators and warnings 4-79
Inside rearview mirror 4-42
Instrument cluster
LCD display information 4-73
Warning and indicators 4-79
Instrument cluster (Normal vision) 4-46
Automatic transaxle shift position indicator 4-49
Double clutch transmission shift indicator 4-50
Fuel gauge 4-48
Instrument panel illumination 4-47
Manual transaxle shift indicator 4-49
Odometer 4-51
Speed limiter indicator 4-51
Speedometer 4-47

JD eng Index.QXP 3/12/2015 3:06 PM Page 7

Tachometer 4-47
Trip computer 4-51
User Settings 4-56
Instrument cluster (Super vision) 4-59
Automatic transaxle shift position indicator 4-65
Cluster display mode conversion 4-61
Double clutch transmission shift indicator 4-65
Engine torque gauge. 4-63
Fuel gauge 4-62
Instrument panel illumination 4-61
Manual transaxle shift indicator. 4-64
Odometer. 4-66
Speed limiter indicator. 4-66
Speedometer 4-62
Tachometer 4-61
Trip computer 4-67
Turbo boost pressure gauge. 4-63
Inner panel fuse. 7-67
Instrument panel illumination (Normal vision). . . . 4-46
Instrument panel illumination (Super vision) 4-59
Instrument panel overview 2-5
Interior care. 7-115
Interior features 4-155
Ashtray 4-156
Aux, USB and iPod. 4-160
Barrier net. 4-163
Bottle holder 4-158
Cargo area cover 4-162
Cargo security screen. 4-166
Cigarette lighter 4-155
Clothes hanger 4-161
Cup holder. 4-157
Floor mat anchor(s) 4-161
Luggage net (holder) 4-162
Luggage rail system 4-167
Power outlet 4-159
Shopping bag holder 4-168
Sunvisor. 4-158
Interior light 4-123
Glove box lamp. 4-125
Luggage room lamp 4-125
Map lamp 4-123
Room lamp 4-124
Vanity mirror lamp 4-124
Interior overview. 2-4
ISG (Idle stop and go) system 5-15
ISOFIX system 3-35

J

Jack and tools 6-9
Jump starting 6-5

JD eng Index.QXP 3/12/2015 3:06 PM Page 8

K

Key positions 5-5
Keys 4-4

L

Label
Air bag warning label 3-65
Air conditioner compressor label 8-12
Refrigerant label 8-13
Tire sidewall labeling 7-61
Tire specification and pressure label 8-12
Vehicle certification label 8-11
Lane Departure Warning System 5-59
Lane Departure Warning System Mode 4-69
Lap/shoulder belt 3-23
LCD display information 4-73
LCD display warnings and indicators (instrument panel display) 4-90
Calender 4-90
Clock 4-90
Icy road warning 4-91
Outside ambient Temperature 4-90
LDWS (Lane Departure Warning System) 5-59
Light bulbs 7-89
Lighting 4-111
AFLS (Adaptive Front Lighting System) 4-118
Auto light/AFLS position 4-113
Battery saver function 4-111
Daytime running light (DRL) 4-116
Front fog light 4-116
Headlamp delay function 4-111
Headlight (Headlamp) welcome function 4-111
Headlight leveling device 4-117
Headlight position 4-113
High - beam operation 4-114
Position light position 4-112
Rear fog light 4-116
Static bending light 4-112
Turn signals 4-115
Lubricants and capacities 8-8
Luggage net (holder) 4-162
Luggage rail system 4-167
Luggage room lamp 4-125
Luggage side tray 4-155
Luggage tray 4-154
Lumbar support (Automatic Seat) 3-7
Lumbar support (Manual seat) 3-5

JD eng Index.QXP 3/12/2015 3:06 PM Page 9

M

Main fuse 7-69
Maintenance
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items 7-34
Maintenance services 7-6
Maintenance under severe usage conditions (except Europe, for Russia) 7-32
Maintenance under severe usage conditions (for Europe, except Russia) 7-20
Normal maintenance schedule (except Europe, for Russia) 7-22
Normal maintenance schedule (for Europe, except Russia) 7-11
Owner maintenance 7-8
Scheduled maintenance service 7-10
Tire maintenance 7-61
Maintenance schedule 7-10
Maintenance under severe usage conditions (except Europe, for Russia) 7-32
Maintenance under severe usage conditions (for Europe, except Russia) 7-20
Normal maintenance schedule (except Europe, for Russia) 7-22
Normal maintenance schedule (for Europe, except Russia) 7-11
Maintenance services 7-6
Manual climate control system 4-128
Air conditioning 4-134
Climate control air filter 4-135
Heating and air conditioning 4-129
Manual transaxle 5-20
Manual transaxle shift indicator (Normal vision) . . 4-49
Manual transaxle shift indicator (Super vision) . . . 4-64
Map lamp 4-123
Mirrors 4-42
Day/night rearview mirror 4-42
Electric chromic mirror (ECM) 4-42
Inside rearview mirror 4-42
Outside rearview mirror 4-43
Moonroof, see panorama sunroof 4-33
Mounting bracket for roof carrier 4-169
Multi fuse 7-69

O

Odometer (Normal vision) 4-51
Odometer (Super vision) 4-66
Oil (Engine) 7-37
Outside ambient Temperature 4-90
Outside rearview mirror 4-43
Overheats 6-8
Owner maintenance 7-7

JD eng Index.QXP 3/12/2015 3:06 PM Page 10

P

Paddle shifter 5-28
Panorama sunroof 4-33
Parking assist system 4-96
Parking brake-Hand type 7-43
Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF indicator 3-46
Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch 3-52
Position light position 4-112
Power brakes 5-33
Power outlet 4-159
Power window lock button 4-26
Pre-tensioner seat belt 3-25
Push starting 6-7

R

Rear combination light bulb replacement 7-103
Rear parking assist system 4-92
Rear seat 3-14
Rear view camera 4-110
Rear window wiper 4-122
Recommended cold tire inflation pressures 7-55
Recommended lubricants and capacities 8-8
  Recommended SAE viscosity number 8-10
  Recommends Engine oil 8-9
Refrigerant label 8-13
Remote keyless entry
  Battery replacement 4-9
Remote keyless entry 4-6
Replacement light bulb 7-89
Road warning 6-2
Rocking the vehicle 5-64
Roof antenna 4-172
Room lamp 4-124
Roof rack 4-170

S

Scheduled maintenance service 7-10
  Maintenance under severe usage conditions (except Europe, for Russia) 7-32
  Maintenance under severe usage conditions (for Europe, except Russia) 7-20
  Normal maintenance schedule (except Europe, for Russia) 7-22
  Normal maintenance schedule (for Europe, except Russia) 7-11
Seat belts 3-20
  Hight adjustment 3-23
  Lap/shoulder belt 3-23
  Pre-tensioner seat belt 3-25
  Seat belt warning 3-21
Seat warmer(front) 3-12

JD eng Index.QXP 3/12/2015 3:06 PM Page 11

Seatback pocket 3-13
Seats 3-2
Armrest 3-15
Driver position memory system 3-8
Folding the rear seat. 3-16
Front seat adjustment 3-4
Headrest(front) 3-9
Headrest(rear). 3-14
Lumbar support (Automatic Seat) 3-7
Lumbar support (Manual seat). 3-5
Rear seat 3-14
Rear seat entry 3-13
Seat warmer(front). 3-12
Seatback pocket 3-13
Service mode (Normal vision) 4-55
Service mode (Super vision). 4-70
Shift lock system 5-29
Shopping bag holder. 4-168
Side impact air bag. 3-55
Sliding armrest 4-152
Smart key. 4-11
Smart parking assist system (SPAS). 4-100
Smooth cornering 5-65
Snow tires 5-67
Spare tire
Compact spare tire 6-15
Compact spare tire replacement. 7-60
Removing and storing the spare tire 6-10
SPAS. 4-100
Special driving conditions 5-64
Driving at night. 5-65
Driving in flooded areas. 5-66
Driving in the rain 5-65
Driving off-road 5-66
Hazardous driving conditions 5-64
Highway driving 5-66
Rocking the vehicle. 5-64
Smooth cornering 5-65
Speed limit control system 5-56
Speed limiter indicator (Normal vision). 4-51
Speed limiter indicator (Super vision) 4-66
Speedometer (Normal vision) 4-47
Speedometer (Super vision) 4-62
Sports mode. 5-27
SRS components and functions 3-47
Starting difficulties, see engine will not start. 6-4
Static bending light 4-112
Steering wheel 4-37
Electric power steering 4-37
Flex steering wheel 4-40
Heated steering wheel 4-38
Horn 4-39

JD eng Index.QXP 3/12/2015 3:06 PM Page 12

Tilt and telescopic steering 4-38
Storage compartment 4-152
Center console storage 4-152
Cool box 4-153
Glove box 4-153
Luggage side tray 4-155
Luggage tray 4-154
Sliding armrest 4-152
Sunglass holder 4-154
Sunroof, see panorama sunroof 4-33
Sunvisor 4-158

T

Tachometer (Normal vision) 4-47
Tachometer (Super vision) 4-61
Tailgate 4-22
Tether anchor system 3-36
Theft-alarm system 4-14
Tilt and telescopic steering 4-38
Tire chains 5-68
Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) 6-24
Tire rotation 7-58
Tire specification and pressure label 8-12
Tires and wheels 7-55, 8-7
Checking tire inflation pressure 7-57
Compact spare tire replacement 7-60
Low aspect ratio tire 7-65
Recommended cold tire inflation pressures 7-55
Tire care 7-55
Tire maintenance 7-61
Tire replacement 7-59
Tire rotation 7-58
Tire sidewall labeling 7-61
Tire traction 7-61
Wheel alignment and tire balance 7-59
Wheel replacement 7-60
Towing 6-29
Trailer towing 5-71
Transaxle
Automatic transaxle 5-23
Double clutch transmission 5-23
Manual transaxle 5-20
Trip computer (Normal vision) 4-51
Service mode 4-55
User Settings 4-56
Trip computer (Super vision) 4-67
Driving information mode 4-68
Lane Departure Warning System Mode 4-69
Service mode 4-70
User Settings 4-71
Turn signals 4-115

JD eng Index.QXP 3/12/2015 3:06 PM Page 13

U

User Settings (Normal vision) 4-56
User Settings (Super vision) 4-71

V

Vanity mirror lamp 4-124
Vehicle break-in process 1-5
Vehicle certification label 8-11
Vehicle identification number (VIN) 8-11
Vehicle stability management (VSM) 5-47
Vehicle weight 5-80

W

Warning and indicators 4-79
Washer fluid 7-43
Weight and volume 8-5
Welcome system 4-126
Wheel alignment and tire balance 7-59
Wheel replacement 7-60
Windows 4-24
Manual windows 4-27
Power window lock button 4-26
Power windows 4-25
Windshield defrosting and defogging 4-149
Auto defogging system 4-150
Windshield washers 4-121
Windshield wipers 4-119
Winter driving 5-67
Snow tires 5-67
Tire chains 5-68
Wiper blades 7-49
Wipers and washers 4-119
Front indshield wipers 4-119
Front windshield washers 4-121
Headlight washer 4-122
Rear window wiper 4-122

JD RHD FOREWORD.QXP 2/17/2015 10:15 AM Page 1

KIA, THE COMPANY

Thank you for becoming the owner of a new Kia vehicle.

As a global car manufacturing company focused on building high-quality vehicles at value prices, Kia Motors is dedicated to providing you with Service above your expectation and delight customer experience.

In our Kia dealerships you will experience our "**Family-like Care**" promise, that creates feelings of warmth, hospitality and trust – feelings of being looked after by people who care.

All information contained in this Owner's Manual was accurate at the time of publication. However, Kia reserves the right to make changes at any time so that our policy of continual product improvement can be carried out.

This manual applies to all models of this vehicle and includes descriptions and explanations of optional as well as standard equipment. As a result, you may encounter material in this manual that is not applicable to your specific Kia vehicle.

Enjoy your vehicle & experience Kia "Family-like Care" !

JD RHD FOREWORD.QXP 2/17/2015 10:15 AM Page 2

FOREWORD

Thank you for choosing a Kia vehicle.

This manual will familiarize you with operational, maintenance and safety information about your new vehicle. It is supplemented by a Warranty and Maintenance book that provides important information on all warranties regarding your vehicle. Kia urges you to read these publications carefully and follow the recommendations to help assure enjoyable and safe operation of your new vehicle.

Kia offers a great variety of options, components and features for its various models. Therefore, some of the equipment described in this manual, along with the various illustrations, may not be applicable to your particular vehicle.

The information and specifications provided in this manual were accurate at the time of printing. Kia reserves the right to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation. If you have questions, we recommend to contact your authorised Kia dealer.

Kia assures you of our continuing interest in your motoring pleasure and satisfaction in your Kia vehicle.

© 2015 Kia Motors Slovakia s.r.o.

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Kia Motors Slovakia s.r.o..

JD RHD FOREWORD.QXP 2/17/2015 10:15 AM Page 3

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction	1
Your vehicle at a glance	2
Safety features of your vehicle	3
Features of your vehicle	4
Driving your vehicle	5
What to do in an emergency	6
Maintenance	7
Specifications & Consumer information	8
Index	I

JD RHD 1.QXP 2/17/2015 10:25 AM Page 1

Introduction

1

How to use this manual 1-2
Fuel requirements 1-2
- **Petrol engine 1-2**
- **Diesel engine 1-4**

Vehicle break-in process 1-5

JD RHD 1.QXP 2/17/2015 10:25 AM Page 2

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

We want to help you get the greatest possible driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual can assist you in many ways. We strongly recommend that you read the entire manual. In order to minimise the chance of death or injury, you must read the WARNING and CAUTION sections in the manual.

Illustrations complement the words in this manual to best explain how to enjoy your vehicle. By reading your manual, you will learn about features, important safety information, and driving tips under various road conditions.

The general layout of the manual is provided in the Table of Contents. Use the index when looking for a specific area or subject; it has an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

Sections: This manual has eight sections plus an index. Each section begins with a brief list of contents so you can tell at a glance if that section has the information you want.

You will find various WARNINGS, CAUTIONS, and NOTICES in this manual. These were prepared to enhance your personal safety. You should carefully read and follow ALL procedures and recommendations provided in these WARNINGS, CAUTIONS and NOTICES.

⚠ WARNING

A WARNING indicates a situation in which harm, serious bodily injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.

⚠ CAUTION

A CAUTION indicates a situation in which damage to your vehicle could result if the caution is ignored.

✻ NOTICE

A NOTICE indicates interesting or helpful information is being provided.

FUEL REQUIREMENTS

Petrol engine

Unleaded

For Europe

For the optimal vehicle performance, we recommend you to use unleaded petrol which complies with EN 228 and has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher (Do not use methanol blended fuels). You may use unleaded petrol with an octane rating of RON 91-94 / AKI 87-90 but it may result in slight performance reduction of the vehicle.

Except Europe

Your new vehicle is designed to use only unleaded fuel having an Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher. (Do not use methanol blended fuels)

Your new vehicle is designed to obtain maximum performance with UNLEADED FUEL, as well as minimise exhaust emissions and spark plug fouling.

JD RHD 1.QXP 2/17/2015 10:25 AM Page 3

⚠ CAUTION

NEVER USE LEADED FUEL. The use of leaded fuel is detrimental to the catalytic converter and will damage the engine control system's oxygen sensor and affect emission control.

Never add any fuel system cleaning agents to the fuel tank other than what has been specified. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refuelling.**
- **Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.**

Petrol containing alcohol and methanol

Gasohol, a mixture of petrol and ethanol (also known as grain alcohol), and petrol or gasohol containing methanol (also known as wood alcohol) are being marketed along with or instead of leaded or unleaded petrol.

Do not use gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol, and do not use petrol or gasohol containing any methanol. Either of these fuels may cause drivability problems and damage to the fuel system, engine control system and emission control system.

Discontinue using gasohol of any kind if drivability problems occur.

Vehicle damage or driveability problems may not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty if they result from the use of:

1. Gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol.
2. Petrol or gasohol containing methanol.
3. Leaded fuel or leaded gasohol.

⚠ CAUTION

Never use gasohol which contains methanol. Discontinue use of any gasohol product which impairs drivability.

Other fuels

Using fuels such as

- Silicone (Si) contained fuel,
- MMT (Manganese, Mn) contained fuel,
- Ferrocene (Fe) contained fuel, and
- Other metalic additives contained fuels, may cause vehicle and engine damage or cause plugging, misfiring, poor acceleration, engine stalling, catalyst melting, abnormal corrosion, life cycle reduction, etc.

  Also, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) may illuminate.

✻ NOTICE

Damage to the fuel system or performance problem caused by the use of these fuels may not be covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

JD RHD 1.QXP 2/17/2015 10:25 AM Page 4

Use of MTBE

Kia recommends avoiding fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) in your vehicle.

Fuel containing MTBE over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) may reduce vehicle performance and produce vapour lock or hard starting.

⚠ CAUTION

Your New Vehicle Limited Warranty may not cover damage to the fuel system and any performance problems that are caused by the use of fuels containing methanol or fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight.)

Do not use methanol

Fuels containing methanol (wood alcohol) should not be used in your vehicle. This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and damage components of the fuel system, engine control system and emission control system.

Fuel Additives

Kia recommends that you use unleaded petrol which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher (for Europe) or Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti- Knock Index) 87 or higher (except Europe).

For customers who do not use good quality petrols including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additives added to the fuel tank at every 15,000km (for Europe)/ 5,000km (except Europe). Additives are available from your authorised Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

Operation in foreign countries

If you are going to drive your vehicle in another country, be sure to:

- Observe all regulations regarding registration and insurance.
- Determine that acceptable fuel is available.

Diesel engine

Diesel fuel

Diesel engine must be operated only on commercially available diesel fuel that complies with EN 590 or comparable standard. (EN stands for "European Norm"). Do not use marine diesel fuel, heating oils, or non-approved fuel additives, as this will increase wear and cause damage to the engine and fuel system. The use of non-approved fuels and / or fuel additives will result in a limitation of your warranty rights.

Diesel fuel of above cetane 51 is used in your vehicle. If two types of diesel fuel are available, use summer or winter fuel properly according to the following temperature conditions.

- Above -5°C (23°F) ... Summer type diesel fuel.
- Below -5°C (23°F) ... Winter type diesel fuel.

Watch the fuel level in the tank very carefully : If the engine stops through fuel failure, the circuits must be completely purged to permit restarting.

JD RHD 1.QXP 2/17/2015 10:25 AM Page 5

⚠ CAUTION

Do not let any petrol or water enter the tank. This would make it necessary to drain it out and to bleed the lines to avoid jamming the injection pump and damaging the engine.

⚠ CAUTION - Diesel Fuel (if equipped with DPF)

It is recommended to use the regulated automotive diesel fuel for diesel vehicle equipped with the DPF system.

If you use diesel fuel including high sulfur (more than 50 ppm sulfur) and unspecified additives, it can cause the DPF system to be damaged and white smoke can be emitted.

Biodiesel

Commercially supplied Diesel blends of no more than 7% biodiesel, commonly known as "B7 Diesel" may be used in your vehicle if Biodiesel meets EN 14214 or equivalent specifications. (EN stands for "European Norm"). The use of biofuels exceeding 7% made from rapeseed methyl ester (RME), fatty acid methyl ester (FAME), vegetable oil methyl ester (VME) etc. or mixing diesel exceeding 7% with biodiesel will cause increased wear or damage to the engine and fuel system. Repair or replacement of worn or damaged components due to the use of non approved fuels will not be covered by the manufactures warranty.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Never use any fuel, whether diesel, B7 biodiesel or otherwise, that fails to meet the latest petroleum industry specification.***
- ***Never use any fuel additives or treatments that are not recommended or approved by the vehicle manufacturer.***

VEHICLE BREAK-IN PROCESS

No special break-in period is needed. By following a few simple precautions for the first 1,000 km (600 miles) you may add to the performance, economy and life of your vehicle.

- Do not race the engine.
- Whilst driving, keep your engine speed (rpm, or revolutions per minute) between 2,000 rpm and 4,000 rpm.
- Do not maintain a single speed for long periods of time, either fast or slow. Varying engine speed is needed to properly break-in the engine.
- Avoid hard stops, except in emergencies, to allow the brakes to seat properly.
- Don't tow a trailer during the first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) of operation.

JD RHD 2.QXP 2/17/2015 12:00 PM Page 1

Your vehicle at a glance

Exterior overview (front) 2-2
Exterior overview (rear) 2-3
Interior overview 2-4
Instrument panel overview 2-5
Engine compartment 2-6

JD RHD 2.QXP 2/17/2015 12:00 PM Page 2

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW (FRONT)



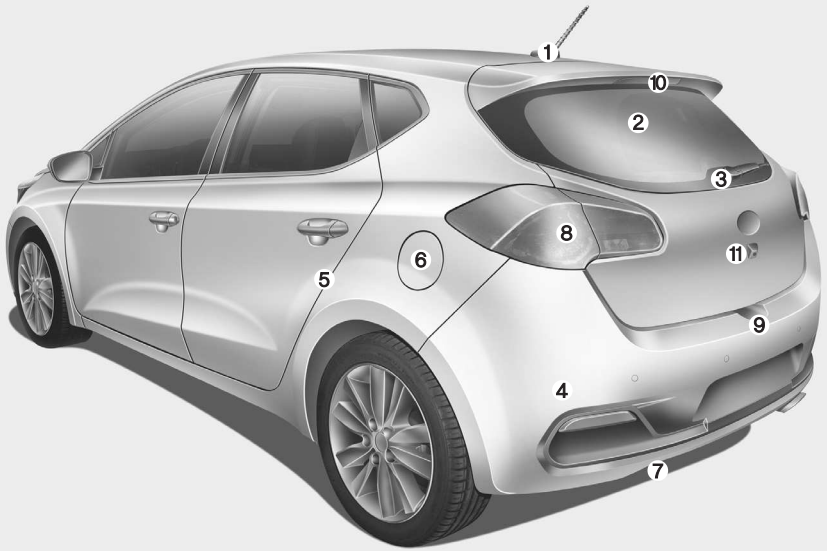
1. Front removable towing hook 6-30
2. Front windscreen wiper 4-119
3. Outside rearview mirror 4-44
4. Door lock 4-17
5. Head lamp 4-111, 7-89
6. Front fog lamp.....4-116
7. Bonnet 4-28
8. Tyre and wheel 7-56

❈ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJD012001R

JD RHD 2.QXP 2/17/2015 12:00 PM Page 3

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW (REAR)



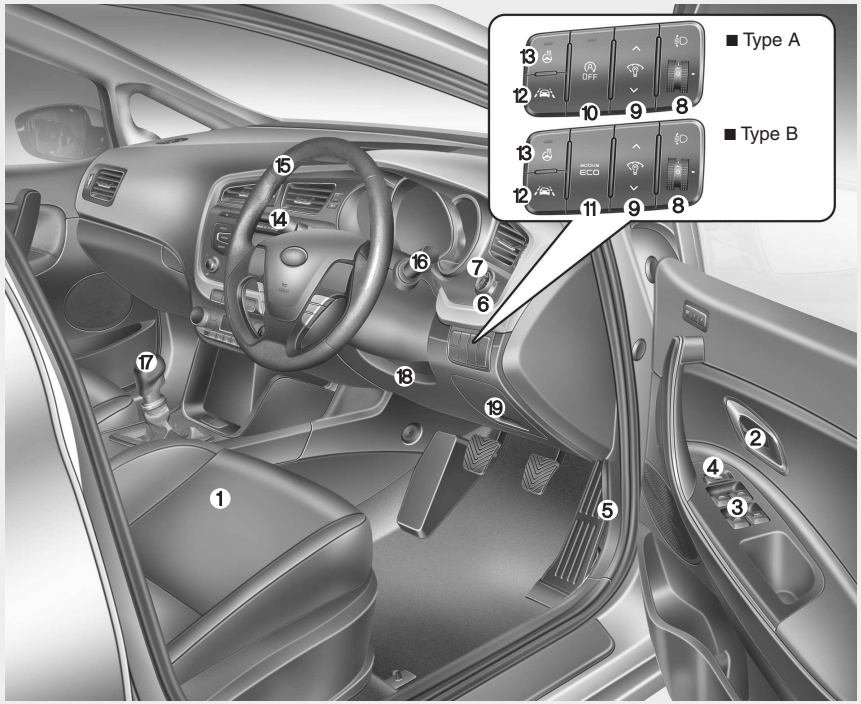
1. Roof antenna 4-172
2. Rear window defroster.....4-127
3. Rear wiper 4-122
4. Rear parking assist system 4-92
5. Child-protector rear door lock.....4-21
6. Fuel filler 4-30
7. Rear towing hook.....6-30
8. Rear combination lamp 7-105
9. Tailgate handle switch 4-22
10. High mounted stop lamp 7-110
11. Rearview camera.....4-110

❈ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJD012002

JD RHD 2.QXP 2/17/2015 12:00 PM Page 4

INTERIOR OVERVIEW



1. Seat.....3-2
2. Inside door handle 4-18
3. Power window switch 4-24
4. Power window lock switch.....4-26
5. Bonnet release lever.....4-28
6. Outside rearview mirror folding.....4-45
7. Outside rearview mirror control.....4-44
8. Headlight levelling device 4-117
9. Instrument panel illumination control system 4-47, 4-61
10. Idle Stop and Go (ISG) OFF button 5-15
11. Active ECO button 5-32
12. Lane departure warning system button..5-59
13. Heated steering wheel button.....4-38
14. Light control/Turn signals 4-112
15. Steering wheel 4-37
16. Wiper/Washer 4-119
17. Transaxle shift lever 5-20, 5-23
18. Tilt and telescopic steering control lever.....4-38
19. Fuse box 7-68

❊ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJD012003R

JD RHD 2.QXP 2/17/2015 12:00 PM Page 5

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW



1. Instrument cluster 4-46, 4-59
2. Horn 4-39
3. Steering wheel audio control.....4-173
4. Cruise control switch 5-51
   Speed limiter control switch 5-56
   Cluster display mode conversion switch 4-61
5. Driver's air bag 3-50
6. Ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button 5-5, 5-9
7. Hazard warning switch 4-110
8. Audio 4-172
9. Seat warmer 3-12
10. Central door lock switch 4-19
11. ESC OFF button.....5-44
12. Climate control system 4-128, 4-137
13. Cigar lighter.....4-155
14. Aux, USB and iPod port 4-160
15. Power outlet 4-159
16. Front passenger's air bag 3-50
17. Glove box 4-153

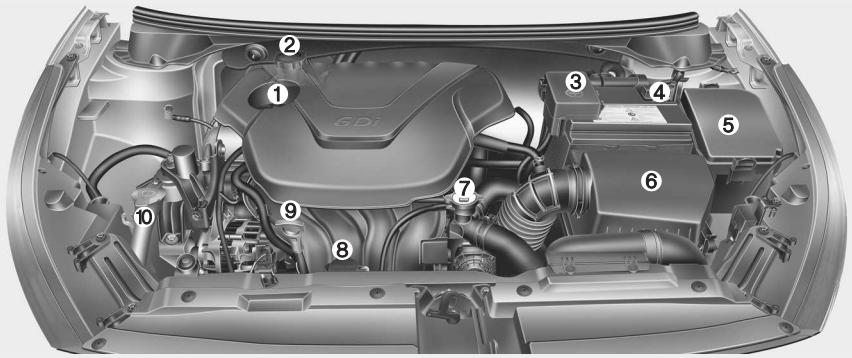
❈ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJD012004R

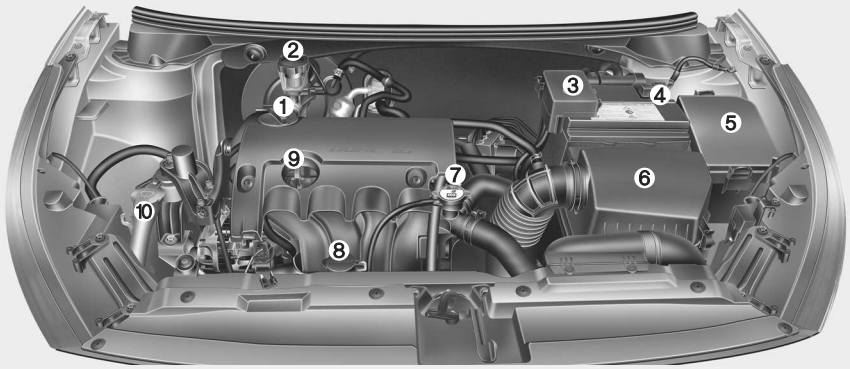
JD RHD 2.QXP 2/17/2015 12:01 PM Page 6

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ **Petrol engine (GDI)**



■ **Petrol engine (MPI)**



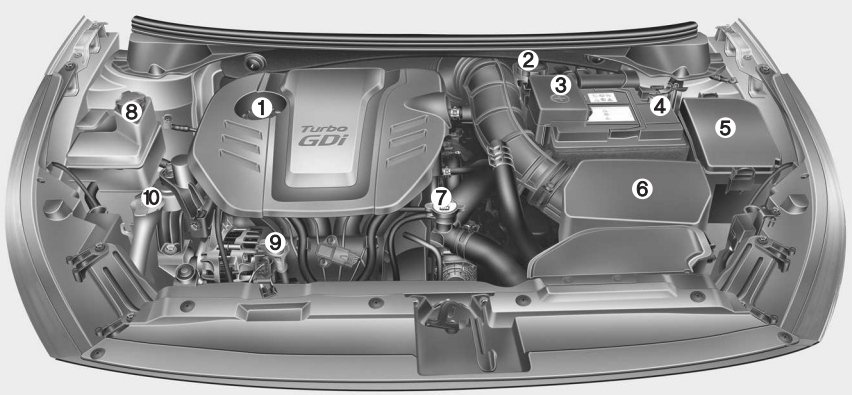
❊ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. Engine oil filler cap 7-38
2. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir 7-43
3. Positive battery terminal 7-53
4. Negative battery terminal 7-53
5. Fuse box.....7-68
6. Air cleaner 7-46
7. Radiator cap 7-42
8. Engine coolant reservoir.....7-41
9. Engine oil dipstick.....7-38
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir ..7-44

OJD072001R/OJD072002R

JD RHD 2.QXP 2/17/2015 12:01 PM Page 7

■ **Petrol engine (T-GDI)**



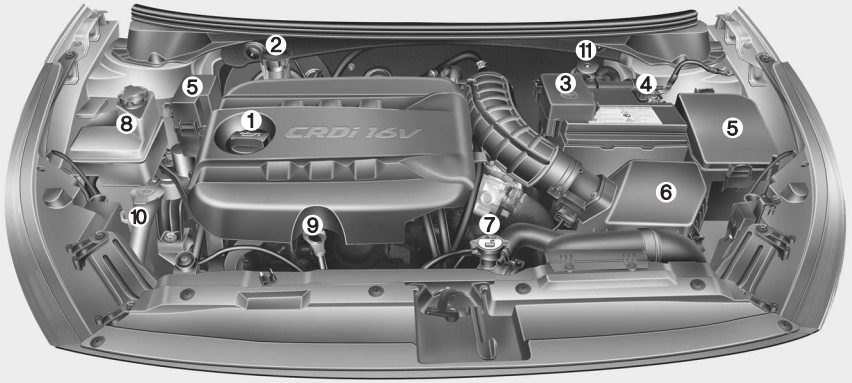
1. Engine oil filler cap 7-38
2. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir 7-43
3. Positive battery terminal 7-53
4. Negative battery terminal 7-53
5. Fuse box.....7-68
6. Air cleaner 7-46
7. Radiator cap 7-42
8. Engine coolant reservoir.....7-41
9. Engine oil dipstick.....7-38
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir ..7-44

❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJD073077R

JD RHD 2.QXP 2/17/2015 12:01 PM Page 8

■ **Diesel engine**



1. Engine oil filler cap 7-38
2. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir 7-43
3. Positive battery terminal 7-53
4. Negative battery terminal 7-53
5. Fuse box.....7-68
6. Air cleaner 7-46
7. Radiator cap 7-42
8. Engine coolant reservoir.....7-41
9. Engine oil dipstick.....7-38
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir ..7-44
11. Fuel filter 7-45

✻ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJD072003R

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:39 PM Page 1

Safety features of your vehicle

Seat 3-2
- Front seat. 3-4
- Driver position memory system 3-8
- Rear seat 3-14

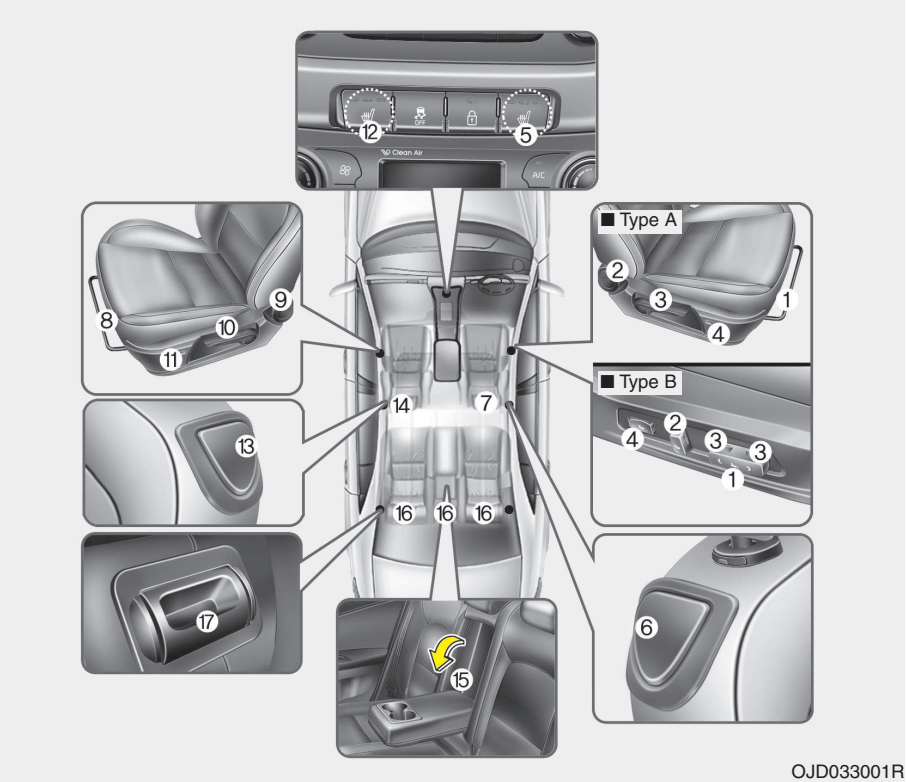
Seat belt. 3-20
- Seat belt warning 3-21
- Lap/shoulder belt 3-23
- Pre-tensioner seat belt 3-25
- Seat belt precautions 3-27
- Care of seat belts 3-30

Child restraint system 3-31
- Using a child restraint system 3-33

Airbag-supplemental restraint system 3-42
- Do not install a child restraint on a front passenger's seat 3-44
- Air bag warning and indicator. 3-45
- SRS components and functions 3-47
- Driver's and passenger's front air bag 3-50
- Side impact air bag 3-55
- Curtain air bag 3-56
- SRS Care 3-63
- Additional safety precautions. 3-64
- Air bag warning label 3-65
- Air bag warning label 3-65

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:39 PM Page 2

SEAT



OJD033001R

Driver's seat

(1) Seat adjustment, forward/backward
(2) Seatback recliner
(3) Seat adjustment, height
(4) Lumbar support*
(5) Seat warmer*
(6) Headrest adjustment
(7) Walk-in seat
(for 3 door vehicle only)

Front passenger seat

(8) Seat adjustment, forward/backward
(9) Seatback recliner
(10) Seat adjustment, height*
(11) Lumbar support*
(12) Seat warmer*
(13) Walk-in seat
(for 3 door vehicle only)
(14) Headrest adjustment

Rear seat

(15) Armrest*
(16) Headrest adjustment
(17) Split folding rear seat

* : if equipped

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:39 PM Page 3

⚠ WARNING - Loose objects

Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Do not place anything under the front seats.

✻ NOTICE

If you have a collision accident, the front seat may be damaged.
In this case we recommend that you have a seat system checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Driver responsibility for front seat passenger

Riding in a vehicle with a front seatback reclined could lead to serious or fatal injury in an accident. If a front seat is reclined during an accident, the occupant's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt applying great force to the unprotected abdomen. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result. The driver must advise the front passenger to keep the seatback in an upright position whenever the vehicle is in motion.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use a sitting cushion that reduces friction between the seat and passenger. The passenger's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result because the seat belt can't operate normally.

⚠ WARNING - Driver's seat

- **Never attempt to adjust seat whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.**
- **Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position of the seatback. Storing items against a seatback or in any other way interfering with proper locking of a seatback could result in serious or fatal injury in a sudden stop or collision.**
- **Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap portion of the seat belt snug and low across the hips. This is the best position to protect you in case of an accident.**
- **In order to avoid unnecessary and perhaps severe air bag injuries, always sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel whilst maintaining comfortable control of the vehicle. It is recommended that your chest is at least 250 mm (10 inches) away from the steering wheel.**

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:39 PM Page 4

⚠ WARNING - Rear seatbacks

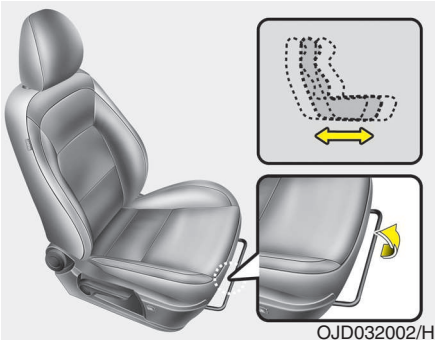
- **The rear seatback must be securely latched. If not, passengers and objects could be thrown forward resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or collision.**
- **Luggage and other cargo should be laid flat in the cargo area. If objects are large, heavy, or must be piled, they must be secured. Under no circumstances should cargo be piled higher than the seatbacks. Failure to follow these warnings could result in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop, collision or rollover.**
- **No passenger should ride in the cargo area or sit or lie on folded seatbacks whilst the vehicle is moving. All passengers must be properly seated in seats and restrained properly whilst riding.**
- **When resetting the seatback to the upright position, make sure it is securely latched by pushing it forward and backwards.**

⚠ WARNING

After adjusting the seat, always check that it is securely locked into place by attempting to move the seat forward or backward without using the lock release lever. Sudden or unexpected movement of the driver's seat could cause you to lose control of the vehicle resulting in an accident.

⚠ WARNING

- **Use extreme caution so that hands or other objects are not caught in the seat mechanisms whilst the seat is moving.**
- **Do not put a cigarette lighter on the floor or seat. When you operate the seat, gas may gush out of the lighter and cause fire.**
- **Use extreme caution when picking small objects trapped under the seats or between the seat and the centre console. Your hands might be cut or injured by the sharp edges of the seat mechanism.**



OJD032002/H

Front seat

Manual adjustment

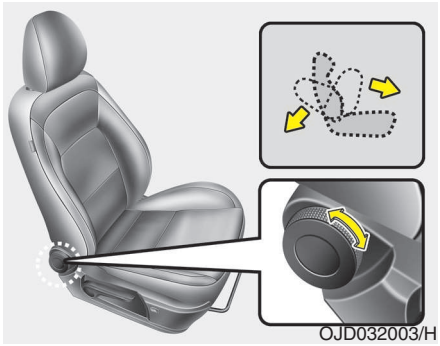
Forward and backward

To move the seat forward or backward:

1. Pull the seat slide adjustment lever up and hold it.
2. Slide the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seat is locked in place.

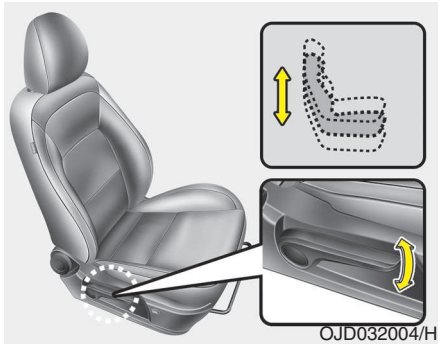
Adjust the seat before driving, and make sure the seat is locked securely by trying to move forward and backward without using the lever. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:40 PM Page 5



Seatback angle

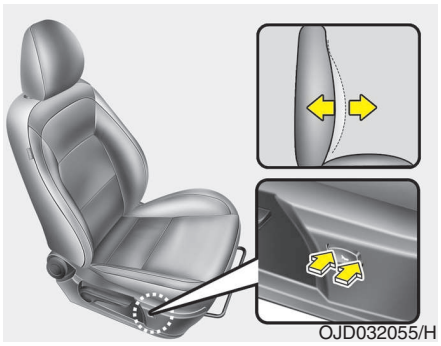
Turn the control knob forward or rearward to move the seatback to the desired angle.



Seat cushion height (if equipped)

To change the height of the seat cushion, push the lever upwards or downwards.

- To lower the seat cushion, push down the lever several times.
- To raise the seat cushion, pull up the lever several times.



Lumbar support (if equipped)

The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch on the side of the seat.

1. Press the front portion of the switch to increase support, or the rear portion of the switch, to decrease support.
2. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:40 PM Page 6

Automatic adjustment (if equipped)

The driver's seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the outside of the seat cushion. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so as to easily control the steering wheel, pedals and switches on the instrument panel.

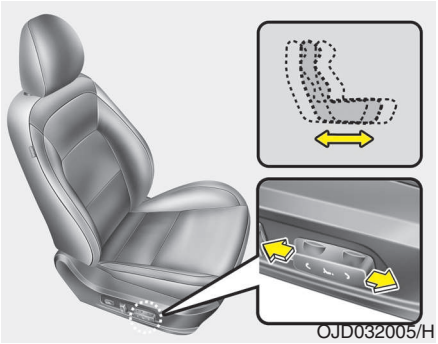
⚠ WARNING

The power seat is operable with the ignition OFF.

Therefore, children should never be left unattended in the car.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The power seat is driven by an electric motor. Stop operating once the adjustment is completed. Excessive operation may damage the electrical equipment.***
- ***When in operation, the power seat consumes a large amount of electrical power. To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, don't adjust the power seat longer than necessary whilst the engine is not running.***
- ***Do not operate two or more power seat control switches at the same time. Doing so may result in power seat motor or electrical component malfunction.***

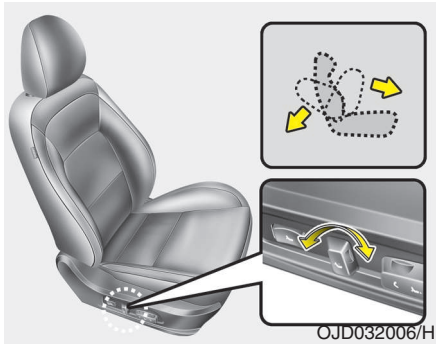


OJD032005/H

Forward and rearward

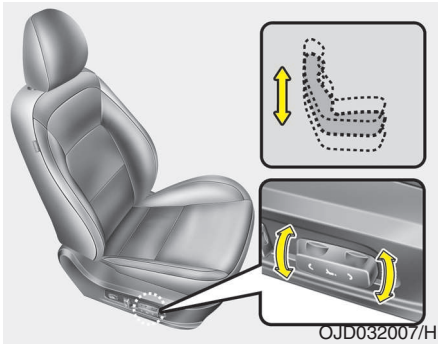
1. Push the control switch forward or rearward to move the seat to the desired position.
2. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:40 PM Page 7



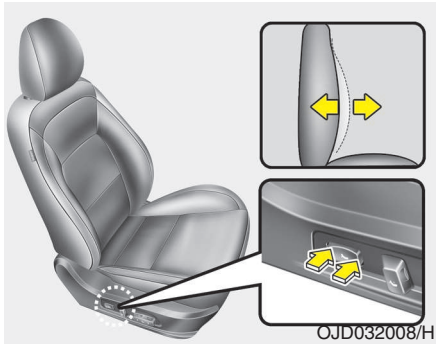
Seatback angle

1. Push the control switch forward or rearward to move the seatback to the desired angle.
2. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.



Seat cushion height (if equipped)

1. Pull the front portion of the control switch up to raise or down to lower the front part of the seat cushion. Pull the rear portion of the control switch up to raise or down to lower the rear part of the seat cushion.
2. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

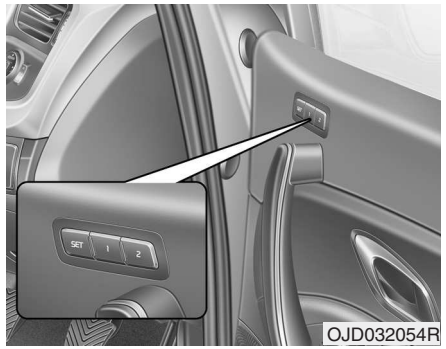


Lumbar support (if equipped)

The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch on the side of the seat.

1. Press the front portion of the switch to increase support, or the rear portion of the switch, to decrease support.
2. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:40 PM Page 8



Driver position memory system (if equipped, for automatic seat)

A driver position memory system is provided to store and recall the driver seat position with a simple button operation. By saving the desired position into the system memory, different drivers can reposition the driver seat based upon their driving preference. If the battery is disconnected, the position memory will be erased and the driving position should be restored in the system.

⚠ WARNING

Never attempt to operate the driver position memory system whilst the vehicle is moving.

This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.

Storing positions into memory using the buttons on the door

Storing driver's seat positions

1. Shift the shift lever into P or N (for Automatic transaxle) or Neutral (for manual transaxle) whilst the engine start/stop button is ON or ignition switch ON.
2. Adjust the driver's seat comfortable for the driver.
3. Press SET button on the control panel. The system will beep once.
4. Press one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) within 5 seconds after pressing the SET button. The system will beep twice when memory has been successfully stored.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:40 PM Page 9

Recalling positions from memory

1. Shift the shift lever into P or N (for Automatic transaxle) or Neutral (for manual transaxle) whilst the engine start/stop button is ON or ignition switch ON.
2. To recall the position in the memory, press the desired memory button (1 or 2). The system will beep once, then the driver's seat will automatically adjust to the stored position.

Adjusting the control switch for the driver's seat whilst the system is recalling the stored position will cause the movement to stop and move in the direction that the control switch is moved.

⚠ WARNING

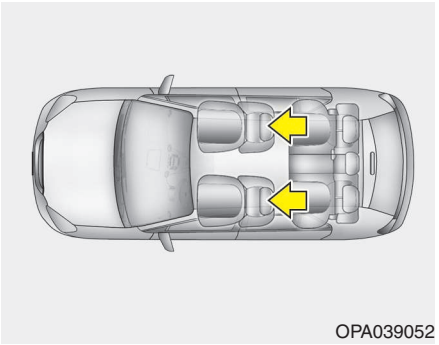
Use caution when recalling the adjustment memory whilst sitting in the vehicle. Push the seat position control switch to the desired position immediately if the seat moves too far in any direction.

Easy access function (if equipped)

The system will move the driver's seat automatically as follows:

- Without smart key system
  - It will move the driver's seat rearward when the ignition key is removed and front driver's door is opened.
  - It will move the driver's seat forward when the ignition key is inserted.
- With smart key system
  - It will move the driver's seat rearward when the engine start/stop button is changed to the OFF position and front driver's door is opened.
  - It will move the driver's seat forward when the engine start/stop button is changed to the ACC or START position.

You can activate or deactivate this feature. Refer to "User settings" in section 4.



OPA039052

Headrest

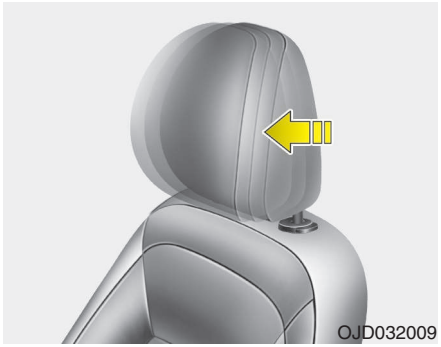
The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with a headrest for the occupant's safety and comfort.

The headrest not only provides comfort for the driver and front passenger, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:40 PM Page 10

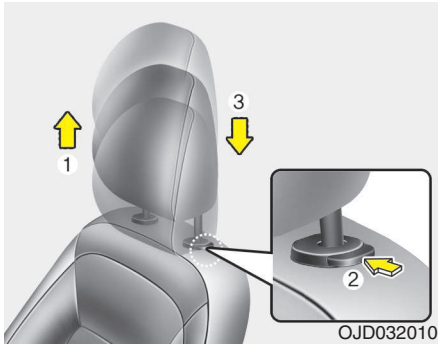
⚠ WARNING

- **For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height of the centre of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the centre of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also, adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.**
- **Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed as severe injury to the occupants may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against neck injuries when properly adjusted.**
- **Do not adjust the headrest position of the driver's seat whilst the vehicle is in motion.**



Forward and rearward adjustment (if equipped)

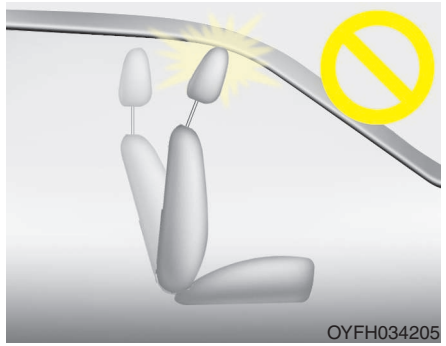
The headrest may be adjusted forward to 4 different positions by pulling the headrest forward to the desired detent. To adjust the headrest to it's furthest rearwards position, pull it fully forward to the farthest position and release it. Adjust the headrest so that it properly supports the head and neck.



Adjusting the height up and down

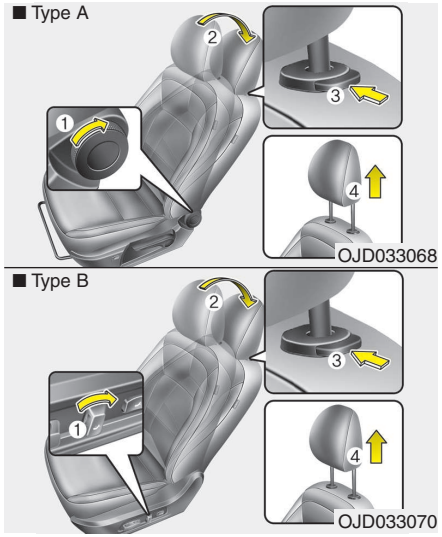
To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:40 PM Page 11



⚠ CAUTION

If you recline the seatback towards the front with the headrest and seat cushion raised, the headrest may come in contact with the sunvisor or other parts of the vehicle.



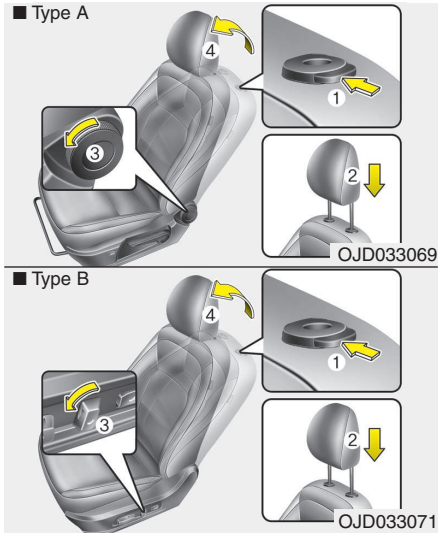
Removal and installation

To remove the headrest:

1. Recline the seatback (2) with the recline lever or switch (1).
2. Raise headrest as far as it can go.
3. Press the headrest release button (3) whilst pulling the headrest up (4).

⚠ WARNING

NEVER allow anyone to ride in a seat with the headrest removed.



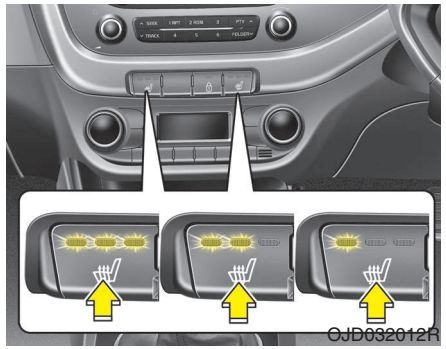
To reinstall the headrest :

1. Put the headrest poles (2) into the holes whilst pressing the release button (1).
2. Recline the seatback (4) with the recline lever or switch (3).
3. Adjust the headrest to the appropriate height.

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure the headrest locks into position after reinstalling and adjusting it properly.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:40 PM Page 12



Seat warmer (if equipped)

The seat warmer is provided to warm the front seats during cold weather. With the ignition switch in the ON position, push either of the switches to warm the driver's seat or the front passenger's seat.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the switches in the "OFF" position.

- Each time you press the switch, the temperature setting of the seat will change as follows :

OFF → HIGH ( ) → MID ( )
↑ LOW ( ) ←

- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.

✻ NOTICE

With the seat warmer switch in ON position, the heating system in the seat turns off or on automatically depending on the seat temperature.

⚠ CAUTION - Seat damage

- ***When cleaning the seats, do not use an organic solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol and petrol. Doing so may damage the surface of the heater or seats.***
- ***To prevent overheating the seat warmer, do not place anything on the seats that insulates against heat, such as blankets, cushions or seat covers on the seats whilst the seat warmer is in operation.***
- ***Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat warmers. Damage to the seat warming components could occur.***

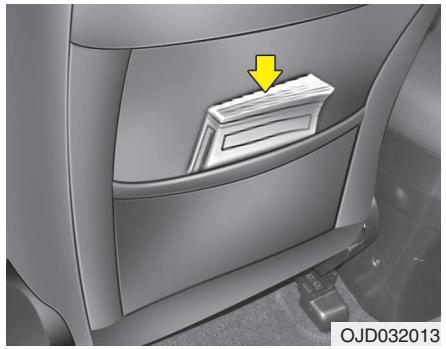
⚠ WARNING - Seat warmer burns

Passengers should use extreme caution when using seat warmers due to the possibility of excess heating or burns. The occupants must be able to feel if the seat is becoming too warm and to turn the seat warmer off. The seat warmer may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time.

In particular, the driver must exercise extreme care for the following types of passengers:

1. **Infants, children, elderly or disabled persons, or hospital outpatients**
2. **Persons with sensitive skin or those that burn easily**
3. **Fatigued individuals**
4. **Intoxicated individuals**
5. **Individuals taking medication that can cause drowsiness or sleepiness (sleeping pills, cold tablets, etc.)**

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:40 PM Page 13



Seatback pocket (if equipped)

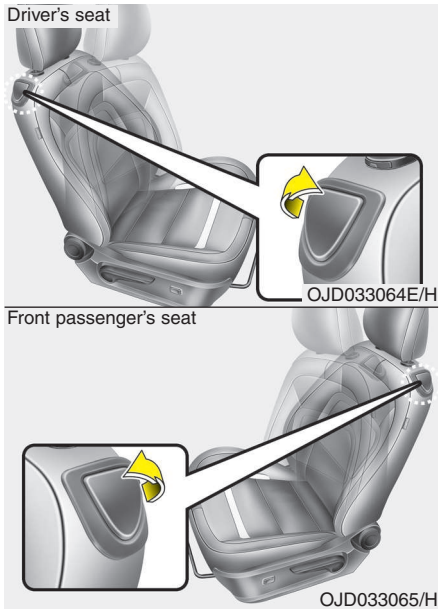
The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front passenger's and driver's seatbacks.

⚠ WARNING - Seatback pockets

Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could come loose from the pocket and injure vehicle occupants.

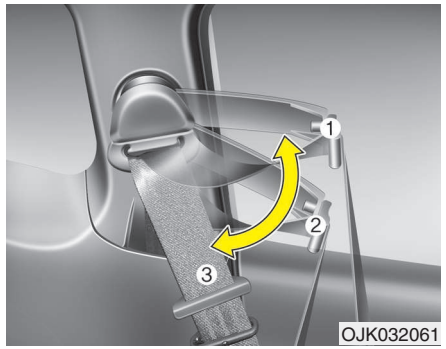
Rear Seat Entry
(For 3-door vehicle only)

To get in or get out of the rear seat, the driver's or front passenger's seat should be folded and the seat should be slide.



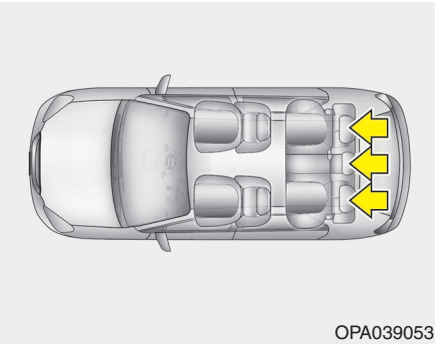
1. Fold the front seatback by pulling up the walk-in seat lever and then slide the front seat forward.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:40 PM Page 14



OJK032061

2. Set the belt extension guide to position (3).
3. After getting in or getting out, slide the seat rearward whilst holding the seat cushion and then push the seatback rearward. And set the belt extension guide to position (1) or (2).


OPA039053

Rear seat

Headrest

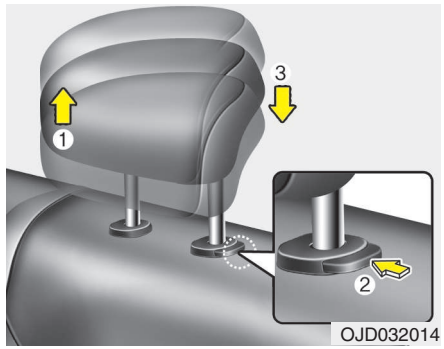
The rear seat is equipped with headrests in all the seating positions for the occupant's safety and comfort.

The headrest not only provides comfort for passengers, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

⚠ WARNING

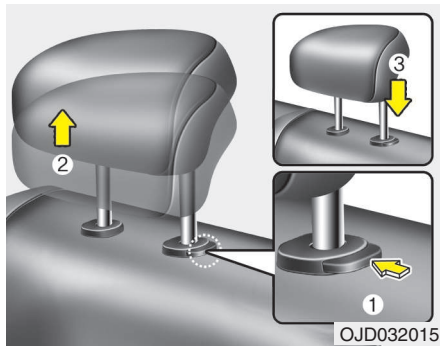
- **For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height of the centre of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the centre of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.**
- **Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed. Severe injury to an occupant may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against severe neck injuries when properly adjusted.**

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:40 PM Page 15



Adjusting the height up and down

To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).



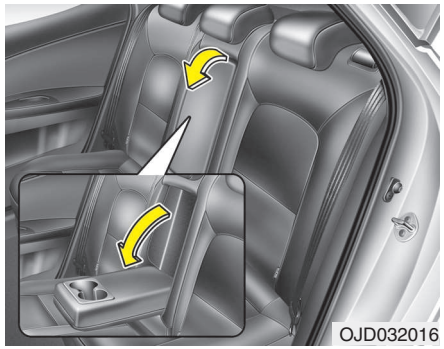
Removal and installation

To remove the headrest, raise it as far as it can go then press the release button (1) whilst pulling the headrest up (2).

To reinstall the headrest, put the headrest poles (3) into the holes whilst pressing the release button (1). Then adjust it to the appropriate height.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the headrest locks in position after adjusting it to properly protect the occupants.



Armrest (if equipped)

To use the armrest, pull it forward from the seatback.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 16

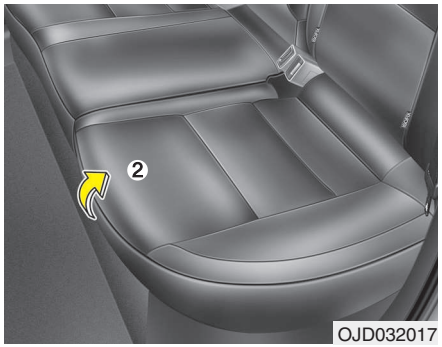
Folding the rear seat

The rear seatbacks (or cushions) may be folded to facilitate carrying long items or to increase the luggage capacity of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

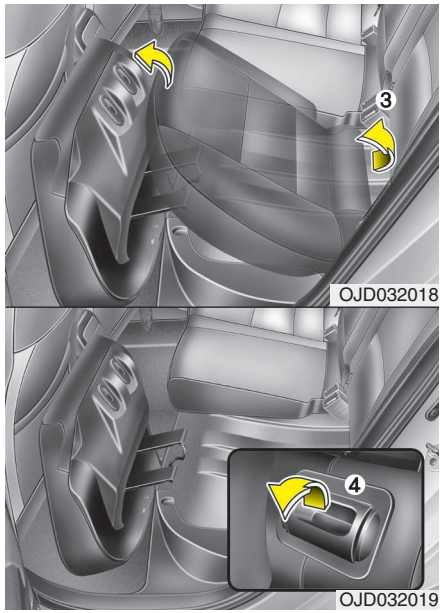
The purpose of the fold-down rear seatbacks (or cushions) is to allow you to carry longer objects than could otherwise be accommodated.

Never allow passengers to sit on top of the folded down seatback whilst the car is moving as this is not a proper seating position and no seat belts are available for use. This could result in serious injury or death in case of an accident or sudden stop. Objects carried on the folded down seatback should not extend higher than the top of the front seats. This could allow cargo to slide forward and cause injury or damage during sudden stops.



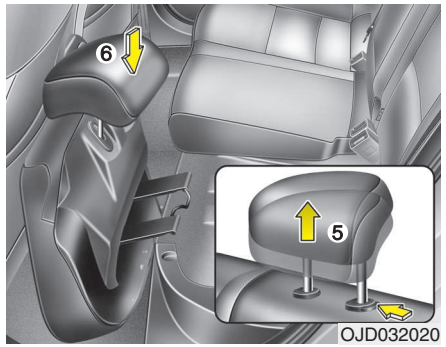
To fold the rear seat cushion and back (5 Door and Wagon)

1. Set the front seatback to the upright position and if necessary, slide the front seat forward.
2. Lift the front portion of the seat cushion up.

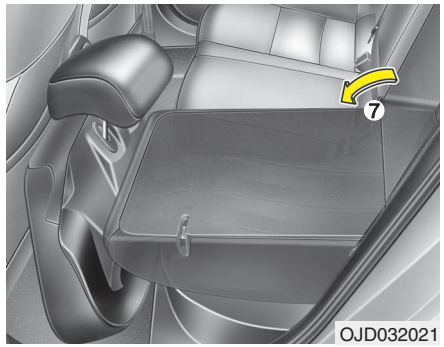


3. Lift the rear portion of the seat cushion. Stand the rear seat cushion vertically.
4. Pull the lock release lever (red visible).

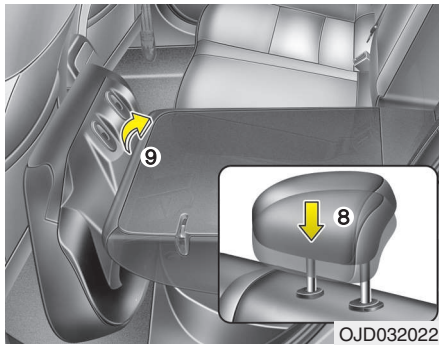
JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 17



5. Remove the headrest from the rear seatback.
6. Stow the headrest by inserting the headrest poles into the holder on the bottom of the seat cushion.

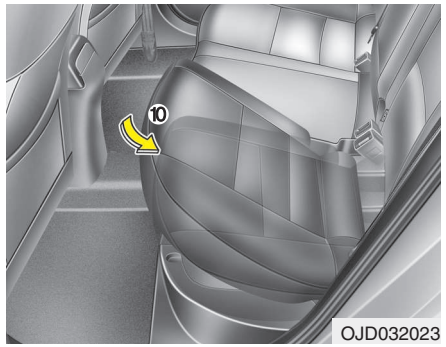


7. Fold the rear seatback forward and down firmly.

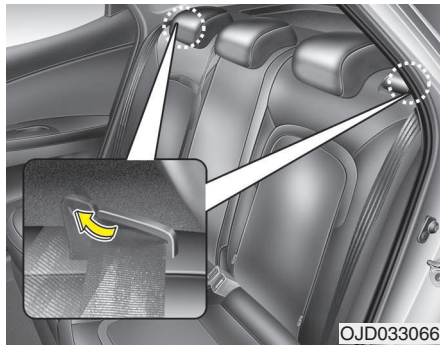


8. To use the rear seat, reposition the headrest on the seatback and adjust it to the desired position.
9. Lift and push the seatback backward firmly until it clicks into place. Make sure the seatback is locked in place (red invisible).

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 18

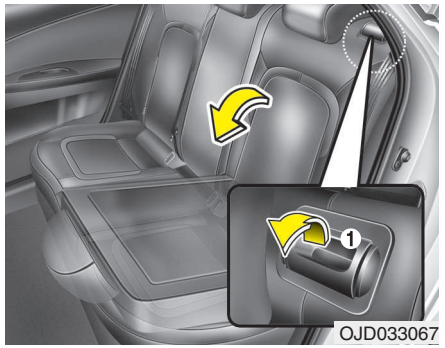


10. Return the seat cushion to the original position by pushing down the rear side of the seat cushion first. Make sure the seat cushion is locked in place.
11. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.



To fold down the rear seatback (for 3 Door):

1. Make sure the rear seat belt webbing is in the guide to prevent the seat belt from being damaged.
2. Set the front seatback to the upright position and if necessary, slide the front seat forward.
3. Lower the rear headrests to the lowest position.



4. Pull the lock release lever (1) and fold the rear seatback forward and down firmly.
   If the seat belt locks after unfolding the rear seatback, pull out the locked seat belt, release it then pull it out again.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 19

To unfold the rear seat

1. To use the rear seat, lift and pull the seatback backward. Pull the seatback firmly until it clicks into place. Make sure the seatback is locked in place. When you return the seatback to its upright position, always be sure it has locked into position by pushing on the top of the seatback.

   If you can not see the red line at the bottom of folding lever, it means the seatback is locked completely.
2. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.
3. When the seatback is completely installed, check the seatback folding lever again.

⚠ WARNING

When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after being folded down:

Be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle. Do not allow the seat belt webbing or buckle to get caught or pinched in the rear seat. Ensure that the seatback is completely locked into its upright position by pushing on the top of the seatback. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden stop, the seat could fold down and allow cargo to enter the passenger compartment, which could result in serious injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION - Rear seat belts

When returning the rear seatbacks to the upright position, remember to return the rear shoulder belts to their proper position.

⚠ WARNING - Cargo

Cargo should always be secured to prevent it from being thrown about the vehicle in a collision and causing injury to the vehicle occupants. Special care should be taken of objects placed in the rear seats, since those may hit the front seat occupants in a frontal collision.

⚠ WARNING - Cargo loading

Make sure the engine is off, the automatic transaxle is in P (Park) or the manual transaxle is in R (Reverse) or 1st, and the parking brake is securely applied whenever loading or unloading cargo. Failure to take these steps may allow the vehicle to move if the shift lever is inadvertently moved to another position.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 20

SEAT BELTS

Seat belt restraint system

⚠ WARNING

- For maximum restraint system protection, the seat belts must always be used whenever the car is moving.
- Seat belts are most effective when seatbacks are in the upright position.
- Children age 12 and younger must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over 12 must be seated in the front seat, he/she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.
- Never wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back. An improperly positioned shoulder belt can cause serious injuries in a crash. The shoulder belt should be positioned midway over your shoulder across your collarbone.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Avoid wearing twisted seat belts. A twisted belt can't do its job as well. In a collision, it could even cut into you. Be sure the belt webbing is straight and not twisted.
- Be careful not to damage the belt webbing or hardware. If the belt webbing or hardware is damaged, replace it.

⚠ WARNING

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed.

A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

(Continued)

(Continued)

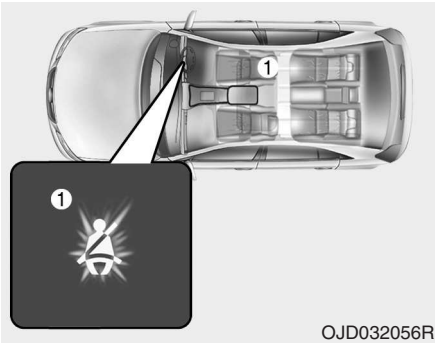
Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious. Belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 21

⚠ WARNING

- **No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.**
- **When you fasten the seat belt, be careful not to latch the seat belt in buckles of other seat. It's very dangerous and you may not be protected by the seat belt properly.**
- **Do not unfasten the seat belt and do not fasten and unfasten the seat belt repeatedly whilst driving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.**
- **When fastening the seat belt, make sure that the seat belt does not pass over objects that are hard or can break easily.**
- **Make sure there is nothing in the buckle. The seat belt may not be fastened securely.**



OJD032056R

Seat belt warning

Driver's seat belt warning (1)

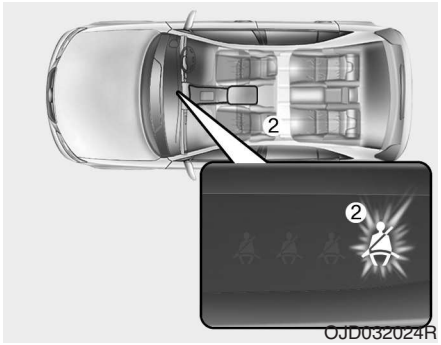
As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

If the driver's seat belt is unfastened after the ignition switch is ON, the seat belt warning light illuminates until the belt is fastened.

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 9km/h, the illuminated warning light will start to blink until you drive under 6km/h. (if equipped)

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 20km/h the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink. (if equipped)

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 22



Front passenger's seat belt warning (2)

As a reminder to the front passenger, the front passenger's seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

If the front passenger's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned ON or if it is disconnected after the ignition switch is turned ON, the corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate until the belt is fastened.

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 9km/h, the illuminated warning light will start to blink until you drive under 6km/h.

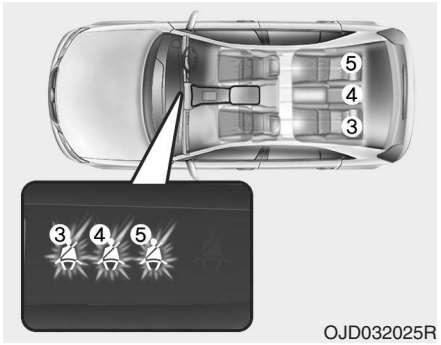
If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 20km/h the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

⚠ WARNING

Riding in an improper position adversely affects the front passenger's seat belt warning system. It is important for the driver to instruct the passenger as to the proper seating instructions as contained in this manual.

✻ NOTICE

- **You can find the front passenger's seat belt warning light on the centre fascia panel.**
- **Although the front passenger seat is not occupied, the seat belt warning light will blink or illuminate for 6 seconds.**
- **The front passenger's seat belt warning may operate when luggage is placed on the front passenger seat.**



Rear passenger's seat belt warning (3,4,5)

If the ignition switch is turned ON(engine is not running) when the rear passenger's lap/shoulder belt is not fastened, the corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate until the belt is fastened.

And then, the rear corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 35 seconds, if any of following occurs;

- You start the engine when the rear belt is not fastened.
- You drive over 9km/h when the rear belt is not fastened.
- The rear belt is disconnected when driving under 20km/h.

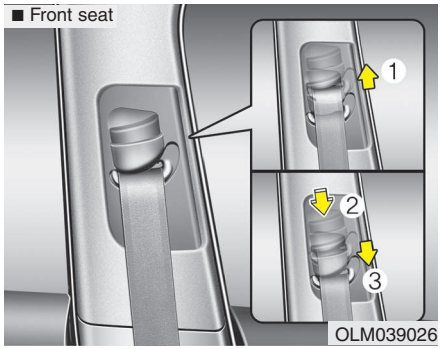
JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 23

If the rear seat belt is fastened, the warning light will turn off immediately.

If the rear seat belt is disconnected when you drive over the 20km/h, the corresponding seat belt warning light will blink and warning chime will sound for 35 seconds.

But, if the rear passenger's lap/shoulder belt is/are connected and disconnected twice within 9 seconds after the belt is fastened, the corresponding seat belt warning light will not operate.

■ Front seat



Lap/shoulder belt

Height adjustment (5 Door and Wagon)

You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of 4 positions for maximum comfort and safety.

The height of the adjusting seat belt should not be too close to your neck. You will not be getting the most effective protection. The shoulder portion should be adjusted so that it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder near the door and not your neck.

To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position.

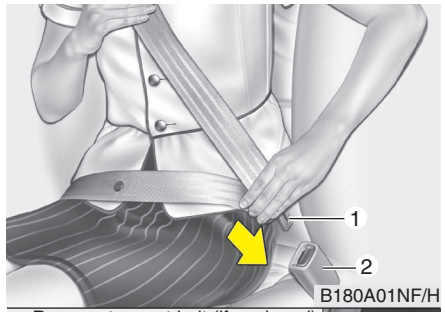
To raise the height adjuster, pull it up (1). To lower it, push it down (3) whilst pressing the height adjuster button (2).

Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the height adjuster to make sure that it has locked into position.

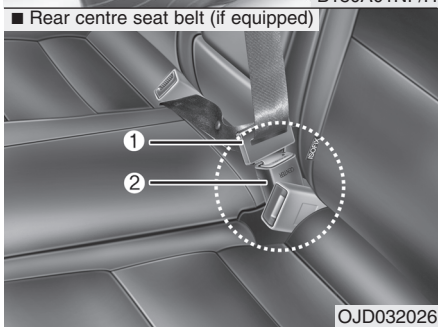
⚠ WARNING

- **Verify the shoulder belt anchor is locked into position at the appropriate height. Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face. Improperly positioned seat belts can cause serious injuries in an accident.**
- **Failure to replace seat belts after an accident could leave you with damaged seat belts that will not provide protection in the event of another collision leading to personal injury or death. Replace your seat belts after being in an accident as soon as possible.**

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 24



■ Rear centre seat belt (if equipped)



To fasten your seat belt:

To fasten your seat belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle.

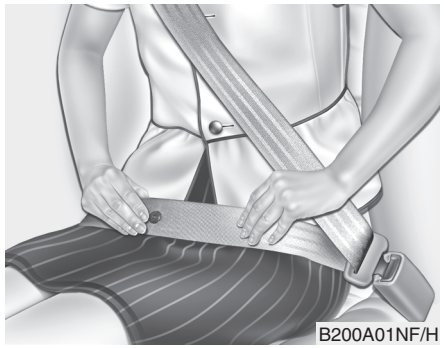
The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and let you move around. If there is a sudden stop or impact, however, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

⚠ CAUTION

When using the rear centre seat belt, the buckle with the "CENTRE" mark must be used.

✻ NOTICE

If you are not able to pull out the seat belt from the retractor, firmly pull the belt out and release it. Then you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.

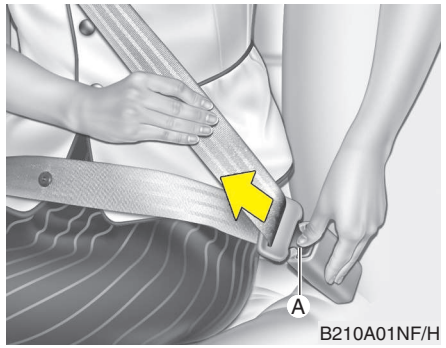


⚠ WARNING

You should place the lap belt portion as low as possible and snugly across your hips, not on your waist. If the lap belt is located too high on your waist, it may increase the chance of injury in the event of a collision. Both arms should not be under or over the belt. Rather, one should be over and the other under, as shown in the illustration.

Never wear the seat belt under the arm near the door.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 25



To release the seat belt:

The seat belt is released by pressing the release button (A) in the locking buckle. When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor.

If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.



Pre-tensioner seat belt

Your vehicle is equipped with driver's and front passenger's pre-tensioner seat belts. The purpose of the pre-tensioner is to make sure that the seat belts fit tightly against the occupant's body in certain frontal collisions. The pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in crashes where the frontal collision is severe enough.

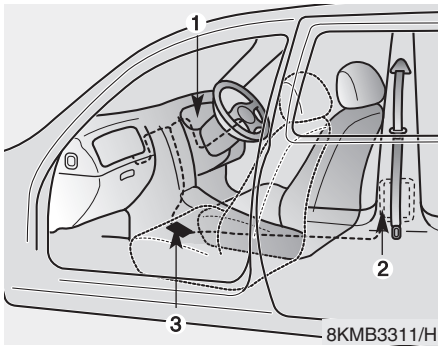
When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position. In certain frontal collisions, the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

If the system senses excessive seat belt tension on the driver or passenger's seat belt when the pre-tensioner activates, the load limiter inside the pre-tensioner will release some of the pressure on the affected seat belt.

⚠ WARNING

For your safety, be sure that the belt webbing is not loose or twisted and always sit properly on your seat.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 26



The seat belt pre-tensioner system consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the illustration:

1. SRS air bag warning light
2. Retractor pre-tensioner assembly
3. SRS control module

⚠ WARNING

To obtain maximum benefit from a pre-tensioner seat belt:

1. **The seat belt must be worn correctly and adjusted to the proper position. Please read and follow all of the important information and precautions about your vehicle's occupant safety features – including seat belts and air bags – that are provided in this manual.**
2. **Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts properly.**

✻ NOTICE

- **When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.**
- **Although it is harmless, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be breathed for prolonged periods. Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated.**
- **Because the sensor that activates the SRS air bag is connected with the pre-tensioner seat belt, the SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds after the ignition switch has been turned to the ON position, and then it should turn off.**

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 27

⚠ CAUTION

If the pre-tensioner seat belt is not working properly, the SRS air bag warning light will illuminate even if there is no malfunction of the SRS air bag. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the ignition key is turned to ON, or if it remains illuminated after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds, or if it illuminates whilst the vehicle is being driven, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

- **Pre-tensioners are designed to operate only one time. After activation, pre-tensioner seat belts must be replaced. All seat belts, of any type, should always be replaced after they have been worn during a collision.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The pre-tensioner seat belt assembly mechanisms become hot during activation. Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated.**
- **Do not attempt to inspect or replace the pre-tensioner seat belts yourself. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **Do not attempt to service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt system in any manner.**
- **Improper handling of the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies, and failure to heed the warnings not to strike, modify, inspect, replace, service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies may lead to improper operation or inadvertent activation and serious injury.**
- **Always wear the seat belts when driving or riding in a motor vehicle.**
- **If the vehicle or pre-tensioner seat belt must be discarded, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.**

Seat belt precautions

⚠ WARNING

All occupants of the vehicle must wear their seat belts at all times. Seat belts and child restraints reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries for all occupants in the event of a collision or sudden stop. Without a seat belt, occupants could be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle. Properly worn seat belts greatly reduce these hazards.

Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant seat contained in this manual.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 28

Infant or small child

You should be aware of the specific requirements in your country. Child and/or infant seats must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat. For more information about the use of these restraints, refer to “Child restraint system” in this section.

⚠ WARNING

Every person in your vehicle needs to be properly restrained at all times, including infants and children. Never hold a child in your arms or lap when riding in a vehicle. The violent forces created during a crash will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the interior. Always use a child restraint appropriate for your child's height and weight.

✻ NOTICE

Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained in the rear seat by a child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Before buying any child restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets Safety Standards of your country. The restraint must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the child restraint for this information. Refer to “Child restraint system” in this section.

Larger children

Children who are too large for child restraint systems should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. The lap portion should be fastened and snugged on the hips and as low as possible. Check if the belt fits periodically. A child's squirming could put the belt out of position. Children are afforded the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system in the rear seat. If a larger child (over age 12) must be seated in the front seat, the child should be securely restrained by the available lap/shoulder belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position. Children age 12 and under should be restrained securely in the rear seat. NEVER place a child age 12 and under in the front seat. NEVER place a rear facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 29

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the centre of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck they need to be returned to a child restraint system.

⚠ WARNING - Shoulder belts on small children

- **Never allow a shoulder belt to be in contact with a child's neck or face whilst the vehicle is in motion.**
- **If seat belts are not properly worn and adjusted on children, there is a risk of death or serious injury.**

Pregnant women

The use of a seat belt is recommended for pregnant women to lessen the chance of injury in an accident. When a seat belt is used, the lap belt portion should be placed as low and snugly as possible on the hips, not across the abdomen. For specific recommendations, consult a physician.

⚠ WARNING - Pregnant women

Pregnant women must never place the lap portion of the safety belt over the area of the abdomen where the fetus is located or above the abdomen where the belt could crush the fetus during an impact.

Injured person

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. When this is necessary, you should consult a physician for recommendations.

One person per belt

Two people (including children) should never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries in case of an accident.

Do not lie down

To reduce the chance of injuries in the event of an accident and to achieve maximum effectiveness of the restraint system, all passengers should be sitting up and the front seats should be in an upright position when the car is moving. A seat belt cannot provide proper protection if the person is lying down in the rear seat or if the front seat is in a reclined position.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 30

⚠ WARNING

Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. The protection of your restraint system (seat belts and air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seat. Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance that an occupant's hips will slide under the lap belt causing serious internal injuries or the occupant's neck could strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.

Care of seat belts

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to assure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

⚠ WARNING

When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after the rear seatback was folded down, be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle. Be sure that the webbing or buckle does not get caught or pinched in the rear seat. A seat belt with damaged webbing or buckle will not be as strong and could possibly fail during a collision or sudden stop, resulting in serious injury. If the webbing or buckles are damaged, get them replaced immediately.

Periodic inspection

It is recommended that all seat belts be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

Keep belts clean and dry

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

When to replace seat belts

Entire in-use seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. We recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 31

CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Children riding in the car should sit in the rear seat and must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden manoeuvre. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. Larger children not in a child restraint should use one of the seat belts provided.

You should be aware of the specific requirements in your country. Child and/or infant safety seats must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat. You must use a commercially available child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt, or by a tether anchor and/or ISOFIX anchors.

Children could be injured or killed in a crash if their restraints are not properly secured. For small children and babies, a child seat or infant seat must be used. Before buying a particular child restraint system, make sure it fits your car seat and seat belts, and fits your child. Follow all the instructions provided by the manufacturer when installing the child restraint system.

⚠ WARNING

- **A child restraint system must be placed in the rear seat. Never install a child or infant seat on the front passenger's seat. Should an accident occur and cause the passenger side air bag to deploy, it could severely injure or kill an infant or child seated in an infant or child seat. Thus only use a child restraint in the rear seat of your vehicle.**
- **A seat belt or child restraint system can become very hot if it is left in a closed vehicle on a sunny day, even if the outside temperature does not feel hot. Be sure to check the seat cover and buckles before placing a child there.**
- **When the child restraint system is not in use, store it in the luggage area or fasten it with a seat belt so that it will not be thrown forward in case of a sudden stop or an accident.**
- **Children may be seriously injured or killed by an inflating air bag. All children, even those too large for child restraints, must ride in the rear seat.**

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 32

⚠ WARNING

To reduce a risk of serious or fatal injuries:

- **Children of all ages are safer when restrained in the rear seat. A child riding in the front passenger seat can be forcefully struck by an inflating air bag resulting in serious or fatal injuries.**
- **Always follow the instructions for installation and use of the child restraint maker.**
- **Always make sure the child seat is secured properly in the car and your child is securely restrained in the child seat.**
- **Never hold a child in your arms or lap when riding in a vehicle. The violent forces created during a crash will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the car's interior.**
- **Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt could press deep into the child causing serious internal injuries.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Never leave children unattended in a vehicle – not even for a short time. The car can heat up very quickly, resulting in serious injuries to children inside. Even very young children may inadvertently cause the vehicle to move, entangle themselves in the windows, or lock themselves or others inside the vehicle.**
- **Never allow two children, or any two persons, to use the same seat belt.**
- **Children often squirm and reposition themselves improperly. Never let a child ride with the shoulder belt under their arm or behind their back. Always properly position and secure children in the rear seat.**
- **Never allow a child to stand-up or kneel on the seat or floorboard of a moving vehicle. During a collision or sudden stop, the child can be violently thrown against the vehicles interior, resulting in serious injury.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Never use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback, it may not provide adequate security in an accident.**
- **Seat belts can become very hot, especially when the car is parked in direct sunlight. Always check seat belt buckles before fastening them over a child.**
- **After an accident, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **If there is not enough space to place the child restraint system because of the driver's seat, install the child restraint system in the rear left seat.**

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 33

Rearward-facing child restraint system



Forward-facing child restraint system



Using a child restraint system

For small children and babies, the use of a child seat or infant seat is required. This child seat or infant seat should be of appropriate size for the child and should be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. For safety reasons, we recommend that the child restraint system be used in the rear seats.

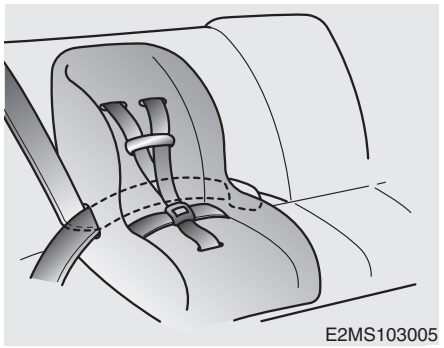
⚠ WARNING

Never place a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger seat, because of the danger that an inflating passenger-side air bag could impact the rear-facing child restraint and kill the child.

⚠ WARNING - Child seat installation

- **A child can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if the child restraint is not properly anchored to the vehicle and the child is not properly restrained in the child restraint. Before installing the child restraint system, read the instructions supplied by the child restraint system manufacturer.**
- **If the seat belt does not operate as described in this section, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **Failure to observe this manual's instructions regarding child restraint system and the instructions provided with the child restraint system could increase the chance and/or severity of injury in an accident.**
- **If the vehicle headrest prevents proper installation of a child seat (as described in the child seat system manual), the headrest of the respective seating position shall be readjusted or entirely removed.**

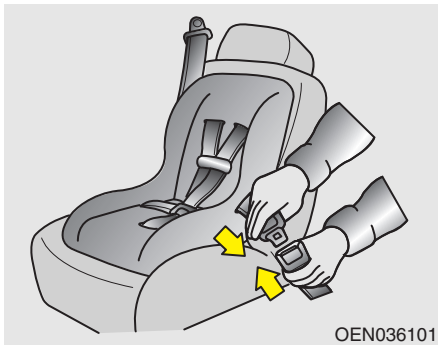
JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 34


E2MS103005

Installing a child restraint system by lap/shoulder belt

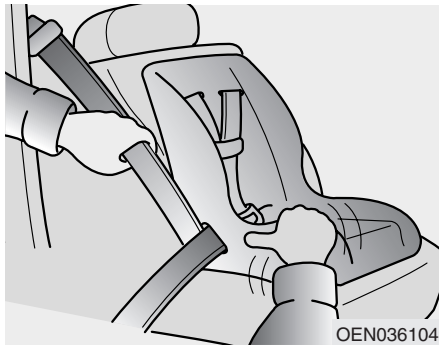
To install a child restraint system on the outboard or centre rear seats, do the following:

1. Place the child restraint system in the seat and route the lap/shoulder belt around or through the restraint, following the restraint manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.


OEN036101

2. Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct "click" sound.

Position the release button so that it is easy to access in case of an emergency.


OEN036104

3. Buckle the seat belt and allow the seat belt to take up any slack. After installation of the child restraint system, try to move it in all directions to be sure the child restraint system is securely installed.

If you need to tighten the belt, pull more webbing toward the retractor. When you unbuckle the seat belt and allow it to retract, the retractor will automatically revert back to its normal seated passenger emergency locking usage condition.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 35

Child Seat Restraint Suitability for Seat Position using the Seat Belt - For Europe

Use child safety seats that have been officially approved and are appropriate for your children. When using the child safety seats, refer to the following table.

Age Group	Seating Position		
	Front passenger	Rear outboard	Rear centre (if equipped)
0 : Up to 10 kg (0 - 9 months)	U*	U	U
0+ : Up to 13 kg (0 - 2 years)	U*	U	U
I : 9 kg to 18 kg (9 months - 4 years)	U*	U	U
II & III : 15 kg to 36 kg (4 - 12 years)	U*	U	U

U : Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group

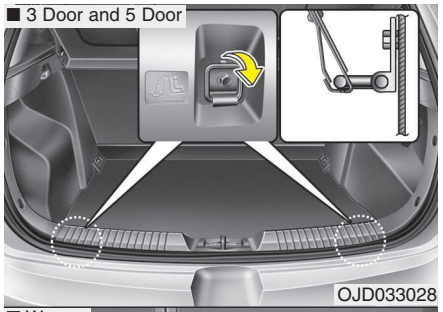
U* : Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use just in the condition of non-height adjustable seat or the highest position of height adjustable seat.

⚠ WARNING

We recommend that a child restraint seat be installed in the rear seat, even if the front passenger's air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position. To ensure the safety of your child, the front passenger's air bag must be deactivated when it should be necessary to install a child restraint seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.

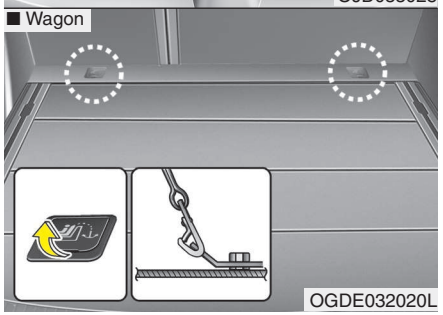
JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:41 PM Page 36

■ 3 Door and 5 Door



OJD033028

■ Wagon



OGDE032020L

Securing a child restraint seat with "Tether Anchor" system (if equipped)

Child restraint hook holders are located on the transverse trim behind the rear seats (3 Door and 5 Door) or the floor behind the rear seats (Wagon).



This symbol indicates the position of the tether anchor.



OJD032029

1. Route the child restraint seat strap over the seatback.
   For vehicles with adjustable headrest, route the tether strap under the headrest and between the headrest posts, otherwise route the tether strap over the top of the seatback.
2. Connect the tether strap hook to the appropriate child restraint hook holder and tighten to secure the seat.

⚠ WARNING

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if the child restraint is not properly anchored to the car and the child is not properly restrained in the child restraint. Always follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.

⚠ WARNING - Tether strap

Never mount more than one child restraint to a single tether or to a single lower anchorage point. The increased load caused by multiple seats may cause the tethers or anchorage points to break, causing serious injury or death.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 37

⚠ WARNING

Do not install a child restraint seat at the centre of the rear seat using the tether anchors. The tether anchors are only provided for the left and right outboard rear seating positions.

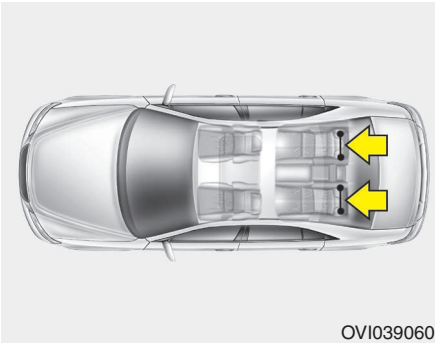
In a crash, the child restraint seat tether anchor attachments may not be strong enough to secure the child restraint seat properly in the centre of the rear seat and may break, causing serious injury or death.

⚠ WARNING - Child restraint check

Check that the child restraint system is secure by pushing and pulling it in different directions. Incorrectly fitted child restraints may swing, twist, tip or separate causing death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING - Child restraint anchorage

- **Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.**
- **The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.**



OVI039060

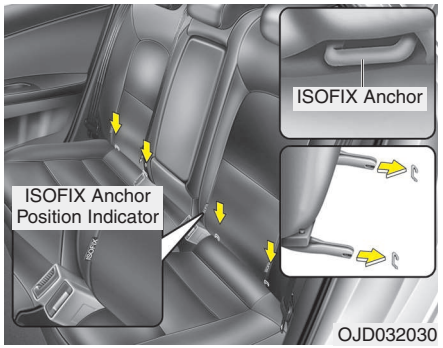
Securing a child restraint system with "ISOFIX" system and "Tether Anchorage" system (if equipped)

ISOFIX is a standardised method of fitting child seats that eliminates the need to use the standard adult seat belt to secure the seat in the vehicle. This enables a much more secure and positive location with the added benefit of easier and quicker installation.

An ISOFIX-seat may only be installed if it has vehicle-specific or universal approval in accordance with the requirements of ECE-R 44.

❈ ISOFIX: International Standards Origanisation FIX

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 38



There are ISOFIX symbols located on the lower portion of each side of the rear seatbacks. These symbols indicate the position of the lower anchors for child restraints so equipped.

Both rear outboard seats are equipped with a pair of ISOFIX anchorages as well as a corresponding top tether anchorage on the floor behind the rear seats (wagon) or the shelf behind the rear seats (sedan). The ISOFIX anchorages are located between seat cushion and backrest, marked with the ISOFIX icon.

For installation, CRS ISOFIX connecters have to engage with the vehicles ISOFIX anchorages (listen for a CLICK, check potential visual indicators on the CRS and cross-check by pulling).

CRS with universal approval to ECE-R 44 need to be fixed additionally with a top tether strap connected to the corresponding top tether anchorage point on the floor behind the rear seats (wagon) or the shelf behind the rear seats (sedan).

The installing and the use of a child-seat has to be done according to the installing-manual, which is added to the ISOFIX-seat.

⚠ WARNING

- **When using the vehicle's "ISOFIX" system to install a child restraint system in the rear seat, all unused vehicle rear seat belt metal latch plates or tabs must be latched securely in their seat belt buckles and the seat belt webbing must be retracted behind the child restraint to prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts. Unlatched metal latch plates or tabs may allow the child to reach the unretracted seat belts which may result in strangulation and a serious injury or death to the child in the child restraint.**
- **Do not place anything around the ISOFIX anchors. Also make sure that the seat belt is not caught in the ISOFIX anchors.**

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 39

To secure the child restraint seat

1. To engage the child restraint seat to the ISOFIX anchor, insert the child restraint seat latch into the ISOFIX anchor. Listen for the audible “click” sound.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not allow the rear seat belt webbing to get scratched or pinched by the ISOFIX-seat latch and ISOFIX anchor during installation.

2. Connect the tether strap hook to the child restraint hook holder and tighten to secure the seat. (Refer to the previous page.)

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not install a child restraint seat at the centre of the rear seat using the vehicle's ISOFIX anchors. The ISOFIX anchors are only provided for the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Do not misuse the ISOFIX anchors by attempting to attach a child restraint seat in the middle of the rear seat to the ISOFIX anchors.**

  In a crash, the child restraint seat ISOFIX attachments may not be strong enough to secure the child restraint seat properly in the centre of the rear seat and may break, causing serious injury or death.
- **Do not mount more than one child restraint to a child restraint lower anchorage point. The improper increased load may cause the anchorage points or tether anchor to break, causing serious injury or death.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Attach the ISOFIX or ISOFIX-compatible child restraint seat only to the appropriate locations shown in the illustration.**
- **Always follow the installation and use instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint.**

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 40

Child seat restraint suitability for vehicle ISOFIX positions - For Europe

Mass Group	Size Class	Fixture	Vehicle ISOFIX positions			
			Front Passenger	Rear Outboard (Driver side)	Rear Outboard (Passenger side)	Rear Centre
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	-	X	X	-
	G	ISO/L2	-	X	X	-
0 : UP to 10kg	E	ISO/R1	-	IL	IL	-
0+ : UP to 13kg	E	ISO/R1	-	IL	IL	-
	D	ISO/R2	-	IL	IL	-
	C	ISO/R3	-	IL*	IL*	-
I : 9 to 18kg	D	ISO/R2	-	IL	IL	-
	C	ISO/R3	-	IL*	IL*	-
	B	ISO/F2	-	IUF	IUF	-
	B1	ISO/F2X	-	IUF	IUF	-
	A	ISO/F3	-	IUF	IUF	-

IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraints systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.

IL = Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraints systems (CRS) given in the attached list. These ISOFIX CRS are those of the "specific vehicle", "restricted" or "semi-universal" categories.

X = ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint system in this mass group and/or this size class.

IL* = ISO/R3 is able to be set up only at the foremost position of the front seats.
But ISO/R3 is not able to be set up for 3 door vehicle.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 41

Recommended child restraint systems – For Europe

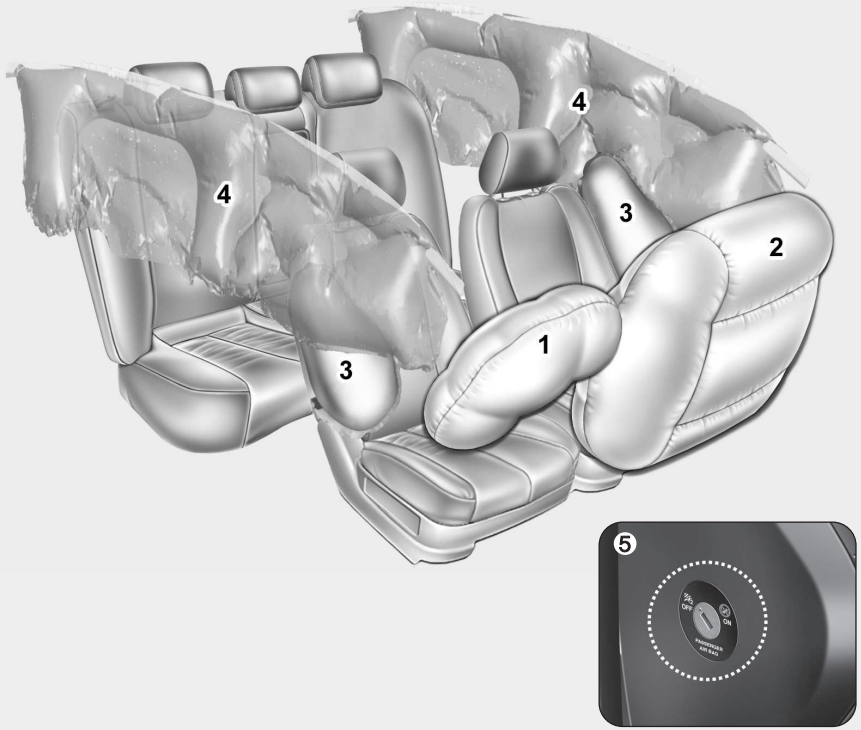
Mass Group	Name	Manufacturer	Type of Fixation	ECE-R44 Approval No.
Group 0+ (0-13kg)	Baby Safe Plus II	Britax Römer	Rearward facing with ISOFIX adapter	E1 04301146
Group 1 (9-18kg)	Duo Plus	Britax Römer	Forward facing with vehicle ISOFIX lower anchorage + Top Tether	E1 04301133
			Forward facing with vehicle 3-point seat belt	

CRS Manufacturer information

Britax Römer http://www.britax.com

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 42

AIR BAG - SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



❇ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJD032031R/OJD032032R

(1) Driver's front air bag
(2) Passenger's front air bag
(3) Side impact air bag*
(4) Curtain air bag*
(5) Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch

* : if equipped

⚠ WARNING

- **Even in vehicles with air bags, you and your passengers must always wear the safety belts provided in order to minimise the risk and severity of injury in the event of a collision or rollover.**
- **SRS and pretensioners contain explosive chemicals.**
  If scraping a vehicle without removing SRS and pretensioners from a vehicle, it may cause fire. Before scraping a vehicle, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.
- **Keep the SRS parts and wirings away from water or any liquid. If the SRS components are inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it may cause fire or severe injury.**

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 43

How does the air bag system operate

- Air bags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the ignition switch is turned to the ON or START position.
- Air bags inflate instantly in the event of serious frontal or side collision (if equipped with side impact air bag or curtain air bag) in order to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.
- There is no single speed at which the air bags will inflate.

  Generally, air bags are designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/ inflation signal.
- Air bag deployment depends on a number of factors including vehicle speed, angles of impact and the density and stiffness of the vehicles or objects which your vehicle hits in the collision. The determining, factors are not limited to those mentioned above.
- The front air bags will completely inflate and deflate in an instant.

  It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bags inflate during an accident. It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.
- In order to help provide protection in a severe collision, the air bags must inflate rapidly. The speed of air bag inflation is a consequence of extremely short time in which a collision occurs and the need to get the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries in a severe collision and is thus a necessary part of air bag design.

  However, air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bags to expand with a great deal of force.
- **There are even circumstances under which contact with the steering wheel air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the steering wheel.**

⚠ WARNING

- **To avoid severe personal injury or death caused by deploying air bags in a collision, the driver should sit as far back from the steering wheel air bag as possible (at least 250 mm (10 inches) away). The front passenger should always move their seat as far back as possible and sit back in their seat.**
- **Air bag inflates instantly in an event of a collision, passengers may be injured by the air bag expansion force if they are not in a proper position.**
- **Air bag inflation may cause injuries including facial or bodily abrasions, injuries from broken glasses or burns.**

Noise and smoke

When the air bags inflate, they make a loud noise and they leave smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing due to the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. **Open your doors and/or windows as soon as possible after impact in order to reduce discomfort and prevent prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder.**

Though smoke and powder are non-toxic, it may cause irritation to the skin (eyes, nose and throat, etc.). If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and consult the doctor if the symptom persists.

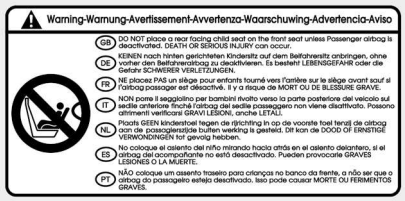
⚠ WARNING

When the air bags deploy, the air bag related parts in the steering wheel and/or instrument panel and/or in both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors are very hot. To prevent injury, do not touch the air bag storage areas internal components immediately after an air bag has inflated.



1JBH3051

■ Type A



OJD032059

■ Type B



OYDESA2042

Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger's seat

Never place a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger's seat. If the air bag deploys, it would impact the rear-facing child restraint, causing serious or fatal injury.

In addition, do not place front-facing child restraints in the front passenger's seat either. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it would cause serious or fatal injuries to the child.

If your vehicle is equipped with the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch, you can activate or deactivate the front passenger's air bag when necessary.

For more details, please refer to 3-52 page.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 45

⚠ WARNING

- **NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**
- **Never put a child restraint in the front passenger's seat. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it would cause serious or fatal injuries.**
- **When children are seated in the rear outboard seats of vehicle equipped with curtain air bags, be sure to install the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and securely lock the child restraint system in position.**

  Inflation of curtain air bags could cause serious injury or death to an infant or child.



W7-147

Air bag warning and indicator

Air bag warning light

The purpose of the air bag warning light in your instrument panel is to alert you of a potential problem with your air bag - Supplemental Restraint System (SRS).

When the ignition switch is turned ON, the warning light should illuminate for approximately 6 seconds, then go off.

Have the system checked if:

- The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.
- The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.
- The light comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion.
- The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 46



OJD032033R

Passenger's front air bag ON indicator

The passenger's front air bag ON indicator illuminates for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

The passenger's front air bag ON indicator also comes on when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position and goes off after approximately 60 seconds.



OJD032034R

Passenger's front air bag OFF indicator

The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator illuminates for about 4 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

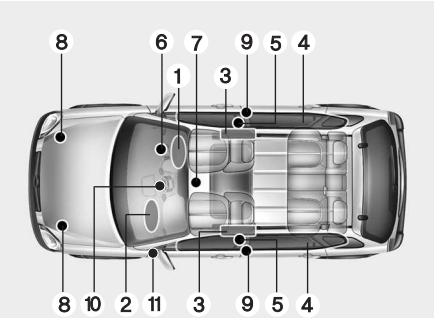
The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator also comes on when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position and goes off when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position.

⚠ CAUTION

If the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch malfunctions, the passenger's front air bag OFF indicator will not illuminate (The passenger's front air bag ON indicator comes on and goes off after approximately 60 seconds) and the passenger's front air bag will inflate in a frontal impact even if the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position.

If this occurs, we recommend that the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and the SRS air bag system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 47



OJD032053R

SRS components and functions

The SRS consists of the following components:

1. Driver's front air bag module
2. Passenger's front air bag module
3. Side air bag modules*
4. Curtain air bag modules*
5. Retractor pre-tensioner assemblies
6. Air bag warning light
7. SRS control module (SRSCM)
8. Front impact sensors
9. Side impact sensors*
10. Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF indicator
11. Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch

* : if equipped

The SRSCM continually monitors all elements whilst the ignition switch is ON to determine if a frontal, near-frontal impact or side impact is severe enough to require air bag deployment or pre-tensioner seat belt deployment.

The SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, after which the air bag warning light should go out.

⚠ WARNING

If any of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the SRS. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

- **The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.**
- **The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.**
- **The light comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion.**
- **The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.**

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 48

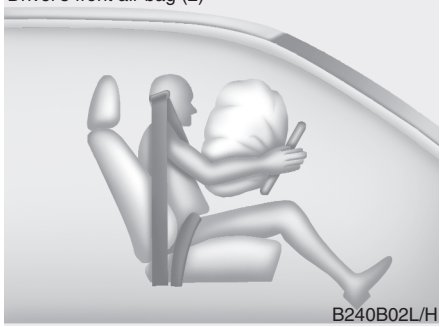
Driver's front air bag (1)



B240B01L/H

The air bag modules are located both in the centre of the steering wheel and in the front passenger's panel above the glove box. When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the front air bags.

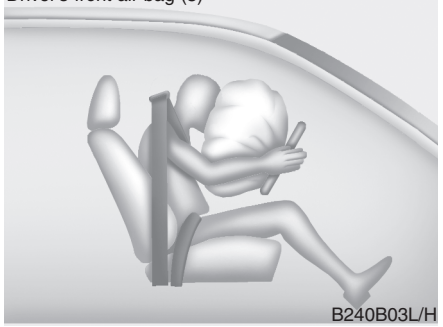
Driver's front air bag (2)



B240B02L/H

Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the air bags. Further opening of the covers then allows full inflation of the air bags.

Driver's front air bag (3)



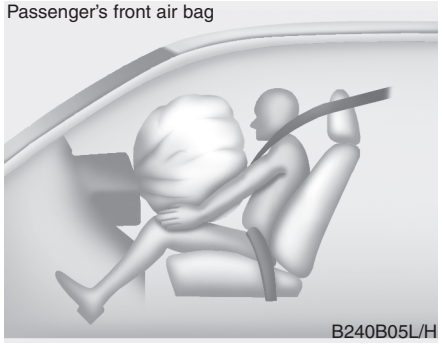
B240B03L/H

A fully inflated air bag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver's or the passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.

After complete inflation, the air bag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 49

Passenger's front air bag



B240B05L/H

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not install or place any accessories (drink holder, cassette holder, sticker, etc.) on the front passenger's panel above the glove box in a vehicle with a passenger's air bag. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.**
- **When installing a container of liquid air freshener inside the vehicle, do not place it near the instrument cluster nor on the instrument panel surface.**

  It may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.

⚠ WARNING

- **If an air bag deploys, there may be a loud noise followed by a fine dust released in the vehicle. These conditions are normal and are not hazardous - the air bags are packed in this fine powder. The dust generated during air bag deployment may cause skin or eye irritation as well as aggravate asthma for some persons. Always wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly with lukewarm water and a mild soap after an accident in which the air bags were deployed.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The SRS can function only when the ignition key is in the ON position. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on after illuminating for about 6 seconds when the ignition key is turned to the ON position, or after the engine is started, comes on whilst driving, the SRS is not working properly. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **Before you replace a fuse or disconnect a battery terminal, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and remove the ignition key. Never remove or replace the air bag related fuse(s) when the ignition switch is in the ON position. Failure to heed this warning will cause the SRS air bag warning light to illuminate.**

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 50

■ Driver's front air bag



OJD032035R

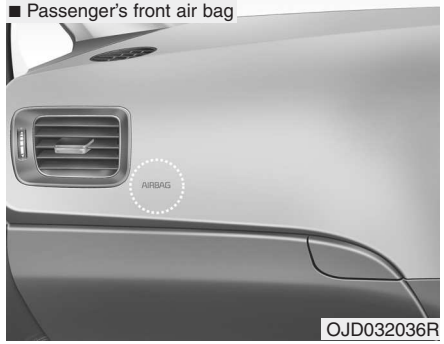
Driver's and passenger's front air bag

Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint (Air Bag) System and lap/shoulder belts at both the driver and passenger seating positions.

The indications of the system's presence are the letters "AIR BAG" embossed on the air bag pad cover in the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

The SRS consists of air bags installed under the pad covers in the centre of the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel above the glove box.

■ Passenger's front air bag



OJD032036R

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity.

⚠ WARNING

Always use seat belts and child restraints – every trip, every time, everyone! Air bags inflate with considerable force and in the blink of an eye. Seat belts help keep occupants in proper position to obtain maximum benefit from the air bag. Even with air bags, improperly and unbelted occupants can be severely injured when the air bag inflates. Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant safety contained in this manual.

To reduce the chance of serious or fatal injuries and receive the maximum safety benefit from your restraint system:

- **Never place a child in any child or booster seat in the front seat.**
- **ABC – Always Buckle Children in the back seat. It is the safest place for children of any age to ride.**
- **Front and side impact air bags can injure occupants improperly positioned in the front seats.**

(Continued)

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 51

(Continued)

- **Move your seat as far back as practical from the front air bags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.**
- **You and your passengers should never sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bags. Improperly positioned drivers and passengers can be severely injured by inflating air bags.**
- **Never lean against the door or centre console – always sit in an upright position.**
- **No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental deployment of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**
- **If the SRS air bag warning light remains illuminated whilst the vehicle is being driven, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **Air bags can only be used once – we recommend that the system be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **The SRS is designed to deploy the front air bags only when an impact is sufficiently severe and when the impact angle is less than 30° from the forward longitudinal axis of the vehicle. Additionally, the air bags will only deploy once. Seat belts must be worn at all times.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Front air bags are not intended to deploy in side-impact, rear-impact or rollover crashes. In addition, front air bags will not deploy in frontal crashes below the deployment threshold.**
- **A child restraint system must never be placed in the front seat. The infant or child could be severely injured or killed by an air bag deployment in case of an accident.**
- **Children age 12 and under must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over 12 must be seated in the front seat, he or she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.**

(Continued)

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 52

(Continued)

- **For maximum safety protection in all types of crashes, all occupants including the driver should always wear their seat belts whether or not an air bag is also provided at their seating position to minimise the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash. Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bag whilst the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash. All occupants should sit upright with the seat back in an upright position, centred on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the ignition key is removed.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The SRS air bag system must deploy very rapidly to provide protection in a crash. If an occupant is out of position because of not wearing a seat belt, the air bag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.**



OJD032037R

Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch (if equipped)

The passenger's front air bag can be deactivated by the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch if a child restraint is installed on the front passenger's seat or if the front passenger's seat is unoccupied by a person.

To ensure the safety of your child, the passenger's front air bag must be deactivated when it should be necessary to install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 53



OJD032033R



OJD032034R

To deactivate or reactivate the passenger's front air bag:

To deactivate the passenger's front air bag, insert the mechanical key into the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the OFF position.

The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator ( ) will illuminate and stay on until the passenger's front air bag is reactivated.

To reactivate the passenger's front air bag, insert the mechanical key into the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the ON position. The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator will go out and the passenger's front air bag ON indicator ( ) will illuminate for approximately 60 seconds.

⚠ WARNING

On some models, the front air bag ON/OFF switch could turn by using a similar small rigid device. Always check the status of the front air bag ON/OFF switch and passenger's front air bag ON/OFF indicator.

✻ NOTICE

- **When the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position, the passenger's front air bag is activated and child or infant seat should not be installed on the front passenger seat.**
- **When the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position, the passenger's front air bag is deactivated.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***If the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is not working properly, the air bag warning light ( ) on the instrument panel will illuminate.***

  And, the passenger's front air bag OFF indicator ( ) will not illuminate (The passenger's front air bag ON indicator comes on and goes off after approximately 60 seconds), the SRS Control Module reactivates the passenger's front air bag and the passenger's front air bag will inflate in frontal impact crashes even if the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position.

(Continued)

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 54

(Continued)

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

- *If the SRS air bag warning light blinks or does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, or if it illuminates whilst the vehicle is being driven, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.*

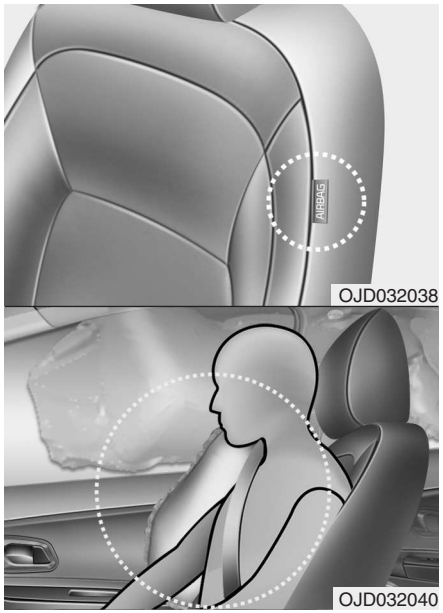
⚠ WARNING

- **The driver is responsible for the proper position of the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch.**
- **Deactivate the passenger's front air bag only when the ignition switch is switched off, or the malfunction may occur in the SRS Control Module.**
  And there may be a danger that the driver's and/or front passenger's and/or side and curtain air bag may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly during a collision.
- **Never install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger's seat unless the passenger's front air bag has been deactivated. The infant or child could be severely injured or killed by an air bag deployment in case of an accident.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Even though your vehicle is equipped with the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch, do not install a child restraint system in the front passenger's seat. A child restraint system must never be placed in the front seat. Children who are too large for child restraint systems should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. Children are afforded the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system in the rear seat.**
- **As soon as the child seat is no longer needed on the front passenger's seat, reactivate the front passenger's air bag.**



❈ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Side impact air bag (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a side impact air bag in each front seat. The purpose of the air bag is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt alone. The side impact air bags are designed to deploy only during certain side-impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact. The side air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact situations.

⚠ WARNING

Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.

⚠ WARNING

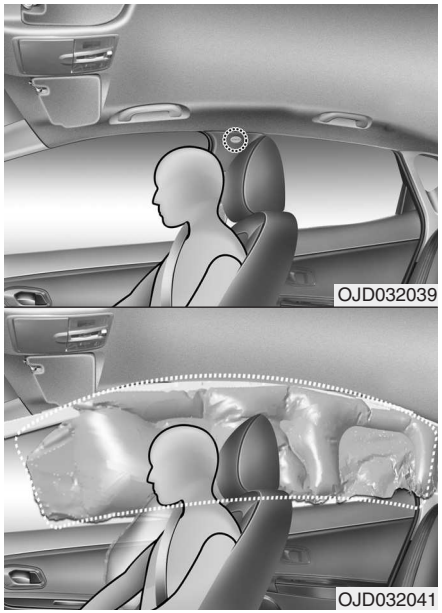
- **The side impact air bag is supplemental to the driver's and the passenger's seat belt systems and is not a substitute for them. Therefore your seat belts must be worn at all times whilst the vehicle is in motion. The air bags deploy only in certain side impact conditions severe enough to cause significant injury to the vehicle occupants.**
- **For best protection from the side impact air bag system and to avoid being injured by the deploying side impact air bag, both front seat occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belt properly fastened. The driver's hands should be placed on the steering wheel at the 9:00 and 3:00 positions. The passenger's arms and hands should be placed on their laps.**
- **Do not use any accessory seat covers.**

(Continued)

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 56

(Continued)

- **Use of seat covers could reduce or prevent the effectiveness of the system.**
- **Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side impact air bag.**
- **Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself.**
- **Do not place any objects (an umbrella, bag, etc.) between the front door and the front seat. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the supplemental side impact air bag inflates.**
- **To prevent unexpected deployment of the side impact air bag that may result in personal injury, avoid impact to the side impact sensor when the ignition key is on.**
- **If the seat or seat cover is damaged, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.**



❈ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Curtain air bag (if equipped)

Curtain air bags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors. They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.
The curtain air bags are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact. The curtain air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact situations, collisions from the front or rear of the vehicle or in most rollover situations.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 57

⚠ WARNING

- **In order for side impact and curtain air bags to provide the best protection, both front seat occupants and both outboard rear occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belts properly fastened. Importantly, children should sit in a proper child restraint system in the rear seat.**
- **When children are seated in the rear outboard seats, they must be seated in the proper child restraint system.**

  Make sure to put the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and secure the child restraint system in a locked position.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.**
- **Never try to open or repair any components of the side curtain air bag system. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.**

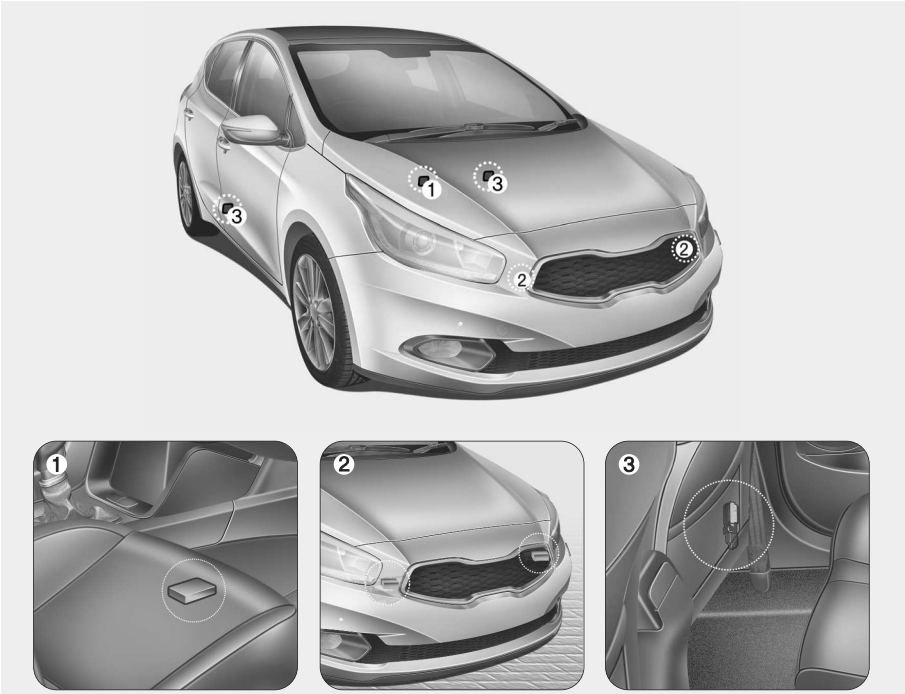
Failure to follow the above mentioned instructions can result in injury or death to the vehicle occupants in an accident.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 58

Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? (Inflation and non-inflation conditions of the air bag)

There are many types of accidents in which the air bag would not be expected to provide additional protection.

These include rear impacts, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts.



OJD032042R/OJD032043/H/OJD032044/H/OJD032045

Air bag collision sensors

(1) SRS control module
(2) Front impact sensor
(3) Side impact sensor (if equipped)

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 59

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bag or sensors are installed.**

  This may cause unexpected air bag deployment, which could result in serious personal injury or death.
- **If the installation location or angle of the sensors is altered in any way, the air bags may deploy when they should not or they may not deploy when they should, causing severe injury or death.**

  Therefore, do not try to perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Problems may arise if the sensor installation angles are changed due to the deformation of the front bumper, body or B pillar and C pillars where side collision sensors are installed. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **Your vehicle has been designed to absorb impact and deploy the air bag(s) in certain collisions. Installing bumper guards or replacing a bumper with non-genuine parts may adversely affect your vehicles collision and air bag deployment performance.**

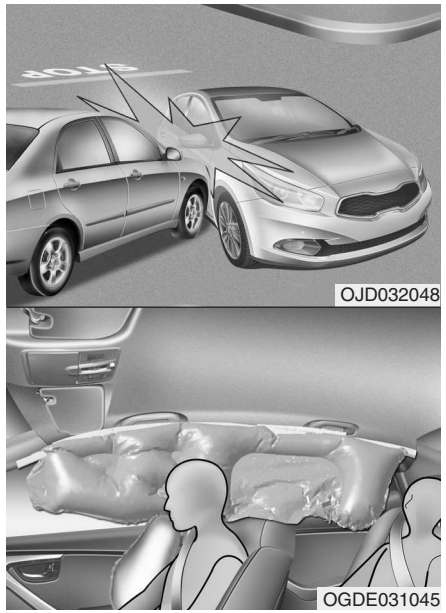


Air bag inflation conditions

Front air bags

Front air bags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the intensity, speed or angles of impact of the front collision.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 60



❈ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Side impact and curtain air bags (if equipped)

Side impact and/or curtain air bags are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the strength, speed or angles of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

Although the front air bags (driver's and front passenger's air bags) are designed to inflate only in frontal collisions, they also may inflate in other types of collisions if the front impact sensors detect a sufficient impact. Side air bags (side impact and/or curtain air bags) are designed to inflate only in side impact collisions, but they may inflate in other collisions if the side impact sensors detect a sufficient impact.

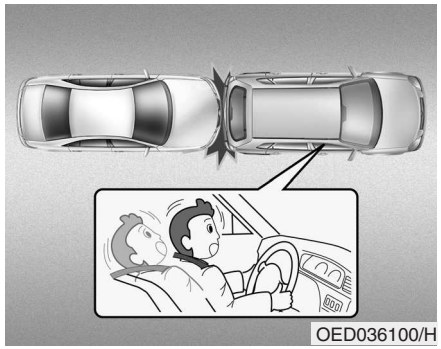
If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads or sidewalks, air bags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended air bag deployment.



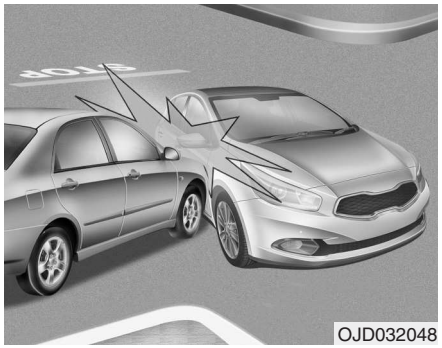
Air bag non-inflation conditions

- In certain low-speed collisions the air bags may not deploy. The air bags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts in such collisions.

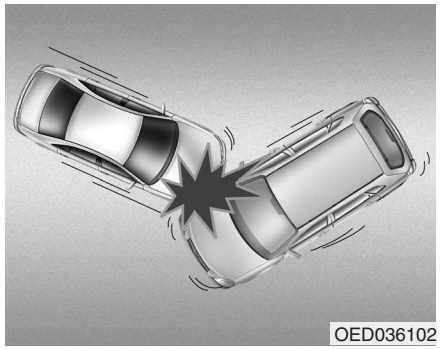
JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 61


OED036100/H

- Air bags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved backward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit.

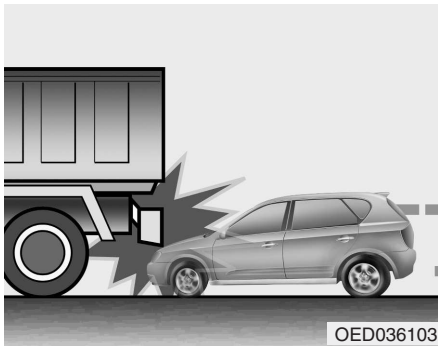

OJD032048

- Front air bags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move to the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, frontal air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.
- However, if equipped with side impact and curtain air bags, the air bags may inflate depending on the intensity, vehicle speed and angles of impact.

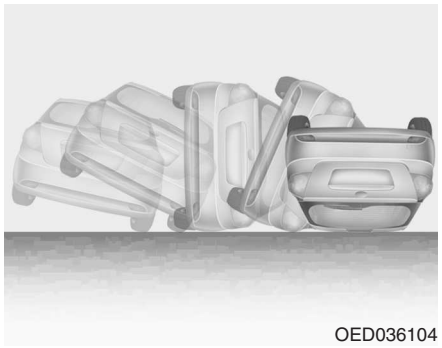

OED036102

- In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any air bags.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 62

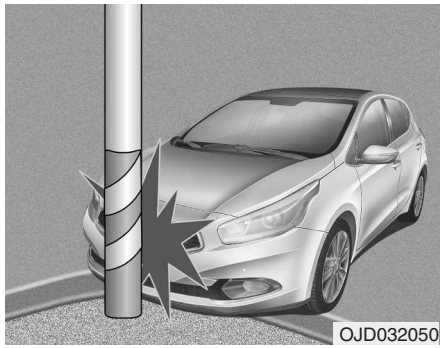

OED036103

- Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to “ride” under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bags may not inflate in this "under-ride" situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly replaced by such “under-ride” collisions.


OED036104

- Air bags may not inflate in rollover accidents because the vehicle can not detect rollover accident.

  However, side and/or curtain air bags may inflate when the vehicle is rolled over following (or after) side impact collision.


OJD032050

- Air bags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated to one area and the full force of the impact is not delivered to the sensors.

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 63

SRS Care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and so there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

- **Modification to SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure, can adversely affect SRS performance and lead to possible injury.**
- **For cleaning the air bag pad covers, use only a soft, dry cloth or one which has been moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.**
- **No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to inflate.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **If the air bags inflate, we recommend that the system be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring, or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental inflation of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**
- **If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. An authorised Kia dealer knows these precautions and can give you the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions and procedures could increase the risk of personal injury.**
- **If your car was flooded and has soaked carpeting or water on flooring, you shouldn't try to start the engine; we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.**

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 64

Additional safety precautions

- **Never let passengers ride in the cargo area or on top of a folded-down back seat.** All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor.
- **Passengers should not move out of or change seats whilst the vehicle is moving.** A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a crash or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or out of the vehicle.
- **Each seat belt is designed to restrain one occupant.** If more than one person uses the same seat belt, they could be seriously injured or killed in a collision.
- **Do not use any accessories on seat belts.** Devices claiming to improve occupant comfort or reposition the seat belt can reduce the protection provided by the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- **Passengers should not place hard or sharp objects between themselves and the air bags.** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap or in your mouth can result in injuries if an air bag inflates.
- **Keep occupants away from the air bag covers.** All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor. If occupants are too close to the air bag covers, they could be injured if the air bags inflate.
- **Do not attach or place objects on or near the air bag covers.** Any object attached to or placed on the front or side impact air bag covers could interfere with the proper operation of the air bags.
- **Do not modify the front seats.** Modification of the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components or side air bags.
- **Do not place items under the front seats.** Placing items under the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components and wiring harnesses.
- **Never hold an infant or child on your lap.** The infant or child could be seriously injured or killed in the event of a crash. All infants and children should be properly restrained in appropriate child safety seats or seat belts in the rear seat.

⚠ WARNING

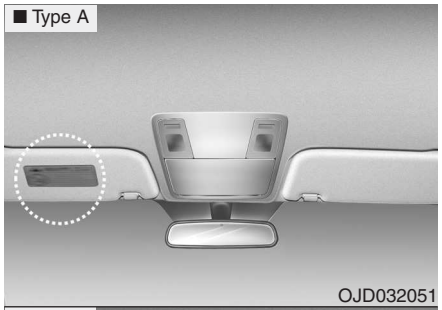
- **Sitting improperly or out of position can cause occupants to be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle resulting in serious injury or death.**
- **Always sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centred on the seat cushion with your seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and your feet on the floor.**

JD RHD 3.QXP 4/14/2015 6:42 PM Page 65

Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle

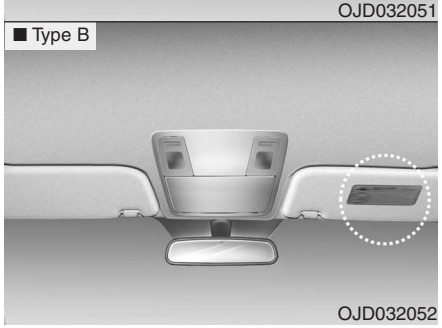
If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.

■ Type A



OJD032051

■ Type B



OJD032052

Air bag warning label (if equipped)

Air bag warning labels are attached to alert driver and passengers of potential risk of air bag system.

Note that these government warnings focus on the risk of children. We also want you to be aware of the risks adults are exposed to which have been described in previous pages.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:55 PM Page 1

Features of your vehicle

Keys 4-4
- Record your key number 4-4
- Key operations 4-4
- Immobiliser system 4-4

Remote keyless entry 4-6
- Remote keyless entry system operations 4-6
- Transmitter precautions 4-8
- Battery replacement 4-9

Smart key 4-11
- Smart key function 4-11
- Smart key precautions 4-13
- Door lock/unlock in an emergency situation 4-13

Theft-alarm system 4-14
- Armed stage 4-14
- Theft-alarm stage 4-15
- Disarmed stage 4-16

Door locks 4-17
- From outside 4-17
- From inside 4-18
- Deadlocks 4-20
- Door lock/unlock features 4-20
- Child-protector rear door lock 4-21

Tailgate 4-22
- Opening the tailgate 4-22
- Closing the tailgate 4-22
- Emergency tailgate safety release 4-23

Windows 4-24
- Power windows 4-25
- Manual windows 4-27

Bonnet 4-28
- Opening the bonnet 4-28
- Closing the bonnet 4-29

Fuel filler lid 4-30
- Opening the fuel filler lid 4-30
- Closing the fuel filler lid 4-30

Panorama sunroof 4-33
- Sunroof open warning 4-33
- Sunshade 4-34
- Sliding the sunroof 4-34
- Tilting the sunroof 4-34
- Closing the sunroof 4-35
- Resetting the sunroof 4-36

Steering wheel 4-37
- Electronic power steering 4-37
- Tilt & telescopic steering 4-38
- Heated steering wheel 4-38
- Horn 4-39
- Flex steering wheel 4-40

Mirrors 4-42
- Inside rearview mirror 4-42
- Outside rearview mirror 4-43

Instrument cluster (Normal vision) 4-46
- Instrument panel illumination 4-47
- Gauges 4-47
- Manual transaxle shift indicator 4-49
- Automatic transaxle shift position indicator 4-49
- Double clutch transmission shift indicator 4-50
- Speed limiter indicator 4-51

- Odometer 4-51
- Trip computer 4-51
- LCD display informations. 4-73
- Warnings and indicators 4-79

Instrument cluster (Super vision) 4-59
- Instrument panel illumination 4-61
- Cluster display mode conversion 4-61
- Gauges. 4-61
- Manual transaxle shift indicator 4-64
- Automatic transaxle shift position indicator. 4-65
- Double clutch transmission shift indicator 4-65
- Speed limiter indicator 4-66
- Odometer 4-66
- Trip computer 4-67
- LCD display information 4-73
- Warnings and indicators 4-79

LCD display warnings and indicators (instrument panel display) 4-90

Rear parking assist system 4-92
- Operation 4-92
- Non-operational conditions. 4-94
- Precautions 4-94
- Self-diagnosis 4-95

Parking assist system. 4-96
- Operation 4-96
- Non-operational conditions. 4-98
- Self-diagnosis 4-99

Smart Parking Assist System(SPAS) 4-100
- Operating condition. 4-101
- Non-operating condition 4-101
- How the system works. 4-104
- Additional instructions(messages) 4-109
- System malfunction 4-109

Rearview camera 4-110

Hazard warning flasher 4-110

Lighting. 4-111
- Battery saver function 4-111
- Headlamp delay function 4-111
- Headlight (Headlamp) welcome function 4-111
- Static bending light 4-112
- Lighting control 4-112
- High - beam operation. 4-114
- Turn signals and lane change signals. 4-115
- Front fog light 4-116
- Rear fog light 4-116
- Daytime running light 4-116
- Headlight levelling device 4-117
- AFLS (Adaptive Front Lighting System) 4-118

Wipers and washers 4-119
- Windscreen wipers (front) 4-119
- Windscreen washers (front) 4-121
- Rear window wiper and washer switch 4-122

Interior light. 4-123
- Interior lamp AUTO cut 4-123
- Map lamp 4-123
- Room lamp 4-124
- Vanity mirror lamp 4-124
- Luggage room lamp. 4-125

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:55 PM Page 3

• Glove box lamp 4-125
Welcome system 4-126
• Headlamp welcome 4-126
• Interior light 4-126
• Puddle lamp 4-126
Defroster 4-127
• Rear window defroster 4-127
Manual climate control system 4-128
• Heating and air conditioning 4-129
• System operation 4-133
• Climate control air filter 4-135
• Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant 4-136
Automatic climate control system 4-137
• Automatic heating and air conditioning 4-138
• Manual heating and air conditioning 4-140
• System operation 4-145
• Climate control air filter 4-147
• Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant 4-148
Windscreen defrosting and defogging 4-149
• Manual climate control system 4-149
• Automatic climate control system 4-150
Clean air 4-151
Storage compartment 4-152
• Centre console storage 4-152
• Sliding armrest 4-152
• Glove box 4-153
• Cool box 4-153
• Sunglass holder 4-154
• Luggage tray 4-154
• Luggage side tray 4-155
Interior features 4-155
• Cigarette lighter 4-155
• Ashtray 4-156
• Cup holder 4-157
• Bottle holder 4-158
• Sunvisor 4-158
• Power outlet 4-159
• Aux, USB and iPod 4-160
• Clothes hanger 4-161
• Floor mat anchor(s) 4-161
• Luggage net (holder) 4-162
• Cargo area cover 4-162
• Barrier net 4-163
• Cargo security screen 4-166
• Luggage rail system 4-167
• Shopping bag holder 4-168
Exterior features 4-169
• Mounting bracket for roof carrier 4-169
• Roof rack 4-170
Audio system 4-172
• Antenna 4-172
• Audio remote control 4-173
• How car audio works 4-174

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:55 PM Page 4

KEYS

Record your key number



The key code number is stamped on the key code tag attached to the key set. Should you lose your keys, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer. Remove the key code tag and store it in a safe place. Also, record the code number and keep it in a safe and handy place, but not in the vehicle.

Key operations

- Used to start the engine.
- Used to lock and unlock the doors.

⚠ WARNING

We recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised Kia dealer. If an aftermarket key is used, the ignition switch may not return to ON after START. If this happens, the starter will continue to operate causing damage to the starter motor and possible fire due to excessive current in the wiring.

⚠ WARNING - Ignition key

Leaving children unattended in a vehicle with the ignition key (Smart key) is dangerous even if the key is not in the ignition or start button is ACC or ON position. Children copy adults and they could place the key in the ignition or press the start button. The ignition key (Smart key) would enable children to operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious bodily injury or even death. Never leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children, when the engine is running.

Immobiliser system

Your vehicle may be equipped with an electronic engine immobiliser system to reduce the risk of unauthorised vehicle use.

Your immobiliser system is comprised of a small transponder in the key and electronic devices inside the vehicle.

Vehicles without smart key system

With the immobiliser system, whenever you insert your ignition key into the ignition switch and turn it to ON, it checks and determines and verifies if the ignition key is valid or not.

If the key is valid, the engine will start.

If the key is invalid, the engine will not start.

To deactivate the immobiliser system:

Insert the ignition key into the key cylinder and turn it to the ON position.

To activate the immobiliser system:

Turn the ignition key to the OFF position. The immobiliser system activates automatically. Without a valid ignition key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:55 PM Page 5

Vehicles with smart key system

Whenever the engine start/stop button is changed to the ON position, the immobiliser system checks and verifies if the key is valid or not.

If the key is valid, the engine will start.

If the key is invalid, the engine will not start.

To deactivate the immobiliser system

Change the engine start/stop button to the ON position.

To activate the immobiliser system

Change the engine start/stop button to the OFF position. The immobiliser system activates automatically. Without a valid smart key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

⚠ WARNING

In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle. Your immobiliser password is a customer unique password and should be kept confidential. Do not leave this number anywhere in your vehicle.

✻ NOTICE

When starting the engine, do not use the key with other immobiliser keys around. Otherwise the engine may not start or may stop soon after it starts. Keep each key separate in order to avoid a starting malfuntioin.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not put metal accessories near the ignition switch.

The engine may not start because the metal accessories may interrupt the transponder signal from normally transmitting.

✻ NOTICE

If you need additional keys or lose your keys, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

The transponder in your ignition key is an important part of the immobiliser system. It is designed to give years of trouble-free service, however you should avoid exposure to moisture, static electricity and rough handling. Immobiliser system malfunction could occur.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not change, alter or adjust the immobiliser system because it could cause the immobiliser system to malfunction. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the immobiliser system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:55 PM Page 6

REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Type A



OAM049096L

■ Type B



OJD043244

■ Type C



OJD042002

Remote keyless entry system operations

Type A, B

- To unfold the key, press the release button then the key will unfold automatically.
- To fold the key, fold the key manually whilst pressing the release button.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not fold the key without pressing the release button. This may damage the key.

Type C

- To remove the mechanical key, press and hold the release button and remove the mechanical key.
- To reinstall the mechanical key, put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

■ Type A



OXM049003

■ Type B



OJD043245

■ Type C



OJD042001

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:55 PM Page 7

Lock (1)

1. Close all doors.
2. Press the lock button.
3. The hazard warning light will blink once to indicate that all doors are locked (the engine bonnet and tailgate must be closed). Also, the outside rearview mirror will automatically fold if the outside rearview mirror folding switch (Type C) is in the AUTO position (if equipped).

✻ NOTICE

The doors will not lock if any door is opened.

Unlock (2)

1. Press the unlock button.
2. The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that all doors are unlocked. Also, the outside rearview mirror will automatically unfold if the outside rearview mirror folding switch (Type C) is in the AUTO position (if equipped).

✻ NOTICE

After unlocking all doors, the doors will lock and the outside rearview mirror will unfold if the outside rearview mirror folding switch (Type C) is in the AUTO position (if equipped) unless a door is opened within 30 seconds.

Tailgate unlock (3)

1. Press the tailgate unlock button for more than 1 second.
2. The hazard warning light will blink twice to indicate the tailgate is unlocked.

✻ NOTICE

- **After unlocking the tailgate, the tailgate will lock automatically unless it is opened within 30 seconds.**
- **Once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate will lock automatically.**
- **The word "HOLD" is written on the button to inform you that you must press and hold the button.**

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:55 PM Page 8

Transmitter precautions

✻ NOTICE

The transmitter will not work if any of following occur:

- **The ignition key is in ignition switch.**
- **You exceed the operating distance limit (about 10 m [30 feet]).**
- **The battery in the transmitter is weak.**
- **Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.**
- **The weather is extremely cold.**
- **The transmitter is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.**

When the transmitter does not work correctly, open and close the door with the ignition key. If you have a problem with the transmitter, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **If the transmitter is in close proximity to your cell phone or smart phone, the signal from the transmitter could be blocked by normal operation of your cell phone or smart phone. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making call, receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. Avoid placing the transmitter and your cell phone or smart phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and maintain adequate distance between the two devices.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Keep the transmitter away from water or any liquid. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer vehicle warranty.***
- ***Keep the transmitter away from electromagnetic materials that blocks electromagnetic waves to the key surface.***

⚠ CAUTION

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:55 PM Page 9

Battery replacement

A battery should last for several years, but if the transmitter or smart key is not working properly, try replacing the battery with a new one. If you are unsure how to use or replace the battery, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.

■ Type A



OFD047003

■ Type B



OYDDCO2005

Type A, B

1. Insert a slim tool into the slot and gently pry open the cover.
2. Replace the battery with a new battery (CR2032). When replacing the battery, make sure the battery position.
3. Install the rear cover.

■ Type C



OJD042003

Type C

1. Insert a slim tool into the slot and gently pry open the cover.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:55 PM Page 10

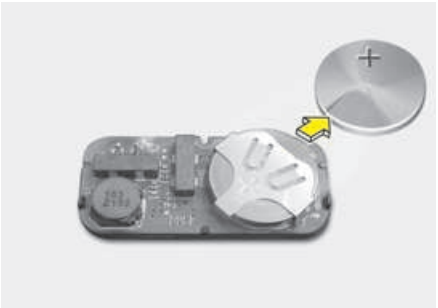


OJD042004



OJD042005

2. Pull the smart key module out.
3. Turn the smart key module over.



OJD042006

4. Push the battery out from the battery holder.
5. Replace the battery with a new battery (CR2032). When replacing the battery, make sure the battery position.
6. Install the battery in the reverse order of removal.

For transmitter or smart key replacement, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The transmitter or smart key is designed to give you years of trouble-free use, however it can malfunction if exposed to moisture or static electricity. If you are unsure how to use or replace the battery, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.***
- ***Using the wrong battery can cause the transmitter or smart key to malfunction. Be sure to use the correct battery.***
- ***To avoid damaging the transmitter or smart key, don't drop it, get it wet, or expose it to heat or sunlight.***

⚠ CAUTION

An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health.

Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:55 PM Page 11

SMART KEY (IF EQUIPPED)



OJD042001

Smart key function

1. Door lock
2. Door unlock
3. Tailgate unlock

With a smart key, you can lock or unlock a door and tailgate and even start the engine without inserting the key.

The functions of the buttons on a smart key are similar to the remote keyless entry. Refer to the “Remote keyless entry” in this section.


OJD042008/H

Carrying the smart key, you may lock and unlock the vehicle doors and tailgate.

Also, you may start the engine. Refer to the following, for more details.

Locking

1. Carry the smart key.
2. Close all doors.
3. Press the button of the outside door handle.
4. The hazard warning lights will blink once (the engine bonnet and tailgate must be closed). Also, the outside rearview mirror will automatically fold if the outside rearview mirror folding switch is in the AUTO position (if equipped).
5. Make sure that doors are locked by pulling the outside door handle.

✻ NOTICE

- **The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7 m (28 in.) from the outside door handle.**
- **Even though you press the outside door handle button, the doors will not lock and the chime will sound for 3 seconds if any of following occur:**
  - **The smart key is in the vehicle.**
  - **The engine start/stop button is in ACC or ON position.**
  - **Any door except the tailgate is opened.**

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:55 PM Page 12

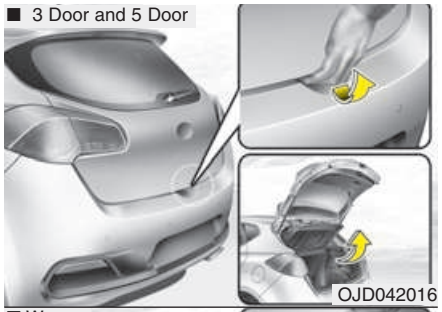
Unlocking

1. Carry the smart key.
2. Press the button of the front outside door handle.
3. All doors will unlock and the hazard warning lights will blink twice. Also, the outside rearview mirror will automatically unfold if the outside rearview mirror folding switch is in the AUTO position (if equipped).

✻ NOTICE

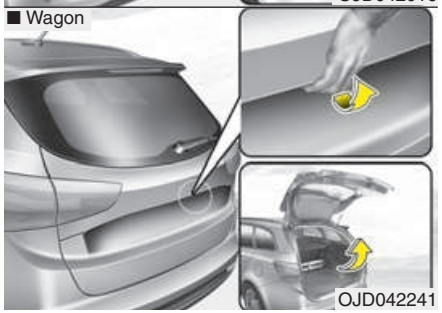
- **The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7 m (28 in.) from the outside door handle.**
- **When the smart key is recognized in the area of 0.7 m (28 in.) from the front outside door handle, other people can also open the doors.**
- **After unlocking all doors, the doors will lock and the outside rearview mirror will unfold if the outside rearview mirror folding switch (Type B) is in the AUTO position (if equipped) unless a door is opened within 30 seconds.**

■ 3 Door and 5 Door



OJD042016

■ Wagon



OJD042241

Tailgate unlocking

1. Carry the smart key.
2. Press the tailgate handle switch.
3. The tailgate will unlock.

✻ NOTICE

- **Once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate will lock automatically.**
- **The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7 m (28 in.) from the tailgate handle.**

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:56 PM Page 13

Smart key precautions

✻ NOTICE

- **If, for some reason, you happen to lose your smart key, you will not be able to start the engine. Tow the vehicle, if necessary, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **A maximum of 2 smart keys can be registered to a single vehicle. If you lose a smart key, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **The smart key will not work if any of the following occurs:**
  - **The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the smart key.**
  - **The smart key is near a mobile two-way radio system or a mobile phone.**
  - **Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.**

  When the smart key does not work properly, open and close the door with the mechanical key. If you have a problem with the smart key, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **If the smart key is in close proximity to your cell phone or smart phone, the signal from the smart key could be blocked by normal operation of your cell phone or smart phone. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making call, receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. Avoid placing the smart key and your cell phone or smart phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and maintain adequate distance between the two devices.**

⚠ CAUTION

Keep the smart key away from water or any liquid. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.



OJD042002

Door lock/unlock in an emergency situation

If the smart key does not operate normally, you can lock or unlock the doors by using the mechanical key.

1. Press and hold the release button (1) and remove the mechanical key (2).
2. Insert the key into the hole of the outside door handle. Turn the key toward the rear of the vehicle to unlock and toward the front of the vehicle to lock.
3. To reinstall the mechanical key, put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

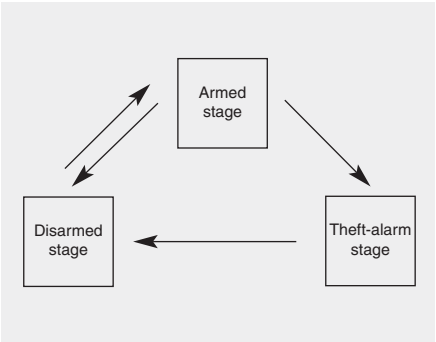
JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:56 PM Page 14

THEFT-ALARM SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



OJC040170

Vehicles equipped with a theft alarm system will have a label attached to the vehicle with the following words:
1. WARNING
2. SECURITY SYSTEM



This system is designed to provide protection from unauthorised entry into the vehicle. This system is operated in three stages: the first is the "Armed" stage, the second is the "Theft-alarm" stage, and the third is the "Disarmed" stage. If triggered, the system provides an audible alarm with blinking of the hazard warning lights.

Armed stage

Using the smart key

Park the vehicle and stop the engine. Arm the system as described below.

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Make sure that all doors, the engine bonnet and tailgate are closed and latched.
3. • Lock the doors by pressing the button of the front outside door handle with the smart key in your possession.

   After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will operate once to indicate that the system is armed.

   If the tailgate or engine bonnet remains opened, the hazard warning lights will not operate and theft-alarm will not arm. After this, if the tailgate and engine bonnet are closed, the hazard warning lights will blink once and the theft-alarm will arm.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:56 PM Page 15

• Lock the doors by pressing the lock button on the smart key.

After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will operate once to indicate that the system is armed.

If the tailgate or engine bonnet remains opened, the hazard warning lights will not operate and theft-alarm will not arm. After this, if the tailgate and engine bonnet are closed, the hazard warning lights will blink once and the theft-alarm will arm.

Using the transmitter

Park the vehicle and stop the engine. Arm the system as described below.

1. Turn off the engine and remove the ignition key from the ignition switch.
2. Make sure that all doors, the engine bonnet and tailgate are closed and latched.
3. Lock the doors by pressing the lock button on the transmitter.

   After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that the system is armed.

   If the tailgate or engine bonnet remains opened, the hazard warning lights will not operate and theft-alarm will not arm. After this, if the tailgate and engine bonnet are closed, the hazard warning lights will blink once and the theft-alarm will arm.

• **Do not arm the system until all passengers have left the vehicle. If the system is armed whilst a passenger(s) remains in the vehicle, the alarm may be activated when the remaining passenger(s) leave the vehicle. If any door, tailgate or engine bonnet is opened within 30 seconds after entering the armed stage, the system is disarmed to prevent unnecessary alarm.**

Theft-alarm stage

The alarm will be activated if any of the following occurs whilst the system is armed.

- A front or rear door is opened without using transmitter or smart key.
- The tailgate is opened without using transmitter or smart key.
- The engine bonnet is opened.

The siren will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously for 27 seconds, unless the system is disarmed. To turn off the system, unlock the doors with the transmitter or smart key.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:56 PM Page 16

Disarmed stage

The system will be disarmed when:

Transmitter

- The door unlock button is pressed.
- The engine is started.
- The ignition switch is in the “ON” position for 30 seconds or more.

Smart key

- The door unlock button is pressed.
- The button of the front outside door is pressed whilst carrying the smart key.
- The engine is started.

After the doors are unlocked, the hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the system is disarmed.
After pressing the unlock button, if any door (or tailgate) is not opened within 30 seconds, the system will be rearmed.

✻ NOTICE

- **Without smart key system**
  If the system is not disarmed with the transmitter, insert the key into the ignition switch and start the engine. Then the system will be disarmed.
- **With smart key system**
  If the system is not disarmed with the smart key, open the door with the mechanical key and start the engine. Then the system will be disarmed.
- **If you lose your keys, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.**

⚠ CAUTION

Do not change, alter or adjust the theft-alarm system because it could cause the theft-alarm system to malfunction and we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the theft-alarm system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:56 PM Page 17

DOOR LOCKS

■ Type A



OJD043503

■ Type B



ORP042235

■ Type C

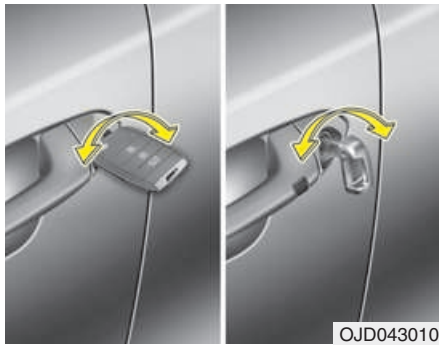


OJD042001

Operating door locks from outside the vehicle

Transmitter/Smart key

- Doors can be locked and unlocked with the transmitter or smart key.
- Doors can be locked and unlocked by pressing the button of the outside door handle with the smart key in your possession. (vehicles equipped with smart key system)
- Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.
- When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.



OJD043010

Mechanical key

- If the transmitter or smart key does not operate normally, you can lock or unlock the doors by the mechanical key.

  Insert the key into the key hole of the outside door handle. Turn the key toward the rear of the vehicle to unlock and toward the front of the vehicle to lock.
- If you lock/unlock the driver's door with a key whilst the power door lock switch does not operate normally, only the driver's door will lock/unlock.
- Once the door is unlocked, it may be opened by pulling the door handle.
- When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.

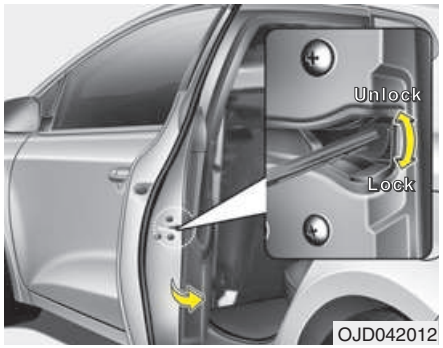
JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:56 PM Page 18

✻ NOTICE

- **In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.**

⚠ WARNING

- **If you don't close the door securely, the door may open again.**
- **Be careful that someone's body and hands are not trapped when closing the door.**



In case of an emergency (5 Door and wagon)

If the power door lock switch does not operate electrically, the only way to lock the door(s) is with the mechanical key from the outside key hole.

You can lock the doors without the outside key hole as follows:

1. Open the door.
2. Insert the key into the emergency door lock hole and turn the key horizontally to lock.
3. Close the door securely.



Operating door locks from inside the vehicle

With the door handle

Driver's door and front passanger's door (if equipped)

If the inner door handle is pulled when the door is locked, the door will unlock and open.

Rear door (if equipped)

If the inner door handle is pulled once when the door is locked, the door will unlock.

If the inner door handle is pulled once more, the door will open.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:56 PM Page 19



With central door lock/unlock switch

It is operated by pressing the door lock/unlock switch.

- When you press the central door lock switch, all vehicle doors will lock and the indicator light on the switch will illuminate.
- If any door is opened when the switch is pressed, all doors will not lock.
- If any door is unlocked, the indicator of the central door lock switch will go off.
- When you press the central door unlock switch, all vehicle doors will unlock.

✻ NOTICE

Once the doors are locked with the transmitter or smart key, the doors cannot be unlocked with the central door lock/unlock switch.

⚠ WARNING - Door lock malfunction

If a power door lock ever fails to function whilst you are in the vehicle, try one or more of the following:

- **Operate the other door locks and handles.**
- **Lower the driver's window and use the key to unlock the door from outside.**
- **Move to the cargo area and open the tailgate.**

⚠ WARNING - Doors

- **The doors should always be fully closed and locked whilst the vehicle is in motion to prevent accidental opening of the door. Locked doors will also discourage potential intruders when the vehicle stops or slows down.**
- **Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door. Opening a door when something is approaching can cause damage or injury.**

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:56 PM Page 20

⚠ WARNING - Unlocked vehicles

Leaving your vehicle unlocked can invite theft or possible harm to you or others from someone hiding in your vehicle whilst you are gone. Always remove the ignition key, engage the parking brake, close all windows and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.

⚠ WARNING - Unattended children

An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or severe injury to unattended children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle. Furthermore, children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them, or they could encounter other harm, possibly from someone gaining entry to the vehicle. Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle.

Deadlocks (if equipped)

Some vehicles are equipped with a deadlock system. Deadlocks prevent opening of a door from either inside or outside the vehicle once the deadlocks have been activated providing an additional measure of vehicle security.

To lock the vehicle using the deadlock function, the doors must be locked by using the transmitter or smart key. To unlock the vehicle, the transmitter or smart key must be used again.

⚠ WARNING

Do not lock the doors with the transmitter or the smart key with anybody left in the vehicle. The passenger in the vehicle cannot unlock the doors with the door lock button. For example, if the door is locked with the transmitter, the passenger in the vehicle cannot unlock the door without the transmitter.

Door lock/unlock features

Impact sensing door unlock system

All doors will automatically unlock when an impact causes the air bags to deploy.

Speed sensing door lock system (if equipped)

All doors will automatically lock after the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h.

Engine off door unlock system (if equipped)

All doors will automatically unlock:

Without smart key system

When the key is removed from the ignition switch.

With smart key system

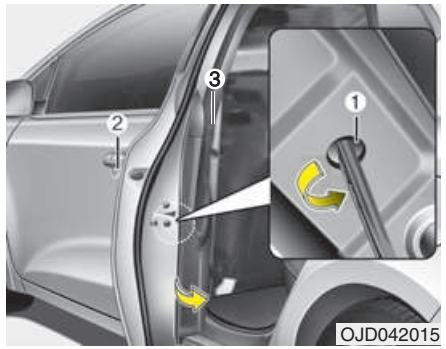
When the engine start/stop button is in the OFF position.

Shift lever door lock/unlock system

- All doors will automatically lock when the shift lever is moved out of P (Park).
- All doors will automatically unlock when the shift lever is moved into P (Park).

You can activate or deactivate the auto door lock/unlock features in the vehicle. Refer to "User setting" in this section.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:56 PM Page 21



Child-protector rear door lock (5 Door and wagon)

The child safety lock is provided to help prevent children from accidentally opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle. The rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

1. Open the rear door.
2. Insert a key (or screwdriver) into the hole (1) and turn it to the “lock( )” position. When the child safety lock is in the lock position, the rear door will not open even though the inner door handle (3) is pulled inside the vehicle.
3. Close the rear door.

To open the rear door, pull the outside door handle (2).

Even though the doors may be unlocked, the rear door will not open by pulling the inner door handle (3) until rear door child safety lock is unlocked.

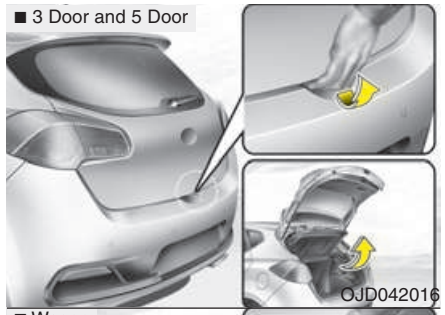
⚠ WARNING - Rear door locks

If children accidentally open the rear doors whilst the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out and be severely injured or killed. To prevent children from opening the rear doors from the inside, the rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:56 PM Page 22

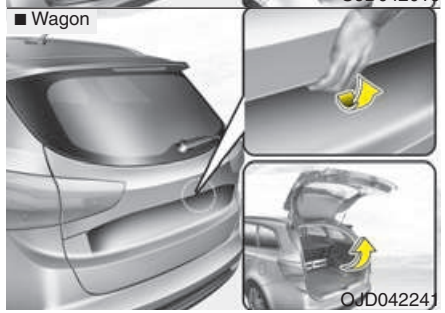
TAILGATE

■ 3 Door and 5 Door



OJD042016

■ Wagon



OJD042241

Opening the tailgate

- The tailgate is locked or unlocked when all doors are locked or unlocked with the key, transmitter, smart key or central door lock/unlock switch.
- Only the tailgate is unlocked if the tailgate unlock button on the transmitter or smart key is pressed for approximately 1 second or the tailgate handle switch is pressed with the smart key in your possession.
- If unlocked, the tailgate can be opened by pressing the handle and pulling it up.
- Once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate locks automatically. (All doors must be locked.)

✻ NOTICE

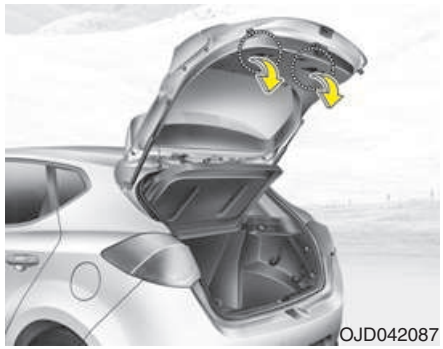
In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

⚠ WARNING

The tailgate swings upward. Make sure no objects or people are near the rear of the vehicle when opening the tailgate.

⚠ CAUTION

Make certain that you close the tailgate before driving your vehicle. Possible damage may occur to the tailgate lift cylinders and attaching hardware if the tailgate is not closed prior to driving.



OJD042087

✻ The actual luggage room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Closing the tailgate

Lower and push down the tailgate firmly. Make sure that the tailgate is securely latched.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure your hands, feet and other parts of your body are safely out of the way before closing the tailgate.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:56 PM Page 23

⚠ CAUTION

Make sure nothing is near the tailgate latch and striker whilst closing the tailgate. It may damage the tailgate's latch.

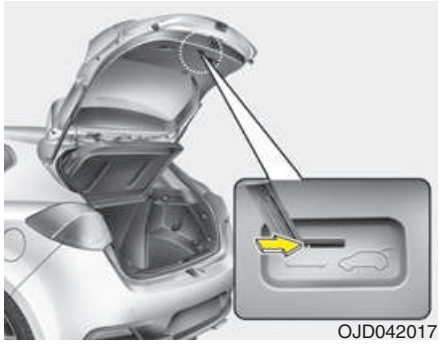
⚠ WARNING - Exhaust fumes

If you drive with the tailgate opened, you will draw dangerous exhaust fumes into your vehicle which can cause serious injury or death to vehicle occupants.

If you must drive with the tailgate opened, keep the air vents and all windows open so that additional outside air comes into the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - Rear cargo area

Occupants should never ride in the rear cargo area where no restraints are available. To avoid injury in the event of an accident or sudden stops, occupants should always be properly restrained.



OJD042017

✻ The actual luggage room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Emergency tailgate safety release

Your vehicle is equipped with the emergency tailgate safety release lever located on the bottom of the tailgate. When someone is inadvertently locked in the luggage compartment. The tailgate can be opened by doing as follows:

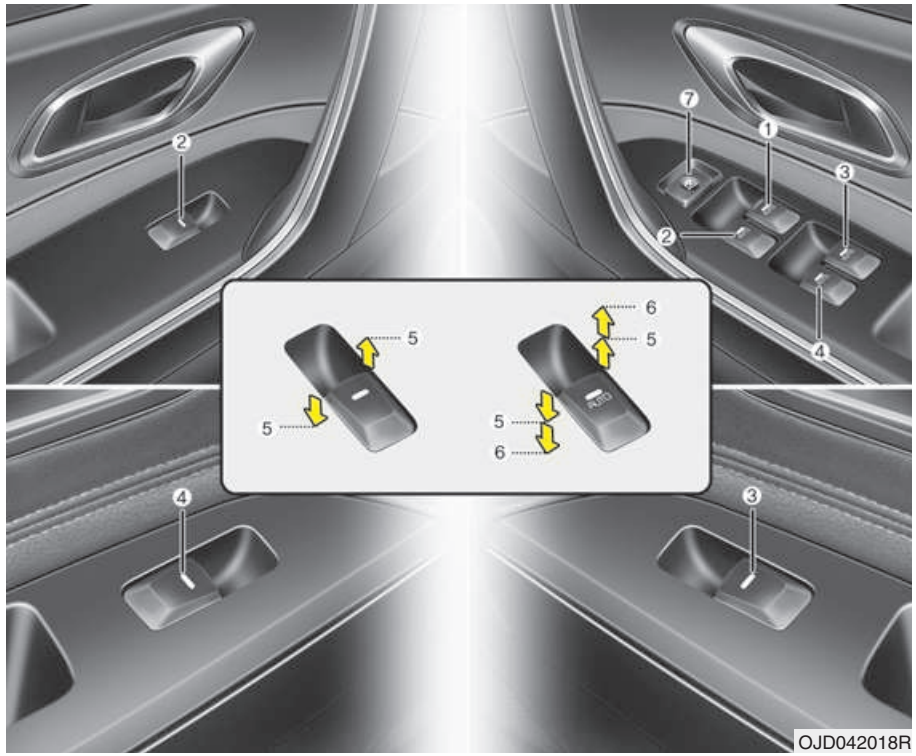
1. Input the machanical key into the hole.
2. Push the machanical key to the right.
3. Push up the tailgate.

⚠ WARNING

- **For emergencies, be fully aware of the location of the emergency tailgate safety release lever in the vehicle and how to open the tailgate if you are accidentally locked in the luggage compartment.**
- **No one should be allowed to occupy the luggage compartment of the vehicle at any time. The luggage compartment is a very dangerous location in the event of a crash.**
- **Use the release lever for emergencies only. Use with extreme caution, especially whilst the vehicle is in motion.**

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:56 PM Page 24

WINDOWS



(1) Driver's door power window switch
(2) Front passenger's door power window switch
(3) Rear door (right) power window switch* (for 5 Door and wagon)
(4) Rear door (left) power window switch* (for 5 Door and wagon)
(5) Window opening and closing
(6) Automatic power window up*/down*
(7) Power window lock switch*

*: if equipped

✻ NOTICE

In cold and wet climates, power windows may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:56 PM Page 25

Power windows

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for power windows to operate. Each door has a power window switch that controls the door's window. The driver's door has a master power window switch that controls all the windows in the vehicle. Also, the driver has a power window lock switch which can block the operation of rear passenger windows.
The power windows can be operated for approximately 30 seconds after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the front doors are opened, the power windows cannot be operated even within the 30 seconds period.

✻ NOTICE

Whilst driving with the rear windows down or with the sunroof (if equipped) in an open (or partially open position), your vehicle may demonstrate a wind buffeting or pulsation noise. This noise is a normal occurrence and can be reduced or eliminated by taking the following actions. If the noise occurs with one or both of the rear windows down, partially lower both front windows approximately one inch. If you experience the noise with the sunroof open, slightly reduce the size of the sunroof opening.



OJD042019R

Window opening and closing

Type A

To open or close a window, press down or pull up the front portion of the corresponding switch to the first detent position (5).



OJD042020R

Type B - Auto up/down window (if equipped)

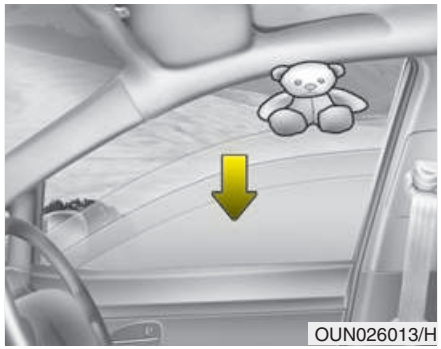
Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers or lifts the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position whilst the window is in operation, pull up or press down and release the switch.

✻ NOTICE

If the power window does not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

1. **Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.**
2. **Close the window and continue pulling up the power window switch for at least 1 second after the window is completely closed.**

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:56 PM Page 26


OUN026013/H

Automatic reversal (for type B window)

If the upward movement of the window is blocked by an object or part of the body, the window will detect the resistance and will stop upward movement. The window will then lower approximately 30 cm (11.8 in.) to allow the object to be cleared.

If the window detects the resistance whilst the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window will stop upward movement then lower approximately 2.5 cm (1 in.). And if the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reversal feature, the automatic window reversal will not operate.

✻ NOTICE

The automatic reverse feature is only active when the "auto up" feature is used by fully pulling up the switch. The automatic reverse feature will not operate if the window is raised using the halfway position on the power window switch.

⚠ WARNING

Always check for obstructions before raising any window to avoid injuries or vehicle damage. If an object less than 4 mm (0.16 in.) in diameter is caught between the window glass and the upper window channel, the automatic reverse window may not detect the resistance and will not stop and reverse direction.


OJD042021R

Power window lock button (for 5 Door and wagon) (if equipped)

The driver can disable the power window switches on the rear passengers' doors by pressing the power window lock switch to the lock position (pressed).

When the power window lock switch is pressed:

- The driver's master control can operate all the power windows.
- The front passenger's control can operate the front passenger's power window.
- The rear passenger's control cannot operate the rear passenger's power window.

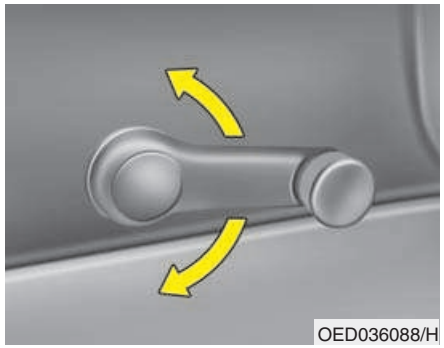
JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:56 PM Page 27

⚠ CAUTION

- *To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.*
- *Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in opposing directions at the same time. If this is done, the window will stop and cannot be opened or closed.*

⚠ WARNING - Windows

- **NEVER leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children when the engine is running.**
- **NEVER leave any child unattended in the vehicle. Even very young children may inadvertently cause the vehicle to move, entangle themselves in the windows, or otherwise injure themselves or others.**
- **Always double check to make sure all arms, hands, head and other obstructions are safely out of the way before closing a window.**
- **Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Keep the driver's door power window lock switch in the LOCK position (pressed). Serious injury can result from unintentional window operation by the child.**
- **Do not extend face or arms outside the window whilst driving.**


OED036088/H

Manual windows (for 5 Door and wagon) (if equipped)

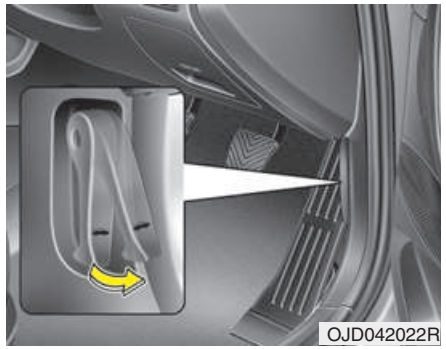
To raise or lower the window, turn the window regulator handle clockwise or counterclockwise.

⚠ WARNING

When opening or closing the windows, make sure your passenger's arms, hands and body are safely out of the way.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:57 PM Page 28

BONNET

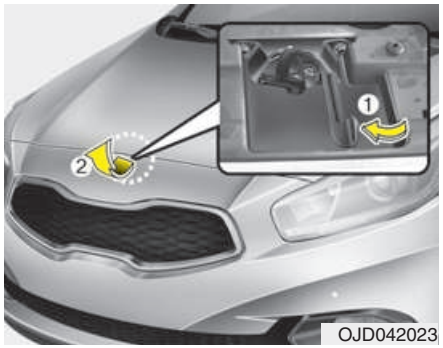

OJD042022R

Opening the bonnet

1. Pull the release lever to unlatch the bonnet. The bonnet should pop open slightly.

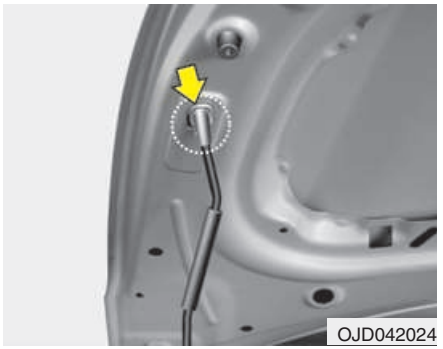
⚠ WARNING

Open the bonnet after turning off the engine on a flat surface, shifting the shift lever to the P(Park) position for automatic transaxle and to the 1(First) gear or R(Reverse) for manual transaxle, and setting the parking brake.



OJD042023

2. Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the bonnet slightly, push the secondary latch inside of the bonnet centre and lift the bonnet.


OJD042024

3. Pull out the support rod.
4. Hold the bonnet opened with the support rod.

⚠ WARNING - Hot parts

Be very careful not to touch the support rod when the engine and parts are hot. You could get burned or get seriously injured.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:57 PM Page 29

Closing the bonnet

1. Before closing the bonnet, check the following:
   - All filler caps in engine compartment must be correctly installed.
   - Gloves, rags or any other combustible material must be removed from the engine compartment.
2. Return the support rod to its clip to prevent it from rattling.
3. Lower the bonnet until it is about 30 cm (1 ft.) above the closed position and let it drop. Make sure that it locks into place.

⚠ WARNING - Bonnet

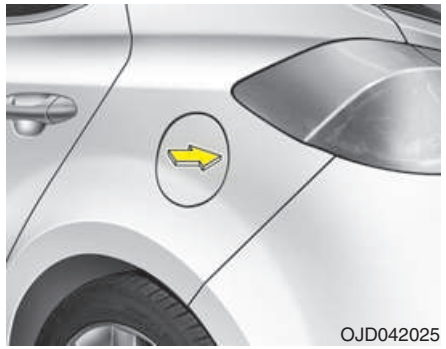
- **Before closing the bonnet, ensure that all obstructions are removed from the bonnet opening. Closing the bonnet with an obstruction present in the bonnet opening may result in property damage or severe personal injury.**
- **Do not leave gloves, rags or any other combustible material in the engine compartment. Doing so may cause a heat-induced fire.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Always double check to be sure that the bonnet is firmly latched before driving away. If it is not latched, the bonnet could fly open whilst the vehicle is being driven, causing a total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.**
- **The support rod must be inserted completely into the hole whenever you inspect the engine compartment. This will prevent the bonnet from falling and possibly injuring you.**
- **Do not move the vehicle with the bonnet raised. The view will be blocked and the bonnet could fall or be damaged.**

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:57 PM Page 30

FUEL FILLER LID


OJD042025

Opening the fuel filler lid

1. To open the lid, press the centre edge of the lid when all doors are unlocked.

✻ NOTICE

The lid will open and close only when all doors are unlocked.



OJD042026

2. Fully open the lid (1).
3. To open the cap, turn it counterclockwise (2).
4. Refuel as needed.

✻ NOTICE

If the fuel-filler lid does not open because ice has formed around it, tap lightly or push on the lid to break the ice and release the lid. Do not pry on the lid. If necessary, spray around the lid with an approved de-icer fluid (do not use radiator anti-freeze) or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

Closing the fuel filler lid

1. To install the cap, turn it clockwise until it “clicks”. This indicates that the cap is securely tightened.
2. To close the lid, press the edge of the lid. Make sure it is securely closed.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:57 PM Page 31

⚠ WARNING - Refuelling

- If pressurized fuel sprays out, it can cover your clothes or skin and thus subject you to the risk of fire and burns. Always remove the fuel cap carefully and slowly. If the cap is venting fuel or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until the condition stops before completely removing the cap.
- Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refuelling.
- Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.

⚠ WARNING - Refuelling dangers

Automotive fuels are flammable materials. When refuelling, please note the following guidelines carefully. Failure to follow these guidelines may result in severe personal injury, severe burns or death by fire or explosion.

- Read and follow all warning posted at the gas station facility.
- Before refuelling note the location of the Emergency Petrol Shut-Off, if available, at the gas station facility.
- Before touching the fuel nozzle, you should eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching another metal part of the vehicle, a safe distance away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle, or other gas source.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Do not get back into a vehicle once you have begun refuelling since you can generate static electricity by touching, rubbing or sliding against any item or fabric (polyester, satin, nylon, etc.) capable of producing static electricity. Static electricity discharge can ignite fuel vapours resulting in rapid burning. If you must re-enter the vehicle, you should once again eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching a metal part of the vehicle, away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle or other petrol source.
- When using an approved portable fuel container, be sure to place the container on the ground prior to refuelling. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite fuel vapours causing a fire. Once refuelling has begun, contact with the vehicle should be maintained until the filling is complete.

(Continued)

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:57 PM Page 32

(Continued)

Use only portable plastic fuel containers designed to carry and store petrol.

- **Do not use mobile phones whilst refuelling. Electric current and/or electronic interference from mobile phones can potentially ignite fuel vapours causing a fire.**
- **When refuelling, always shut the engine off. Sparks produced by electrical components related to the engine can ignite fuel vapours causing a fire. Once refuelling is complete, check to make sure the filler cap and filler door are securely closed, before starting the engine.**
- **DO NOT use matches or a lighter and DO NOT SMOKE or leave a lit cigarette in your vehicle whilst at a gas station especially during refuelling. Automotive fuel is highly flammable and can, when ignited, result in fire.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **If a fire breaks out during refuelling, leave the vicinity of the vehicle, and immediately contact the manager of the gas station and then contact the local fire department. Follow any safety instructions they provide.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Make sure to refuel your vehicle according to the "Fuel requirements" suggested in section 1.***
- ***If the fuel filler cap requires replacement, please make sure that you use parts designed for replacement in your vehicle. An incorrect fuel filler cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel system or emission control system. For more detailed information, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.***
- ***Do not spill fuel on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Any type of fuel spilled on painted surfaces may damage the paint.***
- ***After refuelling, make sure the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.***

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:57 PM Page 33

PANORAMA SUNROOF (IF EQUIPPED)



OJD042027

If your vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, you can slide or tilt your sunroof with the sunroof control lever located on the overhead console.

The sunroof can only be opened, closed, or tilted when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

- In cold and wet climates, the sunroof may not work properly due to freezing conditions.
- After the vehicle is washed or in a rainstorm, be sure to wipe off any water that is on the sunroof before operating it.

⚠ CAUTION - Sunroof control lever

Do not continue to move the sunroof control lever after the sunroof is fully opened, closed, or tilted. Damage to the motor or system components could occur.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision




OJD042078/OJD042215

Sunroof open warning (if equipped)

If the driver removes the ignition key (smart key: turns off the engine) and opens the driver-side door when the sunroof is not fully closed, the warning chime will sound for approximately 7 seconds and a warning message will appear on the LCD display.

Close the sunroof securely when leaving your vehicle.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:57 PM Page 34



Sunshade

- To open the sunshade, press the sunshade control switch(1).
- To close the sunshade when the sunroof glass is closed.
  - Press the sunshade control switch(2).
  - Push the sunroof control lever forward or pull it down.

To stop the sliding at any point, press the sunshade control switch momentarily.



Sliding the sunroof

When the sunshade is closed

If you pull the sunroof control lever backward, the sunshade will slide all the way open then the sunroof glass will slide all the way open. To stop the sunroof movement at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

When the sunshade is opened

If you pull the sunroof control lever backward, the sunroof glass will slide all the way open. To stop the sunroof movement at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.



Tilting the sunroof

When the sunshade is closed

If you push the sunroof control lever upward, the sunshade will slide all the way open then the sunroof glass will tilt.

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

When the sunshade is opened

If you push the sunroof control lever upward, the sunroof glass will tilt.

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:57 PM Page 35

Closing the sunroof

To close the sunroof glass with the sunshade

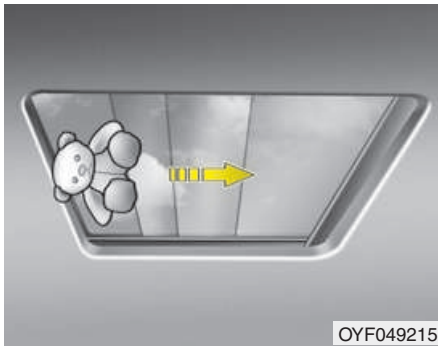
Push the sunroof control lever forward or full it down.

The sunroof glass will close.

Then to close sunshade

- Press the sunshade control switch(2).
- Push the sunroof control lever forward or full it down

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.



Automatic reversal

If an object or part of the body is detected whilst the sunroof glass or sunshade is closing automatically, it will reverse the direction, and then stop.

The auto reverse function does not work if a tiny obstacle is between the sliding glass or sunshade and the sunroof sash. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the sunroof before closing it.

⚠ WARNING - Sunroof

- **Be careful that someone's head, hands and body are not trapped by a closing sunroof.**
- **Do not extend the face, neck, arms or body outside through an opened sunroof whilst driving.**
- **Make sure your hands and face are safely out of the way before closing a sunroof.**
- **A panorama sunroof is made of glass, therefore it may break in an accident. If you do not have your seat belt on, you may stick out of the broken glass and get injured or killed. For all passengers safety, have an appropriate protection on. (ex. seat belt, CRS, etc.)**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Periodically remove any dirt that may accumulate on the guide rail.***
- ***If you try to open the sunroof when the temperature is below freezing or when the sunroof is covered with snow or ice, the glass or the motor could be damaged.***
- ***If you drive with the sunroof opened right after a car wash or rain, water may get inside the vehicle.***

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:57 PM Page 36

Resetting the sunroof

Whenever the vehicle battery is disconnected or discharged, or related fuse is blown, you must reset your sunroof system as follows:

1. Turn the engine on and close the sunroof glass and sunshade completely.
2. Release the control lever.
3. Push the sunroof control lever forward in the direction of close (about 10 seconds) until the sunroof operates as follows;

   SUNSHADE OPEN → TILT OPEN

   Then, release the control lever.

4. Push the sunroof control lever forward in the direction of close until the sunroof operates as follows;

   SUNSHADE & SLIDE OPEN SIMULTANEOUSLY → SLIDE CLOSE → SUNSHADE CLOSE

   Then, release the control lever.

   When this is complete, the sunroof system is reset.

For more detailed information, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

If you do not reset the sunroof, it may not work properly.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:57 PM Page 37

STEERING WHEEL

Electronic power steering

Power steering uses the motor to assist you in steering the vehicle. If the engine is off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, the vehicle may still be steered, but it will require increased steering effort.

The electronic power steering is controlled by the power steering control unit which senses the steering wheel torque and vehicle speed to command the motor.

The steering effort becomes heavier as the vehicle's speed increases and becomes lighter as the vehicle's speed decreases for better control of the steering wheel.

Should you notice any change in the effort required to steer during normal vehicle operation, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

The following symptoms may occur during normal vehicle operation:

- **The EPS warning light does not illuminate.**
- **The steering effort is high immediately after turning the ignition switch on. This happens as the system performs the EPS system diagnostics. When the diagnostics is completed, the steering wheel will return to its normal condition.**
- **A click noise may be heard from the EPS relay after the ignition switch is turned to the ON or LOCK/OFF position.**
- **Motor noise may be heard when the vehicle is at a stop or at a low driving speed.**
- **The steering effort increases if the steering wheel is rotated continuously when the vehicle is not in motion. However, after a few minutes, it will return to its normal conditions.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **If an error is detected in the electric power steering system, EPS will stop assisting driver in steering the vehicle to prevent accidents and the warning light on the cluster will illuminate or blink. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer as soon as possible.**
- **When you operate the steering wheel in low temperature, abnormal noise could occur. If temperature rises, the noise will disappear. This is a normal condition.**
- **When the vehicle is stationary, if you turn the steering wheel all the way to the left or right continuously, the steering wheel becomes heavier from the end. This is not a system malfunction but for your safety. As time passes, the steering wheel returns to its normal condition.**
- **When the charging system warning light comes on or the voltage is low (When the alternator (or battery) does not operate normally or it malfunctions), the steering wheel may get heavy and become difficult to control operate abnormally.**

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:57 PM Page 38

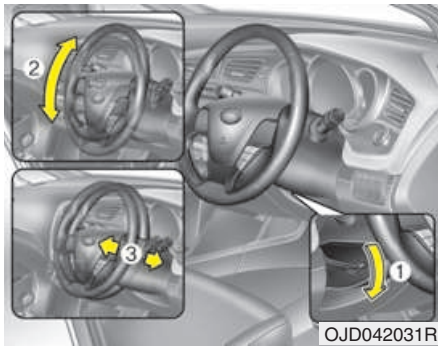
Tilt & telescopic steering

A tilt steering wheel allows you to adjust the steering wheel before you drive. You can also raise it to give your legs more room when you exit and enter the vehicle.

The steering wheel should be positioned so that it is comfortable for you to drive, whilst permitting you to see the instrument panel warning lights and gauges.

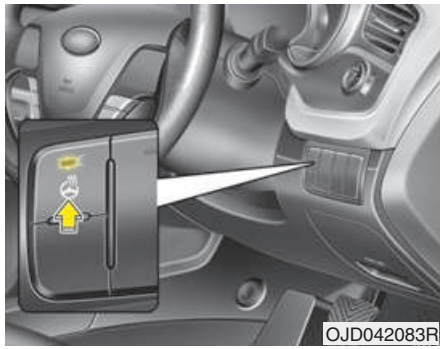
⚠ WARNING

- **Never adjust the angle and height of steering wheel whilst driving. You may lose your steering control and cause severe personal injury or accidents.**
- **After adjusting, push the steering wheel both up and down to be certain it is locked in position.**



OJD042031R

To change the steering wheel angle, pull down the lock release lever (1), adjust the steering wheel to the desired angle (2) and height (3), then pull up the lock-release lever to lock the steering wheel in place. Be sure to adjust the steering wheel to the desired position before driving.


OJD042083R

Heated steering wheel (if equipped)

With the ignition switch in the ON position, pressing the heated steering wheel button warms the steering wheel.

✻ NOTICE

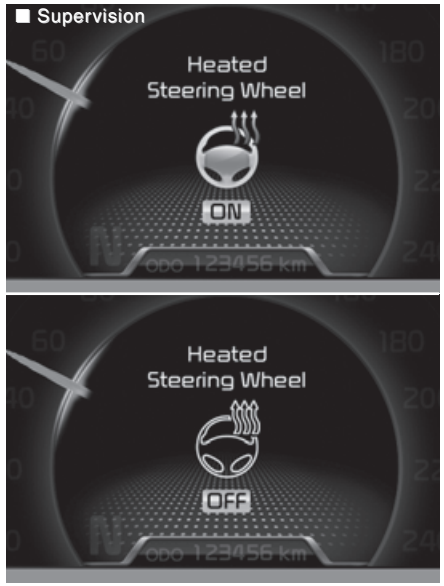
The heated steering wheel will turn off automatically approximately 30 minutes after the heated steering wheel is turned on.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:57 PM Page 39

■ Normal vision



■ Supervision



OJD042165/OJD042166/OJD042189/OJD042190

The indicator on the button will illuminate and notify you on the LCD display.
To turn the heated steering wheel off, press the button once again. The indicator on the button will turn off and notify you on the LCD display.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not install any grip to operate the steering wheel. This causes damage to the heated steering wheel system.



OJD042032

Horn

To sound the horn, press the horn symbol on your steering wheel.
Check the horn regularly to be sure it operates properly.

✻ NOTICE

To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration). The horn will operate only when this area is pressed.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not strike the horn severely to operate it, or hit it with your fist. Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:57 PM Page 40



OJD042161

Flex steering wheel (if equipped)

The flex steering wheel controls steering effort as driver's preference or road condition.

You can select the desired steering mode by pressing the steering mode button.

■ Normal vision



OJD042170

■ Supervision



OJD042239

When the steering mode button is pressed, the selected steering mode will appear on the LCD display.

If the steering mode button is pressed within 4 seconds, the steering mode will change as above pictures.

If the steering wheel mode button is not pressed for about 4 seconds, the LCD display will change to the previous screen.

■ Normal vision



OJD042167

■ Supervision



OJD042192

Normal mode

The normal mode offers medium steering effort.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:57 PM Page 41

■ Normal vision



OJD042169

■ Supervision



OJD042191

Comfort mode

The steering wheel becomes lighter. The comfort mode is usually used when driving in downtown or parking the vehicle.

Also, the comfort mode helps to drive easily with lower effort to steer the car.

■ Normal vision



OJD042168

■ Supervision



OJD042193

Sport mode

The steering wheel becomes heavier. The sport mode is usually used when driving in highway.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***For your safety, if you press the steering mode button whilst operating the steering wheel, the LCD display will change, but the steering effort will not change immediately. After operating the steering wheel, the steering effort will change automatically to the selected mode.***
- ***Be careful when changing the steering mode whilst driving.***
- ***When the electronic power steering is not working properly, the flex steering wheel will not work.***

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:57 PM Page 42

MIRRORS

Inside rearview mirror

Adjust the rearview mirror so that the centre view through the rear window is seen. Make this adjustment before you start driving.

⚠ WARNING - Rear visibility

Do not place objects in the rear seat or cargo area which would interfere with your vision out the rear window.

⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the rearview mirror whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident which could cause death, serious injury or property damage.

⚠ WARNING

Do not modify the inside mirror and do not install a wide mirror. It could result in injury, during an accident or deployment of the air bag.



OMD040031

Day/night rearview mirror (if equipped)

Make this adjustment before you start driving and whilst the day/night lever is in the day position.

Pull the day/night lever toward you to reduce glare from the headlights of vehicles behind you during night driving.

Remember that you lose some rearview clarity in the night position.

Electric chromic mirror (ECM) (if equipped)

The electric rearview mirror automatically controls the glare from the headlights of the car behind you in nighttime or low light driving conditions. The sensor mounted in the mirror senses the light level around the vehicle, and automatically controls the headlight glare from vehicles behind you.

When the engine is running, the glare is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rearview mirror.

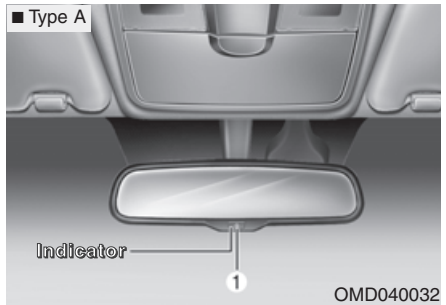
Whenever the shift lever is shifted into R (Reverse), the mirror will automatically go to the brightest setting in order to improve the drivers view behind the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.

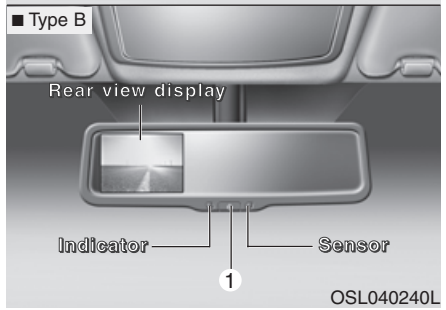
JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:57 PM Page 43

■ Type A



OMD040032

■ Type B



OSL040240L

To operate the electric rearview mirror:

- The mirror defaults to the ON position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.
- Press the on/off button (1) to turn the automatic dimming function off. The mirror indicator light will turn off.

  Press the on/off button (1) to turn the automatic dimming function on. The mirror indicator light will illuminate.

Outside rearview mirror

Be sure to adjust mirror angles before driving.

Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rearview mirrors. The mirrors can be adjusted remotely with the remote switch. The mirror heads can be folded back to prevent damage during an automatic car wash or when passing in a narrow street.

⚠ WARNING - Rearview mirrors

- **The outside rearview mirror is convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.**
- **Use your interior rearview mirror or direct observation to determine the actual distance of following vehicles when changing lanes.**

⚠ CAUTION

Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass. If ice should restrict movement of the mirror, do not force the mirror for adjustment. To remove ice, use a deicer spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with very warm water.

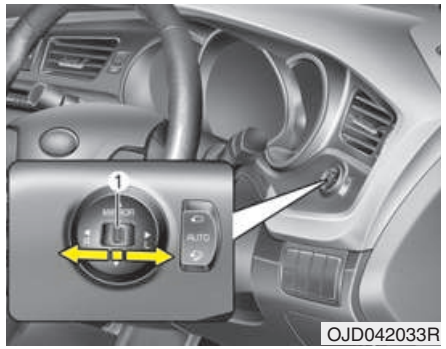
⚠ CAUTION

If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved spray de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) to release the frozen mechanism or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident which could cause death, serious injury or property damage.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:58 PM Page 44



OJD042033R

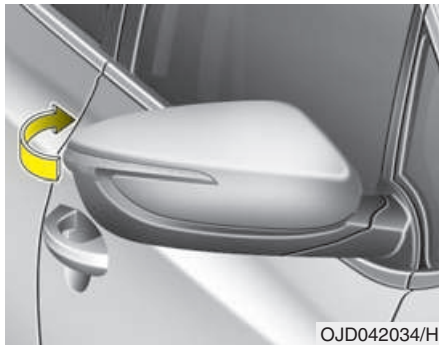
Remote control

The electric remote control mirror switch allows you to adjust the position of the left and right outside rearview mirrors. To adjust the position of either mirror, move the lever (1) to R (Right) or L (Left) to select the right side mirror or the left side mirror, then press a corresponding point on the mirror adjustment control to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.

After adjustment, put the lever into neutral (centre) position to prevent inadvertent adjustment.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate whilst the switch is pressed. Do not press the switch longer than necessary, the motor may be damaged.***
- ***Do not attempt to adjust the outside rearview mirror by hand. Doing so may damage the parts.***

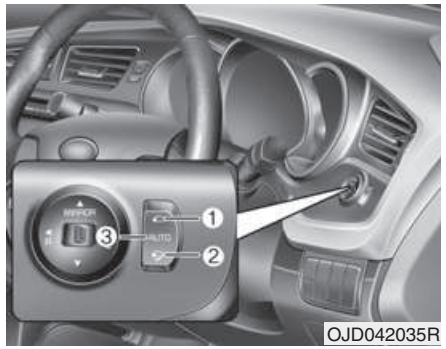

OJD042034/H

Folding the outside rearview mirror

Manual type

To fold outside rearview mirror, grasp the housing of mirror and then fold it toward the rear of the vehicle.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:58 PM Page 45



Electric type

The outside rearview mirror can be folded or unfolded by pressing the switch as below.

Up (1) : The mirror will unfold.

Down (2) : The mirror will fold.

Centre (AUTO, 3) :

The mirror will fold or unfold automatically as follows:

- Without smart key system
  - The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the transmitter.
- With smart key system
  - The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the smart key.
  - The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the button on the outside door handle.
  - The mirror will unfold when you approach the vehicle (all doors closed and locked) with a smart key in possession.

⚠ CAUTION

The electric type outside rearview mirror operates even though the ignition switch is in the OFF position. However, to prevent unnecessary battery discharge, do not adjust the mirrors longer than necessary whilst the engine is not running.

⚠ CAUTION

In case it is an electric type outside rearview mirror, don't fold it by hand. It could cause motor failure.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (NORMAL VISION)

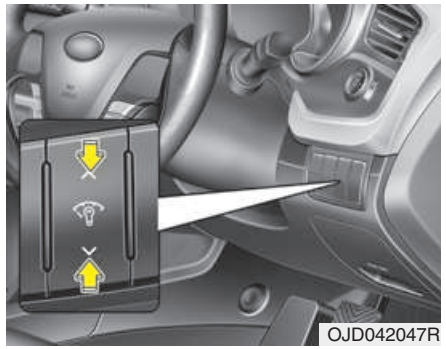


1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Fuel gauge
4. Warning and indicator lights (if equipped)
5. Turn signal indicators
6. LCD display

✻ The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
For more details, refer to "Gauges" in the following pages.

OJD042036R

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:58 PM Page 47


OJD042047R

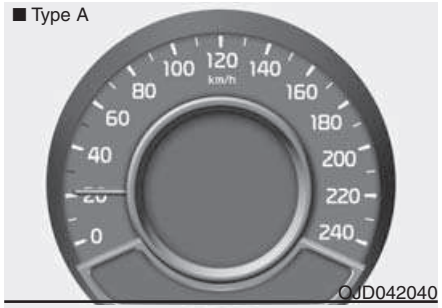
Instrument panel illumination

The instrument panel illumination intensity can be adjusted as follows:

- Ignition switch in the ON position
- Pressing the upper or lower part of the switch

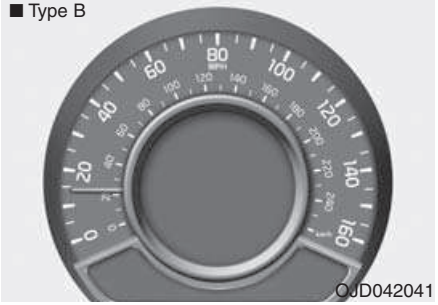
The illumination intensity is shown on the instrument cluster LCD display.

■ Type A



OJD042040

■ Type B



OJD042041

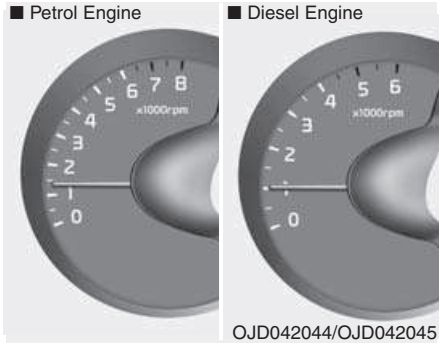
Gauges

Speedometer

The speedometer indicates the vehicle speed.

The speedometer is calibrated in kilometers per hour and/or miles per hour.

■ Petrol Engine ■ Diesel Engine



OJD042044/OJD042045

Tachometer

The tachometer indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

Use the tachometer to select the correct shift points and to prevent lugging and/or over-revving the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the engine within the tachometer's RED ZONE. This may cause severe engine damage.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:58 PM Page 48



OJD042046

Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

✻ NOTICE

- **The fuel tank capacity is given in section 8.**
- **The fuel gauge is supplemented by a low fuel warning light, which will illuminate when the fuel tank is nearly empty.**
- **On inclines or curves, the fuel gauge may fluctuate or the low fuel warning light may come on earlier than usual due to the movement of fuel in the tank.**

⚠ WARNING - Fuel gauge

Running out of fuel can expose vehicle occupants to danger.

You must stop and obtain additional fuel as soon as possible after the warning light comes on or when the gauge indicator comes close to the "O (Empty)" level.

⚠ CAUTION

Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire damaging the catalytic converter.



OJD042058

Engine coolant temperature gauge

This gauge shows the temperature of the engine coolant when the ignition switch is ON.

Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to "If the engine overheats" in section 6.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:58 PM Page 49

⚠ CAUTION

If the gauge pointer moves beyond the normal range area toward the "130°C", it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.

⚠ WARNING

Never remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. The engine coolant is under pressure and could cause severe burns. Wait until the engine is cool before adding coolant to the reservoir.



OJD042231/OJD042232

Manual transaxle shift indicator (if equipped)

This indicator informs you which gear is desired whilst driving to save fuel.

For example

▲3: Indicates that shifting up to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 2nd or 1st gear).

▼3: Indicates that shifting down to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 4th or 5th gear).

You can turn off the indicator. Refer to "User setting" in this section.

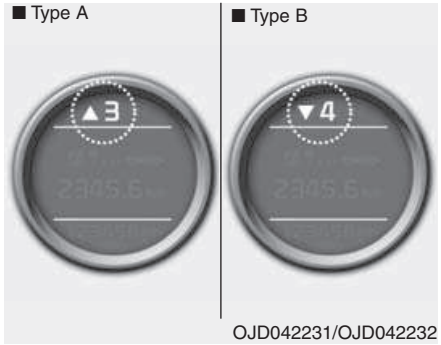


OJD042233

Automatic transaxle shift position indicator (if equipped)

The indicator displays which automatic transaxle shift lever is selected.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:58 PM Page 50



OJD042231/OJD042232

Automatic Transaxle Shift Indicator in sports mode (if equipped, For Europe)

In the Sports Mode, this indicator informs which gear is desired whilst driving to save fuel.

For example

▲3 : Indicates that shifting up to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 2nd or 1st gear).

▼3 : Indicates that shifting down to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 4th, 5th, or 6th gear).

When the system is not working properly, the indicator is not displayed.



OJD042234

Double clutch transmission (DS mode) shift indicator (if equipped)

The indicator displays which Double clutch transmission shift lever is selected.

In DS mode, the “SPORTS” indicator displays in cluster. For more detailed information about DS mode, refer to the chapter 5.

⚠ CAUTION - DCT

- ***When the problem of gear system occurs, the transaxle indicator will blink. For your safety, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer and have the system checked.***
- ***When the clutch is overheated, the safe protection mode operates. According to the safe protection mode, the transaxle indicator blinks with buzzer sound. The buzzer beeps 3 times. In this time, the LCD warning about safe protection mode also displays. In this condition, the driving may not be smoothly. If you ignore this warning, the driving condition is getting worse and the system may have problem. To return the normal driving condition, apply the foot brake and stop the vehicle for few minutes before driving off.***

* DCT : Double clutch transmission

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:58 PM Page 51



OJD052031R

Speed limiter indicator (if equipped)

The indicator illuminates when the speed limit control system is enabled by move the lever up on the steering wheel.

The indicator goes off when the lever up again to deactivate the system.

If there is a problem with the speed limit control system, the "---" indicator will blink. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

For more details, refer to "Speed limit control system" in section 5.

The speed limiter indicators illuminates on the LCD display.

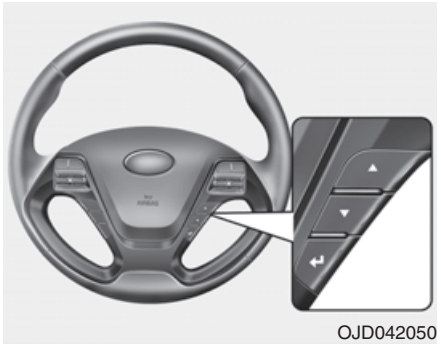


OJD042051N

Odometer (km or mi.)

The odometer indicates the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

You will also find the odometer useful to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.



OJD042050

Trip computer

The trip computer is a microcomputer-controlled driver information system that displays information related to driving when the ignition switch is in the ON position. All stored driving information (except odometer, distance to empty and instant fuel economy) resets if the battery is disconnected.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:58 PM Page 52

Press the ▲ or ▼ button for less than 1 second to select any mode as follows:

- Tripmeter A
- Tripmeter B
- Distance to empty*
- Average fuel consumption*
- Instant fuel consumption*
- Average speed*
- Elapsed time*
- Engine coolant temperature gauge
- Service*
- User setting*

* : if equipped



OJD042052N

Tripmeter (km or mi.)

This mode indicates the distance of individual trips selected since the last tripmeter reset.

The meter's working range is from 0.0 to 9999.9 km (0.0 to 9999.9 miles).

Pressing the ↵ button for more than 1 second, clears the tripmeter to zero (0.0).



OJD042053N

Distance to empty (km or mi.)

This mode indicates the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining fuel. When the remaining distance is below 50 km (30 miles), “---” will be displayed.

The meter’s working range is from 50 to 999 km (30 to 999 miles).

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:58 PM Page 53



OJD042054N

Average fuel economy (if equipped) (L/100 km or MPG)

This mode calculates the average fuel consumption from the total fuel used and the distance since the last average fuel economy reset. The total fuel used is calculated from the fuel consumption input. For an accurate calculation, drive more than 50 m (0.03 miles).

To clear the average fuel economy to zero (--.-), do as follow;

• When the "AVG Fuel Economy" of "User Setting" is in the "Auto Reset"

If the vehicle speed exceeds 1 km/h after refuelling more than 6 *l*, the average fuel consumption will be cleared to zero (---).

• When the "AVG Fuel Economy" of "User Setting" is in the "Manual Reset"

Pressing the ↵ button for more than 1 second, when the average fuel consumption is displayed, clears the average fuel consumption to zero (--.-).



OJD042055N

Instant fuel economy (if equipped) (L/100 km or MPG)

This mode calculates the instant fuel consumption during the last few seconds.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:58 PM Page 54

✻ NOTICE

- **If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the "Distance to empty" function may not operate correctly.**
  The trip computer may not register additional fuel if less than 6 litres (1.6 gallons) of fuel are added to the vehicle.
- **The fuel economy and distance to empty may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.**
- **The distance to empty is an estimate of the available driving distance. This value may differ from the actual driving distance.**



OJD042056N

Average speed (km/h or MPH)

This mode calculates the average speed of the vehicle since the last average speed reset.

Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the average speed keeps going whilst the engine is running.

Pressing the ↵ button for more than 1 second, when the average speed is displayed, clears the average speed to zero (---).



OJD042057

Elapsed time

This mode indicates the total time traveled since the last driving time reset.

Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the driving time keeps going whilst the engine is running.

The meter's working range is from 0:00~99:59.

Pressing the ↵ button for more than 1 second, when the driving time is being displayed, clears the driving time to zero (0:00).

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:58 PM Page 55



OJD042059N

Service mode

This mode calculates when you need a scheduled maintenance service (mileage or days)

If you want to see the service mode when other modes are displayed, press the ▲ or ▼ button less than 1 second.



OJD042061R

If you do not have your vehicle serviced according to the scheduled maintenance service on the LCD display, this LCD display will show the elapsed mileage or days.

If you want to reset the maintenance schedule, when the service required message is displayed :

- Press the ↵ button more than 5 seconds.
- "↵ : Reset" will be shown on the LCD display.
- Press the ↵ button again more than 1 second.

If you do not press the ↵ button within 5 seconds, "↵ : Reset" will disappear.

If you want to change the interval of the maintenance service schedule, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

- **If you reset the maintenance schedule, when the displayed service schedule has not elapsed or elapsed without actual vehicle service, the displayed service schedule on the LCD display might not be match the actual service schedule anymore.**
  You should comply with the displayed service schedule on the LCD display for the maintenance of your vehicle.
- **If the battery is disconnected or discharged, the displayed service schedule might not match the actual service schedule.**

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:58 PM Page 56



OJD042060

If service mode is not activated, the LCD display shows, like the above picture.

In this case, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.



OJD042063

User Settings

In this mode there are 3 kinds of the sub-menu.



OJD042064

1. Stop the vehicle with the ignition switch in the ON position or engine running.
2. Press the ▲ or ▼ button until the User setting mode is displayed.
3. With the User setting mode displayed, press the ↵ button until the screen is changed.
4. You can change the item by pressing the ▲ or ▼ button and select an item by pressing the ↵ button.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:58 PM Page 57

Door Menu

• Auto Door Lock

Off - The auto door lock operation will be canceled.

Speed - All doors will be automatically locked when the vehicle speed exceeds 15km/h (9.3mph).

Shift Lever - All doors will be automatically locked if the shift lever is shifted from the P(Park) position to the R(Reverse), N(Neutral) or D(Drive) position. (for automatic transaxle shift lever)

• Auto Door Unlock

Off - The auto door unlock operation will be canceled.

Key Out - All doors will be automatically unlocked when the ignition key is removed from ignition switch (or smart key is in the OFF position).

Shift Lever - All doors will be automatically unlocked if the shift lever is shifted to the P(Park) position. (for automatic transaxle shift lever)

Lamp Menu

• Headlamp delay (if equipped)

If the headlamp delay function is checked :

The Headlamp delay and Headlamp Welcome function will be activated.

• Welcome Light (if equipped)

If the welcome light function is checked :

The welcome light function of puddle lamp will activate.

• Auto Triple Turn (One-touch triple turn signal)

If the auto triple turn function is checked :

The lane change signals will blink 3 times when the turn signal lever is moved slightly.

Settings Menu

• Seat Easy Access (for Driver Position Memory System equipped vehicle) (if equipped)

If the seat easy access function is checked :

The driver's seat will automatically move forward or rearward for the driver to enter or exit the vehicle comfortably.

• Steering position (if equipped)

If the steering position function is checked:

The warning illuminates on the LCD display when the steering wheel is not aligned with the ENGINE STRAT/STOP button in the ON position.

• Shift indicator (for manual transaxle)

If the shift indicator function is checked :

The shift indicator function will be activated.

For more details, refer to “Manual transaxle shift indicator” in this section.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:58 PM Page 58

• AVG fuel ECO Reset

Auto Reset - The average fuel economy will reset automatically when you drive after refuelling.

Manual Reset - The average fuel economy will not reset automatically when you drive after refuelling. You can reset the average fuel economy by pressing the ↵ button for more than 1 second when the average fuel economy is displayed.

• Language

Choose the language you prefer within the LCD display.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:58 PM Page 59

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (SUPERVISION)

■ Type A



1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Fuel gauge
4. Warning and indicator lights (if equipped)
5. Turn signal indicators
6. LCD display

❈ The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
For more details, refer to "Gauges" in the following pages.

OJD042038L

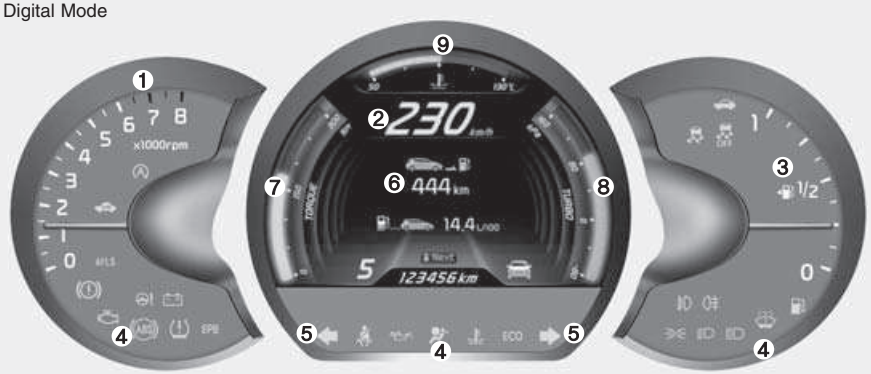
JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:58 PM Page 60

■ Type B (for T-GDI engine)

• Analog Mode



• Digital Mode

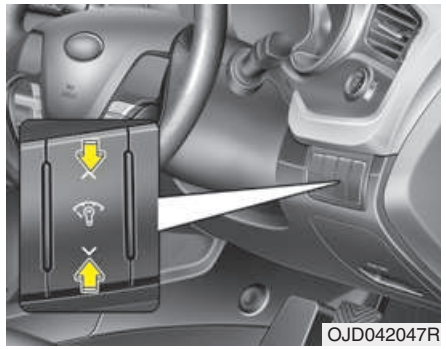


1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Fuel gauge
4. Warning and indicator lights (if equipped)
5. Turn signal indicators
6. LCD display
7. Engine torque gauge
8. Turbo boost pressure gauge
9. Engine coolant temperature gauge

❈ The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
For more details, refer to "Gauges" in the following pages.

OJD043038/OJD043248

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:58 PM Page 61

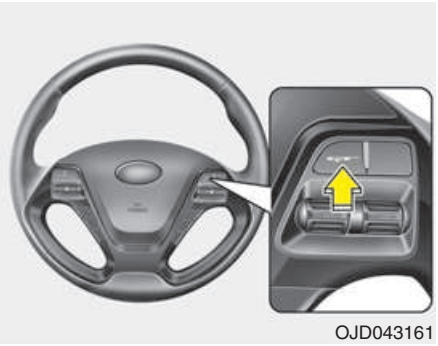

OJD042047R

Instrument panel illumination

The instrument panel illumination intensity can be adjusted as follows:

- Ignition switch in the ON position
- Pressing the upper or lower part of the switch

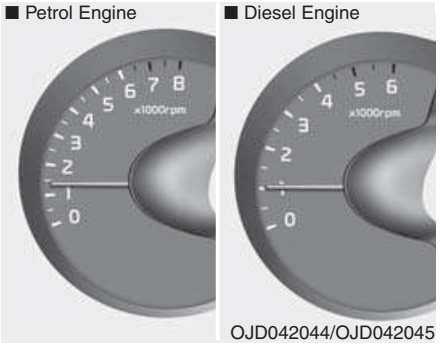
The illumination intensity is shown on the instrument cluster LCD display.


OJD043161

Cluster display mode conversion (for T-GDI engine)

You can switch the display mode "Analog" or "Digital" with pressing the button.

■ Petrol Engine ■ Diesel Engine



OJD042044/OJD042045

Gauges

Tachometer

The tachometer indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

Use the tachometer to select the correct shift points and to prevent lugging and/or over-revving the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the engine within the tachometer's RED ZONE. This may cause severe engine damage.

■ Type A



OJD042042

■ Type B
• km/h



OJD043505

• MPH



OJD043506

■ Type C
• km/h



OJD043507

• MPH



OJD043508

Speedometer

The speedometer indicates the vehicle speed.

The speedometer is calibrated in kilometers per hour and/or miles per hour.



OJD042046

Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

✻ NOTICE

- **The fuel tank capacity is given in section 8.**
- **The fuel gauge is supplemented by a low fuel warning light, which will illuminate when the fuel tank is nearly empty.**
- **On inclines or curves, the fuel gauge may fluctuate or the low fuel warning light may come on earlier than usual due to the movement of fuel in the tank.**

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:58 PM Page 63

⚠ WARNING - Fuel gauge

Running out of fuel can expose vehicle occupants to danger.

You must stop and obtain additional fuel as soon as possible after the warning light comes on or when the gauge indicator comes close to the "O (Empty)" level.

⚠ CAUTION

Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire damaging the catalytic converter.



Engine torque gauge (for T-GDI engine)

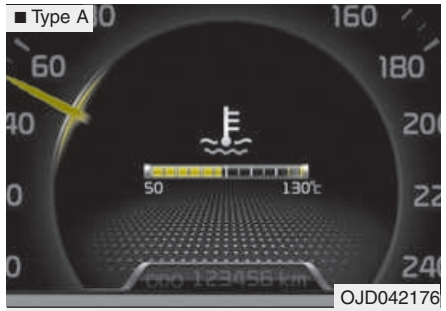
It shows instantaneous change of the Torque by rpm.



Turbo boost pressure gauge (for T-GDI engine)

It shows instantaneous change of the turbo boost pressure.

■ Type A



OJD042176

■ Type B



OJD043250

Engine coolant temperature gauge

This gauge shows the temperature of the engine coolant when the ignition switch is ON.

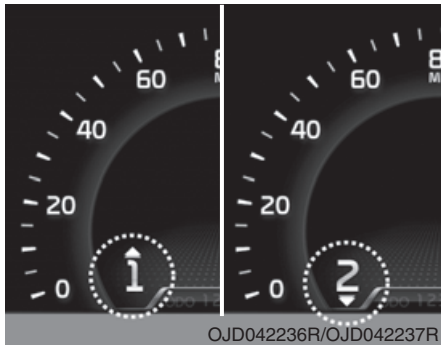
Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to “If the engine overheats” in section 6.

⚠ CAUTION

If the gauge pointer moves beyond the normal range area toward the “130°C” position, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.

⚠ WARNING

Never remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. The engine coolant is under pressure and could cause severe burns. Wait until the engine is cool before adding coolant to the reservoir.



OJD042236R/OJD042237R

Manual transaxle shift indicator

This indicator informs you which gear is desired whilst driving to save fuel.

For example

▲3: Indicates that shifting up to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 2nd or 1st gear).

▼3: Indicates that shifting down to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 4th or 5th gear).

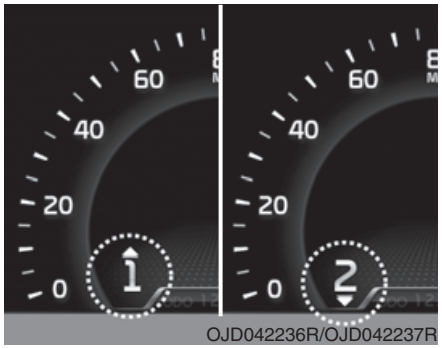
JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:59 PM Page 65



OJD042235R

Automatic transaxle shift position indicator (if equipped)

The indicator displays which automatic transaxle shift lever is selected.



OJD042236R/OJD042237R

Automatic Transaxle Shift Indicator in sports mode (if equipped, For Europe)

In the Sports Mode, this indicator informs which gear is desired whilst driving to save fuel.

For example

▲3 : Indicates that shifting up to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 2nd or 1st gear).

▼3 : Indicates that shifting down to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 4th, 5th, or 6th gear).

When the system is not working properly, the indicator is not displayed.



OJD042238R

Double clutch transmission (DS mode) shift indicator (if equipped)

The indicator displays which Double clutch transmission shift lever is selected.

In DS mode, the “S” indicator displays with “SPORTS” indicator in cluster. For more detailed information about DS mode, refer to the chapter 5.

⚠ CAUTION - DCT

- ***When the problem of gear system occurs, the transaxle indicator will blink. For your safety, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer and have the system checked.***
- ***When the clutch is overheated, the safe protection mode operates. According to the safe protection mode, the transaxle indicator blinks with buzzer sound. The buzzer beeps 3 times. In this time, the LCD warning about safe protection mode also displays. In this condition, the driving may not be smoothly. If you ignore this warning, the driving condition is getting worse and the system may have problem. To return the normal driving condition, apply the foot brake and stop the vehicle for few minutes before driving off.***

* DCT : Double clutch transmission



OJD052043N

Speed limiter indicator (if equipped)

The indicator illuminates when the speed limit control system is enabled by move the lever up on the steering wheel.

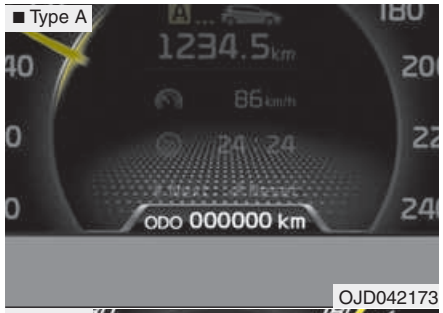
The indicator goes off when the lever up again to deactivate the system.

If there is a problem with the speed limit control system, the "---" indicator will blink. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

For more details, refer to "Speed limit control system" in section 5.

The speed limiter indicators illuminates on the LCD display.

■ Type A



OJD042173

■ Type B



OJD043504

Odometer (km or mi.)

The odometer indicates the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

You will also find the odometer useful to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

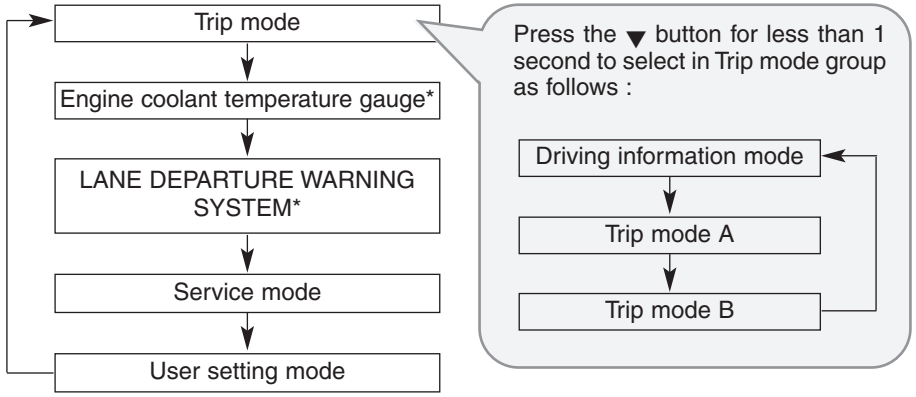
JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:59 PM Page 67



Trip computer

The trip computer is a microcomputer-controlled driver information system that displays information related to driving when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

Press the button for less than 1 second to select any group as follows :



* : if equipped

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:59 PM Page 68



OJD042175N

Driving information mode

This mode indicates 3 kinds of driving Information.

All stored driving information (except odometer, distance to empty and instant fuel economy) resets if the battery is disconnected.

1. Distance to empty (km or mi.)

This mode indicates the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining fuel. When the remaining distance is below 50 km (30 miles), "---" will be displayed.

The meter's working range is from 50 to 999 km (30 to 999 miles).

2. Average fuel economy (L/100 km or MPG)

This mode calculates the average fuel consumption from the total fuel used and the distance since the last average fuel economy reset. The total fuel used is calculated from the fuel consumption input. For an accurate calculation, drive more than 50 m (0.03 miles).

To clear the average fuel economy to zero (--.-), do as follow;

• When the "AVG Fuel Economy" of "User Setting" is in the "Auto Reset"

If the vehicle speed exceeds 1 km/h after refuelling more than 6 *l*, the average fuel consumption will be cleared to zero (---).

• When the "AVG Fuel Economy" of "User Setting" is in the "Manual Reset"

Pressing the ↵ button for more than 1 second, when the average fuel consumption is displayed, clears the average fuel consumption to zero (--.-).

3. Instant fuel economy (L/100 km or MPG)

This mode calculates the instant fuel consumption during the last few seconds.

✻ NOTICE

- **If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the "Distance to empty" function may not operate correctly.**
  The trip computer may not register additional fuel if less than 6 litres (1.6 gallons) of fuel are added to the vehicle.
- **The fuel economy and distance to empty may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.**
- **The distance to empty is an estimate of the available driving distance. This value may differ from the actual driving distance.**

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:59 PM Page 69



OJD042174N

Trip mode (A, B)

This mode indicates 3 kinds of driving Information.

All stored driving information (except odometer, distance to empty and instant fuel economy) resets if the battery is disconnected.

1. Tripmeter (km or mi.)

This mode indicates the distance of individual trips selected since the last tripmeter reset.

The meter's working range is from 0.0 to 9999.9 km (0.0 to 9999.9 miles).

Pressing the ↵ button for more than 1 second, clears the tripmeter to zero (0.0).

2. Average speed (km/h or MPH)

This mode calculates the average speed of the vehicle since the last average speed reset.

Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the average speed keeps going whilst the engine is running.

Pressing the ↵ button for more than 1 second, when the average speed is displayed, clears the average speed to zero (---).

3. Elapsed time

This mode indicates the total time traveled since the last driving time reset.

Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the driving time keeps going whilst the engine is running.

The meter's working range is from 0:00~99:59.

Pressing the ↵ button for more than 1 second, when the driving time is being displayed, clears the driving time to zero (0:00).



OJD042180

Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Mode (if equipped)

This mode displays the state of the Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS).
For more details, refer to “Lane departure warning system” in section 5.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:59 PM Page 70

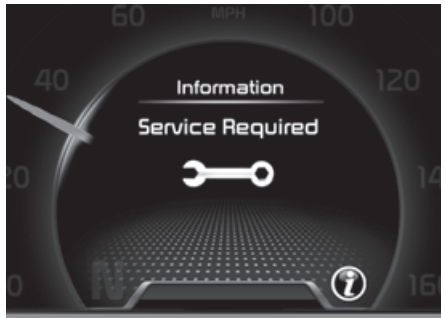


OJD042186R

Service mode

This mode calculates when you need a scheduled maintenance service (mileage or days)

If you want to see the service mode when other modes are displayed, press the button less than 1 second.



OJD042184R

If you do not have your vehicle serviced according to the scheduled maintenance service on the LCD display, this LCD display will show the elapsed mileage or days.

If you want to reset the maintenance schedule, when the service required message is displayed :

- Press the ↵ button more than 5 seconds.
- " ↵ : Reset" will be shown on the LCD display.
- Press the ↵ button again more than 1 second.

If you do not press the ↵ button within 5 seconds, " ↵ : Reset" will disappear.

If you want to change the interval of the maintenance service schedule, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

- **If you reset the maintenance schedule, when the displayed service schedule has not elapsed or elapsed without actual vehicle service, the displayed service schedule on the LCD display might not be match the actual service schedule anymore.**
  You should comply with the displayed service schedule on the LCD display for the maintenance of your vehicle.
- **If the battery is disconnected or discharged, the displayed service schedule might not match the actual service schedule.**

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:59 PM Page 71



OJD042185

If service mode is not activated, the LCD display shows, like the above picture.

In this case, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.



OJD042187

User Settings

1. Stop the vehicle with the ignition switch in the ON position or engine running.
2. Press the button until the User setting mode is displayed.
3. You can change the item by pressing the ▼ button and select an item by pressing the ↵ button.

Door Menu

• Auto Door Lock

Off - The auto door lock operation will be canceled.

Speed - All doors will be automatically locked when the vehicle speed exceeds 15km/h (9.3mph).

Shift Lever - All doors will be automatically locked if the shift lever is shifted from the P(Park) position to the R(Reverse), N(Neutral) or D(Drive) position. (for automatic transaxle shift lever)

• Auto Door Unlock

Off - The auto door unlock operation will be canceled.

Key Out - All doors will be automatically unlocked when the ignition key is removed from ignition switch (or smart key is in the OFF position).

Shift Lever - All doors will be automatically unlocked if the shift lever is shifted to the P(Park) position. (for automatic transaxle shift lever)

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:59 PM Page 72

Lamp Menu

• Headlamp delay (if equipped)

If the headlamp delay function is checked :

The Headlamp delay and Headlamp Welcome function will be activated.

• Auto Triple Turn (One-touch triple turn signal)

If the auto triple turn function is checked :

The lane change signals will blink 3 times when the turn signal lever is moved slightly.

• Welcome Light (if equipped)

If the welcome light function is checked :

The welcome light function of puddle lamp will activate.

Settings Menu

• Seat Easy Access (for Driver Position Memory System equipped vehicle) (if equipped)

If the seat easy access function is checked:

The driver's seat will automatically move forward or rearward for the driver to enter or exit the vehicle comfortably.

• Welcome Sound

If the welcome sound function is checked :

The Welcome Sound function will be activated.

• Steering Position (if equipped)

If the steering position function is checked:

The warning illuminates on the LCD display when the steering wheel is not aligned with the ENGINE STRAT/STOP button in the ON position.

• AVG fuel ECO Reset

Auto Reset - The average fuel economy will reset automatically when you drive after refuelling.

Manual Reset - The average fuel economy will not reset automatically when you drive after refuelling. You can reset the average fuel economy by pressing the ↵ button for more than 1 second when the average fuel economy is displayed.

• Speed Gauge Scale (if equipped)

- 100% : The size of the numbers on speed gauge is normal state.
- 110% : The size of the numbers on speed gauge will increase.

• Unit

You can choose the displayed unit in the instrument cluster “km” or “mile”.

• Language

Choose the language you prefer within the LCD display.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:59 PM Page 73

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



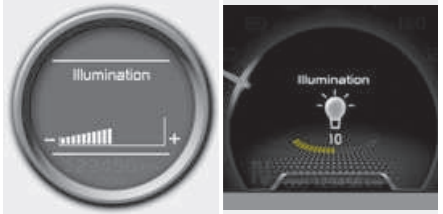
OJD042078/OJD042215

LCD display information

Sunroof open

If driver removes the ignition key (Smart key : turns off the engine) and opens the driver-side door when the sunroof is not fully closed, warning message will appear on the LCD display. Also, the warning chime sounds for approximately 7 seconds.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042240/OJD042188

Illumination intensity

The illumination intensity of the instrument panel is shown when adjusting it with the illumination control switch.

For more details, refer to “Instrument panel illumination” in section 4.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042079/OJD042214

Turn on "FUSE SWITCH" (mode switch)

The notice appears to inform the driver to turn on the fuse switch in the instrument panel under the steering wheel.

For more details, refer to “Fuses” in section 7.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 6:59 PM Page 74

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042163/OJD042196

Parking assist warning (if equipped)

Displays the area an obstacle is detected whilst moving forward or rearward.

For more details, refer to “Parking assist system” in section 4.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042164/OJD042211

Align steering wheel (if equipped)

If you start the engine when the steering wheel is turned 90 degrees to the left (or right) after a couple of seconds, “Align steering wheel” illuminates on the LCD display for 5 seconds.

Turn the steering wheel to the right (or left) and make it turned to the left (or right) less than 30 degrees.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042073/OJD042205

For vehicle’s equipped with smart key system

Key not in vehicle

If the smart key is not in the vehicle and if any door is opened or closed with the engine start/stop button in the ACC, ON, or START position, the warning illuminates on the LCD display. Also, the chime sounds for 5 seconds when the smart key is not in the vehicle and the door is closed.

Always have the smart key with you.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:00 PM Page 75

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision

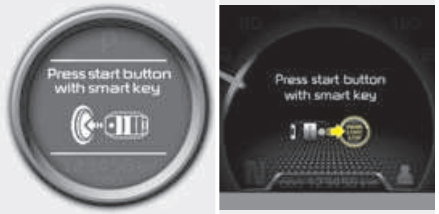


OJD042072/OJD042204

Key not detected

If the smart key is not in the vehicle or is not detected and you press the engine start/stop button, the warning illuminates on the LCD display for 10 seconds. Also, the immobiliser indicator blinks for 10 seconds.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042075/OJD042207

Press start button with smart key

If you press the engine start/stop button whilst the warning “Key not detected” illuminates the warning “Press the start button with smart key” illuminates for 10 seconds on the LCD display. Also, the immobiliser indicator blinks for 10 seconds.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042066/OJD042198

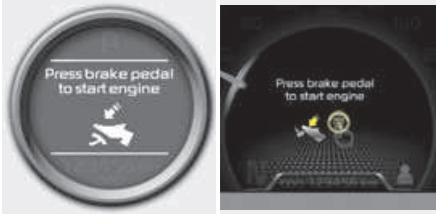
Low key battery

If the engine start/stop button changes to the OFF position when the smart key in the vehicle discharges, the warning illuminates on the LCD display for about 10 seconds. Also, the warning chime sounds once.

Replace the battery with a new one.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:00 PM Page 76

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision

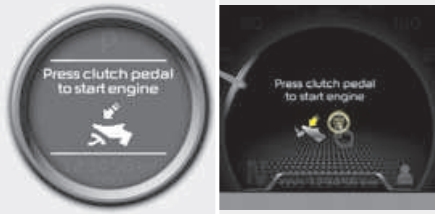


OJD042070/OJD042202

Press brake pedal to start engine (for automatic transaxle)

If the engine start/stop button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the brake pedal, the warning illuminates on the LCD display for about 10 seconds to indicate that you should depress the brake pedal to start the engine.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042071/OJD042203

Press clutch pedal to start engine (for manual transaxle)

If the engine start/stop button turns to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the clutch pedal, the warning illuminates on the LCD display for about 10 seconds to indicate that you should depress the clutch pedal to start the engine.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042065/OJD042197

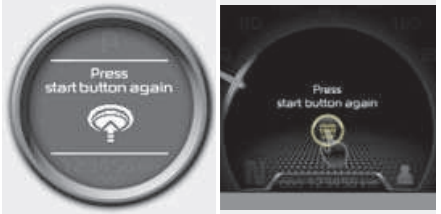
Shift to "P" position (for Auto transaxle)

If you try to turn off the engine without the shift lever in the P (Park) position, the engine start/stop button will turn to the ACC position. If the button is pressed once more it will turn to the ON position. The warning illuminates on the LCD display for about 10 seconds to indicate that you should press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the P (Park) position to turn off the engine.

Also, the warning chime sounds for about 10 seconds. (if equipped)

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:00 PM Page 77

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042074/OJD042206

Press start button again

If you can not operate the engine start/stop button when there is a problem with the engine start/stop button system, the warning illuminates for 10 seconds and the chime sounds continuously to indicate that you could start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button once more.

The chime will stop if the engine start/stop button system works normally or the theft alarm system is armed.

If the warning illuminates each time you press the engine start/stop button, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



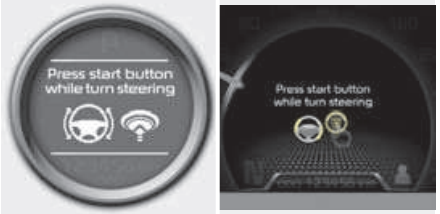
OJD042077/OJD042209

Shift to "P" or "N" to start engine

If you try to start the engine with the shift lever not in the P(Park) or N(Neutral) position, the warning illuminates for about 10 seconds on the LCD display.

You can also start the engine with the shift lever in the N(Neutral) position, but for your safety start the engine with the shift lever in the P(Park) position.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042067/OJD042199

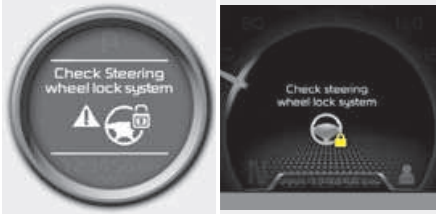
Press start button whilst turn steering (if equipped)

If the steering wheel does not unlock normally when the engine start/stop button is pressed, the warning illuminates for 10 seconds on the LCD display. Also, the warning chime sounds once and the engine start/stop button light blinks for 10 seconds.

When you are warned, press the engine start/stop button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:00 PM Page 78

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042069/OJD042201

Check steering wheel lock system (if equipped)

If the steering wheel does not lock normally when the engine start/stop button changes to the OFF position, the warning illuminates for 10 seconds on the LCD display. Also, the warning chime sounds for 3 seconds and the engine start/stop button light blinks for 10 seconds.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD042076/OJD042208

Check "BRAKE SWITCH" fuse

When the brake switch fuse is disconnected, the warning illuminates for 10 seconds on the LCD display.

Replace the fuse with a new one. If that is not possible you can start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button for 10 seconds in ACC.



OJD043509

Torque reduced due to overheating (for T-GDI engine)

When the engine coolant temperature exceeds 115°C, this message will be displayed and the torque will be reduced to protect the engine.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:00 PM Page 79

Warnings and indicators (Instrument cluster)

All warning lights are checked by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). If any light that does not illuminate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

After starting the engine, check to make sure that all warning lights are off. If any are still on, this indicates a situation that needs attention.

The following warning and indicators are introduced in the previous pages.

- Automatic transaxle/Double clutch transmission shift lever indicator
- Manual transaxle shift indicator
- Parking assist warning (LCD display)

Active ECO indicator (if equipped)



When the active ECO is operating the ECO indicator illuminates green. For more detailed information, refer to "Active ECO" in chapter 5.

Seat belt warning and chime light



As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will blink or illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

For more details, refer to the “Seat belt” in section 3.

Air bag warning light



This warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch to the ON position.

This light also comes on when the SRS is not working properly. If the air bag warning light does not come on, or continuously remains on after operating for about 6 seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON position or started the engine, or if it comes on whilst driving, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:00 PM Page 80

Immobiliser indicator



Without smart key system

This indicator illuminates when the immobiliser key is inserted and turned to the ON position to start the engine.

At this time, you can start the engine. The indicator goes out after the engine is running.

If this indicator blinks when the ignition switch is in the ON position before starting the engine, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

With smart key system

If any of the following occurs in a vehicle equipped with the smart key, the immobiliser indicator illuminates, blinks or goes off.

- When the smart key is in the vehicle, if the engine start/stop button is in the ACC or ON position, the indicator will illuminate for approximately 30 seconds to indicate that you are able to start the engine. However, when the smart key is not in the vehicle, if the engine start/stop button is pressed, the indicator will blink for a few seconds to indicate that you are not be able to start the engine.
- If the indicator illuminates only for 2 seconds and goes out when the engine start/stop button is turned to ON position with the smart key in the vehicle, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.
- When the battery is weak, if the engine start/stop button is pressed, the indicator will blink and you are not able to start the engine. However, you are able to start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button directly with the smart key. Also, if the smart key system related parts have a problem, the indicator will blink.

Tailgate open warning light



This warning light illuminates when the tailgate is not closed securely.

Low fuel level warning



This warning light indicates the fuel tank is nearly empty. When it comes on, you should add fuel as soon as possible. Driving with the fuel level warning light on or with the fuel level below “O/E” can cause the engine to misfire and damage the catalytic converter (if equipped).

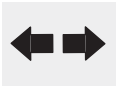
JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:00 PM Page 81

Electronic Power Steering (EPS) system warning light (if equipped)



This indicator light comes on after the ignition key is turned to the ON position and then it will go off in approximately 3 seconds if there is no problem with EPS. This light also comes on when the EPS has some problems. If it comes on whilst driving, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

Turn signal indicator lights



The blinking green arrows on the instrument panel show the direction indicated by the turn signals. If the arrow comes on but does not blink, blinks more rapidly than normal, or does not illuminate at all, a malfunction in the turn signal system is indicated. Your dealer should be consulted for repairs.

Light on indicator



The indicator illuminates when the tail lights or headlights are ON.

Low Beam Indicator Light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates when the headlights are on.

High beam indicator



This indicator illuminates when the headlights are on and in the high beam position or when the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:00 PM Page 82

AFLS (Adaptive Front Lighting System) malfunction indicator (if equipped)

AFLS

If the AFLS malfunction indicator illuminates, the AFLS is not working properly. Drive to the nearest safe location and restart the engine. If the indicator continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

Front fog light indicator (if equipped)



The indicator illuminates when the front fog lights are ON.

Rear fog light indicator (if equipped)



This indicator illuminates when the rear fog lights are ON.

Parking brake & brake fluid warning



Parking brake warning

This light illuminates when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position. The warning light should go off when the parking brake is released.

Low brake fluid level warning

If the warning light remains on, it may indicate that the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.

If the warning light remains on:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the engine stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required. Then check all brake components for fluid leaks.
3. Do not drive the vehicle if leaks are found, the warning light remains on or the brakes do not operate properly. We recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:00 PM Page 83

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-diagonal braking systems. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail. With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal pressure are required to stop the car. Also, the car will not stop in as short a distance with only a portion of the brake system working. If the brakes fail whilst you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional engine braking and stop the car as soon as it is safe to do so.

To check bulb operation, check whether the parking brake and brake fluid warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

⚠ WARNING

Driving the vehicle with a warning light on is dangerous. If the brake warning light remains on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

Electric Parking Brake (EPB) malfunction indicator (if equipped)



The EPB malfunction indicator will illuminate when the ignition switch is turned ON, but should go off after approximately 3 seconds. If the warning light does not come on, or continuously remains on we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

Also, the EPB malfunction indicator may illuminate when the ESC indicator comes on to indicate that the ESC is not working properly, but if this occurs, it does not indicate the EPB has malfunctioned.

For more details, refer to "EPB" in section 5.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS) warning light



This light illuminates if the ignition switch is turned ON and goes off in approximately 3 seconds if the system is operating normally.

If the ABS warning light remains on, comes on whilst driving, or does not come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, this indicates that there may be a problem with the ABS.

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer. The normal braking system will still be operational, but without the assistance of the anti-lock brake system.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:00 PM Page 84

Electronic brake force distribution (EBD) system warning light



If two warning lights illuminate at the same time whilst driving, your vehicle's ABS and EBD system may have malfunctioned.
In this case, your ABS and regular brake system may not work normally. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

If the ABS warning light or EBD warning light is on and stays on, the speedometer or odometer/tripmeter may not work. Also, the EPS warning light may illuminate and the steering effort may increase or decrease. In this case, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

If both ABS and Brake warning lights are on and stay on, your vehicle's brake system will not work normally. So you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking. In this case, avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking except an emergency situation.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator (if equipped)



The ESC indicator will illuminate when the ignition switch is turned ON, but should go off after approximately 3 seconds. When the ESC is on, it monitors the driving conditions. Under normal driving conditions, the ESC indicator will remain off. When a slippery or low traction condition is encountered, the ESC will operate, and the ESC indicator will blink to indicate the ESC is operating.
But, if the ESC system malfunctions the indicator illuminates and stays on. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

ESC OFF indicator (if equipped)



The ESC OFF indicator will illuminate when the ignition switch is turned ON, but should go off after approximately 3 seconds. To switch to ESC OFF mode, press the ESC OFF button. The ESC OFF indicator will illuminate indicating the ESC is deactivated.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:00 PM Page 85

Auto stop indicator (if equipped)



This indicator will illuminate when the engine enters the Idle Stop mode of the ISG (Idle Stop and Go) system.

When the automatic starting occurrs, the auto stop indicator on the cluster will blink for 5 seconds.

For more details, refer to the ISG (Idle Stop and Go) system in section 5.

For vehicles equipped with instrument cluster type B, the indicator illuminates on the LCD display.

✻ NOTICE

When the engine automatically starts by the ISG system, some warning lights (ABS, ESC, ESC OFF, EPS or Parking brake warning light) may turn on for a few seconds.
This happens because of low battery voltage. It does not mean the system is malfunctioning.

Cruise indicator (if equipped)

CRUISE indicator



The indicator illuminates when the cruise control system is enabled.

The cruise indicator in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the cruise control ON-OFF button on the steering wheel is pushed.

The indicator goes off when the cruise control ON-OFF button is pushed again. For more information about the use of cruise control, refer to “Cruise control system” in section 5.

Cruise SET indicator



The indicator illuminates when the cruise control switch (SET- or RES+) is ON.

The cruise SET indicator in the instrument cluster illuminats when the cruise control switch (SET- or RES+) is pushed.

The cruise SET indicator does not illuminate when the cruise control cancel button O is pushed or the system is disengaged.

Charging system warning light



This warning light indicates a malfunction of either the generator or electrical charging system.

If the warning light comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion:

1. Drive to the nearest safe location.
2. With the engine off, check the generator drive belt for looseness or breakage.
3. If the belt is adjusted properly, a problem exists somewhere in the electrical charging system. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:00 PM Page 86

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) indicator (if equipped)

Low tyre pressure telltale/ TPMS malfunction indicator



The low tyre pressure telltale comes on for 3 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

The low tyre pressure and position telltales illuminates when one or more of your tyres is significantly underinflated.

The TPMS malfunction indicator will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

For more details, refer to the TPMS in section 6.

The low tyre pressure position telltale illuminates on the LCD display.

⚠ WARNING - Safe stopping

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors.**
- **If you notice any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator pedal, apply the brakes gradually and with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

Engine oil pressure warning



This warning light indicates the engine oil pressure is low.

If the warning light illuminates whilst driving:

1. Drive safely to the side of the road and stop.
2. With the engine off, check the engine oil level. If the level is low, add oil as required.

If the warning light remains on after adding oil or if oil is not available, we recommend that you call an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

If the engine does not stop immediately after the engine oil pressure warning light is illuminated, severe damage could result.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:00 PM Page 87

⚠ CAUTION

If the oil pressure warning light stays on whilst the engine is running, serious engine damage may result. The oil pressure warning light comes on whenever there is insufficient oil pressure. In normal operation, it should come on when the ignition switch is turned on, then go out when the engine is started. If the oil pressure warning light stays on whilst the engine is running, there is a serious malfunction.

If this happens, stop the car as soon as it is safe to do so, turn off the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is low, fill the engine oil to the proper level and start the engine again. If the light stays on with the engine running, turn the engine off immediately. In any instance where the oil light stays on when the engine is running, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

Engine oil level warning light (if equipped, for diesel)



The engine oil level warning light illuminates when the engine oil level should be checked.

If the warning light comes on, check the engine oil level as soon as possible and add engine oil as required.

Slowly pour the recommended oil little by little into a funnel. (Oil refill capacity : approximately 0.6 ~ 1.0 *l*)

Use only the specified engine oil. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in section 8.)

Do not overfill the engine oil to ensure the oil level is not above F mark on the dipstick.

✻ NOTICE

- **If you travel approximately 50 km~100 km after the engine warms up, after adding the engine oil, the warning light will go off.**
- **Cycle the ignition from OFF to ON 3 times within 10 seconds, the warning light will go off immediately. However, when you turn off the warning light without adding the engine oil, the light will come on again after travelling approximately 50 km ~ 100 km after the engine warms up.**

⚠ CAUTION

If the light comes on continuously after adding the engine oil and travelling approximately 50 km~100 km after the engine warms up, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

Even if this light doesn't come on after the engine has started, the engine oil should be checked and supplied periodically.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:00 PM Page 88

Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) (check engine light)



This indicator light is part of the Engine Control System which monitors various emission control system components. If this light illuminates whilst driving, it indicates that a potential problem has been detected somewhere in the emission control system.
This light will also illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, and will go out in a few seconds after the engine is started. If it illuminates whilst driving, or does not illuminate when the ignition key is turned to the ON position, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.
Generally, your vehicle will continue to be drivable, but we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

Prolonged driving with the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light illuminated may cause damage to the emission control systems which could effect drivability and/or fuel economy.

⚠ CAUTION - Petrol engine

If the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light illuminates, potential catalytic converter damage is possible which could result in loss of engine power. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION - Diesel engine (if equipped with DPF)

When the malfunction indicator light blinks, it may stop blinking after driving the vehicle at more than 60km/h (37 mph) or at more than second gear with 1500 ~ 2000 engine rpm for a certain time (for about 25 minutes).

If the malfunction indicator light continues to blink in spite of the procedure, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

If you continue to drive with the malfunction indicator light blinking for a long time, the DPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can worsen.

⚠ CAUTION - Diesel engine

If the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light blinks, some error related to the injection quantity adjustment occurs which could result in loss of engine power, combustion noise and poor emission. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:00 PM Page 89

Engine coolant temperature warning light (if equipped)



The warning light illuminates if the temperature of the engine coolant is above 120±3°C (248±5.4°F).

Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to “Overheating” in section 6.

✻ NOTICE

If the engine coolant temperature warning light illuminates, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.

Glow indicator (Diesel engine)



The indicator light illuminates when the ignition switch is placed at the ON position. The engine can be started after the preheat indicator light goes off. The illuminating time varies with the water temperature, air temperature and battery condition.

✻ NOTICE

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds after the preheating is completed, turn the ignition key once more to the LOCK/OFF position for 10 seconds, and then to the ON position, in order to preheat again.

⚠ CAUTION

If the preheat indicator light continues to illuminate or flash on and off after the engine has warmed up or whilst driving, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

Fuel filter warning light (Diesel engine)



This warning light illuminates for 3 seconds after the ignition switch is set to the ON position and then it will go out. If it lights up whilst the engine is running, it indicates that water has accumulated inside the fuel filter. If this happens, remove the water from the fuel filter.

For more details, refer to “Fuel filter” in section 7.

⚠ CAUTION

When the fuel filter warning light illuminates, engine power (vehicle speed & idle speed) may decrease. If you keep driving with the warning light on, you can damage your vehicle's engine parts and injection system of the Common Rail. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:00 PM Page 90

LCD DISPLAY WARNINGS AND INDICATORS (INSTRUMENT PANEL DISPLAY)



OJD042142R



OJD042145R

Calendar / Clock / Outside ambient Temperature (if equipped)

The monitor will display the outside ambient temperature, date and time.

To change the date, time or temperature unit(°C ↔ °F), press the SET (2) button for more than 1 second.

Then you will enter the set-up mode and mode changes in the following order as you press the SET (2) button less than 1 second.

HOUR → MINUTE → YEAR → MONTH → DAY → 12H/24H → TEMPERATURE UNIT CHANGE → Escape set-up mode

Press the SET (2) button less than 1 second to select the mode and set the data using the UP (1, ∧) and DOWN (1, ∨) button whilst the selected setting mode blinks.

To cancel the SET UP mode, do one of the following :

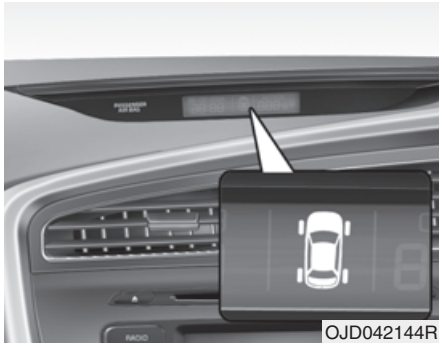
- Press the SET button less than 1 second in set-up temperature unit change mode
- Press the SET button more than 1 second in any set-up mode
- After 15 seconds without any key press
- Ignition is On or OFF in Set-up mode
- Battery is disconnected


OJD042143R

Door and tailgate open display

The monitor will display the corresponding door or tailgate that is not closed securely.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:00 PM Page 91


OJD042144R

TPMS (if equipped)

The monitor will display the corresponding tyre that is low with pressure.

For details, see Tyre Pressure Monitoring System on chapter 6.


OJD042146R

Icy road warning light (if equipped)

This warning light is to warn the driver the road may be icy when:

- Ignition ON
- Temperature range: approximately below 4°C (39.2°F).

The warning light will blink for 10 seconds and then illuminate. Also, the warning chime will sound.

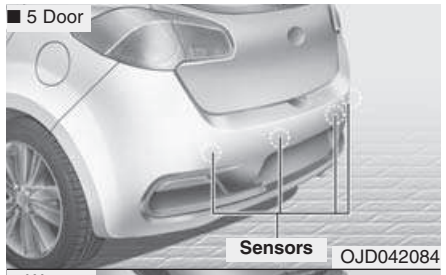
✻ NOTICE

If the icy road warning light appears whilst driving, you should drive more attentively and safely refraining from over-speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden braking or sharp turning, etc.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:01 PM Page 92

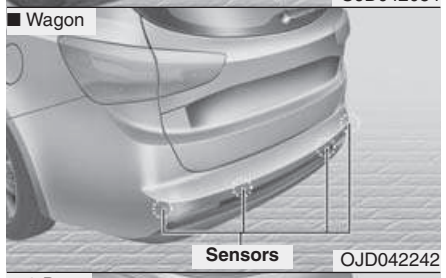
REAR PARKING ASSIST SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ 5 Door



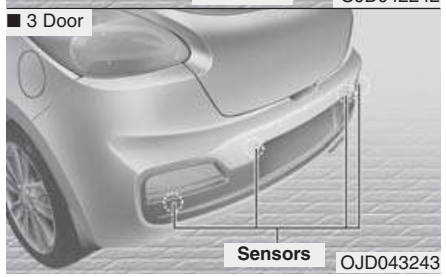
OJD042084

■ Wagon



OJD042242

■ 3 Door



OJD043243

The rear parking assist system assists the driver during backward movement of the vehicle by chiming if any object is sensed within a distance of 120 cm (47 in.) behind the vehicle. This system is a supplemental system and it is not intended to nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver.

The sensing range and objects detectable by the back sensors are limited. Whenever backing-up, pay as much attention to what is behind you as you would in a vehicle without a rear parking assist system.

⚠ WARNING

The rear parking assist system is a supplementary function only. The operation of the rear parking assist system can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the area behind the vehicle before and whilst backing up.



OJD042080R

Operation of the rear parking assist system

Operating condition

- This system will activate when the indicator on the rear parking assist OFF button is not illuminated.

  If you desire to deactivate the rear parking assist system, press the rear parking assist OFF button again. (The indicator on the button will illuminate.) To turn the system on, press the button again. (The indicator on the button will go off.)
- This system will activate when backing up with the ignition switch ON.

  If the vehicle is moving at a speed over 5 km/h (3 mph), the system may not be activated correctly.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:01 PM Page 93

- The sensing distance whilst the rear parking assist system is in operation is approximately 120 cm (47 in.).
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be recognized first.

Types of warning sound

- When an object is 120 cm to 61 cm (47 in. to 23.6 in.) from the rear bumper: Buzzer beeps intermittently
- When an object is 60 cm to 31 cm (23.6 in. to 12.2 in.) from the rear bumper: Buzzer beeps more frequently
- When an object is within 30 cm (11.8 in.) of the rear bumper:
  Buzzer sounds continuously.

Type of the warning indicator (if equipped)

Distance from object	Warning indicator
61cm ~ 120 cm (24 in. ~ 47 in.)	 *1
31cm ~ 60 cm (12.2 in. ~ 23.6 in.)	 *1
Less than 30 cm (11.8 in.)	 *1

*1: It indicates the range of sensed object by each sensor. (Left, Centre, Right)

✻ In case the object is between or close to the sensors, the indicator could be different.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:01 PM Page 94

Non-operational conditions of rear parking assist system

The rear parking assist system may not operate properly when:

1. Moisture is frozen to the sensor. (It will operate normally when the moisture has been cleared.)
2. The sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked. (It will operate normally when the material is removed or the sensor is no longer blocked.)
3. Driving on uneven road surfaces (unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, gradient).
4. Objects generating excessive noise (vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes) are within range of the sensor.
5. Heavy rain or water spray exists.
6. Wireless transmitters or mobile phones are within range of the sensor.
7. Trailer towing.

The detecting range may decrease when:

1. The sensor is stained with foreign matter such as snow or water. (The sensing range will return to normal when removed.)
2. Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.

The following objects may not be recognized by the sensor:

1. Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
2. Objects which tend to absorb the sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material or snow.
3. Undetectable objects smaller than 1 m (40 in.) and narrower than 14 cm (6 in.) in diameter.

Rear parking assist system precautions

- The rear parking assist system may not sound sequentially depending on the speed and shapes of the objects detected.
- The rear parking assist system may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified or damaged. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
- The sensor may not recognize objects less than 30 cm (11.8 in.) from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use caution.
- When the sensor is frozen or stained with snow, dirt, or water, the sensor may be inoperative until the stains are removed using a soft cloth.
- Do not push, scratch or strike the sensor. Sensor damage could occur.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:01 PM Page 95

✻ NOTICE

This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors; it can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, such as poles or objects located between sensors may not be detected by the sensors.
Always visually check behind the vehicle when backing up.
Be sure to inform any drivers of the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.

⚠ WARNING

Pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects on the road, particularly pedestrians, and especially children. Be aware that some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the object's distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction.

Self-diagnosis

When you shift the gear to the R (Reverse) position and if one or more of the below occurs you may have a malfunction in the rear parking assist system.

- You don't hear an audible warning sound or if the buzzer sounds intermittently.
-  (blinks) is displayed. (if equipped)

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants due to a rear parking assist system malfunction. Always drive safely and cautiously.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:01 PM Page 96

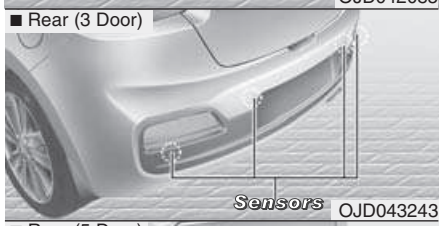
PARKING ASSIST SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Front



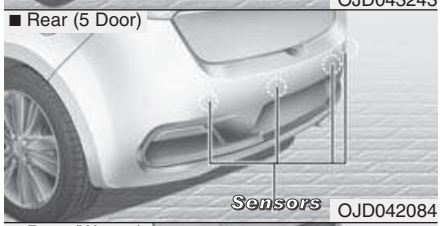
OJD042085

■ Rear (3 Door)



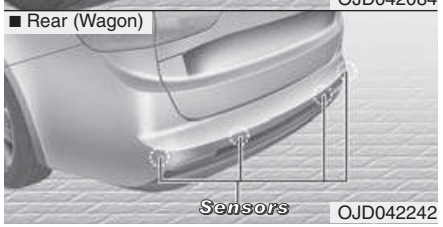
OJD043243

■ Rear (5 Door)



OJD042084

■ Rear (Wagon)



OJD042242

The parking assist system assists the driver during movement of the vehicle by chiming or displaying the area an obstacle is detected on the instrument cluster if any object is sensed within the distance of 100 cm (39.4 in.) in front and 120 cm (47 in.) behind the vehicle.

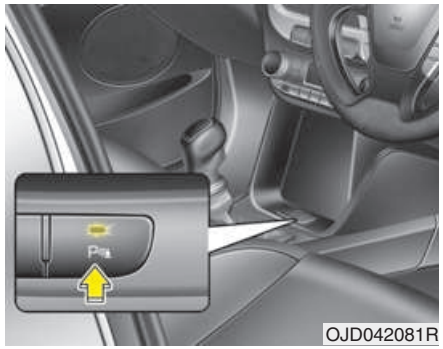
This system is a supplemental system and it is not intended to nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver.

The sensing range and objects detectable by the sensors are limited.

Whenever moving pay as much attention to what is in front and behind of you as you would in a vehicle without a parking assist system.

⚠ WARNING

The parking assist system should only be considered as a supplementary function. The driver must check the front and rear view. The operational function of the parking assist system can be affected by many factors and conditions of the surroundings, so the responsibility rests always with the driver.



OJD042081R

Operation of the parking assist system

Operating condition

- This system activates when the parking assist system button is pressed with the ignition switch ON.

  Type A

  The indicator of the parking assist system button turns on automatically and activates the parking assist system when you shift the gear to the R(Reverse) position or press the SPAS button. It will turn off automatically when you drive above 40 km/h(24.8 mph) except in the case when the parking assist system button is pressed with the ignition switch ON.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:01 PM Page 97

Type B

The indicator of the parking assist system button turns on automatically and activates the parking assist system when you shift the gear to the R(Reverse) position or press the SPAS button. It will turn off automatically when you drive above 40 km/h(24.8 mph).

- If the vehicle speed is above 10km/h (6.2 mph), the parking assist system will not operate.
- The sensing distance whilst moving forward is approximately 100 cm (39.4 in.) when you are driving less than 10 km/h (6.2 mph).
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be recognized first.

✻ NOTICE

It may not operate if it's distance from the object is already less than approximately 25 cm when the system is ON.

Type of warning indicator and sound

■ : with Warning sound

Distance from object		Warning indicator		Warning sound
		When driving forward	When driving rearward	
100cm~61cm	Front		-	Buzzer beeps intermittently
120cm~61cm	Rear	-		Buzzer beeps intermittently
60cm~31cm	Front			Buzzer beeps frequently
	Rear	-		Buzzer beeps frequently
30cm	Front			Buzzer sounds continuously
	Rear	-		Buzzer sounds continuously

✻ NOTICE

- **The actual warning sound and indicator may differ from the illustration according to objects or sensor status.**
- **Do not wash the vehicle's sensor with high pressure water.**

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:01 PM Page 98

⚠ CAUTION

- ***This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors;***

  It can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, such as poles or objects located between sensors may not be detected by the sensors.

  Always visually check behind the vehicle when backing up.
- ***Be sure to inform any drivers of the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.***

Non-operational conditions of parking assist system

Parking assist system may not operate normally when:

1. Moisture is frozen to the sensor. (It will operate normally when moisture melts.)
2. Sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked. (It will operate normally when the material is removed or the sensor is no longer blocked.)
3. Sensor is stained with foreign matter such as snow or water. (Sensing range will return to normal when removed.)
4. The parking assist button is off.

There is a possibility of parking assist system malfunction when:

1. Driving on uneven road surfaces such as unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, or gradient.
2. Objects generating excessive noise such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes can interfere with the sensor.
3. Heavy rain or water spray.
4. Wireless transmitters or mobile phones present near the sensor.
5. Sensor is covered with snow.

Detecting range may decrease when:

1. Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.
2. Undetectable objects smaller than 1 m and narrower than 14 cm in diameter.

The following objects may not be recognized by the sensor:

1. Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
2. Objects, which tend to absorb sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material or snow.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:01 PM Page 99

✻ NOTICE

1. The warning may not sound sequentially depending on the speed and shapes of the objects detected.
2. The parking assist system may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
3. Sensor may not recognize objects less than 30 cm from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use with caution.
4. When the sensor is frozen or stained with snow or water, the sensor may be inoperative until the stains are removed using a soft cloth.
5. Do not push, scratch or strike the sensor with any hard objects that could damage the surface of the sensor. Sensor damage could occur.

✻ NOTICE

This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors, it can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, or objects located between sensors may not be detected.
Always visually check in front and behind the vehicle when driving.
Be sure to inform any drivers in the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.

⚠ WARNING

Pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects on the road, particularly pedestrians, and especially children. Be aware that some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction.

Self-diagnosis

When you shift the gear to the R (Reverse) position and if one or more of the below occurs you may have a malfunction in the parking assist system.

- You don't hear an audible warning sound or if the buzzer sounds intermittently.
-  (blinks) is displayed. (if equipped)

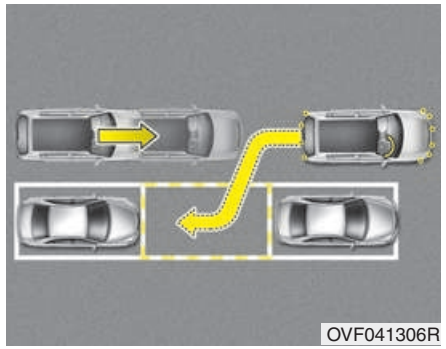
If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants related to a parking assist system. Always drive safely and cautiously.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:01 PM Page 100

SMART PARKING ASSIST SYSTEM (SPAS) (IF EQUIPPED)


OVF041306R

The Smart Parking Assist System helps drivers park their vehicle by using sensors to measure parallel parking spaces, control the steering wheel to semi-automatically park the car and provide instruction on the LCD display to help through parking.

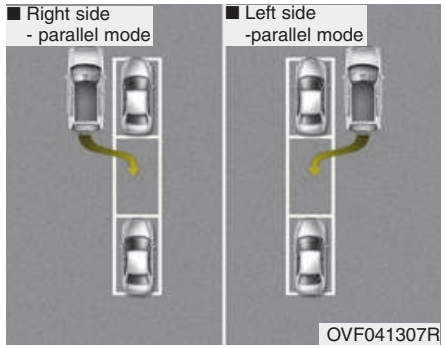
✻ NOTICE

- The vehicle will not stop for pedestrians or objects that may be in its path, so the driver must monitor the manoeuvre.
- Use the system only in parking lots and places used for parking.
- The system does not work if there is no car parked in front of the parking space you are planning to park or if it is a diagonal parking space.
- After parking your vehicle using the system, the vehicle may not be parked at the exact spot you have wished. For example, the space between your vehicle and wall may not be the distance you have desired.
- Deactivate the system and park your vehicle manually, when the situation requires parking manually.
- The Parking Assist System's front and rear warning sound activates when the Smart Parking Assist System is activated.
- After searching for a parking space is completed, the Smart Parking Assist System will be canceled if the Parking Assist System is cancelled by pressing the button to the OFF position.

⚠ WARNING

- **The Smart Parking Assist System should only be considered as a supplementary function. The driver must check the front and rear view for objects. The operational function of the Smart Parking Assist System can be affected by many factors and conditions of the surroundings, so the responsibility rests always with the driver.**
- **The system may not operate normally if the vehicle needs wheel alignment adjustment. Have the vehicle checked by an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **If you use a different tyre or wheel size rather than the size recommended by the Kia dealer, the system may not work properly. Always use the same size tyre and wheel.**
- **If you use additional frame on license plate then SPAS may generate abnormal warning sound.**

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:01 PM Page 101



Operating condition

The system will help park the vehicle in the middle or back of a parked vehicle. Use the system when all the below conditions are met.

- When the parking space is a straight line
- When parallel parking is required
- When there is a parked vehicle
- When there is enough space to move the vehicle

Non-operating condition

Never use the Smart Parking Assist System in the below conditions.

- Curved parking space
- Inclined roads
- A vehicle loaded with longer or wider cargo compared to the vehicle
- Diagonal parking space
- Parking space with trash, grass or barriers
- Heavy snow or rain
- A pole close to the parking line
- Bumpy roads
- A vehicle equipped with a snow chain or spare tyre
- Tyre pressure lower or higher than the standard tyre pressure
- A trailer connected to the vehicle
- Slippery or uneven road
- Big vehicles such as buses or trucks parked
- Sensor covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water
- Moisture frozen on the sensor.
- A motorcycle or bicycle parked
- A trash can or obstacle near
- Heavy wind
- Wheel changed to an unauthorised size
- A problem with the wheel alignment
- Next to a garden or bush
- A accessory installed on the detective area the of sensors (such as number plate holder)
- Vehicle leaned severely to one side
- Strong sunlight or very cold weather
- Ultrasonic interference other vehicle's. Such as horn sounds of other vehicles, motorcycle's engine noise, air brake noise of heavy vehicles and with the other vehicle's parking assist system working.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:01 PM Page 102

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the Smart Parking Assist System in the following conditions for unexpected results may occur and cause a serious accident.

1. Parking on inclines



The driver must apply the accelerator and brake pedal when parking on inclines. If the driver is unfamiliar with applying the accelerator and brake pedal, a car accident may occur.

(Continued)

(Continued)

2. Parking in snow

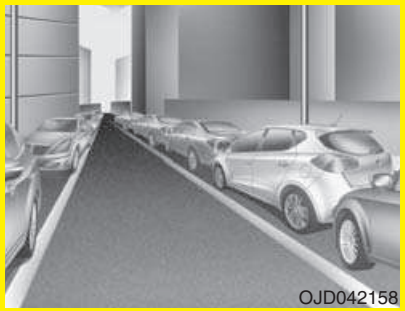


Snow may interfere with sensor operation or the system may cancel if the road is slippery whilst parking. Also, if the driver is unfamiliar with applying the accelerator and brake pedal, a car accident may occur.

(Continued)

(Continued)

3. Parking in narrow space



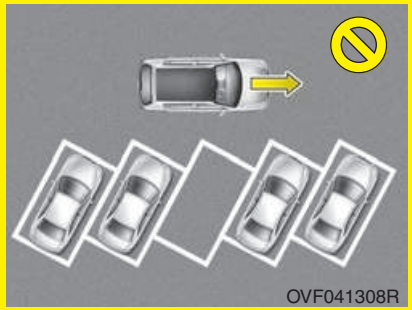
The system may not search for parking spaces if the space is too narrow. Even if it operates always be careful.

(Continued)

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:01 PM Page 103

(Continued)

4. Parking diagonal



The system is a supplemental for parallel parking. Diagonal line parking is not available. Even if the vehicle is able to enter the space, do not operate the Smart Parking Assist System. The system will attempt parallel parking.

(Continued)

(Continued)

5. Parking in uneven road



Parking in uneven roads, the driver needs to properly apply the pedal (clutch, accelerator or brake). If not, the system may cancel when the vehicle slips or an accident may occur.

(Continued)

(Continued)

6. Parking behind a truck

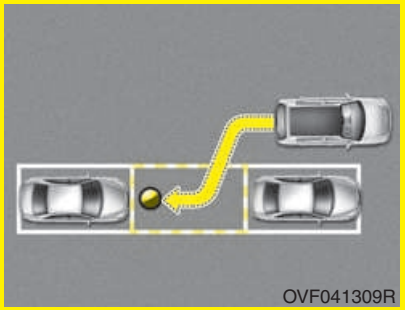


An accident may occur when parking behind a vehicle higher than yours. For example, bus, truck, etc.

(Continued)

(Continued)

7. Obstacle in parking space



OVF041309R

The system may search for a parking space even though an obstacle is in the parking space. An accident may occur if you continue to park the vehicle with the system.

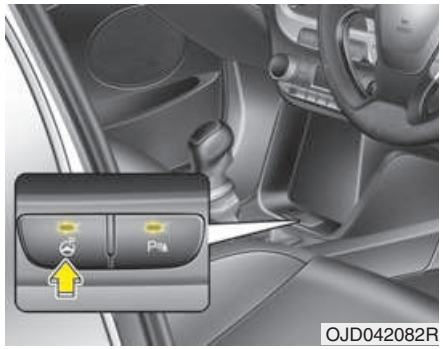
Do not solely rely on the Smart Parking Assist System.

How the system works

1. Activate the Smart Parking Assist System
2. Select parking assist mode
3. Search for parking space (slowly move forward.)
4. Search complete (automatic search by sensor.)
5. Steering wheel control
   (1) Shift according to the instruction on the LCD display.
   (2) Drive slowly with the brake pedal applied.
6. Smart Parking Assist System complete
7. If necessary, manually adjust position of vehicle.

✻ NOTICE

- **Before activating the system check if the conditions are possible to use the system.**
- **For your safety, always apply the brake pedal except for when driving.**



OJD042082R

1. Activate Smart Parking Assist System

- Press the Smart Parking Assist System button (the button indicator will illuminate).
- The Parking Assist System will be activated (the button indicator will illuminate).

  A warning sound will be heard if an obstacle is detected.
- Press the Smart Parking Assist System button again for more than 2 seconds to turn off the system.
- The Smart Parking Assist System defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:01 PM Page 105

■ Right side
- parallel mode

■ Left side
-parallel mode



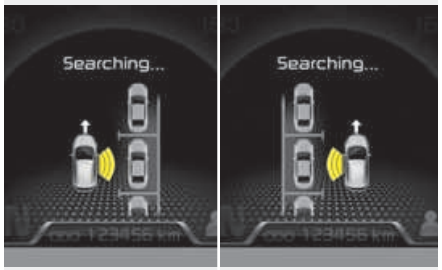
OJD042219/OJD042216

2. Select parking assist mode

- Select the parking assist mode by pressing the Smart Parking Assist System button with the shift lever in N (Neutral) or D(Drive) and the brake pedal depressed.
- The right side parallel mode is selected automatically when the Smart Parking Assist System is activated.
- To select the left side parallel mode press the Smart Parking Assist System button once more.
- If the button is pressed again, the system will turn off.

■ Right side
- parallel mode

■ Left side
-parallel mode



OJD042220/OJD042217

3. Search for parking space

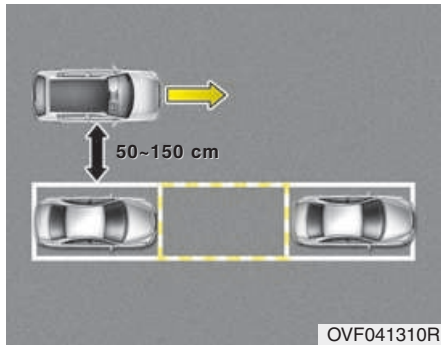
- Slowly drive forward maintaining the distance of approximately 50cm ~ 150cm (19.6in.~59.0in.) with the parked vehicles. The side sensors will search for a parking space.
- If the vehicle speed is over 30km/h (18.6mph), a message will appear to notify to reduce speed.
- If the vehicle speed is over 40km/h (24.8mph), the system will cancel.

✻ NOTICE

- **Turn on the hazard warning flasher if it is crowded with other vehicles.**
- **If the parking lot is small, slowly drive more nearer to the parking space.**
- **The search for a parking space will be completed only when there is enough space for the vehicle to move to park.**

✻ NOTICE

- **When searching for a parking space, the system may not be able to find a parking space if there is no vehicle parked, a parking space is available after driving by or a parking space is available before driving by.**
- **The system may not operate normally in the following conditions:**
  (1) When the sensors are frozen
  (2) When the sensors are dirty
  (3) When it snows or rains heavily
  (4) When a pillar or object is near



OVF041310R

✻ NOTICE

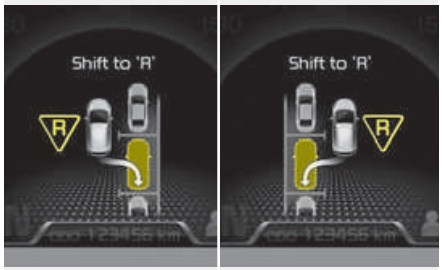
Slowly drive forward maintaining the distance of approximately 50cm ~ 150cm (19.6in.~59.0in.) with the parked vehicles. If not within the distance, the system may not be able to search for a parking space.

⚠ CAUTION

After searching for a parking space is completed, continue using the system after checking the surrounding area.

■ Right side
- parallel mode

■ Left side
-parallel mode



OJD042221/OJD042218

4. Search complete

Whilst driving forward to search for a parking space, the above message will appear with a beep sound if the search is complete. Stop the vehicle and shift to the R (Reverse) position.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Always drive slowly with the brake pedal applied.***
- ***If the parking space is to small the system may be cancelled at the Steering wheel control stage. Do not park your vehicle if the space is too small.***



OJD042222

5. Steering wheel control

- The above message will appear if the shift lever is in R (Reverse). The steering wheel will be controlled automatically.
- The system will be cancelled if you firmly hold the steering wheel whilst it is controlled automatically.
- The system will be cancelled if vehicle speed is over 7km/h(4.3mph).

⚠ WARNING

Do not put your hands between the steering wheel whilst it is being automatically controlled.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:02 PM Page 107

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Always drive slowly with the brake pedal applied.***
- ***Always check for objects around your vehicle before driving.***
- ***If the vehicle does not move even though the brake pedal is not depressed, check the surrounding before depressing the accelerator pedal. Be sure not to speed over 7km/h(4.3mph).***

✻ NOTICE

- **If you do not follow the instructions provided, you may fail to park your vehicle.**
  However, if the Parking Assist System warning sound (distance from object is within 30cm: continuous beep) occurs, slowly drive the vehicle to the reverse direction of the detected object after checking the surrounding.
- **Always check the surrounding before driving your vehicle if the Parking Assist System warning sound (distance from object is within 30cm: continuous beep) is heard for the object is close to your vehicle.**

To cancel the system whilst parking

Press the Smart Parking Assist System button or turn the steering wheel to the left or right.

■ Manual transaxle



■ Automatic transaxle



OJD042224/OJD042225/OJD042223/OJD042225

Gear shift whilst steering wheel control

When the above message appears with a beep sound, shift the gear and drive the vehicle with the brake pedal depressed.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:02 PM Page 108

⚠ CAUTION

Always check the surrounding before releasing the brake pedal.

⚠ WARNING

Always be careful whilst parking for other vehicles or pedestrians.



6. Smart Parking Assist System completed

Complete parking your vehicle according to the instructions on the LCD display. If required, manually control the steering wheel and complete parking your vehicle.

✻ NOTICE

The brake pedal must be depressed by the driver whilst parking your vehicle.

The system may be cancelled in the below conditions:

- Ignoring the gear shift message and drive the vehicle approximately 150cm (59in).
- The front and rear Parking Assist System warning sound (distance from object is within 30cm: continuous beep) is heard at the same time.
- 6 minutes have passed since the vehicle has been controlled by the Smart Parking Assist System.
- The shift lever is changed to the P (Park) or R (Reverse) position whilst searching for parking space.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:02 PM Page 109



OJD042227/OJD042229

Additional instructions(messages)

When the Smart Parking Assist System is operating, a message may appear regardless of the parking order.

The messages will appear according to the circumstances. Follow the instructions provided whilst parking your vehicle with the Smart Parking Assist System.

✻ NOTICE

- **In the below conditions the system will be cancelled. Park your vehicle manually.**

1. Search for parking space
- **When the ABS/ESC is activated**
- **When the vehicle speed is over 40km/h (24.8mph)**
- **When you press the Smart Parking Assist System button (the front and rear Parking Assist System operates)**
- **When you shift the shift lever to R (Reverse)**

2. Steering wheel control
- **When the ABS/ESC is activated**
- **When the vehicle speed is over 7km/h (4.3 mph)**
- **When you press the Smart Parking Assist System button (the front and rear Parking Assist System operates)**
- **When you shift the shift lever to D (Drive) before entering the parking space**
- **When you hold the steering wheel firmly**



OJD042228

System malfunction

- If there is a problem with the system, when the system is turned on, the above message will appear. Also, the indicator on the button will not light up and a beep sound will be heard 3 times.
- If there is a problem with only the Smart Parking Assist System, the Parking Assist System will operate after 2 seconds.

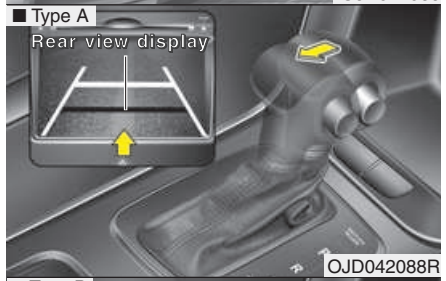
  If you notice any problem, have your vehicle checked by an authorised Kia dealer as soon as possible.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:02 PM Page 110

REARVIEW CAMERA (IF EQUIPPED)


OJD042086

■ Type A



OJD042088R

■ Type B



OJD043088R

❈ The actual rear view in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

The rearview camera will activate when the back-up light is ON with the ignition switch ON and the shift lever in the R (Reverse) position.

This system is a supplemental system that shows behind the vehicle through the navigation monitor or the rearview display mirror whilst backing-up.

⚠ WARNING

- **This system is a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the inside/outside rearview mirror and the area behind the vehicle before and whilst backing up because there is a dead zone that can't see through the camera.**
- **Always keep the camera lens clean. If lens is covered with foreign matter, the camera may not operate normally.**

❈ For more detailed informations, refer to supplement for navigation system.

HAZARD WARNING FLASHER


OJD042089R

The hazard warning flasher should be used whenever you find it necessary to stop the vehicle in a hazardous location. When you must make such an emergency stop, always pull off the road as far as possible.

The hazard warning lights are turned on by pushing in the hazard switch. Both turn signal lights will blink. The hazard warning lights will operate even though the key is not in the ignition switch.

To turn the hazard warning lights off, push the switch again.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:02 PM Page 111

LIGHTING

Battery saver function

- The purpose of this feature is to prevent the battery from being discharged. The system automatically turns off the parking lights when the driver removes the ignition key (Smart key : turns off the engine) and opens the driver- side door.
- With this feature, the parking lights will be turned off automatically if the driver parks on the side of road at night.

  If necessary, to keep the lights on when the ignition key is removed, perform the following :

  1) Open the driver-side door.
  2) Turn the parking lights OFF and ON again using the light switch on the steering column.

Headlamp delay function (if equipped)

The headlamps (and/or taillights) remain on for same minutes (Type A: 20 minutes, Type B: 5 minutes) after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlights are turned off after 15 seconds.

The headlights can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the transmitter or smart key twice or turning off the light switch from the headlight or Auto light position.

You can activate or deactivate the headlamp delay fuction. Refer to "User setting" in this section.

⚠ CAUTION

If the driver gets out of the vehicle through other doors (except driver's door), the battery saver function does not operate and the headlamp delay function does not turn off automatically. Therefore, it causes the battery to be discharged. In this case, make sure to turn off the lamp before getting out of the vehicle.

Headlight (Headlamp) welcome function (if equipped)

When the headlight switch is in the ON or AUTO position and all doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, if you press the door unlock button on the transmitter or smart key, the headlights will come on for about 15 seconds.

If the headlight switch is in the AUTO position, the function can only operate at night.

At this time, if you press the door unlock button again or door lock button on the transmitter or smart key, the headlights will turn off immediately.

You can activate or deactivate the headlamp welcome fuction. Refer to "User setting" in this section.

✻ NOTICE

There can be turned on front fog light and the fail light when you turn on the headlight switch ON. In this case we recommend that you the system checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:02 PM Page 112

Static bending light (if equipped)

Whilst driving the corner, for your sight and safety, the static bending light turns on automatically. The system will operate automatically as follows:

- When vehicle speed is under 10km/h and steering wheel angle approximately 80 degrees.
- When vehicle speed is over 10km/h and steering wheel angle approximately 35 degrees.
- When the vehicle is at a standstill.
- When moving rearwards with one of the above conditions satisfied the lights will light up the opposite direction.



OED040045

Lighting control

The light switch has a Headlight and a Parking light position.

To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:

(1) OFF position
(2) Position light position
(3) Headlight position
(4) Auto light position (if equipped)



OED040046

Position light position ( )

When the light switch is in the position light position, the tail, position, license and instrument panel lights are ON.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:02 PM Page 113



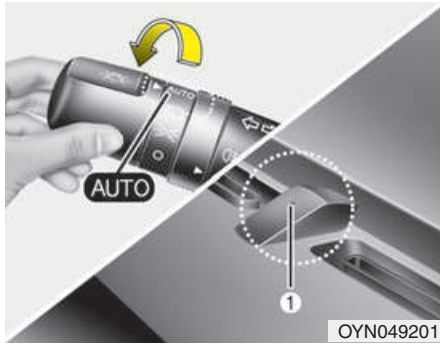
OED040800

Headlight position ( )

When the light switch is in the headlight position the head, tail, position, license and instrument panel lights are ON.

✻ NOTICE

The ignition switch must be in the ON position to turn on the headlights.



OYN049201

Auto light/AFLS position (if equipped)

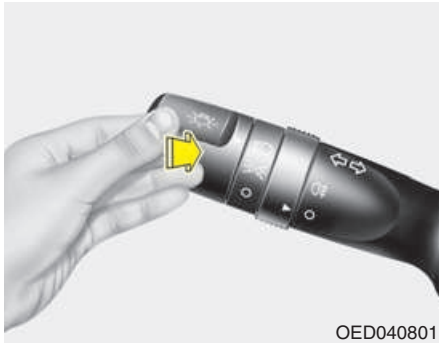
When the light switch is in the AUTO light position, the taillights and headlights will be turned ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of light outside the vehicle.

If your vehicle is equipped with the adaptive front lighting system (AFLS), it will also operate when the headlamp is ON.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Never place anything over the sensor (1) located on the instrument panel, this will ensure better auto-light system control.***
- ***Don't clean the sensor using a window cleaner, the cleaner may leave a light film which could interfere with sensor operation.***
- ***If your vehicle has window tint or other types of coating on the front windscreen, the Auto light system may not work properly.***

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:02 PM Page 114



OED040801

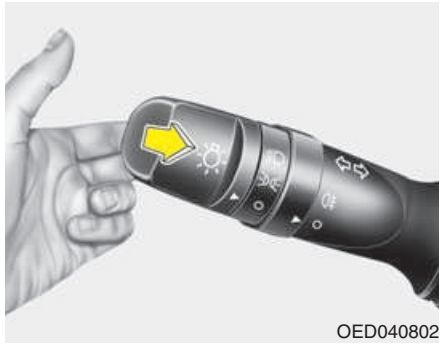
High - beam operation

1. Turn the light switch to the headlight position.
2. Push the lever away from you.

- The high-beam indicator will light when the headlight high beams are switched on.
- To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the lights on for a prolonged time whilst the engine is not running.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use high beam when there are other vehicles. Using high beam could obstruct the other driver's vision.

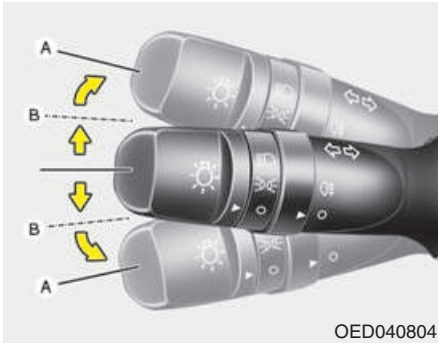


OED040802

Flashing headlights

Pull the lever towards you. It will return to the normal position when released. The headlight switch does not need to be on to use this flashing feature.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:02 PM Page 115



OED040804

Turn signals and lane change signals

The ignition switch must be on for the turn signals to function. To turn on the turn signals, move the lever up or down (A). Green arrow indicators on the instrument panel indicate which turn signal is operating.

They will self-cancel after a turn is completed. If the indicator continues to flash after a turn, manually return the lever to the OFF position.

To signal a lane change, move the turn signal lever slightly and hold it in position (B). The lever will return to the OFF position when released.

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and will require replacement.

One-touch lane change function (if equipped)

To activate an one-touch lane change function, move the turn signal lever slightly and then release it. The lane change signals will blink 3 times.

You can inactivate one-touch lane change function in “Auto triple turn” of “User setting”. Refer to “User setting” in chapter 4.

✻ NOTICE

If an indicator flash is abnormally quick or slow, bulb may be burned out or have a poor electrical connection in the circuit.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:02 PM Page 116



OYN049200

Front fog light (if equipped)

Fog lights are used to provide improved visibility when visibility is poor due to fog, rain or snow, etc. The fog lights will turn on when the fog light switch (1) is turned on after the position light is turned on.

To turn off the fog lights, turn the fog light switch (1) to the O (Off) position.

⚠ CAUTION

When in operation, the fog lights consume large amounts of vehicle electrical power. Only use the fog lights when visibility is poor.

■ Type A



OED040806

■ Type B



OAM049046L

Rear fog light

To turn the rear fog lights on, turn the rear fog light switch (1) to the on position when the headlight is turned on.

Also, the rear fog lights turn on when the rear fog light switch is turned on after the front fog light switch (if equipped) is turned on and the headlight switch is in the position light position.

To turn the rear fog lights off, turn the rear fog light switch to the on position again.

Rear fog light is located only on the driver's side (for wagon).

Daytime running light (if equipped)

Daytime Running Lights (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, and it is especially helpful after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system will turn off when:

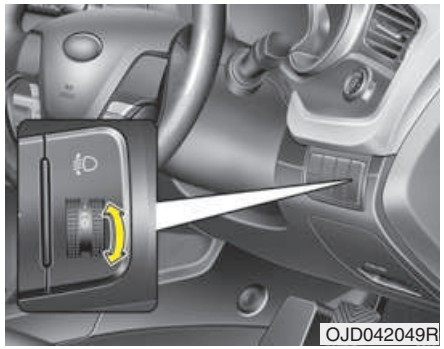
Type A

- When headlight (Low beam) switch is ON, DRL-LED system will be illuminating with lower intensity
- The front fog light switch is ON.
- The engine is OFF.

Type B

- The headlight (low beam) switch is ON.
- The front fog light switch is ON.
- The engine is OFF.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:02 PM Page 117



Headlight levelling device (if equipped)

Manual type

To adjust the headlight beam level according to the number of the passengers and the loading weight in the luggage area, turn the beam levelling switch.

The higher the number of the switch is positioned, the lower the headlight beam level. Always keep the headlight beam at the proper levelling position, or headlights may dazzle other road users.

Listed below are the examples of proper switch settings. For loading conditions other than those listed below, adjust the switch position so that the beam level may be the nearest as the condition obtained according to the list.

Loading condition	Switch position
Driver only	0
Driver + Front passenger	0
Full passengers (including driver)	1
Full passengers (including driver) + Maximum permissible loading	2
Driver + Maximum permissible loading	3

Automatic type

It automatically adjusts the headlight beam level according to the number of passengers and loading weight in the luggage area.

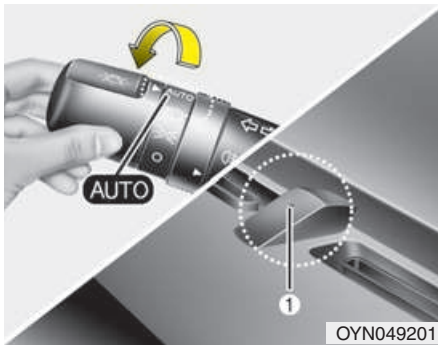
And it offers proper headlight beam under various conditions.

⚠ WARNING

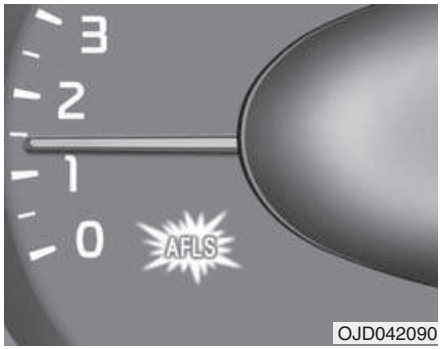
If it does not work properly even though your car is inclined backward according to passenger's posture, or the headlight beam is irradiated to the high or low position, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

Do not attempt to inspect or replace the wiring yourself.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:02 PM Page 118



OYN049201



OJD042090

Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFLS) (if equipped)

Adaptive front lighting system uses the steering angle and vehicle speed, to keep your field of vision wide by swiveling and levelling the headlamp.

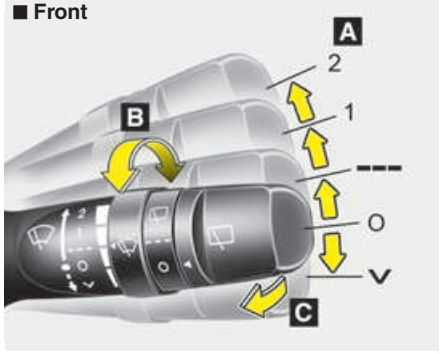
Change the switch to the AUTO position when the engine is running. The adaptive front lighting system will operate when the headlamp is ON. To turn off the AFLS, change the switch to other positions. After turning the AFLS off, headlamp swiveling no longer occurs, but levelling operates continuously.

If the AFLS malfunction indicator comes on, the AFLS is not working properly. Drive to the nearest safe location and restart the engine. If the indicator continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

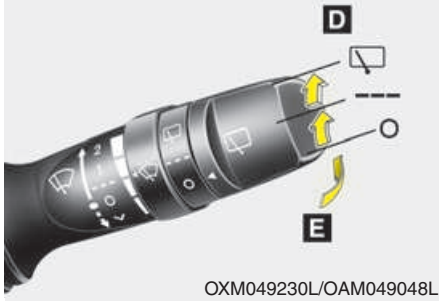
JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:02 PM Page 119

WIPERS AND WASHERS

■ Front



■ Rear



OXM049230L/OAM049048L

A : Wiper speed control (front)
- 2 – High wiper speed
- 1 – Low wiper speed
- --- – Intermittent wipe
- AUTO* – Automatic control wipe
- O – Off
- ∨ – Single wipe

B : Intermittent control wipe time adjustment

C : Wash with brief wipes (front)*

D : Rear wiper/washer control*
- – Continuous wipe
- --- – Intermittent wipe
- O – Off

E : Wash with brief wipes (rear)*

* : if equipped

Windscreen wipers (front)

Operates as follows when the ignition switch is turned ON.

∨ : For a single wiping cycle, move the lever to this position and release it. The wipers will operate continuously if the lever is held in this position.

O : Wiper is not in operation

--- : Wiper operates intermittently at the same wiping intervals. Use this mode in light rain or mist. To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob.

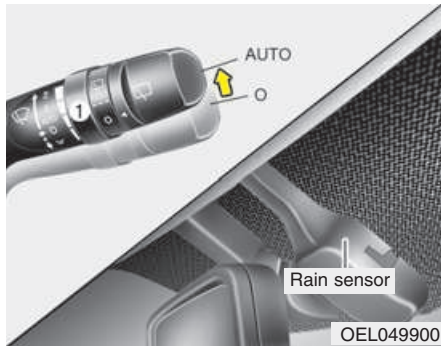
1 : Normal wiper speed

2 : Fast wiper speed

✻ NOTICE

If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windscreen, defrost the windscreen for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windscreen wipers to ensure proper operation. If you do not remove the snow and/or ice before using the wiper and washer, it may damage the Wiper and washer system.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:02 PM Page 120



AUTO (Automatic) control (if equipped)

The rain sensor located on the upper end of the windscreen glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval. The more it rains, the faster the wiper operates. When the rain stops, the wiper stops.

To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob (1).

If the wiper switch is set in AUTO mode when the ignition switch is ON, the wiper will operate once to perform a self-check of the system. Set the wiper to off position when the wiper is not in use.

⚠ CAUTION

When the ignition switch is ON and the windscreen wiper switch is placed in the AUTO mode, use caution in the following situations to avoid any injury to the hands or other parts of the body:

- ***Do not touch the upper end of the windscreen glass facing the rain sensor.***
- ***Do not wipe the upper end of the windscreen glass with a damp or wet cloth.***
- ***Do not put pressure on the windscreen glass.***

⚠ CAUTION

When washing the vehicle, set the wiper switch in the off position to stop the auto wiper operation.

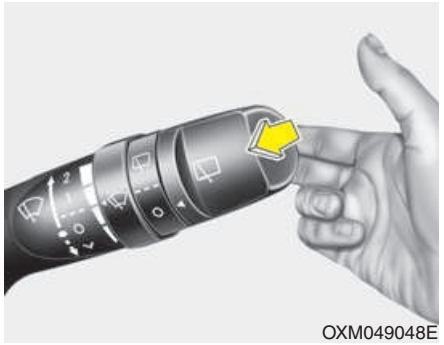
The wiper may operate and be damaged if the switch is set in the AUTO mode whilst washing the vehicle.

Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the driver side windscreen glass.

Damage to system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

When starting the vehicle in winter, set the wiper switch in the off position. Otherwise, wipers may operate and ice may damage the windscreen wiper blades. Always remove all snow and ice and defrost the windscreen properly prior to operating the windscreen wipers.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:03 PM Page 121



OXM049048E

Windscreen washers (front) (if equipped)

In the O (Off) position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windscreen and to run the wipers 1-3 cycles.

Use this function when the windscreen is dirty.

The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

If the washer does not work, check the washer fluid level. If the fluid level is not sufficient, you will need to add appropriate non-abrasive windscreen washer fluid to the washer reservoir.

The reservoir filler neck is located in the front of the engine compartment on the driver side.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent possible damage to the washer pump, do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the washer in freezing temperatures without first warming the windscreen with the defrosters; the washer solution could freeze on the windscreen and obscure your vision.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***To prevent possible damage to the wipers or windscreen, do not operate the wipers when the windscreen is dry.***
- ***To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use petrol, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.***
- ***To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.***

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:03 PM Page 122

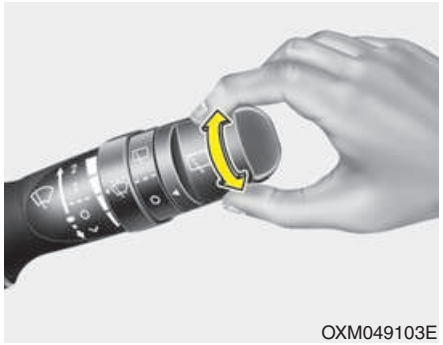
Headlight washer (if equipped)

If your vehicle is equipped with the headlight washer it will operate at the same time when you operate the windscreen washer. It will operate when the headlight switch is in the first or second position and the ignition switch or engine start/stop button is in the ON position.

The washer fluid will be sprayed on to the headlights.

✻ NOTICE

Check the headlight washers periodically to confirm that the washer fluid is being sprayed properly onto the headlight lenses.

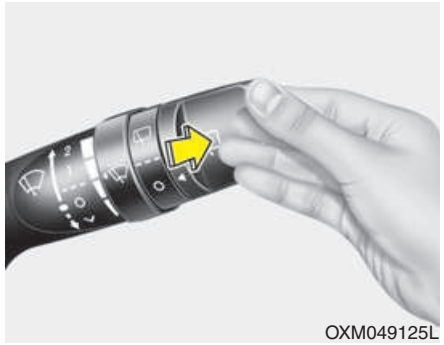


OXM049103E

Rear window wiper and washer switch (if equipped)

The rear window wiper and washer switch is located at the end of the wiper and washer switch lever. Turn the switch to desired position to operate the rear wiper and washer.

- - Normal wiper operation
- --- - Intermittent wipe
- O - Wiper is not in operation



OXM049125L

Push the lever away from you to spray rear washer fluid and to run the rear wipers 1~3 cycles. The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:03 PM Page 123

INTERIOR LIGHT

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the engine is not running.

It may cause battery discharge.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. Accidents could happen because the view may be obscured by interior lights.

Interior lamp AUTO cut

- When all entrances are closed, if you lock the vehicle by using the transmitter or the smart key, all interior lamp will be off after a few seconds.
- If you do not operate anything in the vehicle after turning off the engine, the lights will turn off after 20 minutes.

■ Type A



OGD041104

■ Type B



OJD042091

Map lamp

Press the lens (1) to turn the map lamp on or off

- /OFF (2) : The lamps are off even if a door is opened.
- /DOOR (3) :
  - The map lamp comes on when a door is opened. If you close the door, the lamps go out after approximately 30 seconds.
  - The map lamp comes on for approximately 30 seconds when doors are unlocked with a transmitter or smart key as long as the doors are not opened.
  - The map lamp will stay on for approximately 20 minutes if a door is opened with the ignition switch in the ACC or LOCK/OFF position.
  - The map lamp will stay on continuously if the door is opened with the ignition switch in the ON position.
  - The map lamp will go out immediately if the ignition switch is changed to the ON position or all doors are locked.
- /ON (4) : The map lamp stays on at all times.

✻ NOTICE

When the lamp is turned on by pressing the lens (1), the lamp does not turn off even if the switch is in the OFF position (2).

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:03 PM Page 124

■ Type A



OGDE041216

■ Type B



OGD041151

Room lamp

Type A

Press the button to turn the light on or off.

If the map lamp turns on by the map lamp switch, the room lamp will turn on.

Type B

Press the switch to turn on the room lamp.

Press the switch O to turn off the room lamp.



OLM049105/H

Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)

Push the switch to turn the light on or off.

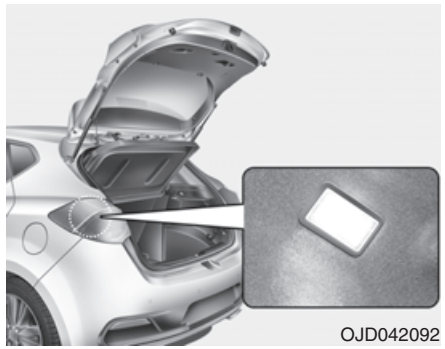
- : The lamp will turn on if this button is pressed.
- ◯ : The lamp will turn off if this button is pressed.

⚠ CAUTION

- Vanity mirror lamp

Always have the switch in the off position when the vanity mirror lamp is not in use. If the sunvisor is closed without the lamp off, it may discharge the battery or damage the sunvisor.

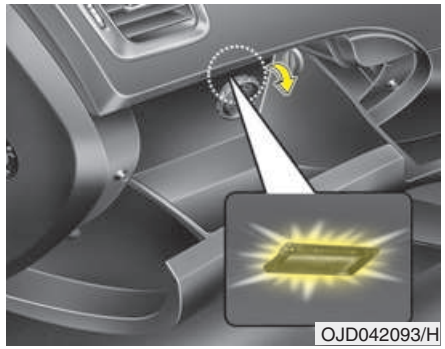
JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:03 PM Page 125



❈ The actual luggage room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Luggage room lamp

The luggage room lamp comes on when the tailgate is opened.



Glove box lamp

The glove box lamp comes on when the glove box is opened.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:03 PM Page 126

WELCOME SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Headlamp welcome

When the headlight(light switch in the headlight or AUTO position) is on and all doors (and tailgate) are locked and closed, the headlight, position light and tail light will come on for 15 seconds if any of the below is performed.

- Without smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the transmitter.
- With the smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.

At this time, if you press the door lock button (on the transmitter or smart key), the lights will turn off immediately.

Interior light

When the interior light switch is in the DOOR position and all doors (and tailgate) are locked and closed, the room lamp will come on for 30 seconds if any of the below is performed.

- Without smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the transmitter.
- With the smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
  - When the button of the outside door handle is pressed.

At this time, if you press the door lock button, the lamps will turn off immediately.

Puddle lamp (if equipped)

When all doors are locked and closed, the puddle lamp will come on for 15 seconds if any of the below is performed.

- Without smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the transmitter.
- With the smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
  - When the button of the outside door handle is pressed.
  - When the vehicle is approached with the smart key in possession.

At this time, if you press the door lock button, the lamps will turn off immediately.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:03 PM Page 127

DEFROSTER

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the conductors bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.

✻ NOTICE

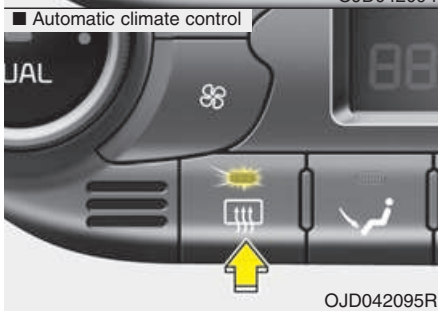
If you want to defrost and defog the front windscreen, refer to "Windscreen Defrosting and Defogging" in this section.

■ Manual climate control



OJD042094

■ Automatic climate control



OJD042095R

Rear window defroster

The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog and thin ice from the interior and exterior of the rear window, whilst engine is running.

- To activate the rear window defroster, press the rear window defroster button located in the centre facia switch panel. The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.
- To turn off the defroster, press the rear window defroster button again.

✻ NOTICE

- **If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.**
- **The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 20 minutes or when the ignition switch is turned off.**

Outside mirror defroster (if equipped)

The outside mirror defroster will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

Front wiper deicer (if equipped)

The front wiper deicer will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



1. Fan speed control knob
2. Air conditioning button
3. Rear window defroster button
4. Mode selection knob
5. Air intake control button
6. Temperature control knob

⚠ CAUTION

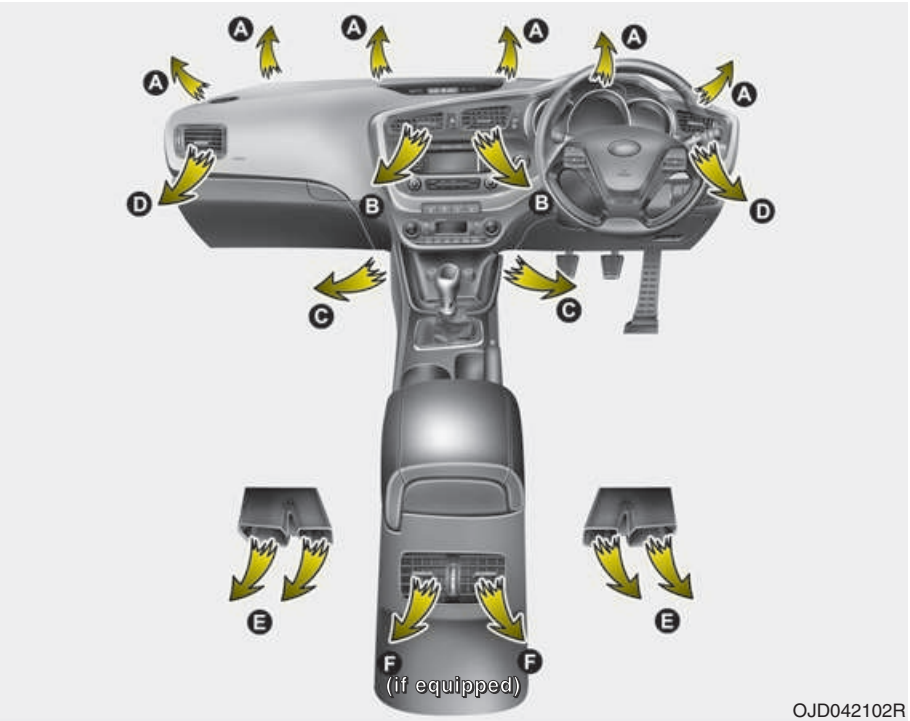
Operating the blower when the ignition switch is in the ON position could cause the battery to discharge. Operate the blower when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

OJD042100

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:03 PM Page 129

Heating and air conditioning

1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.
   To improve the effectiveness of heating and cooling:
   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air or recirculated position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on. (if equipped)



OJD042102R

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:03 PM Page 130



OJD042104

Mode selection

The mode selection knob controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

Air can be directed to the floor, dashboard outlets, or windscreen. Six symbols are used to represent Face, Bi-Level, Floor, Face / Floor / Defrost, Floor / Defrost and Defrost air position.

Face-Level (B, D, F)

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

Bi-Level (B, D, C, E, F)

Air flow is directed towards the face and the floor.

Floor-Level (A, C, D, E)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windscreen and side window defrosters.

Face/Floor/Defrost-Level (A, B, C, D, E, F)

Most of the air flow is directed towards the face, the floor and the windscreen with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.

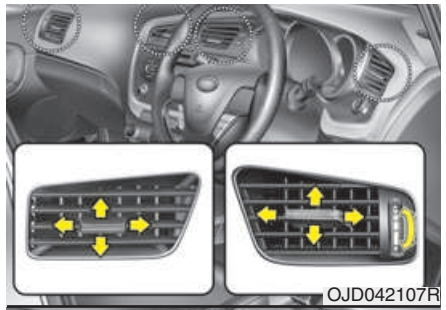
Floor/Defrost-Level (A, C, E, D)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor and the windscreen with a small amount directed to the side window defrosters.

Defrost-Level (A, D)

Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:04 PM Page 131



Instrument panel vents

The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumbwheel or vent control lever.

Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.



Temperature control

The temperature control knob allows you to control the temperature of the airflow in the vehicle.

To change the temperature:

- Turn the knob to the right to increase temperature.
- Turn the knob to the left to decrease temperature.



Air intake control

The air intake control is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, press the control button.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:04 PM Page 132

Recirculated air position



With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Outside (fresh) air position



With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

✻ NOTICE

Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windscreen and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.

In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

⚠ WARNING

- **The continuous use of recirculated air in the climate control system may increase humidity inside the vehicle, causing the glass to fog and obscuring visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.**
- **The continuous use of recirculated air in the climate control system can produce drowsiness or sleepiness, which may result in a loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible whilst driving.**



OJD042101

Fan speed control

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for fan operation.

The fan speed control knob allows you to control the fan speed of the air flowing from the ventilation system. To change the fan speed, turn the knob to the right for higher speed or left for lower speed.

Setting the fan speed control knob to the “0” position turns off the fan.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:04 PM Page 133



OJD043247

To turn off the blowers

To turn off the blowers, turn the fan speed control knob to the "0" position.



OJD042103

Air conditioning (if equipped)

Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate). Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

System operation

Ventilation

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

Heating

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.

- If the windscreen fogs up, set the mode to the position.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:04 PM Page 134

Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Be sure to return the control to the fresh air position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just ahead of the windscreen. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.
- To prevent interior fog on the windscreen, set the air intake control to the fresh air position and fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to desired temperature.

Air conditioning (if equipped)

Kia Air Conditioning Systems are filled with environmentally friendly refrigerant*.

1. Start the engine. Push the air conditioning button.
2. Set the mode to the position.
3. Set the air intake control to the outside air or recirculated air position.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

*: Your vehicle is filled with R-134a or R-1234yf according to the regulation in your country at the time of producing. You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied to your vehicle at the label inside of bonnet. Refer to section 8 for more detail location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians to insure proper and safe operation.***
- ***The refrigerant system should be serviced in a well-ventilated place.***
- ***The air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) shall never be repaired or replaced with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle and new replacement MAC evaporators shall be certified (and labeled) as meeting SAE Standard J2842.***

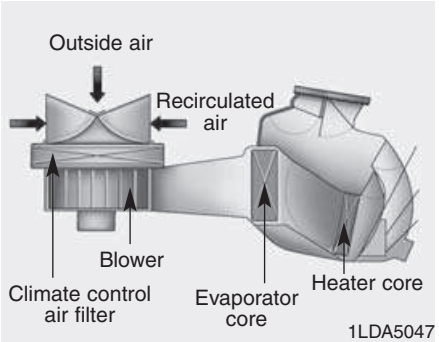
JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:04 PM Page 135

✻ NOTICE

- **When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely whilst driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause engine overheating. Continue to use the blower fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates engine overheating.**
- **When opening the windows in humid weather air conditioning may create water droplets inside the vehicle. Since excessive water droplets may cause damage to electrical equipment, air conditioning should only be used with the windows closed.**

Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- Use air conditioning to reduce humidity and moisture inside the vehicle on rainy or humid days.
- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in engine speed as the air conditioning compressor cycles. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even puddling) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Operating the air conditioning system in the recirculated air position provides maximum cooling, however, continual operation in this mode may cause the air inside the vehicle to become stale.
- During cooling operation, you may occasionally notice a misty air flow because of rapid cooling and humid air intake. This is a normal system operation characteristic.



Climate control air filter

The climate control air filter installed behind the glove box filters the dust or other pollutants that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system. If dust or other pollutants accumulate in the filter over a period of time, the air flow from the air vents may decrease, resulting in moisture accumulation on the inside of the windscreen even when the outside (fresh) air position is selected. If this happens, we recommend that the climate control air filter be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:04 PM Page 136

✻ NOTICE

- **Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.**
  If the car is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty, rough roads, more frequent climate control air filter inspections and changes are required.
- **When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.**

Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also has a bad influence on the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Vehicles equipped with R-134a*



Because the refrigerant is at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used.

Otherwise, it may cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

⚠ WARNING - Vehicles equipped with R-1234yf*





Because the refrigerant is mildly inflammable and at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used.

Otherwise, it may cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

*: Your vehicle is filled with R-134a or R-1234yf according to the regulation in your country at the time of producing. You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied your vehicle at the label inside of bonnet. Refer to section 8 for more detail location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:04 PM Page 137

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



1. Passenger's temperature control knob
2. Dual temperature control selection button
3. Fan speed control button (Higher speed)
4. Fan speed control button (Lower speed)
5. Climate control display
6. Air conditioning button
7. Air intake control button
8. Driver's temperature control knob
9. AUTO (automatic control) button
10. Rear window defroster button
11. Mode selection button
12. Front windscreen defroster button
13. OFF button

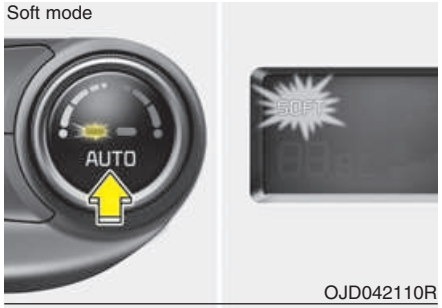
OJD042109R

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:04 PM Page 138

Automatic heating and air conditioning

The automatic climate control system is controlled by simply setting the desired temperature.

Soft mode



OJD042110R

Fast mode



OJD042119R

You can choose either the soft mode or fast mode to select the fan speed.

Soft mode : The wind blows gently.

Fast mode : The wind blows heavier than the soft mode to reach the selected temperature fast.

Each time you press the AUTO button, the mode will change as follows:

Soft mode ↔ Fast mode

The Full Automatic Temperature Control (FATC) system automatically controls the heating and cooling system as follows:

1. Press the AUTO button.

The modes, fan speeds, air intake and air-conditioning will be controlled automatically according to the temperature setting.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:04 PM Page 139



OJD042230

2. Turn the temperature control knob to set the desired temperature.

✻ NOTICE

- **To turn the automatic operation off, select any button of the following:**
  - **Mode selection button**
  - **Front windscreen defrost button (Press the button one more time to deselect the front windscreen defroster function. The 'AUTO' sign will illuminate on the information display once again.)**
  - **Fan speed control button**

  The selected function will be controlled manually whilst other functions operate automatically.
- **For your convenience and to improve the effectiveness of the climate control, use the AUTO button and set the temperature to 22°C/71°F (23°C/73°F -Except Europe).**


OGD041120/H

✻ NOTICE

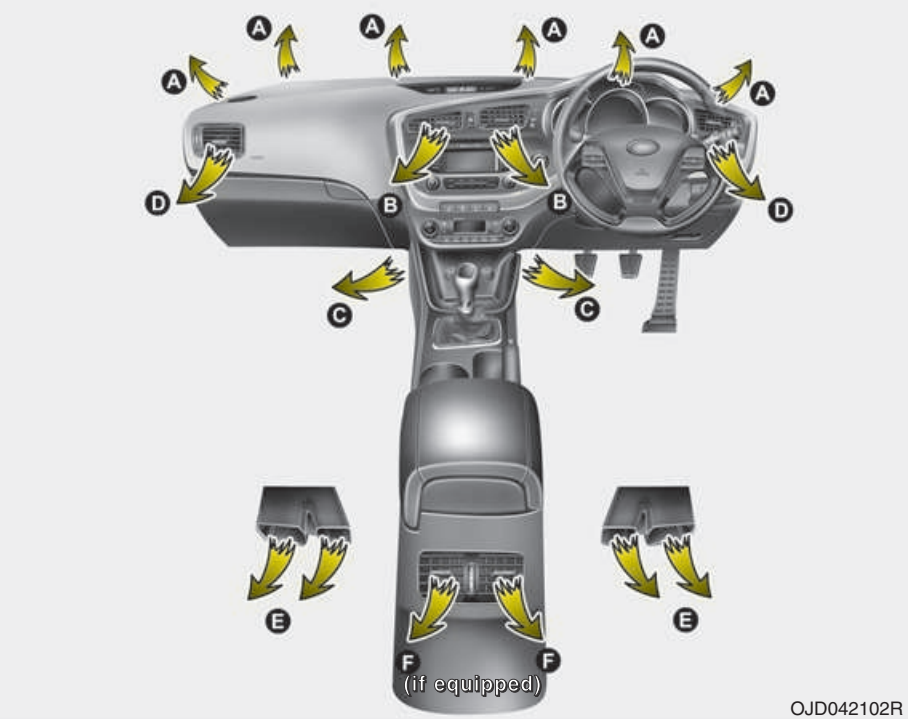
Placing any object over the sensor on the instrument panel may interfere with the heating and cooling system.

Manual heating and air conditioning

The heating and cooling system can be controlled manually by pressing buttons or turning knob(s) other than the AUTO button. In this case, the system works sequentially according to the order of buttons or knob(s) selected.

1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.
   To improve the effectiveness of heating and cooling:
   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air or recirculated position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.

Press the AUTO button in order to convert to full automatic control of the system.



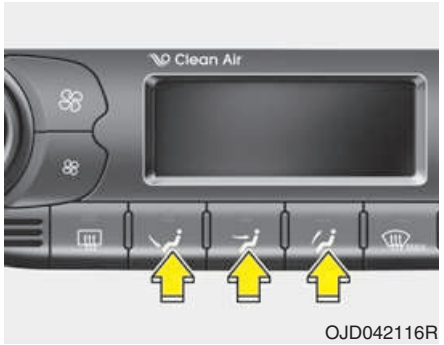
OJD042102R

Mode selection

The mode selection button controls the direction of the airflow in the vehicle.

If you push the button once, the corresponding switch will turn on, and if you push the button again, the switch will turn off.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:04 PM Page 141



OJD042116R

Face-Level (B, D, F*)

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

* : if equipped

Floor-Level (A, C, D, E)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor.

Defrost-Level (A, D)

Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen.

Also you may select 2~3 modes at the same time.

- face ( ) + floor ( ) mode
- face ( ) + defrost ( ) mode
- floor ( ) + defrost ( ) mode
- face ( ) + floor ( ) + defrost ( ) mode



OJD042122R

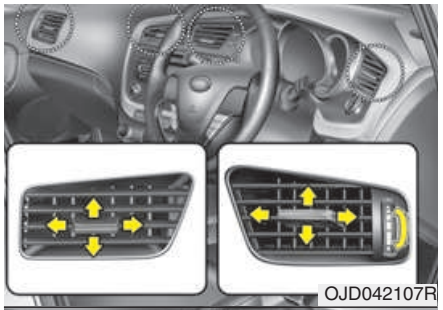
Maximum (MAX) defrost mode

When you select the MAX defrost mode, the following system will set automatically:

- The air conditioning system will be turn on.
- The outside(fresh) air position will be selected.
- The fan speed will set to the high speed.

To turn the MAX defrost mode off, press the mode button or MAX defrost button again or AUTO button.

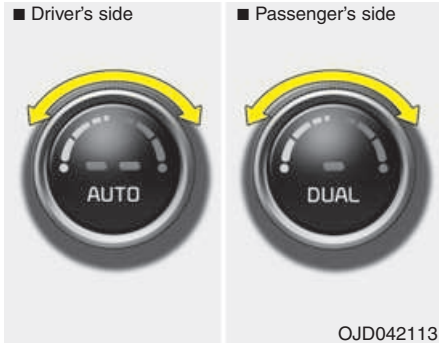
JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:04 PM Page 142



Instrument panel vents

The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumbwheel or vent control lever.

Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.



Temperature control

The temperature will increase to the maximum (HI) by turning the knob to the right extremely.

The temperature will decrease to the minimum (Lo) by turning the knob to the left extremely.

When turning the knob, the temperature will increase or decrease by 0.5°C/1°F. When set to the lowest temperature setting, the air conditioning will operate continuously.

Operate the driver's side temperature control to adjust the driver side temperature. Operate the passenger's side temperature control to adjust the passenger side temperature.



Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature individually

1. Press the DUAL button to operate the driver and passenger side temperature individually. Also, if the passenger side temperature control knob is operated, it will automatically change to the DUAL mode as well.
2. Operate the driver side temperature control to adjust the driver side temperature. Operate the passenger side temperature control to adjust the passenger side temperature.

When the driver side temperature is set to the highest (HIGH) or lowest (LOW) temperature, the DUAL mode deactivates for maximum heating or cooling.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:05 PM Page 143

Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature equally

1. Press the DUAL button again to deactivate DUAL mode. The passenger side temperature will be set to the same temperature as the driver side.
2. Operate the driver side temperature control button. The driver and passenger side temperature will be adjusted equally.

Temperature conversion

You can switch the temperature mode between Centigrade to Fahrenheit as follows:

Whilst pressing the DUAL button, press the Face-Level selection button for 3 seconds or more.

The display will change from Centigrade to Fahrenheit, or from Fahrenheit to Centigrade.

✻ NOTICE

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the temperature mode display will reset to Centigrade.



OJD042117R

Air intake control

This is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, push the control button.

Recirculated air position



With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Outside (fresh) air position



With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

✻ NOTICE

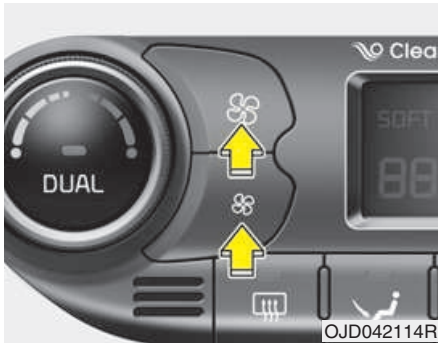
Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windscreen and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.

In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:05 PM Page 144

⚠ WARNING

- **The continuous use of recirculated air in the climate control system may increase humidity inside the vehicle, causing the glass to fog and obscuring visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.**
- **The continuous use of recirculated air in the climate control system can produce drowsiness or sleepiness, which may result in a loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible whilst driving.**



Fan speed control

The fan speed can be set to the desired speed by pressing the fan speed control button.

To change the fan speed, press the upper button (✤) for higher speed, or press the lower button (✤) for lower speed.

Pressing the OFF button turns off the fan.



Air conditioning (if equipped)

Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate).

Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:05 PM Page 145



OJD042118R

OFF mode

Press the OFF button to turn off the air climate control system. However, you can still operate the air intake buttons as long as the ignition switch is in the ON position.

System operation

Ventilation

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

Heating

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.

- If the windscreen fogs up, set the mode to the or position.

Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Be sure to return the control to the fresh air position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just ahead of the windscreen. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.
- To prevent interior fog on the windscreen, set the air intake control to the fresh air position and fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to desired temperature.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:05 PM Page 146

Air conditioning (if equipped)

Kia Air Conditioning Systems are filled with environmentally friendly refrigerant*.

1. Start the engine. Push the air conditioning button.
2. Set the mode to the position.
3. Set the air intake control to the outside air or recirculated air position.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

*: Your vehicle is filled with R-134a or R-1234yf according to the regulation in your country at the time of producing. You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied to your vehicle at the label inside of bonnet. Refer to section 8 for more detail location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians to insure proper and safe operation.***
- ***The refrigerant system should be serviced in a well-ventilated place.***
- ***The air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) shall never be repaired or replaced with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle and new replacement MAC evaporators shall be certified (and labeled) as meeting SAE Standard J2842.***

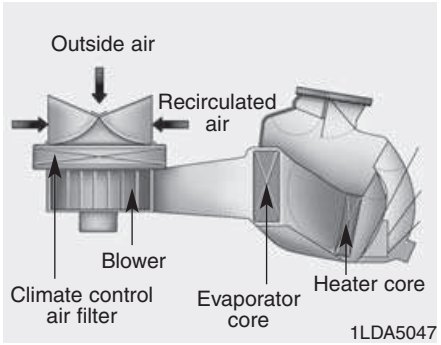
✻ NOTICE

- **When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely whilst driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause engine overheating. Continue to use the blower fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates engine overheating.**
- **When opening the windows in humid weather air conditioning may create water droplets inside the vehicle. Since excessive water droplets may cause damage to electrical equipment, air conditioning should only be used with the windows closed.**

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:05 PM Page 147

Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- Use air conditioning to reduce humidity and moisture inside the vehicle on rainy or humid days.
- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in engine speed as the air conditioning compressor cycles. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even puddling) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Operating the air conditioning system in the recirculated air position provides maximum cooling, however, continual operation in this mode may cause the air inside the vehicle to become stale.
- During cooling operation, you may occasionally notice a misty air flow because of rapid cooling and humid air intake. This is a normal system operation characteristic.



Climate control air filter

The climate control air filter installed behind the glove box filters the dust or other pollutants that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system. If dust or other pollutants accumulate in the filter over a period of time, the air flow from the air vents may decrease, resulting in moisture accumulation on the inside of the windscreen even when the outside (fresh) air position is selected. If this happens, we recommend that the climate control air filter be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:05 PM Page 148

✻ NOTICE

- **Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.**
  If the car is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty, rough roads, more frequent climate control air filter inspections and changes are required.
- **When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.**

Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also has a bad influence on the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Vehicles equipped with R-134a*



Because the refrigerant is at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used.

Otherwise, it may cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

⚠ WARNING - Vehicles equipped with R-1234yf*





Because the refrigerant is mildly inflammable and at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used.

Otherwise, it may cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

*: Your vehicle is filled with R-134a or R-1234yf according to the regulation in your country at the time of producing. You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied your vehicle at the label inside of bonnet. Refer to section 8 for more detail location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

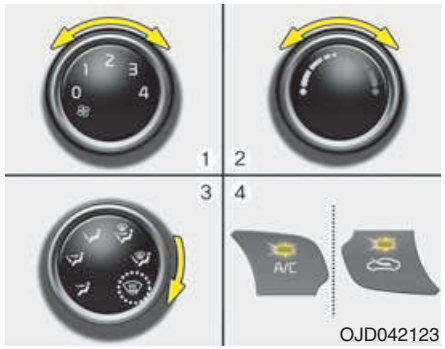
JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:05 PM Page 149

WINDSCREEN DEFROSTING AND DEFOGGING

⚠ WARNING - Windscreen heating

Do not use the position during cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and the windscreen could cause the outer surface of the windscreen to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection to the position and fan speed control to the lower speed.

- For maximum defrosting, set the temperature control to the hottest position and the fan speed control to the highest speed.
- If warm air to the floor is desired whilst defrosting or defogging, set the mode to the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windscreen, rear window, outside rear view mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the bonnet and air inlet in the cowl grill to improve heater and defroster efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windscreen.



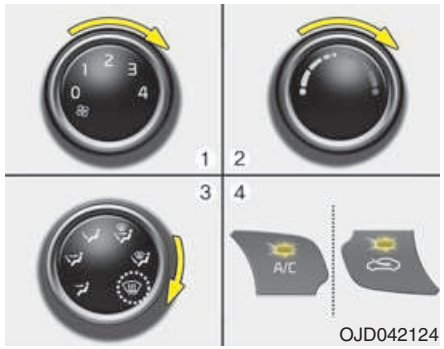
OJD042123

Manual climate control system

To defog inside windscreen

1. Set the fan speed to the desired position.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Select the position.
4. The outside (fresh) air will be selected automatically. If the position is selected, air conditioning (if equipped) will also be selected automatically.

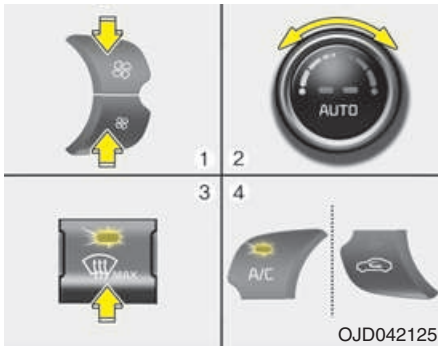
If the air conditioning and/or outside (fresh) air position are not selected automatically, press the corresponding button manually.



OJD042124

To defrost outside windscreen

1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the hottest position.
3. Select the position.
4. The outside (fresh) air and air conditioning will be selected automatically.



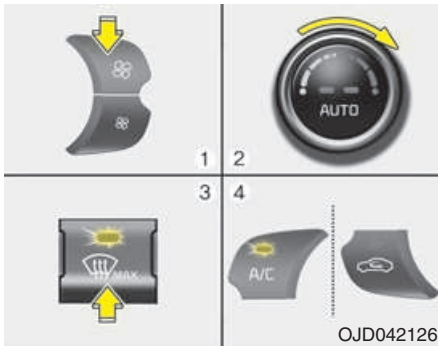
OJD042125

Automatic climate control system

To defog inside windscreen

1. Set the fan speed to the desired speed.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Press the button.
4. The air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature and outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically.

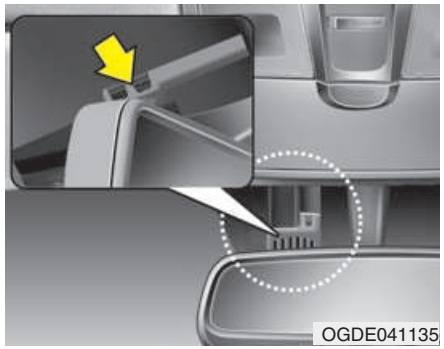
If the air conditioning is not selected automatically, adjust the corresponding button manually. If the position is selected, lower fan speed is adjusted to a higher fan speed.



OJD042126

To defrost outside windscreen

1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the hottest (HIGH) position.
3. Press the button.
4. The air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature and outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically.


OGDE041135

Auto defogging system (Only for automatic climate control system, if equipped)

Auto defogging reduces the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windscreen by

automatically sensing the moisture of inside the windscreen.

The auto defogging system operates when the climate control system is on.

✻ NOTICE

The auto defogging system may not operate normally, when the outside temperture is below -15 °C.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:05 PM Page 151



This indicator illuminates when the auto defogging system senses the moisture of inside the windscreen and operates.

If more moisture is in the vehicle, higher steps operate as follow.

Step 1 : Operating the air conditioning
Step 2 : Outside air position
Step 3 : Blowing air flow toward the windscreen
Step 4 : Increasing air flow toward the windscreen

If your vehicle is equipped with the auto defogging system, it is automatically activated when the conditions are met. However, if you would like to cancel the auto defogging system, press the front defroster button 4 times within 2 seconds whilst pressing the AUTO button. The indicator will blink 3 times to notify you that the system is cancelled. To use the auto defogging system again, follow the procedures mentioned above.

If the battery has been disconnected or discharged, it resets to the auto defogging status.

✻ NOTICE

If the A/C off is manually selected whilst the auto defogging system is on, the auto defogging indicator will blink 3 times to give notice that the A/C off can not be selected.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the driver side windscreen glass. Damage to the system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

CLEAN AIR (IF EQUIPPED)



OJD042129R

When the ignition switch is in the ON position, the clean air function turns on automatically.

Also, the clean air function turns off automatically, when the ignition switch turns to the OFF position.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:05 PM Page 152

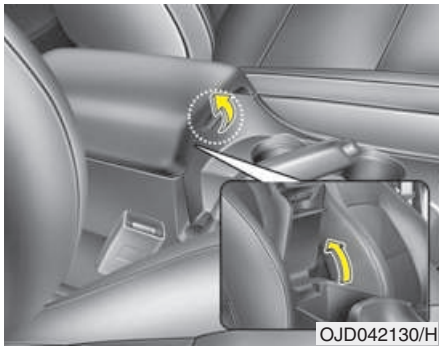
STORAGE COMPARTMENT

⚠ CAUTION

- ***To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartment.***
- ***Always keep the storage compartment covers closed whilst driving. Do not attempt to place so many items in the storage compartment that the storage compartment cover can not close securely.***

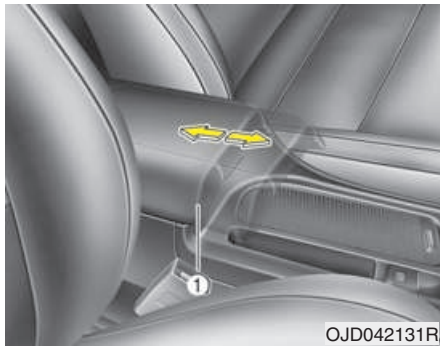
⚠ WARNING - Flammable materials

Do not store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.


OJD042130/H

Centre console storage

To open the centre console storage, push the lever and then lift up the cover.



OJD042131R

Sliding armrest (if equipped)

To move forward

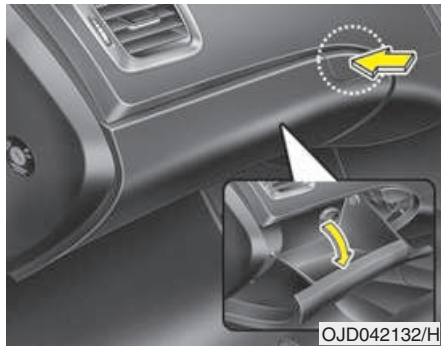
Grab the front portion of the armrest (1) then pull it forward.

To move rearward

Push the armrest rearward with your palm.

⚠ WARNING

Do not grab the front portion of the armrest (1) when moving the armrest rearward. It may pinch your fingers.


OJD042132/H

Glove box

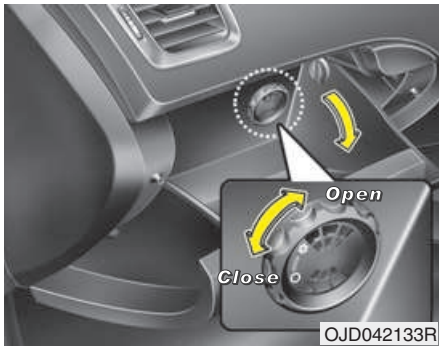
To open the glove box, push the button and the glove box will automatically open. Close the glove box after use.

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove box door closed whilst driving.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not keep food in the glove box for a long time.



OJD042133R

Cool box (if equipped)

You can keep beverage cans or other items cool in the glove box.

1. Turn on the air conditioning. The temperature of the cool box will change according to the temperature of air conditioning.
2. Turn the knob to the open position.
3. When the cool box is not used, turn the knob to the close position.

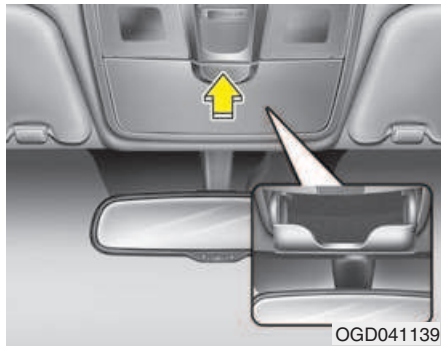
✻ NOTICE

If some items in the cool box block the vent, the cooling effectiveness of the cool box is reduced.

⚠ WARNING

Do not put perishable food in the cool box because it may not maintain the necessary consistent temperature to keep the food fresh.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:05 PM Page 154

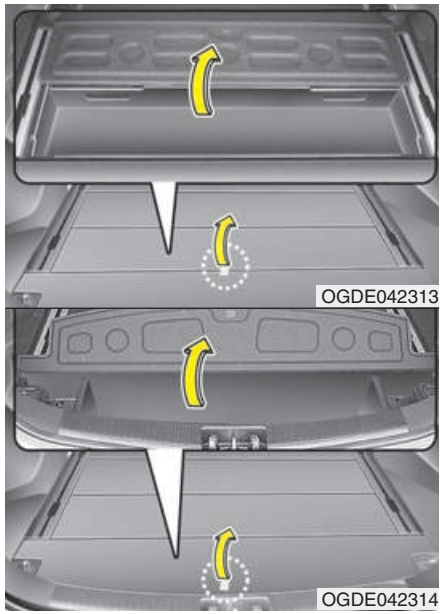

OGD041139

Sunglass holder

To open the sunglass holder, press the cover and the holder will slowly open. Place your sunglasses in the compartment door with the lenses facing out. Push to close.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not keep objects except sunglasses inside the sunglass holder. Such objects can be thrown from the holder in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.**
- **Do not open the sunglasses holder whilst the vehicle is moving. The rear view mirror of the vehicle can be blocked by an open sunglass holder.**
- **Do not put the glasses forcibly into a sunglass holder to prevent breakage or deformation of glasses. It may cause personal injury if you try to open it forcibly when the glasses are jammed in holder.**


OGDE042313

OGDE042314

Luggage tray (wagon)

You can place a first aid kit, a reflector triangle (front tray), tools, etc. in the box for easy access.

- Grasp the handle on the top of the cover and lift it.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:05 PM Page 155

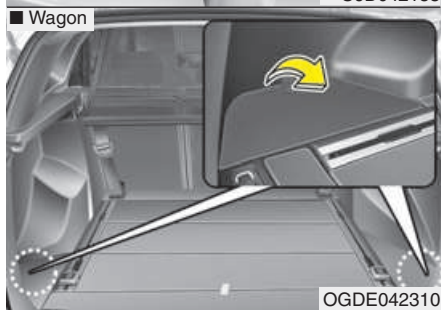
INTERIOR FEATURES

■ 3 Door and 5 Door



OJD042153

■ Wagon

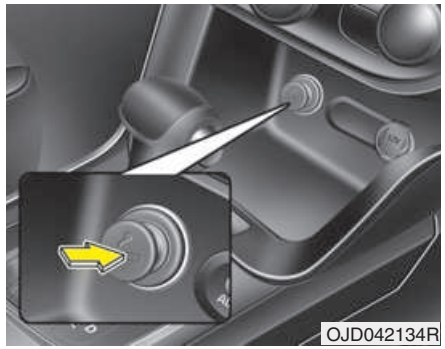


OGDE042310

Luggage side tray (if equipped)

The luggage side tray can be used for storing small items.

- To open the cover, pull up the handle and lift the cover.



OJD042134R

Cigarette lighter (if equipped)

For the cigarette lighter to work, the ignition switch must be in the ACC position or the ON position.

To use the cigarette lighter:

Push the lighter all the way into the socket.

When the element has heated, the lighter will pop out to the "ready" position.

We recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

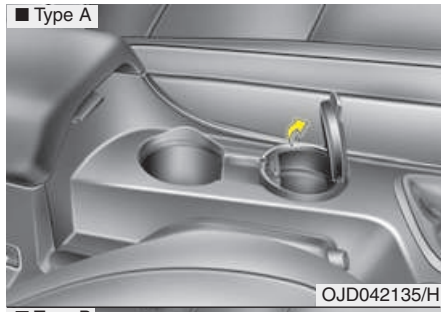
- **Holding the lighter in after it is heated will cause it to overheat.**
- **If the lighter does not pop out within 30 seconds, remove it to prevent overheating.**
- **Do not insert foreign objects into the socket of the cigarette lighter. It may damage the cigarette lighter.**

⚠ CAUTION

The use of plug-in accessories (shavers, hand-held vacuums, and coffee pots, etc.) may damage the socket or cause electrical failure.

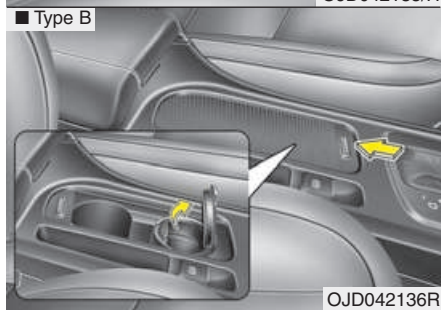
JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:05 PM Page 156

■ Type A



OJD042135/H

■ Type B



OJD042136R

Ashtray (if equipped)

To use the ashtray, open the cover. (Type B)
To clean or empty the ashtray, pull it out.

⚠ WARNING - Ashtray use

- **Do not use the vehicle's ashtray as a waste receptacle.**
- **Putting lit cigarettes or matches in an ashtray with other combustible materials may cause a fire.**

⚠ CAUTION

When cleaning spilled liquid, do not dry the cup holder at high temperatures. This may damage the chrome part of the cup holder.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:06 PM Page 157

Cup holder

⚠ WARNING - Hot liquids

- **Do not place uncovered cups of hot liquid in the cup holder whilst the vehicle is in motion. If the hot liquid spills, you may burn yourself. Such a burn to the driver could lead to loss of control of the vehicle.**
- **To reduce the risk of personal injury in the event of sudden stop or collision, do not place uncovered or unsecured bottles, glasses, cans, etc., in the cup holder whilst the vehicle is in motion.**

⚠ WARNING

Keep cans and bottles out of direct sunlight. Placing them in a hot vehicle can cause them to explode.

⚠ CAUTION

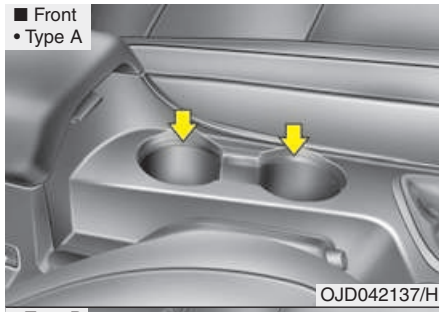
Do not place uncovered cups in the cup holder whilst the vehicle is in motion. If the liquid spills, electric systems may malfunction.

✻ NOTICE

- **Keep your drinks sealed whilst driving to prevent spilling your drink. If liquid spills, it may get into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and damage electrical/electronic parts.**
- **When cleaning spilled liquids, do not dry the cup holder at high temperature. This may damage the cup holder.**

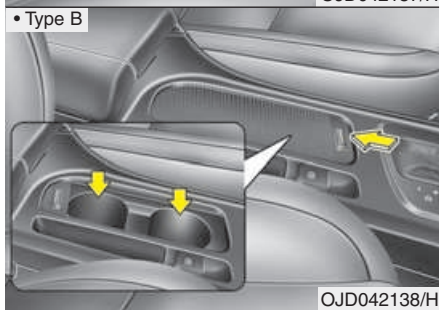
■ Front

• Type A



OJD042137/H

• Type B



OJD042138/H

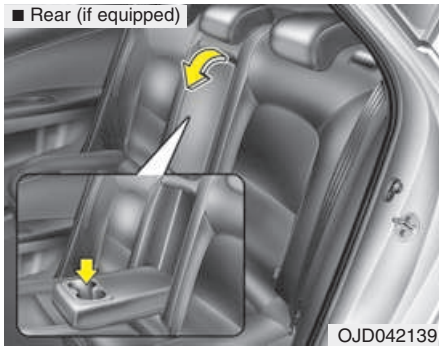
Cups or small beverage cans may be placed in the cup holders.

Type B

To use the cup holder, open the cover.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:06 PM Page 158

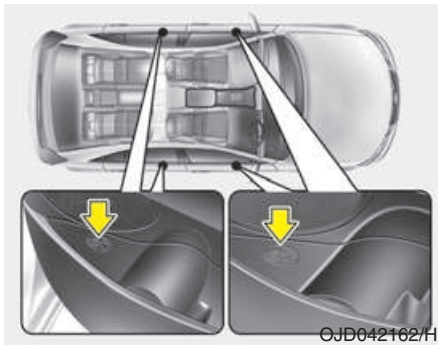
■ Rear (if equipped)



OJD042139

Rear

To use the cup holder, pull down the armrest.



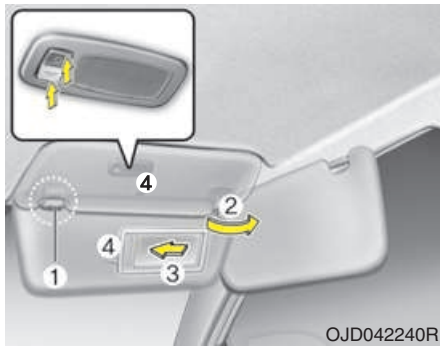
OJD042162/H

Bottle holder

Bottles may be placed in the holder.

✻ NOTICE

Only bottles should be placee in the holder as it is written in the vehicle "BOTTLE ONLY".



OJD042240R

Sunvisor

Use the sunvisor to shield direct light through the front or side windows.

To use a sunvisor, pull it downward.

To use a sunvisor for a side window, pull it downward, unsnap it from the bracket (1) and swing it to the side. (2)

To use the vanity mirror, pull down the visor and open the mirror cover (3).

To use the vanity mirror lamp, switch it on. (if equipped)

The ticket holder (4) is provided for holding a tollgate ticket. (if equipped)

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:06 PM Page 159

✻ NOTICE

Close the vanity mirror cover securely and return the sunvisor to its original position after use.

⚠ CAUTION - Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)

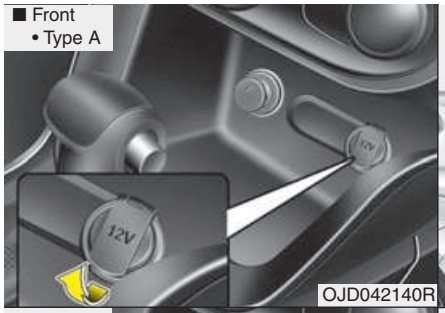
Always have the switch in the off position when the vanity mirror lamp is not in use. If the sunvisor is closed without the lamp off, it may discharge the battery or damage the sunvisor.

⚠ WARNING

For your safety, do not obstruct your vision when using the sunvisor.

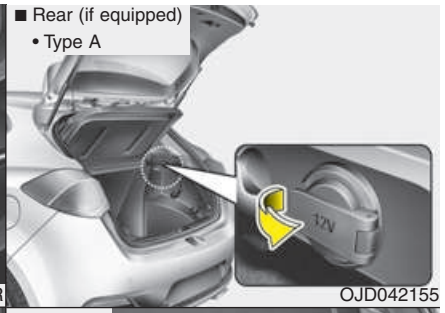
❉ To learn how to use the vanity mirror lamp, refer to "Interior light" in this section.

■ Front
• Type A



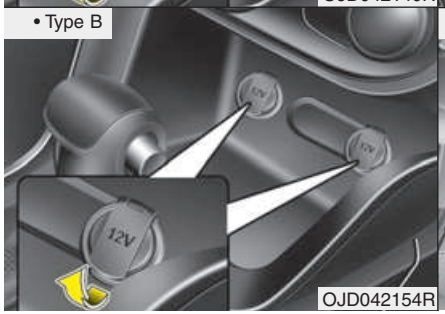
OJD042140R

■ Rear (if equipped)
• Type A



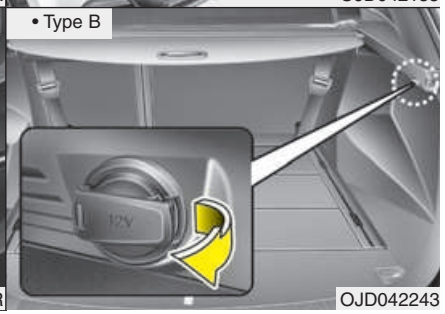
OJD042155

• Type B



OJD042154R

• Type B



OJD042243

Power outlet

The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile telephones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems. The devices should draw less than 10 amps with the engine running.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Use power outlet only when the engine is running and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for prolonged periods of time with the engine off could cause the battery to discharge.*
- *Do not use an electric accessory or equipment the power consumption of which is greater than 12V (10A). It may cause damage to the power outlet or vehicle wiring harness.*
- *Only use 12V electric accessories which are less than 10A in electric capacity.*
- *Adjust the air-conditioner or heater to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.*
- *Close the cover when not in use.*
- *Some electronic devices can cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.*

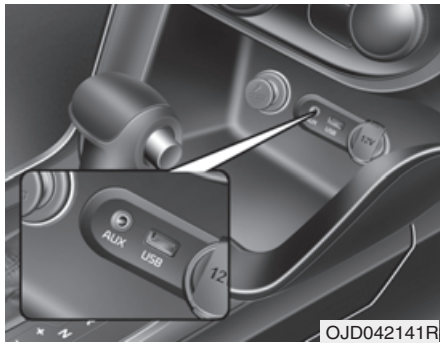
(Continued)

(Continued)

- *Make sure that the electric devices are plugged in securely. If not, it could cause a malfunction of electric systems.*
- *If you use an electric device with a battery, electric current may flow from the electric device into the vehicle and may cause a malfunction of electric systems. Only use electric devices which could prevent flowing of current into the vehicle.*

⚠ WARNING

Do not put a finger or a foreign element (pin, etc.) into a power outlet and do not touch with a wet hand. You may get electrocuted or fire may occur.



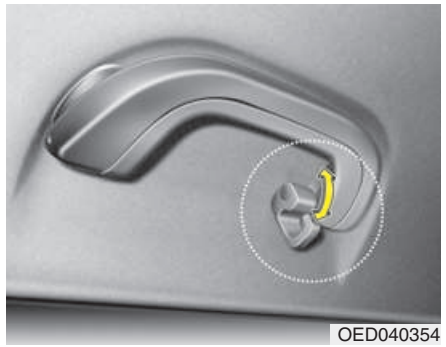
Aux, USB and iPod®

You can use an aux port to connect audio devices and an USB port to plug in an USB and also an iPod® port to plug in an iPod.

✻ NOTICE

When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, use the power source of the portable audio device.

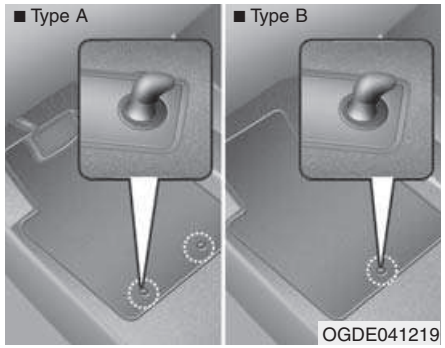
✻ iPod® is a trademark of Apple Inc.



Clothes hanger

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not hang heavy clothes, since those may damage the hook.***
- ***Be careful when opening and closing the doors. Clothes, etc. may get caught between the door gap.***



Floor mat anchor(s) (if equipped)

When using a floor mat on the front floor carpet, make sure it attaches to the floor mat anchor(s) in your vehicle. This keeps the floor mat from sliding forward.

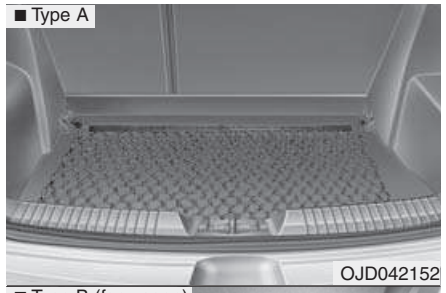
⚠ WARNING

The following must be observed when installing ANY floor mat to the vehicle.

- **Ensure that the floor mats are securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchor(s) before driving the vehicle.**
- **Do not use ANY floor mat that cannot be firmly attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.**
- **Do not stack floor mats on top of one another (e.g. all-weather rubber mat on top of a carpeted floor mat). Only a single floor mat should be installed in each position.**

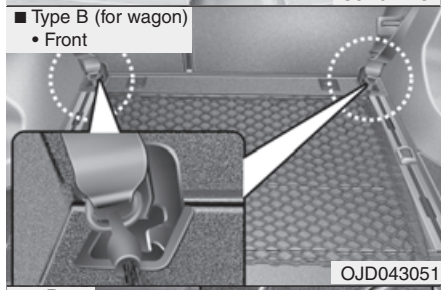
IMPORTANT – Your vehicle was manufactured with driver's side floor mat anchors that are designed to securely hold the floor mat in place. To avoid any interference with pedal operation, Kia recommends that the Kia floor mat designed for use in your vehicle be installed.

■ Type A



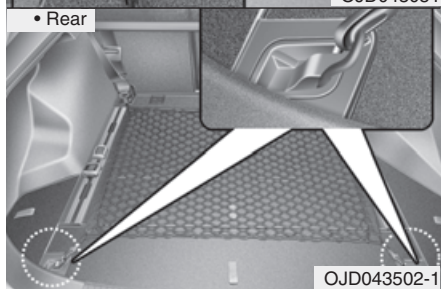
OJD042152

■ Type B (for wagon)
• Front



OJD043051

• Rear



OJD043502-1

Luggage net (holder) (if equipped)

To keep items from shifting in the cargo area, you can use the four holders located in the cargo area to attach the luggage net.



This symbol indicates the position of the front holders (wagon).

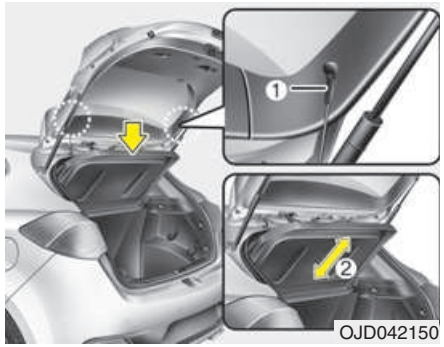
If necessary, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the goods or the vehicle, care should be taken when carrying fragile or bulky objects in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid eye injury, DO NOT overstretch the luggage net. ALWAYS keep your face and body out of the luggage net's recoil path. DO NOT use the luggage net when the strap has visible signs of wear or damage.



OJD042150

Cargo area cover (3 Door and 5 Door)

Use the cover to hide items stored in the cargo area.

The cargo area cover will be lifted when the tailgate is opened. Disconnect the strap (1) from holder if you want to return the cover to original position. To remove the cargo area cover completely, lift the cover to a 43-degree angle and pull it out to the full (2). For installation of the cover, reverse the removal procedure.

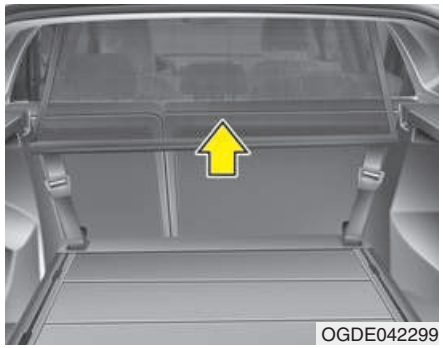
JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:06 PM Page 163

⚠ CAUTION

- *When you return the cargo area cover to its original position, hold the cover and lower it.*
- *Do not operate the vehicle with the cover removed. It may damage to the cover.*
- *The cargo area cover may be lifted when the tailgate is opened. Ensure that the luggage on the cover is moved to a safe place.*
- *Since the cargo area cover may be damaged or malformed, do not apply excessive force to the cover or do not put the heavy loads on it.*

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not place objects on the cargo area cover whilst driving. Such objects may be thrown about inside the vehicle and possibly injure vehicle occupants during an accident or when braking.**
- **Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is designed for luggage only.**
- **Maintain the balance of the vehicle and locate the weight as far forward as possible.**



OGDE042299

Barrier net (wagon) (if equipped)

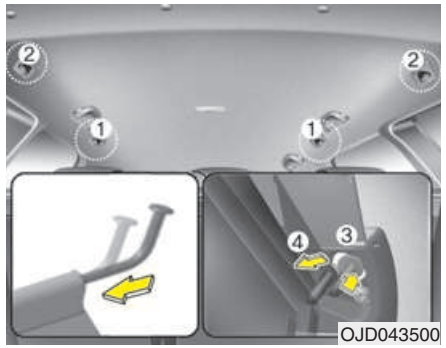
Your vehicle is equipped with a barrier net.

When you load some cargoes on the rear seat or rear cargo area, you must install the barrier net behind front seatback or rear seatback.

It is designed to help protect the heads of the occupants by obstructing objects flying forward in frontal collisions.

There are eight hook holders on both side of the headliner over the headrests for upper side fixation and on the floor behind the front seats or rear seats for lower side fixation.

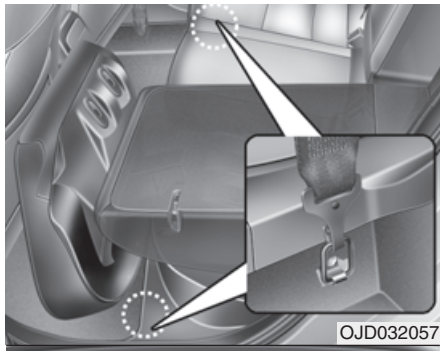
JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:06 PM Page 164

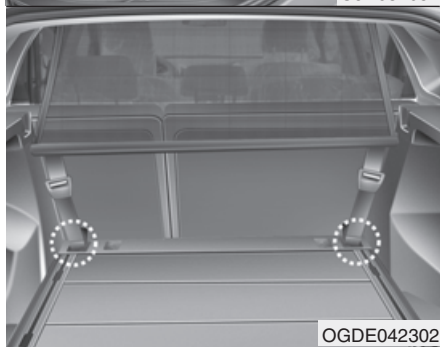


OJD043500

To install the barrier net

1. Open the cover (if equipped) for the holder position (1) or (2) you want to install.
2. Compress the one side net upper shaft to length direction before insert the net upper shaft into the large hole (3) and then secure by sliding into the small hole (4).


OJD032057

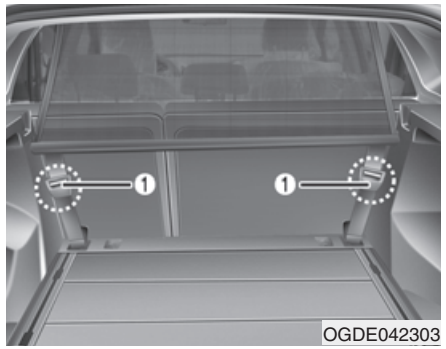

OGDE042302

3. Hang the net strap hooks in the corresponding hook holders on the floor behind the front seat or rear seat.



This symbol indicates the position of the hook holders on the floor behind the rear seat.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:06 PM Page 165



4. Fasten the straps, by using the adjuster (1).

⚠ WARNING

- **Make sure that there is no slack in the barrier net by fastening the strap securely when installing the net. The strap should be fastened after confirming that the hook is inserted into the upper hook holder securely.**
- **Make sure that the seatbacks are locked securely.**

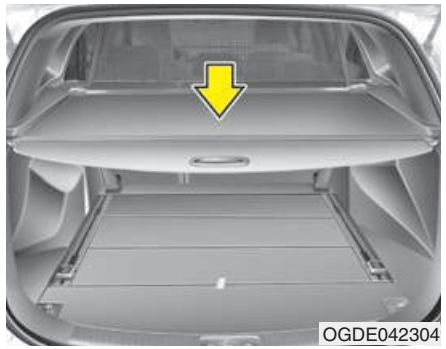
⚠ WARNING

- **Do not put passengers in the rear seat or cargo area behind the barrier net.**
- **Do not put passenger in the rear centre seat when the barrier net is installed behind the rear seats. The barrier net may interfere with use of the rear centre safety belt.**
- **Do not load cargo in the area higher than the barrier net's upper end.**
- **Do not load heavy cargo in the area higher than the seatback to avoid accident even if the barrier net is installed.**
- **Do not load cargo which has sharp edge that can pass through the barrier net.**
- **Do not apply excessive force to the barrier net by hanging on to the net or by suspending heavy cargo and so on.**

To remove the barrier net

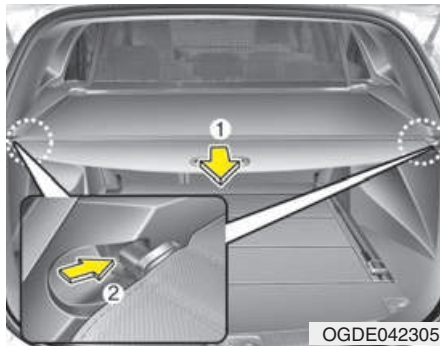
1. Loosen the straps by using the strap adjusters and remove the strap hooks from the hook holders.
2. Remove the net upper shaft by pulling it through the large holes.
3. Remove the barrier net.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:06 PM Page 166


OGDE042304

Cargo security screen (wagon) (if equipped)

Use the cargo security screen to hide items stored in the cargo area.



OGDE042305

To use the cargo security screen

1. Pull the cargo security screen towards the rear of the vehicle by the handle (1).
2. Insert the guide pin into the guide (2).

✻ NOTICE

Pull out the cargo security screen with the handle in the centre to prevent the guide pin from falling out of the guide.

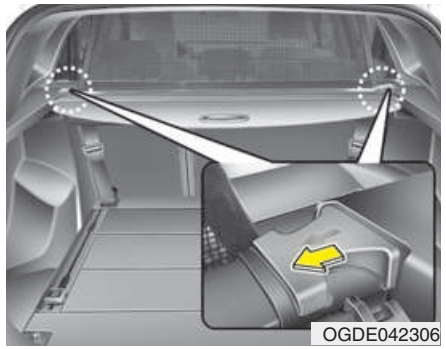
When the cargo security screen is not in use:

1. Pull the cargo security screen rear and down to release it from the guides.
2. The cargo security screen will automatically slide back in.

✻ NOTICE

The cargo security screen may not automatically slide back in if the cargo security screen is not fully pulled out. Fully pull it out and then let go.

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:07 PM Page 167



To remove the cargo security screen

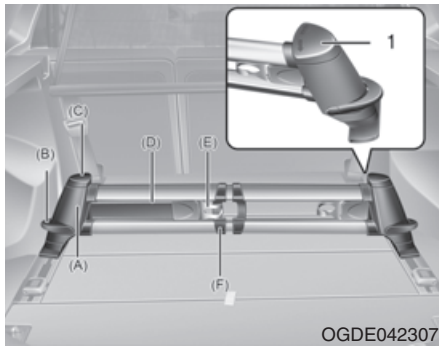
1. Push the guide pin inward.
2. Whilst pushing the guide pin, pull out the cargo security screen.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not place objects on the cargo security screen. Such objects may be thrown about inside the vehicle and possibly injure vehicle occupants during an accident or when braking.**
- **Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is designed for luggage only.**
- **Maintain the balance of the vehicle and locate the weight as forward as possible.**

⚠ CAUTION

Since the cargo security screen may be damaged or malformed, do not put luggage on it when it is used.



Luggage rail system (wagon) (if equipped)

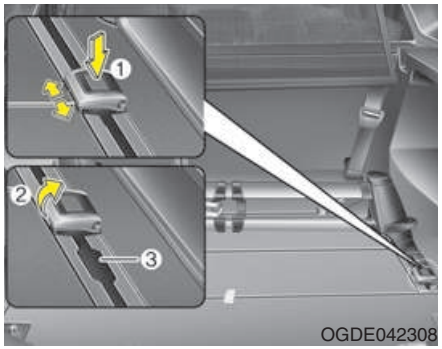
The luggage rail system may prevent the luggage from sliding around in the luggage compartment.

Build in segmentation bar

- Put both pillars (A) from the segmentation bar in the openings from the rail.
- To move the segmentation bar, put your hand on the side of the pillar and push down the lever arm (B).
- Make sure the pillars click into place.
- To release the belt, turn the upper element (C) to the left or right until it clicks.
- Now you can pull the belt (D) and secure your luggage by putting the belt around the luggage and put the hook (E) into the middle of the segmentation bar (F).
- For bulky luggage, you can hook both hooks into each other.
- To make sure the belt locks, put the upper element (C) back into the lock position (1).

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The segmentation bar must be mounted and demounted with both pillars simultaneously.***
- ***Max. load: 30 kg with one belt***
  40 kg with two belts



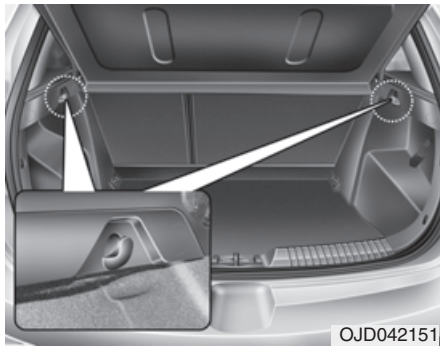
OGDE042308

Applying the shackle on the guide rail

- Put the shackle (A) in the position where the shackle is put in the rail.
- To move the shackle, press the button (1) and move the shackle along the rail.
- Make sure the shackle is clicked into place.
- To fix the luggage, pull up the hook (2) in the middle cargo bay.
- Now you can mount e.g. belt to fix the luggage in the hook.
- The shackle cannot be used in the position where the shackle is put in and out of the rail (3).

⚠ CAUTION

Tensile force : max. 30 kgf. for 1 shackle


OJD042151

✻ The actual luggage room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

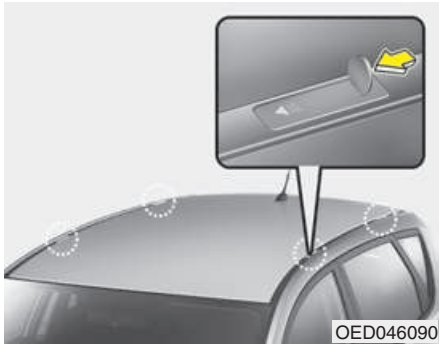
Shopping bag holder

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not hang a bag weighing more than 3 kg (7 lbs.). It may cause damage to the shopping bag holder.***
- ***Do not hang the frail objects when you drive rough road, the objects may be damaged.***

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:07 PM Page 169

EXTERIOR FEATURES


OED046090

Mounting bracket for roof carrier (if equipped)

To install or remove a roof carrier, you can use the mounting bracket and cover on the roof.

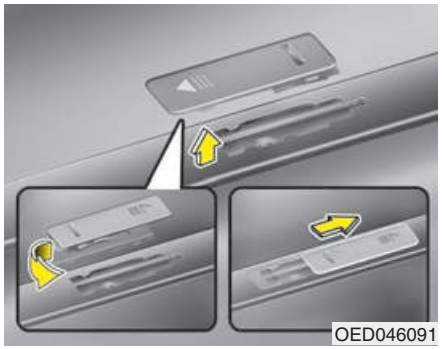
When you install a roof carrier, use the following procedure.

1. Insert a slim tool(coin or flat blade driver) into the slot and slide the cover toward the arrow on the cover.

⚠ WARNING

Use a coin or flat blade driver when you remove the roof carrier cover.

If you use your fingernail, it may damage your fingernail.


OED046091

2. Rotate the cover half way and insert the cover on the roof hole as the illustration.

✻ NOTICE

To prevent loosing the roof carrier cover, install the cover on the roof before you install the roof carrier.

3. After using the roof carrier, install the cover back on the roof in the reverse order.

✻ NOTICE

If the vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, be sure not to position cargo onto the roof in such a way that it could interfere with sunroof operation.

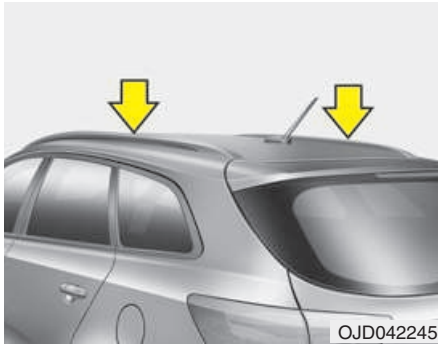
⚠ CAUTION

- ***When carrying cargo on the roof, take the necessary precautions to make sure the cargo does not damage the roof of the vehicle.***
- ***When carrying large objects on the roof, make sure they do not exceed the overall roof length or width.***

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:07 PM Page 170

⚠ WARNING

- **The vehicle centre of gravity will be higher when items are loaded onto the roof. Avoid sudden starts, braking, sharp turns, abrupt manoeuvres or high speeds that may result in loss of vehicle control or rollover resulting in an accident.**
- **Always drive slowly and turn corners carefully when carrying items on the roof. Severe wind updrafts, caused by passing vehicles or natural causes, can cause sudden upward pressure on items loaded on the roof. This is especially true when carrying large, flat items such as wood panels or mattresses. This could cause the items to fall off the roof and cause damage to your vehicle or others around you.**
- **To prevent damage or loss of cargo whilst driving, check frequently before or whilst driving to make sure the items on the roof are securely fastened.**



Roof rack (for wagon)

If the vehicle has a roof rack, you can load cargo on top of your vehicle.

We recommend to obtain the crossbars and fixing components needed to install the roof rack on your vehicle from an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

- **The crossbars (if equipped) should be placed in the proper load carrying positions prior to placing items onto the roof rack.**
- **If the vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, be sure not to position cargo onto the roof rack in such a way that it could interfere with sunroof operation.**
- **When the roof rack is not being used to carry cargo, the crossbars may need to be repositioned if wind noise is detected.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When carrying cargo on the roof rack, take the necessary precautions to make sure the cargo does not damage the roof of the vehicle.***
- ***When carrying large objects on the roof rack, make sure they do not exceed the overall roof length or width.***
- ***When you are carrying cargo on the roof rack, do not operate the sunroof (if equipped).***

JD RHD 4a(~171).QXP 4/14/2015 7:07 PM Page 171

⚠ WARNING

- **The following specification is the maximum weight that can be loaded onto the roof rack. Distribute the load as evenly as possible across the crossbars (if equipped) and roof rack and secure the load firmly.**

ROOF RACK	100 kg (220 lbs.) EVENLY DISTRIBUTED

Loading cargo or luggage in excess of the specified weight limit on the roof rack may damage your vehicle.

- **The vehicle centre of gravity will be higher when items are loaded onto the roof rack. Avoid sudden starts, braking, sharp turns, abrupt manoeuvres or high speeds that may result in loss of vehicle control or rollover resulting in an accident.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

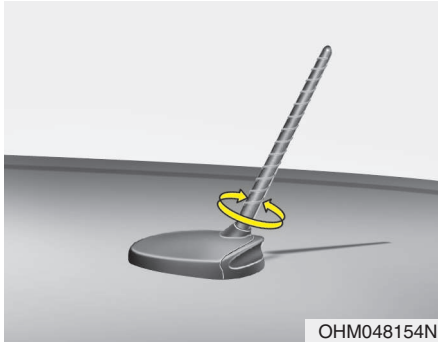
- **Always drive slowly and turn corners carefully when carrying items on the roof rack. Severe wind updrafts, caused by passing vehicles or natural causes, can cause sudden upward pressure on items loaded on the roof rack. This is especially true when carrying large, flat items such as wood panels or mattresses. This could cause the items to fall off the roof rack and cause damage to your vehicle or others around you.**
- **To prevent damage or loss of cargo whilst driving, check frequently before or whilst driving to make sure the items on the roof rack are securely fastened.**

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 172

AUDIO SYSTEM

✻ NOTICE

- **If you install an aftermarket HID head lamp, your vehicle's audio and electronic device may malfunction.**
- **Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration.**



OHM048154N

Antenna

Roof antenna

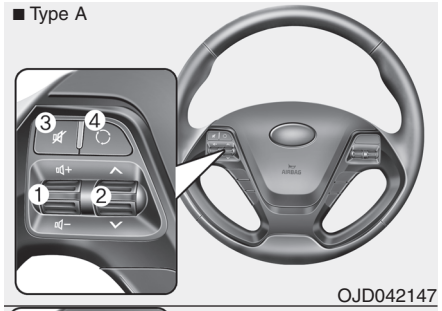
Your car uses a roof antenna to receive both AM and FM broadcast signals. This antenna is a removable type. To remove the antenna, turn it counterclockwise. To install the antenna, turn it clockwise.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Before entering a place with a low height clearance or a car wash, remove the antenna by rotating it counterclockwise. If not, the antenna may be damaged.***
- ***When reinstalling your antenna, it is important that it is fully tightened and adjusted to the upright position to ensure proper reception. But it could be removed when parking the vehicle or when loading cargo on the roof rack.***
- ***When cargo is loaded on the roof rack, do not place the cargo near the antenna pole to ensure proper reception.***

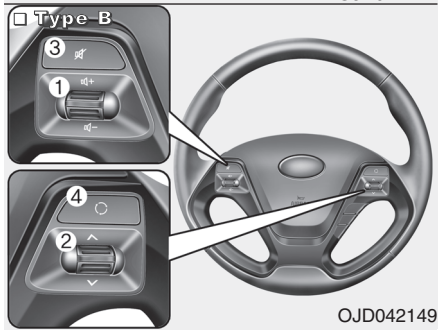
JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 173

■ Type A



OJD042147

□ Type B



OJD042149

Audio remote control (if equipped)

The steering wheel audio remote control button is installed to promote safe driving.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the audio remote control buttons simultaneously.

VOL (+ / -) (1)

- Push up the lever to increase volume.
- Push down the lever to decrease volume.

SEEK (∧ / ∨) (2)

The SEEK/PRESET button has different functions base on the system mode. For the following functions the button should be pressed for 0.8 seconds or more.

RADIO mode

It will function as the AUTO SEEK select button.

CDP mode

It will function as the FF/REW button.

If the SEEK button is pressed for less than 0.8 second, it will work as follows in each mode.

RADIO mode

It will function as the PRESET STATION select buttons.

CDP mode

It will function as the TRACK UP/DOWN button.

Detailed information for audio control buttons are described in the following pages in this section.

MUTE (3)

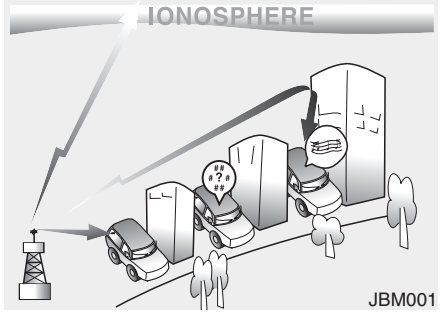
- Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound.
- Press the MUTE button again to activate the sound.

MODE (4)

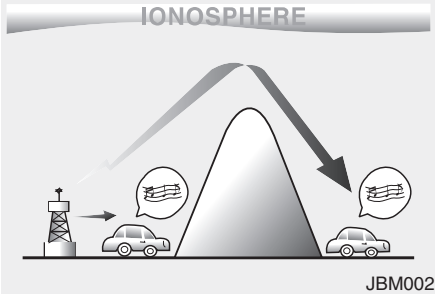
Press the button to select Radio or CD (compact disc).

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 174

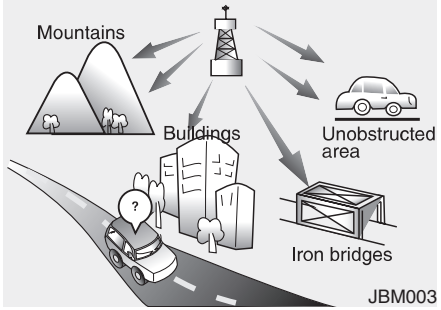
FM reception



AM reception



FM radio station



How car audio works

AM and FM radio signals are broadcast from transmitter towers located around your city. They are intercepted by the radio antenna on your car. This signal is then received by the radio and sent to your car speakers.

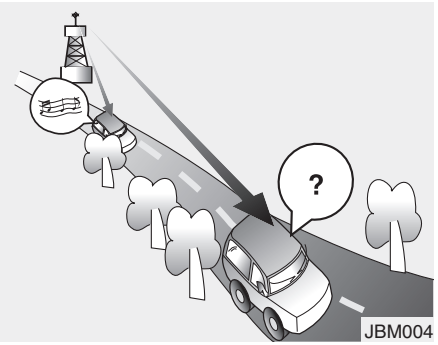
When a strong radio signal has reached your vehicle, the precise engineering of your audio system ensures the best possible quality reproduction. However, in some cases the signal coming to your vehicle may not be strong and clear. This can be due to factors such as the distance from the radio station, closeness of other strong radio stations or the presence of buildings, bridges or other large obstructions in the area.

AM broadcasts can be received at greater distances than FM broadcasts. This is because AM radio waves are transmitted at low frequencies. These long, low frequency radio waves can follow the curvature of the earth rather than travelling straight out into the atmosphere. In addition, they curve around obstructions so that they can provide better signal coverage.

FM broadcasts are transmitted at high frequencies and do not bend to follow the earth's surface. Because of this, FM broadcasts generally begin to fade at short distances from the station. Also, FM signals are easily affected by buildings, mountains, or other obstructions.

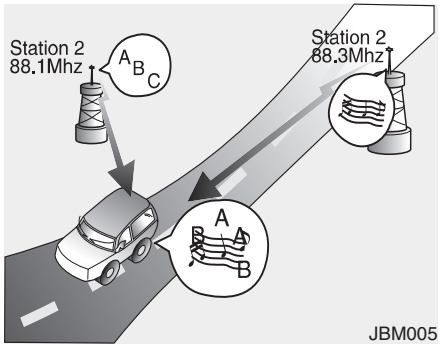
These can result in certain listening conditions which might lead you to believe a problem exists with your radio. The following conditions are normal and do not indicate radio trouble:

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 175



JBM004

- Fading - As your car moves away from the radio station, the signal will weaken and sound will begin to fade. When this occurs, we suggest that you select another stronger station.
- Flutter/Static - Weak FM signals or large obstructions between the transmitter and your radio can disturb the signal causing static or fluttering noises to occur. Reducing the treble level may lessen this effect until the disturbance clears.



JBM005

- Station Swapping - As a FM signal weakens, another more powerful signal near the same frequency may begin to play. This is because your radio is designed to lock onto the clearest signal. If this occurs, select another station with a stronger signal.
- Multi-Path Cancellation - Radio signals being received from several directions can cause distortion or fluttering. This can be caused by a direct and reflected signal from the same station, or by signals from two stations with close frequencies. If this occurs, select another station until the condition has passed.

Using a mobile phone or a two-way radio

When a mobile phone is used inside the vehicle, noise may be produced from the audio equipment. This does not mean that something is wrong with the audio equipment. In such a case, use the mobile phone at a place as far as possible from the audio equipment.

⚠ CAUTION

When using a communication system such a mobile phone or a radio set inside the vehicle, a separate external antenna must be fitted. When a mobile phone or a radio set is used with an internal antenna alone, it may interfere with the vehicle's electrical system and adversely affect safe operation of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Don't use a mobile phone when you are driving. You must stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 176

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not stare at the screen whilst driving. Staring at the screen for prolonged periods of time could lead to traffic accidents.**
- **Do not disassemble, assemble, or modify the audio system. Such acts could result in accidents, fire, or electric shock.**
- **Using the phone whilst driving may lead to a lack of attention of traffic conditions and increase the likelibonnet of accidents. Use the phone feature after parking the vehicle.**
- **Heed caution not to spill water or introduce foreign objects into the device. Such acts could lead to smoke, fire, or product malfunction.**
- **Please refrain from use if the screen is blank or no sound can be heard as these signs may indicate product malfunction. Continued use in such conditions could lead to accidents(fires, electric shock) or product malfunctions.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not touch the antenna during thunder or lightening as such acts may lead to lightning induced electric shock.**
- **Do not stop or park in parking-restricted areas to operate the product. Such acts could lead to traffic accidents.**
- **Use the system with the vehicle ignition turned on. Prolonged use with the ignition turned off could result in battery discharge.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Operating the device whilst driving could lead to accidents due to a lack of attention to external surroundings. First park the vehicle before operating the device.***
- ***Adjust the volume to levels that allow the driver to hear sounds from outside of the vehicle. Driving in a state where external sounds cannot be heard may lead to accidents.***
- ***Pay attention to the volume setting when turning the device on. A sudden output of extreme volume upon turning the device on could lead to hearing impairment. (Adjust the volume to a suitable levels before turning off the device.)***
- ***If you want to change the position of device installation, please inquire with your place of purchase or service maintenance centre. Technical expertise is required to install or disassemble the device.***

(Continued)

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 177

(Continued)

- *Turn on the car ignition before using this device. Do not operate the audio system for long periods of time with the ignition turned off as such operations may lead to battery discharge.*
- *Do not subject the device to severe shock or impact. Direct pressure onto the front side of the monitor may cause damage to the LCD or touch screen.*
- *When cleaning the device, make sure to turn off the device and use a dry and smooth cloth. Never use tough materials, chemical cloths, or solvents (alcohol, benzene, thinners, etc.) as such materials may damage the device panel or cause colour/quality deterioration*
- *Do not place beverages close to the audio system. Spilling beverages may lead to system malfunction.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *In case of product malfunction, please contact your place of purchase or After Service centre.*
- *Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.*

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 178

Caring for disc

- If the temperature inside the car is too high, open the car windows to ventilate before using the system.
- It is illegal to copy and use MP3/WMA files without permission. Use CDs that are created only by lawful means.
- Do not apply volatile agents, such as benzene and thinner, normal cleaners and magnetic sprays made for analogue disc onto CDs.
- To prevent the disc surface from getting damaged, hold CDs by the edges or the centre hole only.
- Clean the disc surface with a piece of soft cloth before playback (wipe it from the centre to the outside edge).
- Do not damage the disc surface or attach pieces of sticky tape or paper.
- Make certain only CDs are inserted into the CD player (Do not insert more than one CD at a time).
- Keep CDs in their cases after use to protect them from scratches or dirt.
- Depending on the type of CD-R/CD-RW CDs, certain CDs may not operate normally according to manufacturing companies or making and recording methods. In such circumstances, continued use may cause malfunctions to your audio system.

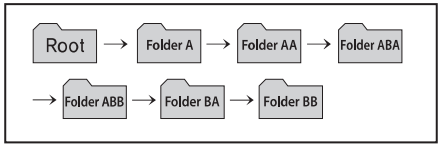
✻ NOTICE - Playing an Incompatible Copy Protected Audio CD

Some copy protected CDs, which do not comply with international audio CD standards (Red Book), may not play on your car audio. Please note that inabilities to properly play a copy protected CD may indicate that the CD is defective, not the CD player.

NOTE:

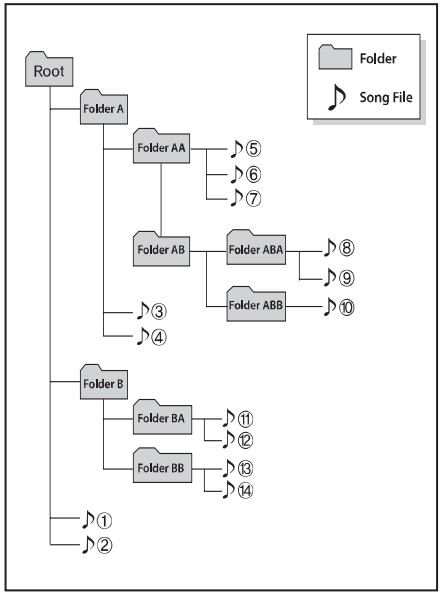
Order of playing files (folders) :

1. Song playing order : ① to ⑭ sequentially.



2. Folder playing order :

✻ If no song file is contained in the folder, that folder is not displayed.



JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 179

USING YOUR USB DEVICE

- To use an external USB device, make sure the device is not connected when starting up the vehicle. Connect the device after starting up.
- If you start the engine when the USB device is connected, it may damage the USB device. (USB flashdrives are very sensitive to electric shock.)
- If the engine is started up or turned off whilst the external USB device is connected, the external USB device may not work.
- It may not play inauthentic MP3 or WMA files.
  1) It can only play MP3 files with the compression rate between 8Kbps~320Kbps.
  2) It can only play WMA music files with the compression rate between 8Kbps~320Kbps.
- Take precautions for static electricity when connecting or disconnecting the external USB device.
- An encrypted MP3 PLAYER is not recognizable.
- Depending on the condition of the external USB device, the connected external USB device can be unrecognizable.
- When the formatted byte/sector setting of External USB device is not either 512BYTE or 2048BYTE, then the device will not be recognized.
- Use only a USB device formatted to FAT 12/16/32.
- USB devices without USB I/F authentication may not be recognizable.
- Make sure the USB connection terminal does not come in contact with the human body or other objects.
- If you repeatedly connect or disconnect the USB device in a short period of time, it may break the device.
- You may hear a strange noise when connecting or disconnecting a USB device.
- If you disconnect the external USB device during playback in USB mode, the external USB device can be damaged or may malfunction. Therefore, disconnect the external USB device when the audio is turned off or in another mode. (e.g, Radio, CD)
- Depending on the type and capacity of the external USB device or the type of the files stored in the device, there is a difference in the time taken for recognition of the device.
- Do not use the USB device for purposes other than playing music files.
- Playing videos through the USB is not supported.
- Use of USB accessories such as rechargers or heaters using USB I/F may lower performance or cause trouble.
- If you use devices such as a USB hub purchased separately, the vehicle's audio system may not recognize the USB device. In that case, connect the USB device directly to the multimedia terminal of the vehicle.
- If the USB device is divided by logical drives, only the music files on the highest-priority drive are recognized by car audio.
- Devices such as MP3 Player/ Mobile phone/Digital camera can be unrecognizable by standard USB I/F can be unrecognizable.

(Continued)

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 180

(Continued)

- Charging through the USB may not be supported in some mobile devices.
- USB HDD or USB types that liable to connection failures due to vehicle vibrations are not supported. (i-stick type)
- Some non-standard USB devices (METAL COVER TYPE USB) can be unrecognizable.
- Some USB flash memory readers (such as CF, SD, micro SD, etc.) or external-HDD type devices can be unrecognizable.
- Music files protected by DRM (DIGITAL RIGHTS MANAGEMENT) are not recognizable.

✻ NOTICE - USB Jack Damage

- **The data in the USB memory may be lost whilst using this audio. Always back up important data on a personal storage device.**
- **Please avoid using USB memory products which can be used as key chains or mobile phone accessories as they could cause damage to the USB jack. Please make certain only to use plug type connector products as shown below.**



JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 181

■ **CD Player : AC110A2EE/AC100A2EE**





✻No **Bluetooth** logo will be shown if the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology feature is not supported.

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 182



SYSTEM CONTROLLERS AND FUNCTIONS

❊ Display and settings may differ depending on the selected audio.

Audio Head Unit

(1) ▲ (EJECT)

Ejects the disc.

(2) RADIO

Changes to FM/AM mode.

Each time the key is pressed,the mode is changed in order of FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟ FMA ➟ AM ➟ AMA.

❊ In Setup>Display, the radio pop up screen will be displayed when [Mode Pop up] is turned (On).

When the pop up screen is displayed, use the ◎ TUNE knob or keys 1 ~ 6 to select the desired mode.

(3) MEDIA

Changes to CD, USB MP3, iPod, BT MP3, AUX modes.

Each time the key is pressed, the mode is changed in order of CD, USB, iPod, AUX, My Music, BT Audio.

❊ In Setup>Display, the media pop up screen will be displayed when [Mode Pop up] is turned (On) .

When the pop up screen is displayed, use the ◎ TUNE knob or keys 1 ~ 5 to select the desired mode.

(4) PHONE

Operates Phone Screen

❊ When a phone is not connected, the connection screen is displayed.

(5) ∧ SEEK , ∨ TRACK

Radio Mode : Automatically searches for broadcast frequencies.

CD, USB, iPod, My Music modes

- Shortly press the key (under 0.8 seconds): Moves to next or previous song (file)
- Press and hold the key (over 0.8 seconds): Rewinds or fast-forwards the current song.



(6) ⏻ / ▬ knob

◎ Power Knob: Turns power On/Off by pressing the knob

◎ Volume Knob: Sets volume by turning the knob left/right

(7) FM

Changes to FM mode.

Each time the key is pressed, the mode is changed in order of FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟ FMA.

(8) AM

Changes to AM mode.

Each time the key is pressed, the mode is changed in order of AM ➟ AMA.

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 183



(9) 1 ~ 6 (Preset)

Radio Mode: Saves frequencies (channels) or receives saved frequencies (channels)

CD, USB, iPod, My Music mode

- 1 RPT : Repeat
- 2 RDM : Random

In the Radio, Media, Setup, and Menu pop up screen, the number menu is selected.

(10) PTY ^, FOLDER v

MP3, CD, USB mode : Folder Search

FM : RDS Program Type Search

(11) ☾

Each time the button is pressed sets screen Off ➟ Screen On ➟ Screen Off

❉ Audio operation is maintained and only the screen will be turned Off. In the screen Off state, press any key to turn the screen On again.

(12) TA/SCAN

Radio Mode

- Press and hold the key (over 0.8 seconds): Previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each

CD, USB, iPod mode

- Press and hold the key (over 0.8 seconds): Previews each song (file) for 10 seconds each

❉ Press the TA/SCAN key (over 0.8 seconds) again to continue listening to the current song (file).

(13) MEMU

Displays menus for the current mode.

(14) SETUP

Press the SETUP key : Moves to the Display, Sound, Phone(Option), System setting modes



❉ If the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology feature is supported



(15) ◉ TUNE knob

Radio mode : Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right

CD, USB, iPod mode: Searches songs (files) by turning the knob left/right

❉ When the desired song is displayed, press the knob to play the song.

Moves focus in all selection menus and selects menus

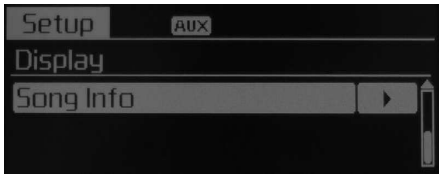
JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 184

DISPLAY SETTINGS



Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Display] through ◎ TUNE knob or 1 RPT key ▸ Select menu through ◎ TUNE knob





Mode Pop up

[Mode Pop up] ▸ Changes On selection mode

- During On state, press the RADIO or MEDIA key to display the mode change pop up screen.

Scroll Text

[Scroll Text] ▸ Set On/Off

- On : Maintains scroll
- Off : Scrolls only one (1) time.

Song Info

When playing an MP3 file, select the desired display info from 'Folder/File' or 'Album/Artist/Song'.



SOUND SETTINGS

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Sound] through ◎ TUNE knob or 2 RDM key ▸ Select menu through ◎ TUNE knob





JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 185

Audio Settings

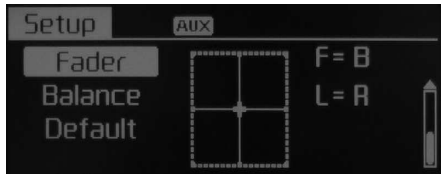
This menu allows you to set the 'Bass, Middle, Treble' and the Sound Fader and Balance.

Select [Audio Settings]▸Select menu through ◉ TUNE knob▸Turn ◉ TUNE knob left/right to set

- Bass, Middle, Treble : Selects the sound tone.
- Fader, Balance : Moves the sound fader and balance.
- Default : Restores default settings.

❊ Return : Whilst adjusting values, re-pressing the ◉ TUNE knob will restore the parent menu.





Power Bass

This is a sound system feature that provides live bass.

Select [Power Bass] ▸Set (On)/(Off) through ◉ TUNE knob



Speed Dependent Volume Control

This feature is used to automatically control the volume level according to the speed of the vehicle.

Select [SDVC]▸Set in 4 levels [Off/Low/Mid/High] of ◉ TUNE knob



Volume Dialogue

Adjusts voice recognition volume.

Select [Volume Dialogue]▸Set volume of ◉ TUNE knob

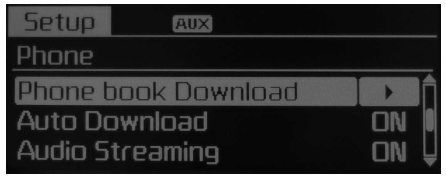


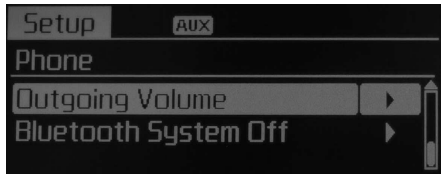
JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 186

PHONE SETUP (if equipped)

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] through ◎ TUNE knob or 3 key ▸ Select menu through ◎ TUNE knob







Pair Phone

To pair a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone, authentication and connection processes are first required. As a result, you cannot pair your mobile phone whilst driving the vehicle. First park your vehicle before use.

Select [Pair Phone] ▸ Set through ◎ TUNE knob

① Search for device names as displayed on your mobile phone and connect.



② Input the passkey displayed on the screen. (Passkey : 0000)

❊ The device name and passkey will be displayed on the screen for up to 3 minutes. If pairing is not completed within the 3 minutes, the mobile phone pairing process will automatically be canceled.

③ Pairing completion is displayed.

❊ In some mobile phones, pairing will automatically be followed by connection.

❊ It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled mobile phones.

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 187

Phone List

The names of up to 5 paired phones will be displayed.

A [▶] is displayed in front of the currently connected phone.



Select the desired name to setup the selected phone.

Connecting a phone

Select [Phone List]▶Select mobile phone through ◎ TUNE knob▶Select [Connect Phone]



① Select a mobile phone that is not currently connected.
② Connect the selected mobile phone.
③ Connection completion is displayed.

❊ If a phone is already connected, disconnect the currently connected phone and select a new phone to connect.

Disconnecting a connected phone

Select [Phone List]▶Select mobile phone through ◎ TUNE knob▶Select [Disconnect Phone]

① Select the currently connected mobile phone.



② Disconnect the selected mobile phone.
③ Disconnection completion is displayed.

Changing connection sequence (Priority)

This is used to change the order (priority) of automatic connection for the paired mobile phones.

Select [Phone List]▶Select mobile phone through ◎ TUNE knob▶Select [Priority]

① Select [③ Phone] in the [Setup]
② Select [Phone List]
③ From the paired phones, select the phone desired for No.1 priority.
④ Select [② Priority]

❊ Once the connection sequence (priority) is changed, the new no. 1 priority mobile phone will be connected.
- when the no. 1 priority cannot be connected: Automatically attempts to connect the most recently connected phone.
- Cases when the most recently connected phone cannot be connected: Attempts to connect in the order in which paired phones are listed.

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 188

Delete

Select [Phone List]▸Select mobile phone through ◉ TUNE knob▸Select [Delete]

① Select the desired mobile phone.
② Delete the selected mobile phone.
③ Deletion completion is displayed.
❊ When attempting to delete a currently connected phone, the phone is first disconnected.

- When you delete a mobile phone, It's phone book will also be erased.
- For stable *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology communication, delete the mobile phone from the audio and also delete the audio from your mobile phone

Phone book Download

This feature is used to download a phone book and call histories into the audio system.

Select [Phone]▸Select [① History] [② P.BOOK] through ◉ TUNE knob

- The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones.
- If a different operation is performed whilst a phone book is being downloaded, downloading will be discontinued. The phone book already downloaded will be saved.
- When downloading a new phone book, delete all previously saved phone book before starting download.

Auto Download

When connecting a mobile phone, it is possible to automatically download a new phone book and Call Histories.

Select [Auto Download]▸Set (On) / (Off) through ◉ TUNE knob

Audio Streaming

Songs (files) saved in your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone can be played through the audio system.

Select [Audio Streaming]▸Set (On) / (Off) through ◉ TUNE knob

- The *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio streaming feature may not be supported in some mobile phones.

Outgoing Volume

This is used to set the volume of your voice as heard by the other party whilst on a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled handsfree call.

Select [Outgoing Volume]▸Set volume through ◉ TUNE knob

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 189

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology System Off

This feature is used when you do not wish to use the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system.

Select [*Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology System Off]▶Set through ◎ TUNE knob

❈ If a phone is already connected, disconnect the currently connected phone and turn the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system off.

Using the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology System

To use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology when the system is currently off, follow these next steps.

• Turning On *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology through the PHONE Key

Press the PHONE key▶Screen Guidance

❈ Moves to the screen where *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology functions can be used and displays guidance.

• Turning On *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology through the SETUP Key

Press the SETUP key▶Select [Phone] through ◎ TUNE knob or 3 key

① A screen asking whether to turn on *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology will be displayed.

② On the screen, select YES to turn on *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology and display guidance.

❈ If the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system is turned on, the system will automatically try to connect the most recently connected *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology connection may become intermittently disconnected in some mobile phones. Follow these next steps to try again.

1) Turn the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology function within the mobile phone ON/OFF and try to connect again.
2) Turn the mobile phone power ON/OFF and try to connect again.
3) Completely remove the mobile phone battery, reboot, and then try to connect again.
4) Reboot the audio system and try to connect again
5) Delete all paired devices in your mobile phone and the audio system and pair again for use.

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 190

SYSTEM SETTINGS

If the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology feature is supported



Press the SETUP key▸Select [④ System] through tune knob or 4 key▸Select menu through ◎ TUNE knob

If the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology feature is not supported



Press the SETUP key▸Select [③ System] through tune knob or 3 key▸Select menu through ◎ TUNE knob





Memory Information

Displays currently used memory and total system memory.

Select [Memory Information]▸OK

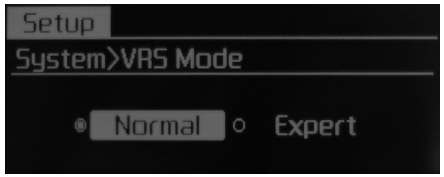
The currently used memory is displayed on the left side whilst the total system memory is displayed on the right side.



VRS Mode

This feature is used to change voice command feedback between Normal and Expert modes.

Select [VRS Mode]▸Set through ◎ TUNE knob



- Normal : This mode is for beginner users and provides detailed instructions during voice command operation.
- Expert : This mode is for expert users and omits some information during voice command operation. (When using Expert mode, guidance instructions can be heard through the [Help] or [Menu] commands.

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 191

Language

This menu is used to set the display and voice recognition language.

Select [Language] ▸ Set through ◉ TUNE knob



❊ The system will reboot after the language is changed.

❊ Language support by region

- Deutsch, English(UK), Français, Italiano, Español, Nederlands, Svenska, Dansk, Русский, Polski

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 192

RADIO

Changing RADIO mode



Press the RADIO (FM , AM)key to change the mode in order

RADIO : FM1➟FM2 ➟ FMA ➟ AM ➟AMA

FM : FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟FMA

AM : AM ➟ AMA

- [Mode Pop up] On state : Displays the change radio mode pop up screen. Whilst the pop up screen is displayed, you can change the radio mode through the tune knob or 1 ~ 5 keys.

Adjust Volume

Turn the ◎ VOL knob left/right to adjust the volume.

SEEK

Press the RADIO (FM , AM)key ▸ ∧ SEEK , ∨TRACK

- Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds): Changes the frequency.
- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds): Automatically searches for the next frequency.

Preset SEEK

Press the RADIO (FM , AM) key ▸ 1 ~ 6

- Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds): Plays the frequency saved in the corresponding key.
- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds): Pressing and holding the desired key from 1 ~ 6 will save the currently playing broadcast to the selected key and sound a BEEP.

SCAN

Press the RADIO (FM , AM) key ▸ TA/SCAN

- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds): The broadcast frequency increases and previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each. After scanning all frequencies, returns and plays the current broadcast frequency.

Selecting through manual search

Turn the ◎ TUNE knob left/right to adjust the frequency.

- FM : Changes by 50KHz
- AM : Changes by 9khz

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 193

Traffic Announcement (TA)

Shortly pressing the TA/SCAN key (under 0.8 seconds): Set (On)/(Off) TA Traffic Announcement) mode.

PTY Up/Down

- Press the PTY ^, FOLDER v key when searching PTY in RDS Broadcasting Program Type selection.

MENU

Within MENU key are the AST, AF, Region and News functions.



AST (Auto Store)

Press the MENU key▸Set [①AST] through ◉ TUNE knob or 1 RPT key.

Select AST (Auto Store) to save frequencies with superior reception to presets 1 ~ 6. If no frequencies are received, then the most recently received frequency will be broadcast.

✻ Saves only to the Preset memory 1 ~ 6 of FMA or AMA mode.

AF (Alternative Frequency)

Press the MENU key▸Set [②AF] through ◉ TUNE knob or 2 RDM key.

The Alternative Frequency option can be turned On/Off.

Region

Press the MENU key▸Set [③Region] through ◉ TUNE knob or 3 key.

The Region option can be turned On/Off.

News

Press the MENU key▸Set [④News] through ◉ TUNE knob or 4 key.

The News option can be turned On/Off.

Info Volume

Info Volume refers to the sound volume upon receiving News or Traffic information.

The info volume can be controlled by turning the ◉ VOL knob left/right whilst a news or traffic broadcast is playing.

✻ AF, Region, and News are RDS Radio menus.

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 194

BASIC METHOD OF USE : Audio CD / MP3 CD / USB / iPod / My Music

Press the MEDIA key to change the mode in order of CD➟USB(iPod)➟AUX ➟My Music➟BT Audio.

The folder/file name is displayed on the screen.



❈ The CD is automatically played when a CD is inserted.

❈ The USB music is automatically played when a USB is connected.

Song Infomation

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [1 Display] through the TUNE knob or 1 RPT key ▸ Select [Song Info] ▸ Media Display

- [Song Info] : The screen display info can be changed to Album/Artist/Song name.



Repeat

Whilst song (file) is playing ▸ 1 RPT (RPT) key

Audio CD, MP3 CD, USB, iPod, My Music mode: RPT on screen

- To repeat one song (Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds)): Repeats the current song.

MP3 CD, USB mode: FLD.RPT on screen

- To repeat folder (Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds)): repeats all files within the current folder.

❈ Press the 1 RPT key again to turn off repeat.

Random

Whilst song (file) is playing ▸ 2 RDM (RDM) key

Audio CD, My Music mode: RDM on screen

- Random (Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds)): Plays all songs in random order.

MP3 CD, USB mode: FLD.RDM on screen

- Folder Random (Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds)): Plays all files within the current folder in random order.

iPod mode: ALB RDM on screen

- Album Random (Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds)): Plays all files within albums of the current category in random order.

MP3 CD, USB, iPod mode: ALL RDM on screen

- All Random (pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds)): Plays all files in random order.

❈ Press the 2 RDM key again to turn off repeat.

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 195

Changing Song/File

Whilst song (file) is playing▶ ∨TRACK key

- Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds): Plays the current song from the beginning.

❊ If the ∨TRACK key is pressed again within 1 second, the previous song is played.

- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds): Rewinds the song.

Whilst song (file) is playing▶ ∧ SEEK key

- Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds): Plays the next song.
- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds): Fast forwards the song.

Scan

Whilst song (file) is playing▶ TA/SCAN key

- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds) : Scans all songs for 10 seconds starting from the next song.

❊ Press the TA/SCAN key again to turn off.

❊ The SCAN function is not supported in iPod mode.

Folder Search : MP3 CD, USB Mode

Whilst file is playing▶ PTY ∧ (Folder Up) key

- Searches the next folder.

Whilst file is playing▶ FOLDER∨ (Folder Down) key

- Searches the parent folder.

❊ If a folder is selected by pressing the ◎ TUNE knob, the first file within the selected folder will be played.

❊ In iPod mode, moves to the Parent Folder.

Searching Songs (File)

- Turning ◎ TUNE knob : Searches for songs (files)
- Pressing ◎ TUNE knob : Plays selected song (file).

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 196

MENU : Audio CD

Press the CD MP3 mode MENU key to set the Repeat, Random, Information features.



Repeat

Press the MENU key▸Set [①RPT] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 1 RPT key to repeat the current song.

❊ Press the 1 RPT key again to turn off.

Random

Press the MENU key▸Set [②RDM] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 2 RDM key to randomly play songs within the current folder.

❊ Press the 2 RDM key again to turn off.

Information

Press the MENU key▸Set [③Info] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 3 key to display information of the current song.

❊ Press the MENU key to turn off info display.

MENU : MP3 CD / USB

Press the CD MP3 mode MENU key to set the Repeat, Folder Random, Folder Repeat, All Random, Information, and Copy features.



Repeat

Press the MENU key▸Set [①RPT] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 1 RPT key to repeat the current song.

Folder Random

Press the MENU key▸Set [②F.RDM] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 2 RDM key to randomly play songs within the current folder.

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 197

Folder Repeat

Press the MENU key▸Set [③F.RPT] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 3 key to repeat songs within the current folder.

All Random

Press the MENU key▸Set [④A.RDM] through the ◎TUNE knob or 4 key to randomly play all songs within the CD.

Information

Press the MENU key▸Set [⑤Info] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 5 key to display information of the current song.

❈ Press the MENU key to turn off info display.

Copy

Press the MENU key▸Set [⑥Copy] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 6 key.

- This is used to copy the current song into My Music. You can play the copied Music in My Music mode.

❈ If another key is pressed whilst copying is in progress, a pop up asking you whether to cancel copying is displayed.

❈ If another media is connected or inserted (USB, CD, iPod, AUX) whilst copying is in progress, copying is canceled.

❈ Music will not be played whilst copying is in progress.

MENU : iPod

In iPod mode, press the MENU key to set the Repeat, Album Random, All Random, Information and Search features.



Repeat

Press the MENU key▸Set [①RPT] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 1 RPT key to repeat the current song.

Album Random

Press the MENU key▸Set [②AlbRDM] through the ◎ TUNE knob or 2 RDM key.

Plays albums within the currently playing category in random order.

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 198

All Random

Press the MENU key▸Set [③A.RDM] through the TUNE knob or 3 key.

Plays all songs within the currently playing category in random order.

Information

Press the MENU key▸Set [④Info] through the TUNE knob or 4 key.

Displays information of the current song.

Search

Press the MENU key▸Set [⑤Search] through the TUNE knob or 5 key.

- Some iPod models may not support communication protocol and files may not properly play.

Supported iPod models:

- iPod Mini®
- iPod 4th(Photo) ~ 6th(Classic) generation
- iPod Nano® 1st~4th generation
- iPod Touch® 1st~2nd generation

- The order of search or playback of songs in the iPod can be different from the order searched in the audio system.
- If the iPod is disabled due to its own malfunction, reset the iPod. (Reset: Refer to iPod manual)
- An iPod may not operate normally on low battery.
- Some iPod devices, such as the iPhone, can be connected through the -interface. The device must have audio *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology capability (such as for stereo headphone *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology). The device can play, but it will not be controlled by the audio system.
- To use iPod features within the audio, use the cable provided upon purchasing an iPod device.
- Skipping or improper operation may occur depending on the characteristics of your iPod/Phone device.
- If your iPhone is connected to both the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology and USB, the sound may not be properly played. In your iPhone, select the Dock connector or *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology to change the sound output (source).
- When connecting iPod with the iPod Power Cable, insert the connector to the multimedia socket completely. If not inserted completely, communications between iPod and audio may be interrupted.
- When adjusting the sound effects of the iPod and the audio system, the sound effects of both devices will overlap and might reduce or distort the quality of the sound.
- Deactivate (turn off) the equalizer function of an iPod when adjusting the audio system's volume, and turn off the equalizer of the audio system when using the equalizer of an iPod.
- When not using iPod with car audio, detach the iPod cable from iPod. Otherwise, iPod may remain in accessory mode, and may not work properly.

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 199

MENU : My Music

In My Music mode, press the MENU key to set the Repeat, Random, Information, Delete, Delete All, and Delete Selection features.



Repeat

Press the MENU key▸Set [①RPT] through the TUNE knob or 1 RPT key.

Repeats the currently playing song.

Random

Press the MENU key▸Set [②RDM] through the TUNE knob or 2 RDM key.

Plays all songs within the currently playing folder in random order.

Information

Press the MENU key▸Set [③Info] through the TUNE knob or 3 key.

Displays information of the current song.

❊ Press the MENU key to turn off info display.

Delete

Press the MENU key▸Set [④Delete] through the TUNE knob or 4 key.

Deletes currently playing file



In the play screen, pressing delete will delete the currently playing song.

Deletes file from list

① Select the file you wish to delete by using the TUNE knob.

② Press the MENU key and select the delete menu to delete the selected file.

Delete All

Press the MENU key▸Set [⑤Del.All] through the TUNE knob or 5 key.

Deletes all songs of My Music.

Delete Selection

Press the MENU key▸Set [⑥Del.Sel] through the TUNE knob or 6 key.

Songs within My Music are selected and deleted.

① Select the songs you wish to delete from the list.



② After selecting, press the MENU key and select the delete menu.



JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 200

✻ NOTICE FOR USING THE My Music

- **Even if memory is available, a maximum of 6,000 songs can be stored.**
- **The same song can be copied up to 1,000 times.**
- **Memory info can be checked in the System menu of Setup.**

AUX

AUX is used to play external MEDIA currently connected with the AUX terminal.

AUX mode will automatically start when an external device is connected with the AUX terminal.

If an external device is connected, you can also press the MEDIA key to change to AUX mode.



✻ AUX mode cannot be started unless there is an external device connected to the AUX terminal.

✻ Fully insert the AUX cable into the AUX terminal for use.

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 201

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology AUDIO

Before using *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio features

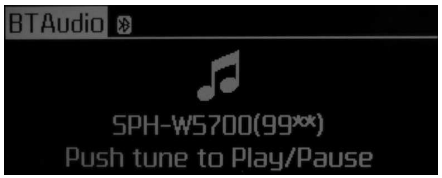
- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio may not be supported depending on the compatibility of your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone.
- In order to use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio, you must first pair and connect the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone.
- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio can be used only when the [Audio Streaming] of Phone is turned (On).

❈ Setting *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio Streaming : Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] through the tune knob or 3 key ▶ Select [Audio Streaming] through the ◎ TUNE knob ▶ Set (On)/(Off)

Starting *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio

- Press the MEDIA key to change the mode in order of CD➟USB➟AUX➟My Music➟BT Audio.
- If BT Audio is selected, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio will start playing.

❈ Audio may not automatically start playing in some mobile phones.



Using the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio features

• Play / Stop

Press the ◎ TUNE knob to play and pause the current song.

❈ The previous song / next song / play / pause functions may not be supported in some mobile phones.

Changing Song/File

Whilst song (file) is playing ▶ ∨TRACK key

- Press the ∨TRACK key : Plays the current song from the beginning.

❈ If the ∨TRACK key is pressed again within 1 second, the previous song is played.

Whilst song (file) is playing ▶ ∧ SEEK key

- Press the ∧ SEEK key : Plays the next song.

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 202

PHONE (if equipped)

Before using the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone features

- In order to use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone, you must first pair and connect the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone.
- If the mobile phone is not paired or connected, it is not possible to enter Phone mode. Once a phone is paired or connected, the guidance screen will be displayed.
- If Priority is set upon vehicle ignition (IGN/ACC ON), the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected. Even if you are outside, the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected once you are in the vicinity of the vehicle. If you do not want automatic *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone connection, set the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology to OFF.

Making a call using the Steering remote controller



(1) VOLUME button : Raises or lowers speaker volume.
(2) MUTE button : Mutes audio Volume during a call.
(3) button : Activates voice recognition.
(4) button : Places and transfers calls.
(5) button : Ends calls or cancels functions.

Check call history and making call

① Shortly press (under 0.8 seconds) the key on the steering remote controller.
② The call history list will be displayed on the screen.
③ Press the key again to connect a call to the selected number.

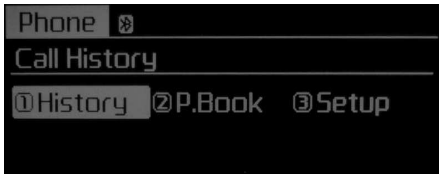
Redialing the most recently called number

① Press and hold (over 0.8 seconds) the key on the steering remote controller.
② The most recently called number is redialed.

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 203

Phone MENU

Press the PHONE key to display three menus (Call History, Phone book, Phone Setup).



Call History

Press the PHONE key▶Set [① History] through the TUNE knob or 1 RPT key.

The call history is displayed and can be used to select a number and make a call.

If call history does not exist, a screen asking whether to download call history is displayed. (The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones)

Phone Book

Press the PHONE key▶Set [② P. Book] through the TUNE knob or 2 RDM key.

The Phone book is displayed and can be used to select a number and make a call.

- ❊ If more than one number is saved to one contact, then a screen showing the mobile phone number, house and office number is displayed. Select the desired number to make the call.
- ❊ If Phone book does not exist, a screen asking whether to download Phone book is displayed. (The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones)

Phone Setup

Press the PHONE key▶Set [③ Setup] through the TUNE knob or 3 key.

The *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone setup screen is displayed. For more information, refer to “Phone Setup”.

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 204

NOTE:

If you need more information about Kia's *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology. Contact kia website "www.kia.com" (OWNERS>General Info>*Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology).

What is *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology?

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology that allows multiple devices to be connected in a short range, low-powered devices like hands-free, stereo headset, wireless remote controller, etc. For more information, visit the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology website at www.Bluetooth.com

- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology features can be used only when the mobile phone has been paired and connected with the device. For more information on pairing and connecting *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology endbled mobile phones, refer to the "Phone Setup" section.
- When a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology mobile phone is connected, a ( ) icon will appear at the top of the screen. If a ( ) icon is not displayed, this indicates that a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled device has not been connected. Your must connect the device before use. For more information on *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology mobile phones, refer to the "Phone Setup" section.
- Pairing and connecting a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone will work only when the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology option within your mobile phone has been turned on. (Methods of turning on the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled feature may differ depending on the mobile phone.)
- In some mobile phones, starting the ignition whilst talking through *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology hands-free call will result in the call becoming disconnected. (Switch the call back to your mobile phone when starting the ignition.)
- Some features may not be supported in some *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone and devices.
- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology functions may operate unstably depending on the communication state.
- Do not use a mobile phone or perform *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology settings (e.g. pairing a phone) whilst driving.
- Some *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology-enabled phones may not be recognized by the system or fully compatible with the system.
- Before using *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology related features of the audio system, refer your phone's User's Manual for phone-side *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology operations.
- The phone must be paired to the audio system to use *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology related features.
- You will not be able to use the hands-free feature when your phone (in the car) is outside of the mobile service area (e.g. in a tunnel, in a underground, in a mountainous area, etc.).

(Continued)

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 205

(continued)

- If the mobile phone signal is poor or the vehicles interior noise is too loud, it may be difficult to hear the other person's voice during a call.
- Do not place the phone near or inside metallic objects, otherwise communications with *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system or mobile service stations can be disturbed.
- Whilst a phone is connected through *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology your phone may discharge quicker than usual for additional *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology-related operations.
- Some mobile phones or other devices may cause interference noise or malfunction to audio system. In this case, store the device in a different location may resolve the situation.
- Please save your phone name in English, or your phone name may not be displayed correctly.
- If Priority is set upon vehicle ignition(IGN/ACC ON), the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected.
  Even if you are outside, the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected once you are in the vicinity of the vehicle.
- If you do not want automatic *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology power off.

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 206

VOICE COMMAND (if equipped)

- The voice recognition feature of this product supports recognition of the commands listed within this user's manual.
- Whilst using voice recognition, operating the steering remote control or the device will terminate voice recognition and allow you to manually operate desired functions.
- Position of the microphone is above the head of the driver's seat.
- Voice recognition may not function properly due to outside noise. The following conditions can affect the performance of Voice Recognition:

- When the windows and sunroof are open
- When the heating/cooling system is on
- When passing a tunnel
- When driving on rugged and uneven roads

- After downloading *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone book, the system requires some times to convert the phone book into voice information. During this time, voice recognition may not operate properly.
- Upon inputting your phone book, special symbols and numbers cannot be recognized by voice. For example, "# John Doe%&" will be recognized as "John Doe".

Starting Voice Command

- To start voice command, shortly press the key on the steering wheel remote controller.
- If voice command is in [Normal Mode], then the system will say "Please say a command. Beep"

❈ If voice command is in [Expert Mode], then the system will only say a "Beep-"

❈ Setting Voice command [Normal Mode]/[Expert Mode]:
Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [4System] through the TUNE knob or 4 key ▶ Select [Prompt Feedback] through the TUNE knob ▶ Set [Normal Mode]/[Expert Mode]

- Say the voice command.

- For proper voice recognition, say the voice command after the guidance message and the "Beep" sound.

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 207

Skipping the Guidance Message

Whilst the guidance message is being stated, shortly press the key (under 0.8 seconds) to discontinue the guidance message and sound the “beep”.

After the “beep”, say the voice command.



Ending Voice Command

- Whilst using voice command, press and hold the key (over 0.8 seconds) to end voice command.
- Whilst using voice command, pressing the steering wheel remote controller or a different key will end voice command.
- In a state where the system is waiting for your voice command, say “cancel” or “end” to end voice command.
- In a state where the system is waiting for your voice command, shortly press the key (under 0.8 seconds) to end voice command.

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 208

Monday		Monday
Tuesday		Tuesday
Wednesday		Wednesday
Thursday		Thursday
Friday		Friday
Saturday		Saturday
Sunday		Sunday
Use tune knob		Use tune knob
Volume		Volume
Max		Volume maxinmum
Min		Volume mininmum
AST (Auto store)		Automatically selects and saves channels
No Media		Empty media file in CD or USB
No File		Empty media file in CD or USB
Empty File		Empty media file in MY MUSIC
Info (Information)		Information of playing files
Artist		Artist name, MP3/CD file currently being played
Title		Song name, MP3/CD file currently being played
Album		Album name, MP3/CD file currently being played
Genres		"Genres" is keyword for searching mode of playlists for iPod
Composers		"Composers" is filtering keyword for searching mode of playlists for iPod

Playlists		"Playlists" is filtering keyword for searching mode of playlists for iPod
Songs		"Songs" is filtering keyword for searching mode of playlists for iPod
Audiobooks		"Audiobooks" is filtering keyword for searching mode of playlists for iPod
Podcasts		"Podcasts" is filtering keyword for searching mode of playlists for iPod
RPT (Repeat)		Audio play mode of Reapeat
F.RPT (Folder Repeat)		Audio play mode of Folder Reapeat
RDM (Random)		Audio play mode of Random
F.RDM(Folder Random)		Audio play mode of Folder Random
A.RDM (All Random)		Audio play mode of All Random
COPY		Copy MP3 file to flash memory for MY MUSIC
Cancel copy		Cancel copy mode
File copied		Completed File copy
Free		Free size of memory
Copy failed		Copy failed
Search		Search files
Loading CD		Loading CD
Reading CD		Reading CD
Reading Error		Reading Error
Mechanism Error		Mechanism Error
Ejecting CD		Ejecting CD

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 209

Audio CD		Audio CD
Track		Audio CD song order
Reading Media		Reading Media
Not supported		Not supported file format
Empty iPod		Empty iPod, iPod don't have playable data
Communication Error		Communication error between audio and iPod or usb
Delete		Delete the paired phone or files in MY MUSIC
Del.All		Delete all files
Del.Sel		Select files to delete
Return		Return menu
List		List files or paired phones
Select Files		Select Files
Memory is full, Delete files		Memory is full, Delete files
Over 6000 files. can not be copied		Over 6000 files. can not be copied
Over 1000 same files can not be copied		Over 1000 same files can not be copied
System will automati cally switchoff after 1 hour with ignition off		System will automatically switchoff after 1 hour with ignition off
Battery discharge Start the engine		Battery discharge Start the engine
Setup		Setup
Display		Setup display mode

Mode Pop up		This function is used to select popup menu on or off
Scroll text		This function is used to display characters longer than the LCD text displays
Song Info		Setup display information being played
Folder/File		Display Folder/file name, file currently being played
Album/Artist/Song		Display Album/Artist/Song name, file currently being played
Sound		Setup sound mode
Audio Settings		Setup Audio settings that consist BASS,Middle,Treble,Fader and Balance
PowerBass		This function is used to improve bass sound quality
Speed Dependent Vol.		Automatically adjust the volume according to the car speed
Volume Dialogue		Adjust volume level of Dialogue
Bass		Bass is sound of low frequency. It can be adjusted sound by user
Middle		Middle is sound of middle frequency. It can be adjusted sound by user
Treble		Treble is sound of high frequency. It can be adjusted sound by user

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 210

Fader		Fader is sound positon between FRONT and REAR. It can be adjusted sound by user
Balance		Balance is sound positon between Right and Left. It can be adjusted sound by user
Default		This function is used to initialize setting value
System		Setup system or system information
Memory Information		Display used memory size
VRS Mode		Setup Voice command mode
Normal		Normal mode. This function is used to set default value of voice recognition factor
Expert		Expert mode. This function is used to set exercised value of voice recognition factor
Language		This function is used to select user language
Deutsch		Deutsch
English(UK)		English(UK)
Français		French
Italiano		Italian
Español		Spanish
Nederlands		dutch
Svenska		swedish

Dansk		Danish
Русский		Polish
Polski		Russian
The system will be rebooted		The system will be rebooted
Please change language when ignition ON		Please change language when ignition ON
Bluetooth not ready Please wait		You can use BT System for a moment Because BT system is being initialized
Add a new Bluetooth device from your phone		Add a new *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device from your phone
Processing Bluetooth Please try later		You can use BT System for a moment Because BT system is being initialized or processing other command
Incoming Call		Receivng phone
Call Ended		Call Ended
Call Rejected		When there is unwanted call, You push the button on the steering remote controller
Unknown		"Unknown" mean Headunit or phone don't have any information about phone number
Call is not possible		Call is not possible
MIC Mute		Microphone mute
Activate Bluetooth System?		Activate *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology System
Bluetooth System activated		*Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system activated

JD RHD 4b(172~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:59 AM Page 211

No phone paired. Pair a phone?		Empty phone paired. Pair a phone?
No connected phone. Connect a phone?		No connected phone. Connect a phone?
Phone book is empty. Download?		Phone book is empty
Available only when vehicle is stationary		This is a warning, Do not enter the MENU about BT Setup. When vehicle is moving
Listening...		Listen to instruction of audio
Phone book Download		Downloading phone book from phone paired to audio
Auto Download		After pairing phone, audio system automatically download phone book
Audio Streaming		After pairing phone, audio system can support *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology streaming mode
Outgoing Volume		Set outoging volume "0 ~ 5"
Bluetooth System Off		Turn off *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology System
Bluetooth System ON		Turn on *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology System
Device :		*Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device name
Passkey		Passkey for pairing a phone
Pairing complete		Pair a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone to the audio

Pairing failed		Audio & Phone connection have failed
Already 5 devices paired. Delete a paired phone?		All 5 phones have already been paired. Delete a previously paired phone to pair new phone
Connection complete		Audio & Phone connection have succeed
Connection failed. Retry?		Audio & Phone connection have failed
Priority changed		Changed priority about the registered phones
Overwrite previous phone book?		Overwrite previous phone book information
Phone does not support Phone book download		Phone does not support Phone book download
No connected Bluetooth device		There are phone in the connection list
Phone does not support Bluetooth audio		But it was actually not connected BT pairing
Downloading stopped		Downloading stopped

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 212

■ **CD Player : AC111A2EE**



JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 213

SYSTEM CONTROLLERS AND FUNCTIONS

Audio Head Unit



(1) ▲ (EJECT)
Ejects the disc.

(2) RADIO
Switches to Radio(FM/AM) mode.
Each time the key is pressed,the mode is changed in order of FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟ FMA ➟ AM ➟ AMA.

(3) MEDIA
Switches to Media mode.
Each time the key is pressed, the mode is changed in order of CD, USB(iPod) AUX, My Music, BT Audio.

(4) PHONE
Switches to Phone mode.
❊ When a phone is not connected, the connection screen is displayed.

(5) PWR/VOL knob
◉ Power : Press to turn power on/off.
◉ Volume : Turn left/right to control volume.

(6) SEEK TRACK
When pressed shortly(under 0.8 seconds)
- Radio mode : plays previous/next frequency.
- Media (CD/USB/iPod/My Music) modes : changes the track, Song(file)

When pressed and held (0.8 seconds)
- Radio mode : continuously changes the frequency. Upon release, plays the current frequency
- Media(CD/USB/iPod/My Music) modes : rewinds or fast forwards the track or file
- During a Handsfree call, controls the call volume.

(7) PTY FOLDER
RDS Radio mode : searches RDS program types.
CD/USB/MP3 modes : searches folders.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 214



(8)
Turns the monitor display on/off.

(9) TA
Set TA(Traffic Announcement) feature On/Off

(10) SCAN
Radio Mode
- Shortly press the key (under 0.8 seconds): Previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each
- Press and hold the key (over 0.8 seconds): Previews the broadcasts saved in Preset 1 ~ 6 for 5 seconds each.

Media (CD/USB/iPod/My Music) modes : previews each song (file) for 10 seconds each.

(11) SETUP
Switches to Setup mode.

(12) TUNE knob
Radio mode : turn to change broadcast frequencies.
Media (CD/USB/iPod/My Music) modes : turn to search tracks/channels/files.



(13) RESET
Forced system termination and system restart.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 215

Steering remote controller



(1) VOLUME
Used to control volume.

(2) MUTE
Mutes audio volume.

(3) SEEK
When pressed shortly (under 0.8 seconds)
- Radio mode : searches broadcast frequencies saved to presets.
- Media (CD / USB / iPod / My Music / BT Audio) modes : changes the track, file.

When pressed and held (over 0.8 seconds)
- Radio mode, automatically searches broadcast frequencies and channels
- Media(CD/USB/iPod/My Music) modes, rewinds or fast forwards the track or song(file)

(4) MODE
Each time this key is pressed, the mode is changed in order of FM1➟FM2 ➟FMA➟ AM➟AMA➟USB or iPod➟AUX ➟My Music➟BT Audio
If the media is not connected or a disc is not inserted, corresponding modes will be disabled.

(5)
When pressed shortly (under 0.8 seconds)
- Starts voice recognition
- When selecting during a voice prompt, stops the prompt and converts to voice command waiting state

When pressed and held (over 0.8 seconds)
- Ends voice recognition

(6)
When pressed shortly (under 0.8 seconds)
- When pressed in the phone screen, displays call history screen
- When pressed in the dial screen, makes a call
- When pressed in the incoming call screen, answers the call
- When pressed during call waiting, switches to waiting call (Call Waiting)

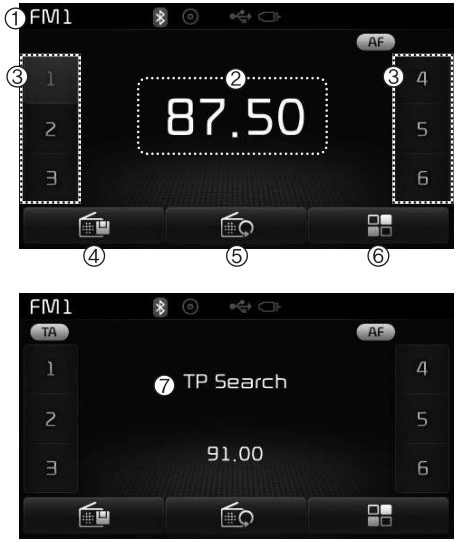
When pressed and held (over 0.8 seconds)
- When pressed in the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree wait mode, redials the last call
- When pressed during a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree call, switches call back to mobile phone (Private)
- When pressed whilst calling on the mobile phone, switches call back to *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree (Operates only when *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree is connected)

(7)
Ends phone call

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 216

RADIO MODE

Basic Mode Screen



(1) Mode Display
Displays currently operating mode

(2) Frequency
Displays the current frequency

(3) Preset
Displays current preset number [1] ~ [6]

(4) Preset Display
Displays saved presets

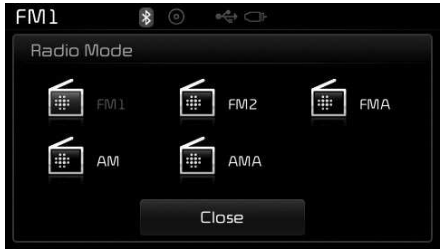
(5) Autostore
Automatically saves frequencies with superior reception to Preset buttons

(6) RDS Menu
Displays the RDS Menu

(7) RDS Info
Displays RDS broadcast information

Switching to Radio Mode

Pressing the RADIO key will change the operating mode in order of FM1 ➞FM2➞FMA➞AM➞AMA.



If [Pop-up Mode] is turned on within SETUP ▶[Display], then pressing the RADIO key will display the Radio Pop-up Mode screen.
Turn the TUNE knob to move the focus. Press the knob to select.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 217

Searching Radio Frequencies

Using Seek

Press the SEEK TRACK key to play the previous/next frequency.

Using TUNE

Turn the TUNE knob to select the desired frequency.

- FM : Increases/decreased by 50kHz
- AM : Increases/decreased by 9kHz

Using Radio Mode

Selecting /Saving Presets

Press the 1 ~ 6 buttons to play the desired preset.



Press the button to display the broadcast information for the frequency saved to each button.



✻ NOTICE

Whilst listening to a frequency you want to save as a preset, press and hold one of the [1] ~ [6] preset buttons (over 0.8 seconds) to save the current frequency to the selected preset.

Auto Store

Press the button to automatically save receivable frequencies to Preset buttons.

✻ NOTICE

Whilst Auto Store is operating, pressing the [Cancel] button again will cancel Auto Store and restore the previous frequency.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 218

RDS Menu

Press the button to set the AF (Alternative Frequency), Region and News features.



✻ NOTICE

The RDS Menu is not supported within AM or AMA mode.

Scan

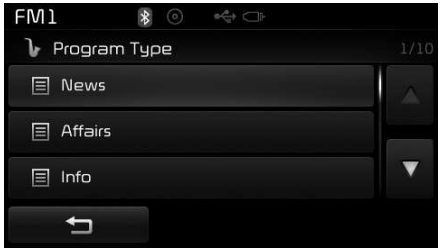
Press the SCAN key to preview frequencies with superior reception for 5 seconds each.

✻ NOTICE

Once scan is complete, the previous frequency will be restored.
Whilst Scan is operating, pressing the SCAN key will cancel the scan operation.

Program Type

Press the PTY FOLDER key to search for the desired Program type.



Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired program type. Once you find the desired program type, press the TUNE knob.

After selecting the desired Program Type and whilst the Program Type is blinking (approximately 5 seconds), pressing the PTY FOLDER key will allow you to select a different Program Type broadcast.

TA (Traffic Announcement)

Press the TA key to turn the TA (Traffic Announcement) feature On/Off.



JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 219

MEDIA MODE

Switching to Media Mode

Pressing the MEDIA key will change the operating mode in order of CD➟USB(iPod)➟AUX➟My Music ➟ BT Audio.



If [Pop-up Mode] is turned on within SETUP ▸[Display], then pressing the MEDIA key will display the Media Pop-up Mode screen.

Turn the TUNE knob to move the focus. Press the knob to select.

✻ NOTICE

The media mode pop up screen can be displayed only when there are two or more media modes turned on.

Title Icon

When a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology, iPod, USB, or AUX device is connected or a CD is inserted, the corresponding mode icon will be displayed.



Icon	Title
	Bluetooth® Wireless Technology
	CD
	iPod
	USB
	AUX

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 220

AUDIO CD MODE

Basic Mode Screen



(1) Mode
Displays currently operating mode

(2) Operation State
From Repeat / Random / Scan, displays the currently operating function

(3) Track Info
Displays information about the current track

(4) Play/Pause
Changes the play/pause state

(5) Play Time
Displays the current play time

(6) Info
Shows detailed information about the current track

(7) Random
Turns the Random feature on/off

(8) Repeat
Turns the Repeat feature on/off

(9) List
Moves to the list screen

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 221

Using Audio CD Mode

Playing/Pausing CD Tracks

Once an audio CD is inserted, the mode will automatically start and begin playing.



Whilst playing, press the ⏸ button to pause and press ▶ button to play.

✻ NOTICE

- **Only genuine audio CDs are supported. Other discs may result in recognition failure (e.g. copy CD-R, CDs with labels)**
- **The artist and title information are displayed on the screen if track information is included within the audio CD.**

Changing Tracks

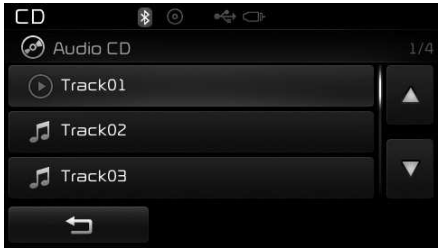
Press the SEEK TRACK key to move to the previous or next track.

✻ NOTICE

- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key after the track has been playing for 1 seconds will start the current track from the beginning.**
- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key before the track has been playing for 1 seconds will start the previous track.**

Selecting from the List

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired track.



Once you find the desired track, press the TUNE knob to start playing.

Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Tracks

Whilst playing, press and hold the SEEK TRACK key (over 0.8 seconds) to rewind or fast-forward the current track.

Scan

Press the SCAN key to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 222

Audio CD Mode Menu

Within this mode, you will have access to the Info, Random, Repeat and List features.



Info

Press the *i* button to display details about the current disc.

Random

Press the button to play tracks in random order.

Press the button again to turn the Random feature off.

Repeat

Press the button to repeat the current track. Press the button again to turn the repeat feature off.

List

Press the button to display the track list screen.



Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for tracks. Once the desired track is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 223

MP3 CD MODE

Basic Mode Screen



(1) Mode
Displays currently operating mode.

(2) Operation State
From Repeat / Random / Scan, displays the currently operating function

(3) File Index
Displays the current file number

(4) File Info
Displays information about the current file

(5) Play/Pause
Changes the play/pause state

(6) Play Time
Displays the current play time

(7) Info
Shows detailed information about the current file

(8) Random
Turns the Random feature on/off

(9) Repeat
Turns the Repeat feature on/off

(10) Copy
Copies the current file into My Music

(11) List
Moves to the list screen

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 224

Using MP3 CD Mode

Playing/Pausing MP3 Files

Once an MP3 disc is inserted the mode will automatically start and being playing.



Whilst playing, press the ⏸ button to pause and press ▶ button to play.

✻ NOTICE

If there are numerous files and folders within the disc, reading time could take more than 10 seconds and the list may not be displayed or song searches may not operate. Once loading is complete, try again.

Changing Files

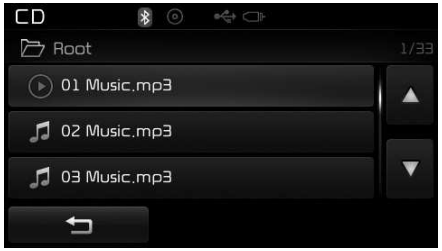
Press the SEEK TRACK key to move to the previous or next file.

✻ NOTICE

- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key after the file has been playing for 1 seconds will start the current file from the beginning.**
- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key before the file has been playing for 1 seconds will start the previous file.**

Selecting from the List

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired file.



Once you find the desired file, press the TUNE knob to start playing.

Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Files

Whilst playing, press and hold the SEEK TRACK key (over 0.8 seconds) to rewind or fast-forward the current file.

Scan

Press the SCAN key to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 225

Searching Folders

Press the PTY FOLDER key to select and search folders.

Once the desired folder is displayed, press the TUNE knob to select.



The first file within the selected folder will begin playing.

MP3 CD Mode Menu

Within this mode, you will have access to the Info, Random, Repeat, Copy and List features.



Info

Press the *i* button to display details about the current file.

✻ NOTICE

- **When the 'Folder File' option is set as the default display within Display setup, the album/artist/file information are displayed as detailed file information.**
- **When the 'Album Artist Song' option is set as the default display, the folder name/file name are displayed as detailed file information.**
- **The title, artist and album info are displayed only when such information are recorded within the MP3 file ID3 tag.**

Random

Press the button to play files in random order.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Random Folder ➟ Random All➟ Off.

- Random Folder : Plays all files within the current folder in Random order.
- Random All : Plays all files in Random order.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 226

Repeat

Press the button to repeat the current file or folder.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Repeat ➟Repeat Folder➟Off.

- Repeat: Repeats the current file.
- Repeat Folder: Repeats all files within the current Folder.

Copying Files

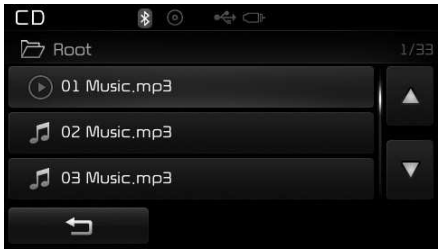
Press the button to copy the current file into My Music.

✻ NOTICE

Selecting another feature during copying will display a pop-up asking whether you wish to cancel copying. To cancel, select 'Yes'.

List

Press the button to display the file list screen.



Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for files. Once the desired file is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 227

USB MODE

Basic Mode Screen



(1) Mode
Displays currently operating mode

(2) Operation State
From Repeat / Random / Scan, displays the currently operating function

(3) File Index
Displays the current file number

(4) File Info
Displays information about the current file

(5) Play/Pause
Changes the play/pause state

(6) Play Time
Displays the current play time

(7) Info
Displays detailed information for the current file

(8) Random
Turns the Random feature on/off

(9) Repeat
Turns the Repeat feature on/off

(10) Copy
Copies the current file into My Music

(11) List
Moves to the list screen

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 228

Using USB Mode

Playing/Pausing USB Files

Once a USB is connected, the mode will automatically start and begin playing a USB file.



Whilst playing, press the ⏸ button to pause and press ▶ button to play.

✻ NOTICE

- **Loading may require additional time if there are many files and folders within the USB and result in faulty list display or file searching. Normal operations will resume once loading is complete.**
- **The device may not support normal operation when using a USB memory type besides (Metal Cover Type) USB Memory.**

Changing Files

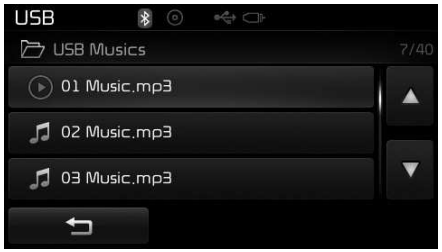
Press the SEEK TRACK keys to move to the previous or next file.

✻ NOTICE

- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key after the file has been playing for 1 seconds will start the current file from the beginning.**
- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key before the file has been playing for 1 seconds will start the previous file.**

Selecting from the List

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired file.



Once you find the desired file, press the TUNE knob to start playing.

Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Files

Whilst playing, press and hold the SEEK TRACK key (over 0.8 seconds) to rewind or fast-forward the current file.

Scan

Press the SCAN key to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 229

Searching Folders

Press the PTY FOLDER key to select and search folders.

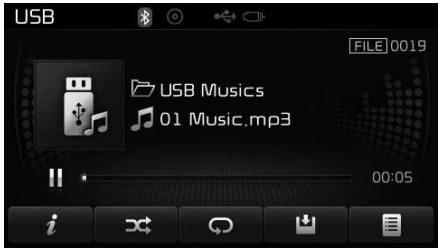


Once the desired folder is displayed, press the TUNE knob to select.

The first file within the selected folder will begin playing.

USB Mode Menu

Within this mode, you will have access to the Info, Random, Repeat, Copy and List features.



Info

Press the *i* button to display details about the current file.

✻ NOTICE

- **When the 'Folder File' option is set as the default display within Display setup, the album/artist/file information are displayed as detailed file information.**
- **When the 'Album Artist Song' option is set as the default display, the folder name/file name are displayed as detailed file information.**
- **The title, artist and album info are displayed only when such information are recorded within the MP3 file ID3 tag.**

Random

Press the button to play files in random order.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Random Folder➟Random All➟Off.

- Random Folder : Plays the files in the current folder in random order.
- Random All : Plays all files in random order.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 230

Repeat

Press the button to repeat the current file or folder.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Repeat ➟ Repeat Folder ➟ Off.

- Repeat (Icon) : Repeats the current file.
- Repeat Folder (Icon) : Repeats all files within the current folder.

Copying Files

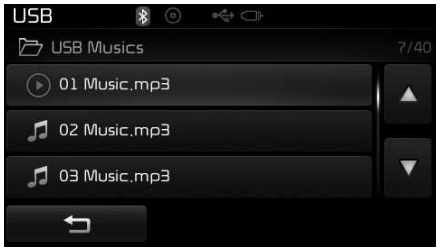
Press the button to copy the current file into My Music.

✻ NOTICE

Selecting another feature during copying will display a pop-up asking whether you wish to cancel copying. To cancel, select 'Yes'.

List

Press the button to display the file list screen.



Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for files. Once the desired file is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 231

iPod MODE

Basic Mode Screen



(1) Mode
Displays currently operating mode

(2) Operation State
From Repeat / Random, displays the currently operating function

(3) Song Index
Displays the current song/total number of songs

(4) Song Info
Displays information about the current song

(5) Play/Pause
Changes the play/pause state

(6) Play Time
Displays the current play time

(7) Random
Turns the Random feature on/off

(8) Repeat
Turns the Repeat feature on/off

(9) List
Moves to the list screen

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 232

Using iPod Mode

Playing/Pausing iPod Songs

Once an iPod is connected, the mode will automatically start and begin playing an iPod song.



Whilst playing, press the ⏸ button to pause and press ▶ button to play.

✻ NOTICE

iPods with unsupported communication protocols may not properly operate in the audio system.

Changing Songs

Press the SEEK TRACK key to move to the previous or next song.

✻ NOTICE

- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key after the song has been playing for 1 seconds will start the current song from the beginning.**
- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key before the song has been playing for 1 seconds will start the previous song.**
- **Slight time differences may exist depending your iPod product.**

Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Songs

Whilst playing, press and hold the SEEK TRACK key (over 0.8 seconds) to rewind or fast-forward the current song.

Searching Categories

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired category.



Once you find the desired category, press the TUNE knob to select and play.

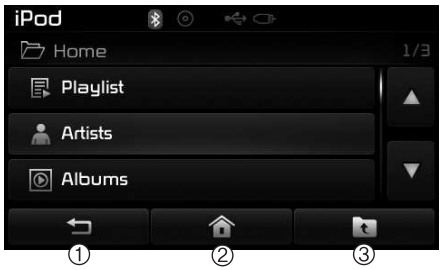
✻ NOTICE

There are eight categories that can be searched, including Playlists, Artists, Albums, Genres, Songs, Composers, Audiobooks and Podcasts.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 233

Category Menu

Within the iPod Category menu, you will have access to the , Home, and features.



(1) : Displays the play screen

(2) Home : Moves to the iPod root category screen

(3) : Moves to the previous category

✻ NOTICE

- **If the search mode is accessed whilst playing a song, the most recently searched category is displayed.**
- **Search steps upon initial connection may differ depending on the type of iPod device.**

iPod Mode Menu

Within this mode, you will have access to the Random, Repeat and List features.



Random

Press the button to play songs in random order.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Random Album→Random All→Off.

- Random Album : Shuffle Album plays album in Random order.
- Random All : Plays all songs in Random order.

Repeat

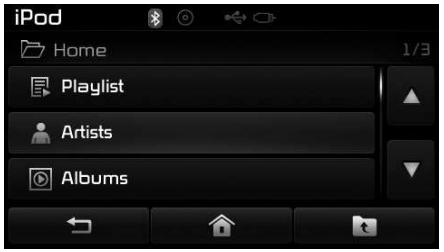
Press the button to repeat the current song. Press the button again to turn the repeat feature off.

- Repeat : Repeats the current song

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 234

List

Press the [≡] button to display the Category Menu.



Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired category.

Once you find the desired category, press the TUNE knob to select and play.

AUX MODE

Using AUX Mode

Press the MEDIA key ▸ Select [AUX]



An external device can be connected to play music.

Connecting an External Device

External audio players (Camcorders, car VCR, etc.) can be played through a dedicated cable.

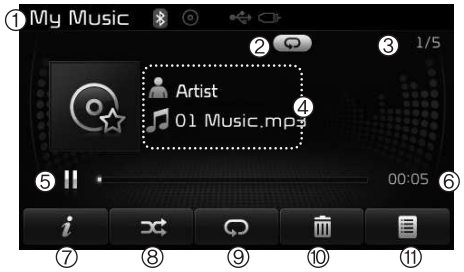
✻ NOTICE

- **If an external device connector is connected with the AUX terminal, then AUX mode will automatically operate. Once the connector is disconnected, the previous mode will be restored.**
- **AUX mode can be used only when an external audio player (camcorder, car VCR, etc.) has been connected.**
- **The AUX volume can be controlled separately from other audio modes.**
- **Connecting a connector jack to the AUX terminal without an external device will convert the system to AUX mode, but only output noise. When an external device is not being used, also remove the connector jack.**
- **When the external device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may output noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.**
- **Fully insert the AUX cable to the AUX jack upon use.**

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 235

MY MUSIC MODE

Basic Mode Screen



(1) Mode
Displays currently operating mode

(2) Operation State
From Repeat / Random / Scan, displays the currently operating function

(3) File Index
Displays the current file/total number of files

(4) File Info
Displays information about the current file

(5) Play/Pause
Changes the play/pause state

(6) Play Time
Displays the current play time

(7) Info
Displays detailed information for the current file

(8) Random
Turns the Random feature on/off

(9) Repeat
Turns the Repeat feature on/off

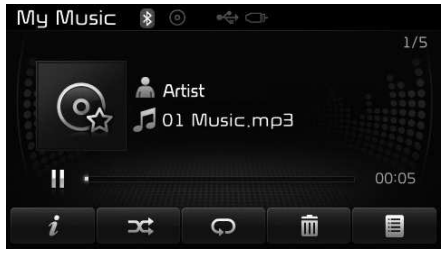
(10) Delete
Deletes the current file

(11) List
Moves to the list screen

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 236

Using My Music Mode

Playing/Pausing My Music Files



Whilst playing, press the ⏸ button to pause and press ▶ button to play.

✻ NOTICE

If there are no files saved within My Music, the [My Music] button will be disabled.

Changing Files

Press the SEEK TRACK key to move to the previous or next file.

✻ NOTICE

- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key after the file has been playing for 1 seconds will start the current file from the beginning.**
- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key before the file has been playing for 1 seconds will start the previous file.**

Selecting from the List

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired file.



Once you find the desired file, press the TUNE knob to start playing.

Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Files

Whilst playing, press and hold the SEEK TRACK key (over 0.8 seconds) to rewind or fast-forward the current file.

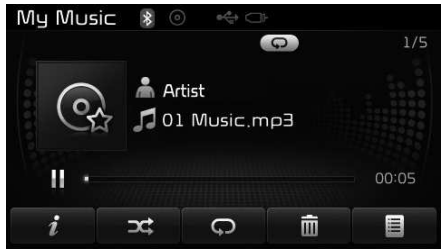
Scan

Press the SCAN key to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 237

My Music Mode Menu

Within this mode, you will have access to the Info, Random, Repeat, Delete and List features.



Info

Press the button to display details about the current file.

✻ NOTICE

The title, artist and album info are displayed only when such information is recorded within the MP3 file ID3 tag.

Random

Press the button to play files in random order. Press the button again to turn the Random feature off.

Repeat

Press the button to repeat the current song. Press the button again to turn the repeat feature off.

Deleting Files

Press the button to delete the current file.

List

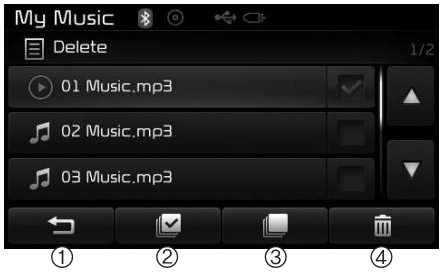
Press the button to display the file list screen.



Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for files. Once the desired file is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

List Menu

From the List screen, it is possible to delete files you previously saved into My Music.



Press the button or individually select the files you want to delete. Once files are selected, the button and buttons will be enabled.

(1) : Moves to the previous screen
(2) Sellect All: Selects all files
(3) Unsellet All: Deselects all selected files
(4) Delete: Deletes selected files

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 238

After selecting the files you want to delete, press the button to delete the selected files.

✻ NOTICE

- **If there is memory available, up to 6,000 files can be saved.**
- **Identical files cannot be copied more than 1,000 times.**
- **To check memory information, go to SETUP ▶ [System] ▶ [Memory Information]**

✻ NOTICE - USING THE *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode

- ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode can be used only when a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone has been connected.**
- ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode will not be available when connecting mobile phones that do not support this feature.**
- **Whilst *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio is playing, if the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone is connected, then the music will also stop.**
- **Moving the Track up/down whilst playing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio mode may result in pop noises in some mobile phones.**
- ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology streaming audio may not be supported in some mobile phones.**
- **When returning to *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio mode after ending a call, the mode may not automatically restart in some mobile phones.**
- **Receiving an incoming call or making an outgoing call whilst playing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio may result in audio interference.**

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology AUDIO MODE

Using *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode

Playing/Pausing Bluetooth® Wireless Technology *Audio*

Once a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is connected, the mode will automatically start.



Whilst playing, press the ▶II button to pause and press ▶II button to play.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 239

✻ NOTICE

The play/pause feature may operate differently depending on the mobile phone.

Changing Files

Press the SEEK TRACK key to move to the previous or next file.

Setting Connection

If a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device has not been connected, press the SETUP key ▸[Phone] button to display the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology connection screen.

It is possible to use the pair phone, connect/disconnect and delete features from your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone.

✻ NOTICE

- **If the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio is not operating properly, check whether the feature is turned off at SETUP ▸ [Phone] ▸ [Audio streaming]. If the feature is off, turn back on and try again.**
- **If music is not yet playing from your mobile device after converting to *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio mode, pressing the play button once may start playing the mode. Check to see that music is playing from the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device after converting to *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio Mode.**

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 240

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

Using *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree

- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology refers to a short-distance wireless networking technology which uses a 2.45GHz frequency to connect various devices within a certain distance.
- Supported within PCs, external devices, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phones, PDAs, various electronic devices, and automotive environments, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology allows data to be transmitted at high speeds without having to use a connector cable.
- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree refers to a device which allows the user to conveniently make phone calls with *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phones through the audio system.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Bluetooth® Wireless Technology Handsfree is a feature that enables drivers to practice safe driving. Connecting the car audio system with a Bluetooth® Wireless Technology phone allows the user to conveniently make calls, receive calls, and manage the phone book. Before using the Bluetooth® Wireless Technology, carefully read the contents of this user's manual.***
- ***Excessive use or operations whilst driving may lead to negligent driving practices and be the cause of accidents.***
- ***Do not operate the device excessively whilst driving.***
- ***Viewing the screen for prolonged periods of time is dangerous and may lead to accidents. When driving, view the screen only for short periods of time.***

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 241

✻ NOTICE - USING UPON CONNECTING *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology PHONE

- Before connecting the car audio system with the mobile phone, check to see that the mobile phone supports *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology features.
- Even if the phone supports *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology, the phone will not be found during device searches if the phone has been set to hidden state or the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology power is turned off. Disable the hidden state or turn on the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology power prior to searching/connecting with the car audio system.
- If you do not want to automatically connect your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone, try the following.
  1. Turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your mobile phone.
  - For more information on *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology features within your mobile, refer to your mobile phone user's manual.
  2. Turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your car audio system.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- To turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your car audio system, go to SETUP > [Phone] and [turn off] the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature.

- Park the vehicle when connecting the car audio system with your mobile phone.
- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology connection may become intermittently disconnected in some mobile phones. Follow these steps to try again.
  1. Turn the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology function within the mobile phone off/on and try again.
  2. Turn the mobile phone power Off/On and try again.
  3 Completely remove the mobile phone battery, reboot, and then again.
  4. Reboot the audio system and try again.
  5. Delete all paired devices, pair and try again.
- The Handsfree call volume and quality may differ depending on the mobile phone.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology features supported within the vehicle are as follows. Some features may not be supported depending on your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technologydevice.
  - Answering and placing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Handsfree calls
  - Menu operation during call (Switch to Private, Switch to call waiting, Outgoing volume)
  - Download Call History
  - Download Mobile Phone book
  - Phone book/Call History Auto Download
  - *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device auto connection - *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio
- It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices to the car system.
- Only one *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device can be connected at a time.
- Other devices cannot be paired whilst a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is already connected.
- When a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is being connected, the connection process cannot be canceled.

(Continued)

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 242

(Continued)

- **Only *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Handsfree and *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio related features will operate within this system.**
- **Normal operation is possible only for devices that support Handsfree or audio features, such as a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology mobile phone or a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio device.**
- **Only one function can be used at a time between the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Handsfree and *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio. (Whilst playing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio, streaming will end upon entering the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone screen.)**
- **If a connected *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device becomes disconnected for various reasons, such as being out of range, turning the device OFF, or a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology communication error, *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices are automatically searched and connected.**
- **Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.**

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

Pairing a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology wireless technology Device

What is *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Pairing?

Pairing refers to the process of synchronizing your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone or device with the car audio system for connection. Pairing is necessary to connect and use the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature.

Pairing PHONE Key / Key on the Steering Remote Controller

When No Devices have been Paired

1. Press the PHONE key or the key on the steering remote controller. The following screen is displayed.
2. Press the OK button to enter the Pair Phone screen.





JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 243

(1) Device : Name of device as shown when searching from your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device

(2) Passkey : Passkey used to pair the device

3. From your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device (i.e. Mobile Phone), search and select your car audio system.
4. After a few moments, a screen is displayed where the passkey is entered.
   Here, enter the passkey “0000” to pair your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device with the car audio system.
5. Once pairing is complete, the following screen is displayed.

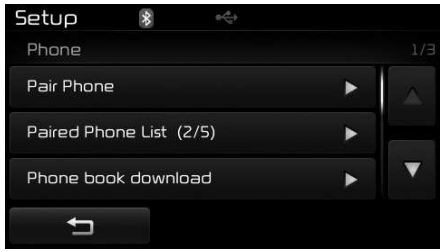
✻ NOTICE



- **If *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology devices are paired but none are currently connected, pressing the PHONE key or the key on the steering remote controller displays the following screen. Press the [Pair] button to pair a new device or press the [Connect] to connect a previously pair device.**

Pairing through [PHONE] Setup

Press the SETUP key ▸Select [Phone]▸Select [Pair Phone] ▸ Select ◉TUNE knob



1. The following steps are the same as the steps described in the “When No Devices have been Paired” section.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 244

✻ NOTICE

- **The waiting period during phone pairing will last for one minute. The pairing process will fail if the device is not paired within the given time. If the pairing process fails, you must start the process from the beginning.**
- **Generally, most *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices will automatically connect once pairing is complete. However, some devices may require a separate verification process to connect. Check to see whether *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology has been properly connected within your mobile phone.**
- **List of paired *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices can be viewed at SETUP ▸ [Phone] ▸ [Paired Phone List].**

Connecting a Device

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Paired Phone List]



(1) Connected Phone : Device that is currently connected

(2) Paired Phone : Device that is paired but not connected

From the paired phone list, select the device you want to connect and press the button.



JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 245

Changing Priority

What is Priority?

It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology devices with the car audio system. As a result, the “Change Priority’ feature is used to set the connection priority of paired phones. However, the most recently connected phone will always be set as the highest priority.

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Paired Phone List]



From the paired phone list, select the phone you want to change to the highest priority, then press the button from the Menu. The selected device will be changed to the highest priority.



✻ NOTICE

When a device is currently connected, even if you change the priority to a different device, the currently connected phone will always be set as the highest priority.

Disconnecting a Device

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Paired Phone List]



From the paired phone list, select the currently connected device and press the button.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 246

Deleting a Device

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Paired Phone List]



From the paired phone list, select the device you want to delete and press the button.

✻ NOTICE

- **When deleting the currently connected device, the device will automatically be disconnected to proceed with the deleting process.**
- **If a paired *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is deleted, the device's call history and phone book data will also be deleted.**
- **To re-use a deleted device, you must pair the device again.**

USING *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology

Phone Menu Screen

Phone Menus

With a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device connected, press the PHONE key to display the Phone menu screen.



(1) Dial Number : Displays the dial screen where numbers can be dialed to make calls

(2) Call History : Device that is currently connected

(3) Phone book : Displays the Phone book list screen

(4) Setup : Displays Phone related settings

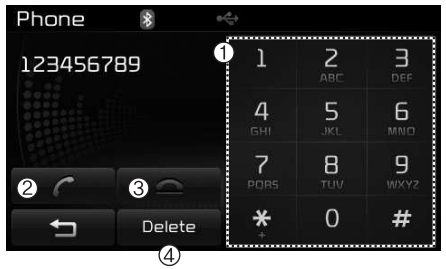
✻ NOTICE

- **If you press the [Call History] button but there is no call history data, a prompt is displayed which asks whether to download call history data.**
- **If you press the [Phone book] button but there is no phone book data, a prompt is displayed which asks whether to download phone book data.**
- **This feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. For more information on download support, refer to your mobile phone user's manual.**

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 247

Calling by Dialing a Number

Press the PHONE key▸Select [Dial Number]

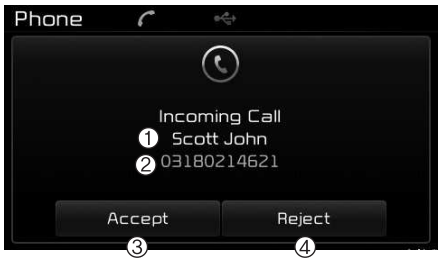


(1) Dial Pad : Used to enter phone number
(2) Call : If a number has been entered, calls the number If no number has been entered, switches to call history screen
(3) End : Deletes the entered phone number
(4) Delete : Deletes entered numbers one digit at a time

Answering Calls

Answering a Call

Answering a call with a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device connected will display the following screen.



(1) Caller : Displays the other part's name when the incoming caller is saved within your phone book
(2) Incoming Number : Displays the incoming number
(3) Accept : Accept the incoming call
(4) Reject : Reject the incoming call

✻ NOTICE

- **When the incoming call pop-up is displayed, most Audio and SETUP mode features will not operate. Only the call volume can be operated.**
- **The telephone number may not be properly displayed in some mobile phones.**
- **When a call is answered with the mobile phone, the call mode will automatically convert to Private mode.**

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 248

During a Handsfree Call



(1) Caller : Displays the other party's name if the incoming caller is saved within your phone book

(2) Incoming Number : Displays the incoming number

(3) Call time : Displays the call time

(4) End : Ends call

(5) Private : Converts to Private mode

(6) Out Vol. : Sets call volume as heard by the other party

(7) Mute : Turns Mic Mute On/Off

✻ NOTICE

If the mic is muted, the other party will not be able to hear your voice.

Call History

Press the PHONE key ▸ Select [Call History]



A list of incoming, outgoing and missed calls is displayed.

Press the [Download] button to download the call history.

(1) Call History :
- Displays recent calls (call history)
- Connects call upon selection

(2) Download : Download Recent Call History

✻ NOTICE

- **The call history list will display up to 30 outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.**
- **Upon downloading call histories, previously saved histories are deleted.**
- **Incoming calls with hidden caller IDs will not be saved in the call history list.**
- **Previously saved phone book entries are stored even if a device is disconnected and re-connected.**
- **The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. Check to see that the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device supports the download feature.**

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 249

Phone Book

Press the PHONE key ▸ Select [Phone book]



The list of saved phone book entries is displayed. Press the [Download] button to download the call history.

(1) Contact List :
- Displays downloaded phone book entries
- Connects call upon selection

(2) Download : Download phone book entries

✻ NOTICE

- **Up to 1,000 phone book entries can be copied into car phone book.**
- **Upon downloading phone book data, previously saved phone book data will be deleted.**
- **Downloading is not possible if the phone book download feature is turned off within the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device. Also, some devices may require device authorization upon attempting to download. If downloading cannot be normally conducted, check the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device setting or the screen state.**
- **Caller ID information will not be displayed for unsaved callers.**
- **The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. Check to see that the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device supports the download feature.**

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 250

✻ NOTICE - USING THE Voice Recognition

- **When using the voice recognition feature, only commands listed within the user's manual are supported.**
- **Be aware that during the operation of the voice recognition system, pressing any key other than the key or touching the screen will terminate voice recognition mode.**
- **For superior voice recognition performance, position the microphone used for voice recognition above the head of the driver's seat and maintain a proper position when saying commands.**
- **Within the following situations, voice recognition may not function properly due to external sound.**
  - **When the windows and sunroof are open**
  - **When the wind of the cooling / heating device is strong**
  - **When entering and passing through tunnels**
  - **When driving on rugged and uneven roads**
  - **During severe rain (heavy rains, windstorms)**
- **Phone related voice commands can be used only when a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is connected.**
- **When making calls by stating a name, the corresponding contact must be downloaded and stored within the audio system.**
- **After downloading the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone book, it takes some times to convert the phone book data into voice information. During this time, voice recognition may not properly operate.**
- **Pronounce the voice commands naturally and clearly as if in a normal conversation.**

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 251

VOICE RECOGNITION

Using Voice Recognition

Starting Voice Recognition

Shortly press the key on the steering remote controller .Say a command





If voice recognition is in [Normal Mode], then the system will say “Please say a command. Beep~”

- If voice recognition is in [Expert Mode], then the system will only say a “Beep~”
- To change the Normal Mode/Expert Mode setting, go to SETUP ▸ [System] ▸ [Prompt Feedback].

✻ NOTICE

For proper recognition, say the command after the voice instruction and beep tone.

Skipping Prompt Messages

Whilst prompt message is being stated ▸ Shortly press the key on the steering remote controller (under 0.8 seconds)

The prompt message is immediately ended and the beep tone will sound. After the “beep”, say the voice command.

Re-starting Voice Recognition

Whilst system waits for a command ▸ Shortly press the key on the steering remote controller (under 0.8 seconds)

The command wait state is immediately ended and the beep ton will sound. After the “beep”, say the voice command.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 252

ENDING VOICE RECOGNITION

Whilst Voice Recognition is operating
▸Press and hold the key on the steering remote controller (over 0.8 seconds)

✻ NOTICE

- **Whilst using voice command, pressing a steering wheel remote control or a different key will end voice command.**
- **In a state where the system is waiting for a voice command, say "cancel" or "end" to end voice command.**
- **In a state where the system is waiting for a voice command, press and hold the key on the steering remote controller to end voice command.**

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 253

SETUP

Starting Mode

Press the SETUP key to display the Setup screen.

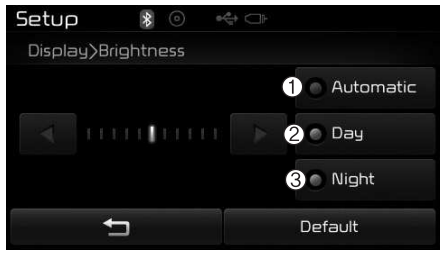


You can select and control options related to [Display], [Sound], [Phone] and [System].

Display Settings

Adjusting the Brightness

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Display] ▸ Select [Brightness]



Use the ◀, ▶ buttons to adjust the screen brightness or set the Brightness on Automatic, Day, or Night mode.

Press the Default button to reset.

(1) Automatic : Adjusts the brightness automatically

(2) Day : Always maintains the brightness on high

(3) Night: Always maintains the brightness on low

Pop-up Mode

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Display] ▸ Select [Pop-up Mode]



This feature is used to display the Pop-up Mode screen when entering radio and media modes.

When this feature is turned on, pressing the RADIO or MEDIA key will display the Pop-up Mode screen.

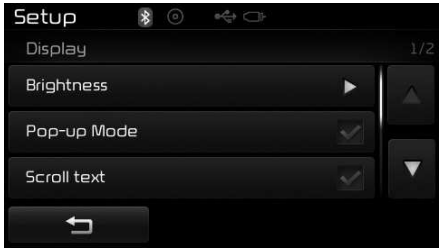
✻ NOTICE

The media Pop-up Mode screen can be displayed only when two or more media modes have been connected.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 254

Scroll Text

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Display] ▸ Select [Scroll text]



This feature is used to scroll text displayed on the screen when it is too long to be displayed at once.

When turned on, the text is repeatedly scrolled. When turned off, the text is scrolled just once.

MP3 Information Display

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Display] ▸ Select [Song Info]



This feature is used to change the information displayed within USB and MP3 CD modes.

(1) Folder File : Displays file name and folder name

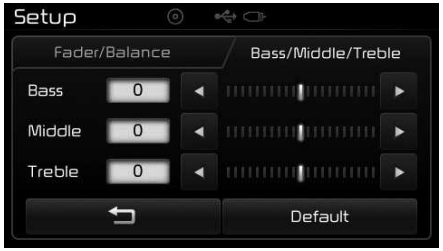
(2) Album Artist Song : Displays album name/artist name/song

Sound Settings

Sound Settings

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Sound] ▸ Select [Audio Setting]





Use the ◀, ▶, ▲, ▼ buttons to adjust the Fader/Balance settings.

Use the ◀, ▶ buttons to adjust the Bass/Middle/Treble settings.

Press the Default button to reset.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 255

SDVC (Speed Dependent Volume Control)

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Sound] ▸ Select [Speed Dependent Vol.]



The volume level is controlled automatically according to the vehicle speed. SDVC can be set by selecting from Off/Low/Mid/High.

Voice Recognition Setting

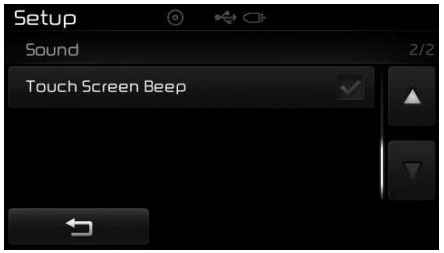
Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Sound] ▸ Select [Volume Dialogue]



Use the -, + buttons to adjust the Volume Dialog.

Touch Screen Beep

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Sound] ▸ Select [Touch Screen Beep]



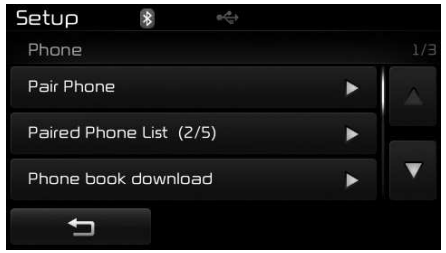
This feature is used to turn the touch screen beep on/off.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 256

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology Setting

Pairing a New Device

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Pair Phone]



Bluetooth® Wireless Technology devices can be paired with the audio system.

For more information, refer to the "Pairing through Phone Setup" section within *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.

Viewing Paired Phone List

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Paired Phone List]



This feature is used to view mobile phones that have been paired with the audio system. Upon selecting a paired phone, the setup menu is displayed.

For more information, refer to the "Setting *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Connection" section within *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.

(1) : Moves to the previous screen

(2) Connect/Disconnect Phone : Connect/ disconnects currently selected phone

(3) Delete : Deletes the currently selected phone

(4) Change Priority : Sets currently selected phone to highest connection priority

✻ NOTICE BEFORE DOWNLOADING PHONE BOOKS

- **Only phone books within connected phones can be downloaded. Also check to see that your mobile phone supports the download feature.**
- **To learn more about whether your mobile phone supports phone book downloads, refer to your mobile phone user's manual.**
- **The Phone book for only the connected phone can be downloaded. Before downloading, check to see whether your phone supports the download feature.**

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 257

Downloading Phone books

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Phone book Download]



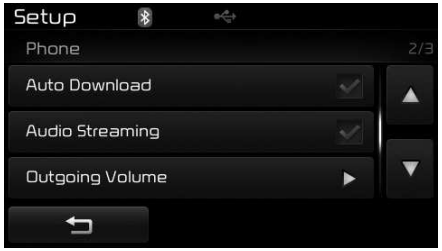
The Phone book is downloaded from the mobile phone and the download progress is displayed.

✻ NOTICE

- **Up to 1,000 phone book entries can be copied into car phone book.**
- **Up to 1,000 phone book entries can be saved for each paired device.**
- **Upon downloading phone book data, previously saved phone book data will be deleted. However, Phone book entries saved to other paired phones are not deleted.**

Auto Download (Phone Book)

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Auto Download]



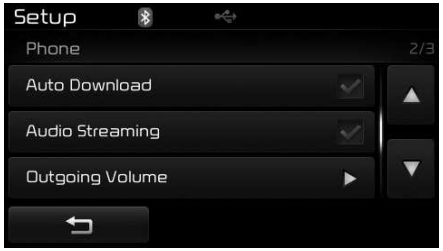
This feature is used to automatically download mobile phone book entries once a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone is connected.

✻ NOTICE

- **The Auto Download feature will download mobile phone book entries every time the phone is connected. The download time may differ depending on the number of saved phone book entries and the communication state.**
- **When downloading a phone book, first check to see that your mobile phone supports the phone book download feature.**

Audio Streaming

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Audio Streaming]



When Audio Streaming is turned on, you can play music files saved in your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device from the car.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:07 AM Page 258

Outgoing Volume

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Outgoing Volume]

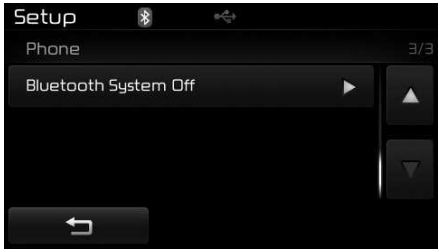


Use the -, + buttons to adjust the outgoing volume level.

Turning Bluetooth System Off

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Bluetooth System Off]

Once *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology is turned off, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology related features will not be supported within the audio system.





✻ NOTICE

To turn *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology back on, go to SETUP ▸ [Phone] and press "Yes".

⚠ CAUTION

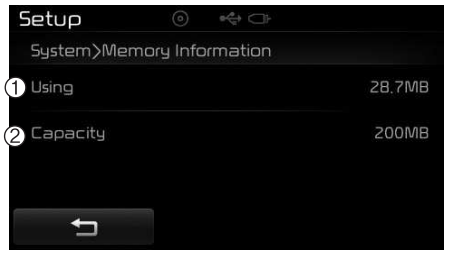
Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology *audio streaming may not be supported in some Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology *phones.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:08 AM Page 259

System Setting

Memory Information

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [System] ▸ Select [Memory Information]

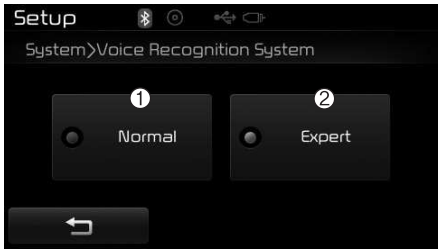


This feature displays information related to system memory.

(1) Using : Displays capacity currently in use
(2) Capacity : Displays total capacity

Voice Recognition Mode Setting

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [System] ▸ Select [Voice Recognition System]



This feature is used to select the desired prompt feedback option from Normal and Expert.

(1) Normal : When using voice recognition, provides detailed guidance prompts
(2) Expert : When using voice recognition, omits some guidance prompts

✻ NOTICE

- **Voice Recognition is depend on the Audio System.**

Language

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [System] ▸ Select [Language]



This feature is used to change the system and voice recognition language.

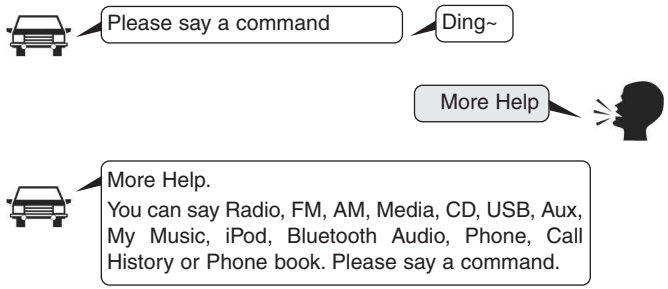
If the language is changed, the system will restart and apply the selected language.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:08 AM Page 260

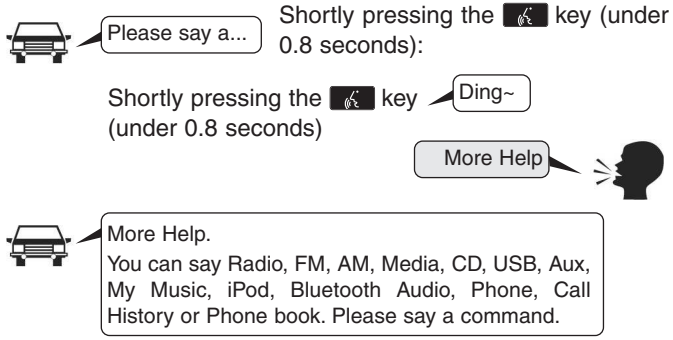
❊ Illustration on using voice commands

• Starting voice command.

Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds):

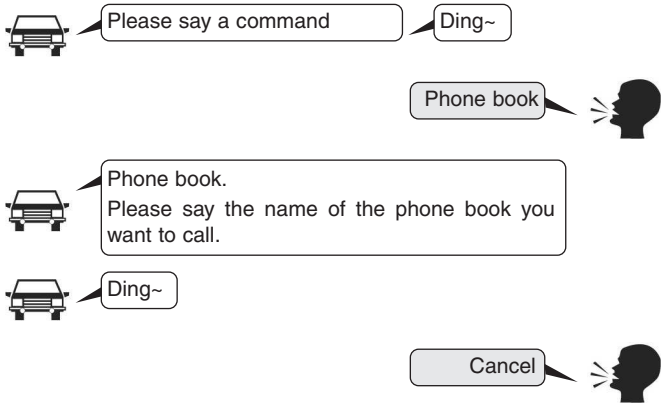


• Skipping Voice Recognition



• End voice command.

Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds):



JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:08 AM Page 261

Voice Command List

• Common Commands: These are commands that can be used in all situations. (However, some commands may not be supported in special circumstances.)

Command	Function
More Help	Provides guidance on commands that can be used anywhere in the system.
Help	Provides guidance on commands that can be used within the current mode.
Call<Name>	Calls <Name> saved in phone book Ex) Call “John”
Phone	Provides guidance on Phone related commands. After saying this command, say “Call History”, “Phone book”, “Dial Number” to execute corresponding functions.
Call History	Displays the Call History screen.
Phone book	Displays the phone book screen. After saying this command, say the name of a phone book saved in the phone book to automatically connect the call.
Dial Number	Display the Dial number screen. After saying this command, you can say the number what you want to call.
Redial	Connects the most recently called number.
Radio	• When listening to the radio, displays the next radio screen. (FM1➟ FM2➟ FMA ➟ AM ➟ AMA) • When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played radio screen.

Command	Function
FM	• When currently listening to the FM radio, maintains the current state. • When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played FM screen.
FM1(FM One)	Displays the FM1 screen.
FM2(FM Two)	Displays the FM2 screen.
FMA	Displays the FMA screen.
AM	Displays the AM screen.
AMA	Displays the AMA screen.
FM Preset 1~6	Plays the most recently played broadcast saved in FM Preset 1~6.
AM Preset 1~6	Plays the broadcast saved in AM Preset 1~6.
FM 87.5~107.9	Plays the FM broadcast of the corresponding frequency.
AM 530~1710	Plays the AM broadcast of the corresponding frequency.
TA on	Enable Traffic Announcement
TA off	Disable Traffic Announcement
News on	Enable RDS News feature
News off	Disable RDS News feature

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:08 AM Page 262

Command	Function
Media	Moves to the most recently played media screen.
Play Track 1~30	If a music CD has been inserted, plays the corresponding track.
CD	Plays the music saved in the CD.
Search CD	Moves to the CD track or file selection screen. • For audio CDs, move to the screen and say the track number to play the corresponding track. • Moves to MP3 CD file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music.
USB	Plays USB music.
Search USB	Moves to USB file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music.
iPod	Plays iPod music.
Search iPod	Moves to the iPod file selection screen. After, manually operate the device to select and play music.
My Music	Plays the music saved in My Music.
Search My Music	Moves to My Music file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music.

Command	Function
AUX (Auxiliary)	Plays the connected external device.
Bluetooth Audio	Plays the music saved in connected *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device.
Mute	Mutes the radio or music volume.
Pardon?	Repeats the most recent comment.
Cancel (Exit)	Ends voice command.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:08 AM Page 263

• FM/AM radio commands: Commands that can be used whilst listening to FM, AM radio.

Command	Function
Preset 1~6	Plays the broadcast saved in Preset 1~6.
Auto Store	Automatically selects radio broadcast frequencies with superior reception and saves in Presets 1~6.
Preset Save 1~6	Saves the current broadcast frequency to Preset 1~6.
Seek up	Plays the next receivable broadcast.
Seek down	Plays the previous receivable broadcast.
Next Preset	Selects the preset number next to the most recently selected preset. (Example: When currently listening to preset no. 3, then preset no. 4 will be selected.)
Previous Preset	Selects the preset number previous to the most recently selected preset. (Example: When currently listening to preset no. 3, then preset no. 2 will be selected.)
Scan	Scans receivable frequencies from the current broadcast and plays for 10 seconds each.
Preset Scan	Moves to the next preset from the current present and plays for 10 seconds each.
AF on	Enable Alternative Frequency feature
AF off	Disable Alternative Frequency feature
Region	Enable Region feature

• Audio CD commands: Commands that can be used whilst listening to Audio CD.

Command	Function
Region off	Disable Region feature
Program Type	Moves to the RDS Program type selection screen. After, manually operate the device to select a desired program type.
Random	Randomly plays the tracks within the CD.
Random Off	Cancels random play to play tracks in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current track.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play tracks in sequential order.
Next Track	Plays the next track.
Previous Track	Plays the previous track.
Scan	Scans the tracks from the next track for 10 seconds each.
Track 1~30	Plays the desired track number.
Search Track	Moves to the track selection screen. After, say the track name to play the corresponding track.
Information	Displays the information screen of the current track.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:08 AM Page 264

• MP3 CD / USB commands: Commands that can be used whilst listening to music files saved in CD and USB.

Command	Function
Random	Randomly plays the files within the current folder.
All Random	Randomly plays all saved files.
Random Off	Cancels random play to play files in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current file.
Folder Repeat	Repeats all files in the current folder.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play files in sequential order.
Next File	Plays the next file.
Previous File	Plays the previous file.
Scan	Scans the files from the next files for 10 seconds each.
Search File	Moves to the file selection screen.
Search Folder	Moves to the folder selection screen.
Information	Displays the information screen of the current file.
Copy	Copies the current file into My Music.

• iPod Commands: Commands that can be used whilst playing iPod.

Command	Function
All Random	Randomly plays all saved songs.
Random	Randomly plays the songs within the current category.
Random Off	Cancels random play to play songs in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current song.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play songs in sequential order.
Next Song	Plays the next song.
Previous Song	Plays the previous song.
Search Song	Moves to the song selection screen.
Information	Displays the information screen of the current song.

JD RHD 4c(212~).QXP 2/17/2015 11:08 AM Page 265

• My Music Commands: Commands that can be used whilst playing My Music.

Command	Function
Random	Randomly plays all saved files.
Random Off	Cancels random play to play files in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current file.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play files in sequential order.
Next File	Plays the next file.
Previous File	Plays the previous file.
Scan	Scans the files from the next files for 10 seconds each.
Search File	Moves to the file selection screen.
Information	Displays the information screen of the current file.
Delete	Deletes the current file. You will bypass an additional confirmation process.
Delete All	Deletes all files saved in My Music. You will bypass an additional confirmation process.

• *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio Commands: Commands that can be used whilst playing Phone Music.

Command	Function
Play	Plays the currently paused song.
Pause	Pauses the current song.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:32 AM Page 1

Driving your vehicle

Before driving 5-4
- Before entering vehicle 5-4
- Necessary inspections 5-4
- Before starting 5-4

Key positions 5-5
- Illuminated ignition switch 5-5
- Ignition switch position 5-6
- Starting the engine 5-7

Engine START/STOP button 5-9
- Illuminated engine start/stop button 5-9
- Engine start/stop button position 5-9
- Starting the engine 5-12

ISG (Idle Stop and Go) system 5-15
- Auto stop 5-15
- Auto start 5-17
- Condition of ISG system operation 5-18
- ISG system deactivation 5-18
- ISG system malfunction 5-19

Manual transaxle 5-20
- Manual transaxle operation 5-20
- Good driving practices 5-22

Automatic transaxle/Double clutch transmission . . 5-23
- Automatic transaxle/Double clutch transmission operation 5-23
- Good driving practices 5-30

Active eco system 5-32
- Active ECO operation 5-32
- Limitation of Active ECO operation 5-32

Brake system 5-33
- Power brakes 5-33
- Parking brake - Hand type 5-35
- Electric parking brake (EPB) 5-37
- Emergency braking 5-41
- Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 5-41
- Electronic stability control (ESC) 5-44
- Vehicle stability management (VSM) 5-47
- Hill-start assist control (HAC) 5-48
- Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) 5-48
- Good braking practices 5-49

Cruise control system 5-51

Speed limit control system 5-56

Lane departure warning system (LDWS) 5-59

Economical operation 5-62

Special driving conditions 5-64
- Hazardous driving conditions 5-64
- Rocking the vehicle 5-64
- Smooth cornering 5-65
- Driving at night 5-65
- Driving in the rain 5-65
- Driving in flooded areas 5-66

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:32 AM Page 2

• Driving off-road 5-66
• Highway driving 5-66
Winter driving 5-67
• Snowy or Icy conditions 5-67
• Snow tyres 5-67
• Tyre chains 5-68
Trailer towing 5-71
• Hitches 5-72
• Safety chains 5-72
• Trailer brakes 5-73
• Driving with a trailer 5-73
• Maintenance when trailer towing 5-76
• If you do decide to pull a trailer 5-77
Vehicle weight 5-80

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:32 AM Page 3

⚠ WARNING - ENGINE EXHAUST CAN BE DANGEROUS!

Engine exhaust fumes can be extremely dangerous. If, at any time, you smell exhaust fumes inside the vehicle, open the windows immediately.

- **Do not inhale exhaust fumes.**
  Exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless gas that can cause unconsciousness and death by asphyxiation.
- **Be sure the exhaust system does not leak.**
  The exhaust system should be checked whenever the vehicle is raised to change the oil or for any other purpose. If you hear a change in the sound of the exhaust or if you drive over something that strikes the underneath side of the vehicle, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.
- **Do not run the engine in an enclosed area.**
  Letting the engine idle in your garage, even with the garage door open, is a hazardous practice. Never run the engine in your garage any longer than it takes to start the engine and back the vehicle out.
- **Avoid idling the engine for prolonged periods with people inside the vehicle.**
  If it is necessary to idle the engine for a prolonged period with people inside the vehicle, be sure to do so only in an open area with the air intake set at "Fresh" and fan operating at one of the higher speeds so fresh air is drawn into the interior.

If you must drive with the tailgate/boot open because you are carrying objects that make this necessary:

1. Close all windows.
2. Open side vents.
3. Set the air intake control at "Fresh", the air flow control at "Floor" or "Face" and the fan at one of the higher speeds.

To assure proper operation of the ventilation system, be sure the ventilation air intakes located just in front of the windscreen are kept clear of snow, ice, leaves or other obstructions.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:32 AM Page 4

BEFORE DRIVING

Before entering vehicle

- Be sure that all windows, outside mirror(s), and outside lights are clean.
- Check the condition of the tyres.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Be sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to back up.

Necessary inspections

Fluid levels, such as engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid, and washer fluid should be checked on a regular basis, with the exact interval depending on the fluid. Further details are provided in section 7, “Maintenance”.

⚠ WARNING

Driving whilst distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control, that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver’s primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver’s eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.

Before starting

- Close and lock all doors.
- Position the seat so that all controls are easily reached.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Be sure that all lights work.
- Check all gauges.
- Check the operation of warning lights when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.
- Release the parking brake and make sure the brake warning light goes out.

For safe operation, be sure you are familiar with your vehicle and its equipment.

⚠ WARNING

All passengers must be properly belted whenever the vehicle is moving. Refer to “Seat belts” in section 3 for more information on their proper use.

⚠ WARNING

Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before putting a vehicle into “D (Drive)” or “R (Reverse)”.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:33 AM Page 5

⚠ WARNING - Driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs

Drinking and driving is dangerous. Drunk driving is the number one contributor to the highway death toll each year. Even a small amount of alcohol will affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgement. Driving whilst under the influence of drugs is as dangerous or more dangerous than driving drunk.

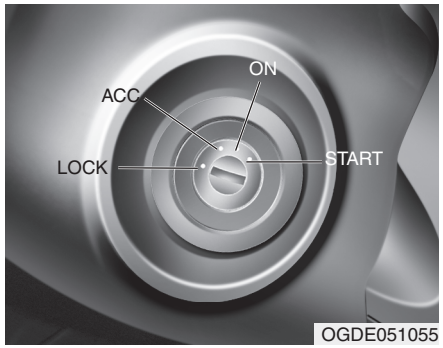
You are much more likely to have a serious accident if you drink or take drugs and drive.

If you are drinking or taking drugs, don't drive. Do not ride with a driver who has been drinking or taking drugs. Choose a designated driver or call a cab.

⚠ WARNING

- **When you intend to park or stop the vehicle with the engine on, be careful not to depress the accelerator pedal for a long period of time. It may overheat the engine or exhaust system and cause fire.**
- **When you make a sudden stop or turn the steering wheel rapidly, loose objects may drop on the floor and it could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Keep all things in the vehicle safely stored.**
- **If you do not focus on driving, it may cause an accident. Be careful when operating what may disturb driving such as audio or heater. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive safely.**

KEY POSITIONS



Illuminated ignition switch

Whenever a front door is opened, the ignition switch will be illuminated for your convenience, provided the ignition switch is not in the ON position. The light will go off immediately when the ignition switch is turned on or go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:33 AM Page 6

Ignition switch position

LOCK

The steering wheel locks to protect against theft. The ignition key can be removed only in the LOCK position. When turning the ignition switch to the LOCK position, push the key inward at the ACC position and turn the key toward the LOCK position.

ACC (Accessory)

The steering wheel is unlocked and electrical accessories are operative.

✻ NOTICE

If difficulty is experienced turning the ignition switch to the ACC position, turn the key whilst turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.

ON

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. This is the normal running position after the engine is started.

Do not leave the ignition switch ON if the engine is not running to prevent battery discharge.

START

Turn the ignition key to the START position to start the engine. The engine will crank until you release the key; then it returns to the ON position. The brake warning lamp can be checked in this position.

⚠ WARNING - Ignition key

- **Never turn the ignition switch to LOCK or ACC whilst the vehicle is moving. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**
- **The anti-theft steering column lock (if equipped) is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in 1st gear for the manual transaxle or P (Park) for the automatic transaxle, set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.**
- **Never reach for the ignition switch, or any other controls through the steering wheel whilst the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in this area could cause a loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.**
- **Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move whilst driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.**

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:33 AM Page 7

Starting the engine

⚠ WARNING

Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots,etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedal, and clutch (if equipped).

✻ NOTICE - Kick down mechanism

If your vehicle is equipped with a kick down mechanism in the accelerator pedal, it prevents you from driving at full throttle unintentionally by making the driver require increased effort to depress the accelerator pedal. However, if you depress the pedal more than approximately 80%, the vehicle can be at full throttle and the accelerator pedal will be easier to depress. This is not a malfunction but a normal condition.

Starting the petrol engine

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst turning the ignition switch to the start position.

   Automatic Transaxle/DCT* - Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.

   * DCT: Double clutch transmission
3. Turn the ignition switch to START and hold it there until the engine starts (a maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.

*It should be started **without depressing the accelerator pedal.***

4. Do not wait for the engine to warm up whilst the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving at moderate engine speeds. (Steep accelerating and decelerating should be avoided.)

⚠ CAUTION

If the engine stalls whilst you are in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position whilst the vehicle is still moving and turn the ignition switch to the START position in an attempt to restart the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not engage the starter for more than 10 seconds. If the engine stalls or fails to start, wait 5 to 10 seconds before re-engaging the starter. Improper use of the starter may damage it.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:33 AM Page 8

Starting the diesel engine

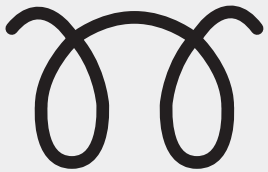
To start the diesel engine when the engine is cold, it has to be pre-heated before starting the engine and then have to be warmed up before starting to drive.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst turning the ignition switch to the start position.

   Automatic Transaxle - Place the transaxle shift lever in P(park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N(neutral) position.

Glow indicator light



W-60

3. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position to pre-heat the engine. Then the glow indicator light will illuminate.
4. If the glow indicator light goes out, turn the ignition switch to the START position and hold it there until the engine starts (a maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.

✻ NOTICE

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds after the preheating is completed, turn the ignition key once more to the LOCK position for 10 seconds, and then to the ON position, in order to preheat again.

Starting and stopping the engine for turbocharger intercooler

1. Do not race or accelerate the engine immediately after starting.

   If the engine is cold, idle for several seconds before sufficient lubrication is ensured in the turbocharger unit.
2. After high speed or extended driving, requiring a heavy engine load, run the engine on idle condition about 1 minute before turning it off.

   This idle time will allow the turbocharger to cool prior to shutting the engine off.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not turn off the engine immediately after it has been subjected to a heavy load. Doing so may cause severe damage to the engine or turbo charger unit.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:33 AM Page 9

ENGINE START/STOP BUTTON (IF EQUIPPED)



Illuminated engine start/stop button

Whenever the front door is opened, the engine start/stop button will illuminate for your convenience. The light will go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed. It will also go off immediately when the theft-alarm system is armed.

Engine start/stop button position

OFF



White

With manual transaxle

To turn off the engine (START/RUN position) or vehicle power (ON position), stop the vehicle then press the engine start/stop button.

With automatic transaxle/DCT*

To turn off the engine (START/RUN position) or vehicle power (ON position), press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the P (Park) position. When you press the engine start/stop button without the shift lever in the P (Park) position, the engine start/stop button will not change to the OFF position but to the ACC position.

* DCT: Double clutch transmission

Vehicles equipped with anti-theft steering column lock

The steering wheel locks when the engine start/stop button is in the OFF position to protect you against theft.

It locks when the door is opened.

If the steering wheel is not locked properly when you open the driver's door, the warning chime will sound. Try locking the steering wheel again. If the problem is not solved, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

In addition, if the engine start/stop button is in the OFF position after the driver's door is opened, the steering wheel will not lock and the warning chime will sound. In such a situation, close the door. Then the steering wheel will lock and the warning chime will stop.

✻ NOTICE

If the steering wheel doesn't unlock properly, the engine start/stop button will not work. Press the engine start/stop button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:33 AM Page 10

⚠ CAUTION

You are able to turn off the engine (START/RUN) or vehicle power (ON), only when the vehicle is not in motion. In an emergency situation whilst the vehicle is in motion, you are able to turn the engine off and to the ACC position by pressing the engine start/stop button for more than 2 seconds or 3 times successively within 3 seconds. If the vehicle is still moving, you can restart the engine without depressing the brake pedal by pressing the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.

ACC(Accessory)



Orange

With manual transaxle

Press the engine start/stop button when the button is in the OFF position without depressing the clutch pedal.

With automatic transaxle/DCT

Press the engine start/stop button whilst it is in the OFF position without depressing the brake pedal.

The steering wheel unlocks (if equipped with anti-theft steering column lock) and electrical accessories are operational.
If the engine start/stop button is in the ACC position for more than 1 hour, the button is turned off automatically to prevent battery discharge.

ON



Blue

With manual transaxle

Press the engine start/stop button when the button is in the ACC position without depressing the clutch pedal.

With automatic transaxle/DCT

Press the engine start/stop button whilst it is in the ACC position without depressing the brake pedal.

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. Do not leave the engine start/stop button in the ON position for a long time. The battery may discharge, because the engine is not running.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:33 AM Page 11

START/RUN



Not illuminated

With manual transaxle

To start the engine, depress the clutch pedal and brake pedal, then press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.

With automatic transaxle/DCT

To start the engine, depress the brake pedal and press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the P (Park) or the N (Neutral) position. For your safety, start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position.

✻ NOTICE

If you press the engine start/stop button without depressing the clutch pedal for manual transaxle vehicles or without depressing the brake pedal for automatic transaxle vehicles, the engine will not start and the engine start/stop button changes as follow:
OFF ➔ACC ➔ ON ➔ OFF or ACC

✻ NOTICE

If you leave the engine start/stop button in the ACC or ON position for a long time, the battery will discharge.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never press the engine start/stop button whilst the vehicle is in motion. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**
- **The anti-theft steering column lock (if equipped) is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in P (Park), set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Never reach for the engine start/stop button or any other controls through the steering wheel whilst the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in the area could cause loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.**
- **Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move whilst driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.**

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:33 AM Page 12

Starting the engine

⚠ WARNING

- **Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots,etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedal.**
- **Do not start the vehicle with the accelerator pedal depressed. The vehicle can move and lead to an accident.**
- **Wait until the engine rpm is normal. The vehicle may suddenly move if the brake padel is released when the rpm is high.**

✻ NOTICE - Kick down mechanism (if equipped)

If your vehicle is equipped with a kick down mechanism in the accelerator pedal, it prevents you from driving at full throttle unintentionally by making the driver require increased effort to depress the accelerator pedal. However, if you depress the pedal more than approximately 80%, the vehicle can be at full throttle and the accelerator pedal will be easier to depress. This is not a malfunction but a normal condition.

Starting the petrol engine

1. Carry the smart key or leave it inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure the parking brake is firmly applied.
3. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst starting the engine.

   Automatic transaxle/DCT* - Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.

   * DCT: Double clutch transmission
4. Press the engine start/stop button.

It should be started without depressing the accelerator.

5. Do not wait for the engine to warm up whilst the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving at moderate engine speeds. (Steep accelerating and decelerating should be avoided.)

Starting the diesel engine

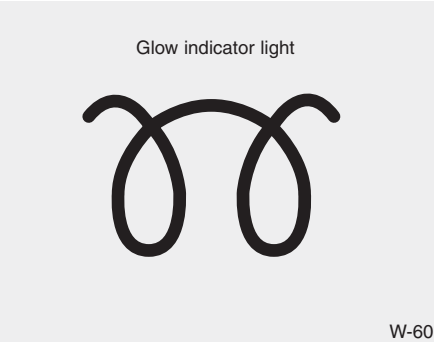
To start the diesel engine when the engine is cold, it has to be pre-heated before starting the engine and then have to be warmed up before starting to drive.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst pressing the engine start/stop button to the START position.

   Automatic Transaxle - Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:33 AM Page 13



W-60

3. Press the engine start/stop button whilst depressing the brake pedal.
4. Continue depressing the brake pedal until the illuminated glow indicator goes off. (approximately 5 seconds)
5. The engine starts running when the glow indicator goes off.

✻ NOTICE

If the engine start/stop button is pressed once more whilst the engine is pre-heating, the engine may start.

Starting and stopping the engine for turbocharger intercooler

1. Do not race or accelerate the engine immediately after starting.
   If the engine is cold, idle for several seconds before sufficient lubrication is ensured in the turbocharger unit.
2. After high speed or extended driving, requiring a heavy engine load, idle the engine about 1 minute before turning it off.
   This idle time will allow the turbocharger to cool prior to shutting the engine off.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not turn the engine off immediately after it has been subjected to a heavy load. Doing so may cause severe damage to the engine or turbocharger unit.

- Even if the smart key is in the vehicle, if it is far away from you, the engine may not start.
- When the engine start/stop button is in the ACC position or above, if any door is opened, the system checks for the smart key. If the smart key is not in the vehicle, a message “Key not in vehicle” will appear on the LCD display. And if all doors are closed, the chime will sound for 5 seconds. The indicator or warning will turn off whilst the vehicle is moving. Always have the smart key with you.

⚠ WARNING

The engine will start, only when the smart key is in the vehicle.

Never allow children or any person who is unfamiliar with the vehicle touch the engine start/stop button or related parts.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:33 AM Page 14

⚠ CAUTION

If the engine stalls whilst the vehicle is in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If the traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position whilst the vehicle is still moving and press the engine start/stop button in an attempt to restart the engine.



OJD052002R

✻ NOTICE

- **If the battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, you can start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button with the smart key.**
  The side with the lock button should be contacted directly.
  If you press the smart key directly to the engine start/stop button, the engine start/stop button and the smart key right angle to the direction

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When the stop lamp fuse is blown, you cannot start the engine normally.**
  Replace the fuse with a new one. If it is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button for 10 seconds whilst it is in the ACC position. The engine can start without depressing the brake pedal. But for your safety always depress the brake pedal before starting the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not press the engine start/stop button for more than 10 seconds except when the stop lamp fuse is blown.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:33 AM Page 15

ISG (IDLE STOP AND GO) SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with the ISG system, which reduces fuel consumption by automatically shutting down the engine, when the vehicle is at a standstill. (For example : red light, stop sign and traffic jam)

The engine starts automatically as soon as the starting conditions are met.

The ISG system is ON whenever the engine is running.

✻ NOTICE

When the engine automatically starts by the ISG system, some warning lights (ABS, ESC, ESC OFF, EPS or Parking brake warning light) may turn on for a few seconds.

This happens because of low battery voltage. It does not mean the system has malfunctioned.



OJD052026

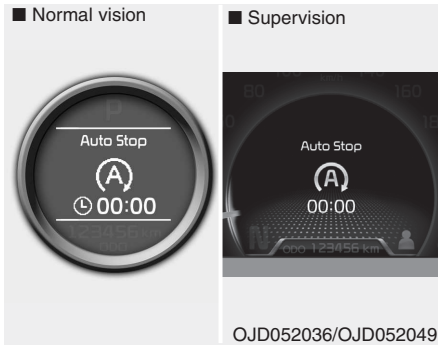
Auto stop

To stop the engine in idle stop mode

1. Decrease the vehicle speed to less than 5 km/h (3 mph).
2. Shift into N (Neutral) position.
3. Release the clutch pedal.

The engine will stop and the green AUTO STOP(Ⓐ) indicator on the instrument cluster will illuminate.

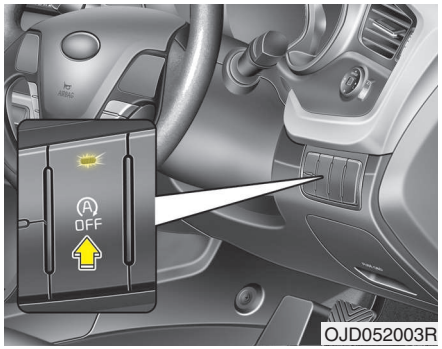
JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:33 AM Page 16



Also, a message "Auto Stop" will appear on the LCD display.

✻ NOTICE

You must reach a speed of at least 10 km/h (6 mph) since last idle stop.

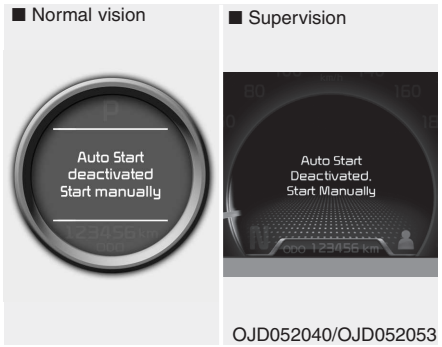


✻ NOTICE

If you unfasten the seatbelt or open the driver's door (or engine bonnet) in auto stop mode, the following will happen:

- **The ISG system will deactivate (the light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate).**

(Continued)

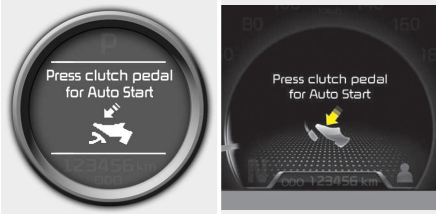


(Continued)

- **A message "Auto Start Deactivated Start Manually" will appear on the LCD display.**

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:33 AM Page 17

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD052041/OJD052054

Auto Start

To restart the engine from idle stop mode

- Press the clutch pedal when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.
- A message "Press Clutch Pedal for Auto Start" will appear on the LCD display.
- The engine will start and the green AUTO STOP (Ⓐ) indicator on the instrument cluster will go out.

The engine will also restart automatically without the driver's any actions if the following occurs:

- The fan speed of manual climate control system is set above the 3rd position when the air conditioning is on.
- The fan speed of automatic climate control system is set above the 6th position when the air conditioning is on.
- When a certain amount of time has passed with the climate control system on.
- When the defroster is on.
- The brake vaccum pressure is low.
- The battery charging status is low.
- The vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h (3 mph).

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD052037/OJD052050

The green AUTO STOP (Ⓐ) indicator on the instrument cluster will blink for 5 seconds and a message "Auto Start" will appear on the LCD display.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:33 AM Page 18

Condition of ISG system operation

The ISG system will operate under the following condition:

- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The driver's door and engine bonnet are closed.
- The brake vaccum pressure is adequate.
- The battery is sufficiently charged.
- The outside temperature is between -2°C to 35°C (28.4°F to 95°F).
- The engine coolant temperature is not too low.



OJD052003R/OJD052039/OJD052052

✻ NOTICE

- **If the ISG system does not meet the operation condition, the ISG system is deactivated. The light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate and a message "Auto Stop Deactivated" will appear on the LCD display.**
- **If the light or notice comes on continuously, please check the operation condition.**

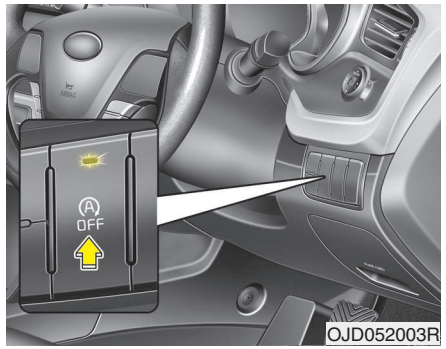


OJD052003R/OJD052038/OJD052051

ISG system deactivation

- If you wish to deactivate the ISG system, press the ISG OFF button. The light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate and a message "Auto Stop OFF" will appear on the LCD display.
- If you press the ISG OFF button again, the system will be activated and the light on the ISG OFF button will turn off.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:33 AM Page 19



ISG system malfunction

The system may not operate when:

The ISG related sensors or system error occurs.

The following will happen:

- The yellow AUTO STOP (Ⓐ) indicator on the instrument cluster will stay on after blinking for 5 seconds.
- The light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate.

✻ NOTICE

- **If the ISG OFF button light is not turned off by pressing the ISG OFF button again or if the ISG system continuously does not work correctly, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer as soon as possible.**
- **When the ISG OFF button light comes on, it may stop illuminating after driving your vehicle at approximately 80 km/h for a maximum of two hours and setting the fan speed control knob below the 2nd position. If the ISG OFF button light continues to be illuminated in spite of the procedure, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer as soon as possible.**

⚠ WARNING

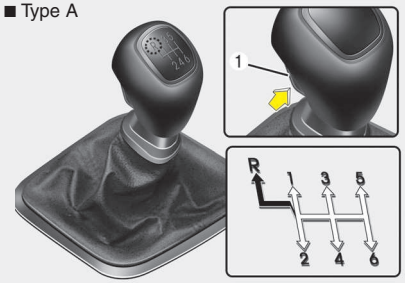
When the engine is in Idle Stop mode, it's possible to restart the engine without the driver taking any action.

Before leaving the car or doing anything in the engine room area, stop the engine by turning the ignition switch to the LOCK/OFF position or removing the ignition key.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:33 AM Page 20

MANUAL TRANSAXLE (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Type A

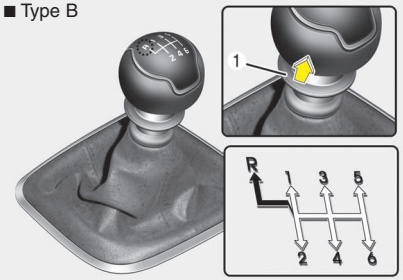


⇨ The shift lever can be moved without pushing the button (1).

➡ The button (1) must be pushed whilst moving the shift lever.

OJD052004

■ Type B



⇨ The shift lever can be moved without pulling the ring (1).

➡ The ring (1) must be pulled whilst moving the shift lever.

OJD053058

Manual transaxle operation

- The manual transaxle has 6 forward gears.
  This shift pattern is imprinted on the shift knob. The transaxle is fully synchronized in all forward gears so shifting to either a higher or a lower gear is easily accomplished.
- Depress the clutch pedal down fully whilst shifting, then release it slowly.
  If your vehicle is equipped with an ignition lock switch, the engine will not start when starting the engine without depressing the clutch pedal.
- The shift lever must return to the neutral position before shifting into R (Reverse). The button located immediately below the shift knob must be pushed upward (Type A) or the ring located below the shift knob must be pulled upward (Type B). whilst moving the shift lever to the R (Reverse) position.
- *Make sure the vehicle is completely stopped before shifting into R (Reverse).*
  Never operate the engine with the tachometer (rpm) in the red zone.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When downshifting from 5 (Fifth) gear to 4 (Fourth) gear, caution should be taken not to inadvertently move the shift lever sideways in such a manner that second gear is engaged. Such a drastic downshift may cause the engine speed to increase to the point that the tachometer will enter the red-zone. Such overrevving of the engine may possibly cause engine and transaxle damage.***
- ***Do not downshift more than 2 gears or downshift the gear when the engine is running at high speed (5,000 RPM or higher). Such a downshifting may damage the engine, clutch and transaxle.***
- ***When shifting between 5th and 6th gear, you should always push the gear level all the way to the right. You could otherwise shift unintentionally into 3rd or 4th gear and damage the transaxle.***

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:33 AM Page 21

- During cold weather, shifting may be difficult until the transaxle lubricant has warmed up. This is normal and not harmful to the transaxle.
- If you've come to a complete stop and it's hard to shift into 1 (First) or R (Reverse), put the shift lever in neutral position and release the clutch. Press the clutch pedal back down, and then shift into 1 (First) or R (Reverse) gear position.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***To avoid premature clutch wear and damage, do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal. Also, don't use the clutch to hold the vehicle stopped on an uphill grade, whilst waiting for a traffic light, etc.***
- ***Do not use the shift lever as a handrest during driving, as this can result in premature wear of the transaxle shift forks.***
- ***To prevent possible damage to the clutch system, do not start with the 2nd (second) gear engaged except when you start on a slippery road.***

⚠ WARNING

- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Then make sure the transaxle is shifted into 1 (First) gear when the vehicle is parked on a level or uphill grade, and shifted into R (Reverse) on a downhill grade.**

  Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.
- **If your vehicle has a manual transaxle not equipped with a ignition lock switch, it may move and cause a serious accident when starting the engine without depressing the clutch pedal whilst the parking brake is released and the shift lever not in the neutral position.**

Using the clutch

The clutch pedal should be depressed all the way to the floor before shifting, then released slowly. The clutch pedal should always be fully released whilst driving. Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal whilst driving. This can cause unnecessary wear. Do not partially engage the clutch to hold the vehicle on an incline. This causes unnecessary wear. Use the foot brake or parking brake to hold the vehicle on an incline. Do not operate the clutch pedal rapidly and repeatedly.

⚠ CAUTION

When operating the clutch pedal, depress the clutch pedal down fully. If you don't depress the clutch pedal fully, the clutch may be damaged or noise may occur.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:33 AM Page 22

Downshifting

When you must slow down in heavy traffic or whilst driving up steep hills, downshift before the engine starts to labour. Downshifting reduces the chance of stalling and gives better acceleration when you again need to increase your speed. When the vehicle is travelling down steep hills, downshifting helps maintain safe speed and prolongs brake life.

Good driving practices

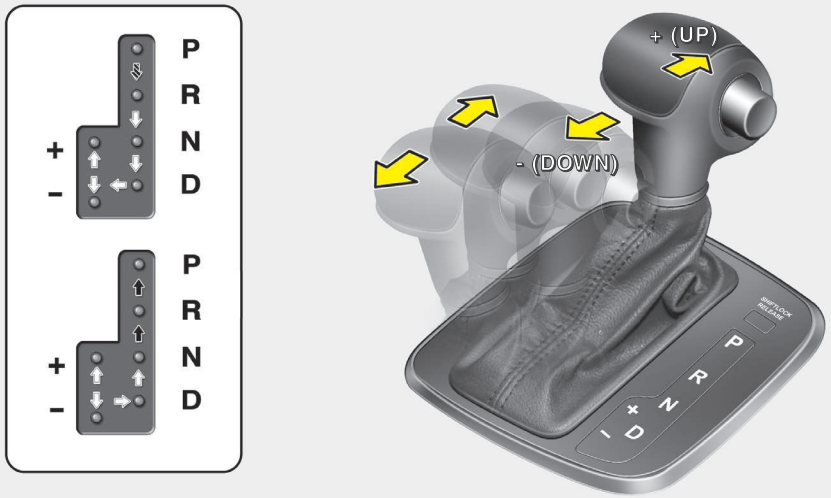
- Never take the vehicle out of gear and coast down a hill. This is extremely hazardous. Always leave the vehicle in gear.
- Don't "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow down the vehicle.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. This will help avoid over-revving the engine, which can cause damage.
- Slow down when you encounter cross winds. This gives you much better control of your vehicle.
- Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse). The transaxle can be damaged if you do not. To shift into R (Reverse), depress the clutch, move the shift lever to neutral, wait three seconds, then shift to the R (Reverse) position.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Never exceed posted speed limits.**

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 23

AUTOMATIC TRANSAXLE/DOUBLE CLUTCH TRANSMISSION (IF EQUIPPED)



Depress the brake pedal and the lock release button when shifting.
(If the shift lock system is not equipped, it is not necessary to depress the brake pedal. However, it is recommended to depress the brake pedal to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle.)

Press the lock release button when shifting.

The shift lever can be shifted freely.

OJD052005R

Automatic transaxle/Double clutch transmission operation

The automatic transaxle/Double clutch transmission has 6 forward speeds and one reverse speed. The individual speeds are selected automatically, depending on the position of the shift lever.

✻ NOTICE

The first few shifts on a new vehicle, if the battery has been disconnected, may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal condition, and the shifting sequence will adjust after shifts are cycled a few times by the TCM (Transaxle Control Module) or PCM (Powertrain Control Module).

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 24

✻ NOTICE

- **The double clutch transmission gives the driving feel of a Manual Transaxle, yet provides the ease of a fully Automatic Transaxle. Unlike a traditional Automatic Transaxle, the gear shifting can be felt (and heard) on the double clutch transmission**
  - **Think of it as an automatically shifting Manual Transaxle.**
  - **Shift into Drive range and you get great shifting feedback and sound, but no shifting hassle.**
- **Dry-type clutch transfers driving torque and also delivers direct driving feel which can be felt different from smooth Automatic Transaxle with slip of torque converter. This might be easily felt especially at launch & low vehicle speed.**
- **Double clutch transmission adopts dry-type double clutch, which is different from torque converter of Automatic Transaxle, and shows better acceleration performance during driving. But, initial launch might be little bit slower than Automatic Transaxle.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When rapidly accelerating at low vehicle speed, engine could rev at high rpm depending on vehicle drive condition.**
- **For smooth launch at uphill, press down the accelerator pedal properly depending on the vehicle drive condition.**
- **If you release your foot from the accelerator pedal at low vehicle speed, you may feel strong engine brake, which is similar to manual transaxle.**
- **In case if you want to speed down at downhill, you may use sport mode or paddle shift to downshift, and also use foot brake properly depending on driving condition to get enough deceleration.**
- **When you turn the ignition on and off, you may hear clicking sounds as the transmission solenoids turn on and off, cycling through a self test. This is a normal sound for the Double Clutch Transmission.**

For smooth operation, depress the brake pedal when shifting from N (Neutral) to a forward or reverse gear.

⚠ WARNING - Automatic transaxle

- **Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is in the P (Park) position; then set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.**

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 25

⚠ CAUTION - DCT

- *If the vehicle is held by applying accelerator pedal at the hill, the transmission and clutch will be damaged. To hold at the hill, use the parking brake or foot brake.*
- *An overload of the clutch is indicated by a longitudinal judder and a blinking display. To exclude a clutch-damage, the clutch is opened and the torque flow interrupted. If the clutch is opened, apply the foot brake and wait some minutes before driving again.*
- *Ignoring the warnings can lead to severe injuries and damage on the car.*
- *If the LCD warning is active, the foot brake has to be applied.*
- *When the problem of gear system occurs, the transaxle indicator will blink. For your safety, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer and have the system checked.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *When the clutch is overheated, the safe protection mode operates. According to the safe protection mode, the transaxle indicator blinks with buzzer sound. The buzzer beeps 3 times.*

  In this time, the LCD warning about safe protection mode also displays. In this condition, the driving may not be smoothly. If you ignore this warning, the driving condition is getting worse and the system may have problem. To return the normal driving condition, apply the foot brake and stop the vehicle for few minutes before driving off.
- *Whilst shifting the gear automatically, you may feel a corresponding shifting of gear. However, it is not malfunction.*

⚠ CAUTION

- *To avoid damage to your transaxle, do not accelerate the engine in R (Reverse) or any forward gear position with the brakes on.*
- *When stopped on an upgrade, do not hold the vehicle stationary with engine power. Use the service brake or the parking brake.*
- *Do not shift from N (Neutral) or P (Park) into D (Drive), or R (Reverse) when the engine is above idle speed.*

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 26

Transaxle ranges

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster displays the shift lever position when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

P (Park)

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park). This position locks the transaxle and prevents the front wheels from rotating.

⚠ WARNING

- **Shifting into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion will cause the drive wheels to lock which will cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**
- **Do not use the P (Park) position in place of the parking brake. Always make sure the shift lever is latched in the P (Park) position and set the parking brake fully.**
- **Never leave a child unattended in a vehicle.**

⚠ CAUTION

The transaxle may be damaged if you shift into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion.

R (Reverse)

Use this position to drive the vehicle backward.

⚠ CAUTION

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the transaxle if you shift into R (Reverse) whilst the vehicle is in motion, except as explained in "Rocking the vehicle", in this manual.

N (Neutral)

The wheels and transaxle are not engaged. The vehicle will roll freely even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or service brakes are applied.

D (Drive)

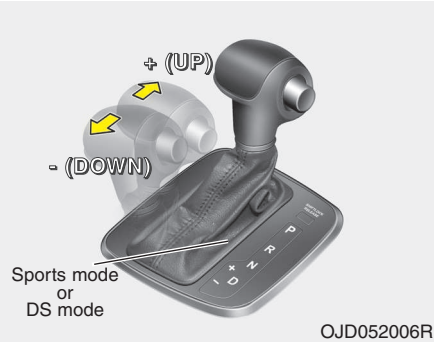
This is the normal forward driving position. The transaxle will automatically shift through a 6-gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

For extra power when passing another vehicle or climbing grades, depress the accelerator pedal fully (more than 80%) until the kick down mechanism works with a clicking noise, at which time the transaxle will automatically downshift to the next lower gear.

✻ NOTICE

- **Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive).**
- **A clicking noise heard from the kick down mechanism by depressing the accelerator pedal fully is a normal condition.**

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 27



OJD052006R

Sports mode

Whether the vehicle is stationary or in motion, sports mode is selected by pushing the shift lever from the D (Drive) position into the manual gate. To return to D (Drive) range operation, push the shift lever back into the main gate.

In sports mode, moving the shift lever backwards and forwards will allow you to make gearshifts rapidly.

Up (+) : Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.

Down (-) : Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.

DS mode (Drive Sporty) - DCT

DS mode supports the performance mode for driver. To shift the DS mode, shift the transaxle to DS mode which is centre of sports mode. If you shift [+] or [–] gear, the mode is change to sports mode. The transmission shift is automatically changed at higher engine speeds by engine load, your driving style, vehicle condition.

In DS mode, whilst coasting downhill, the engine does not support the vehicle to slow down.

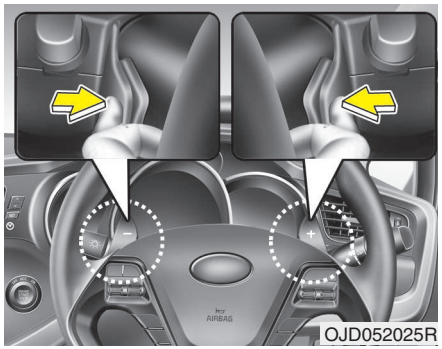
In DS mode, if you control the paddle shifter, the gear will be changed to sports mode. If the gear is changed to D (Drive), the gear will be changed to D (Drive) mode.

✻ NOTICE - DCT

Whilst stopping the vehicle by applying parking brake in D gear, even if you release the parking brake, the vehicle may not move. In this case, you can drive the vehicle by applying the foot brake and release, applying the accelerator or shifting the lever (D → N → D).

✻ NOTICE

- **In sports mode, the driver must execute upshifts in accordance with road conditions, taking care to keep the engine speed below the red zone.**
- **In sports mode, only the 6 forward gears can be selected. To reverse or park the vehicle, move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) or P (Park) position as required.**
- **In sports mode, downshifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.**
- **In sports mode, when the engine rpm approaches the red zone shift points are varied to upshift automatically.**
- **To maintain the required levels of vehicle performance and safety, the system may not execute certain gearshifts when the shift lever is operated.**
- **When driving on a slippery road, push the shift lever forward into the +(up) position. This causes the transaxle to shift into the 2nd gear which is better for smooth driving on a slippery road. Push the shift lever to the -(down) side to shift back to the 1st gear.**



Paddle shifter (if equipped)

The paddle shifter is available when the shift lever is in the D position, DS mode or the sports mode.

The paddle shifter can operate when the vehicle speed is more than 10km/h.
Pull the [+] or [-] paddle shifter once to shift up or down one gear and the system changes from D (Drive) mode or DS mode you used to sports mode.
If the vehicle speed is lower than 10km/h, if you depress the accelerator pedal for more than 7 seconds, if you shift the shift lever from D to sport mode and shift it from sports mode to D again or if you hold the paddle shifter [+] lever over 1 second, the system will change from sports mode to D (Drive) mode or DS mode you used.

With the shift lever in the sport mode

Pull the [+] or [-] paddle shifter once to shift up or down one gear.

✻ NOTICE

- **If you pull the [+] and [-] paddle shifters at the same time, you can't shift the gear.**
- **When you change the DS mode to manual mode, if you want to use DS mode again, shift the gear lever to D and shift DS mode.**

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 29

Shift lock system (if equipped)

For your safety, the automatic transaxle has a shift lock system which prevents shifting the transaxle from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

To shift the transaxle from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the brake pedal is repeatedly depressed and released with the shift lever in the P (Park) position, a chattering noise near the shift lever may be heard. This is a normal condition.

⚠ WARNING

Always fully depress the brake pedal before and whilst shifting out of the P (Park) position into another position to avoid inadvertent motion of the vehicle which could injure persons in or around the vehicle.



OJD052007R

Shift-lock override

If the shift lever cannot be moved from the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position into R (Reverse) position with the brake pedal depressed, continue depressing the brake, then do the following:

1. Press the shift-lock release button.
2. Move the shift lever.
3. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

Ignition key interlock system (if equipped)

The ignition key cannot be removed unless the shift lever is in the P (Park) position.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 30

Good driving practices

- Never move the shift lever from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never move the shift lever into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.
- Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Never take the vehicle out of gear and coast down a hill. This may be extremely hazardous. Always leave the vehicle in gear when moving.
- Do not "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow down the vehicle.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged.
- Always use the parking brake. Do not depend on placing the transaxle in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Never exceed posted speed limits.**

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 31

⚠ WARNING

If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward of backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.

Moving up a steep grade from a standing start

Auto transaxle and DCT

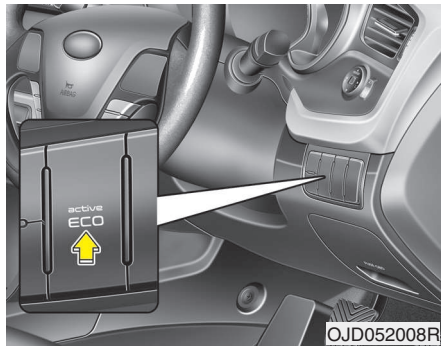
To move up a steep grade from a standing start, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to D (Drive). Select the appropriate gear depending on load weight and steepness of the grade, and release the parking brake. Depress the accelerator pedal gradually whilst releasing the service brakes.

Auto transaxle

When accelerating from a stop on a steep hill, the vehicle may have a tendency to roll backwards. Shifting the shift lever into 2 (Second Gear) will help prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 32

ACTIVE ECO SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



Active ECO operation

Active ECO helps improve fuel efficiency by controlling the engine and transaxle. But fuel-efficiency can be changed by the driver's driving habits and road conditions.

- When the Active ECO button is pressed the ECO indicator (green) will illuminate to show that the Active ECO is operating.
- When the Active ECO is activated, it does not turn off even though the engine is restarted again. To turn off the system, press the active ECO button again.
- If Active ECO is turned off, it will return to the normal mode.

When Active ECO is activated :

- The acceleration may slightly be reduced eventhough you depress the accelerator fully.
- The air conditioner performance may be limited.
- The shift pattern of the automatic transaxle may change.
- The engine noise may get louder.

The above situations are normal conditions when the active eco system is activated to improve fuel efficiency.

Limitation of Active ECO operation:

If the following conditions occur whilst Active ECO is operating, the system operation is limited even though there is no change in the ECO indicator.

- When the coolant temperature is low: The system will be limited until engine performance becomes normal.
- When driving up a hill: The system will be limited to gain power when driving uphill because the engine torque is restricted.
- When using sports mode: The system will be limited according to the shift location.
- When the accelerator pedal is deeply pressed for a few seconds: The system will be limited, judging that the driver wants to speed up.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 33

BRAKE SYSTEM

Power brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

In the event that the power-assisted brakes lose power because of a stalled engine or some other reason, you can still stop your vehicle by applying greater force to the brake pedal than you normally would. The stopping distance, however, will be longer.

When the engine is not running, the reserve brake power is partially depleted each time the brake pedal is applied. Do not pump the brake pedal when the power assist has been interrupted.

Pump the brake pedal only when necessary to maintain steering control on slippery surfaces.

⚠ WARNING - Brakes

- **Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormal high brake temperatures, excessive brake lining and pad wear, and increased stopping distances.**
- **When descending a long or steep hill, shift to a lower gear and avoid continuous application of the brakes. Continuous brake application will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance.**
- **Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to sefely slow down; the vehicle may also pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected in this way. Always test your brakes in this fashion after driving through deep water. To dry the brakes, apply them lightly whilst maintaining a safe forward speed until brake performance returns to normal.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Always, confirm the position of the brake and accelerator pedal before driving. If you don't check the position of the accelerator and brake pedal before driving, you may depress the accelerator instead of the brake pedal. It may cause a serious accident.**

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 34

In the event of brake failure

If service brakes fail to operate whilst the vehicle is in motion, you can make an emergency stop with the parking brake. The stopping distance, however, will be much greater than normal.

⚠ WARNING - Parking brake

Applying the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving at normal speeds can cause a sudden loss of control of the vehicle. If you must use the parking brake to stop the vehicle, use great caution in applying the brake.

Disc brakes wear indicator

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you will hear a high-pitched warning sound from your front brakes or rear brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you depress the brake pedal.

Please remember that some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when you first apply (or lightly apply) the brakes. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.

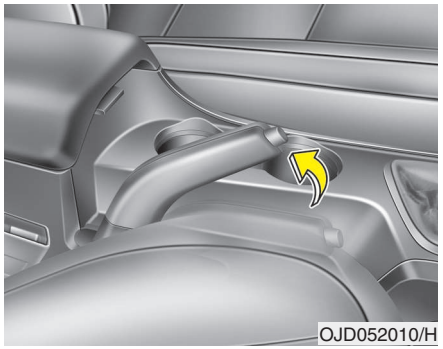
⚠ CAUTION

- ***To avoid costly brake repairs, do not continue to drive with worn brake pads.***
- ***Always replace the front or rear brake pads as pairs.***

⚠ WARNING - Brake wear

This brake wear warning sound means your vehicle needs service. If you ignore this audible warning, you will eventually lose braking performance, which could lead to a serious accident.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 35


OJD052010/H

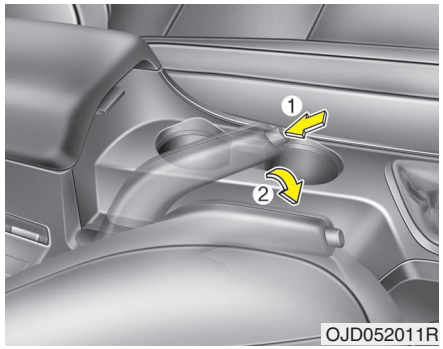
Parking brake - Hand type

Applying the parking brake

To engage the parking brake, first apply the foot brake and then without pressing the release button in, pull the parking brake lever up as far as possible. In addition it is recommended that when parking the vehicle on a gradient, the shift lever should be positioned in the appropriate low gear for manual transaxle vehicles or in the P (Park) position for automatic transaxle vehicles.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Driving with the parking brake applied will cause excessive brake pad (or lining) and brake rotor wear.***
- ***Do not operate the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the vehicle system and make endanger driving safety.***



OJD052011R

Releasing the parking brake

To release the parking brake, first apply the foot brake and pull up the parking brake lever slightly. Secondly press the release button (1) and lower the parking brake lever (2) whilst pressing the button.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 36

⚠ WARNING

- **To prevent unintentional movement when stopped and leaving the vehicle, do not use the shift lever instead of the parking brake. Set the parking brake AND make sure the shift lever is securely positioned in 1st (First) gear or R (Reverse) for manual transaxle equipped vehicles and in P (Park) for automatic transaxle equipped vehicles.**
- **Never allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the parking brake. If the parking brake is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**



WK-23

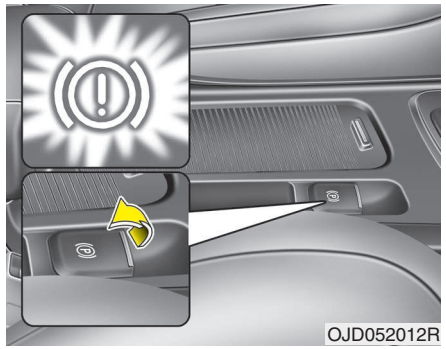
Check the brake warning light by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). This light will illuminate when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position.

Before driving, be sure the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off.

If the brake warning light remains on after the parking brake is released whilst the engine is running, there may be a malfunction in the brake system. Immediate attention is necessary.

If at all possible, cease driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution whilst operating the vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location or repair shop.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 37


OJD052012R

Electric parking brake (EPB) (if equipped)

Applying the parking brake

To apply the EPB (electric parking brake):

Pull up the EPB switch.

Make sure the warning light comes on.

✻ NOTICE

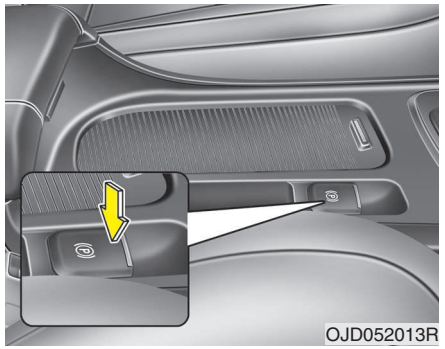
On a steep incline or when pulling a trailer if the vehicle does not stand still, do as follows:

1. Apply the EPB.

2. Pull up the EPB switch for more than 3 seconds.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the vehicle system and endanger driving safety.


OJD052013R

Releasing the parking brake

To release the EPB (electric parking brake), press the EPB switch in the following condition:

- Have the ignition switch or engine start/stop button in the ON position.
- Depress the brake pedal.

Make sure the brake warning light goes off.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 38

To release EPB (electric parking brake) automatically:

- Manual transaxle vehicle
  1. Start the engine.
  2. Fasten the driver's seat belt.
  3. Close the driver's door, engine bonnet and tailgate.
  4. Depress the clutch pedal with the gear engaged.
  5. Depress the accelerator pedal whilst releasing the clutch pedal.
- Automatic transaxle vehicle
  1. Start the engine.
  2. Fasten the driver's seat belt.
  3. Close the driver's door, engine bonnet and tailgate.
  4. Depress the accelerator pedal whilst the shift lever is in R (Rear), D (Drive).
- Shift lever in P (Park)
  With the engine running depress the brake pedal and shift out of P (Park) to R (Rear) or D (Drive).
- Shift lever in N (Neutral)
  With the engine running depress the brake pedal and shift out of N (Neutral) to R (Rear) or D (Drive).

Make sure the brake warning light goes off.

✻ NOTICE

- **For your safety, you can engage the EPB even though the ignition switch or engine stop/start button is in the OFF position, but you cannot release it.**
- **For your safety, depress the brake pedal and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch when you drive downhill or when backing up the vehicle.**

✻ NOTICE - Manual transaxle

A vehicle towing a trailer on a hill or on an incline may slightly roll backwards when starting the vehicle. To prevent the situation follow the below instructions.

1. **Depress the clutch pedal and select a gear.**
2. **Keep pulling up the EPB switch.**
3. **Depress the accelerator pedal and slowly release the clutch pedal.**
4. **If the vehicle starts off with enough driving power release the EPB switch.**

Do not follow the above procedure when driving on a flat level ground. The vehicle may suddenly move forward.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***If the parking brake warning light is still on even though the EPB has been released, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.***
- ***Do not drive your vehicle with the EPB applied. It may cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.***

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 39

EPB (electric parking brake) may be automatically applied when:

- The EPB is overheated
- Requested by other systems

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



OJD052035/OJD042195

- If you try to drive off depressing the accelerator pedal with the EPB applied, but doesn't release automatically, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If the driver's seat belt is not fastened and any door, the engine bonnet or tailgate is opened, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If there is a problem with the vehicle, a warning may sound and a message may appear.

If the above situation occurs, depress the brake pedal and release EPB by pressing the EPB switch.

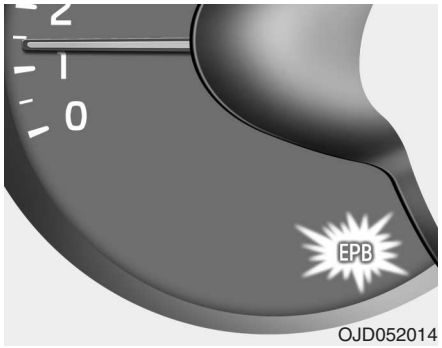
⚠ WARNING

- **To prevent unintentional movement when stopped and leaving the vehicle, do not use the shift lever in place of the parking brake. Set the parking brake and make sure the shift lever is securely positioned in P (Park).**
- **Never allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the parking brake. If the parking brake is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the car which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 40

⚠ CAUTION

- ***A click sound may be heard whilst operating or releasing the EPB, but these conditions are normal and indicate that the EPB is functioning properly.***
- ***When leaving your keys with a parking lot attendant or valet, make sure to inform him/her how to operate the EPB.***
- ***The EPB may malfunction if you drive with the EPB applied.***
- ***When you automatically release EPB by depressing the accelerator pedal, depress it slowly.***



OJD052014

EPB malfunction indicator (if equipped)

This warning light illuminates if the engine start/stop button is changed to the ON position and goes off in approximately 3 seconds if the system is operation normally.

If the EPB malfunction indicator remains on, comes on whilst driving, or does not come on when the ignition switch or the engine start/stop button is changed to the ON position, this indicates that the EPB may have malfunctioned.

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

The EPB malfunction indicator may illuminate when the ESC indicator comes on to indicate that the ESC is not working properly, but it does not indicate a malfunction of the EPB.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The EPB warning light may illuminate if the EPB switch operates abnormally. Shut the engine off and turn it on again after a few minutes. The warning light will go off and the EPB switch will operate normally. However, if the EPB warning light is still on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.***
- ***If the parking brake warning light does not illuminate or blinks even though the EPB switch was pulled up, the EPB is not applied.***
- ***If the parking brake warning light blinks when the EPB warning light is on, press the switch, then pull it up. Once more press it back to its original position and pull it back up. If the EPB warning does not go off, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.***

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 41

Emergency braking

If there is a problem with the brake pedal whilst driving, emergency braking is possible by pulling up and holding the EPB switch. Braking is possible only whilst you are holding the EPB switch.

⚠ WARNING

Do not operate the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation.

✻ NOTICE

During emergency braking by the EPB, the parking brake warning light will illuminate to indicate that the system is operating.

⚠ CAUTION

If you continuously notice a noise or burning smell when the EPB is used for emergency braking, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

When the EPB (electric parking brake) does not release

If the EPB does not release normally, we recommend that you take your vehicle to an authorised Kia dealer by loading the vehicle on a flatbed tow truck and have the system checked.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

⚠ WARNING

ABS (or ESC) will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving manoeuvres. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions.

The braking distance for vehicle equipped with an anti-lock braking system (or Electronic Stability `Control) may be longer than for those without it in the following road conditions.

During these conditions the vehicle should be driven at reduced speeds:

- **Rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.**
- **With tyre chains installed.**
- **On roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.**

(Continued)

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 42

(Continued)
The safety features of an ABS (or ESC) equipped vehicle should not be tested by high speed driving or cornering. This could endanger the safety of yourself or others.

The ABS continuously senses the speed of the wheels. If the wheels are going to lock, the ABS system repeatedly modulates the hydraulic brake pressure to the wheels.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

In order to obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes. Press your brake pedal as hard as possible or as hard as the situation warrants and allow the ABS to control the force being delivered to the brakes.

✻ NOTICE

A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the anti-lock brake system is functioning properly.

- Even with the anti-lock brake system, your vehicle still requires sufficient stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.
- Always slow down when cornering. The anti-lock brake system cannot prevent accidents resulting from excessive speeds.
- On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the anti-lock brake system may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 43



W-78

⚠ CAUTION

- *If the ABS warning light is on and stays on, you may have a problem with the ABS. In this case, however, your regular brakes will work normally.*
- *The ABS warning light will stay on for approximately 3 seconds after the ignition switch is ON. During that time, the ABS will go through self-diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, you may have a problem with your ABS. We recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.*

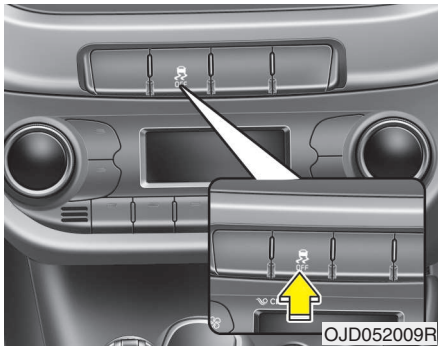
⚠ CAUTION

- *When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and operate your brakes continuously, the ABS will be active continuously and the ABS warning light may illuminate. Pull your vehicle over to a safe place and stop the engine.*
- *Restart the engine. If the ABS warning light is off, then your ABS system is normal. Otherwise, you may have a problem with the ABS. We recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.*

✻ NOTICE

When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the engine may not run as smoothly and the ABS warning light may turn on at the same time. This happens because of the low battery voltage. It does not mean your ABS is malfunctioning.

- **Do not pump your brakes!**
- **Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.**



Electronic stability control (ESC) (if equipped)

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is designed to stabilize the vehicle during cornering manoeuvres. ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going. ESC applies the brakes at individual wheels and intervenes with engine management system to stabilize the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Never drive too fast for the road conditions or too quickly when cornering. Electronic stability control (ESC) will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in turns, abrupt manoeuvres and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can still result in serious accidents. Only a safe and attentive driver can prevent accidents by avoiding manoeuvres that cause the vehicle to lose traction. Even with ESC installed, always follow all the normal precautions for driving - including driving at safe speeds for the conditions.

The Electronic stability control (ESC) system is an electronic system designed to help the driver maintain vehicle control under adverse conditions. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Factors including speed, road conditions and driver steering input can all affect whether ESC will be effective in preventing a loss of control. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ESC is active.

✻ NOTICE

A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the Electronic stability control (ESC) System is functioning properly.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 45

ESC operation

ESC ON condition

-

- When the ignition is turned ON, ESC and ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for approximately 3 seconds, then ESC is turned on.
- Press the ESC OFF button for at least half a second after turning the ignition ON to turn ESC off. (ESC OFF indicator will illuminate). To turn the ESC on, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF indicator light will go off).
- When starting the engine, you may hear a slight ticking sound. This is the ESC performing an automatic system self-check and does not indicate a problem.

When operating



When the ESC is in operation, ESC indicator light blinks.

- When the Electronic Stability Control is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.
- When moving out of the mud or slippery road, the engine rpm (revolution per minute) may not increase even if you press the accelerator pedal deeply. This is to maintain the stability and traction of the vehicle and does not indicate a problem.

ESC operation off

ESC OFF state



- To cancel the engine management system of ESC, press the ESC OFF button for less than 3 seconds (ESC OFF indicator light illuminates). The brake control function still operates.
- To cancel the engine management and brake control function of ESC, press the ESC OFF button for more than 3 seconds (ESC OFF indicator light illuminates).
- If the ignition switch is turned to LOCK position when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the engine, the ESC will automatically turn on again.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 46

■ ESC indicator light



■ ESC OFF indicator light



Indicator light

When ignition switch is turned to ON, the indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally.

The ESC indicator light blinks whenever ESC is operating or illuminates when ESC fails to operate.

ESC OFF indicator light comes on when the ESC is turned off with the button.

⚠ CAUTION

Driving with varying tyre or wheel sizes may cause the ESC system to malfunction. When replacing tyres, make sure they are the same size as your original tyres.

⚠ WARNING

The Electronic Stability Control system is only a driving aid; use precautions for safe driving by slowing down on curved, snowy, or icy roads. Drive slowly and don't attempt to accelerate whenever the ESC indicator light is blinking, or when the road surface is slippery.

ESC OFF usage

When driving

- ESC should be turned on for daily driving whenever possible.
- To turn ESC off whilst driving, press the ESC OFF button whilst driving on a flat road surface.

⚠ WARNING

Never press the ESC OFF button whilst ESC is operating (ESC indicator light blinks).

If ESC is turned off whilst ESC is operating, the vehicle may slip out of control.

✻ NOTICE

- **When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, ensure that the ESC is turned off by pressing the ESC OFF button for more than 3 seconds (ESC OFF light illuminated). If the ESC is left on, it may prevent the vehicle speed from increasing, and result in false diagnosis.**
- **Turning the ESC off does not affect ABS or brake system operation.**

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 47

Vehicle stability management (VSM) (if equipped)

This system provides further enhancements to vehicle stability and steering responses when a vehicle is driving on a slippery road or a vehicle detected changes in coefficient of friction between right wheels and left wheels when braking.

VSM operation

When the VSM is operating:

- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) ( ) light will blink.
- The steering wheel may be controlled.

When the vehicle stability management is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.

The VSM does not operate when:

- Driving on bank road such as gradient or incline
- Driving rearward
- ESC OFF indicator light ( ) remains on the instrument cluster
- EPS (Electronic Power Steering) indicator light remains on the instrument cluster

VSM operation off

If you press the ESC OFF button to turn off the ESC, the VSM will also cancel and the ESC OFF indicator light ( ) illuminates.

To turn on the VSM, press the button again. The ESC OFF indicator light goes out.

Malfunction indicator

The VSM can be deactivated even if you don't cancel the VSM operation by pressing the ESC OFF button. It indicates that a malfunction has been detected somewhere in the EPS (Electronic Power Steering) system or VSM system. If the ESC indicator light ( ) or EPS warning light remains on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

- **The VSM is designed to function above approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) on curves.**
- **The VSM is designed to function above approximately 30 km/h (18 mph) when a vehicle is braking on a split-mu road. The split-mu road is made of surfaces which have different friction forces.**

⚠ WARNING

- **The Vehicle Stability Management system is not a substitute for safe driving practices but a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead. Always hold the steering wheel firmly whilst driving.**
- **Your vehicle is designed to activate according to the driver's intention, even with the VSM installed. Always follow all the normal precautions for driving at safe speeds for the conditions – including driving in inclement weather and on a slippery road.**
- **Driving with varying tyre or wheel sizes may cause the VSM system to malfunction. When replacing tyres, make sure they are the same size as your original tyres.**

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 48

Hill-start assist control (HAC) (if equipped)

A vehicle has the tendency to slip back on a steep hill when it starts to go after stopping. The Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) prevents the vehicle from slipping back by operating the brakes automatically for about 1~2 seconds. The brakes are released when the accelerator pedal is depressed or after about 1~2 seconds.

⚠ WARNING

The HAC is activated only for about 1~2 seconds, so when the vehicle is starting off always depress the accelerator pedal.

✻ NOTICE

- **The HAC does not operate when the transaxle shift lever is in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.**
- **The HAC activates even though the ESC is off but it does not activate when the ESC has malfunctioned.**

Emergency Stop Signal (ESS)

The Emergency Stop Signal system alerts the driver behind by blinking the stop light when the vehicle is braked rapidly and severely.

The system is activated when:

- The vehicle suddenly stops (vehicle speed is over 55km/h and the vehicle deceleration at greater than 7 m/s^2)
- The ABS is activating

When the vehicle speed is under 40 km/h and the ABS deactivates or the sudden stop situation is over, the stop light blinking will stop. Instead, the hazard warning flasher will turn on automatically.

The hazard warning flasher will turn off when vehicle speed is over 10km/h after the vehicle has stopped. Also, it will turn off when the vehicle is driven at low speed for some time. You can turn it off manually by pushing the hazard warning flasher switch.

⚠ CAUTION

The Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) system will not work if the hazard warning flasher is already on.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 49

Good braking practices

⚠ WARNING

- **Whenever you leave or park your vehicle, always set the parking brake as far as possible and fully engage the vehicle's transaxle into the P (Park) position. If the parking brake is not fully engaged, the vehicle may move inadvertently and injure yourself and others.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**

- Check to be sure the parking brake is not engaged and that the parking brake indicator light is out before driving away.
- Driving through water may get the brakes wet. They can also get wet when the vehicle is washed. Wet brakes can be dangerous! Your vehicle will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the vehicle to pull to one side.

  To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal, taking care to keep the vehicle under control at all times. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and we recommend that you call an authorised Kia dealer.
- Do not coast down hills with the vehicle out of gear. This is extremely hazardous. Keep the vehicle in gear at all times, use the brakes to slow down, then shift to a lower gear so that engine braking will help you maintain a safe speed.
- Do not "ride" the brake pedal. Resting your foot on the brake pedal whilst driving can be dangerous because it can result in the brakes overheating and losing their effectiveness. It also increases the wear of the brake components.
- If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the vehicle pointed straight ahead whilst you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe place.
- If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transaxle, do not let your vehicle creep forward. To avoid creeping forward, keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 50

- Be cautious when parking on a hill. Firmly engage the parking brake and place the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle). If your vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels into the kerb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If your vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the kerb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If there is no kerb or if it is required by other conditions to keep the vehicle from rolling, block the wheels.
- Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk that the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily whilst you put the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.
- Do not hold the vehicle on the upgrade with the accelerator pedal. This can cause the transaxle to overheat. Always use the brake pedal or parking brake.

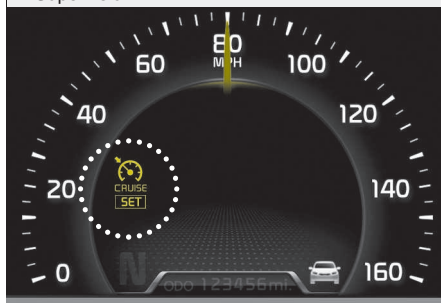
JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 51

CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Normal vision



■ Supervision



OJD052015R/OJD052048N

1. Cruise indicator
2. Cruise set indicator

The cruise control system allows you to program the vehicle to maintain a constant speed without pressing the accelerator pedal.

This system is designed to function above approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

⚠ WARNING

- **If the cruise control is left on, (cruise indicator light is illuminated), the cruise control can be switched on accidentally. Keep the cruise control system off when the cruise control is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.**
- **Use the cruise control system only when travelling on open highways in good weather.**
- **Do not use the cruise control when it may not be safe to keep the vehicle at a constant speed, for instance, driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads or over 6% up-hill or down-hill roads.**
- **Pay particular attention to the driving conditions whenever using the cruise control system.**
- **Be careful when driving downhill using the cruise control system, which may increase the vehicle speed.**

⚠ CAUTION

During cruise-speed driving of a manual transaxle vehicle, do not shift into neutral without depressing the clutch pedal, since the engine will be overrevved. If this happens, depress the clutch pedal or release the cruise control ON-OFF switch.

✻ NOTICE

- **During normal cruise control operation, when the SET switch is activated or reactivated after applying the brakes, the cruise control will energize after approximately 3 seconds. This delay is normal.**
- **To activate cruise control, depress the brake pedal at least once after turning the ignition switch to the ON position or starting the engine. This is to check if the brake switch which is important part to cancel cruise control is in normal condition.**

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 52



OJD053016

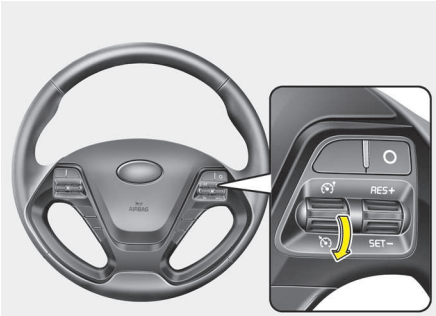
Cruise control switch

O: Cancels cruise control operation.

: Turns cruise control system on or off.

RES+: Resumes or increases cruise control speed.

SET-: Sets or decreases cruise control speed.



OJD053017

To set cruise control speed:

1. Move the lever down ( ) on the steering wheel, to turn the system on. The cruise indicator light will illuminate.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed, which must be more than 30 km/h (20 mph).

✻ NOTICE - Manual transaxle

For manual transaxle vehicles, you should depress the brake pedal at least once to set the cruise control after starting the engine.

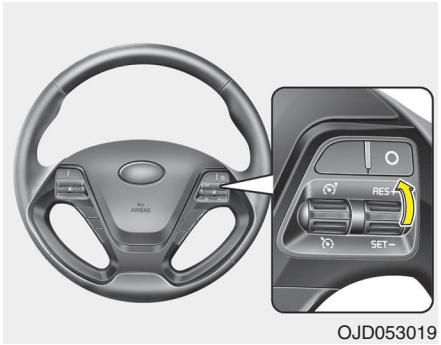


OJD053018

3. Move the lever down (to SET-), and release it at the desired speed. The cruise set indicator light will illuminate. Release the accelerator pedal at the same time. The desired speed will automatically be maintained.

On a steep grade, the vehicle may slow down or speed up slightly whilst going downhill.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:34 AM Page 53

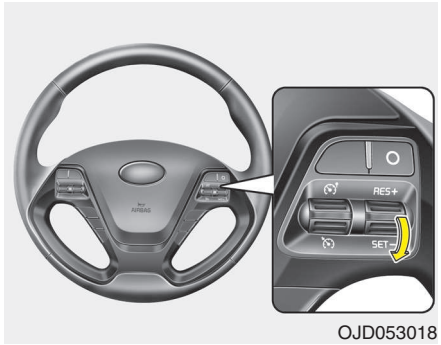


OJD053019

To increase cruise control set speed:

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever up (to RES+) and hold it. Your vehicle will accelerate. Release the lever at the speed you want.
- Move the lever up (to RES+) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase by 2 km/h (1 mph) each time you move the lever up (to RES+) in this manner.



OJD053018

To decrease the cruising speed:

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever down (to SET-) and hold it. Your vehicle will gradually slow down. Release the lever at the speed you want to maintain.
- Move the lever down (to SET-) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease by 2 km/h (1 mph) each time you move the lever down (to SET-) in this manner.

To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on:

If you want to speed up temporarily when the cruise control is on, depress the accelerator pedal. Increased speed will not interfere with cruise control operation or change the set speed.

To return to the set speed, take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 54



OJD053020

To cancel cruise control, do one of the following:

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal if equipped with a manual transaxle.
- Shift into N (Neutral) if equipped with an automatic transaxle.
- Press the O (Cancel) button located on the steering wheel.
- Decrease the vehicle speed lower than the memory speed by 20 km/h (12 mph).
- Decrease the vehicle speed to less than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

Each of these actions will cancel cruise control operation (the cruise set *indicator light will go off), but it will not turn the system off. If you wish to resume cruise control operation, move up the lever (to RES+) located on your steering wheel. You will return to your previously preset speed.*



OJD053019

To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph):

If any method other than the button was used to cancel cruising speed and the system is still activated, the most recent set speed will automatically resume when the +RES switch is pushed.

It will not resume, however, if the vehicle speed has dropped below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 55

To turn cruise control off, do one of the following:

- Move the lever down ( ).
- Move the lever up ( ). (If you move the lever up, the speed limit system will turn on)
- Turn the ignition off.

Both of these actions cancel cruise control operation. If you want to resume cruise control operation, repeat the steps provided in "To set cruise control speed" on the previous page.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 56

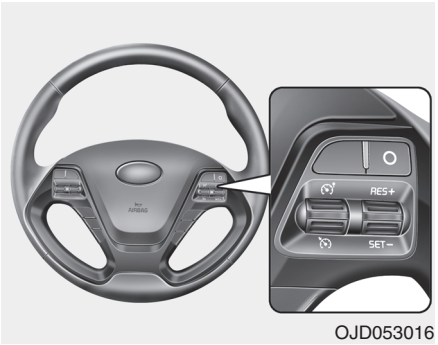
SPEED LIMIT CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

You can set the speed limit when you do not want to drive over a specific speed.

If you drive over the preset speed limit, the warning system operates (set speed limit will blink and chime will sound) until the vehicle speed returns within the speed limit.

✻ NOTICE

Whilst speed limit control is in operation, the cruise control system cannot be activated.



OJD053016

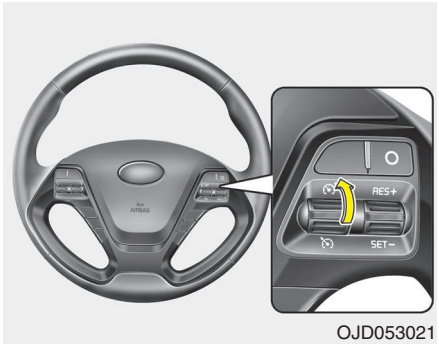
Speed limit control switch

O: Cancels set speed limit.

: Turns speed limit control system on or off.

RES+: Resumes or increases speed limit control speed.

SET-: Sets or decreases speed limit control speed.



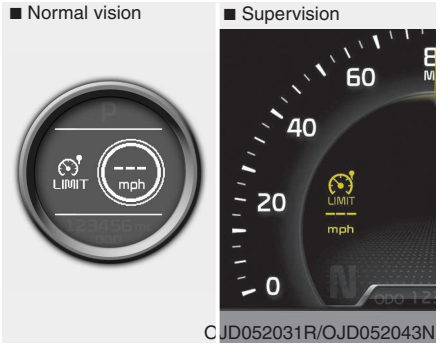
OJD053021

To set speed limit :

1. Move the lever up ( ) on the steering wheel, to turn the system on.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 57

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



CJD052031R/OJD052043N

The speed limit indicator light will illuminate.



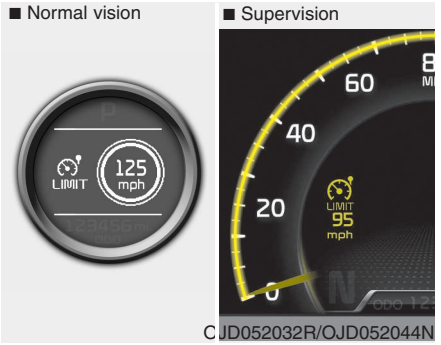
OJD053022

2. Move the lever down (to SET-).
3. Move the lever up (to RES+) or down (to SET-), and release it at the desired speed. Move the lever up (to RES+) or down (to SET-) and hold it. The speed will increase or decrease by 5 km/h (3 mph).

   Move the lever up (to RES+) or down (SET-) and release it immediately. The speed will increase or decrease by 1 km/h.

   The set speed limit will display on the instrument cluster.

■ Normal vision ■ Supervision



CJD052032R/OJD052044N

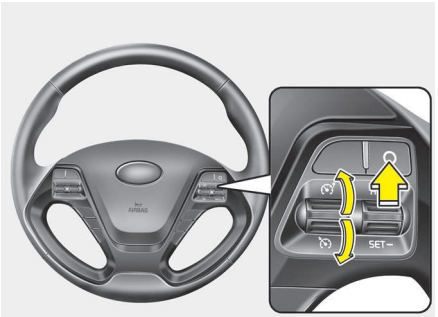
The set speed limit will be displayed.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 58

To drive over the preset speed limit you must depress hard on the accelerator pedal (more than approximately 80%) until the kick down mechanism works with a clicking noise. Then the set speed limit will blink and chime will sound until you return the vehicle speed within the speed limit.

✻ NOTICE

- **Depressing the accelerator pedal less than approximately 50%, the vehicle will not speed over the preset speed limit but maintain the vehicle speed within the speed limit.**
- **A clicking noise heard from the kick down mechanism by depressing the accelerator pedal fully is a normal condition.**



OJD053023

To turn off the speed limit control, do one of the following:

- Move the lever up ( ).
- Move the lever down ( ). (If you move the lever down, the cruise system will turn on)
- Turn the ignition off.

If you press the O (CANCEL) button once, the set speed limit will cancel, but it will not turn the system off. If you wish to reset the speed limit, move the lever up (to RES+) or down (to SET-) on your steering wheel to your desired speed.

■ Normal vision



■ Supervision



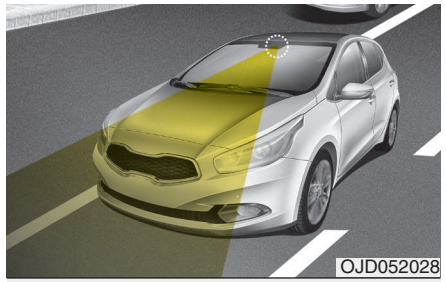
OJD052033R/OJD052046N

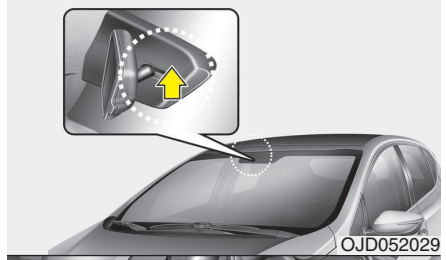
⚠ CAUTION

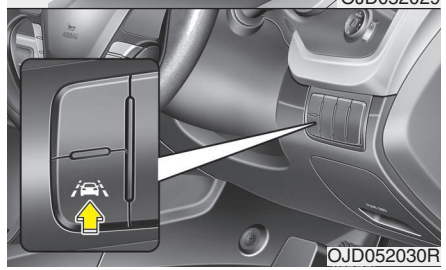
The "---" indicator will blink if there is a problem with speed limit control system.
If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 59

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING SYSTEM (LDWS) (IF EQUIPPED)



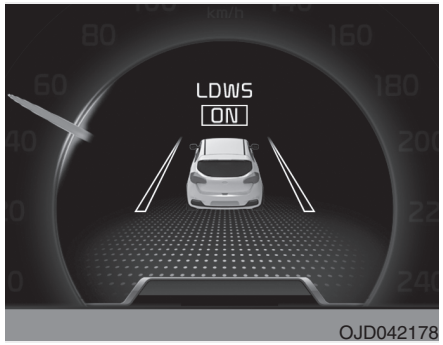




This system detects the lane with the sensor at the front windscreen and warns you when your vehicle leaves the lane.

⚠ WARNING

- **The LDWS does not make the vehicle change lanes. It is the driver's responsibility to always check the road conditions.**
- **Do not turn the steering wheel suddenly, when the LDWS warns you that your vehicle is leaving the lane.**
- **If the sensor can not detect the lane or if the vehicle speed does not exceed 60km/h, the LDWS won't warn you even though the vehicle leaves the lane.**
- **If your vehicle has window tint or other types of coating on the front windscreen, the LDWS may not work properly.**
- **Do not let water or any kind of liquid come in contact with the LDWS sensor.**
- **Do not remove the LDWS parts and do not affect the sensor by a strong impact.**
- **Do not put objects that reflect light on the dash board.**
- **Always check road conditions because you may not hear the warning chime because of audio and external conditions.**



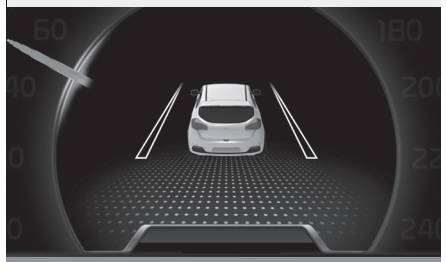
To operate the LDWS, press the switch with the ignition in the ON position. The indicator illuminates on the cluster. To cancel the LDWS, press the switch again.

• When the sensor detects the lane line



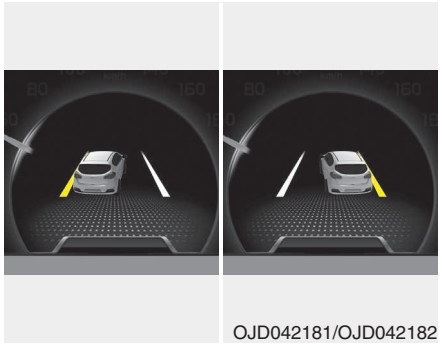
OJD042180

• When the sensor doesn't detect the lane line



OJD042179

If your vehicle leaves the lane when the LDWS is operating and vehicle speed exceeds 60km/h, the warning operates as follows:



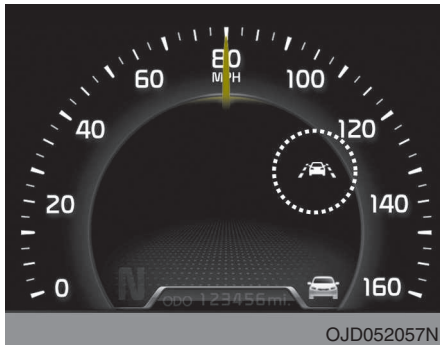
OJD042181/OJD042182

1. Visual warning

If you leave the lane, the lane you leave on the LCD display blinks yellow with 0.8 second of interval.

2. Auditory warning

If you leave the lane, the warning sound operates with 0.8 second of interval.



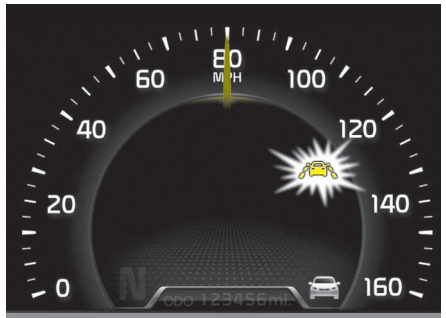
OJD052057N

If you change the display mode of trip computer whilst the LDWS is ON, the symbol of the LDWS will display like a picture.

The colour of symbol will change depend on the condition of LDWS system.

- White colour : It means the sensor does not detect the lane line.
- Green colour : It means the sensor detects the lane line.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 61



OJD052056N

Warning indicator

If the LDWS FAIL warning indicator comes on (yellow indicator), the LDWS is not working properly. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

The LDWS does not operate when:

- The driver turns on the turn signal to change lane.
  But, when the hazard warning flasher is operating, the LDWS operates normally.
- Driving on the lane line.

✻ NOTICE

To change lane, operate the turn signal switch, then change the lane.

The LDWS may not warn you even if the vehicle leaves the lane, or may warn you even if the vehicle does not leave the lane when:

- The lane is not visible due to snow, rain, stain, a puddle or many other things.
- The brightness of the outside changes suddenly.
- Not turning on the headlight even at night or in the tunnel.
- Difficult to distinguish the colour of the lane from the road.
- Driving on a steep grade or a curve.
- Light reflects from the water on the road.
- The lens or windscreen is stained with foreign matter.
- The sensor can not detect the lane because of fog, heavy rain or heavy snow.
- The surrounding temperature of the inside rear view mirror is high due to a direct ray of light.
- The lane is very wide or narrow.
- The lane line is damaged or indistinct.
- The shadow is on the lane line by a median strip.
- There is a mark similar to a lane line.
- There is a boundary structure.
- The distance from vehicle ahead is very short or the vehicle ahead hides the lane line.
- The vehicle shakes heavily.
- The lane number increases or decreases or the lane lines are crossing complicatedly.
- Putting something on the dashboard.
- Driving with the sun in front of you.
- Driving in areas under construction.
- The lane line is more than two in either side (Left/Right).

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 62

ECONOMICAL OPERATION

Your vehicle's fuel economy depends mainly on your style of driving, where you drive and when you drive.

Each of these factors affects how many kilometers (miles) you can get from a litre (gallon) of fuel. To operate your vehicle as economically as possible, use the following driving suggestions to help save money in both fuel and repairs:

- Drive smoothly. Accelerate at a moderate rate. Do not make "jack-rabbit" starts or full-throttle shifts and maintain a steady cruising speed. Do not race between stoplights. Try to adjust your speed to the traffic so you do not have to change speeds unnecessarily. Avoid heavy traffic whenever possible. Always maintain a safe distance from other vehicles so you can avoid unnecessary braking. This also reduces brake wear.
- Drive at a moderate speed. The faster you drive, the more fuel your vehicle uses. Driving at a moderate speed, especially on the highway, is one of the most effective ways to reduce fuel consumption.
- Do not "ride" the brake or clutch pedal. This can increase fuel consumption and also increase wear on these components. In addition, driving with your foot resting on the brake pedal may cause the brakes to overheat, which reduces their effectiveness and may lead to more serious consequences.
- Take care of your tyres. Keep them inflated to the recommended pressure. Incorrect inflation, either too much or too little, results in unnecessary tyre wear. Check the tyre pressures at least once a month.
- Be sure that the wheels are aligned correctly. Improper alignment can result from hitting kerbs or driving too fast over irregular surfaces. Poor alignment causes faster tyre wear and may also result in other problems as well as greater fuel consumption.
- Keep your vehicle in good condition. For better fuel economy and reduced maintenance costs, maintain your vehicle in accordance with the maintenance schedule. If you drive your vehicle in severe conditions, more frequent maintenance is required.
- Keep your vehicle clean. For maximum service, your vehicle should be kept clean and free of corrosive materials. It is especially important that mud, dirt, ice, etc. not be allowed to accumulate on the underside of the vehicle. This extra weight can result in increased fuel consumption and also contribute to corrosion.
- Travel lightly. Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle. Weight reduces fuel economy.
- Do not let the engine idle longer than necessary. If you are waiting (and not in traffic), turn off your engine and restart only when you're ready to go.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 63

- Remember, your vehicle does not require extended warm-up. After the engine has started, allow the engine to run for 10 to 20 seconds prior to placing the vehicle in gear. In very cold weather, however, give your engine a slightly longer warm-up period.
- Do not "lug" or "over-rev" the engine. Lugging is driving too slowly in too high a gear resulting engine bucking. If this happens, shift to a lower gear. Over-revving is racing the engine beyond its safe limit. This can be avoided by shifting at the recommended speeds.
- Use your air conditioning sparingly. The air conditioning system is operated by engine power so your fuel economy is reduced when you use it.
- Open windows at high speeds can reduce fuel economy.
- Fuel economy is less in crosswinds and headwinds. To help offset some of this loss, slow down when driving in these conditions.

Keeping a vehicle in good operating condition is important both for economy and safety. We recommend in general that the vehicle be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Engine off during motion

Never turn the engine off to coast down hills or anytime the vehicle is in motion. The power steering and power brakes will not function properly without the engine running. Instead, keep the engine on and downshift to an appropriate gear for engine braking effect. In addition, turning off the ignition whilst driving could engage the steering wheel lock (if equipped) resulting in loss of vehicle steering which could cause serious injury or death.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 64

SPECIAL DRIVING CONDITIONS

Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving conditions are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud, sand, or similar hazards, follow these suggestions:

- Drive cautiously and allow extra distance for braking.
- Avoid sudden braking or steering.
- When braking with non-ABS brakes pump the brake pedal with a light up-and-down motion until the vehicle is stopped.

⚠ WARNING - ABS

Do not pump the brake pedal on a vehicle equipped with ABS.

- If stalled in snow, mud, or sand, use second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid spinning the drive wheels.
- Use sand, rock salt, tyre chains, or other non-slip material under the drive wheels to provide traction when stalled in ice, snow, or mud.

⚠ WARNING - Downshifting

Downshifting with an automatic transaxle, whilst driving on slippery surfaces can cause an accident. The sudden change in tyre speed could cause the tyres to skid. Be careful when downshifting on slippery surfaces.

Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between 1 (First) and R (Reverse) in vehicles equipped with a manual transaxle or R (Reverse) and any forward gear in vehicles equipped with an automatic transaxle. Do not race the engine, and spin the wheels as little as possible. If you are still stuck after a few tries, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid engine overheating and possible damage to the transaxle.

⚠ CAUTION

Prolonged rocking may cause engine over-heating, transaxle damage or failure, and tyre damage.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 65

⚠ WARNING - Spinning tyres

Do not spin the wheels, especially at speeds more than 56 km/h (35 mph). Spinning the wheels at high speeds when the vehicle is stationary could cause a tyre to overheat which could result in tyre damage that may injure bystanders.

✻ NOTICE

The ESC system should be turned OFF prior to rocking the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward or backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.

Smooth cornering

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration. If you follow these suggestions, tyre wear will be held to a minimum.

Driving at night

Because night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight, here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, as it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there may not be any street lights.
- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other driver's headlights.
- Keep your headlights clean and properly aimed on vehicles not equipped with the automatic headlight aiming feature. Dirty or improperly aimed headlights will make it much more difficult to see at night.
- Avoid staring directly at the headlights of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it will take several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.

Driving in the rain

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous, especially if you're not prepared for the slick pavement. Here are a few things to consider when driving in the rain:

- A heavy rainfall will make it harder to see and will increase the distance needed to stop your vehicle, so slow down.
- Keep your windscreen wiping equipment in good shape. Replace your windscreen wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windscreen.
- If your tyres are not in good condition, making a quick stop on wet pavement can cause a skid and possibly lead to an accident. Be sure your tyres are in good shape.
- Turn on your headlights to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles can affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.
- If you believe you may have gotten your brakes wet, apply them lightly whilst driving until normal braking operation returns.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 66

Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is no higher than the bottom of the wheel hub. Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because brake performance may be affected.
After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times whilst the vehicle is moving slowly.

Driving off-road

Drive carefully off-road because your vehicle may be damaged by rocks or roots of trees. Become familiar with the off-road conditions where you are going to drive before you begin driving.

Highway driving

Tyres

Adjust the tyre inflation pressures to specification. Low tyre inflation pressures will result in overheating and possible failure of the tyres.
Avoid using worn or damaged tyres which may result in reduced traction or tyre failure.

✻ NOTICE

Never exceed the maximum tyre inflation pressure shown on the tyres.

⚠ WARNING

- **Underinflated or overinflated tyres can cause poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tyre failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. Always check the tyres for proper inflation before driving. For proper tyre pressures, refer to section 8, "Tyres and wheels".**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Driving on tyres with no or insufficient tread is dangerous. Worn-out tyres can result in loss of vehicle control, collisions, injury, and even death. Worn-out tyres should be replaced as soon as possible and should never be used for driving. Always check the tyre tread before driving your vehicle. For further information and tread limits, refer to section 7, "Tyres and wheels".**

Fuel, engine coolant and engine oil

High speed travel consumes more fuel than urban motoring. Do not forget to check both engine coolant and engine oil.

Drive belt

A loose or damaged drive belt may result in overheating of the engine.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 67

WINTER DRIVING



Severe weather conditions in the winter result in greater wear and other problems. To minimise the problems of winter driving, you should follow these suggestions:

Snowy or Icy conditions

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to use snow tyres or to install tyre chains on your tyres. If snow tyres are needed, it is necessary to select tyres equivalent in size and type of the original equipment tyres. Failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle. Furthermore, speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are potentially very hazardous practices.
During deceleration, use engine braking to the fullest extent. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause skids to occur. You need to keep sufficient distance between the vehicle in operation in front and your vehicle. Also, apply the brake gently. It should be noted that installing tyre chains on the tyre will provide a greater driving force, but will not prevent side skids.

✻ NOTICE

Tyre chains are not legal in all countries. Check the country laws before fitting tyre chains.

Snow tyres

If you mount snow tyres on your vehicle, make sure they are radial tyres of the same size and load range as the original tyres. Mount snow tyres on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. Keep in mind that the traction provided by snow tyres on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tyres. You should drive cautiously even when the roads are clear. Check with the tyre dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

⚠ WARNING - Snow tyre size

Snow tyres should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tyres. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.

Do not install studded tyres without first checking local, state and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.



Tyre chains

Since the sidewalls of radial tyres are thinner, they can be damaged by mounting some types of snow chains on them. Therefore, the use of snow tyres is recommended instead of snow chains. Do not mount tyre chains on vehicles equipped with aluminum wheels; snow chains may cause damage to the wheels. If snow chains must be used, use wire-type chains with a thickness of less than 15 mm (0.59 in). Damage to your vehicle caused by improper snow chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturers warranty.

Install tyre chains only on the front tyres.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Make sure the snow chains are the correct size and type for your tyres. Incorrect snow chains can cause damage to the vehicle body and suspension and may not be covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty. Also, the snow chain connecting hooks may be damaged from contacting vehicle components causing the snow chains to come loose from the tyre. Make sure the snow chains are SAE class "S" certified.***
- ***Always check chain installation for proper mounting after driving approximately 0.5 to 1 km (0.3 to 0.6 miles) to ensure safe mounting. Retighten or remount the chains if they are loose.***
- ***If your vehicle has 225/45R17 or 225/40ZR18 size tyres do not use tyre chain; they can damage your vehicle (wheel, suspension and body).***

Chain installation

When installing chains, follow the manufacturer's instructions and mount them as tightly as you can. Drive slowly with chains installed. If you hear the chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and tighten them. If they still make contact, slow down until it stops. Remove the chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

⚠ WARNING
- Mounting chains

When mounting snow chains, park the vehicle on level ground away from traffic. Turn on the vehicle Hazard Warning flashers and place a triangular emergency warning device behind the vehicle if available. Always place the vehicle in P (Park), apply the parking brake and turn off the engine before installing snow chains.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 69

⚠ WARNING - Tyre chains

- **The use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.**
- **Do not exceed 30 km/h (20 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.**
- **Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, sharp turns, and other road hazards, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or locked-wheel braking.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Chains that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body and wheels.***
- ***Stop driving and retighten the chains any time you hear them hitting the vehicle.***

Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant

Your vehicle is delivered with high quality ethylene glycol coolant in the cooling system. It is the only type of coolant that should be used because it helps prevent corrosion in the cooling system, lubricates the water pump and prevents freezing. Be sure to replace or replenish your coolant in accordance with the maintenance schedule. Before winter, have your coolant tested to assure that its freezing point is sufficient for the temperatures anticipated during the winter.

Check battery and cables

Winter puts additional burdens on the battery system. Visually inspect the battery and cables as described in section 7. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary

In some climates it is recommended that a lower viscosity "winter weight" oil be used during cold weather. See section 8 for recommendations. If you aren't sure what weight oil you should use, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.

Check spark plugs and ignition system

Inspect your spark plugs as described in section 7 and replace them if necessary. Also check all ignition wiring and components to be sure they are not cracked, worn or damaged in any way.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 70

To keep locks from freezing

To keep the locks from freezing, squirt an approved de-icer fluid or glycerine into the key opening. If a lock is covered with ice, squirt it with an approved de-icing fluid to remove the ice. If the lock is frozen internally, you may be able to thaw it out by using a heated key. Handle the heated key with care to avoid injury.

Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system

To keep the water in the window washer system from freezing, add an approved window washer anti-freeze solution in accordance with instructions on the container. Window washer anti-freeze is available from an authorised Kia dealer and most auto parts outlets. Do not use engine coolant or other types of anti-freeze as these may damage the paint finish.

Don't let your parking brake freeze

Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily whilst you put the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.

Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath

Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in severe winter conditions where this may happen, you should periodically check underneath the vehicle to be sure the movement of the front wheels and the steering components is not obstructed.

Carry emergency equipment

Depending on the severity of the weather, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tyre chains, tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, shovel, jumper cables, window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, blanket, etc.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 71

TRAILER TOWING

If you are considering towing with your vehicle, you should first check with your country's Department of Motor Vehicles to determine their legal requirements.

Since laws vary the requirements for towing trailers, cars, or other types of vehicles or apparatus may differ. We recommend that you ask an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Towing a trailer

If you don't use the correct equipment and/or drive improperly, you can lose control when you pull a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well - or even at all. You and your passengers could be seriously or fatally injured. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section.

⚠ WARNING - Weight limits

Before towing, make sure the total trailer weight, GCW (gross combination weight), GVW (gross vehicle weight), GAW (gross axle weight) and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.

✻ NOTICE - For Europe

- **The technically permissible maximum load on the rear axle(s) may be exceeded by not more than 15 % and the technically permissible maximum laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by not more than 10 % or 100 kg (220.4 lbs), whichever value is lower. In this case, do not exceed 100 km/h (62.1 mph) for vehicle of category M1 or 80 km/h (49.7 mph) for vehicle of category N1.**
- **When towing a trailer, the additional load imposed at the trailer coupling device may cause the rear tyre maximum load ratings to be exceeded, but not by more than 15%. In such a case, do not exceed 100km/h, and the rear tyre pressure should be at least 20 kPa(0.2 bar) above the tyre pressure(s) as recommended for normal use (i.e. without a trailer attached).**

⚠ CAUTION

Pulling a trailer improperly can damage your vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by your warranty. To pull a trailer correctly, follow the advice in this section.

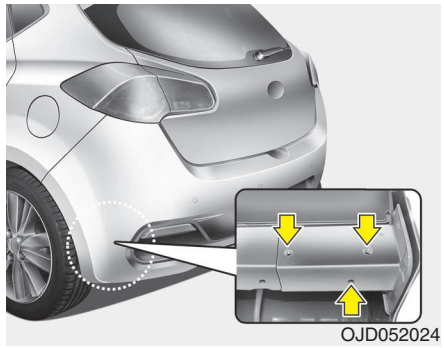
Your vehicle can tow a trailer. To identify what the vehicle trailering capacity is for your vehicle, you should read the information in “Weight of the trailer” that appears later in this section.

Remember that trailering is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, durability, and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering requires correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

This section contains many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. Please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.

Load-pulling components such as the engine, transaxle, wheel assemblies, and tyres are forced to work harder against the load of the added weight. The engine is required to operate at relatively higher speeds and under greater loads. This additional burden generates extra heat. The trailer also considerably adds wind resistance, increasing the pulling requirements.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 72


OJD052024

Hitches

It's important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by, and rough roads are a few reasons why you'll need the right hitch. Here are some rules to follow:

- Do you have to make any holes in the body of your vehicle when you install a trailer hitch? If you do, then be sure to seal the holes later when you remove the hitch.

  If you do not seal them, deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from your exhaust can get into your vehicle, as well as dirt and water.
- The bumpers on your vehicle are not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches to them. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.
- A Kia accessory trailer hitch is available at an authorised Kia dealer.

Safety chains

You should always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer so that the tongue will not drop to the road if it becomes separated from the hitch.

Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your trailer. And, never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 73

Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, make sure it conforms to your country's regulations and that it is properly installed and operating correctly.

If your trailer weight exceeds the maximum allowed weight without trailer brakes, then the trailer will also require its own brakes as well. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you'll be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly.

- Do not tap into or modify your vehicle's brake system.

⚠ WARNING - Trailer brakes

Do not use a trailer with its own brakes unless you are absolutely certain that you have properly set up the brake system. This is not a task for amateurs. Use an experienced, competent trailer shop for this work.

Driving with a trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you must get to know your trailer. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now a good deal longer and not nearly so responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check the trailer hitch and platform, safety chains, electrical connector(s), lights, tyres and mirror adjustment. If the trailer has electric brakes, start your vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This lets you check your electrical connection at the same time.

During your trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lights and any trailer brakes are still working.

Following distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

You'll need more passing distance up ahead when you're towing a trailer. And, because of the increased vehicle length, you'll need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

Backing up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, just move your hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making turns

When you're turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer won't strike soft shoulders, kerbs, road signs, trees, or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden manoeuvres. Signal well in advance.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 74

Turn signals when towing a trailer

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle has to have a different turn signal flasher and extra wiring. The green arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly connected, the trailer lights will also flash to alert other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes, or stop.

When towing a trailer, the green arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signals when, in fact, they are not. It is important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working. You must also check the lights every time you disconnect and then reconnect the wires.

Do not connect a trailer lighting system directly to your vehicle's lighting system. Use only an approved trailer wiring harness.

An authorised Kia dealer can assist you in installing the wiring harness.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to use an approved trailer wiring harness could result in damage to the vehicle electrical system and/or personal injury.

Driving on grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer operate efficiently.

On a long uphill grade, shift down and reduce your speed to around 70 km/h (45 mph) to reduce the possibility of engine and transaxle overheating.

If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes and you have an automatic transaxle, you should drive in D (Drive) when towing a trailer.

Operating your vehicle in D (Drive) when towing a trailer will minimise heat build up and extend the life of your transaxle.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When towing a trailer on steep grades (in excess of 6%) pay close attention to the engine coolant temperature gauge to ensure the engine does not overheat.***

  If the coolant temperature red warning light illuminates or the coolant temperature gauge moves towards "130", pull over and stop as soon as it is safe to do so, and allow the engine to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the engine has cooled sufficiently.
- ***You must decide driving speed depending on trailer weight and uphill grade to reduce the possibility of engine and transaxle overheating.***

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 75

Parking on hills

Generally, if you have a trailer attached to your vehicle, you should not park your vehicle on a hill. People can be seriously or fatally injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged if unexpectedly roll down hill.

⚠ WARNING - Parking on a hill

Parking your vehicle on a hill with a trailer attached could cause serious injury or death, should the trailer break loose.

However, if you ever have to park your trailer on a hill, here is how to do it:

1. Pull the vehicle into the parking space. Turn the steering wheel in the direction of the kerb (left if headed down hill, right if headed up hill).
2. If the vehicle has a manual transaxle, place the car in neutral. If the vehicle has an automatic transaxle, place the car in P (Park).
3. Set the parking brake and shut off the vehicle.
4. Place chocks under the trailer wheels on the down hill side of the wheels.
5. Start the vehicle, hold the brakes, shift to neutral, release the parking brake and slowly release the brakes until the trailer chocks absorb the load.
6. Reapply the brakes, reapply the parking brake and shift the vehicle to R (Reverse) for manual transaxle or P (Park) for automatic transaxle.
7. Shut off the vehicle and release the vehicle brakes but leave the parking brake set.

⚠ WARNING - Parking brake

It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the parking brake is not firmly set.

If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be seriously or fatally injured.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 76

When you are ready to leave after parking on a hill

1. With the manual transaxle in Neutral or automatic transaxle in P (Park), apply your brakes and hold the brake pedal down whilst you:
   - Start your engine;
   - Shift into gear; and
   - Release the parking brake.
2. Slowly remove your foot from the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Maintenance when trailer towing

Your vehicle will need service more often when you regularly pull a trailer. Important items to pay particular attention to include engine oil, automatic transaxle fluid, axle lubricant and cooling system fluid. Brake condition is another important item to frequently check. Each item is covered in this manual, and the Index will help you find them quickly. If you're trailering, it is a good idea to review these sections before you start your trip.

Do not forget to also maintain your trailer and hitch. Follow the maintenance schedule that accompanied your trailer and check it periodically. Preferably, conduct the check at the start of each day's driving. Most importantly, all hitch nuts and bolts should be tight.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Due to higher load during trailer usage, overheating might occur in hot days or during uphill driving. If the coolant gauge indicates over-heating, switch off the air conditioner and stop the vehicle in a safe area to cool down the engine.***
- ***When towing check transaxle fluid more frequently.***
- ***If your vehicle is not equipped with an air conditioner, you should install a condenser fan to improve engine performance when towing a trailer.***

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 77

If you do decide to pull a trailer

Here are some important points if you decide to pull a trailer:

- Consider using a sway control. You can ask a hitch dealer about sway control.
- Do not do any towing with your car during its first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) in order to allow the engine to properly break in. Failure to heed this caution may result in serious engine or transaxle damage.
- When towing a trailer, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer on additional requirements such as a towing kit, etc.
- Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (less than 100 km/h (60 mph)).
- On a long uphill grade, do not exceed 70 km/h (45 mph) or the posted towing speed limit, whichever is lower.
- The chart contains important considerations that have to do with weight:

For Europe

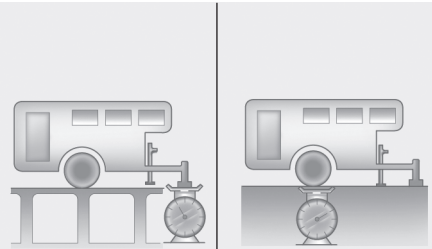
Item \ Engine		Petrol 1.4L	Petrol 1.6L MPI		Petrol 1.6L GDI		Petrol 1.6L T-GDI	Diesel 1.4L	Diesel 1.6L	
		M/T	M/T	A/T	M/T	A/T (DCT)	M/T	M/T	M/T	A/T
Maximum trailer weight kg (lbs.)	Without brake System	600 (1,323)	600 (1,323)	600 (1,323)	600 (1,323)	600 (1,323)	600 (1,323)	650 (1,433)	650 (1,433)	650 (1,433)
	With brake System	1,200 (2,646)	1,300 (2,866)	1,200 (2,646)	1,400 (3,086)	1,300 (2,866)	1,400 (3,086)	1,500 (3,307)	1,500 (3,307)	1,300 (2,866)
Maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device kg (lbs.)		60 (132)	60 (132)	60 (132)	60 (132)	60 (132)	60 (132)	75 (165)	75 (165)	75 (165)
Recommended distance from rear wheel centre to coupling point mm (inch)		3 Door and 5 Door : 859 (33.8) Wagon : 1,055 (41.54)								

M/T : Manual transaxle

A/T : Automatic transaxle

DCT : Double clutch transmission

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 78



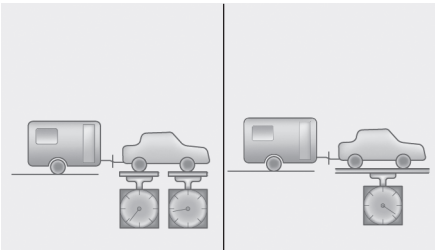
tongue load | Total Trailer Weight

C190E01JM

Weight of the trailer

What is the maximum safe weight of a trailer? It should never weigh more than the maximum trailer weight with trailer brakes. But even that can be too heavy.

It depends on how you plan to use your trailer. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how often your vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. The ideal trailer weight can also depend on any special equipment that you have on your vehicle.



Gross Axle Weight | Gross Vehicle Weight

C190E02JM

Weight of the trailer tongue

The tongue load of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total gross vehicle weight (GVW) of your vehicle. This weight includes the kerb weight of the vehicle, any cargo you may carry in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. And if you will tow a trailer, you must add the tongue load to the GVW because your vehicle will also be carrying that weight.

The trailer tongue should weigh a maximum of 10% of the total loaded trailer weight, within the limits of the maximum permissible trailer tongue load. After you've loaded your trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they aren't, you may be able to correct them simply by moving some items around in the trailer.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 79

⚠ WARNING - Trailer

- **Never load a trailer with more weight in the rear than in the front. The front should be loaded with approximately 60% of the total trailer load; the rear should be loaded with approximately 40% of the total trailer load.**
- **Never exceed the maximum weight limits of the trailer or trailer towing equipment. Improper loading can result in damage to your vehicle and/or personal injury. Check weights and loading at a commercial scale or highway patrol office equipped with scales.**
- **An improperly loaded trailer can cause loss of vehicle control.**

✻ NOTICE

With increasing altitude the engine performance decreases. From 1.000 m above sea level and for every 1.000 m thereafter 10% of vehicle/trailer weight (trailer weighter + gross vehicle weight) must be deducted.

JD RHD 5.QXP 2/17/2015 10:35 AM Page 80

VEHICLE WEIGHT

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of the vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's specifications and the certification label:

Base kerb weight

This is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle kerb weight

This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

Cargo weight

This figure includes all weight added to the Base Kerb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

GAW (Gross axle weight)

This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle kerb weight and all payload.

GAWR (Gross axle weight rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the certification label.
The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

GVW (Gross vehicle weight)

This is the Base Kerb Weight plus actual Cargo Weight plus passengers.

GVWR (Gross vehicle weight rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the certification label.

Overloading

⚠ WARNING - Vehicle weight

The gross axle weight rating (GAWR) and the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) for your vehicle are on the certification label attached to the driver's (or front passenger's) door. Exceeding these ratings can cause an accident or vehicle damage. You can calculate the weight of your load by weighing the items (and people) before putting them in the vehicle. Be careful not to overload your vehicle.

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:15 AM Page 1

What to do in an emergency

Road warning 6-2
- Hazard warning flasher 6-2

In case of an emergency whilst driving 6-3
- If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing 6-3
- If you have a flat tyre whilst driving 6-3
- If engine stalls whilst driving 6-3

If the engine will not start 6-4
- If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly 6-4
- If engine turns over normally but does not start . . . 6-4

Emergency starting 6-5
- Jump starting 6-5
- Push-starting 6-7

If the engine overheats 6-8

If you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre) 6-9
- Jack and tools 6-9
- Removing and storing the spare tyre 6-10
- Changing tyres 6-10
- Wheel nut tightening torque 6-14
- Jack label 6-17
- EC Declaration of Conformity for Jack 6-18

If you have a flat tyre (with Tyre Mobility Kit) . . 6-19
- Introduction 6-19
- Components of the Tyre Mobility Kit 6-20
- Using the Tyre Mobility Kit 6-21
- Distributing the sealant 6-22
- Producing the tyre inflation pressure 6-22
- Notes on the safe use of the Tyre Mobility Kit 6-23
- Technical Data 6-23

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 6-24
- Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction indicator 6-26
- Changing a tyre with TPMS 6-27

Towing 6-29
- Towing service 6-29
- Removable towing hook 6-30
- Emergency towing 6-30

Emergency commodity 6-33
- Fire extinguisher 6-33
- First aid kit 6-33
- Triangle reflector 6-33
- Tyre pressure gauge 6-33

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:15 AM Page 2

ROAD WARNING



Hazard warning flasher

The hazard warning flasher serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.

It should be used whenever emergency repairs are being made or when the vehicle is stopped near the edge of a roadway.

Press the flasher switch with the ignition switch in any position. The flasher switch is located in the centre facia switch panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.
- The hazard warning flasher should always be on whilst the vehicle is being towed.

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:15 AM Page 3

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY WHILST DRIVING

If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing

- If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing, set the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position and then push the vehicle to a safe place.
- If your vehicle has a manual transaxle not equipped with a ignition lock switch, the vehicle can move forward by shifting to the 2(Second) or 3(Third) gear and then turning the starter without depressing the clutch pedal.

If you have a flat tyre whilst driving

If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving:

1. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle slow down whilst driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road as this may cause a loss of control. When the vehicle has slowed to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on firm, level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.
2. When the vehicle is stopped, turn on your emergency hazard flashers, set the parking brake and put the transaxle in P (automatic transaxle) or reverse (manual transaxle).
3. Have all passengers get out of the vehicle. Be sure they all get out on the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.
4. When changing a flat tyre, follow the instruction provided later in this section.

If engine stalls whilst driving

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
2. Turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Try to start the engine again. If your vehicle does not start, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:15 AM Page 4

IF THE ENGINE WILL NOT START

If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly

1. If your vehicle has an automatic transaxle, be sure the shift lever is in N (Neutral) or P (Park) and the emergency brake is set.
2. Check the battery connections to be sure they are clean and tight.
3. Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the battery is discharged.
4. Check the starter connections to be sure they are securely tightened.
5. Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. See instructions for "Jump starting".

⚠ WARNING

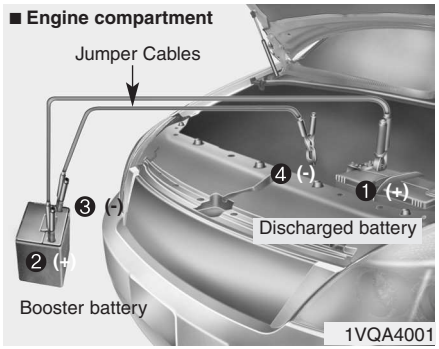
If the engine does not start, do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. This could result in a collision or cause other damage. In addition, push or pull starting may cause the catalytic converter (if equipped) to be overloaded and create a fire hazard.

If engine turns over normally but does not start

1. Check fuel level.
2. With the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position, check all connectors at ignition, coil and spark plugs. Reconnect any that may be disconnected or loose.
3. Check the fuel line in the engine compartment.
4. If the engine still does not start, we recommend that you call an authorised Kia dealer.

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:15 AM Page 5

EMERGENCY STARTING



Connect cables in numerical order and disconnect in reverse order.

Jump starting

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Therefore, to avoid harm to yourself or damage to your vehicle or battery, follow the jump starting procedures. If in doubt, we strongly recommend that you have a competent technician or towing service jump start your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

Use only a 12-volt jumper system. You can damage a 12-volt starting motor, ignition system, and other electrical parts beyond repair by use of a 24-volt power supply (either two 12-volt batteries in series or a 24-volt motor generator set).

⚠ WARNING - Battery

Never attempt to check the electrolyte level of the battery as this may cause the battery to rupture or explode causing serious injury.

⚠ WARNING - Battery

- **Keep all flames or sparks away from the battery. The battery produces hydrogen gas which may explode if exposed to flame or sparks.**
  If these instructions are not followed exactly, serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle may occur! If you are not sure how to follow this procedure, seek qualified assistance. Automobile batteries contain sulfuric acid. This is poisonous and highly corrosive. When jump starting, wear protective glasses and be careful not to get acid on yourself, your clothing or on the vehicle.
- **Do not attempt to jump start the vehicle if the discharged battery is frozen or if the electrolyte level is low; the battery may rupture or explode.**
- **Do not allow the (+) and (-) jumper cables to touch. It may cause sparks.**
- **The battery may rupture or explode when you jump start with a low or frozen battery.**

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:15 AM Page 6

Jump starting procedure

⚠ CAUTION - AGM battery (if equipped)

- ***Absorbent Glass Matt (AGM) batteries are maintenance-free and we recommend that the AGM batteries be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer. For charging your AGM battery, use only fully automatic battery chargers that are specially developed for AGM batteries.***
- ***When replacing the AGM battery, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised Kia dealer.***
- ***Do not open or remove the cap on top of the battery. This may cause leaks of internal electrolyte that could result in severe injury.***
- ***If the AGM battery is reconnected or replaced, ISG function will not operate immediately.***
  If you want to use the ISG function, the battery sensor needs to be calibrated for approximately 4 hours with the ignition off.

✻ NOTICE

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.
To prevent personal injury or damage to both vehicles, adhere strictly to the following procedure.

1. Make sure the booster battery is 12-volt and that its negative terminal is grounded.
2. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, do not allow the vehicles to touch.
3. Turn off all unnecessary electrical loads.
4. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the illustration. First connect one end of a jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery (1), then connect the other end to the positive terminal on the booster battery (2). Proceed to connect one end of the other jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3), then the other end to a solid, stationary, metallic point (for example, the engine lifting bracket) away from the battery (4). Do not connect it to or near any part that moves when the engine is cranked. Make sure that there is no contact between the bodywork of the two vehicles; otherwise, there is the danger of short circuits.

   Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.

⚠ CAUTION - Battery cables

Do not connect the jumper cable from the negative terminal of the booster battery to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. This can cause the discharged battery to overheat and crack, releasing battery acid.

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:15 AM Page 7

5. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and let it run at 2,000 rpm, then start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery. If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.

If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

Push-starting

Your manual transaxle-equipped vehicle should not be push-started because it might damage the emission control system. Vehicles equipped with automatic transaxle cannot be push-started. Follow the directions in this section for jump-starting.

⚠ WARNING

Never tow a vehicle to start it because the sudden surge forward when the engine starts could cause a collision with the tow vehicle.

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:15 AM Page 8

IF THE ENGINE OVERHEATS

If your temperature gauge indicates overheating, you will experience a loss of power, or hear loud pinging or knocking, the engine is probably too hot. If this happens, you should:

1. Pull off the road and stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Place the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) or neutral (manual transaxle) and set the parking brake. If the air conditioning is on, turn it off.
3. If engine coolant is running out under the vehicle or steam is coming out from the bonnet, stop the engine. Do not open the bonnet until the coolant has stopped running or the steaming has stopped. If there is no visible loss of engine coolant and no steam, leave the engine running and check to be sure the engine cooling fan is operating. If the fan is not running, turn the engine off.
4. Check to see if the water pump drive belt is missing. If it is not missing, check to see that it is tight. If the drive belt seems to be satisfactory, check for coolant leaking from the radiator, hoses or under the vehicle. (If the air conditioning had been in use, it is normal for cold water to be draining from it when you stop).

⚠ WARNING

Whilst the engine is running, keep hair, hands and clothing away from moving parts such as the fan and drive belts to prevent injury.

5. If the water pump drive belt is broken or engine coolant is leaking out, stop the engine immediately and we recommend that you call an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. This can allow coolant to blow out of the opening and cause serious burns.

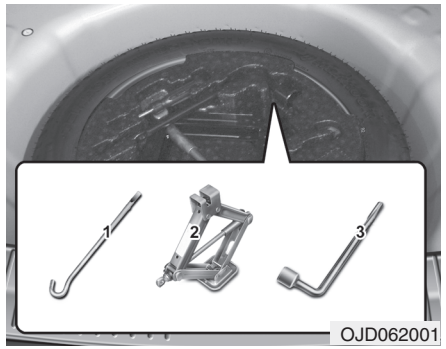
6. If you cannot find the cause of the overheating, wait until the engine temperature has returned to normal. Then, if coolant has been lost, carefully add coolant to the reservoir to bring the fluid level in the reservoir up to the halfway mark.
7. Proceed with caution, keeping alert for further signs of overheating. If overheating happens again, we recommend that you call an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

Serious loss of coolant indicates there is a leak in the cooling system and we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:15 AM Page 9

IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TYRE (WITH SPARE TYRE, IF EQUIPPED)



Jack and tools

The jack, jack handle, wheel lug nut wrench are stored in the luggage compartment.

Pull up the luggage box cover to reach this equipment.

(1) Jack handle

(2) Jack

(3) Wheel lug nut wrench

Jacking instructions

The jack is provided for emergency tyre changing only.

To prevent the jack from “rattling” whilst the vehicle is in motion, store it properly and fasten the jack screw fully.

Follow jacking instructions to reduce the possibility of personal injury.

⚠ WARNING - Changing tyres

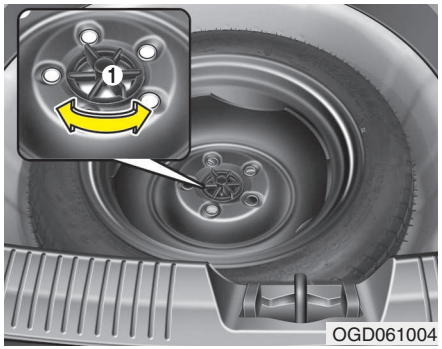
- **Never attempt vehicle repairs in the traffic lanes of a public road or highway.**
- **Always move the vehicle completely off the road and onto the shoulder before trying to change a tyre. The jack should be used on firm level ground. If you cannot find a firm level place off the road, call a towing service company for assistance.**
- **Be sure to use the correct front and rear jacking positions on the vehicle; never use the bumpers or any other part of the vehicle for jacking support.**

(Continued)

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:15 AM Page 10

(Continued)

- **The vehicle can easily roll off the jack causing serious injury or death.**
- **Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.**
- **Do not start or run the engine whilst the vehicle is on the jack.**
- **Do not allow anyone to remain in the vehicle whilst it is on the jack.**
- **Make sure any children present are in a secure place away from the road and from the vehicle to be raised with the jack.**



Removing and storing the spare tyre

Turn the tyre hold-down wing bolt (1) counterclockwise.

Store the tyre in the reverse order of removal.

To prevent the spare tyre and tools from “rattling” whilst the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.



Changing tyres

1. Park on a level surface and apply the parking brake firmly.
2. Shift the shift lever into R (Reverse) with manual transaxle or P (Park) with automatic transaxle.
3. Activate the hazard warning flasher.

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:15 AM Page 11



OJD062003

4. Remove the wheel lug nut wrench, jack, jack handle, and spare tyre from the vehicle.
5. Block both the front and rear of the wheel that is diagonally opposite the jack position.

⚠ WARNING - Changing a tyre

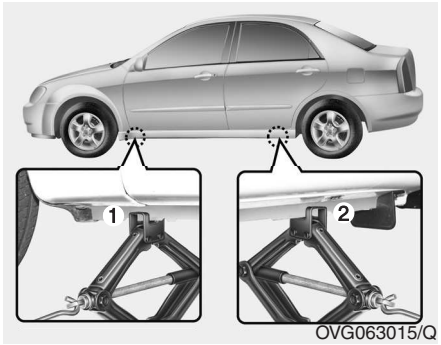
- **To prevent vehicle movement whilst changing a tyre, always set the parking brake fully, and always block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed.**
- **We recommend that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.**



OJD062004

6. Loosen the wheel lug nuts counterclockwise one turn each, but do not remove any nut until the tyre has been raised off the ground.

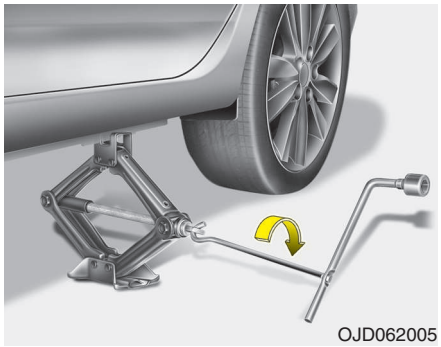
JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:15 AM Page 12



OVG063015/Q

7. Place the jack at the front (1) or rear (2) jacking position closest to the tyre you are changing. Place the jack at the designated locations under the frame. The jacking positions are plates welded to the frame with two tabs and a raised dot to index with the jack.

⚠ WARNING - Jack location
To reduce the possibility of injury, be sure to use only the jack provided with the vehicle and in the correct jack position; never use any other part of the vehicle for jack support.


OJD062005

8. Insert the jack handle into the jack and turn it clockwise, raising the vehicle until the tyre just clears the ground. This measurement is approximately 30 mm (1.2 in). Before removing the wheel lug nuts, make sure the vehicle is stable and that there is no chance for movement or slippage.

9. Loosen the wheel nuts and remove them with your fingers. Slide the wheel off the studs and lay it flat so it cannot roll away. To put the wheel on the hub, pick up the spare tyre, line up the holes with the studs and slide the wheel onto them. If this is difficult, tip the wheel slightly and get the top hole in the wheel lined up with the top stud. Then jiggle the wheel back and forth until the wheel can be slid over the other studs.

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:15 AM Page 13

⚠ WARNING

- **Wheels and wheel covers may have sharp edges. Handle them carefully to avoid possible severe injury.**
- **Before putting the wheel into place, be sure that there is nothing on the hub or wheel (such as mud, tar, gravel, etc.) that interferes with the wheel from fitting solidly against the hub. If there is, remove it. If the contact of the mounting surface between the wheel and hub is not good, the wheel nuts could come loose and cause loss of a wheel. Loss of a wheel may result in losing control of the vehicle. This may cause serious injury or death.**

10. To reinstall the wheel, hold it on the studs, put the wheel nuts on the studs and tighten them finger tight. The nuts should be installed with their tapered small diameter ends directed inward. Jiggle the tyre to be sure it is completely seated, then tighten the nuts as much as possible with your fingers again.
11. Lower the vehicle to the ground by turning the wheel nut wrench counterclockwise.



OGD061013

Then position the wrench as shown in the drawing and tighten the wheel nuts. Be sure the socket is seated completely over the nut. Do not stand on the wrench handle or use an extension pipe over the wrench handle. Go around the wheel tightening every nut following the numerical sequence shown in the image until they are all tight. Then double-check each nut for tightness. After changing wheels, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:15 AM Page 14

Wheel nut tightening torque:

Steel wheel & aluminium alloy wheel:
9~11 kg.m (65~79 lb.ft)

If you have a tyre gauge, remove the valve cap and check the air pressure. If the pressure is lower than recommended, drive slowly to the nearest service station and inflate to the correct pressure. If it is too high, adjust it until it is correct. Always reinstall the valve cap after checking or adjusting tyre pressure. If the cap is not replaced, air may leak from the tyre. If you lose a valve cap, buy another and install it as soon as possible.

After you have changed wheels, always secure the flat tyre in its place and return the jack and tools to their proper storage locations.

⚠ CAUTION

Your vehicle has metric threads on the wheel studs and nuts. Make certain during wheel removal that the same nuts that were removed are reinstalled - or, if replaced, that nuts with metric threads and the same chamfer configuration are used. Installation of a non-metric thread nut on a metric stud or vice-versa will not secure the wheel to the hub properly and will damage the stud so that it must be replaced.

Note that most lug nuts do not have metric threads. Be sure to use extreme care in checking for thread style before installing aftermarket lug nuts or wheels. If in doubt, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Wheel studs

If the studs are damaged, they may lose their ability to retain the wheel. This could lead to the loss of the wheel and a collision resulting in serious injuries.

To prevent the jack, jack handle, wheel lug nut wrench and spare tyre from rattling whilst the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.

⚠ WARNING - Inadequate spare tyre pressure

Check the inflation pressures as soon as possible after installing the spare tyre. Adjust it to the specified pressure, if necessary. Refer to "Tyres and wheels" in section 8.

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:15 AM Page 15

Important - use of compact spare tyre (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a compact spare tyre. This compact spare tyre takes up less space than a regular-size tyre. This tyre is smaller than a conventional tyre and is designed for temporary use only.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***You should drive carefully when the compact spare is in use. The compact spare should be replaced by the proper conventional tyre and rim at the first opportunity.***
- ***The operation of this vehicle is not recommended with more than one compact spare tyre in use at the same time.***

⚠ WARNING

The compact spare tyre is for emergency use only. Do not operate your vehicle on this compact spare at the speed over 80 km/h (50 mph). The original tyre should be repaired or replaced as soon as possible to avoid failure of the spare possibly leading to personal injury or death.

The compact spare should be inflated to 420 kPa (60 psi).

✻ NOTICE

Check the inflation pressure after installing the spare tyre. Adjust it to the specified pressure, as necessary.

When using a compact spare tyre, observe the following precautions:

- Under no circumstances should you exceed 80 km/h (50 mph); a higher speed could damage the tyre.
- Ensure that you drive slowly enough to avoid all hazards. Any road hazard, such as a pothole or debris, could seriously damage the compact spare.
- Any continuous road use of this tyre could result in tyre failure, loss of vehicle control, and possible personal injury.
- Do not exceed the vehicle's maximum load rating or the load-carrying capacity shown on the sidewall of the compact spare tyre.
- Avoid driving over obstacles. The compact spare tyre diameter is smaller than the diameter of a conventional tyre and reduces the ground clearance approximately 25 mm (1 inch), which could result in damage to the vehicle.

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:15 AM Page 16

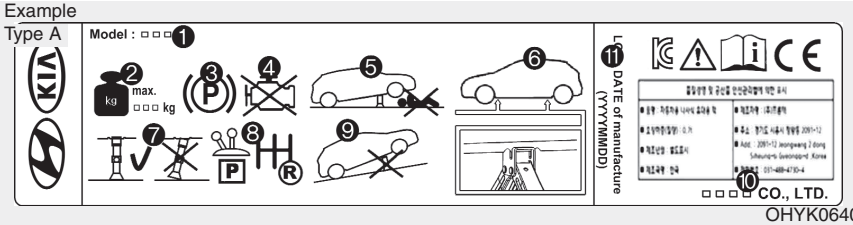
- Do not take this vehicle through an automatic car wash whilst the compact spare tyre is installed.
- Do not use tyre chains on the compact spare tyre. Because of the smaller size, a tyre chain will not fit properly. This could damage the vehicle and result in loss of the chain.
- The compact spare tyre should not be installed on the front axle if the vehicle must be driven in snow or on ice.
- Do not use the compact spare tyre on any other vehicle because this tyre has been designed especially for your vehicle.
- The compact spare tyre's tread life is shorter than a regular tyre. Inspect your compact spare tyre regularly and replace worn compact spare tyres with the same size and design, mounted on the same wheel.
- The compact spare tyre should not be used on any other wheels, nor should standard tyres, snow tyres, wheel covers or trim rings be used with the compact spare wheel. If such use is attempted, damage to these items or other car components may occur.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at a time.
- Do not tow a trailer whilst the compact spare tyre is installed.

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:15 AM Page 17

Jack label

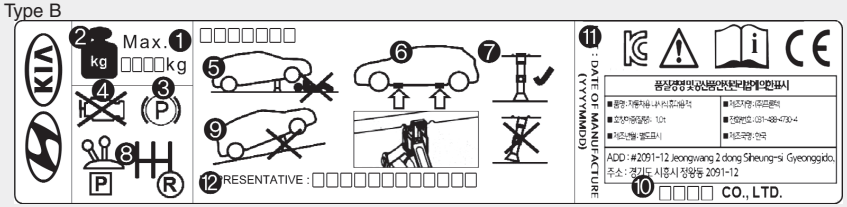
■ Example

■ Type A



OHYK064001

■ Type B



OHYK064005

■ Type C



OHYK064002

❊ The actual Jack label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration. For more detailed specifications, refer to the label attached to the jack.

1. Model Name
2. Maximum allowable load
3. When using the jack, set your parking brake.
4. When using the jack, stop the engine.
5. Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.
6. The designated locations under the frame
7. When supporting the vehicle, the base plate of jack must be vertical under the lifting point.
8. Shift into Reverse gear on vehicles with manual transaxle or move the shift lever to the P position on vehicles with automatic transaxle.
9. The jack should be used on firm level ground.
10. Jack manufacturer
11. Production date
12. Representative company and address

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:15 AM Page 18

EC Declaration of Conformity for Jack

CE

EC Declaration of Conformity
according to EC Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC

We, **SAMKI IND. CO., LTD.**
22, Hyojuk3-Gil, Buk-Gu, Ulsan, Korea
declare under our sole responsibility that the product

Product : Jack Assembly
Type Designation(s) : Jack Assembly-600kg, Jack Assembly-700kg
Jack Assembly-800kg, Jack Assembly-1000kg
Jack Assembly-1200kg, Jack Assembly-1500kg
Serial No. : N/A
Year of Manufacture : 2013
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the following standard(s) or other normative document(s);

EN ISO12100 (2010)	Safety of machinery - General principles for design – Risk assessment and risk reduction
EN ISO12100-2/A1 (2009)	Safety of machinery - Basic concepts, general principles for design, Part 2 : Technical principles
EN 1494/A1 (2008)	Mobile or movable jacks and associated lifting equipment

following the provisions of Directive(s);

2006/42/EC	Directive on the approximation of the laws of Member States relating to machinery (OJ L157 Jun, 9, 2006)

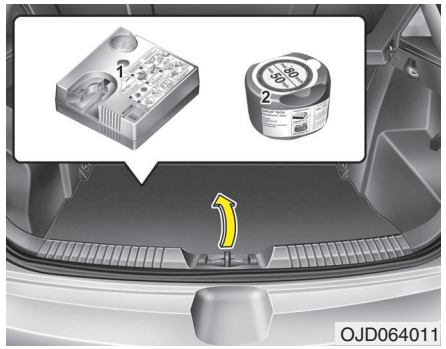
Ulsan , Korea / Jul .25 .2013 Hyun Duck, Cho President
(Place and date of issue)(name and signature or equivalent making of authorized person)

* T.C.F Compiling Person: **Safenet Limited (European Notified body : 1674)**
Denford Garage, Denford, Kettering Northants, NN14 4EQ, England

JACKDOC14S

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:15 AM Page 19

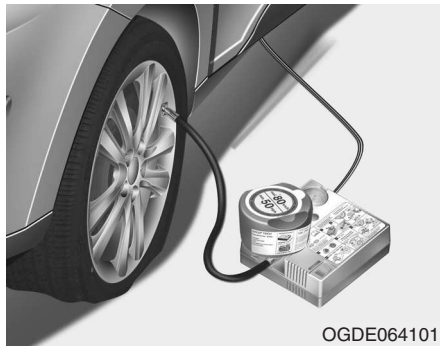
IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TYRE (WITH TYREMOBILITYKIT, IF EQUIPPED)



Please read the instructions before using the TyreMobilityKit.

(1) Compressor

(2) Sealant bottle



Introduction

With the TyreMobilityKit you stay mobile even after experiencing a tyre puncture.

The system of compressor and sealing compound effectively and comfortably seals most punctures in a passenger car tyre caused by nails or similar objects and reinflates the tyre.

After you ensured that the tyre is properly sealed you can drive cautiously on the tyre (up to 200 km (120 miles)) at a max. speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) in order to reach a vehicle or tyre dealer to have the tyre replaced.

It is possible that some tyres, especially with larger punctures or damage to the sidewall, cannot be sealed completely.

Air pressure loss in the tyre may adversely affect tyre performance.

For this reason, you should avoid abrupt steering or other driving manoeuvres, especially if the vehicle is heavily loaded or if a trailer is in use.

The TyreMobilityKit is not designed or intended as a permanent tyre repair method and is to be used for one tyre only.

This instruction shows you step by step how to temporarily seal the puncture simply and reliably.

Read the section "Notes on the safe use of the TyreMobilityKit".

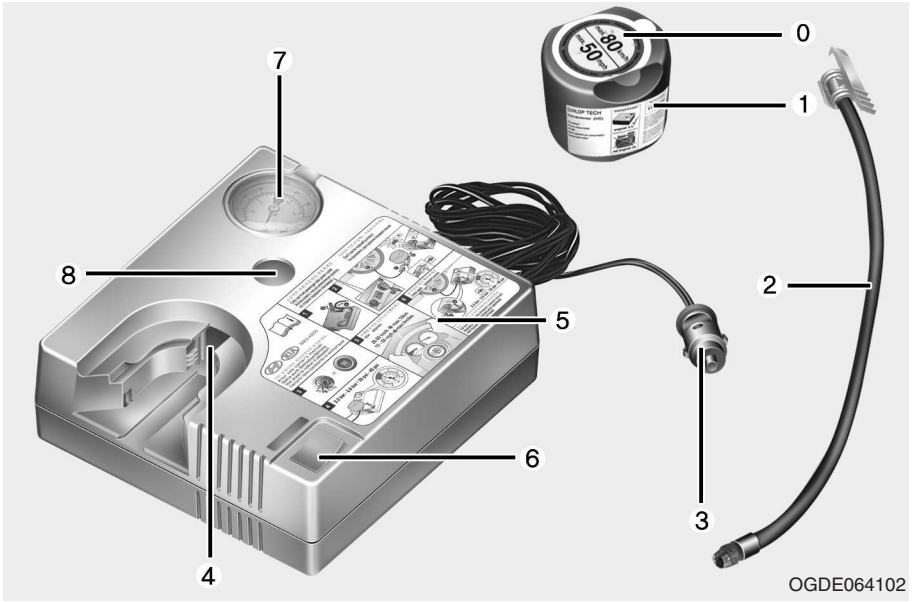
⚠ WARNING

Do not use the TyreMobilityKit if a tyre is severely damaged by driving run flat or with insufficient air pressure.

Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tyre can be sealed using the TyreMobilityKit.

Damage to the sidewall must not be repaired due to safety reasons.

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:15 AM Page 20



Components of the TyreMobilityKit

0. Speed restriction label
1. Sealant bottle and label with speed restriction
2. Filling hose from sealant bottle to wheel
3. Connectors and cable for the power outlet direct connection
4. Holder for the sealant bottle
5. Compressor
6. On/off switch
7. Pressure gauge for displaying the tyre inflation pressure
8. Button for reducing tyre inflation pressure

Connectors, cable and connection hose are stored in the compressor housing.

⚠ WARNING

Before using the TyreMobilityKit, follow the instructions on the sealant bottle.

Remove the label with the speed restriction from the sealant bottle and apply it to the steering wheel.

Please note the expiry date on the sealant bottle.

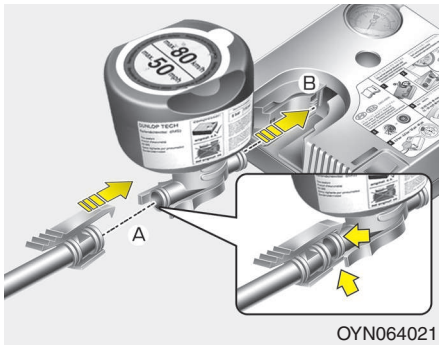
JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:16 AM Page 21

Using the TyreMobilityKit

1. Filling the sealant

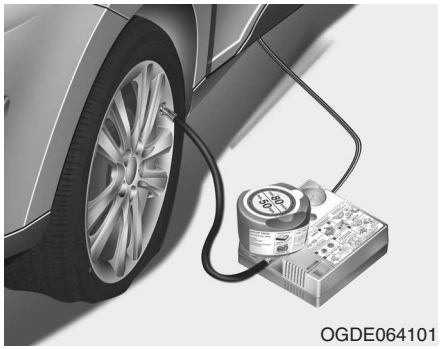
Strictly follow the specified sequence, otherwise the sealant may escape under high pressure.

1) Shake the sealant bottle.



OYN064021

2) Connect the filling hose 2 onto the connector of the sealant bottle (A).
3) Ensure that button 8 on the compressor is not pressed.
4) Unscrew the valve cap from the valve of the defective wheel and screw filling hose 2 of the sealant bottle onto the valve.
5) Insert the sealant bottle into the housing of the compressor so that the bottle is upright (B).


OGDE064101

6) Ensure that the compressor is switched off, position 0.
7) Connect between compressor and the vehicle power outlet using the cable and connectors.

✻ NOTICE

Only use the front passenger side power outlet.

8) With the ignition switched on:

Switch on the compressor and let it run for approximately 3 minutes to fill the sealant. The inflation pressure of the tyre after filling is unimportant.

9) Switch off the compressor.
10) Detach the hose from the sealant bottle connector and from the tyre valve.

Return the TyreMobilityKit to its storage location in the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Carbon monoxide poisoning and suffocation is possible if the engine is left running in a poorly ventilated or unventilated location (such as inside a building).

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:16 AM Page 22

Distributing the sealant

Immediately drive approximately 3 km (2 miles) to evenly distribute the sealant in the tyre.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). If possible, do not fall below a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph).

Whilst driving, if you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise, reduce your speed and drive with caution until you can safely pull off of the side of the road.

Call for road side service or towing.

Producing the tyre inflation pressure

1) After driving approximately 3 km (2 miles), stop at a suitable location.
2) Connect the filling hose 2 of the compressor (clip mounted side) directly and then connect the filling hose 2 (opposite side) to the tyre valve.
3) Connect between compressor and the vehicle power outlet using the cable and connectors.
4) Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to 220 kPa (32 psi). With the ignition switched on, proceed as follows.
   - **To increase the inflation pressure:** Switch on the compressor, position I. To check the current inflation pressure setting, briefly switch off the compressor.
   - **To reduce the inflation pressure:** Press the button 8 on the compressor.

⚠ WARNING

Do not let the compressor run for more than 10 minutes, otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged.

⚠ CAUTION

If the inflation pressure is not maintained, drive the vehicle a second time, refer to Distributing the sealant. Then repeat steps 1 to 4.

Use of the TyreMobilityKit may be ineffectual for tyre damage larger than approximately 4 mm (0.16 in).

We recommend that you contact the nearest Kia A/S centre, or a workshop that works according to Kia repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel if the tyre cannot be made roadworthy with the TyreMobilityKit.

⚠ WARNING

The tyre inflation pressure must be at least 220 kPa (32 psi). If it is not, do not continue driving. Call for road side service or towing.

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:16 AM Page 23

Notes on the safe use of the TyreMobilityKit

- Park your car at the side of the road so that you can work with the TyreMobilityKit away from moving traffic. Place your warning triangle in a prominent place to make passing vehicles aware of your location.
- To be sure your vehicle won't move, even when you're on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake.
- Only use the TyreMobilityKit for sealing/inflation passenger car tyres. Do not use on motorcycles, bicycles or any other type of tyres.
- Do not remove any foreign objects-such as nails or screws -that have penetrated the tyre.
- Before using the TyreMobilityKit, read the precautionary advice printed on the sealant bottle!
- Provided the car is outdoors, leave the engine running. Otherwise operating the compressor may eventually drain the car battery.
- Never leave the TyreMobilityKit unattended whilst it is being used.
- Do not leave the compressor running for more than 10 min. at a time or it may overheat.
- Do not use the TyreMobilityKit if the ambient temperature is below -30°C (-22°F).
- Do not use the sealing compound after its expiration date which can be found on the label of the bottle.
- Keep away from children.

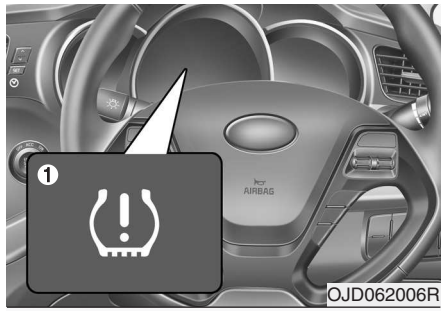
Technical Data

System voltage: DC 12 V
Working voltage: DC 10 - 15 V
Amperage rating: max. 10A ± 1A
(at DC 12V operation)
Suitable for use at temperatures:
-30 ~ +70°C (-22 ~ +158°F)
Max. working pressure:
6 bar (87 psi)
Size
Compressor: 161 X 150 X 55.8 mm
(6.3 X 5.9 X 2.2 in.)
Sealant bottle: 81 x ø 85 mm
(3.2 x ø 3.3 in.)
Compressor weight:
735 g ± 25 g (1.62 lbs ± 0.06 lbs)
Sealant volume:
200 ml (12.2 cu. in.)

❊ Sealing compound and spare parts can be obtained and replaced at an authorised vehicle or tyre dealer. Empty sealing compound bottles may be disposed of at home. Liquid residue from the sealing compound should be disposed of by your vehicle or tyre dealer or in accordance with local waste disposal regulations.

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:16 AM Page 24

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)





(1) Low tyre pressure telltale / TPMS malfunction indicator

(2) Low tyre pressure position telltale (Shown on the instrument panel display)

Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the TPMS malfunction indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended.

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:16 AM Page 25

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

✻ NOTICE

If any of the below happens, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

1. **The low tyre pressure telltale/ TPMS malfunction indicator do not illuminate for 3 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position or engine is running.**
2. **The TPMS malfunction indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute.**
3. **The Low tyre pressure position telltale remains illuminated.**



Low tyre pressure telltale



Low tyre pressure position telltale

When the tyre pressure monitoring system warning indicators are illuminated, one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. The low tyre pressure position telltale light will indicate which tyre is significantly under-inflated by illuminating the corresponding position light.

If either telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible. Inflate the tyres to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's placard or tyre inflation pressure label located on the driver's side centre pillar outer panel. If you cannot reach a service station or if the tyre cannot hold the newly added air, replace the low pressure tyre with a spare tyre.

If you drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes at speeds above 25 km/h after replaceing the low pressure tyre with the spare tyre, the below will happen:

- The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the spare wheel.

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:16 AM Page 26

⚠ CAUTION

In winter or cold weather, the low tyre pressure telltale may illuminate if the tyre pressure was adjusted to the recommended tyre inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a proportional lowering of tyre pressure.

When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature is greatly higher or lower, you should check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust the tyres to the recommended tyre inflation pressure.

⚠ WARNING - Low pressure damage

Significantly low tyre pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.

Continued driving on low pressure tyres can cause the tyres to overheat and fail.



Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction indicator

The TPMS malfunction indicator will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. If the system is able to correctly detect an under inflation warning at the same time as system failure then the TPMS malfunction indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer to determine the cause of the problem.

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:16 AM Page 27

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated if the vehicle is moving around electric power supply cables or radios transmitter such as at police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, or transmitting towers, etc. This can interfere with normal operation of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).***
- ***The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated if snow chains are used or some separate electronic devices such as notebook computer, mobile charger, remote starter or navigation etc., are used in the vehicle. This can interfere with normal operation of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).***

Changing a tyre with TPMS

If you have a flat tyre, the low Tyre Pressure and Position telltales will come on. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

We recommend that you use the sealant approved by Kia.

The sealant on the tyre pressure sensor and wheel shall be eliminate when you replace the tyre with a new one.

Each wheel is equipped with a tyre pressure sensor mounted inside the tyre behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you have your tyres serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

If you drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes at speeds above 25 km/h after replaceing the low pressure tyre with the spare tyre, the below will happen:

- The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the spare wheel.

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:16 AM Page 28

You may not be able identify a low tyre by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tyre pressure gauge to measure the tyre's inflation pressure. Please note that a tyre that is hot (from being driven) will have a higher pressure measurement than a tyre that is cold (from sitting stationary for at least 3 hours and driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile) during that 3 hour period).

Allow the tyre to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always be sure the tyre is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.

A cold tyre means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1.6 km (1 mile) in that 3 hour period.

⚠ CAUTION

We recommend that you use the sealant approved by Kia if your vehicle is equipped with a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. The liquid sealant can damage the tyre pressure sensors.

⚠ WARNING - TPMS

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.**
- **If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually and with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

⚠ WARNING - Protecting TPMS

Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tyre pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions. Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may void the warranty for that portion of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - For EUROPE

- **Do not modify the vehicle, it may interfere with the TPMS function.**
- **The wheels on the market do not have a TPMS sensor.**

  For your safety, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised Kia dealer.
- **If you use the wheels on the market, use a TPMS sensor approved by a Kia dealer. If your vehicle is not equipped with a TPMS sensor or TPMS does not work properly, you may fail the periodic vehicle inspection conducted in your country.**

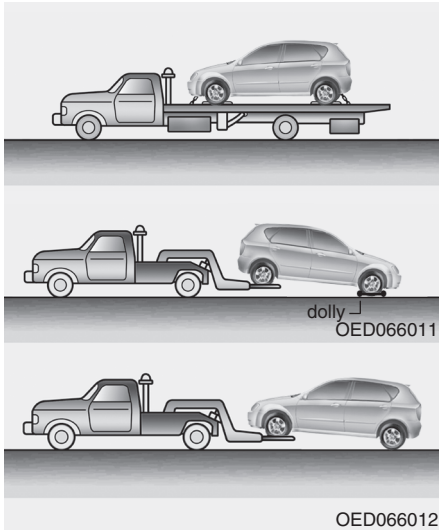
❋ All vehicles sold in the EUROPE market during below period must be equipped with TPMS.

- New model vehicle : Nov. 1, 2012 ~

- Current model vehicle : Nov. 1, 2014~ (Based on vehicle registrations)

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:16 AM Page 29

TOWING



OED066012

Towing service

If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend having it done by an authorised Kia dealer or a commercial tow-truck service. Proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. The use of wheel dollies or flatbed is recommended.

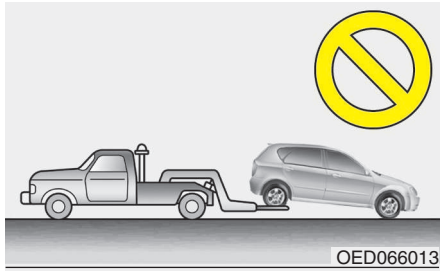
For trailer towing guidelines information, refer to "Trailer towing" in section 5.

It is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the front wheels off the ground. If any of the loaded wheels or suspension components are damaged or the vehicle is being towed with the front wheels on the ground, use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

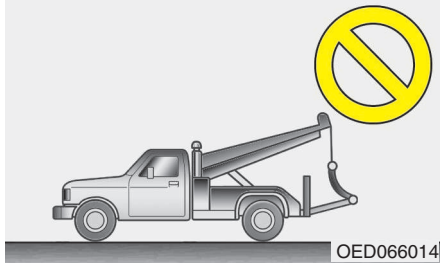
When being towed by a commercial tow truck and wheel dollies are not used, the front of the vehicle should always be lifted, not the rear.

✻ NOTICE

If the EPB does not release normally, we recommend taking your vehicle to an authorised Kia dealer by loading the vehicle on a flatbed tow truck and have the system checked.



OED066013



OED066014

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not tow the vehicle backwards with the front wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the vehicle.***
- ***Do not tow with sling-type equipment. Use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.***

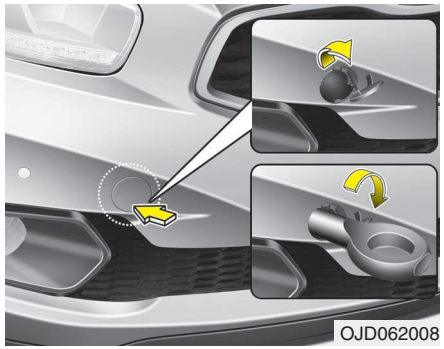
JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:16 AM Page 30

When towing your vehicle in an emergency without wheel dollies :

1. Set the ignition switch in the ACC position.
2. Place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral).
3. Release the parking brake.

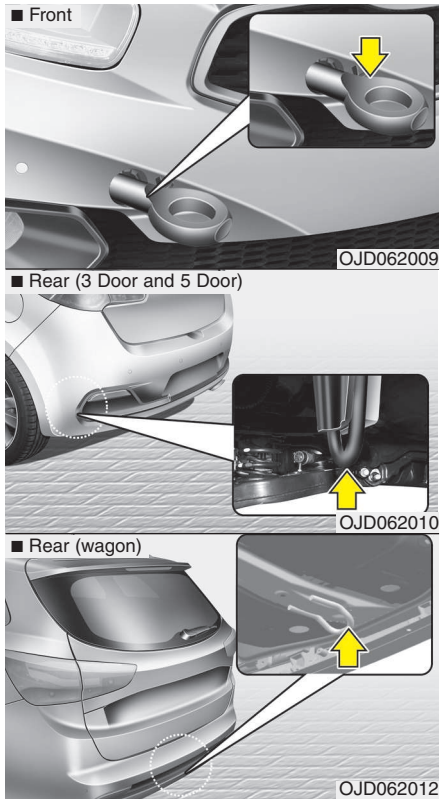
⚠ CAUTION

Failure to place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral) may cause internal damage to the transaxle.



Removable towing hook (if equipped)

1. Open the tailgate/boot, and remove the towing hook from the tool case.
2. Remove the hole cover pressing the lower part of the cover on the front bumper.
3. Install the towing hook by turning it clockwise into the hole until it is fully secured.
4. Remove the towing hook and install the cover after use.



Emergency towing

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:16 AM Page 31

If towing is necessary, we recommend you to have it done by an authorised Kia dealer or a commercial tow truck service.

If towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing hook under the front (or rear) of the vehicle. Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle. A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speed. Also, the wheels, axles, power train, steering and brakes must all be in good condition.

- Do not use the towing hooks to pull a vehicle out of mud, sand or other conditions from which the vehicle cannot be driven out under its own power.
- Avoid towing a vehicle heavier than the vehicle doing the towing.
- The drivers of both vehicles should communicate with each other frequently.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Attach a towing strap to the tow hook.***
- ***Using a portion of the vehicle other than the tow hooks for towing may damage the body of your vehicle.***
- ***Use only a cable or chain specifically intended for use in towing vehicles. Securely fasten the cable or chain to the towing hook provided.***

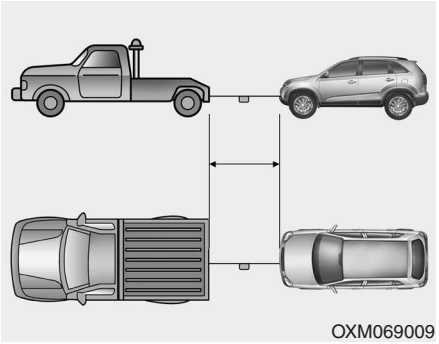
- Before emergency towing, check that the hook is not broken or damaged.
- Fasten the towing cable or chain securely to the hook.
- Do not jerk the hook. Apply steady and even force.
- To avoid damaging the hook, do not pull from the side or at a vertical angle. Always pull straight ahead.

⚠ WARNING

Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.

- **Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving manoeuvres which would place excessive stress on the emergency towing hook and towing cable or chain. The hook and towing cable or chain may break and cause serious injury or damage.**
- **If the disabled vehicle is unable to be moved, do not forcibly continue the towing. We recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer or a commercial tow truck service for assistance.**
- **Tow the vehicle as straight ahead as possible.**
- **Keep away from the vehicle during towing.**

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:16 AM Page 32


OXM069009

- Use a towing strap less than 5 m (16 feet) long. Attach a white or red cloth (about 30 cm (12 inches) wide) in the middle of the strap for easy visibility.
- Drive carefully so that the towing strap is not loosened during towing.

Emergency towing precautions

- Turn the ignition switch to ACC so the steering wheel isn't locked.
- Place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral).
- Release the parking brake.
- Depress the brake pedal with more force than normal since you will have reduced brake performance.
- More steering effort will be required because the power steering system will be disabled.
- If you are driving down a long hill, the brakes may overheat and brake performance will be reduced. Stop often and let the brakes cool off.

⚠ CAUTION - Automatic transaxle / Double clutch transmission

- ***If the car is being towed with all four wheels on the ground, it can be towed only from the front. Be sure that the transaxle is in neutral. Be sure the steering is unlocked by placing the ignition switch in the ACC position. A driver must be in the towed vehicle to operate the steering and brakes.***
- ***To avoid serious damage to the automatic transaxle, limit the vehicle speed to 15 km/h (10 mph) and drive less than 1.5 km (1 mile) when towing.***

JD RHD 6.QXP 2/17/2015 11:16 AM Page 33

EMERGENCY COMMODITY (IF EQUIPPED)

There are some emergency commodities in the vehicle to help you respond to the emergency situation.

Fire extinguisher

If there is small fire and you know how to use the fire extinguisher, take the following steps carefully.

1. Pull the pin at the top of the extinguisher that keeps the handle from being accidentally pressed.
2. Aim the nozzle toward the base of the fire.
3. Stand approximately 2.5 m (8 ft) away from the fire and squeeze the handle to discharge the extinguisher. If you release the handle, the discharge will stop.
4. Sweep the nozzle back and forth at the base of the fire. After the fire appears to be out, watch it carefully since it may re-ignite.

First aid kit

There are some items such as scissors, bandage and adhesive tape and etc. in the kit to give first aid to an injured person.

Triangle reflector

Place the triangle reflector on the road to warn oncoming vehicles during emergencies, such as when the vehicle is parked by the roadside due to any problems.

Tyre pressure gauge (If equipped)

Tyres normally lose some air in day-to-day use, and you may have to add a few pounds of air periodically and it is not usually a sign of a leaking tyre, but of normal wear. Always check tyre pressure when the tyres are cold because tyre pressure increases with temperature.

To check the tyre pressure, take the following steps:

1. Unscrew the inflation valve cap that is located on the rim of the tyre.
2. Press and hold the gauge against the tyre valve. Some air will escape as you begin and more will escape if you don't press the gauge in firmly.
3. A firm non-leaking push will activate the gauge.
4. Read the tyre pressure on the gauge to know whether the tyre pressure is low or high.
5. Adjust the tyre pressures to the specified pressure. Refer to “Tyres and wheels” in section 8.
6. Reinstall the inflation valve cap.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 1

Maintenance

Engine compartment 7-3
Maintenance services 7-6
- Owner's responsibility 7-6
- Owner maintenance precautions 7-6
- Engine compartment precautions (Diesel engine) . . . 7-7

Owner maintenance 7-9
- Owner maintenance schedule 7-9

Scheduled maintenance service 7-11
- For Europe, Except Russia 7-12
- Except Russia, for Russia 7-23

Explanation of scheduled maintenance items 7-35
Engine oil 7-38
- Checking the engine oil level 7-38
- Changing the engine oil and filter 7-39

Engine coolant 7-40
- Checking the coolant level 7-40
- Changing the coolant 7-42

Brake/clutch fluid 7-43
- Checking the brake/clutch fluid level 7-43

Washer fluid 7-44
- Checking the washer fluid level 7-44

Parking brake - hand type 7-44
- Checking the parking brake 7-44

Fuel filter (for Diesel) 7-45
- Draining water from fuel filter 7-45
- Extracting air from the fuel filter 7-45

Air cleaner 7-46
- Filter replacement 7-46

Climate control air filter 7-48
- Filter inspection 7-48
- Filter replacement 7-48

Wiper blades 7-50
- Blade inspection 7-50
- Blade replacement 7-50

Battery 7-53
- For best battery service 7-53
- Battery capacity label 7-54
- Battery recharging 7-54
- Reset items 7-55

Tyres and wheels 7-56
- Tyre care 7-56
- Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures 7-56
- Checking tyre inflation pressure 7-58
- Tyre rotation 7-59
- Wheel alignment and tyre balance 7-60
- Tyre replacement 7-60
- Wheel replacement 7-62
- Tyre traction 7-62
- Tyre maintenance 7-62
- Tyre sidewall labeling 7-62
- Low aspect ratio tyre 7-66

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 2

Fuses 7-68
- Fuse/relay panel description 7-73

Light bulbs 7-91
- Front light replacement 7-92
- Headlight and front fog light aiming (for Europe) . . 7-97
- Side repeater light bulb replacement 7-105
- Rear combination light bulb replacement 7-105
- High mounted stop light bulb replacement 7-110
- License plate light bulb replacement 7-110
- Interior light bulb replacement. 7-111

Appearance care. 7-112
- Exterior care 7-112
- Interior care 7-117

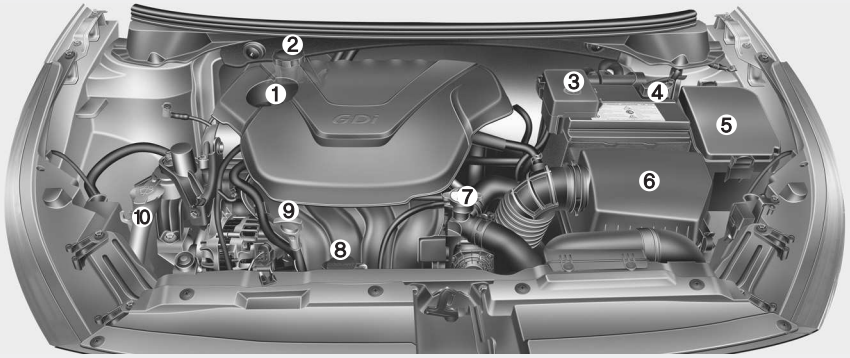
Emission control system 7-118

7

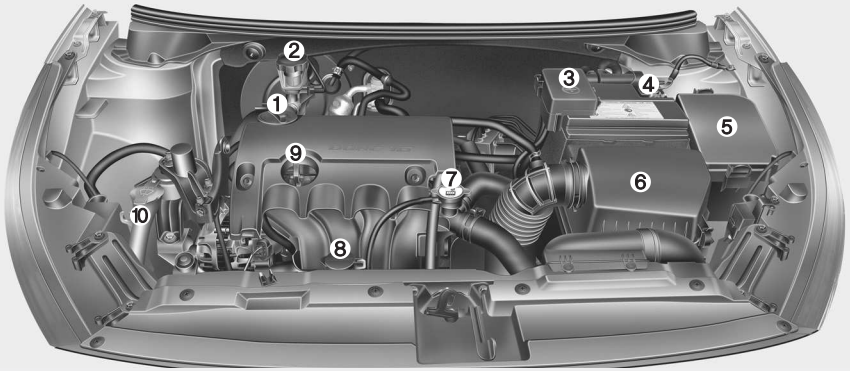
JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 3

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ Petrol engine (GDI)



■ Petrol engine (MPI)



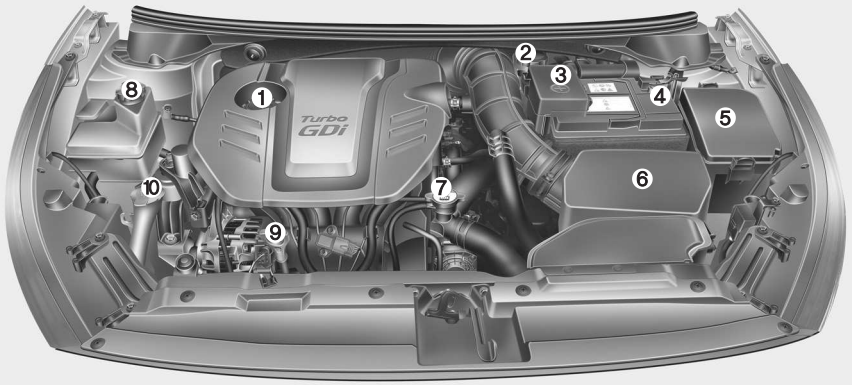
1. Engine oil filler cap
2. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir
3. Positive battery terminal
4. Negative battery terminal
5. Fuse box
6. Air cleaner
7. Radiator cap
8. Engine coolant reservoir
9. Engine oil dipstick
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJD072001R/OJD072002R

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 4

■ **Petrol engine (T-GDI)**



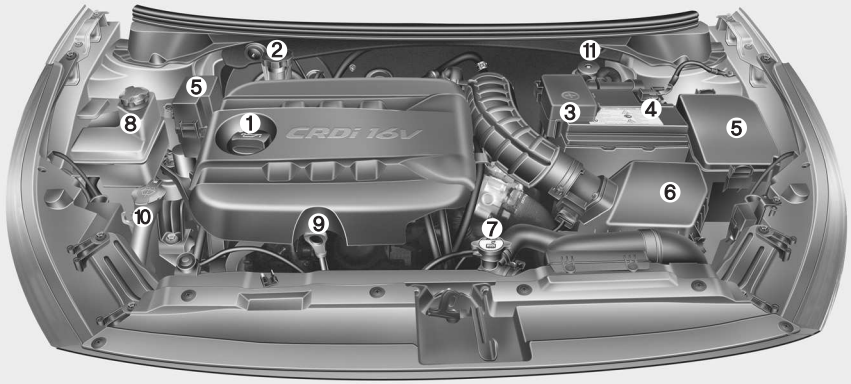
1. Engine oil filler cap
2. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir
3. Positive battery terminal
4. Negative battery terminal
5. Fuse box
6. Air cleaner
7. Radiator cap
8. Engine coolant reservoir
9. Engine oil dipstick
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJD073077R

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 5

■ **Diesel engine**



1. Engine oil filler cap
2. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir
3. Positive battery terminal
4. Negative battery terminal
5. Fuse box
6. Air cleaner
7. Radiator cap
8. Engine coolant reservoir
9. Engine oil dipstick
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir
11. Fuel filter

❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJD072003R

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 6

MAINTENANCE SERVICES

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury.

Owner's responsibility

✻ NOTICE

Maintenance Service and Record Retention are the owner's responsibility.

We recommend in general that you have your vehicle serviced by an authorised Kia dealer. You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the maintenance schedule. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties. Detailed warranty information is provided in your Warranty & Maintenance book. Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered when your vehicle is covered by warranty.

Owner maintenance precautions

Improper or incomplete service may result in problems. This section gives instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform.

✻ NOTICE

Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Warranty & Maintenance book provided with the vehicle. If you're unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 7

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not put heavy objects or apply excessive force on top of the engine cover (if equipped) or fuel related parts.***
- ***When you inspect the fuel system (fuel lines and fuel injection devices), we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.***
- ***Do not drive long time with the engine cover (if equipped) removed.***
- ***When checking the engine room, do not go near fire.***
  Fuel, washer fluid, etc. are flammable oils that may cause fire.
- ***Before touching the battery, ignition cables and electrical wiring, you should disconnect the battery "-" terminal. You may get an electric shock from the electric current.***
- ***When you remove the interior trim cover with a flat bed (-) driver, be careful not to damage the cover.***
- ***Be careful when you replace and clean bulbs to avoid burns or electrical shock.***

⚠ WARNING - Maintenance work

- **Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. You can be seriously injured whilst performing some maintenance procedures. If you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **Working under the bonnet with the engine running is dangerous. It becomes even more dangerous when you wear jewelry or loose clothing. These can become entangled in moving parts and result in injury. Therefore, if you must run the engine whilst working under the bonnet, make certain that you remove all jewelry (especially rings, bracelets, watches, and necklaces) and all neckties, scarves, and similar loose clothing before getting near the engine or cooling fans.**

Engine compartment precautions (Diesel engine)

- The injector operates at high voltage (maximum 200v). Therefore, the following accidents may occur.
  - Direct contact with the injector or injector wiring may cause electric shock or damage your muscle or nerve system.
  - The electromagnetic wave from the operating injector may cause the artificial heart pacemaker to malfunction.
- Follow the safety tips provided below, when you are checking the engine room whilst the engine is running.
  - Do not touch the injector, injector wirings, and the engine computer whilst the engine is running.
  - Do not remove the injector connector whilst the engine is running.
  - People using pacemakers must not go near the engine whilst the engine is starting or running.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 8

⚠ WARNING - Diesel Engine

Never work on injection system with engine running or within 30 seconds after shutting off engine. High-pressure pump, rail, injectors and high-pressure pipes are subject to high pressure even after the engine stopped. The fuel jet produced by fuel leaks may cause serious injury, if it touches the body. People using pacemakers should not move than 30cm closer to the ECU or wiring harness within the engine room whilst engine is running, since the high currents in the electronic engine control system produce considerable magnetic fields.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 9

OWNER MAINTENANCE

We recommend that the following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed by the owner or an authorised Kia dealer at the frequencies indicated to help ensure safe, dependable operation of your vehicle.

If you have any question, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.

These Owner Maintenance Checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labour, parts and lubricants used.

Owner maintenance schedule

When you stop for fuel:

- Check the engine oil level.
- Check coolant level in coolant reservoir.
- Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Look for low or under-inflated tyres.
- Check the radiator and condenser.
  Check if the front of the radiator and condenser are clean and not blocked with leaves, dirt or insects etc.
  If any of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Be careful when checking your engine coolant level when the engine is hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure. This could cause burns or other serious injury.

Whilst operating your vehicle:

- Note any changes in the sound of the exhaust or any smell of exhaust fumes in the vehicle.
- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or “pulls” to one side when travelling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or “hard-to-push” brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your transaxle occurs, check the transaxle fluid level.
- Check manual transaxle operation, including clutch operation.
- Check automatic transaxle/double clutch transmission P (Park) function.
- Check parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 10

At least monthly:

- Check coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stoplights, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tyres including the spare.

At least twice a year (i.e., every Spring and Fall) :

- Check radiator, heater and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check windscreen washer spray and wiper operation. Clean wiper blades with clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check headlight alignment.
- Check muffler, exhaust pipes, shields and clamps.
- Check the lap/shoulder belts for wear and function.
- Check for worn tyres and loose wheel lug nuts.

At least once a year :

- Clean body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate door hinges and checks, and bonnet hinges.
- Lubricate door and bonnet locks and latches.
- Lubricate door rubber weatherstrips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Inspect and lubricate automatic transaxle linkage and controls.
- Clean battery and terminals.
- Check the brake (and clutch) fluid level.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 11

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICE

Follow Normal Maintenance Schedule if the vehicle is usually operated where none of the following conditions apply. If any of the following conditions apply, follow Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions.

- Repeated short distance driving.
- Driving in dusty conditions or sandy areas.
- Extensive use of brakes.
- Driving in areas where salt or other corrosive materials are being used.
- Driving on rough or muddy roads.
- Driving in mountainous areas.
- Extended periods of idling or low speed operation.
- Driving for a prolonged period in cold temperatures and/or extremely humid climates.
- More than 50% driving in heavy city traffic during hot weather above 32°C (90°F).

If your vehicle is operated under the above conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently than the following Normal Maintenance Schedule. After the periods or distance shown in the chart, continue to follow the prescribed maintenance intervals.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 12

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR EUROPE, EXCEPT RUSSIA

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

*1 : Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip.

*2 : This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced according to the severe maintenance schedule.

*3 : If the recommended oil is not available, replace engine oil and engine oil filter every 20,000 km or 12 months.

*4 : If the recommended oil is not available, replace engine oil and filter every 15,000 km for MPI engine and replace engine oil and filter every 10,000 km for GDI engine.

*5 : The engine oil level should be checked regularly and maintained properly. Operating with an insufficient amount of oil can damage the engine, and such damage is not covered by warranty.

*6 : This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced more frequently. If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc., replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and we recommanded that you consult an authorised Kia dealer for details.

*7 : The fuel filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. If there are some important matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and we recommanded that you consult an authorised Kia dealer for details.

*8 : Manual transaxle and double clutch transmission fluid should be changed anytime they have been submerged in water.

*9 : Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator pulley and if necessary correct or replace.

*10 : When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.

*11 : Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. We recommended that the system should be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

*12 : If good quality petrols that meet Europe Fuel standards (EN228) or equivalents including fuel additives is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorised Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 13

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR EUROPE, EXCEPT RUSSIA (CONT.)

30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear)
  (30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  (Petrol T-GDI) (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles))
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3*5

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol) *1 *4 *5
  (30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol T-GDI) *1 *5
  (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Petrol) *12
  (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)

❇ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 14

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR EUROPE, EXCEPT RUSSIA (CONT.)

60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48 months

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Petrol) *7
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (Petrol, if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Petrol, Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *8
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear) (60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 24 months)
- ❑ Inspect vapour hose and fuel filler cap
- ❑ Inspect double clutch transmission fluid *8
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose (Petrol T-GDI) (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles))

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect cooling system (At first, 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *9 (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3*5
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol) *1 *4 *5 (60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 24 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol T-GDI) *1 *5 (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Petrol - Nickel)
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Petrol T-GDI - Iridium) (Every 75,000 km (59,000 miles) or 60months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Petrol) *12 (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 15

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR EUROPE, EXCEPT RUSSIA (CONT.)

90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72 months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear)
  (90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 36 months)
- ❑ Inspect valve clearance (Petrol) *11
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  (Petrol T-GDI) (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles))
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *9
  (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Petrol) *9
  (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3*5
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol) *1 *4 *5
  (90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 36 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol T-GDI) *1 *5
  (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Petrol) *12
  (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 16

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR EUROPE, EXCEPT RUSSIA (CONT.)

120,000 km (80,000 miles) or 96 months

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Petrol) *7
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (Petrol, if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Petrol, Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *8
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear) (120,000 km (80,000 miles) or 48 months)
- ❑ Inspect vapour hose and fuel filler cap
- ❑ Inspect double clutch transmission fluid *8
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose (Petrol T-GDI) (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles))

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect cooling system (At first, 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *9 (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Petrol) *9 (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72months after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3*5
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol) *1 *4 *5 (120,000 km (80,000 miles) or 48 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol T-GDI) *1 *5 (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Petrol - Nieckel)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Petrol) *12 (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 17

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR EUROPE, EXCEPT RUSSIA (CONT.)

150,000 km (100,000 miles) or 120 months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear)
  (150,000 km (100,000 miles) or 60 months)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  (Petrol T-GDI) (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles))
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *9
  (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Petrol) *9
  (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3*5
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol) *1 *4 *5
  (150,000 km (100,000 miles) or 60 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol T-GDI) *1 *5
  (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Petrol GDI - Iridium)
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Petrol T-GDI - Iridium)
  (Every 75,000 km (59,000 miles) or 60months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Petrol) *12
  (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 18

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR EUROPE, EXCEPT RUSSIA (CONT.)

180,000 km (120,000 miles) or 144 months

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Petrol) *7
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (Petrol, if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Petrol, Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *8
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear) (180,000 km (120,000 miles) or 72 months)
- ❑ Inspect valve clearance (Petrol) *11
- ❑ Inspect vapour hose and fuel filler cap
- ❑ Inspect double clutch transmission fluid *8
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose (Petrol T-GDI) (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles))

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect cooling system (At first, 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *9 (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Petrol) *9 (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72months after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3*5
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol) *1 *4 *5 (180,000 km (120,000 miles) or 72 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol T-GDI) *1 *5 (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Petrol - Nieckel)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Petrol) *12 (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 19

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR EUROPE, EXCEPT RUSSIA (CONT.)

210,000 km (140,000 miles) or 168 months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear)
  (210,000 km (140,000 miles) or 84 months)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  (Petrol T-GDI) (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles))
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *9
  (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Petrol) *9
  (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3*5
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol) *1 *4 *5
  (210,000 km (140,000 miles) or 84 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol T-GDI) *1 *5
  (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Petrol T-GDI - Iridium)
  (Every 75,000 km (59,000 miles) or 60months)
- ❑ Replace coolant *10
  (At first, 210,000 km (120,000 miles) or 120 months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Petrol) *12
  (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 20

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR EUROPE, EXCEPT RUSSIA

240,000 km (160,000 miles) or 192 months

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Petrol) *7
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (Petrol, if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Petrol, Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *8
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear)
  (240,000 km (160,000 miles) or 96 months)
- ❑ Inspect vapour hose and fuel filler cap
- ❑ Inspect double clutch transmission fluid *8
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  (Petrol T-GDI) (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles))
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *9
  (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Petrol) *9
  (At first, 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3*5
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol) *1 *4 *5
  (240,000 km (160,000 miles) or 96 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol T-GDI) *1 *5
  (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Petrol - Nieckel)
- ❑ Replace coolant *10
  (At first, 210,000 km (120,000 miles) or 120 months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Petrol) *12
  (Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months)

No check, No service required

- ❑ Automatic transaxle fluid

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 21

MAINTENANCE UNDER SEVERE USAGE CONDITIONS - FOR EUROPE, EXCEPT RUSSIA

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars mainly used under severe driving conditions.
Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.
R : Replace I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace

MAINTENANCE ITEM			MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Engine oil and engine oil filter	Petrol	MPI*1	R	Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 6 months	A, B, C, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
		GDI*1	R	Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 6 months	
		T-GDI	R	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 3 months	
	Diesel *2		R	Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months	A, B, C, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
Air cleaner filter			R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E
Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)			R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Double clutch transmission fluid (if equipped)			R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)			R	Every 90,000 km (60,000 miles)	A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K

*1 : If the recommended oil is not available, replace engine oil and engine oil filter every 7,500 km or 6 months for MPI engine and 5,000 km or 6 months for GDI engine.
*2 : If the recommended oil is not available, replace engine oil and engine oil filter every 10,000 km or 6 months.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 22

MAINTENANCE ITEM	MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Front suspension ball joints	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Disc brakes and pads, calipers and rotors	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H
Parking brake (Hand type)	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, G, H
Drive shaft and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K
Climate control air filter	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E, G

SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS

A : Repeated short distance driving
B : Extensive idling
C : Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt spread roads
D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E : Driving in sandy areas
F : More than 50 % driving in heavy city traffic during hot weather above 32 °C (90 °F)
G : Driving in mountainous areas.
H : Towing a trailer or using a camper on roof rack
I : Driving for patrol car, taxi, commercial car or vehicle towing
J : Driving in very cold weather
K : Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h)
L : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 23

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

*1 : Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator pulley and if necessary correct or replace.

*2 : Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip.

*3 : The engine oil level should be checked regularly and maintained properly. Operating with an insufficient amount of oil can damage the engine, and such damage is not covered by warranty.

*4 : This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced more frequently.

If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc., replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and we recommand that you consult an authorised Kia dealer for details

*5 : For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

*6 : Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. We recommended that the system should be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

*7 : The fuel filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. If there are some important matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and we recommand that you consult an authorised Kia dealer for details.

*8 : When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.

*9 : If good quality petrols that meet Europe Fuel standards (EN228) or equivalents including fuel additives is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorised Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

*10 : If 5W-20 is used for GDI engine, replace engine oil and filter every 10,000 km.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 24

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter - Except Middle East
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose (Petrol T-GDI)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter - For Middle East
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol - MPI, GDI) *2 *10
- ❑ Replace engine oil and engine oil filter (Petrol T-GDI) *2 *3 (At first, replace at 5,000km (3,000 miles) or 6 months, after that, every 8,000km (5,000 miles) or 6 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - For Russia *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - Except Russia *2 *3 (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Petrol) *9 (Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 25

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter - Except Middle East
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Petrol) *1
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Petrol) *7
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (Petrol, if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *4
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose (Petrol T-GDI)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter - For Middle East
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol - MPI, GDI) *2 *10
- ❑ Replace engine oil and engine oil filter (Petrol T-GDI) *2 *3
  (At first, replace at 5,000km (3,000 miles) or 6 months, after that, every 8,000km (5,000 miles) or 6 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - For Russia *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - Except Russia *2 *3
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Petrol) *9
  (Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 26

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

45,000 km (30,000 miles) or 36months

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose (Petrol T-GDI)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol - MPI, GDI) *2 *10
- ❑ Replace engine oil and engine oil filter (Petrol T-GDI) *2 *3 (At first, replace at 5,000km (3,000 miles) or 6 months, after that, every 8,000km (5,000 miles) or 6 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - For Russia *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - Except Russia *2 *3 (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Petrol) *9 (Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 27

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter - Except Middle East
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect all electrical systems
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Petrol) *1
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filler cap (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, hoses and connections (Petrol, Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect vapour hose and fuel filler cap (Petrol)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) - For Russia *1
  (At first, inspect 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or
  24months)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) - Except Russia *1
  (At first, inspect 80,000 km (50,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, inspect every 20,000 km (12,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  (Petrol T-GDI)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter - For Middle East
- ❑ Replace fuel tank air filter (Petrol, if equipped)
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol - MPI, GDI) *2 *10
- ❑ Replace engine oil and engine oil filter (Petrol T-GDI) *2 *3
  (At first, replace at 5,000km (3,000 miles) or 6 months,
  after that, every 8,000km (5,000 miles) or 6 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - For Russia *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - Except Russia *2 *3
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter (Petrol) *7
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *4
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Petrol - Nickel)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Petrol) *9
  (Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 28

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

75,000 km (50,000 miles) or 60months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter - Except Middle East
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) - Except Russia *1
  (At first, inspect 80,000 km (50,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, inspect every 20,000 km (12,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  (Petrol T-GDI)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter - For Middle East
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol - MPI, GDI) *2 *10
- ❑ Replace engine oil and engine oil filter (Petrol T-GDI) *2 *3
  (At first, replace at 5,000km (3,000 miles) or 6 months,
  after that, every 8,000km (5,000 miles) or 6 months)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - For Russia *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - Except Russia *2 *3
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Petrol T-GDI - Iridium)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Petrol) *9
  (Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 29

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72months

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Petrol) *1
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Petrol) *7
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (Petrol, if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *4
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) - For Russia *1
  (At first, inspect 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) - Except Russia *1
  (At first, inspect 80,000 km (50,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, inspect every 20,000 km (12,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Inspect valve clearance *6
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  (Petrol T-GDI)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol - MPI, GDI) *2 *10
- ❑ Replace engine oil and engine oil filter (Petrol T-GDI) *2 *3
  (At first, replace at 5,000km (3,000 miles) or 6 months,
  after that, every 8,000km (5,000 miles) or 6 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - For Russia *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - Except Russia *2 *3
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Petrol) *9
  (Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 30

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

105,000 km (70,000 miles) or 84months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter - Except Middle East
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) - Except Russia *1
  (At first, inspect 80,000 km (50,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, inspect every 20,000 km (12,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  (Petrol T-GDI)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter - For Middle East
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol MPI, GDI) *2 *10
- ❑ Replace engine oil and engine oil filter (Petrol T-GDI) *2 *3
  (At first, replace at 5,000km (3,000 miles) or 6 months,
  after that, every 8,000km (5,000 miles) or 6 months)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - For Russia *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - Except Russia *2 *3
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives (Petrol) *9
  (Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 31

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

120,000 km (80,000 miles) or 96months

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter - Except Middle East
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect all electrical system
- ❑ Inspect brake pedal, clutch pedal (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch fluid
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Petrol) *1
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filler cap (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, hoses and connections (Petrol, Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake (Hand type)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect vapour hose and fuel filler cap (Petrol)
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (Petrol, if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) - For Russia *1
  (At first, inspect 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) - Except Russia *1
  (At first, inspect 80,000 km (50,000 miles) or 48months
  after that, inspect every 20,000 km (12,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Inspect intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose
  (Petrol T-GDI)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter - For Middle East
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Petrol MPI, GDI) *2 *10
- ❑ Replace engine oil and engine oil filter (Petrol T-GDI) *2 *3
  (At first, replace at 5,000km (3,000 miles) or 6 months,
  after that, every 8,000km (5,000 miles) or 6 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - For Russia *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) - Except Russia *2 *3
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter (Petrol) *7
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *4
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Petrol - Nickel)
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Petrol GDI - Iridium) *5
  (Every 160,000 km (100,000 miles) or 120months)

(Continued)

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 32

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA

(Continued)

❑ Replace coolant *8
(At first, 210,000 km (120,000 miles) or 120months
after that, every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months *5)
❑ Add fuel additives (Petrol) *9
(Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6months)

No check, No service required

❑ Automatic transaxle fluid

❋ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 33

MAINTENANCE UNDER SEVERE USAGE CONDITIONS - EXCEPT EUROPE, FOR RUSSIA

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars mainly used under severe driving conditions.
Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.
R : Replace I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace

Maintenance item			Maintenance operation	Maintenance intervals	Driving condition
Engine oil and engine oil filter	Petrol	Except Middle East	R	Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K
		For Middle East	R	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months	
	Diesel	For Russia	R	Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months	A, B, C, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
		Except Russia	R	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months	
Air cleaner filter			R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E
Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)			R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, G, H, I, J
Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)			R	Every 100,000 km (62,500 miles)	A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 34

Maintenance item	Maintenance operation	Maintenance intervals	Driving condition
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Front suspension ball joints	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Disc brakes and pads, calipers and rotors	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H
Parking brake (Hand type)	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, G, H
Driveshaft and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Climate control air filter	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E, G

SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS

A : Repeated short distance driving
B : Extensive idling
C : Driving in dusty, rough roads
D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E : Driving in sandy areas
F : More than 50 % driving in heavy city traffic during hot weather above 32°C (90°F)
G : Driving in mountainous areas.
H : Towing a trailer or using a camper on roof rack
I : Driving for patrol car, taxi, commercial car or vehicle towing
J : Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h)
K : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions
L : Driving in very cold weather

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 35

EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS

Engine oil and filter

The engine oil and filter should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. If the car is being driven in severe conditions, more frequent oil and filter changes are required.

Drive belts

Inspect all drive belts for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear or oil saturation and replace if necessary. Drive belts should be checked periodically for proper tension and adjusted as necessary.

Fuel filter (cartridge)

A clogged filter can limit the speed at which the vehicle may be driven, damage the emission system and cause multiple issues such as hard starting. If an excessive amount of foreign matter accumulates in the fuel tank, the filter may require replacement more frequently.

After installing a new filter, run the engine for several minutes, and check for leaks at the connections. We recommend that the fuel filter be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer.

Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections

Check the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections for leakage and damage. We recommend that the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Diesel only

Never work on injection system with engine running or within 30 seconds after shutting off engine. High pressure pump, rail, injectors and high pressure pipes are subject to high pressure even after the engine stopped. The fuel jet produced by fuel leaks may cause serious injury, if it touch the body. People using pacemakers should not move more than 30cm closer to the ECU or wiring harness within the engine room whilst engine is running, since the high currents in the Common Rail system produce considerable magnetic fields.

Vapour hose and fuel filler cap

The vapour hose and fuel filler cap should be inspected at those intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. Make sure that a new vapour hose or fuel filler cap is correctly replaced.

Vacuum crankcase ventilation hoses (if equipped)

Inspect the surface of hoses for evidence of heat and/or mechanical damage. Hard and brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, abrasions, and excessive swelling indicate deterioration. Particular attention should be paid to examine those hose surfaces nearest to high heat sources, such as the exhaust manifold.

Inspect the hose routing to assure that the hoses do not come in contact with any heat source, sharp edges or moving component which might cause heat damage or mechanical wear. Inspect all hose connections, such as clamps and couplings, to make sure they are secure, and that no leaks are present. Hoses should be replaced immediately if there is any evidence of deterioration or damage.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 36

Air cleaner filter

We recommend that the air cleaner filter be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer.

Spark plugs (for petrol engine)

Make sure to install new spark plugs of the correct heat range.

Valve clearance (for petrol engine)

Inspect excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. We recommend that the valve clearance be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

Cooling system

Check the cooling system parts, such as radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

Coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)

Inspect the manual transaxle fluid according to the maintenance schedule.

Double clutch transmission fluid (if equipped)

Inspect the double clutch transmission fluid according to the maintenance schedule.

Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)

Automatic transaxle fluid should not be checked under normal usage conditions.

But in severe conditions, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer in accordance to the maintenance schedule.

✻ NOTICE

Automatic transaxle fluid colour is basically red.

As the vehicle is driven, the automatic transaxle fluid will begin to look darker. It is normal condition and you should not judge the need to replace the fluid based upon the changed colour.

⚠ CAUTION

The use of a non-specified fluid could result in transaxle malfunction and failure.

Use only specified automatic transaxle fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in section 8.)

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 37

Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

Brake fluid

Check brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between “MIN” and “MAX” marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4 specification.

Brake pads, calipers and rotors

Check the pads for excessive wear, discs for run out and wear, and calipers for fluid leakage.

For more information on checking the pads or lining wear limit, refer to the Kia web site. **(http://brakemanual.kia.co.kr)**

Suspension mounting bolts

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

Parking brake

Inspect the parking brake system including the EPB actuator, wiring and connectors.

Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint

With the vehicle stopped and engine off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel.

Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage. Replace any damaged parts.

Drive shafts and boots

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

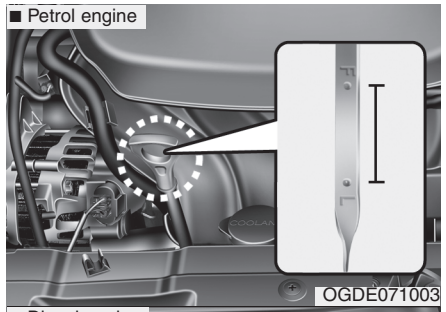
Air conditioning refrigerant/ compressor (if equipped)

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 38

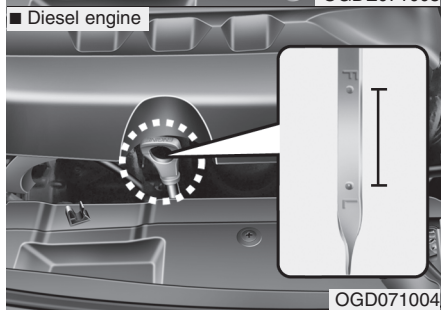
ENGINE OIL

■ Petrol engine



OGDE071003

■ Diesel engine



OGD071004

Checking the engine oil level

1. Be sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature.
3. Turn the engine off and wait for a few minutes (about 5 minutes) for the oil to return to the oil pan.
4. Pull the dipstick out, wipe it clean, and re-insert it fully.

⚠ WARNING - Radiator hose

Be very careful not to touch the radiator hose when checking or adding the engine oil as it may be hot enough to burn you.

5. Pull the dipstick out again and check the level. The level should be between F and L.

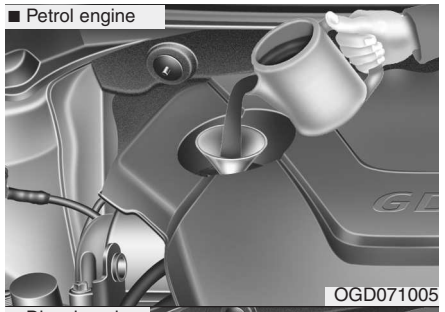
⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not overfill the engine oil. It may damage the engine.***
- ***Do not spill engine oil, when adding or changing engine oil. If you drop the engine oil on the engine room, wipe it off immediately.***

⚠ CAUTION - Diesel engine

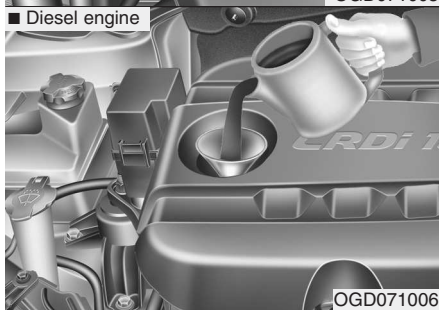
Overfilling the engine oil may cause severe dieseling due to churning effect. It may lead to engine damage accompanied with abrupt engine speed increment, combustion noise and white smoke emission.

■ Petrol engine



OGD071005

■ Diesel engine



OGD071006

If it is near or at L, add enough oil to bring the level to F. **Do not overfill.**

Use a funnel to help prevent oil from being spilled on engine components.

Use only the specified engine oil. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in section 8.)

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 39

Changing the engine oil and filter

We recommend that the engine oil and filter be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Used engine oil may cause irritation or cancer of the skin if left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods of time. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing your hands thoroughly with soap and warm water as soon as possible after handling used oil.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 40

ENGINE COOLANT

The high-pressure cooling system has a reservoir filled with year-round antifreeze coolant. The reservoir is filled at the factory.

Check the antifreeze protection and coolant concentration level at least once a year, at the beginning of the winter season, and before travelling to a colder climate.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When the engine overheats from low engine coolant, suddenly adding engine coolant may cause cracks in the engine. To prevent damage, add engine coolant slowly in small quantities.***
- ***Do not drive with no engine coolant. It may cause water pump failure and engine seizure, etc.***

Checking the coolant level

⚠ WARNING



Removing radiator cap

- **Never attempt to remove the radiator cap whilst the engine is operating or hot. Doing so might lead to cooling system and engine damage and could result in serious personal injury from escaping hot coolant or steam.**
- **Turn the engine off and wait until it cools down. Use extreme care when removing the radiator cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it counterclockwise slowly to the first stop. Step back whilst the pressure is released from the cooling system. When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning counterclockwise to remove it.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Even if the engine is not operating, do not remove the radiator cap or the drain plug whilst the engine and radiator are hot. Hot coolant and steam may still blow out under pressure, causing serious injury.**

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 41

⚠ WARNING

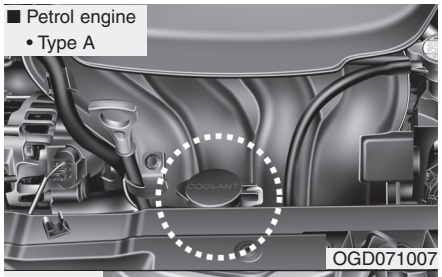


The electric motor (cooling fan) is controlled by engine coolant temperature, refrigerant pressure and vehicle speed. It may sometimes operate even when the engine is not running. Use extreme caution when working near the blades of the cooling fan so that you are not injured by a rotating fan blades. As the engine coolant temperature decreases, the electric motor will automatically shut off. This is a normal condition.

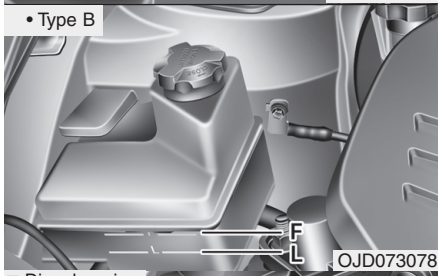
If your vehicle is equipped with GDI, the electric motor (cooling fan) may operate until you disconnect the negative battery cable.

■ Petrol engine

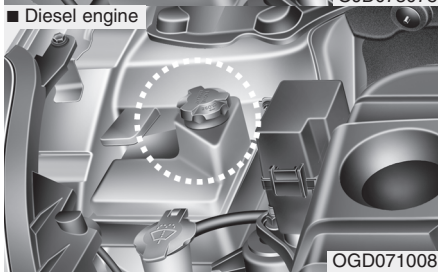
• Type A



• Type B



■ Diesel engine



Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level should be filled between F (MAX) and L (MIN) marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the engine is cool.

If the coolant level is low, add enough distilled (deionized) water. Bring the level to F (MAX), but do not overfill. If frequent coolant refill is required, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

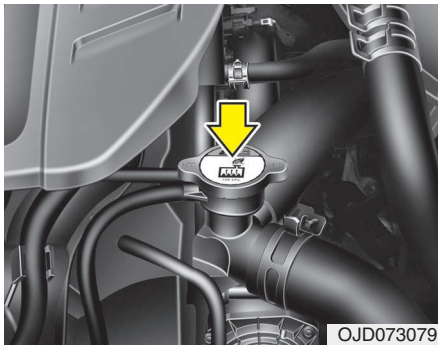
JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 42

Recommended engine coolant

- When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
- The engine in your vehicle has aluminum engine parts and must be protected by an ethylene-glycol-based coolant to prevent corrosion and freezing.
- DO NOT USE alcohol or methanol coolant or mix them with the specified coolant.
- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60% antifreeze or less than 35% antifreeze, which would reduce the effectiveness of the solution.

For mixture percentage, refer to the following table.

Ambient Temperature	Mixture Percentage (volume)	
	Antifreeze	Water
-15°C (5°F)	35	65
-25°C (-13°F)	40	60
-35°C (-31°F)	50	50
-45°C (-49°F)	60	40


OJD073079

⚠ WARNING



Radiator cap

Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure causing serious injury.

Changing the coolant

We recommend that the coolant be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

Put a thick cloth or fabric around the radiator cap before refilling the coolant in order to prevent the coolant from overflowing into engine parts such as generator.

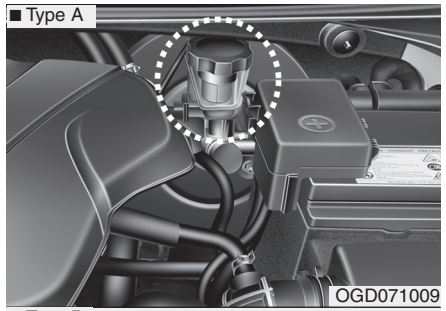
⚠ WARNING - Coolant

- **Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.**

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 43

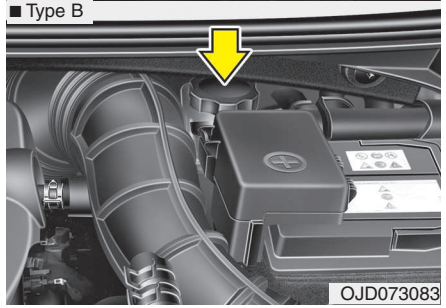
BRAKE/CLUTCH FLUID

■ Type A



OGD071009

■ Type B



OJD073083

Checking the brake/clutch fluid level

Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX and MIN marks on the side of the reservoir.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake/clutch fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake/clutch fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add fluid to the MAX level. The level will fall with accumulated mileage. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of the brake linings. If the fluid level is excessively low, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

Use only the specified brake fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in section 8.)

Never mix different types of fluid.

⚠ WARNING - Loss of brake/clutch fluid

In the event the brake/clutch system requires frequent additions of fluid, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Brake/clutch fluid

When changing and adding brake/clutch fluid, handle it carefully. Do not let it come in contact with your eyes. If brake/clutch fluid should come in contact with your eyes, immediately flush them with a large quantity of fresh tap water. Have your eyes examined by a doctor as soon as possible.

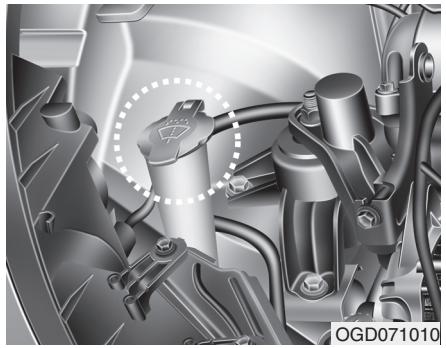
⚠ CAUTION

Do not allow brake/clutch fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, as paint damage will result.

Brake/clutch fluid, which has been exposed to open air for an extended time should never be used as its quality cannot be guaranteed. It should be disposed of properly. Don't put in the wrong kind of fluid. A few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in your brake/clutch system can damage brake/clutch system parts.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 44

WASHER FLUID


OGD071010

Checking the washer fluid level

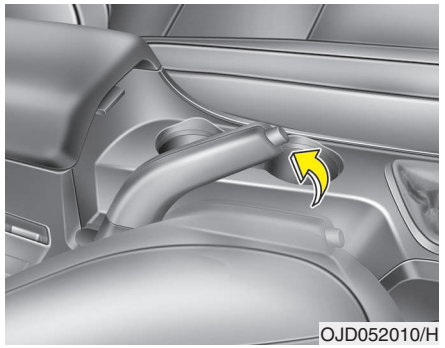
Check the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir and add fluid if necessary.

Plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer solvent with antifreeze characteristics in cold climates to prevent freezing.

⚠ WARNING - Coolant

- **Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.**
- **Windscreen Washer fluid agents contain some amounts of alcohol and can be flammable under certain circumstances. Do not allow sparks or flame to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Damage to the vehicle or occupants could occur.**
- **Windscreen washer fluid is poisonous to humans and animals. Do not drink and avoid contacting windscreen washer fluid. Serious injury or death could occur.**

PARKING BRAKE - HAND TYPE


OJD052010/H

Checking the parking brake

Check the stroke of the parking brake by counting the number of “clicks” heard whilst fully applying it from the released position. Also, the parking brake alone should securely hold the vehicle on a fairly steep grade. If the stroke is more or less than specified, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

Stroke : 6~8 “clicks” at a force of 20 kg (44 lbs, 196 N).

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:29 PM Page 45

FUEL FILTER (FOR DIESEL)

Draining water from fuel filter

The fuel filter for diesel engine plays an important role of separating water from fuel and accumulating the water in its bottom.

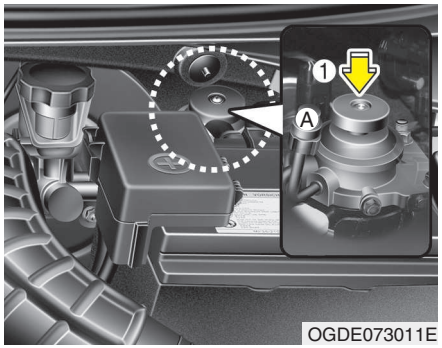
If water accumulates in the fuel filter, the warning light comes on when the ignition switch is in the ON position.



If this warning light illuminates, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

If the water accumulated in the fuel filter is not drained at proper times, damages to the major parts such as the fuel system can be caused by water permeation in the fuel filter.



Extracting air from the fuel filter

If you drive until you have no fuel left or if you replace the fuel filter, be sure to extract air from the fuel system as it makes it difficult to start the engine.

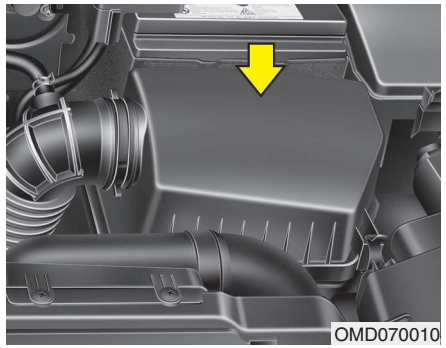
1. Open the plug (A).
2. Pump up and down(1) approximately 50 times until the pump is hard.
3. If fuel comes out through the nipple, close it by the plug (A).
4. Extract air from the fuel filter by removing the bolt with a cross-tip screw driver and reinstall the bolt.
5. Pump up and down(1) approximately 15 times.
6. Extract air from the fuel filter by removing the bolt with a cross-tip screw driver and reinstall the bolt.
7. Pump up and down (1) approximately 5 times.

✻ NOTICE

- **Use cloths when you extract air so that the fuel is not sprayed around.**
- **Clean the fuel around the fuel filter or the injection pump before starting the engine to prevent fire.**
- **Finally, check each part if the fuel is leaking.**

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 46

AIR CLEANER

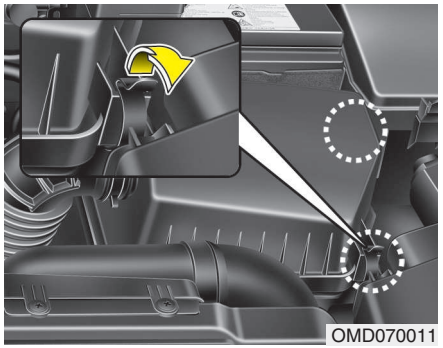


Filter replacement

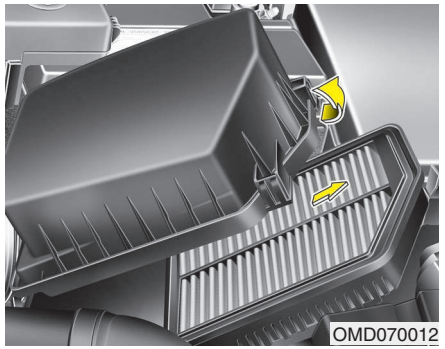
It must be replaced when necessary, and should not be washed.

You can clean the filter when inspecting the air cleaner element.

Clean the filter by using compressed air.



1. Loosen the air cleaner cover attaching clips and open the cover.



2. Wipe the inside of the air cleaner.
3. Replace the air cleaner filter.
4. Lock the cover with the cover attaching clips.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 47

Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.

If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty or sandy areas, replace the element more often than the usual recommended intervals. (Refer to "Maintenance under severe usage conditions" in this section.)

⚠ CAUTION

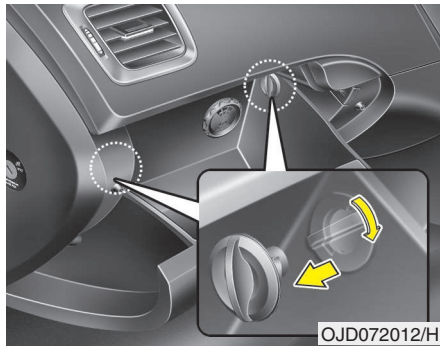
- ***Do not drive with the air cleaner removed; this will result in excessive engine wear.***
- ***When removing the air cleaner filter, be careful that dust or dirt does not enter the air intake, or damage may result.***
- ***We recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised Kia dealer.***

CLIMATE CONTROL AIR FILTER

Filter inspection

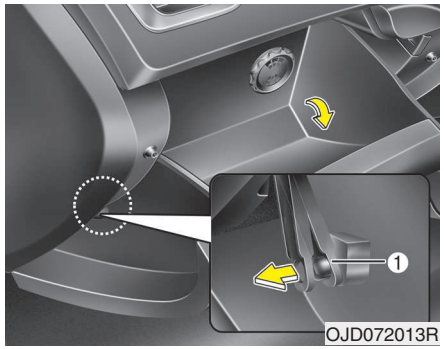
If the vehicle is operated in the severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and replaced earlier. When you, the owner, replace the climate control air filter, replace it performing the following procedure, and be careful to avoid damaging other components.

Replace the filter according to the maintenance Schedule.


OJD072012/H

Filter replacement

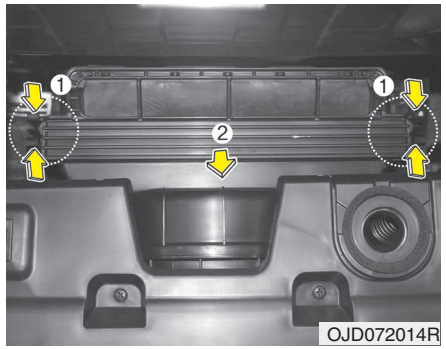
1. With the glove box open, remove the stoppers on both sides.



OJD072013R

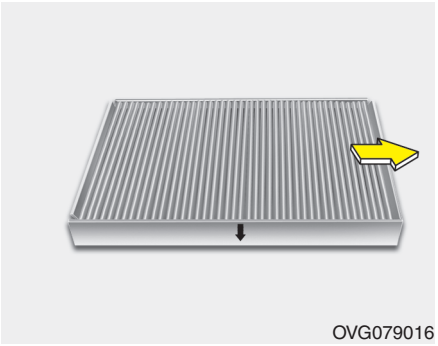
2. Open the glove box and remove the support strap (1).

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 49



OJD072014R

3. Remove the cover whilst pressing the lock on both side of the cover and remove the climate control air filter.

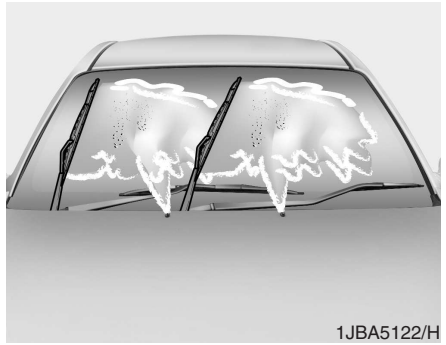

OVG079016

4. Replace the climate control air filter.
5. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

✻ NOTICE

When replacing the climate control air filter install it properly. Otherwise, the system may produce noise and the effectiveness of the filter may be reduced.

WIPER BLADES


1JBA5122/H

Blade inspection

✻ NOTICE

Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes have been known to make the windscreen difficult to clean.

Contamination of either the windscreen or the wiper blades with foreign matter can reduce the effectiveness of the windscreen wipers. Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use petrol, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.

Blade replacement

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

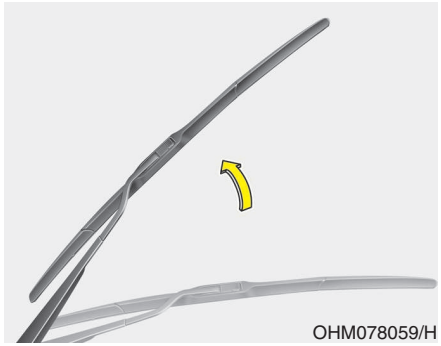
⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.

⚠ CAUTION

The use of a non-specified wiper blade could result in wiper malfunction and failure.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 51

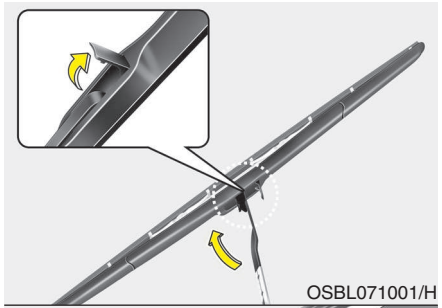

OHM078059/H

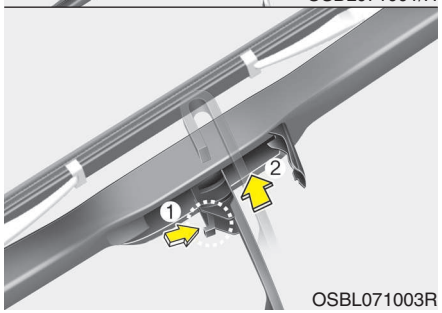
Front windscreen wiper blade

1. Raise the wiper arm.

⚠ CAUTION

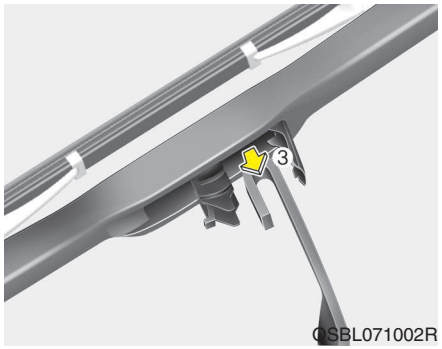
Do not allow the wiper arm to fall against the windscreen, since it may chip or crack the windscreen.


OSBL071001/H



OSBL071003R

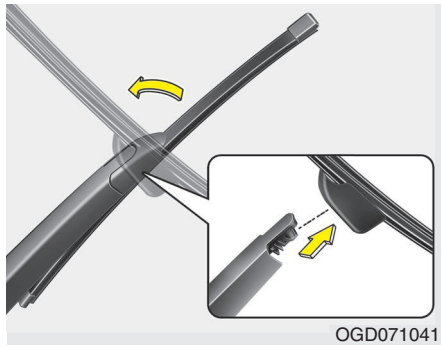
2. Turn the wiper blade clip. Then lift up the blade clip.
3. Push the clip (1) and push up the wiper arm (2).



OSBL071002R

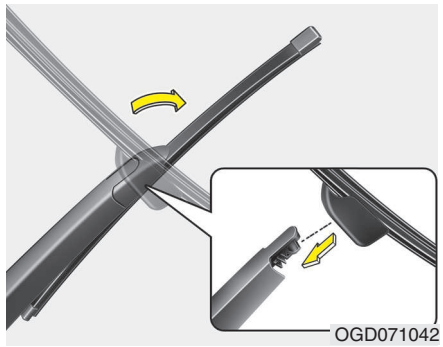
4. Push down the wiper arm (3) and install the new blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.
5. Return the wiper arm on the windscreen.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 52



Rear window wiper blade

1. Raise the wiper arm and pull out the wiper blade assembly.

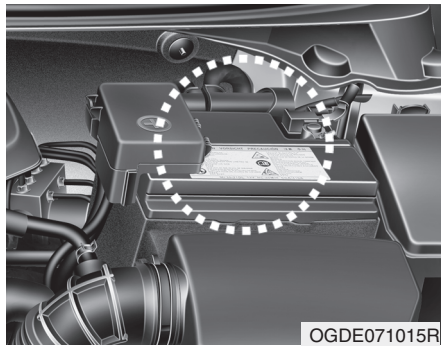


2. Install the new blade assembly by inserting the centre part into the slot in the wiper arm until it clicks into place.
3. Make sure the blade assembly is installed firmly by trying to pull it slightly.

To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, we recommend that the wiper blade be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 53

BATTERY


OGDE071015R

For best battery service

- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.

⚠ WARNING - Battery dangers

Always read the following instructions carefully when handling a battery.

Keep lighted cigarettes and all other flames or sparks away from the battery.

Hydrogen, a highly combustible gas, is always present in battery cells and may explode if ignited.

Keep batteries out of the reach of children because batteries contain highly corrosive SULFURIC ACID. Do not allow battery acid to contact your skin, eyes, clothing or paint finish.

(Continued)

(Continued)

If any electrolyte gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention.

If electrolyte gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the contacted area. If you feel a pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.

Wear eye protection when charging or working near a battery. Always provide ventilation when working in an enclosed space.

An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

(Continued)

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 54

(Continued)

The battery contains lead. Do not dispose of it after use. Please return the battery to an authorised Kia dealer to be recycled.

- **When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak, resulting in personal injury. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.**
- **Never attempt to recharge the battery when the battery cables are connected.**
- **The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. Never touch these components with the engine running or the ignition switched on.**

Failure to follow the above warnings can result in serious bodily injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION

If you use unauthorised electronic devices, the battery may be discharged. Never use unauthorised devices.

■ Example



OJD072039

❊ The actual battery label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Battery capacity label (see the example)

1. CMF60L-BCI : The Kia model name of battery
2. 12V : The nominal voltage
3. 60Ah(20HR) : The nominal capacity (in Ampere hours)
4. 92RC : The nominal reserve capacity (in min.)
5. 550CCA : The cold-test current in amperes by SAE
6. 440A : The cold-test current in amperes by EN

Battery recharging

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free, calcium-based battery.

- If the battery becomes discharged in a short time (because, for example, the headlights or interior lights were left on whilst the vehicle was not in use), recharge it by slow charging (trickle) for 10 hours.
- If the battery gradually discharges because of high electric load whilst the vehicle is being used, recharge it at 20-30A for two hours.

⚠ WARNING - Recharging battery

When recharging the battery, observe the following precautions:

- **The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in an area with good ventilation.**
- **Do not allow cigarettes, sparks, or flame near the battery.**
- **Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin gassing (boiling) violently or if the temperature of the electrolyte of any cell exceeds 49°C (120°F).**

(Continued)

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 55

(Continued)

- **Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.**
- **Disconnect the battery charger in the following order.**
  1. **Turn off the battery charger main switch.**
  2. **Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.**
  3. **Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.**
- **Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the engine.**
- **The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected.**

Reset items

Items should be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.

- Auto up/down window (See section 4)
- Sunroof (See section 4)
- Trip computer (See section 4)
- Climate control system (See section 4)
- Audio (See section 4)

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 56

TYRES AND WHEELS

Tyre care

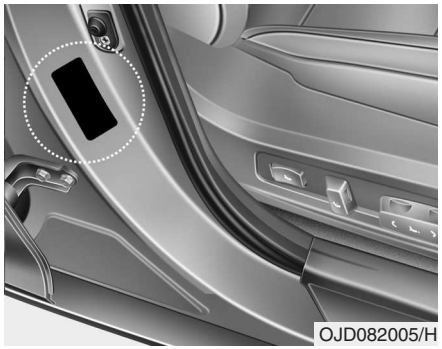
For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum fuel economy, you must always maintain recommended tyre inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.

Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures

All tyre pressures (including the spare) should be checked when the tyres are cold. “Cold Tyres” means the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile).

Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, top vehicle handling, and minimum tyre wear.

For recommended inflation pressure refer to “Tyre and wheels” in section 8.



All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - Tyre underinflation

Severe underinflation (70 kPa (10 psi) or more) can lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation and other tyre failures that can result in the loss of vehicle control leading to severe injury or death. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 57

⚠ CAUTION

- *Underinflation also results in excessive wear, poor handling and reduced fuel economy. Wheel deformation also is possible. Keep your tyre pressures at the proper levels. If a tyre frequently needs refilling, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.*
- *Overinflation produces a harsh ride, excessive wear at the centre of the tyre tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.*

⚠ CAUTION

- *Warm tyres normally exceed recommended cold tyre pressures by 28 to 41 kPa (4 to 6 psi). Do not release air from warm tyres to adjust the pressure or the tyres will be underinflated.*
- *Be sure to reinstall the tyre inflation valve caps. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.*

⚠ WARNING - Tyre inflation

Overinflation or underinflation can reduce tyre life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tyre failure. This could result in loss of vehicle control and potential injury.

⚠ CAUTION - Tyre pressure

Always observe the following:

- *Check tyre pressure when the tyres are cold. (After vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or hasn't been driven more than 1.6 km (1 mile) since startup.)*
- *Check the pressure of your spare tyre each time you check the pressure of other tyres.*
- *Never overload your vehicle. Be careful not to overload a vehicle luggage rack if your vehicle is equipped with one.*
- *Worn, old tyres can cause accidents. If your tread is badly worn, or if your tyres have been damaged, replace them.*

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 58

Checking tyre inflation pressure

Check your tyres once a month or more.

Also, check the tyre pressure of the spare tyre.

How to check

Use a good quality gauge to check tyre pressure. You can not tell if your tyres are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tyres may look properly inflated even when they're underinflated.

Check the tyre's inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. - "Cold" means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1.6 km (1 mile).

Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem. Press the tyre gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tyre inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tyre and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tyre, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the centre of the tyre valve. Recheck the tyre pressure with the tyre gauge. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

⚠ WARNING

- **Inspect your tyres frequently for proper inflation as well as wear and damage. Always use a tyre pressure gauge.**
- **Tyres with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tyre failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. The recommended cold tyre pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar.**
- **Worn tyres can cause accidents. Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.**
- **Remember to check the pressure of your spare tyre. Kia recommends that you check the spare every time you check the pressure of the other tyres on your vehicle.**

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 59

Tyre rotation

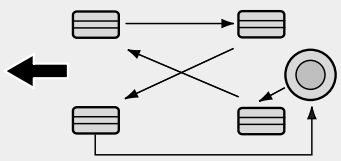
To equalize tread wear, it is recommended that the tyres be rotated every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tyres for correct balance.

When rotating tyres, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tyre pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of tyre. Replace the tyre if you find either of these conditions. Replace the tyre if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tyre pressures to specification and check lug nut tightness.

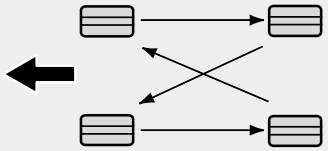
Refer to “Tyre and wheels” in section 8.

■ With a full-size spare tyre (if equipped)



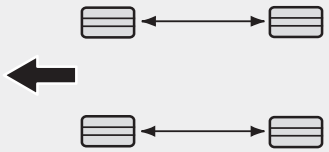
S2BLA790

■ Without a spare tyre



S2BLA790A

■ Directional tyres (if equipped)



CBGQ0707A

Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tyres are rotated.

✻ NOTICE

Rotate radial tyres that have an asymmetric tread pattern only from front to rear and not from right to left.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not use the compact spare tyre for tyre rotation.**
- **Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tyres under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics that could result in death, severe injury, or property damage.**

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 60

Wheel alignment and tyre balance

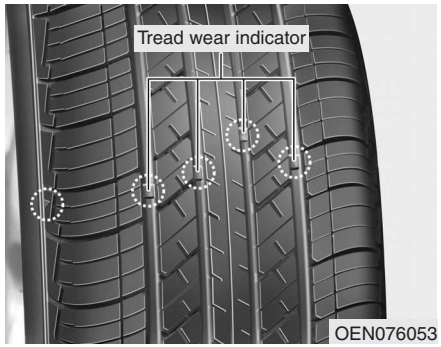
The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tyre life and best overall performance.

In most cases, you will not need to have your wheels aligned again. However, if you notice unusual tyre wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

⚠ CAUTION

Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminum wheels. Use only approved wheel weights.



Tyre replacement

If the tyre is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm (1/16 in.) of tread left on the tyre. Replace the tyre when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tyre.

⚠ CAUTION

When replacing the tyres, recheck and tighten the wheel nuts after driving about 1,000 km (620miles). If the steering wheel shakes or the vehicle vibrates whilst driving, the tyre is out of balance. Align the tyre balance. If the problem is not solved, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

We recommend that when replacing tyres, use the same originally supplied with the vehicles.
If not, that affects driving performance.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 61

⚠ WARNING - Replacing tyres

- **Driving on worn-out tyres is very hazardous and will reduce braking effectiveness, steering accuracy, and traction.**
- **Your vehicle is equipped with tyres designed to provide for safe ride and handling capability. Do not use a size and type of tyre and wheel that is different from the one that is originally installed on your vehicle. It can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could lead to handling failure or rollover and serious injury. When replacing the tyres, be sure to equip all four tyres with the tyre and wheel of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The use of any other tyre size or type may seriously affect ride, handling, ground clearance, stopping distance, body to tyre clearance, snow tyre clearance, and speedometer reliability.**
- **It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that is not possible, or necessary, then replace the two front or two rear tyres as a pair. Replacing just one tyre can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.**
- **The ABS works by comparing the speed of the wheels. Tyre size can affect wheel speed. When replacing tyres, all 4 tyres must use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Using tyres of a different size can cause the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) and ESC (Electronic Stability Control) to work irregularly.**

Compact spare tyre replacement (if equipped)

A compact spare tyre has a shorter tread life than a regular size tyre. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tyre. The replacement compact spare tyre should be the same size and design tyre as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tyre wheel. The compact spare tyre is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tyre wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tyre.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 62

Wheel replacement

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width and offset.

⚠ WARNING

A wheel that is not the correct size may adversely affect wheel and bearing life, braking and stopping abilities, handling characteristics, ground clearance, body-to-tyre clearance, snow chain clearance, speedometer and odometer calibration, headlight aim and bumper height.

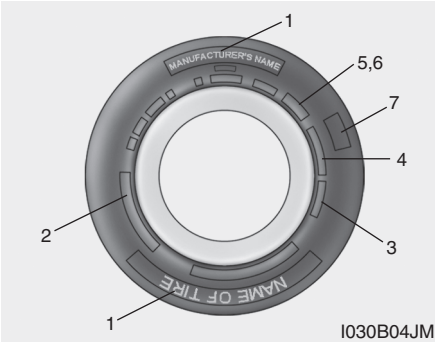
Tyre traction

Tyre traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tyres, tyres that are improperly inflated or on slippery road surfaces. Tyres should be replaced when tread wear indicators appear. To reduce the possibility of losing control, slow down whenever there is rain, snow or ice on the road.

Tyre maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tyre wear. If you find a tyre is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

When you have new tyres installed, make sure they are balanced. This will increase vehicle ride comfort and tyre life. Additionally, a tyre should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.



Tyre sidewall labeling

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tyre and also provides the tyre identification number (TIN) for safety standard certification. The TIN can be used to identify the tyre in case of a recall.

1. Manufacturer or brand name

Manufacturer or Brand name is shown.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 63

2. Tyre size designation

A tyre's sidewall is marked with a tyre size designation. You will need this information when selecting replacement tyres for your car. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tyre size designation mean.

Example tyre size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tyre size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

195/65R15 91H

P - Applicable vehicle type (tyres marked with the prefix "P" are intended for use on passenger vehicles or light trucks; however, not all tyres have this marking).

195 - Tyre width in millimeters.

65 - Aspect ratio. The tyre's section height as a percentage of its width.

R - Tyre construction code (Radial).

15 - Rim diameter in inches.

91 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tyre can carry.

H - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

Wheel size designation

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the wheel size designation mean.

Example wheel size designation:

6.0JX15

6.0 - Rim width in inches.

J - Rim contour designation.

15 - Rim diameter in inches.

Tyre speed ratings

The chart below lists many of the different speed ratings currently being used for passenger cars. The speed rating is part of the tyre size designation on the sidewall of the tyre. This symbol corresponds to that tyre's designed maximum safe operating speed.

Speed Rating Symbol	Maximum Speed
S	180 km/h (112 mph)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
W	270 km/h (167 mph)
Y	300 km/h (186 mph)

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 64

3. Checking tyre life (TIN : Tyre Identification Number)

Any tyres that are over 6 years, based on the manufacturing date, tyre strength and performance, decline with age naturally (even unused spare tyres). Therefore, the tyres (including the spare tyre) should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code. The DOT Code is a series of numbers on a tyre consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

DOT : XXXX XXXX OOOO

The front part of the DOT means a plant code number, tyre size and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 1615 represents that the tyre was produced in the 16th week of 2015.

⚠ WARNING - Tyre age

Tyres degrade over time, even when they are not being used. Regardless of the remaining tread, it is recommended that tyres generally be replaced after six (6) years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process. Failure to follow this Warning can result in sudden tyre failure, which could lead to a loss of control and an accident involving serious injury or death.

4. Tyre ply composition and material

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric are in the tyre. Tyre manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tyre, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter "R" means radial ply construction; the letter "D" means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter "B" means belted-bias ply construction.

5. Maximum permissible inflation pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tyre. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure. Refer to the Tyre and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

6. Maximum load rating

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tyre. When replacing the tyres on the vehicle, always use a tyre that has the same load rating as the factory installed tyre.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 65

7. Uniform tyre quality grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tyre sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example:

TREADWEAR 200

TRACTION AA

TEMPERATURE A

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tyre when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tyre graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times (1½) as well on the government course as a tyre graded 100.

The relative performance of tyres depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm because of variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

These grades are molded on the side-walls of passenger vehicle tyres. The tyres available as standard or optional equipment on your vehicles may vary with respect to grade.

Traction - AA, A, B & C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tyres ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tyre marked C may have poor traction performance.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tyre is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature -A, B & C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C representing the tyre's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tyre to degenerate and reduce tyre life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tyre failure. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by the law.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 66

⚠ WARNING - Tyre temperature

The temperature grade for this tyre is established for a tyre that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat build-up and possible sudden tyre failure. This can cause loss of vehicle control and serious injury or death.

Low aspect ratio tyre (if equipped)

Low aspect ratio tyres, whose aspect ratio is lower than 50, are provided for sporty looks.

Because the low aspect ratio tyres are optimized for handling and braking, it may be more uncomfortable to ride in and there is more noise compare with normal tyres.

⚠ CAUTION

Because the sidewall of the low aspect ratio tyre is shorter than the normal, the wheel and tyre of the low aspect ratio tyre is easier to be damaged. So, follow the instructions below.

- When driving on a rough road or off road, drive cautiously because tyres and wheels may be damaged. And after driving, inspect tyres and wheels.

- When passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or kerb stone, drive slowly so that the tyres and wheels are not damaged.

- If the tyre is impacted, we recommend that you inspect the tyre condition or contact an authorised Kia dealer.

- To prevent damage to the tyre, inspect the tyre condition and pressure every 3,000km.

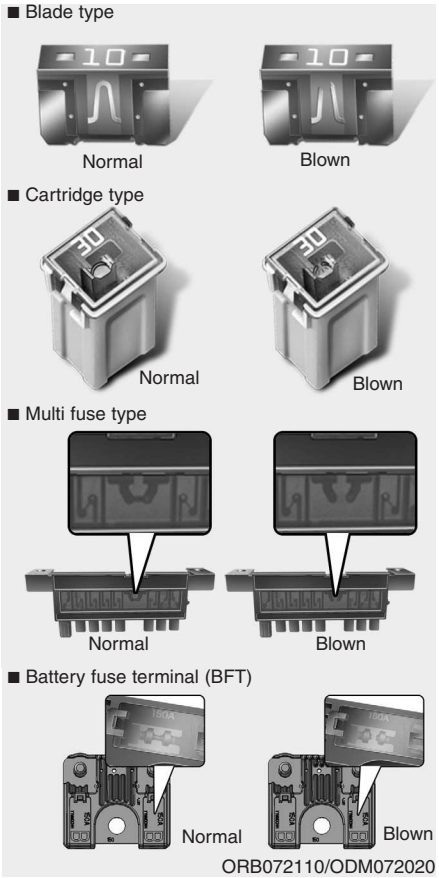
JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 67

⚠ CAUTION

- ***It is not easy to recognize the tyre damage with your own eyes. But if there is the slightest hint of tyre damage, even though you cannot see the tyre damage with your own eyes, have the tyre checked or replaced because the tyre damage may cause air leakage from the tyre.***
- ***If the tyre is damaged by driving on a rough road, off road, pothole, manhole, or kerb stone, it will not be covered by the warranty.***
- ***You can find out the tyre information on the tyre sidewall.***

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 68

FUSES



A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

This vehicle has 3 (or 4) fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster, others in the engine compartment near the battery.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse will be melted.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel.

Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating.

Before replacing a blown fuse, move to safe place, turn off the engine and all electric devices, and disconnect the negative battery cable.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved and we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.

Four kinds of fuses are used: blade type for lower amperage rating, cartridge type, battery fuse terminal and multi fuse type for higher amperage ratings.

⚠ WARNING - Fuse replacement

- **Never replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.**
- **A higher capacity fuse could cause damage and possibly a fire.**
- **Never install a wire or aluminum foil instead of the proper fuse - even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and a possible fire.**
- **Do not arbitrarily modify or addon electric wiring of the vehicle.**

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.

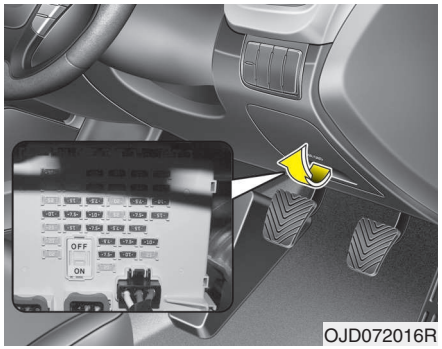
✻ NOTICE

The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 69

⚠ CAUTION

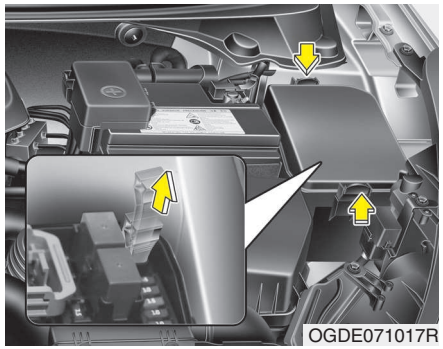
- ***When replacing a blown fuse or relay with a new one, make sure the new fuse or relay fits tightly into the clips. The incomplete fastening fuse or relay may cause the vehicle wiring and electric systems damage and a possible fire.***
- ***Do not remove fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts. The fuses, relays and terminals may be fastened incompletely, and it may cause a possible fire. If fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts are blown, we recommend that you consult with an authorised Kia dealer.***
- ***Do not input any other objects except fuses or relays into fuse/relay terminals such as a driver or wiring. It may cause contact failure and system malfunction.***
- ***Do not plug in screwdrivers or aftermarket wiring into the terminal originally designed for fuse and relays only. The electrical system and wiring of the vehicle interior may be damaged or burned due to contact failure.***



OJD072016R

Inner panel fuse replacement

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Open the fuse panel cover.


OGDE071017R

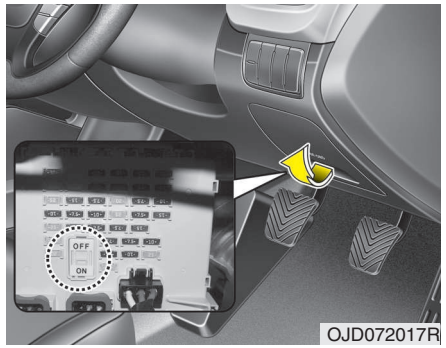
3. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided in the engine compartment fuse panel.
4. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown.
5. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips.

If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.

If you do not have a spare, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle, such as the cigar lighter fuse.

If the headlights, fog lights, turn signal lights, position lights or interior lights do not work and there is nothing wrong with the bulbs, we recommend that you consult with an authorised Kia dealer.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:30 PM Page 70



Fuse switch

Always, put the fuse switch at the ON position.

If you move the switch to the OFF position, some items such as audio and digital clock must be reset and transmitter (or smart key) may not work properly.

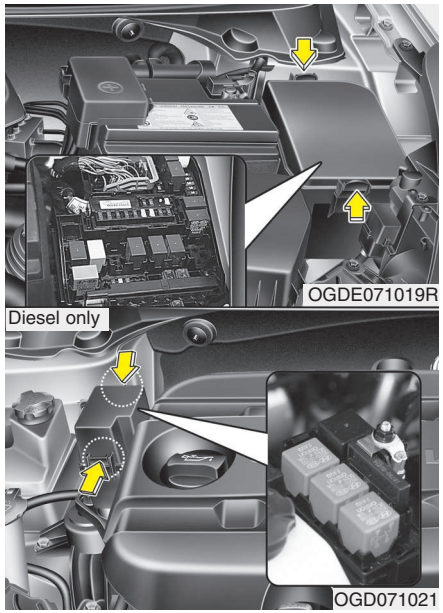
When the fuse switch is in the OFF position, a message "Turn on fuse switch" will illuminate on the cluster.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Always place the fuse switch in the ON position whilst driving the vehicle.***
- ***Do not move the fuse switch repeatedly. The fuse switch may be worn out.***

✻ NOTICE

If you need to park your vehicle for prolonged periods more than 1 month, move the fuse switch to the OFF position to prevent the battery being discharged.



Engine compartment panel fuse replacement

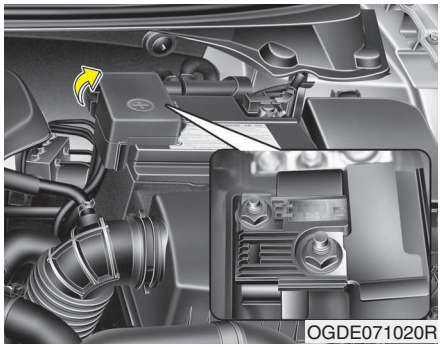
1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:31 PM Page 71

2. Remove the fuse box cover by pressing the tap and pulling up. When the blade type fuse is disconnected, remove it by using the clip designed for changing fuses located in the engine room fuse box. Upon removal, securely insert reserve fuse of equal quantity.
3. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse panel.
4. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

After checking the fuse box in the engine compartment, install the fuse box cover securely. If not, water leaking may cause electrical failures.



Main fuse

Electrical equipments are not working even though inner panel and engine compartment fuses are not blown, or many of these are not working at the same time, it may has blown the main fuse(Battery Fuse Terminal type) inside of the battery(+) cap.

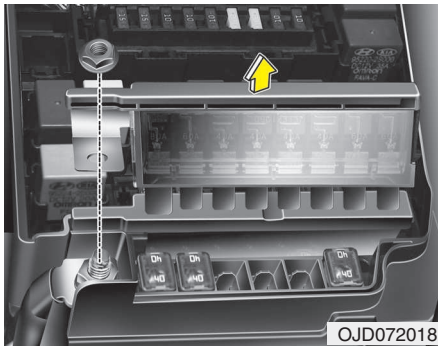
If the main fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
4. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
5. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***After checking the main fuse, install the cover securely when you close the cover, check the locking sound.***
  If not, electrical failures may occur from water leaking in.
- ***Visually inspect the battery cap for secure closing. If the battery cap is not securely latched, the electrical system may be damaged to due influx of moisture into the system.***

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:31 PM Page 72


OJD072018

Multi fuse

If the multi fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the fuse panel on the right side in the engine compartment.
4. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
5. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
6. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

✻ NOTICE

If the multi fuse or main fuse is blown, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:31 PM Page 73



Fuse/relay panel description

Inner fuse panel

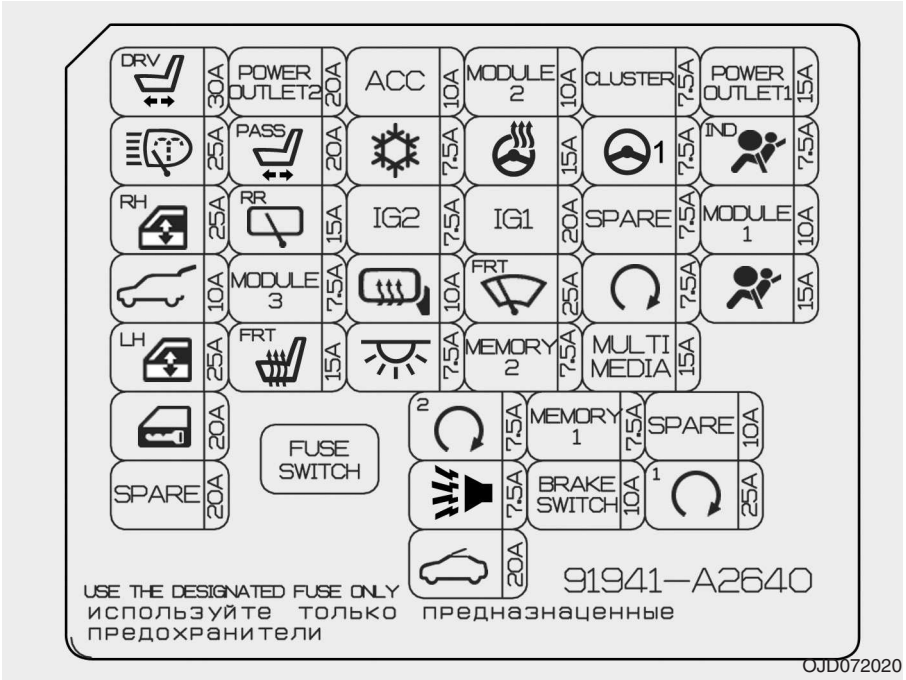
Inside the fuse/relay panel covers, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay name and capacity.

✻ NOTICE

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse panel in your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.

✻ NOTICE

The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.



JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:31 PM Page 74

Instrument panel (Driver's side fuse panel)

No.	Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Protected component
1	30A	DRV	P/SEAT DRV	4WAY : Driver Lumbar Support Switch 6WAY : Driver Seat Manual Switch, Driver IMS Module
2	25A		H/LP WASHER	ICM Relay Box (Head Lamp Washer Relay)
3	25A	RH	P/WDW RH	Power Window Relay RH, Driver/Passenger Safety Power Window Module, Rear Safety Power Window Module RH
4	10A		T/GATE OPEN	Tail Gate Relay
5	25A	LH	P/WDW LH	Power Window Relay LH, Driver/Passenger Safety Power Window Module, Rear Safety Power Window Module LH
6	20A		DR LOCK	Door Lock/Unlock Relay, Dead Lock Relay
7	20A	SPARE	SPARE	-
8	20A	POWER OUTLET2	POWER OUTLET 2	Cigarette Lighter, Rear Power Outlet
9	20A	PASS	P/SEAT ASS	Passenger Lumbar Support Switch
10	15A	RR	RR WIPER	ICM Relay Box (Rear Wiper Relay), Rear Wiper Motor
11	7.5A	MODULE 3	MODULE 3	Auto Light & Photo Sensor, AT lever (Shift Lock), Hazard Switch
12	15A	FRT	S/HEATER FRT	Driver/Passenger Seat Warmer Module
13	10A	ACC	ACC	A/V & Navigation Head Unit (W/O ISG), Audio (W/O ISG), DC-DC Convertor (With ISG), Digital Clock, Smart Key Control Module, BCM, Outside Mirror Switch, Outside Mirror

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:31 PM Page 75

No.	Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Protected component
14	7.5A		A/CON	Cluster Ionizer, A/C Control Module, Blower Relay, PTC Relay
15	7.5A	IG2	IG2	ICM Relay Box (Head Lamp Washer Relay), Rain Sensor, BCM, Electro Chromic Mirror, Panorama Sunroof, Smart, Key Control Module, Passenger Seat Warmer Module, Driver Seat Warmer Module
16	10A		HTD MIRR	Driver/Passenger Outside Mirror, ECU, A/C Control Module
17	7.5A		INTERIOR LAMP	Glove Box Lamp, Luggage Lamp, Vanity Lamp LH/RH, Room Lamp, Overhead Console Lamp
18	7.5A	2	PDM 2	Smart Key Control Module, Start/Stop Button Switch
19	7.5A		B/HORN	ICM Relay Box (Burglar Alarm Horn Relay)
20	20A		SUNROOF	Panorama Sunroof
21	10A	MODULE 2	MODULE 2	Electric Parking Brake Module, DC-DC Convertor (With ISG), Head Lamp Levelling Device Switch, A/C Control Module, Rear Parking Assist Sensor, Smart Parking Assist Control Module, Head Lamp LH/RH, ATM Shift Lever IND., Centre Facia Switch, Crash Pad Lower Switch, Driver/Passenger Seat Warmer Module, Driver IMS Module
22	15A		HTD STRG	Steering Wheel Heater
23	20A	IG1	IG1	E/R Fuse & Relay Box (ECU4, B/UP LAMP, ABS3, TCU2 FUSE)
24	25A	FRT	WIPER	Wiper Relay , ICM Relay Box (Rain Sensor Relay), Front Wiper Motor

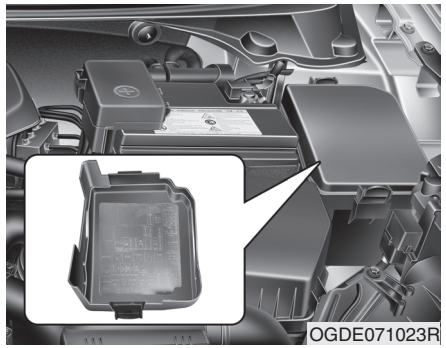
JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:31 PM Page 76

No.	Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Protected component
25	7.5A	MEMORY 2	MEMORY 2	Immobiliser Module (W/O Smart Key)
26	7.5A	MEMORY 1	MEMORY 1	Driver/Passenger Outside Mirror (Folding), Driver/Passenger Smart Key Outside Handle, Driver IMS Module, Centre Facia Switch, Instrument Cluster, Tyre Pressure Monitoring Module, BCM, A/C Control Module, ICM Relay Box (Outside Mirror Folding/Unfolding Relay), Ignition Key ILL. & Door Warning Switch, Rear Parking Assist Switch, Data Link Connector, Buzzer
27	10A	BRAKE SWITCH	BRAKE SWITCH	Smart Key Control Module, Stop Lamp Switch
28	7.5A	CLUSTER	CLUSTER	Instrument Cluster, Digital Clock
29	7.5A		POWER STEERING	EPS Unit
30	7.5A	SPARE	SPARE	-
31	7.5A		START	Start Relay, ECU, Ignition Lock Switch, Transaxle Range Switch, TCU, Smart Key Control Module
32	15A	MULTI MEDIA	MULTI MEDIA	A/V & Navigation Head Unit (W/O ISG), Audio (W/O ISG), DC-DC Convertor (With ISG), Digital Clock
33	10A	SPARE	SPARE	-
34	25A		PDM 1	Smart Key Control Module
35	15A	POWER OUTLET1	P/OUTLET 1	Front Power Outlet

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:31 PM Page 77

No.	Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Protected component
36	7.5A	IND	A/BAG IND	Instrument Cluster
37	10A	MODULE 1	MODULE 1	BCM, Tyre Pressure Monitoring Module, AT Lever, Audio, Adaptive Front Lighting Module, LDWS Unit
38	15A		A/BAG	SRS Control Module

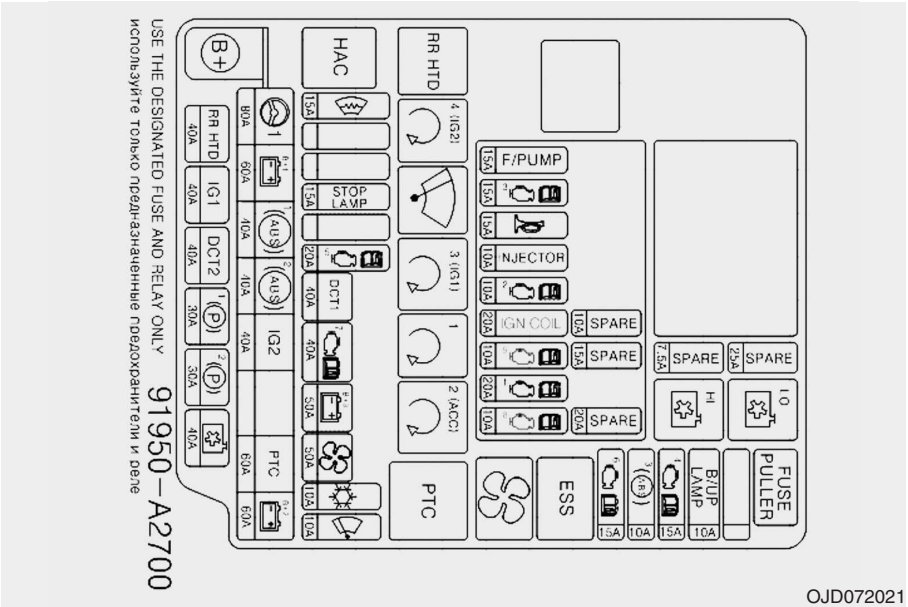
JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:31 PM Page 78



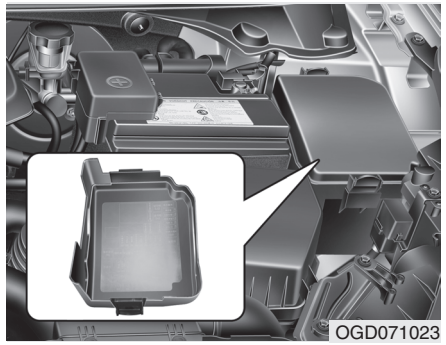
Engine compartment fuse panel (for petrol engine MPI, GDI)

✻ NOTICE

The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.



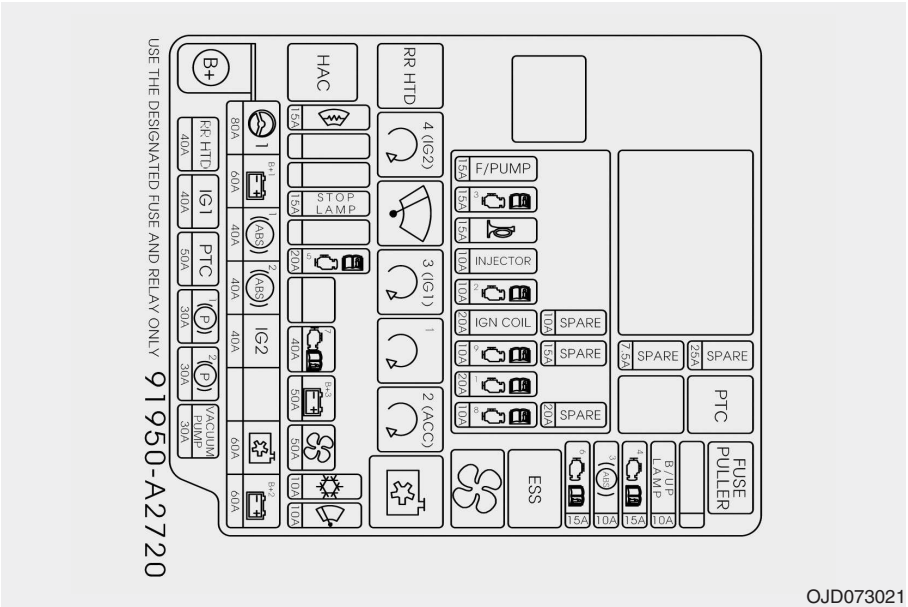
JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:31 PM Page 79



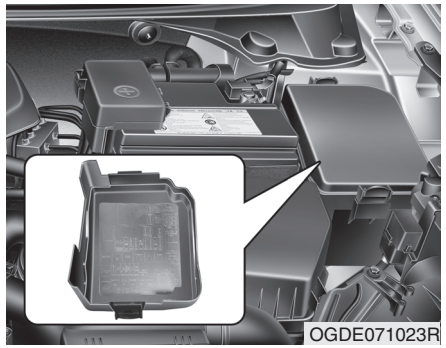
Engine compartment fuse panel (for petrol engine T-GDI)

✻ NOTICE

The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.



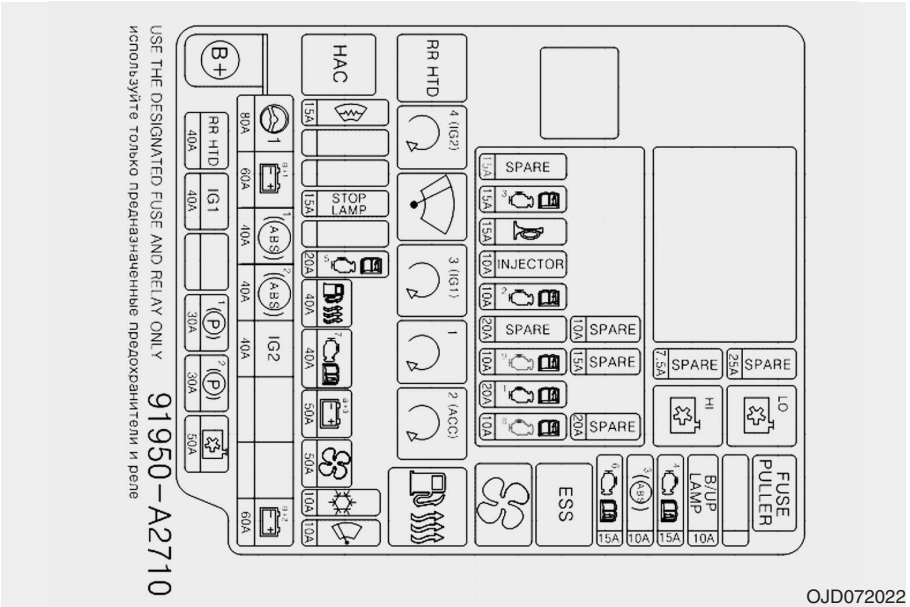
JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:31 PM Page 80



Engine compartment fuse panel (for diesel engine)

✻ NOTICE

The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.



JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:31 PM Page 81

Engine compartment main fuse panel (for petrol engine MPI, GDI)

Fuse	Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Protected component
MULTI FUSE	80A		POWER STEERING	EPS Unit
	60A		B+1	Inner Fuse Panel, IPS1 (H/LAMP HI LH,H/LAMP LOW LH, FRT TURN LH, POSITION LAMP LH), IPS2 (STATIC BENDING LAMP LH/RH, DRL LH/RH)
	40A		ABS1	ESC Control Module, ABS Control Module
	40A		ABS2	ESC Control Module, ABS Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector
	40A	IG2	IG2	W/O Smart Key : Ignition Switch, START RELAY With Smart Key : IG2 RELAY, START RELAY
	60A	PTC	PTC	PTC Relay
	60A		B+2	Inner Fuse Panel, IPS3 (H/LAMP HI RH,H/LAMP LOW RH, FRT TURN RH,POSITION LAMP RH), IPS4 (FRT FOG LAMP LH/RH, REAR TURN LH/RH), IPS5 (REAR FOG LAMP, INT TAIL LAMP)
FUSE	40A	RR HTD	RR HTD	RR HTD RELAY , RR HTD
	40A	IG1	IG1	W/O Smart Key : Ignition Switch With Smart Key : IG1 RELAY, ACC RELAY, INNER FUSE PANEL (FUSE No. - 8/13/21/23/28/29/35/36/37/38)
	40A	DCT2	DCT2	TCU (DCT)
	30A		EPB1	Electric Parking Brake Module
	30A		EPB2	Electric Parking Brake Module
	40A		C/FAN	C/FAN LO RELAY, C/FAN HI RELAY

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:31 PM Page 82

Fuse	Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Protected component
FUSE	15A		DEICER	ICM Relay Box (Front Deicer Relay)
	15A	STOP LAMP	STOP LAMP	Stop Signal Electronic Relay , HAC RELAY
	20A		TCU1	TCU
	40A	DCT1	DCT1	TCU (DCT)
	40A		EMS	EMS Box (FUSE No. - 1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)
	50A		B+3	Inner Fuse Panel (Leak Current Autocut Device, Fuse No. - 6/19/20/17/32/26/25)
	50A		BLOWER	BLOWER RELAY
	10A		A/CON	A/C Control Module
	10A		WIPER FRT	ECU, Rain Sensor
	10A	B/UP LAMP	B/UP LP	M/T : Back-up Lamp Switch, A/T : Transaxle Range Switch, TCU
	15A		ECU4	Smart Key Control Module, Immobiliser Module, ECU
	10A		ABS3	ESC Control Module, ABS Control Module, Yaw Rate Sensor, HAC, ESS RELAY
	15A		TCU2	Transaxle Range Switch, TCU, Stop Lamp Switch

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:31 PM Page 83

Symbol	Relay Name	Type
LO	COOLING FAN LOW RELAY	PLUG MICRO
HI	COOLING FAN HIGH RELAY	PLUG MICRO
ESS	ESS RELAY	PLUG MICRO
	BLOWER RELAY	PLUG MICRO
RR HTD	REAR DEFOGGER RELAY	PLUG MICRO
4 (IG2)	IG2 RELAY	PLUG MICRO
	FRT WIPER RELAY	PLUG MICRO
3 (IG1)	IG1 RELAY	PLUG MICRO
1	START RELAY	PLUG MICRO
2 (ACC)	ACC RELAY	PLUG MICRO
PTC	PTC RELAY	PLUG MINI
HAC	HAC RELAY	PLUG MICRO

Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Relay Name
15A	F/PUMP	F/PUMP	FUEL PUMP RELAY
15A	3	ECU3	ECU
15A		HORN	Horn Relay
10A	INJECTOR	INJECTOR	INJECTOR, ECU, FUEL PUMP RELAY
10A	2	ECU2	ECU
20A	IGN COIL	IGN COIL	Ignition Coil #1/#2/#3/#4, Condenser
10A	9	SENSOR2	E/R Fuse & Relay Box (COOLING LOW RELAY), Oil Control Valve #1/#2
20A	1	ECU1	ECU
10A	8	SENSOR1	Oxygen Sensor (UP/DOWN), Variable Intake Solenoid Valve, Purge Control Solenoid Valve

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:31 PM Page 84

Engine compartment main fuse panel (for petrol engine T-GDI)

Fuse	Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Protected component
MULTI FUSE	80A		POWER STEERING	EPS Unit
	60A		B+1	Inner Fuse Panel, IPS1 (H/LAMP HI LH,H/LAMP LOW LH, FRT TURN LH, POSITION LAMP LH), IPS2 (STATIC BENDING LAMP LH/RH, DRL LH/RH)
	40A		ABS1	ESC Control Module, ABS Control Module
	40A		ABS2	ESC Control Module, ABS Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector
	40A	IG2	IG2	W/O Smart Key : Ignition Switch, START RELAY With Smart Key : IG2 RELAY, START RELAY
	60A		C/FAN	C/FAN Relay
	60A		B+2	Inner Fuse Panel, IPS3 (H/LAMP HI RH,H/LAMP LOW RH, FRT TURN RH, POSITION LAMP RH), IPS4 (FRT FOG LAMP LH/RH, REAR TURN LH/RH), IPS5 (REAR FOG LAMP, INT TAIL LAMP)
FUSE	40A	RR HTD	RR HTD	RR HTD RELAY , RR HTD
	40A	IG1	IG1	W/O Smart Key : Ignition Switch With Smart Key : IG1 RELAY, ACC RELAY, INNER FUSE PANEL (FUSE No. - 8/13/21/23/28/29/35/36/37/38)
	50A	PTC	PTC	PTC Relay
	30A		EPB1	Electric Parking Brake Module
	30A		EPB2	Electric Parking Brake Module
	30A	VACUUM PUMP	VACUUM PUMP	VACUUM PUMP

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:31 PM Page 85

Fuse	Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Protected component
FUSE	15A		DEICER	ICM Relay Box (Front Deicer Relay)
	15A	STOP LAMP	STOP LAMP	Stop Signal Electronic Relay , HAC RELAY
	20A	5	TCU1	TCU
	40A	DCT1	DCT1	TCU (DCT)
	40A	7	EMS	EMS Box (FUSE No. - 1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)
	50A	B+3	B+3	Inner Fuse Panel (Leak Current Autocut Device, Fuse No. - 6/19/20/17/32/26/25)
	50A		BLOWER	BLOWER RELAY
	10A		A/CON	A/C Control Module
	10A		WIPER FRT	ECU, Rain Sensor
	10A	B/UP LAMP	B/UP LP	M/T : Back-up Lamp Switch, A/T : Transaxle Range Switch, TCU
	15A	4	ECU4	Smart Key Control Module, Immobiliser Module, ECU
	10A	3 ABS	ABS3	ESC Control Module, ABS Control Module, Yaw Rate Sensor, HAC, ESS RELAY
	15A	6	TCU2	Transaxle Range Switch, TCU, Stop Lamp Switch

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:32 PM Page 86

Symbol	Relay Name	Type
PTC	PTC RELAY	PLUG MICRO
ESS	ESS RELAY	PLUG MICRO
	BLOWER RELAY	PLUG MICRO
RR HTD	REAR DEFOGGER RELAY	PLUG MICRO
4 (IG2) 	IG2 RELAY	PLUG MICRO
	FRT WIPER RELAY	PLUG MICRO
3 (IG1) 	IG1 RELAY	PLUG MICRO
1 	START RELAY	PLUG MICRO
2 (ACC) 	ACC RELAY	PLUG MICRO
	COOLING FAN	PLUG MINI
HAC	HAC RELAY	PLUG MICRO

Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Relay Name
15A	F/PUMP	F/PUMP	FUEL PUMP RELAY
15A	3 	ECU3	ECU
15A		HORN	Horn Relay
10A	INJECTOR	INJECTOR	INJECTOR, ECU, FUEL PUMP RELAY
10A	2 	ECU2	ECU
20A	IGN COIL	IGN COIL	Ignition Coil #1/#2/#3/#4, Condenser
10A	9 	SENSOR2	E/R Fuse & Relay Box (COOLING LOW RELAY), Oil Control Valve #1/#2
20A	1 	ECU1	ECU
10A	8 	SENSOR1	Oxygen Sensor (UP/DOWN), Variable Intake Solenoid Valve, Purge Control Solenoid Valve

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:32 PM Page 87

Engine compartment main fuse panel (for diesel engine)

Fuse	Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Protected component
MULTI FUSE	80A	1	POWER STEERING	EPS Unit
	60A	B+1	B+1	Inner Fuse Panel, IPS1 (H/LAMP HI LH,H/LAMP LOW LH, FRT TURN LH, POSITION LAMP LH), IPS2 (STATIC BENDING LAMP LH/RH, DRL LH/RH)
	40A	1 ABS	ABS1	ESC Control Module, ABS Control Module
	40A	2 ABS	ABS2	ESC Control Module, ABS Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector
	40A	IG2	IG2	W/O Smart Key : Ignition Switch, START RELAY With Smart Key : IG2 RELAY, START RELAY, INNER FUSE PANEL (Fuse No. - 14/24/22/15/10)
	60A	B+2	B+2	Inner Fuse Panel, IPS3 (H/LAMP HI RH,H/LAMP LOW RH, FRT TURN RH, POSITION LAMP RH), IPS4 (FRT FOG LAMP LH/RH, REAR TURN LH/RH), IPS5 (REAR FOG LAMP, INT TAIL LAMP)
FUSE	40A	RR HTD	RR HTD	RR HTD RELAY , RR HTD
	40A	IG1	IG1	W/O Smart Key : Ignition Switch With Smart Key : IG1 RELAY, ACC RELAY, INNER FUSE PANEL (Fuse No. - 38/36/21/37/ 23/29/28, Fuse No. - 13/8/35)
	30A	1 P	EPB1	Electric Parking Brake Module
	30A	2 P	EPB2	Electric Parking Brake Module
	50A		C/FAN	C/FAN LO RELAY, C/FAN HI RELAY
	15A		DEICER	ICM Relay Box (Front Deicer Relay)
	15A	STOP LAMP	STOP LAMP	Stop Signal Electronic Relay, HAC RELAY

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:32 PM Page 88

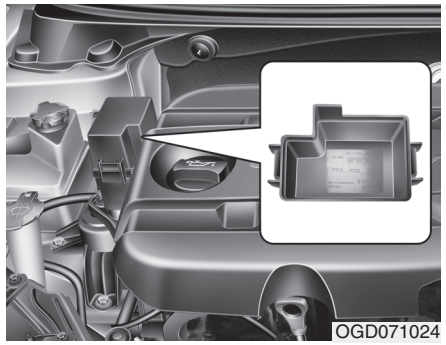
Fuse	Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Protected component
FUSE	20A	5	TCU1	TCU
	40A		FUEL HEATER	FUEL HEATER RELAY
	40A	7	EMS	EMS BOX (Fuse No. - 1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)
	50A	B+3	B+3	Inner Fuse Panel (Leak Current Autocut Device, Fuse No. - 6/19/20/17/32/26/25)
	50A		BLOWER	BLOWER RELAY
	10A		A/CON	A/C Control Module
	10A		WIPER FRT	ECU, Rain Sensor
	10A	B/UP LAMP	B/UP LP	M/T : Back-up Lamp Switch, A/T : Transaxle Range Switch, TCU
	15A	4	ECU4	Smart Key Control Module, Immobiliser Module, ECU, Air Flow Sensor, Fuel Water Sensor
	10A	3 ABS	ABS3	ESC Control Module, ABS Control Module, Yaw Rate Sensor, HAC, ESS RELAY
	15A	6	TCU2	Transaxle Range Switch, TCU

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:32 PM Page 89

Symbol	Relay Name	Type
LO	COOLING FAN LOW RELAY	PLUG MICRO
HI	COOLING FAN HIGH RELAY	PLUG MICRO
ESS	ESS RELAY	PLUG MICRO
	BLOWER RELAY	PLUG MICRO
RR HTD	REAR DEFOGGER RELAY	PLUG MICRO
4 (IG2)	IG2 RELAY	PLUG MICRO
	FRT WIPER RELAY	PLUG MICRO
3 (IG1)	IG1 RELAY	PLUG MICRO
1	START RELAY	PLUG MICRO
2 (ACC)	ACC RELAY	PLUG MICRO
	FUEL HEATER RELAY	PLUG MINI
HAC	HAC RELAY	PLUG MICRO

Fuse rating	Symbol	Fuse Name	Relay Name
15A	SPARE	SPARE	-
15A		HORN	HORN RELAY
10A	2	ECU2	Oil Level Sensor, Fuel Pressure Control Valve
20A	SPARE	SPARE	-
10A	9	SENSOR2	E/R Fuse & Relay Box (COOLING FAN LOW RELAY), Lambda Sensor (D4FB), Stop Lamp Switch
20A	1	ECU1	ECU
10A	8	SENSOR1	DSL Box (PTC1 RELAY, GLOW RELAY), VGT Control Sensor, Camshaft Position Sensor, Electrical EGR Valve

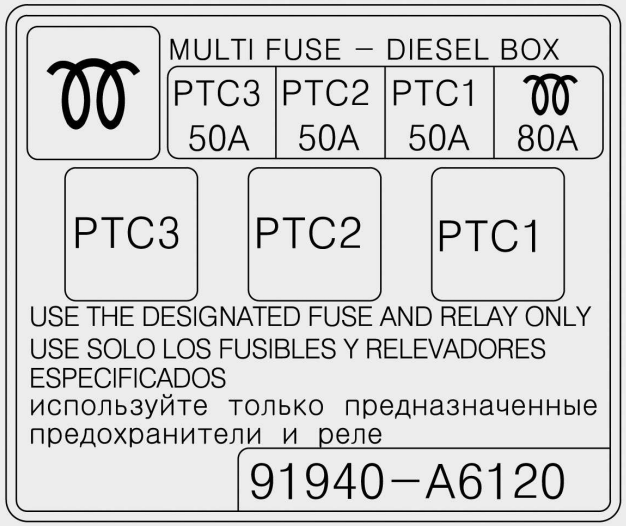
JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:32 PM Page 90



Engine compartment fuse panel (Diesel engine only)

✻ NOTICE

The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.



OGDE071059

Description	Fuse rating	Protected Component
	80A	Glow Relay
PTC 1	50A	PTC 1 Relay
PTC 2	50A	PTC 2 Relay
PTC 3	50A	PTC 3 Relay

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:32 PM Page 91

LIGHT BULBS

⚠ WARNING - Working on the lights

Prior to working on the light, firmly apply the parking brake, ensure that the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK" position (smart key: turn off the engine) and turn off the lights to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and burning your fingers or getting an electric shock.

Use only the bulbs of the specified wattage.

⚠ CAUTION

Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same wattage rating. Otherwise, it may cause damage to the fuse or electric wiring system.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***If you do not have necessary tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer. In many cases, it is difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the bulb. This is especially true if you have to remove the headlight assembly to get to the bulb(s).***

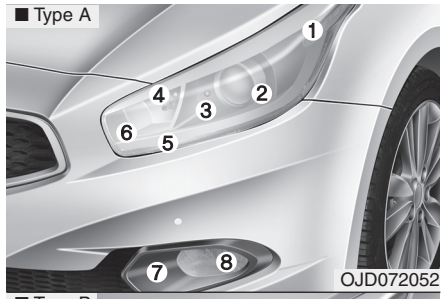
  Removing/installing the headlight assembly can result in damage to the vehicle.
- ***Do not install additional bulb or LED. If you install that, the lamp may not be operated properly and fuse box or electric wiring system may have problem.***

✻ NOTICE

After driving in heavy rain or washing the vehicle, headlight and taillight lenses could appear foggy. This condition is caused by the temperature difference between the lamp inside and outside. This is similar to the condensation on your windows inside your vehicle during rain and does not indicate a problem with your vehicle. If the water leaks into the lamp bulb circuitry, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

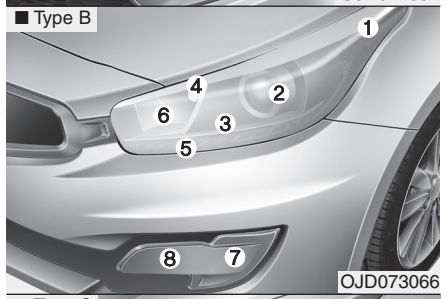
JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:32 PM Page 92

■ Type A



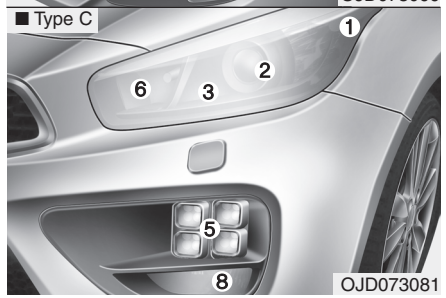
OJD072052

■ Type B



OJD073066

■ Type C

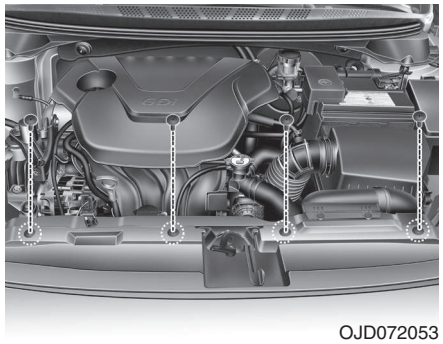


OJD073081

Front light replacement

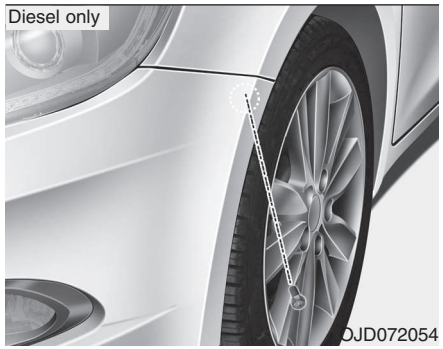
(1) Front turn signal light
(2) Headlight (Low)
(3) Static bending light (if equipped)
(4) Position light
(5) Position light / Daytime running light (DRL, LED Type) (if equipped)
(6) Headlight (High)
(7) Daytime running light (DRL, Bulb type) (if equipped)
(8) Front fog light (if equipped)

1. Turn off the engine and open the bonnet.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Disconnect the power connector front the back of the headlight assembly.



OJD072053

Diesel only



OJD072054

If you can reach the bulb without removing the headlight assembly, you do not need to do step 4 to 7.

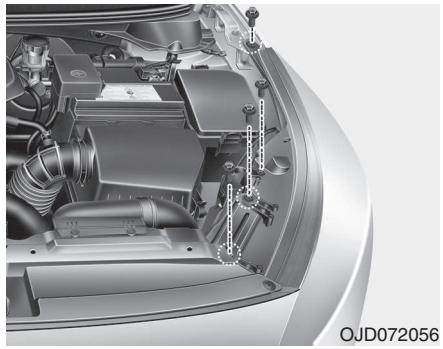
4. Loosen the retaining bolts on the front bumper.
   - Front bumper upper board : 4 EA
   - Front bumper cover : 1 EA

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:32 PM Page 93

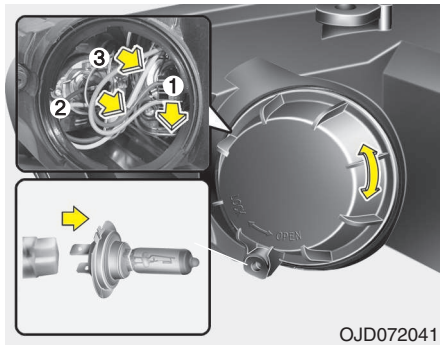

OJD072055


OJD072062

5. Pull out the front bumper cover.


OJD072056

6. Loosen the retaining bolt.
7. Pull out the headlight assembly from the body of the vehicle.



OJD072041

Headlight (High, 1) and static bending light (2, if equipped)

Follow the steps 1 to 7 from the previous section.

8. Remove the cover by turning it counterclockwise.
9. Disconnect the headlight bulb socket-connector.
10. Unsnap the headlight bulb retaining wire by depressing the end and pushing it upward.
11. Remove the bulb from the headlight assembly.
12. Install a new headlight bulb and snap the headlight bulb retaining wire into position by aligning the wire with the groove on the bulb.

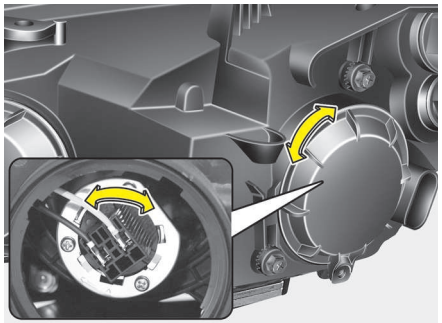
JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:32 PM Page 94

13. Connect the headlight bulb socket connector.
14. Install the headlight bulb cover by turning it clockwise.
15. Connect the power connector to the back of the headlight assembly.

Position light (3, bulb type)

Follow the steps 1 to 9 from the previous page.

10. Pull out the socket from the assembly.
11. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
12. Insert a new bulb into the socket.
13. Install the socket into the assembly.
14. Install the headlight bulb cover by turning it clockwise.



OJD072042

Headlight (Low, Non-HID Type)

Follow the steps 1 to 7 from the previous page.

8. Remove the cover by turning it counterclockwise.
9. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
10. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
11. Insert a new bulb into the socket.
12. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
13. Install the headlight bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

✻ NOTICE

We recommend that the headlight aiming be adjusted after an accident or after the headlight assembly is reinstalled at an authorised Kia dealer.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:32 PM Page 95

Headlight (Low, HID type), Position light/DRL (LED type)

If the light does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - HID Headlight low beam (if equipped)

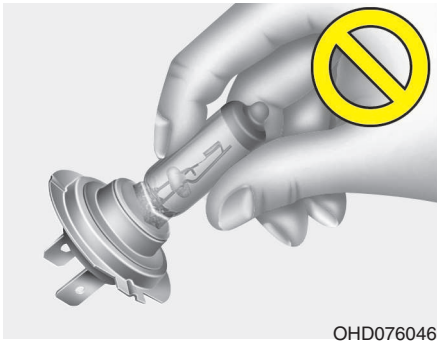
Do not attempt to replace or inspect the low beam (XENON bulb) due to electric shock danger. If the low beam (XENON bulb) is not working, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

HID lamps have superior performance vs. halogen bulbs. HID lamps are estimated by the manufacturer to last twice as long or longer than halogen bulbs depending on their frequency of use. They will probably require replacement at some point in the life of the vehicle. Cycling the headlamps on and off more than typical use will shorten HID lamps life. HID lamps do not fail in the same manner as halogen incandescent lamps. If a headlamp goes out after a period of operation but will immediately relight when the headlamp switch is cycled it is likely the HID lamp needs to be replaced. HID lighting components are more complex than conventional halogen bulbs thus have higher replacement cost.

❋ Traffic Change (For Europe)

The low beam light distribution is asymmetric. If you go abroad to a country with opposite traffic direction, this asymmetric part will dazzle oncoming car driver. To prevent dazzle, ECE regulation demand several technical solutions (ex. automatic change system, adhesive sheet, down aiming). This headlamps are designed not to dazzle opposite drivers. So, you need not change your headlamps in a country with opposite traffic direction.

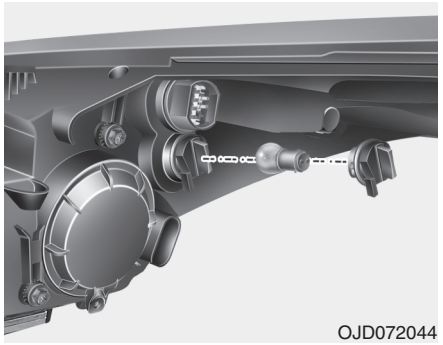


OHD076046

⚠ WARNING - Halogen bulbs

- **Halogen bulbs contain pressurized gas that will produce flying pieces of glass if broken.**
- **Always handle them carefully, and avoid scratches and abrasions. If the bulbs are lit, avoid contact with liquids. Never touch the glass with bare hands. Residual oil may cause the bulb to overheat and burst when lit. A bulb should be operated only when installed in a headlight.**
- **If a bulb is damaged or cracked, replace it immediately and carefully dispose of it.**
- **Wear eye protection when changing a bulb. Allow the bulb to cool down before handling it.**

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:32 PM Page 96



OJD072044

Turn signal light

Follow the steps 1 to 7 from the previous page.

8. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
9. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
10. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
11. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.



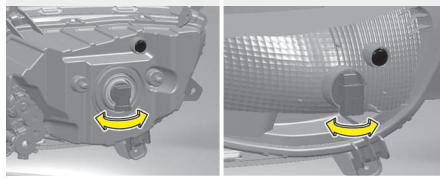
OJD072050

Front fog light, Daytime running light (if equipped)

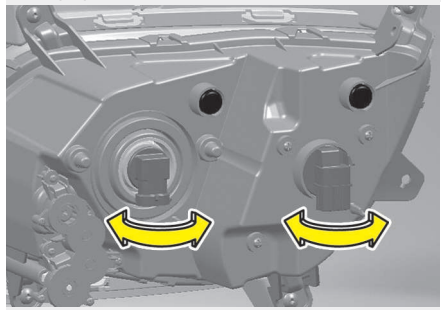
1. Pull the wheel guard down by rotating the screws.
2. Reach your hand into the back of the front bumper.
3. Disconnect the power connector from the socket.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:33 PM Page 97

■ Fog light ■ DRL

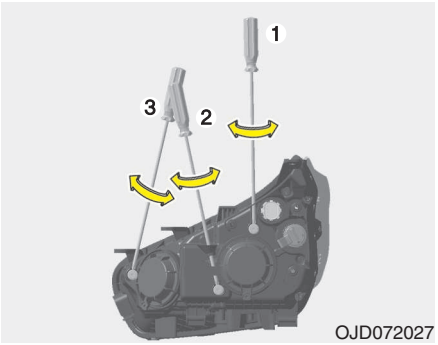


■ Fog light+DRL (Bulb type)



OJD073067/OJD073068/OJD073069

4. Remove the bulb-socket from the housing by turning the socket counter clockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the housing.
5. Install the new bulb-socket into the housing by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the housing. Push the socket into the housing and turn the socket clockwise.
6. Connect the power connector to the socket.



OJD072027

Headlight and front fog light aiming (for Europe)

Headlight aiming

Without AFLS

1. Inflate the tyres to the specified pressure and remove any loads from the vehicle except the driver, spare tyre, and tools.
2. The vehicle should be placed on a flat floor.
3. Draw vertical lines (Vertical lines passing through respective head lamp centres) and a horizontal line (Horizontal line passing through centre of head lamps) on the screen.
4. With the head lamp and battery in normal condition, aim the head lamps so the brightest portion falls on the horizontal and vertical lines.
5. To aim the low beam left or right, turn the driver (1) clockwise or counterclockwise. To aim the low beam up or down, turn the driver (2) clockwise or counterclockwise.

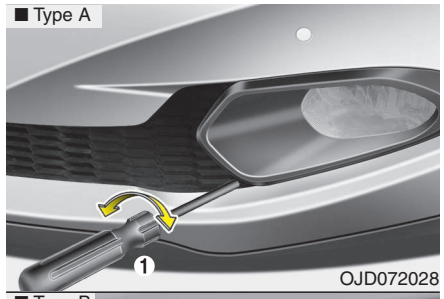
   To aim the high beam up or down, turn the driver (3) clockwise or counterclockwise.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:33 PM Page 98

With AFLS

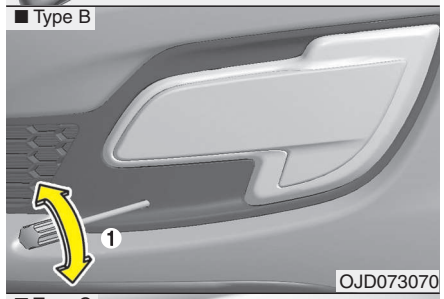
1. Turn off the engine
2. Turn the light switch to the low beam position.
3. Position the tyres straight ahead with the steering wheel.
4. Turn on the engine.
5. Inflate the tyres to the specified pressure and remove any loads from the vehicle except the driver, spare tyre, and tools.
6. The vehicle should be placed on a flat floor.
7. Draw vertical lines (Vertical lines passing through respective head lamp centres) and a horizontal line (Horizontal line passing through centre of head lamps) on the screen.
8. With the head lamp and battery in normal condition, aim the head lamps so the brightest portion falls on the horizontal and vertical lines.
9. To aim the low beam left or right, turn the driver (1) clockwise or counterclockwise. To aim the low beam up or down, turn the driver (2) clockwise or counterclockwise. To aim the high beam up or down, turn the driver (3) clockwise or counterclockwise.

■ Type A



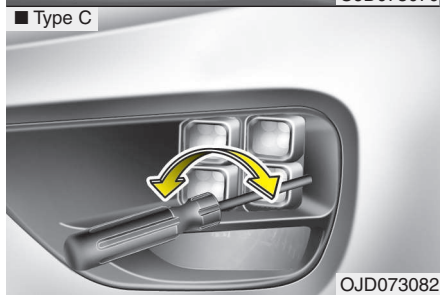
OJD072028

■ Type B



OJD073070

■ Type C



OJD073082

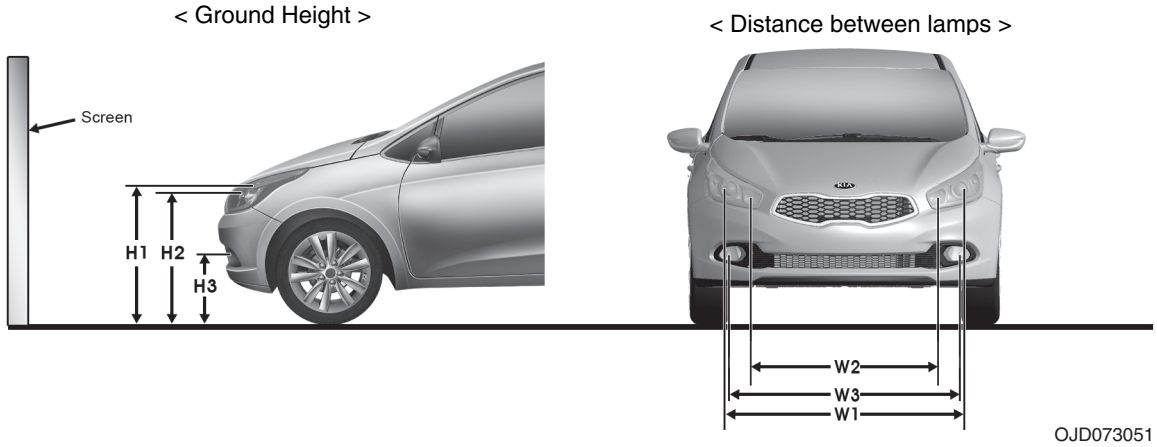
Front fog light aiming

The front fog lamp can be aimed as the same manner of the head lamps aiming.

With the front fog lamps and battery normal condition, aim the front fog lamps. To aim the front fog lamp up or down, turn the driver (1) clockwise or counterclockwise.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:33 PM Page 99

Aiming point



H1 : Height between the head lamp bulb centre and ground (Low beam)
H2 : Height between the head lamp bulb centre and ground (High beam)
H3 : Height between the fog lamp bulb centre and ground
W1 : Distance between the two head lamp bulbs centres (Low beam)
W2 : Distance between the two head lamp bulbs centres (High beam)
W3 : Distance between the two fog lamp bulbs centres

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:33 PM Page 100

■ 5 Door and Wagon (for GDI, MPI)

Unit: mm (in)

Vehicle condition	H1		H2	H3		W1		W2	W3	
	Without AFLS	With AFLS		With DRL	Without DRL	Without AFLS	With AFLS		With DRL	Without DRL
Without driver	689 (27.1)	687 (27.0)	646 (25.4)	340 (13.4)	342 (13.5)	1,300 (51.2)	1,299 (51.1)	1,049 (41.3)	1,316 (51.8)	1,306 (51.4)
With driver	680 (26.8)	678 (26.7)	637 (25.1)	331 (13.0)	333 (13.1)					

■ 3 Door

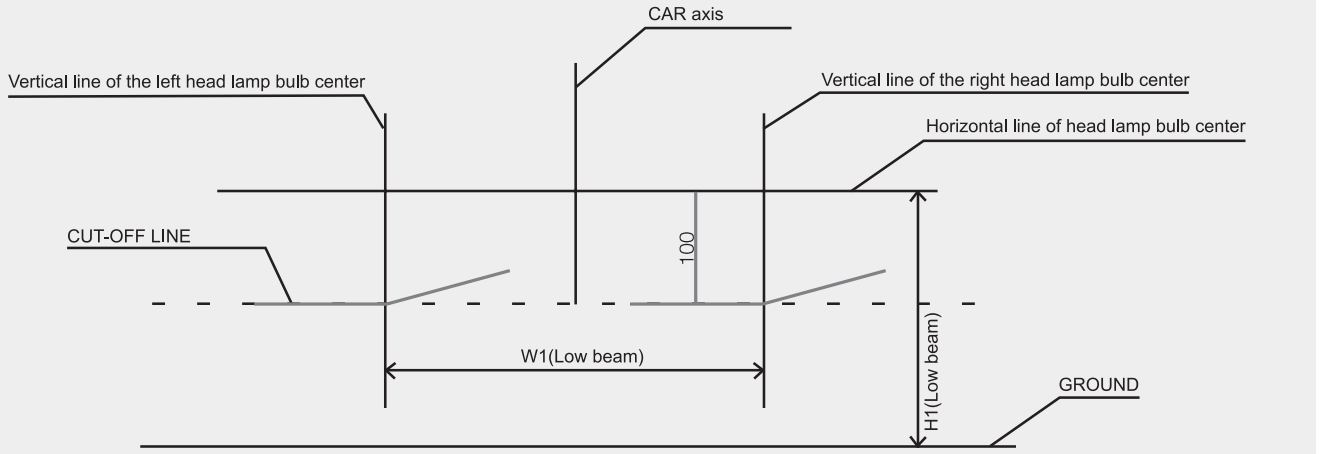
Vehicle condition	H1	H2	H3		W1	W2	W3	
			FOG	FOG + DRL			FOG	FOG + DRL
Without driver	690 (27.2)	646 (25.4)	360 (14.2)	365 (14.4)	1,300 (51.2)	1,049 (41.3)	1,320 (51.9)	1,200 (47.2)
With driver	683 (26.9)	637 (25.1)	353 (13.9)	358 (14.1)				

■ 3 and 5 Door (for T-GDI)

Vehicle condition	H1	H2	H3	W1	W2	W3
Without driver	687 (27.0)	643 (25.3)	308 (12.1)	1,300 (51.2)	1,049 (41.3)	1,308 (51.5)
With driver	680 (26.8)	636 (25.0)	301 (11.9)			

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:33 PM Page 101

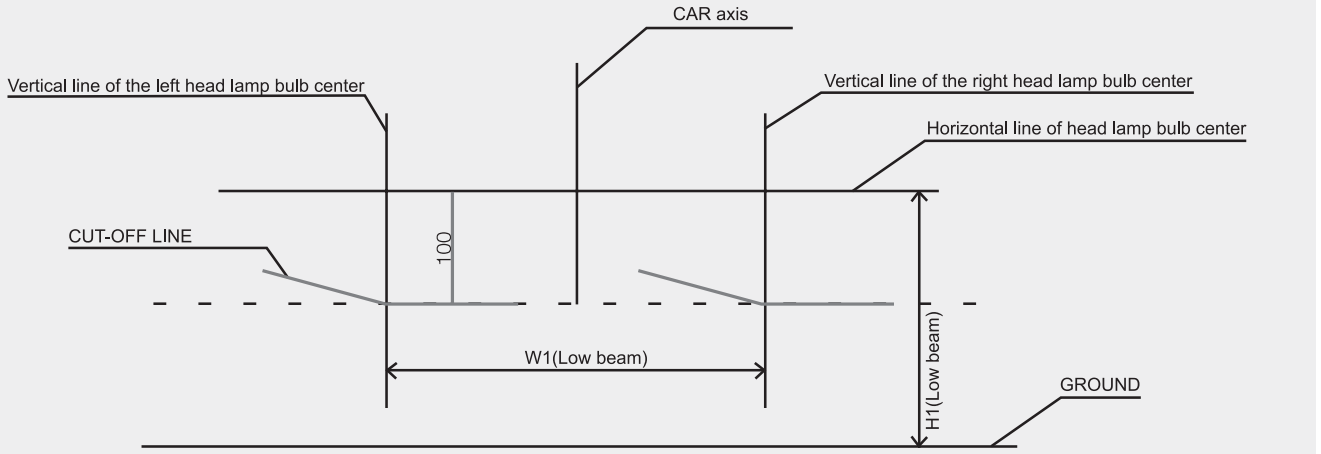
■ Based on 10m screen



Head lamp low beam (driver's side)

1. Turn the low beam on without driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the cut-off line shown in the picture.
3. When aiming the low beam, vertical aiming should be adjusted after adjusting the horizontal aiming.
4. If head lamp levelling device is equipped, adjust the head lamp levelling device switch with 0 positions.

■ Based on 10m screen

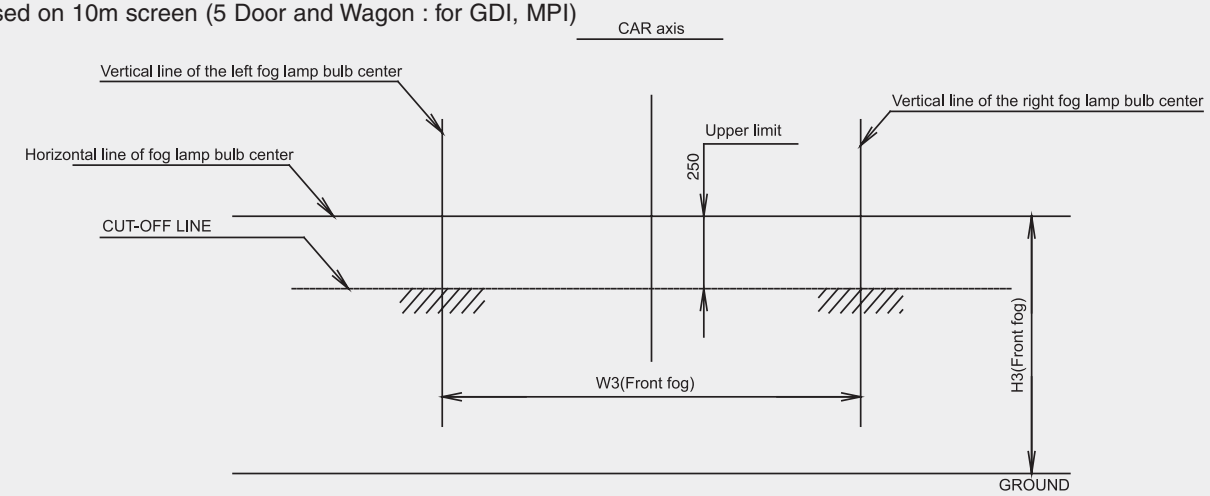


Head lamp low beam (front passenger's side)

1. Turn the low beam on without driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the cut-off line shown in the picture.
3. When aiming the low beam, vertical aiming should be adjusted after adjusting the horizontal aiming.
4. If head lamp levelling device is equipped, adjust the head lamp levelling device switch with 0 positions.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:33 PM Page 103

■ Based on 10m screen (5 Door and Wagon : for GDI, MPI)

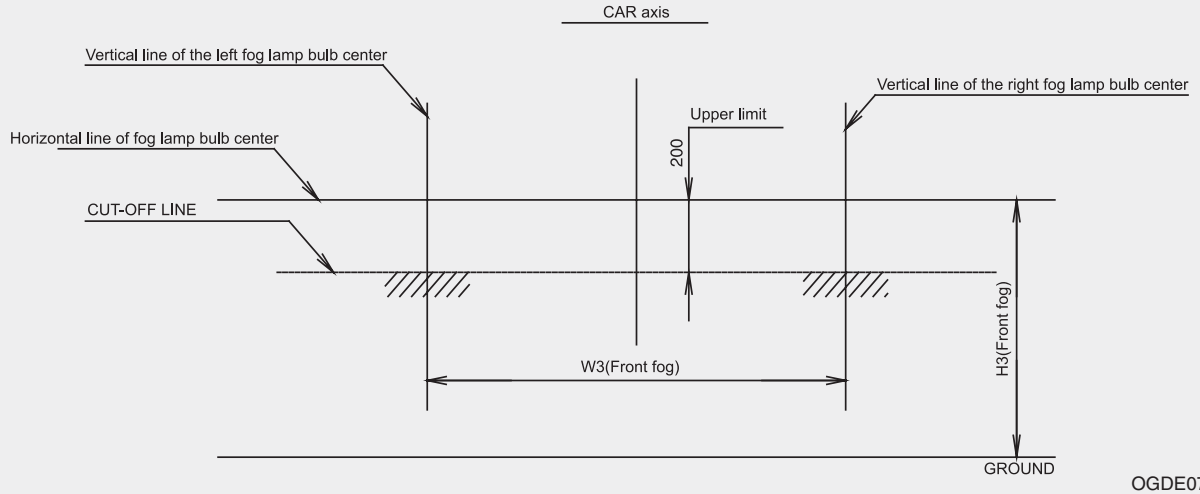


Front fog light

1. Turn the front fog lamp on without the driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the allowable range (shaded region).

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:33 PM Page 104

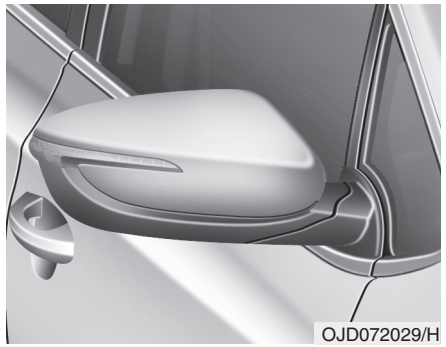
■ Based on 10m screen (3 Door : for GDI, MPI / 3 and 5 Door : for T-GDI)



Front fog light

1. Turn the front fog lamp on without the driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the allowable range (shaded region).

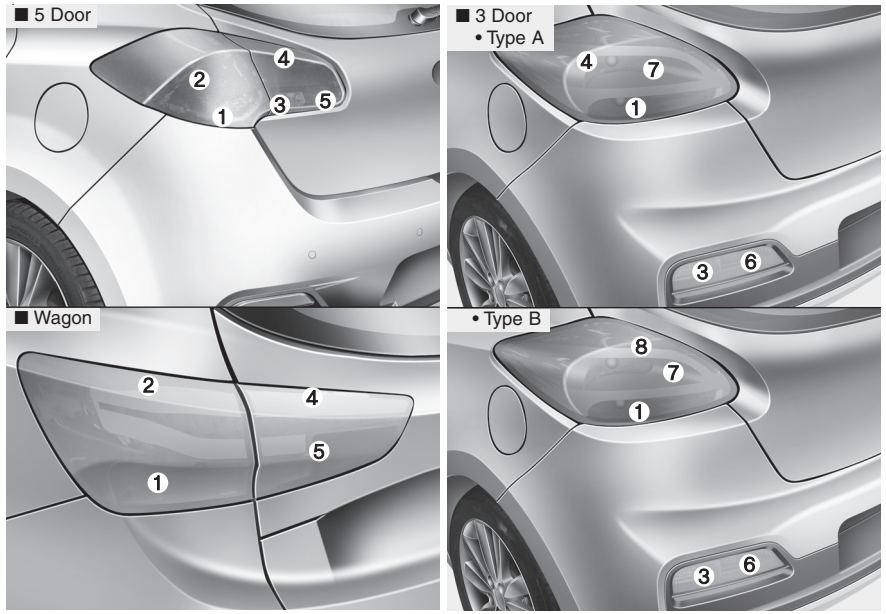
JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:33 PM Page 105



OJD072029/H

Side repeater light bulb replacement

If the light bulb does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

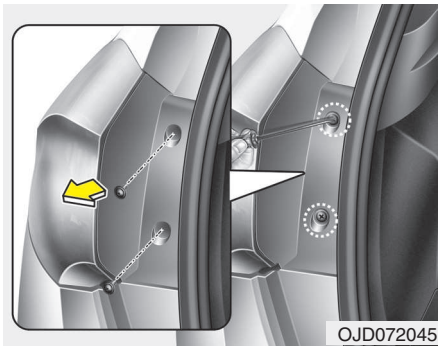


OJD072030/OJD072063/OJD073072/OJD073072

Rear combination light bulb replacement

(1) Rear turn signal light
(2) Stop/tail light
(3) Back-up light (for 3 Door and 5 Door)
(4) Tail light or stop/tail light (for LED type)
(5) Rear fog light (for 5 Door), Rear fog light (Driver's side) or back-up light (Passenger's side), (for wagon)
(6) Rear fog light (for 3 Door)
(7) Stop light (for 3 Door)
(8) Tail light (for 3 Door)

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:33 PM Page 106

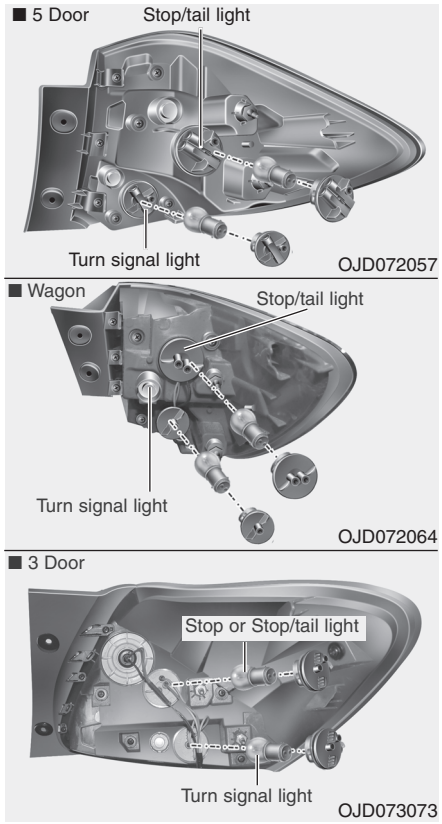


❈ The actual rear combination lamp shape in the vehicle may differ from illustration.

Outside light

Rear turn signal light and stop/tail light

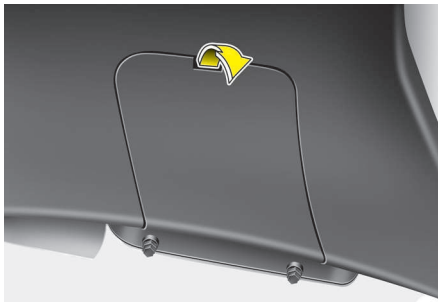
1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the tailgate.
3. Loosen the light assembly retaining screws with a cross-tip screwdriver.
4. Remove the rear combination light assembly from the body of the vehicle.



5. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
6. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
7. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
8. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
9. Reinstall the light assembly to the body of the vehicle.

Stop and tail light or tail light (LED type)

If the light does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.



OJD072047

Inside light (5 Door and Wagon)

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the tailgate.
3. Remove the service cover using a flat-blade screwdriver.



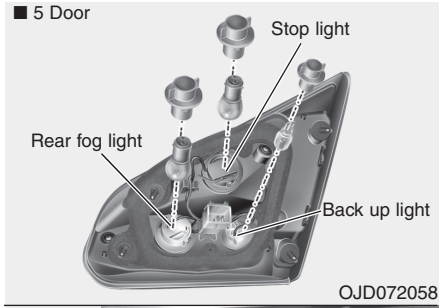
OJD072048

※ These below steps (4~6) only for the 5 Door vehicle.

4. Loosen the retaining nuts.
5. Disconnect the power connector.
6. Remove the rear combination light assembly from the body of the vehicle.

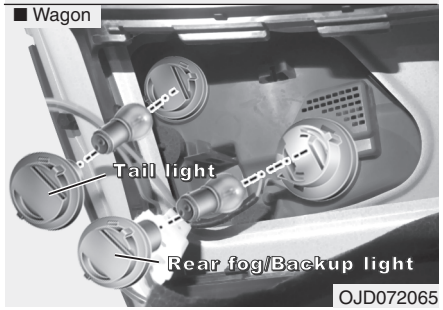
JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:34 PM Page 108

■ 5 Door



OJD072058

■ Wagon



OJD072065

❈ Rear fog light is located only on the driver's side (for wagon)

Tail light or tail and stop light (Bulb type)

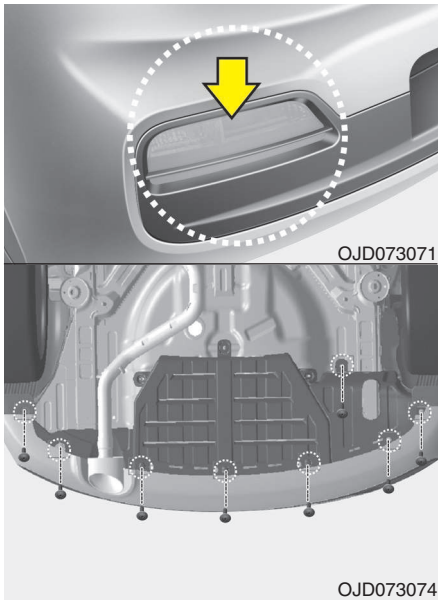
7. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
8. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counter-clockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
9. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
10. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
11. Install the service cover by putting it into the service hole.

Back-up light and rear fog light (5 Door and Wagon) (if equipped)

7. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
8. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
9. Insert a new bulb into the socket.
10. Install the socket into the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots on the assembly and turning the socket clockwise.
11. Reinstall the light assembly to the body of the vehicle

❈ Rear fog light is located only on the driver's side. (for wagon)

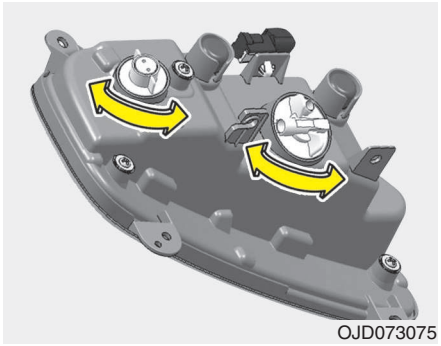
JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:34 PM Page 109


OJD073071

OJD073074

Rear fog light (if equipped)

1. Remove the under cover by rotating the screws.
2. Reach your hand into the back of the rear bumper.
3. Disconnect the power connector.
4. Remove the bulb-socket from the housing by turning the socket counter clockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the housing.


OJD073075

5. Install the new bulb-socket into the housing by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the housing.
   Push the socket into the housing and turn the socket clockwise.
6. Connect the power connector.
7. Reinstall the rear under cover.

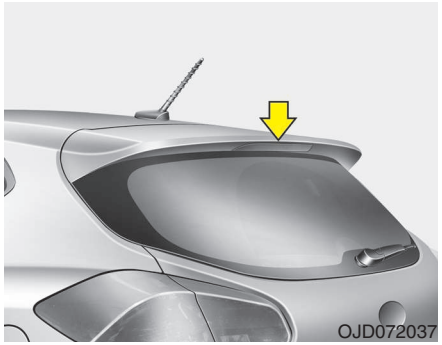
✻ NOTICE

Rear fog light is only on the driver's side (5 door, if equipped).

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:34 PM Page 110

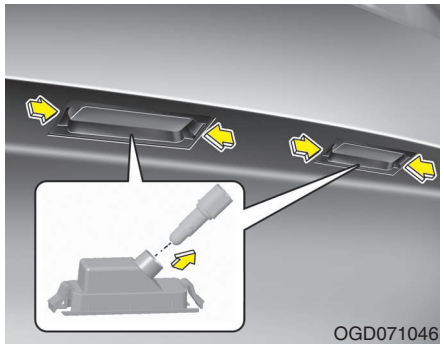
Tail light or stop and tail light (LED type)

If the light does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.



High mounted stop light bulb replacement

If the light does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

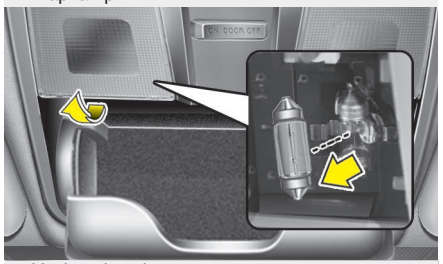


License plate light bulb replacement

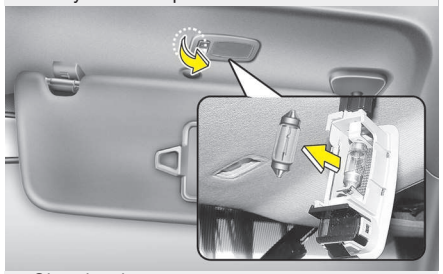
1. Turn off the engine.
2. Remove the bulb assembly by pressing the tabs.
3. Remove the socket by turning it counterclockwise.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
5. Install a new bulb.
6. Reinstall the bulb assembly securely with the retaining screws.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:34 PM Page 111

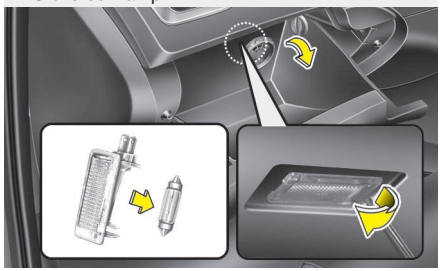
■ Map lamp



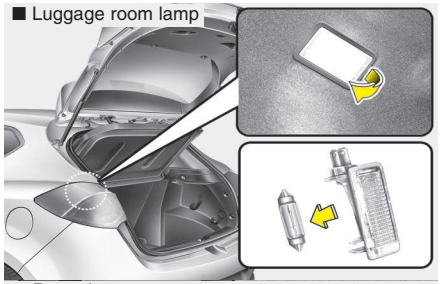
■ Vanity mirror lamp



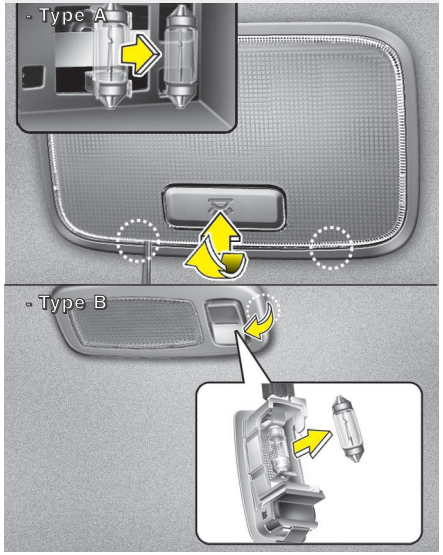
■ Glove box lamp



■ Luggage room lamp



■ Room lamp



OGD071039/OTD079035/H/OJD072043/H/OJD072038/OGDE071057/OGD071038

Interior light bulb replacement

Map lamp, vanity mirror lamp, room lamp, luggage room lamp and glove box lamp

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens from the interior light housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

⚠ WARNING

Prior to working on the interior lights, ensure that the light is off to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens tabs with the interior light housing notches and snap the lens into place.

⚠ CAUTION

Be careful not to dirt or damage lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:34 PM Page 112

APPEARANCE CARE

Exterior care

Exterior general caution

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

Finish maintenance

Washing

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Ensure drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution and similar deposits can damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.

Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits.

A mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces, may be used.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.***
- ***Be careful when washing the side windows of your vehicle. Especially, with high-pressure water, water may leak through the windows and wet the interior.***
- ***To prevent damage to the plastic parts and lamps, do not clean with chemical solvents or strong detergents.***

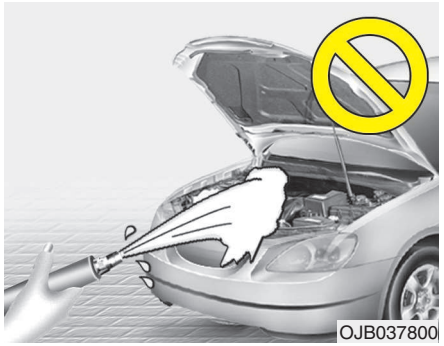
⚠ WARNING - Wet brakes

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.

High-pressure washing

- When using high-pressure washers, make sure to maintain sufficient distance from the vehicle.
  Insufficient clearance or excessive pressure can lead to component damage or water penetration.
- Do not spray the camera, sensors or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to not operate normally.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or plastic covers) or connectors as they may be damaged if they come into contact with high pressure water.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:34 PM Page 113



⚠ CAUTION

- ***Water washing in the engine compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the engine compartment.***
- ***Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components and air duct inside the vehicle as this may damage them.***

Waxing

Wax the vehicle when water will no longer bead on the paint.

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.

Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover will usually strip the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Wiping dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.***
- ***Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminum parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discoloration or paint deterioration.***

Finish damage repair

Deep scratches or stone chips in the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal will quickly rust and may develop into a major repair expense.

✻ NOTICE

If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, be sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:34 PM Page 114

Bright-metal maintenance

- To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
- To protect the surfaces of bright-metal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.
- During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

Underbody maintenance

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting can occur on underbody parts such as the fuel lines, frame, floor pan and exhaust system, even though they have been treated with rust protection.

Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with lukewarm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter. Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that should not be allowed to clog with dirt; trapped water in these areas can cause rusting.

⚠ WARNING

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:34 PM Page 115

Aluminum wheel maintenance

The aluminum wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminum wheels. They may scratch or damage the finish.
- Clean the wheel when it has cooled.
- Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on salted roads. This helps prevent corrosion.
- Avoid washing the wheels with high-speed car wash brushes.
- Do not use any alkaline or acid detergent. It may damage and corrode the aluminum wheels coated with a clear protective finish.

Corrosion protection

Protecting your vehicle from corrosion

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, we produce cars of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance is also required.

Common causes of corrosion

The most common causes of corrosion on your car are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the car.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

High-corrosion areas

If you live in an area where your car is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

Moisture breeds corrosion

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the car surfaces by moisture that is slow to evaporate.

Mud is particularly corrosive because it is slow to dry and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain the moisture and promote corrosion.

High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed. For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your car clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the car.

To help prevent corrosion

You can help prevent corrosion from getting started by observing the following:

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:34 PM Page 116

Keep your car clean

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your car clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the car is particularly important.

- If you live in a high-corrosion area — where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc.—, you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your car at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.
- When cleaning underneath the car, give particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.
- When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

Keep your garage dry

Don't park your car in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your car in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

Keep paint and trim in good condition

Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

Bird droppings : Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

Don't neglect the interior

Moisture can collect under the floor mats and carpeting to cause corrosion. Check under the mats periodically to be sure the carpeting is dry. Use particular care if you carry fertilizers, cleaning materials or chemicals in the car.

These should be carried only in proper containers and any spills or leaks should be cleaned up, flushed with clean water and thoroughly dried.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:34 PM Page 117

Interior care

Interior general precautions

Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately.

See the instructions that follow for the proper way to clean vinyl.

⚠ CAUTION

Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.

⚠ CAUTION

When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/alkaline detergents, the colour of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.

Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim

Vinyl

Remove dust and loose dirt from vinyl with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean vinyl surfaces with a vinyl cleaner.

Fabric

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If fresh spots do not receive immediate attention, the fabric can be stained and its colour can be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties can be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

⚠ CAUTION

Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.

Cleaning the lap/shoulder belt webbing

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap. Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken it.

Cleaning the interior window glass

If the interior glass surfaces of the vehicle become fogged (that is, covered with an oily, greasy or waxy film), they should be cleaned with glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage to the rear window defroster grid.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:34 PM Page 118

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

The emission control system of your vehicle is covered by a written limited warranty. Please see the warranty information contained in the Warranty & Maintenance book in your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with an emission control system to meet all emission regulations.

There are three emission control systems which are as follows.

(1) Crankcase emission control system
(2) Evaporative emission control system
(3) Exhaust emission control system

In order to assure the proper function of the emission control systems, it is recommended that you have your car inspected and maintained by an authorised Kia dealer in accordance with the maintenance schedule.

Caution for the Inspection and Maintenance Test (With Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system)

- **To prevent the vehicle from misfiring during dynamometer testing, turn the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system off by pressing the ESC switch.**
- **After dynamometer testing is completed, turn the ESC system back on by pressing the ESC switch again.**

1. Crankcase emission control system

The positive crankcase ventilation system is employed to prevent air pollution caused by blow-by gases being emitted from the crankcase. This system supplies fresh filtered air to the crankcase through the air intake hose. Inside the crankcase, the fresh air mixes with blow-by gases, which then pass through the PCV valve into the induction system.

2. Evaporative emission control System

The Evaporative Emission Control System is designed to prevent fuel vapours from escaping into the atmosphere.

Canister

Fuel vapours generated inside the fuel tank are absorbed and stored in the onboard canister. When the engine is running, the fuel vapours absorbed in the canister are drawn into the surge tank through the purge control solenoid valve.

Purge Control Solenoid Valve (PCSV)

The purge control solenoid valve is controlled by the Engine Control Module (ECM); when the engine coolant temperature is low during idling, the PCSV closes so that evaporated fuel is not taken into the engine. After the engine warms-up during ordinary driving, the PCSV opens to introduce evaporated fuel to the engine.

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:34 PM Page 119

3. Exhaust emission control system

The Exhaust Emission Control System is a highly effective system which controls exhaust emissions whilst maintaining good vehicle performance.

Vehicle modifications

This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations.

In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.

- If you use unauthorised electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge or fire. For your safety, do not use unauthorised electric devices.

Engine exhaust gas precautions (carbon monoxide)

- Carbon monoxide can be present with other exhaust fumes. Therefore, if you smell exhaust fumes of any kind inside your vehicle, have it inspected and repaired immediately. If you ever suspect exhaust fumes are coming into your vehicle, drive it only with all the windows fully open. Have your vehicle checked and repaired immediately.

⚠ WARNING - Exhaust

Engine exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide (CO). Though colourless and odourless, it is dangerous and could be lethal if inhaled. Follow the instructions following to avoid CO poisoning.

- Do not operate the engine in confined or closed areas (such as garages) any more than what is necessary to move the vehicle in or out of the area.
- When the vehicle is stopped in an open area for more than a short time with the engine running, adjust the ventilation system (as needed) to draw outside air into the vehicle.
- Never sit in a parked or stopped vehicle for any extended time with the engine running.
- When the engine stalls or fails to start, excessive attempts to restart the engine may cause damage to the emission control system.

Operating precautions for catalytic converters (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING - Fire

- **A hot exhaust system can ignite flammable items under your vehicle. Do not park, idle, or drive the vehicle over or near flammable objects, such as dry grass, paper, leaves, etc.**
- **The exhaust system and catalytic system are very hot whilst the engine is running or immediately after the engine is turned off. Keep away from the exhaust system and catalytic, you may get burned.**

  Also, do not remove the heat sink around the exhaust system, do not seal the bottom of the vehicle or do not coat the vehicle for corrosion control. It may present a fire risk under certain conditions.

Your vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter emission control device.

Therefore, the following precautions must be observed:

- Make sure to refuel your vehicle according to the "Fuel requirements" suggested in section 1.
- Do not operate the vehicle when there are signs of engine malfunction, such as misfire or a noticeable loss of performance.
- Do not misuse or abuse the engine. Examples of misuse are coasting with the ignition off and descending steep grades in gear with the ignition off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle speed for extended periods (5 minutes or more).
- Do not modify or tamper with any part of the engine or emission control system. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.
- Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

Failure to observe these precautions could result in damage to the catalytic converter and to your vehicle. Additionally, such actions could void your warranties.

Diesel Particulate Filter (if equipped)

The Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system removes the soot emitted from the vehicle.

Unlike a disposable air filter, the DPF system automatically burns (oxidizes) and removes the accumulated soot according to the driving condition. In other words, the active burning by engine control system and high exhaust gas temperature caused by normal/high driving condition burns and removes the accumulated soot.

However, if the vehicle continues to be driven at low speed for long time, the accumulated soot may not be automatically removed because of low exhaust gas temperature. In this particular case, the amount of soot is out of detection limit, the soot oxidation process by engine control system may not happen and the malfunction indicator light may blink.

When the malfunction indicator light blinks, it may stop blinking by driving the vehicle at more than 60km/h (37 mph) or at more than second gear with 1500 ~ 2000 engine rpm for a certain time (for about 25 minutes).

JD RHD 7.QXP 4/14/2015 6:34 PM Page 121

If the malfunction indicator light continues to be blinked in spite of the procedure, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

If you continue to drive with the malfunction indicator light blinking for a long time, the DPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can be worsen.

⚠ CAUTION - Diesel Fuel (if equipped with DPF)

It is recommended to use the regulated automotive diesel fuel for diesel vehicle equipped with the DPF system.

If you use diesel fuel including high sulfur (more than 50 ppm sulfur) and unspecified additives, it can cause the DPF system to be damaged and white smoke can be emitted.

JD RHD 8.QXP 2/17/2015 10:27 AM Page 1

Specifications & Consumer information

Dimensions 8-2
Engine 8-3
Air conditioning system. 8-4
Weight and volume 8-5
Bulb wattage. 8-6
Tyres and wheels 8-7
Recommended lubricants and capacities 8-8
• Recommended SAE viscosity number 8-10
Vehicle identification number (VIN) 8-11
Vehicle certification label 8-11
Tyre specification and pressure label. 8-12
Engine number. 8-12
Air conditioner compressor label. 8-12
Refrigerant label 8-13
Declaration of conformity. 8-13

JD RHD 8.QXP 2/17/2015 10:27 AM Page 2

DIMENSIONS

Item			mm (in)		
			3 Door	5 Door	Wagon
Overall length			4,310 (169.7)	4,310 (169.7)	4,505 (177.4)
Overall width			1,780 (70.1) 2,035 (80.1) *1	1,780 (70.1) 2,035 (80.1) *1	1,780 (70.1) 2,035 (80.1) *1
Overall height	Except Russia		1,430 (56.3) 1,425 (56.1) *2	1,470 (57.9) 1,465 (57.7) *2	1,485 (58.5) 1,480 (58.3) *2
	For Russia		1,440 (56.7)	1,480 (58.3)	1,495 (58.9)
Front tread	195/65R15	Steel wheel	1,563 (61.5)	1,563 (61.5)	1,563 (61.5)
	205/55R16	Steel wheel	1,553 (61.1)	1,553 (61.1)	1,553 (61.1)
		Aluminum wheel	1,555 (61.2)	1,555 (61.2)	1,555 (61.2)
	225/45R17	Aluminum wheel	1,549 (61.0)	1,549 (61.0)	1,549 (61.0)
	225/40R18	Aluminum wheel	1,545 (60.8)	1,545 (60.8)	-
Rear tread	195/65R15	Steel wheel	1,571 (61.9)	1,571 (61.9)	1,571 (61.9)
	205/55R16	Steel wheel	1,561 (61.5)	1,561 (61.5)	1,561 (61.5)
		Aluminum wheel	1,563 (61.5)	1,563 (61.5)	1,563 (61.5)
	225/45R17	Aluminum wheel	1,557 (61.3)	1,557 (61.3)	1,557 (61.3)
	225/40ZR18	Aluminum wheel	1,553 (61.1)	1,553 (61.1)	-
Wheelbase			2,650 (104.3)		

*1 : Width including outside mirrors (except T-GDI engine)

*2 : Emission Package

JD RHD 8.QXP 2/17/2015 10:27 AM Page 3

ENGINE

Item		Petrol 1.4	Petrol 1.6	Diesel 1.4	Diesel 1.6
Displacement	cc (cu. in)	1,396 (85.19)	1,591 (97.09)	1,396 (85.12)	1,582 (96.53)
Bore x Stroke	mm (in.)	77x74.99 (3.03x2.95)	77x85.44 (3.03x3.36)	75x79 (2.95x3.11)	77.2x84.5 (3.03x3.32)
Firing order		1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2
No. of cylinders		4, In-line	4, In-line	4, In-line	4, In-line

JD RHD 8.QXP 2/17/2015 10:27 AM Page 4

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM (FOR VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH R-1234yf)

For vehicles equipped with R-1234yf *

Item	Weight or Volume	Classification
Refrigerant	500±25g	R-1234yf
Compressor lubricant	150±10cc	PAG (FD46XG)

For vehicles equipped with R-134a *

Item	Weight or Volume	Classification
Refrigerant	500±25g	R-134a
Compressor lubricant	150±10cc	PAG (FD46XG)

*: Your vehicle is filled with R-134a or R-1234yf according to the regulation in your country at the time of producing.
You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied your vehicle at the label inside of bonnet.
Refer to chapter 8 for more detail location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

JD RHD 8.QXP 2/17/2015 10:27 AM Page 5

WEIGHT AND VOLUME

Item			Petrol 1.4L	Petrol 1.6L (MPI/GDI)	Petrol 1.6L (T-GDI)	Diesel 1.4L	Diesel 1.6L
Gross vehicle weight kg (lbs.)	M/T	5 Door	1,820 (4,012)	1,820 (4,012)	1,870 (4,123)	1,910 (4,211)	1,920 (4,232)
		3 Door			1,850 (4,079)		
		Wagon			-		
	A/T	5 Door	-	1,850 (4,079)	-	-	1,940 (4,277)
		3 Door					
		Wagon					
	DCT	5 Door	-	1,840 (4,057)	-	-	-
		3 Door					
		Wagon		1,850 (4,079)			
Luggage volume *l* (cu ft)		5 Door	Min. : 380 (13.42) Max. 1,318 (46.54)				
		3 Door	Min. : 380 (13.42) Max. 1,225 (42.26)				
		Wagon	Min : 528 (18.65), Max. 1,642 (57.99)				

M/T : Manual transaxle
A/T : Automatic transaxle
DCT : Double clutch transmission
Min. : Behind rear seat to upper edge of the seat back.
Max. : Behind front seat to roof.

JD RHD 8.QXP 2/17/2015 10:27 AM Page 6

BULB WATTAGE

Light Bulb			5 Door and 3 Door		Wagon	
			Wattage	Bulb type	Wattage	Bulb type
Front	Headlights	Low	55 or 35 (AFLS with HID)	H7LL or D1S*	55 or 35 (AFLS with HID)	H7LL or D1S*
		High	55	H7LL	55	H7LL
	Static bending light*		55	H7LL	55	H7LL
	Daytime running light		21/LED	P21/5WXL/LED	21/LED	P21/5WXL/LED
	Daytime running light + Position lights*		LED	LED	LED	LED
	Front turn signal lights		21	PY21WLL	21	PY21WLL
	Position lights		5/LED	W5WLL/LED	5/LED	W5WLL/LED
	Side repeater lights		5	5W	5	5W
	Puddle lamps*		LED	LED	LED	LED
	Front fog lights		35	H8L	21	P21WL
Rear	Rear fog light		21	P21WL	21	P21WL
	Stop and tail lights		21/5 or LED	P21/5WL or LED	21/5 or LED	P21/5WL or LED
	Rear turn signal lights		21	P21WL	21	P21WL
	Tail light		5 or LED	P21/5WL or LED	5 or LED	P21WL or LED
	Back-up lights		16	W16W	21	P21WL
	High mounted stop light		LED	LED	LED	LED
	License plate lights		5	W5W	5	W5W
Interior	Map lamps		8	FESTOON	8	FESTOON
	Room lamps		8	FESTOON	8	FESTOON
	Luggage lamp		8	FESTOON	8	FESTOON
	Glove box lamp		5	FESTOON	5	FESTOON
	Vanity mirror lamps		5	FESTOON	5	FESTOON

HID : High Intensity Discharge * : if equipped
AFLS : Adaptive Front-Lighting System

JD RHD 8.QXP 2/17/2015 10:27 AM Page 7

TYRES AND WHEELS

Item	Tyre size	Wheel size	Load Capacity		Speed capacity		Inflation pressure bar(psi, kPa)				Wheel lug nut torque Kgf·m (lb·ft, N·m)
							Normal load		Maximum load		
			LI *1	Kg	SS *2	Km/h	Front	Rear	Front	Rear	
Full size tyre	195/65R15*3	6.0J×15	91	615	H	210	2.5 (36,250)	2.5 (36,250)	2.5 (36,250)	2.5 (36,250)	9~11 (65~79, 88~107)
	195/65R15	6.0J×15	91	615	H	210	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	
	205/55R16	6.5J×16	91	615	H	210	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	
	225/45R17	7.0J×17	91	615	V	240	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	
	225/40ZR18	7.5J×18	92	630	Y	300	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	2.2 (32,220)	
Compact spare tyre	T125/80D15	4.0T×15	95	690	M	130	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	
	T125/80D16	4.0T×16	97	730	M	130	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	

*1 : Load Index

*2 : Speed Symbol

*3 : For eco dynamics trim

✻ NOTICE

We recommend that when replacing tyres, use the same originally supplied with the vehicles. If not, that affects driving performance.

JD RHD 8.QXP 2/17/2015 10:27 AM Page 8

RECOMMENDED LUBRICANTS AND CAPACITIES

To help achieve proper engine and powertrain performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality. The correct lubricants also help promote engine efficiency that results in improved fuel economy.

These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="3">Lubricant</th><th>Volume</th><th>Classification</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">Engine oil *1 *2
(drain and refill)
Recommends
Shell HELIX Motor oils</td><td rowspan="4">Petrol Engine</td><td>1.4 MPI</td><td rowspan="3">3.6 l (3.8 US qt.)</td><td rowspan="3">For Europe
API Service SL or SM, ACEA A5 or above
Except Europe
API Service SM, ILSAC GF-4 or above</td></tr>
<tr><td>1.6 MPI</td></tr>
<tr><td>1.6 GDI</td></tr>
<tr><td>1.6 T-GDI</td><td>4.5 l (4.75 US qt.)</td><td>ACEA A5 or above (5W-30)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Diesel Engine</td><td>with DPF *3</td><td>5.3 l (5.60 US qt.)</td><td>ACEA C2 or C3</td></tr>
<tr><td>without DPF *3</td><td>5.3 l (5.60 US qt.)</td><td>ACEA B4</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Manual transaxle fluid</td><td rowspan="2">Petrol Engine</td><td>MPI/GDI</td><td>1.8 l ~ 1.9 l
(1.90 ~ 2.01US qt.)</td><td rowspan="4">HK MTF(SK),
HD MTF(H.K.SHELL),
Kia Genuine transaxle fluid
(API GL-4, SAE 75W/85, TGO-7(MS 517-14)),
Consult an authorised Kia dealer for details.</td></tr>
<tr><td>T-GDI</td><td>1.9 l ~ 2.0 l
(2.01 ~ 2.11US qt.)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Diesel Engine</td><td>High</td><td rowspan="2">1.9 l ~ 2.0 l
(2.01 ~ 2.11 US qt.)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Low</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Automatic transaxle fluid</td><td>Petrol Engine</td><td>MPI/GDI</td><td>7.3 l (7.71 US qt.)</td><td rowspan="2">MICHANG ATF SP-IV
SK ATF SP-IV
NOCA ATF SP-IV
Kia genuine ATF SP-IV</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Diesel Engine</td><td>7.1 l (7.50 US qt.)</td></tr>
</table>

JD RHD 8.QXP 2/17/2015 10:27 AM Page 9

Lubricant		Volume	Classification
Double clutch transmission fluid	Petrol Engine	1.9 *l* ~ 2.0 *l* (2.01 ~ 2.11 US qt.)	HK SYN MTF(SK), HD SYN MTF(H.K.SHELL), GS PAO MTF (GS CALTEX), Kia Genuine transaxle fluid (API GL-4, SAE 75W/85), Consult an authorised Kia dealer for details.
Coolant	Petrol Engine	5.7~5.8 *l* (6.0~6.1 US qt.)	Mixture of antifreeze and distilled water (Ethylene glycol base coolant for aluminum radiator)
	Diesel Engine	6.7~6.9 *l* (7.1~7.3 US qt.)	
Brake/clutch fluid		0.7~0.8 *l* (0.7~0.8 US qt.)	FMVSS116 DOT-3 or DOT-4
Fuel		53 *l* (14.0 US gal.)	Refer to “Fuel requirements” in section 1

*1 Refer to the recommended SAE viscosity numbers on next page.

*2 Engine oils labeled Energy Conserving Oil are now available. Along with other additional benefits, they contribute to fuel economy by reducing the amount of fuel necessary to overcome engine friction. Often, these improvements are difficult to measure in everyday driving, but in a year’s time, they can offer significant cost and energy savings.

*3 Diesel Particulate Filter

Recommends Engine oil (For Europe)

Supplier	Product	
	Petrol Engine	Diesel Engine
Shell	HELIX ULTRA AH-E 5W-30	HELIX ULTRA AP 5W-30
	HELIX ULTRA 5W-40	

JD RHD 8.QXP 2/17/2015 10:27 AM Page 10

Recommended SAE viscosity number

⚠ CAUTION

Always be sure to clean the area around any filler plug, drain plug, or dipstick before checking or draining any lubricant. This is especially important in dusty or sandy areas and when the vehicle is used on unpaved roads. Cleaning the plug and dipstick areas will prevent dirt and grit from entering the engine and other mechanisms that could be damaged.

Engine oil viscosity (thickness) has an effect on fuel economy and cold weather operating (engine start and engine oil flowability). Lower viscosity engine oils can provide better fuel economy and cold weather performance, however, higher viscosity engine oils are required for satisfactory lubrication in hot weather. Using oils of any viscosity other than those recommended could result in engine damage.

When choosing an oil, consider the range of temperature your vehicle will be operated in before the next oil change. Proceed to select the recommended oil viscosity from the chart.

Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers

Temperature	°C	-30	-20	-10	0	10	20	30	40	50
	(°F)	-10	0	20	40	60	80	100	120	
Petrol Engine Oil (MPI/GDI - For Europe)		0W-40, 5W-20 *1,5W-30, 5W-40								
Petrol Engine Oil *2 (MPI/GDI - Except Europe)							20W-50			
							15W-40			
							10W-30			
		5W-20*3, 5W-30								
Petrol Engine Oil *4 (T-GDI)		5W-30, 5W-40								
Diesel Engine Oil							15W-40			
							10W-30			
							5W-30			
		0W-30								

*1 : If you use the engine oil of a viscosity grade SAE 5W-20, replace engine oil and filter after driving 15,000 km or 12 month with MPI engine (10,000 km or 6 month with GDI engine) in normal condition and replace engine oil and engine oil filter after driving 7,500 km or 6 month with MPI engine (5,000 km or 6 month with GDI engine) in severe condition.

*2 : For better fuel economy, it is recommended to use the engine oil of a viscosity grade SAE 5W-20,5W-30 (API SM / ILSAC GF 4 or above). However, if the engine oil is not available in your country, select the proper engine oil using the engine oil viscosity chart.

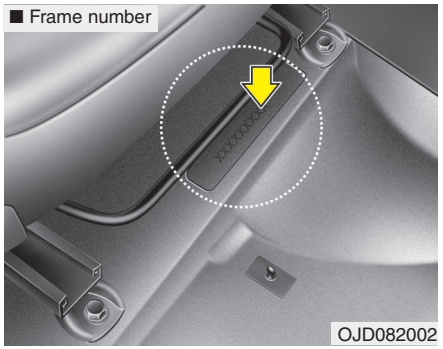
*3 : In Middle East, do not use the engine oil of viscosity grade SAE 5W-20.

*4 : For better fuel economy, it is recommended to use the engine oil of a viscosity grade SAE 5W-30 (ACEA A5 or above).

JD RHD 8.QXP 2/17/2015 10:27 AM Page 11

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)

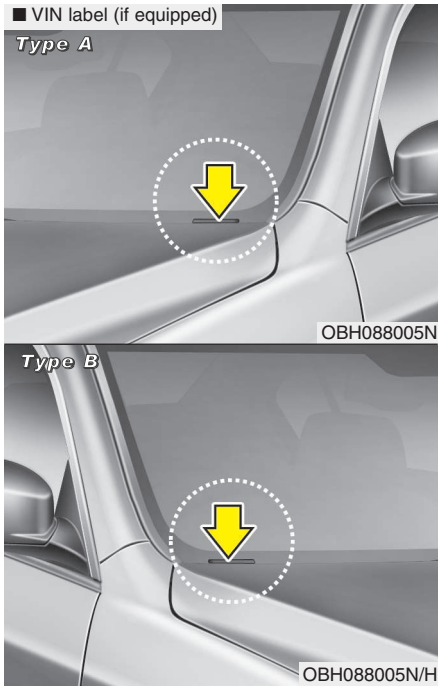
■ Frame number



The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your vehicle and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.

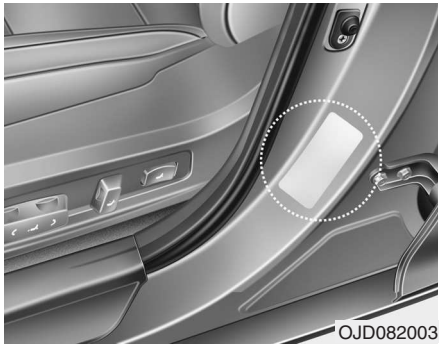
The number is punched on the floor under the driver's seat. To check the number, open the cover.

■ VIN label (if equipped)



The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the dashboard. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windscreen from outside.

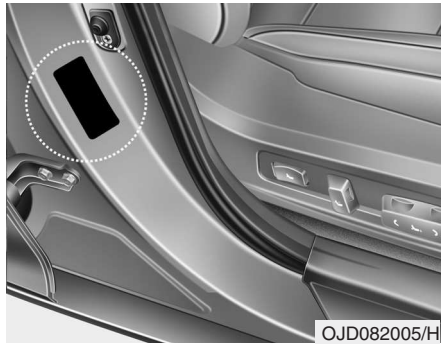
VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL



The vehicle certification label attached on the driver's (or front passenger's) side centre pillar gives the vehicle identification number (VIN).

JD RHD 8.QXP 2/17/2015 10:27 AM Page 12

TYRE SPECIFICATION AND PRESSURE LABEL

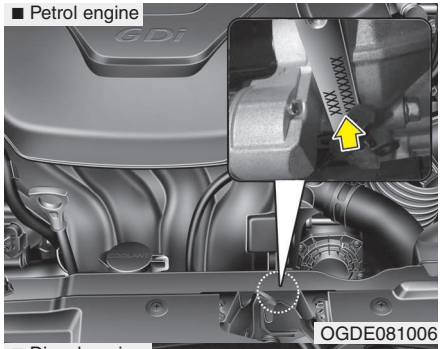

OJD082005/H

The tyres supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

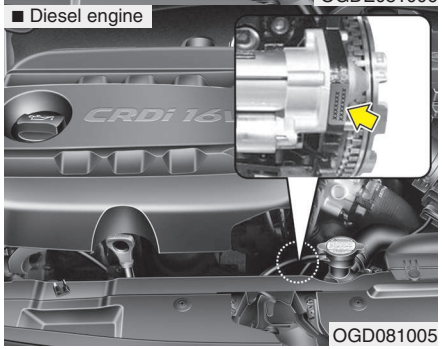
The tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar gives the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.

ENGINE NUMBER

■ Petrol engine

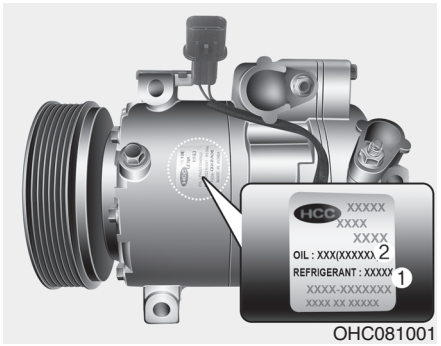

OGDE081006

■ Diesel engine


OGD081005

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown in the drawing.

AIR CONDITIONER COMPRESSOR LABEL

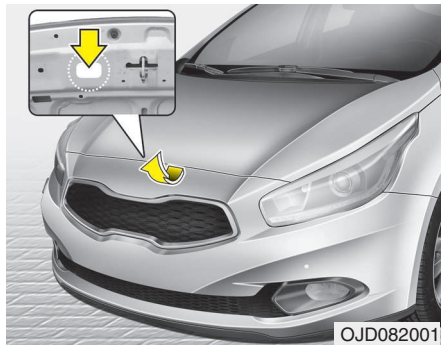


OHC081001

A compressor label informs you the type of compressor your vehicle is equipped with such as model, supplier part number, production number, refrigerant (1) and refrigerant oil (2).

JD RHD 8.QXP 2/17/2015 10:27 AM Page 13

REFRIGERANT LABEL



The refrigerant label is located on the underside of the bonnet.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

■ Example

CE 0678

CE0678

The radio frequency components of the vehicle comply with requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.

Further information including the manufacturer's declaration of conformity is available on Kia web site as follows;

http://www.kia-hotline.com

JD RHD Index.QXP 2/17/2015 12:03 PM Page 1

Index

JD RHD Index.QXP 2/17/2015 12:03 PM Page 2

A

Active ECO system 5-32
Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFLS) 4-118
Air bag warning label 3-65
Air bag warning light 3-45
Air bags 3-42
  Air bag warning label 3-65
  Air bag warning light 3-45
  Curtain air bag 3-56
  Driver's and passenger's front air bag 3-50
  Passenger’s front air bag ON/OFF indicator 3-46
  Passenger’s front air bag ON/OFF switch 3-52
  Side impact air bag 3-55
  SRS components and functions 3-47
Air cleaner 7-46
Air conditioner compressor label 8-12
Air conditioning system 8-4
Alarm system 4-14
Aiming 7-96
Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 5-41
Appearance care
  Exterior care 7-112
  Interior care 7-117
Armrest (Rear seat) 3-15
Ashtray 4-156
Audio remote control 4-173
Audio system 4-172
  Audio remote control 4-173
  Roof antenna 4-172
Auto defogging system 4-150
Auto light/AFLS position 4-113
Automatic climate control system 4-137
  Air conditioning 4-146
  Automatic heating and air conditioning 4-138
  Climate control air filter 4-147
  Manual heating and air conditioning 4-140
Automatic transaxle / Double clutch transmission . . 5-23
  DS mode 5-27
  Paddle shifter 5-28
  Shift lock system 5-29
  Sports mode 5-27
Automatic transaxle shift position indicator (Normal vision) 4-49
Automatic transaxle shift position indicator (Super vision) 4-65
Aux, USB and iPod 4-160

B

Barrier net 4-163
Battery 7-53
Battery replacement (Remote keyless entry) 4-9

JD RHD Index.QXP 2/17/2015 12:03 PM Page 3

Battery saver function 4-111
Before driving 5-4
Bonnet 4-28
Bottle holders 4-158
Brake system 5-33
Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 5-41
Electric parking brake (EPB) 5-37
Electronic stability control (ESC) 5-44
Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) 5-48
Hill-start assist control (HAC) 5-48
Power brakes 5-33
Parking brakes (Hand type) 5-35
Vehicle stability management (VSM) 5-47
Brakes/clutch fluid 7-43
Bulb replacement 7-91
Bulb wattage 8-6
Button start/stop, see engine start/stop button 5-9

C

Calender 4-90
Camera (Rear view) 4-110
Capacities (Lubricants) 8-8
Care
Exterior care 7-112
Interior care 7-117
Tyre care 7-56
Cargo area cover 4-162
Cargo security screen 4-166
Central door lock switch 4-19
Centre console storage 4-152
Certification label 8-11
Chains
Tyre chains 5-68
Changing tyres 6-10
Checking tyre inflation pressure 7-58
Child restraint system 3-31
ISOFIX system 3-37
Seat belt 3-34
Tether anchor system 3-36
Child-protector rear door lock 4-21
Cigarette lighter 4-155
Clean air 4-151
Climate control air filter 4-135, 4-147, 7-48
Clock 4-90
Clothes hanger 4-161
Combined instrument, see instrument cluster (Normal vision) 4-46
Combined instrument, see instrument cluster (Super vision) 4-59
Compact spare tyre 6-15
Compact spare tyre replacement 7-62
Cool box 4-153
Coolant 7-40

JD RHD Index.QXP 2/17/2015 12:03 PM Page 4

Cooling fluid, see engine coolant 7-41
Crankcase emission control system. 7-118
Cruise control system 5-51
Cup holder. 4-157
Curtain air bag 3-56

D

Dashboard illumination, see instrument panel illumination (Normal vision) 4-47
Dashboard illumination, see instrument panel illumination (Super vision) 4-61
Dashboard, see instrument cluster (Normal vision) . . 4-46
Dashboard, see instrument cluster (Super vision) . . . 4-59
Daytime running light (DRL) 4-116
Deadlocks. 4-20
Declaration of conformity 8-13
Defogging (Windscreen). 4-149
Defroster (Rear window) 4-127
Defrosting (Windscreen) 4-149
Dimensions. 8-2
Display illumination, see instrument panel illumination (Normal vision) 4-47
Display illumination, see instrument panel illumination (Super vision) 4-61
Displays, see instrument cluster (Normal vision) . . 4-46
Displays, see instrument cluster (Super vision) 4-59
Door locks 4-20
Central door lock switch 4-19
Child-protector rear door lock 4-21
Deadlocks. 4-20
Double clutch transmission shift indicator (Normal vision) 4-49
Double clutch transmission shift indicator (Super vision) 4-65
Drinks holders, see cup holders. 4-157
Driver position memory system. 3-8
Driver's and passenger's front air bag 3-50
Driving at night. 5-65
Driving in flooded areas 5-66
Driving in the rain 5-65
Driving information mode 4-68
Driving off-road 5-66
DS mode. 5-27

E

Economical operation. 5-62
EC Declaration of Conformity for Jack. 6-18
Electric chromic mirror (ECM) 4-42
Electric parking brake (EPB) 5-37
Electric power steering. 4-37
Electronic stability control (ESC) 5-44
Emergency commodity. 6-33
Emergency starting. 6-5
Jump starting 6-5

JD RHD Index.QXP 2/17/2015 12:03 PM Page 5

Push starting 6-7
Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) 5-48
Emergency whilst driving 6-3
Emission control system 7-118
Crankcase emission control system 7-118
Evaporative emission control System 7-118
Exhaust emission control system. 7-119
Engine 8-3
Engine compartment 2-6
Engine compartment panel fuse 7-70
Engine coolant. 7-40
Engine coolant temperature gauge (Normal vision) . . 4-48
Engine coolant temperature gauge (Super vision) . . 4-64
Engine number 8-12
Engine oil. 7-38
Engine overheats. 6-8
Engine start/stop button. 5-9
Engine will not start 6-4
Evaporative emission control System 7-118
Exhaust emission control system. 7-119
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items 7-35
Exterior care 7-112
Exterior features
Mounting bracket for roof carrier 4-169
Roof rack. 4-170
Exterior overview(front) 2-2
Exterior overview(rear) 2-3

F

Flat tyre (with spare tyre) 6-9
Changing tyres 6-10
Compact spare tyre 6-15
EC Declaration of Conformity for Jack. 6-18
Jack and tools 6-9
Jack label. 6-17
Removing and storing the spare tyre 6-10
Flat tyre (with Tyre Mobility Kit). 6-19
Flex steering wheel 4-40
Floor mat anchor(s) 4-161
Fluid
Brakes/clutch fluid 7-43
Washer fluid 7-44
Fog light (front). 4-116
Fog light (rear) 4-116
Folding the rear seat. 3-16
Front seat adjustment. 3-4
Fuel filler lid 4-30
Fuel filter 7-45
Fuel gauge (Normal vision) 4-48
Fuel gauge (Super vision). 4-62
Fuel requirements. 1-2
Diesel engine 1-4
Petrol engine 1-2
Fuse switch 7-70

JD RHD Index.QXP 2/17/2015 12:03 PM Page 6

Fuses 7-68
Engine compartment panel fuse 7-70
Fuse switch 7-70
Fuse/relay panel description 7-73
Inner panel fuse 7-69
Main fuse 7-71
Multi fuse 7-72

G

Gauge (Normal vision)
Engine coolant temperature gauge 4-48
Fuel gauge 4-48
Gauge (Super vision)
Engine coolant temperature gauge 4-64
Fuel gauge 4-62
Glove box 4-153
Glove box lamp 4-125

H

Hazard warning flasher 4-110
Hazardous driving conditions 5-64
Headlamp delay function 4-111
Headlight (Headlamp) welcome function 4-111
Headlight bulb replacement 7-92
Headlight levelling device 4-117
Headlight position 4-113
Headlight washer 4-122
Headrest(front) 3-9
Headrest(rear) 3-14
Heated steering wheel 4-38
High - beam operation 4-114
Hight adjustment (seat belt) 3-23
Highway driving 5-66
Hill-start assist control (HAC) 5-48
Horn 4-39
How to use this manual 1-2

I

Icy road warning 4-91
Indicators and warnings 4-79
Inside rearview mirror 4-42
Instrument cluster
LCD display information 4-73
Warning and indicators 4-79
Instrument cluster (Normal vision) 4-46
Automatic transaxle shift position indicator 4-49
Double clutch transmission shift indicator 4-50
Fuel gauge 4-48
Instrument panel illumination 4-47
Manual transaxle shift indicator 4-49
Odometer 4-51
Speed limiter indicator 4-51

JD RHD Index.QXP 2/17/2015 12:03 PM Page 7

Speedometer 4-47
Tachometer 4-47
Trip computer 4-51
User Settings 4-56
Instrument cluster (Super vision) 4-59
Automatic transaxle shift position indicator 4-65
Cluster display mode conversion 4-61
Double clutch transmission shift indicator 4-65
Engine torque gauge. 4-63
Fuel gauge 4-62
Instrument panel illumination 4-61
Manual transaxle shift indicator. 4-64
Odometer. 4-66
Speed limiter indicator. 4-66
Speedometer 4-62
Tachometer 4-61
Trip computer 4-67
Turbo boost pressure gauge. 4-63
Inner panel fuse. 7-69
Instrument panel illumination (Normal vision). . . . 4-46
Instrument panel illumination (Super vision) 4-59
Instrument panel overview 2-5
Interior care. 7-117
Interior features 4-155
Ashtray 4-156
Aux, USB and iPod. 4-160
Barrier net. 4-163
Bottle holder 4-158
Cargo area cover 4-162
Cargo security screen. 4-166
Cigarette lighter 4-155
Clothes hanger 4-161
Cup holder. 4-157
Floor mat anchor(s) 4-161
Luggage net (holder) 4-162
Luggage rail system 4-167
Power outlet 4-159
Shopping bag holder 4-168
Sunvisor. 4-158
Interior light 4-123
Glove box lamp. 4-125
Luggage room lamp 4-125
Map lamp 4-123
Room lamp 4-124
Vanity mirror lamp 4-124
Interior overview. 2-4
ISG (Idle stop and go) system 5-15
ISOFIX system 3-35

J

Jack and tools 6-9
Jack label. 6-17

JD RHD Index.QXP 2/17/2015 12:03 PM Page 8

Jump starting 6-5

K

Key positions 5-5
Keys 4-4

L

Label
Air bag warning label 3-65
Air conditioner compressor label 8-12
Refrigerant label. 8-13
Tyre sidewall labeling. 7-63
Tyre specification and pressure label 8-12
Vehicle certification label. 8-11
Lane Departure Warning System 5-59
Lane Departure Warning System Mode. 4-69
Lap/shoulder belt 3-23
LCD display information 4-73
LCD display warnings and indicators (instrument panel display). 4-90
Calender 4-90
Clock 4-90
Icy road warning 4-91
Outside ambient Temperature 4-90
LDWS (Lane Departure Warning System) 5-59
Light bulbs. 7-91
Lighting 4-111
AFLS (Adaptive Front Lighting System). 4-118
Auto light/AFLS position 4-113
Battery saver function 4-111
Daytime running light (DRL) 4-116
Front fog light 4-116
Headlamp delay function 4-111
Headlight (Headlamp) welcome function 4-111
Headlight levelling device 4-117
Headlight position. 4-113
High - beam operation 4-114
Position light position 4-112
Rear fog light. 4-116
Static bending light 4-112
Turn signals 4-115
Lubricants and capacities 8-8
Luggage net (holder) 4-162
Luggage rail system 4-167
Luggage room lamp 4-125
Luggage side tray 4-155
Luggage tray 4-154
Lumbar support (Automatic Seat) 3-7
Lumbar support (Manual seat). 3-5

JD RHD Index.QXP 2/17/2015 12:03 PM Page 9

M

Main fuse 7-71
Maintenance
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items 7-35
Maintenance services 7-6
Maintenance under severe usage conditions (except Europe, for Russia) 7-33
Maintenance under severe usage conditions (for Europe, except Russia) 7-21
Normal maintenance schedule (except Europe, for Russia) 7-23
Normal maintenance schedule (for Europe, except Russia) 7-12
Owner maintenance 7-9
Scheduled maintenance service 7-11
Tyre maintenance 7-62
Maintenance schedule 7-11
Maintenance under severe usage conditions (except Europe, for Russia) 7-33
Maintenance under severe usage conditions (for Europe, except Russia) 7-21
Normal maintenance schedule (except Europe, for Russia) 7-23
Normal maintenance schedule (for Europe, except Russia) 7-12
Maintenance services 7-6
Manual climate control system 4-128
Air conditioning 4-134
Climate control air filter 4-135
Heating and air conditioning 4-129
Manual transaxle 5-20
Manual transaxle shift indicator (Normal vision) . . 4-49
Manual transaxle shift indicator (Super vision) . . . 4-64
Map lamp 4-123
Mirrors 4-42
Day/night rearview mirror 4-42
Electric chromic mirror (ECM) 4-42
Inside rearview mirror 4-42
Outside rearview mirror 4-43
Moonroof, see panorama sunroof 4-33
Mounting bracket for roof carrier 4-169
Multi fuse 7-71

O

Odometer (Normal vision) 4-51
Odometer (Super vision) 4-66
Oil (Engine) 7-38
Outside ambient Temperature 4-90
Outside rearview mirror 4-43
Overheats 6-8
Owner maintenance 7-7

JD RHD Index.QXP 2/17/2015 12:03 PM Page 10

P

Paddle shifter 5-28
Panorama sunroof 4-33
Parking assist system 4-96
Parking brake-Hand type 7-44
Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF indicator 3-46
Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch 3-52
Position light position 4-112
Power brakes 5-33
Power outlet 4-159
Power window lock button 4-26
Pre-tensioner seat belt 3-25
Push starting 6-7

R

Rear combination light bulb replacement 7-105
Rear parking assist system 4-92
Rear seat 3-14
Rear view camera 4-110
Rear window wiper 4-122
Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures 7-56
Recommended lubricants and capacities 8-8
  Recommended SAE viscosity number 8-10
  Recommends Engine oil 8-9
Refrigerant label 8-13
Remote keyless entry
  Battery replacement 4-9
Remote keyless entry 4-6
Replacement light bulb 7-91
Road warning 6-2
Rocking the vehicle 5-64
Roof antenna 4-172
Room lamp 4-124
Roof rack 4-170

S

Scheduled maintenance service 7-11
  Maintenance under severe usage conditions (except Europe, for Russia) 7-33
  Maintenance under severe usage conditions (for Europe, except Russia) 7-21
  Normal maintenance schedule (except Europe, for Russia) 7-23
  Normal maintenance schedule (for Europe, except Russia) 7-12
Seat belts 3-20
  Hight adjustment 3-23
  Lap/shoulder belt 3-23
  Pre-tensioner seat belt 3-25
  Seat belt warning 3-21
Seat warmer(front) 3-12

JD RHD Index.QXP 2/17/2015 12:03 PM Page 11

Seatback pocket 3-13
Seats 3-2
Armrest 3-15
Driver position memory system 3-8
Folding the rear seat. 3-16
Front seat adjustment 3-4
Headrest(front) 3-9
Headrest(rear). 3-14
Lumbar support (Automatic Seat) 3-7
Lumbar support (Manual seat). 3-5
Rear seat 3-14
Rear seat entry 3-13
Seat warmer(front). 3-12
Seatback pocket 3-13
Service mode (Normal vision) 4-55
Service mode (Super vision). 4-70
Shift lock system 5-29
Shopping bag holder. 4-168
Side impact air bag. 3-55
Sliding armrest 4-152
Smart key. 4-11
Smart parking assist system (SPAS). 4-100
Smooth cornering 5-65
Snow tyres 5-67
Spare tyre
Compact spare tyre 6-15
Compact spare tyre replacement 7-62
Removing and storing the spare tyre 6-10
SPAS. 4-100
Special driving conditions 5-64
Driving at night. 5-65
Driving in flooded areas. 5-66
Driving in the rain 5-65
Driving off-road 5-66
Hazardous driving conditions 5-64
Highway driving 5-66
Rocking the vehicle. 5-64
Smooth cornering 5-65
Speed limit control system 5-56
Speed limiter indicator (Normal vision). 4-51
Speed limiter indicator (Super vision) 4-66
Speedometer (Normal vision) 4-47
Speedometer (Super vision) 4-62
Sports mode. 5-27
SRS components and functions 3-47
Starting difficulties, see engine will not start 6-4
Static bending light 4-112
Steering wheel 4-37
Electric power steering 4-37
Flex steering wheel 4-40
Heated steering wheel 4-38
Horn 4-39

JD RHD Index.QXP 2/17/2015 12:03 PM Page 12

Tilt and telescopic steering 4-38
Storage compartment 4-152
Centre console storage 4-152
Cool box 4-153
Glove box 4-153
Luggage side tray 4-155
Luggage tray 4-154
Sliding armrest 4-152
Sunglass holder 4-154
Sunroof, see panorama sunroof 4-33
Sunvisor 4-158

T

Tachometer (Normal vision) 4-47
Tachometer (Super vision) 4-61
Tailgate 4-22
Tether anchor system 3-36
Theft-alarm system 4-14
Tilt and telescopic steering 4-38
Towing 6-29
Trailer towing 5-71
Transaxle
Automatic transaxle 5-23
Double clutch transmission 5-23
Manual transaxle 5-20
Trip computer (Normal vision) 4-51
Service mode 4-55
User Settings 4-56
Trip computer (Super vision) 4-67
Driving information mode 4-68
Lane Departure Warning System Mode 4-69
Service mode 4-70
User Settings 4-71
Turn signals 4-115
Tyre chains 5-68
Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) 6-24
Tyre rotation 7-59
Tyre specification and pressure label 8-12
Tyres and wheels 7-56, 8-7
Checking tyre inflation pressure 7-58
Compact spare tyre replacement 7-62
Low aspect ratio tyre 7-67
Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures 7-56
Tyre care 7-56
Tyre maintenance 7-62
Tyre replacement 7-60
Tyre rotation 7-59
Tyre sidewall labeling 7-62
Tyre traction 7-62
Wheel alignment and tyre balance 7-60
Wheel replacement 7-62

JD RHD Index.QXP 2/17/2015 12:03 PM Page 13

U

User Settings (Normal vision) 4-56
User Settings (Super vision) 4-71

V

Vanity mirror lamp 4-124
Vehicle break-in process 1-5
Vehicle certification label 8-11
Vehicle identification number (VIN) 8-11
Vehicle stability management (VSM) 5-47
Vehicle weight 5-80

W

Warning and indicators 4-79
Washer fluid 7-44
Weight and volume 8-5
Welcome system 4-126
Wheel alignment and tyre balance 7-60
Wheel replacement 7-62
Windows 4-24
Manual windows 4-27
Power window lock button 4-26
Power windows 4-25
Windscreen defrosting and defogging 4-149
Auto defogging system 4-150
Windscreen washers 4-121
Windscreen wipers 4-119
Winter driving 5-67
Snow tyres 5-67
Tyre chains 5-68
Wiper blades 7-50
Wipers and washers 4-119
Front indshield wipers 4-119
Front windscreen washers 4-121
Headlight washer 4-122
Rear window wiper 4-122